



Gackwad's Oriental Series

Published under the Authority
of the Maharaja Sayajirao
University of Baroda, Baroda

General Editor:

B. J. Sandesara,

M.A., Ph.D.,

Director, Oriental Institute

No. 157



# ZAFAR UL WĀLIH BI MUZAFFAR WA ĀLIHI

AN ARABIC HISTORY OF GUJARAT

Vol. II

# ZAFAR UL WĀLIH BI MUZAFFAR WA ĀLIHI

### AN ARABIC HISTORY OF GUJARAT

(English Translation)

Vol. II

## By ABDULLÄH MUḤAMMAD AL-MAKKI AL-ĀŞAFI AL-ULUGHKHĀNI ḤĀJJI AD-DABIR

Translated by

M. F. LOKHANDWALA, M.A.,
Former Head of the Department of Persian,
Faculty of Arts,
M. S. University of Baroda



Oriental Institute Baroda 1974 First Edition Copies 500 1974

'ublished with the Financial Aid of the University Grants
Commission and Gujarat State

Price Rs. 50/-

Copies can be had of:-

The Manager,

UNIVERSITY PUBLICATIONS SALES' UNIT, M. S. University of Baroda Press (Sadhana Press), Near Palace Gate, Palace Road, BARODA

Printed by Shri B. M. Shah, Manager, Maharaja Sayajirao University of Baroda Press (Sadhana Press), near Palace Gate, Palace Road, Baroda and published by Dr. B. J. Sandesara, Director, Oriental Institute, Maharaja Sayajirao University of Baroda, Baroda-2, February, 1974

# CONTENTS

## (Volume II)

	Page
XXII	475-487
Early life of Imam-ul Muslimin Shihabuddin Ahmad History of Abyssinia	
XXIII	488-527
Assassination of Ibrahim Mirza Remaining account of the life of afore-said Sherwan Khān, the deceased Habshi Life-sketch of Ghālib Khān Life-sketch ot Badri Raihān Death of the author's father. His account	
XXIV	528-561
History of the Ghuris  Early account of Sultan Mu'izzuddin  Muhammed Sam al-Ghuri as an Amir  First ruler with designation of Sultan  Ghiyathuddin Muhammed bin Bahauddin Sam	
xxv	562-619
History of the Slaves Sultān Ārām Shāh bin Qutbuddin Abil Muzaffar Shamsuddin Iltamish Rise of Yildiz to power and his fall Account of Jalāluddin Mankbarani al-Khwārazmi Sultān Ruknuddin Firoz Sultān Radiya Chief of the heretics, Nur Turk in Jame' of Delhi on Friday, 6th Rajab, 634 Sultān Mu'izzuddin Bahrām Shāh Sultān 'Alāuddin Mas'ud son of Ruknuddin son of Iltamish Shamsuddin Sultān Nāṣiruddin Mahmud	
	Early life of Imam-ul Muslimin Shihabuddin Ahmad History of Abyssinia  XXIII  Assassination of Ibrahim Mirza Remaining account of the life of afore-said Sherwan Khān, the deceased Habshi Life-sketch of Ghālib Khān Life-sketch ot Badri Raihān Death of the author's father. His account  XXIV  History of the Ghuris Early account of Sultān Mu'izzuddin Muhammed Sām al-Ghuri as an Amir First ruler with designation of Sultān Ghiyāthuddin Muhammed bin Bahāuddin Sām  XXV  History of the Slaves Sultān Ārām Shāh bin Qutbuddin Abil Muzaffar Shamsuddin Iltamish Rise of Yildiz to power and his fall Account of Jalāluddin Mankbarani al-Khwārazmi Sultān Ruknuddin Firoz Sultān Radiya Chief of the heretics, Nur Turk in Jame' of Delhi on Friday, 6th Rajab, 634 Sultān Mu'izzuddin Bahrām Shāh Sultān 'Alāuddin Mas'ud son of Ruknuddin son of Iltamish Shamsuddin

Khan al-Shamsi with a title. Later on.

Page The following account is given by Diauddin Barni Sultan Ghiyathuddin Ulugh Khan Balban al-Shausi 620-705 706-757

CHAPTER XXVI

The Khaljis

of Ghiyathuddin

son of Muayvad-ul-Mulk

Sultān Jalāluddin Firoz Khalji

Sultān Mu'izzuddin Kaiqobād Sultān Shamsuddin Kaikāus

An account of 'Alauddin's relation with his uncle Ialaluddin and circumstances of the latter's death in the year 605

Sultan Ruknuddin Ibrahim son of Jalaluddin Firoz Shāh

Sultan 'Alauddin 'Ali son of Nasruddin brother of Jalal Khalji

Tidiogs of victory and martyrdom of Hazbaruddin Martyrdom of Nușrat Khân Jâlesâri

Safety of Alauddin and his preservation and repentance for lack of caution after determination. Akat Khān died.

Death of Almas Beg Ulugh Khan bin Naşr Khalji Booty of the age with concern of the Deccan Sultan Shihabuddin son of 'Alauddin Khalii Assassination of 'Alaism for the sake of Kafur Hazar Dināri

Sultan Qutbuddin Mubarak Shah son of 'Alauddin 'Ali Khalii

Khusraw Khān's accession to the throne of Qutbuddin

CHAPTER XXVII

The Tughlugs

Sultan Tughluq Shah

On Music

Sultan Fakhruddin Ulugh Muhammed Shah son of Ghāzi Tughluq Shāh

Sultan Naşiruddin Muhammed Shah son of Firoz Shah Sultan Tughluq Shah son of Fateh Khan son of Fires Shāh

Sultan Abi Bakr Shah son of Zafar Khan son of Firoz Shāh

:		Page
	Return of Nāṣiruddin Mahmud Shāh to his capital Sultān Nāṣiruddin Mahmud son of Muhammed son of Firoz son of Rajab brother of Ghāzi Khurasāni Sultān Dawlat Khān	
CHAPTER	XXVIII	758-765
•	The Sayyids Saltanat of Khidr Khan son of Sayyid Mardan, title Rayat-i-A'la Sultan Mu'izzuddin Mubarak Shah son of Khidr Khan Sultan (Muhammed Khidr Khan b. Farid Khan b. Khidr Khan Sultan 'Alauddin b. Muhammed Khidr Khan	
CHAPTER	XXIX	766 <b>-770</b>
	The Ludis Sultān Bahlol b. Ludi Afghān Sultān Sikander son of Bahlol Sultān Ibrahim b. Sikander b. Bahlol Ludi Sultān 'Alāuddin, son of Bahlol Afghān	
CHAPTER	xxx	771-789
	The Mughals  Zahiruddin Muhammed Babur, the Mughal son of Timur Gurgān  Conquest of Hind  Death of Bābur  Sultān Nāṣiruddin Humayun son of Muhammed  Bābur son of 'Umar Shaikh Bahādur.	
Chapter	XXXI	790-793
	The Surs Sultān-ul-Hind Sher Shāh, son of Hasan Afghān Sur	
CHAPTER	XXXII	794-817
	History of Bengal Amir Ghuri Ikhtiyār-ud-din Muhammed son of Bakhtiyār Amir Muhammed Shirān Khalji Sultān 'Alāuddin 'Ali Mardān Khalji Sultān Ghiyāthuddin 'Iwaḍ Khalji Sultān Nāṣiruddin Mahmud son of Shamsuddin Il-tutmish	

Page Sultān 'Izzuddin Tughān Khān al-Khatai al-Shamsi Sultān Ikhtivāruddin Yuzbek al-Khafehāki al-Shamsi Sultan Mughithuddin Tughril al-Balbani Sultan Naşiruddin Mahmud Bughra Khan b. Ghiyāthuddin Sultan Fakhruddin Salahdar Sultān Shamsuddin Ibyās Ḥāji Bhangara Sikander b. Shamsuddin Bhangara Ghiyāthuddin Sultān-us-Salātin's Shamsuddin II Kāns Jalaluddin Ahmad b. Jalaluddin Näsir Näsir Shāh Bārik Shāh Yusuf Shāh Sikander Shah Fateh Shāh Bārik Shāh al-Tawāshi Firuz Shāh Mahmud b. Firuz Muzaffar Shāh Habashi 'Alauddin al-'Askari Nasib Shāh, son of 'Alāuddin CHAPTER XXXIII 818-839 The Sur Dynasty (contd). Humayun and Sher Shah Sher Shah in Akbar Nama Sultan Salim Shah son of Sher Shah Sur Firuz Shāh son of Salim Shāh Mubariz Khān Muhammed 'Ādil b. Nizām b. Hasan Sur CHAPTER XXXIV 840-889 The Mughals (contd.) March of Humayun to Taamasp b. Shah Ismail, Sultān of 'Irāq and Khurāsān Humayun's return to Hind with the army of 'Iraq

Report of Humāyun's return to Kābul

	Page
Conquest of the Fort of Bust	
Conquest of Qandahar Fort	
Conquest of Kābul	
Kāmrān's return to Kābul	
Return of Humäyun from Badhakhshën to Käbul	
Arrival of Pir Muhammed Khān, ruler of Balkh	
to help Kämrån Mirzä to Badakhshän in the year	
Return of Kämrän from the way to Humäyun	
Invasion of Balkh	•
Names of persons who were with him in straits	
An account of Kāmrān Mirza	
Return of Kämrän	
Death of 'Askari	
Kāmrān's return to Kābul	
Martyrdom of Hindal Mirza	
Humāyun's march to Qandahar	
March of Humayun for recovery of Hind	
Entry of Humāyun into Delhi and departure to 'Irāq	•
March of Jalaluddin Akbar to Punjaab	
APPENDIX I	891-893
Notes	
APPENDIX II	00,000
	894-939
Amirs, Saints and Scholars	
APPENDIX III	910-942
A list of Topics, Ancedotes and Curiosities	
APPENDIX IV	943-947
List of Works referred to in this History	
APPENDIX V	948
INDEX	
ADPEA	949-1055

,

#### CHAPTER XXII

Early life of Imām-ul-Muslimin Shihābuddin Aḥmad. (980-1572)
History of Abyssinia

So said the historian in his book "Tuhfat-uz-Zaman" that he accurately narrated traditions from the Prophet, may peace and benedictions of God be on him that he occupied a position among the companions of the Prophet. He said to them that there was nothing and there is nothing which I made known to you till the day of resurrection. These are definitely known by Invisible Sciences. This is to be relied upon as stated by God the Great in connection with affairs which happen to pass. The Prophet, may peace and benedictions of God be on him, suggested to the renovators of followers of religion. Hence there are those who renovate propagation of sciences in the world. There are those also who renovate by blow of sword among men who cause disunity and practise hypocrisy. There are again those who renovate by saintly character. Some renovate it by shrewd statesmanship and good knowledge. Hence I opened your ears to produce inclination in you and presented the whole for your facility. Look into my book "l'utuh-ul-Habshah" in the hand of Imam of Amir-ul-Muminin Mawlana Sultan Ahmad bin Ibrahim al-Ghazi. My lord, Shaikh Shams-ud-Din 'Ali bin 'Umar al-Shāzli al-Karashi al-Yamani has alluded to it in his miracles. This is referred to by Imam al-Mas'udi in his "Mulhamat." He had authority over Habshah (Abyssinia). 'Abdul Wahhab bin Abi Bikr al-Yafai' al-Shafai' informed me. He said, "some authoritative persons informed me. He corrected it from Shaikh-uş-Şāleh ibn-i Zarbin. He said, "Necessarily, no man was so pious in Birr Sa'adud Din as he who had wielded power over the land of Abyssinia. He propagated his mission to his children. That was with the praise of God. He said, "Those in whom I had confidence narrated to me and they were witnesses that these victories were due to Amir Husain bin Abu Bakr al-Jawatari and Ahmad Din ibn-i Khalid bin Muhammed bin Khair-ud-Din. From among them who ruled the country was Birr Sa'ad-ud-Din. He was the mujahid of Sultan Muhammed bin Azar. He was from the progeny of Satad-ud-Din, in the year thirty of the 9th century (1523). He went out for jihad (to fight in the cause of God) to Abyssinia. It was due to preordained decree of God that many Muslims were martyred. He returned to his cities. His son-inlaw Abu Bakr bin Mahiuz murdered him and ruled over it for a year. Ibrāhim bin Ahmad, ruler of cities (bilad) Hubat from the tribes of Balu killed him and ruled over the kingdom for three months. Wasni killed him. He was mamluk

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 585.

(slave) Jarad Mahfuz. He ruled over cities (bilad) for three months. Mansu bin Mahiuz captured him and sent him in captivity to Zaila'. A slave of Yair killed him. Mansur ruled for five months. Jarad Abawi son of al-Jarad Abaw son of al-Jarad Arish invaded his territory and fought with him. Jarad surrender ed to Mansur. Jarad Abawi ruled for seven years. He administered the king dom and prospered it. He killed mischief-mongers. He loved the pions. H improved the lot of subjects during his days. Imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim w one of the horsemen of Jarad Abawi. He was a wise administrator with judment and statesmanship. Jarad loved him for these qualities as well as valou and forwardness. Sultan Abu Bakr ibn-i Sultan Muhammed from the descendant of Sa'ad-ud-Din invaded Jarad Abawi. Sumal joined him. They were robber: A fierce battle took place between them. Jarad Abawi bin Adthir got martyre in defending his family, wealth and property. Sultan Abu Bakr established h: power over the kingdom. He exhibited during his reign what did not exis during the reign of Jarad such as mischief, abomination, ruin of subjects and th kingdom. Learned men and pious persons detested this state of affairs. Imag Ahmad deserted him and joined the army of Jarad Abawi. They were or hundred horsemen. Number was increasing thereon. Bhubat from one of the cities of Birr Sa'ad-ud-Din, 'Ali al-Jarad'Umar Din joined him. They surrende ed chiefship to him. For certain days, Bitarak-ul-Ḥaṭṭi, king of Ḥabshah, who name was Fanil from the Dawarawa family waylaid neighbouring region wit his party of Bitarakas (bishops). Ahmad attacked them and fought with them The two armies faced each other at a place called 'Ukam. It was a great rive A severe battle took place between them. God bestowed victory upon th Muslims. Many bishops and a large number of Christians were killed. Ti spoils of war that day consisted of sixty horses, many mules and other wa weapons. Muslim prisoners and animals were freed from the hands of Christian Every one had his rightful share. They returned to a city called Zifah situate near the city of Sultan Abi Bakr. No Muslim was killed. Much praise is du to Allah. When the Sultan received report of it, he was seized with fright alor. with the Sumal who were with him. They fled, fearing his attack, to Kidaa Şumáli city. The Imam learnt about it. He pursued them. They assemble for war at a place called Karn, a hig viver. At decline of the day, the victor was for the Imam. A large number of Sumalis were killed, The spoils consiste of thirty horse. They plundered cities and returned with spoils and victory t Harar of Birr Sa'adud Din. After preparation, most of them joined the Sultā in the neighbourhood of Harar. The Imam left them and journeyed to Hube Zabarat. They climbed up a lofty mountain. The Sultan encamped at its foc and laid siege to it for nineteen days. They were reduced to straits due to sieg and descended one night from the mountain. A fierce battle took place betwee

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 586

the two. Amir 'Umar Din was killed. Companions of the Imam fled to their houses. Men of peace made efforts for conciliation between them. That happened. The Imam came to the Sultan. Revolt subsided. The Sultan then broke the peace and practised perfidy with the Imam. In his inadvertence, he seized his horses and arms. He also killed a number of companions including 'Uthman bin Yasin. The Imam fled one night with one third of his horses to a city Za'ka where he alighted. It is situated on a day's journey from city of the Sultan. He saw there four horses of the Sultan with a slave named Hamdush\* bin Mahfuz. He seized them. He left Za'ka and went to a place which was called Ribat-ul-Bakara full of trees. In this place, there was a lofty mountain. He then moved to Shabakh, a great river with seven horses. Jarad Abu Bakr bin Isma'il Kajan joined him. When Bhubat was joined by Amir Husain al-Jawatari, the Sultan went out in search of some calamity. He learnt that Bhubat had gone out for preparation to the village of the Imam. He burnt his houses and plundered wealth of the Muslims. The Imam received intelligence of that, He came out from Hubat. He always changed side of the Sultan and the Sultan changed him. He, at last, alighted at a place called Hadar. They were tired so they alighted and slept for rest. The Sultan attacked them while they were asleep. They plundered and went out safely from their sleeping-place, Two hundred foot and seven horse had assembled with the Imam. They encamped at Bu'Ashin. The Sultan fell upon them suddenly. Muhammed bin Ibrāhim, one of the horsemen of the Imām was martyred. His boys walked last. Soldiers of the Imam dispersed and assembled around Bhubat. Amir Shanbari came from the side of the Sultan. He was called Shabnatari by a large number of persons. Fourteen horsemen also came. The Imam received him, fought with him and put him to flight. He seized twelve horsemen. Amir Shanbari was killed. When the Sultan received news of the death of his amir and flight of his soldiers, he collected an army from his city as well as from the city of Sumal. He left five amirs behind him in the city. He came out with sixty horsemen and a large number of footmen. The Imam learnt about it. He went for preparation to the side of the Sultan's city. When he alighted at the village of Za'ka, one of the six amirs, Amir Kosham Abu Bakr got news of it. He was married to the daughter of the Sultan. He came out to fight with the Imam. He had one hundred horsemen with him. The Imam had twenty horsemen. In between the war, Kosham Abu Bakr fled before the war was over to their city. Harar. The Imam did not pursue them. He alighted at a place called? al-Karbar. Camelry and his companions assailed the city. They joined him in the afternoon of Ramdan in the year 939 (1532). Companions of the Sultan garrisoned themselves at a place of invincibility in the city. The Imam returned from them to a side from the city and spent the night there. In the morning

Original Text. p. 587.

he came back to the village. Soldiers of the Sultan pursued them. He them at a place called Samanjud. The Imam turned his reins. It was disastrous fight of the Sultan's soldiers. The Imam gained ascendancy over hundred and more horsemen. Many persons took rest in death. The Imi marched to city of the Sultan, Harar. He conquered it and announced amnes to those who were in their houses, with security of wealth, no enmity and th they were satisfied. The Imam came out from the city to the precincts a granted security to all cultivators. He had left an Amir there. The Sult assembled soldiers from the Sumāl, horse and foot and designed against i Imam. When the Sultan was at the city of Dakar, he ascended an invincil mountain, Hamzohan, fearing the Imam. Eminent men met together brought about peace between them on terms that the Sultan should continue Sultan while the Imam to be an Amir. The city was to be equally administ ed. The territory as far as Harar belonged to the Sultan while that as far as city Sim to the Imam. It was a custom that the Amir was chief in affa including command of the army. The Sultan had only cities (bilad) to h for maintenance. Peace was concluded on these terms. The Amir came wi an intention to meet the Sultan. At the time of entry upon him, he me swarm of bees like a black cloud. They shaded him hovering over his he from Samaniud to the house of the Sultan. It was reckoned as a miracle of t In am. The bees continued to hover at the gate of the Sultan till the Ima came out from palace of the Sultan. The bees moved shading him till he ent ed his house. They did not harm any one. He then returned to Shajar.

The historian has so said about the fame of the Mujahid Imam.

Cause of his being called the Imām is what has been said to me by t Shaikh Maḥammed bin Aḥmad al-Dahmāni-al-Maghribi. He said, "I w' sleeping one night when I saw two saints between the state of sleep a wakefulness. One of them was Aḥmad bin Muḥammed bin 'Abd-ul-Wāḥid Karashi al-Tunasi The other was my lord, the noble, the Kuṭb (pole sta al-'Aidrus, may their graves be sanctified and may we be benefited throu them. They said to me 'Do not call him Sultān nor Amir. Call him Imām-Muslemin (leader of the Muslims).' He said, "I said to them, Imām-Muslemin of the last epoch?" They replied in the affirmative. What t author said is his miracle. Reliable persons such as 'Ali bin Salāh al-Jab and Aḥmad bin Tāher al-Marwa'i said to me that they heard Sa'ad bin Yun al-'Araji saying "I was asleep one night. I saw the Prophet, may peace a benedictions of God be on him. Abā Bakr Ṣiddik was on his right side. 'his left was 'Umar bin al-Khaṭṭāb and in front was 'Ali, may God be pleas with them. Before 'Ali was the Imām Aḥmad bin Ibrāhim. I said to h

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 589.

"Oh Messenger of Allah! Who is this man who stands before 'Ali?" He said, 'He is the pious Shaikh in the bilad (cities) of Habshah.'" These were the dreams and the Imam. There was none else who saw these dreams when the person was recognized and seen in the presence of 'Ali, may God be pleased with him. This man saw him when he came to the city of Harar during the reign of al-Jarad Abawi. He narrated his dreams to him. Citizens said to him, "Is this the man whom you saw?" He said, "No." One amir followed another in the city always till he came to the period of the Imam Ahmad when he stopped. When he saw him, he recognized him with the description (quality) seen in dream standing before 'Ali, may God ennoble his face. He said to residents of the city, "He is whom I saw before they said to him." The Prophet may peace and benedictions of God be on him, said, "Do not compare Satan with me. He was as I saw him." His dreams came true. He was the king of Abyssinia. In short, when the Imam stood with the Sultan, he improved the age, his family and loved the nobles and men of religion. He got ready and marched as a ghāzi (one who fights in the cause of religion) to the city of Habshah. When he came to Dawarawa, he had booty in shape of slaves, chattels, horses which were beyond enumeration and double. On his departure, he had one hundred horses. He met people of Dawarawa at a place Dik-ul- Maslak (narrow path). They had assembled to fight with him. It was a severe fight. Many persons got martyred. Seven Muslim amirs fell into\* 'captivity-Amir Husain al-Jawatari, Amir Zaharbuy, Amir 'Abdullah, Amir Umar, Awrai 'Ahmad Gibrail from Şumāl and Amir Akbar. They separated from Husain to fight in the neighbourhood and carried his clothes. They thus constituted seven. It was due to the blessing of Islam that his pinions were cut off and he suddenly pounced upon one of them and seized his knife. He shouted jihad. On hearing his shout, unfortunate ones withdrew and the Amir Husain joined his companions one night. The rest moved with them to the country of Abyssinia. He killed two of them. The Imam returned to city of the Muslims with spoils of war and resided at Za'ka. He moved on to the Sultan for meeting him. After a short while, the Sultan became indeterminate and changed his good character to reverse of it and thought of perfidy with the Imam in his mind. The mashaikhs intervened to improve their relations. The Sultan avoided him and determined upon murder of the Imam. The Imam took time by the forelock and settled with absolute authority in the city with orders. 'Umar Din, brother of the murdered established himself in the saltanat. Formerly, he wielded his authority in favour of unbelievers over city of the Muslims. He killed them, plundered them and ruined them frequently till the Muslims chose to quit the city and go to the country of Imam Ahmad. In the meantime, God held Islam in esteem. The exiled ones imprisoned them and

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 590.

the unbelievers had to pay poll-tax. In the meanwhile, Sultan Awrai 'Abawi, a descendant of ancient sultans came to the Imam. During disagreement in the city, he came upon the Sumal. He met the Imam during his reign. He was given a village for maintenance. A tribe called Tary from the Sumal came to the Imam. There was a war between this tribe and another tribe whose Amir was Marihan. Both the tribes were from the Şumal. The Imam brought about reconciliation between them. The Imam then received intelligence about invasion of the Bishop Dajaljan, son-in-law of king of Abyssinia who was alluded to before. The Imam marched to Ru'budah and then the Sumal. They fled from him and he plundered their cities. The Imam then went to a religious war in Abyssinia. The chief of the Şumal was with him fighting. When they arrived at a place called Waduh Mushk, a city in Kankar, there remained a distance of one day and half between them and the king of Habshah. The army stopped from designs againt him and the Imam was inconvenienced for that. He then knotted banner of Imarat (Amirship) for the Amir Manşur bin Mahfuz al-Jawatari and added to him one hundred horsemen at the city of Sim\* suddenely and captured it and returned. In like manner, the wazir 'Addali added to him fifty horsemen and sent him to Zambariyah from the land of Dawarawa. He then proceeded towards it and took many things as booty. On his return, he found people of Dawarawa on his way. A fierce battle took place. Amir Mujāhid bin 'Ali bin 'Abdullāh al-Dami, the famous horseman attacked the great bishop Ari 'Samā Dāl and killed him. Similarly, the Wazir Nur attacked bishop Akhar and killed him. The unbelievers were defeated. 'Adali returned with spoils of war. No Muslim was killed. The Imam then came out for ji..ad. Amir Ḥusain al-Jawatari equipped himself with one hundred horsemen. He had knotted banner of Imarat for him. Similarly, he did with Wazir Nur. It was the banner of the Imam yellow in colour. Under this banner, there were one hundred horsemen. Five amirs had seven thousand men. One of them was in mourning. He was a Muslim that day. He killed an unbeliever. Another man was 'Abdul Karim bin 'Uthman known as Dawarawa. Third man was 'Umar bin 'Abdullah; the fourth was 'Uthman bin 'Abdullah, a resident of Sim; fifth was Munammed. They had embraced Islam. The Imam marched with them to a place called Zamirdin. They went on camels to Dawarawa and moved on to Kuhal Bari from Dawarawa. They found the unbelievers at a place Dik expecting the Muslims there. They polished their swords and burnt the church called Zahrak and returned to Kub. The Muslims who desired a ghazw (religious war) and those who did not, fled away at night. The Imam rode, saw them and came to them with aversion. He then moved on to the land of Habshah. He crossed the river Awash in boats kept one with the other. There were hides of exen beneath like a small boat called by them Lahi.

Original Text, p. 591.

This river is adjacent to the land of Damut to flow to sea water towards Zaila.' They talked about booty. The Imam said, "when I take out one-fifth, you have it each one of you as you wish." The Imam divisioned the army into three parts; one part of it was with the Wazir 'Adali, commander of the right wing. He ordered him to move from the right side. The second part was with the Wazir Nur. Amir (commander) of the left wing. He ordered him to move from the left side. He himself was in command of the third part. Amir 'Adali marched in the directions of the left for he was in the vicinity of Ifat, where the unbelievers had stationed themselves. Their amir was Vannāj län known as Sāhib-i-Ifāt (ruler of Ifāt). It was a fierce battle. Vannāj Jān fell at the hand of Sahit, the famous horseman. Rout was complete among unbelievers. The Muslims gained ascendancy of their station with their belongings. Among them was daughter of maternal aunt of the king Vannaj Saijad bin Nawad bin Admās bin Zarākub. The Imām gave her to the Wazir 'Adali. The king of Abyssinia ransomed her for fifty awkiya of gold (one wikiya is equivalent to one ounce that is the part of a ratal). The Imam laid designs against Tubiyah. His guide was Simuh known as Safarah. He was a Muslim. He then retreated. There was a church at Tubiyah. After victory, the Amir Husain, ruler of Dawarawa entered it. He was followed by Amir 'Ali, ruler of Al'ankut and Jarad Ahmush and Kosham Abu Bakr and the great shaikh Hamid bin al-Fadil Shaikh. The Imam entered it with his wife Dil Wanbarah, daughter of the Amir Mahfuz. They burnt it. There arrived a harbinger of the aforesaid victory from 'Adali with a report of death of Vannaj and spoils of war. They beat the drums and discs. The Wazir Nur looted spoils of war and returned to the Imam. The Muslims assembled at Tubiyah. The army paraded. Similarly, there was a parade the next day. It was the victory of Islam. The Imam then designed to attack city of Janbalah in Abyssinia, His guide was the Amir Ahmush. The Imam of the army marched. He was flushed red due to heat. It was the path. They walked stripped of clothes. They were tired. They were free from it in the evening (sun-set). They pitched tent for the Imam al Dik where there was luxuriance of alkat (kind of vegetable). Amir Ahmush planted his tent after great effort, first in the army. The last person who pitched his tent was al-Jarad 'Abd-un-Nasic. Ahmush said, 'He planted the tent when they followed me. Oh 'Abd-un-Nasir, may God help you. What strength you have in pitching the tent." When one-fourth of the night had passed, the Imam arrived in the rear, in the last portion of the army to his tent. They then spent the night. They did not taste anything. In the morning, they were on march. They spent the night at a place, Băzmali in the region of Ifât and entered Janbalah in the land of Habashah. In the morning of that night, they were in Abyssinia. The Muslims lived there and paid tribute to the king. The

Original Text, p. 592.

Muslims welcomed the Imam, feasted them and helped him with twenty awkiya of gold. The Imam that day had nothing with him. The Imam sent it to Zaila \* when the army did not accept it or he gave it to his wife. The Imam halted there, particularly to spend it. He wrote to the Sharif Ahmad bin Salem al-Sallati, master of his horses, to purchase arms of that amount. The Imam sat there for two days to come across the wealth of the king of Abyssinia with the merchant. He seized him and killed all those who were with him. He confiscated their animals and returned to 'Awash. He marched from it. The guide erred. He entered land full of a difficult thicket and barren. They chanced to see upon a portion of the tree several swords. They marched from that place and came out of it to a clear road. They crossed the river 'Awash and alighted at the river, Kub. They then marched and encamped at Dair, on the side of Muslim cities and pitched tents there. They divided the spoils and entered Harar in triumph. The tribes met the Imam in submission. The first who arrived was Kabyat Habar Makdi with their chief Ahmad Jari bin Husain al-Şumâli. It was followed by the tribe of Jari and their chief Mitan bin 'Uthman bin Khalid al-Şumali. He had a woman with him Firdausa, sister of the Imam. The tribe of Marihan got ready. They and their chief were warring. He loved mischief, stratagem and fraud. The Imam then marched to Abyssinia. They halted at Dair, a big river. When Vannāj Sajjad received news of his march, he assembled his men and moved from Bādoji and thence to the house of Amharah. There was his original place and that of his forefathers. The bishop lest 'Uthman bin Dar 'Ali at Baduhi behind him. Muslim fell 'n captivity of the unbelievers during the reign of Sultan Muhammed. He helped them and supervised the kingdom. Afterwards, he repented and returned to Islam. Afterwards, his sons displayed unbelief. He strove hard and died a martyr at 'Anba. The King assembled in the house of Amharah. The chiefs of the army were twenty-four bishops. Every bishop had armies under him and a woman-bishop ( nun ). The historian said that 'Abbas informed him about the condition of Islam. He was one of those who had assembled in the house of Amharah. The king said to him, "Why do you say so oh 'Abbas? The Imam saw these armies standing for war against me. Is it not?" 'Abbas said, " If they were for the Imam, he would not be personally tired. It is for one of the Husains. I do not know what order is given to the army." The King said that he was true. But the Muslims moved from Daite to a place Bakl Zar, a river with plenty of water. They alighted at it. The Imam assembled his soldiers and arrayed them. Those amirs who embraced Islam and Islâm did good to them were Ahmad Jari, Chief of the Şumāl, Wazir 'Adali, Amir Mujahid, Absamanur, Jatad Sham'uu, Jarad Burhan, 'Alwash bin Haijan Ayyub, Khāhd al-Warrādi, Awrai' Nurkalţa bin 'Umar, son-in-law of Jarād

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 593.

Mahfuz, Farshaham 'Uthman, Dull Sajiad, horseman of Sim, Shum Warradi, Haijam Uthman Warradi, Shaikh Fadil Hamid bin Zahid, Mitau, Chief of the Sumāl and the Wazir Nur bin Ibrābim. Standard of the Imām that day was white. On its sides was inscribed: "In the name of God, the Most Compassionate, the Most Merciful. Verily we have granted thee a manifest victory. That God may forgive thee thy faults of the past and those to follow; fulfil His favour to thee; and guide thee on the Straight Way and that God may help thee with powerful help. Help from God and victory is nigh. God has decreed; "It is I and My messengers who must prevail." For God is one, full of strength, able to enforce His will. Help to the faithful is right with Us. We will, without doubt, help Our Messengers and those who believe, (both) in this world's life and on the Day when the witnesses will stand forth. Aiready has Our Word been passed before (this) to Our Servants sent (by Us) that they would certainly be assisted and that Our forces, they surely must conquer. Our Lord! Pour out constancy on us and make our steps firm. Help us against those that reject faith. Our Lord! Pour out constancy on us and cause our death as Muslims. Hast thou not turn Thy vision to the Chiefs of the Children of Israel after (the time of) Moses? They said to a Prophet (that was) among them: Appoint for us a king to fight in the cause of God." He said, "Is it not possible that you may be commanded to fight and that ye will not fight?" They said: "How could we refuse to fight in the cause of God, seeing that we were turned out of our homes and our families?" But when they were commanded to fight, they turned back, except a small band among them. But God has full knowledge of those who do wrong. God has heard the taunt of those who say: 'Then God is indigent and we are rich!' We shall certainly record their word and (their act) of slaying the Prophets in defiance of right and we shall say: 'Taste ye the penalty of the scorching fire.' In the middle of it four lines were consecutively inscribed: the first, Hast thou not turned Thy vision to those who were told to hold back their hands (from fight) but establish regular prayers and spend in regular charity? When (at length) the order for fighting was issued to them, behold, a section of them feared men as—or even more than -they should have feared God. They said: Our Lord! Why hast Thou\* ordered us to fight? Wouldst Thou not grant us respite to our (natural) term, near (enough)". Say: Short is the enjoyment of this world: The second: You have fortified yourself with the Living, the Permanent Who never dies, and Who defends you against evil with thousand thousand, 'There is no power and no strength except with God, the High and the Respectable. The third: The Hereafter is better for he who fears (God). Recite to them the truth of the story of the two sons of Adam. Behold! they each presented a sacrifice (to God). It was accepted from one, but not from the other. Said the latter:

Original Text, p. 595.

'Be sure, I shall slay thee.' "Surely," said the former, "God doth accept of the sacrifice of those who are righteous. The fourth:

The war, if I managed it Disappointment will not be from you. I exercise patience over its perils No death except with honour.

My lord, the theologian, the saint, the pious, mufti (one who gives religious decrees ) of the Muslims, my master, Abu Bakr bin Nasr-ud-Din bin Muhammed al-Makanni, Barshuna had inscribed it that day. The historian said that the pious theologian, the great famous Abu Bakr Arshuna, may God show mercy to him said to me that "when the Imam returned from ghazw (religious war) of Bali to Harar, he halted for two months. He then proceeded to Abyssinia. He had collected a crowd. Sa'eed bin Şa'ban al-Mahri, Ahmad bin Sulaiman al-Mahri, chiefs of the Mahra tribe saw him in shape of a deputation. Their leader was the noble Syed Muhammed Marzak. When the Imam was at a place called Ajām Gi, a river in the region of Lämli of al-Fatkar near Lakbala, they alighted and ate whatever they obtained of eatables after two days. In the meantime, a battalion arrived with equipment with a design against king of Abyssinia in direction of his station thinking that the king was there. When they learnt about it, they immediately fled away. Soldiers of the Imam pursued them. It was a victory and a great victory. One was equal to ten, more or less. They then captured them for him taking whatever they had with them. They came with them in presence of the Imam. He ordered to strike off their necks. Their amir was brought as a captive. He attempted for ransom. The Imam refused and killed him. After that, he received news that king of Abyssinia arrived with what he had assembled to Bāduḥi. He then moved on in wake of the Muslims. The Imam had encamped at the river, Majawwa. He watered his horses, said Zuhr (after-noon) prayers and journeyed to Pabri\* Kuri. He spent four nights there. He saw crescent of Rajab of the year, 935 (1528). In the morning, he marched towards Mājah with designs against its city. He had then approached King of Abyssinians. He said that a Christian repor ed about those who were with the king at the assault of Pabri Kuri called Azmāt Horibi. He then embrassed Islam. The king had sixteen thousand horsemen dressed as 'Arab horsemen of Rifiyal. But the owners of the horses of Abyssinia were without number. Number of footmen was one hundred thousand. They were divided into seven arrays on the day of battle. Every row did not see on a side. The Imam came. He arrayed the centre, the Right wing and the Left wing. He used to say, "Oh God! make me patient completely, the victor is near You. Sultan Muhammed bin Sultan 'Ali bin Khaltah was in command of

<sup>.</sup> Original Text, p. 596.

wing. Shaikh Anas bin Shaikh Shihab bin 'Abdul Wahhal bin Shaikh ll the tribes of Harlah. All the Sumalis were on the Left wing along Amir Ahmad Jari. The rest were in the centre. The Amirs who him were Amir Husain al-Jawatari, Amir Zahr Baivi Muhammed 1 'Ali, Wazir Nur bin Ibrahim, Amir Mujahid, Farshaham Sultan, asir, Shaikh Dawah, Amir Abu Bakar Kajan, Hamdush bin Mahfuz, -law 'Ali Akht Dull, Nabrah, Awrai 'Ahmad Din bin Khalid, sham'un, al-Jarad Ahmush, Awrai 'Abawi, al-Jarad 'Ulhman bin 1-Jarad Siddig and Dull Sajjad etc. The Imam did not separate iself five hundred horsemen, in travel and presence. Among them Hamzah al-Jawfi who had an 'Arab infantry of one thousand. ogian 'Abdullah got down from his mule and seized his shield ; and implored God. Who is Holy. He was a sufi, abstemious and er of prayers. King of Abyssinia Vannai Saljad was that day in army, His wings-right and left, consisted of four hundred horses. time, he divisioned his men. The army of Islam was like a white the lion in skin of oxen. The Imam then steadied himself and said o God. In prayers, he said, "Oh Allah! Oh the Living! Oh the g! Oh the Creator of the skies and the earth! Oh full of Glory and Yerily, those are your enemies and enemies of your religion and f your Messenger. They eat livelihood supplied by You and they ther than You. The cloud shades them. We are Muslims in heat\* . That cloud shades the rejectors of faith. The Imam prayed to lat. He moved against the unbelievers. The cloud turned from heads is and came over heads of the believers shading them over their heads. byssinia saw that. He commingled and his soldiers were in lamenta-: Imam rushed against them and incited the Muslims to assault. He de them. He said, "Be firm till you begin. Then lift up your lances yourself with shield and remember God the Holy and know that the s determination and disappointment is weakness. God is with those patient. From patience of today, there will be victory tomorrow. ild never be hardship after this. They then arrayed the rows. There ilim whose name was 'Uthman Shaikh from the tribes of al-Jadayah. iding a mule. He attacked a hishop of the name of Jan Blue Ras. ed a blow on his back. He was in a preventive harness. The sword arness and the armour. It was divided into two parts. Half of it neighbourhood and the other half was in the saddle of the horse. He hundred and thirty-six bishops that day. Every one of them was From the other bishops, one hundred and fourteen were killed. Every as in command of one thousand horses as well as five hundred horses,

pinal Text, p. 597.

The Muslims that day hamstrung six hundred horses of the unbelievers in the battle-field. Those who got martyred in this assault were Hamzah al-Jabali, Jadid Khujuh, Kabir Ibrāhim Mu'ezzin al-Jarād Abawi, Faqih Muḥammed Khatib Sim, Dalu Bāli and Muhammed Dawārawā. The Muslims who got martyred that day were five thousand foot-men belonging to the tribes of al-Sumāl, Malsāi, Ḥarlah, and the 'Arab; may God be merciful to them. It was the victory for Muslims. The Imam returned to the city of Harar with spoils of war. He had killed many thousands from the armies. It was a war which lasted from the morning to late afternoon. The Imam killed that day a bishop from among the bishops of the sea called 'Akabi Mikāil. He was strongly frightful of great strength. He thrust a lance in his breast which penetrated him backward. Al-larād 'Abdun Nāşir a member of the Imām's family was ruler of Chitr and their servant did the above deed. He encountered horsemen with no horse with him. He was like a fiery camel. Blood flowed from \* his postrils with anger for God and ardency for Jihad. They lived till the time. At the first religious war of Dawawara, Amir Zahrbawi Muhammed, son of uncle of the Imam Ahmad fell in captivity and he came with him to king of Abvssinia. The Imam corresponded for his release. He was placed at a distance from Abyssinia in the land of Dāmut. He freed himself with the obligation of God. He fled one night to city of the Muslims. Sharif Muhammed Marzak fought a religious war with the Imam and strove in the path of God. After the victory, the Imam gave him Bab sari to be with him by payment of tribute. He was a man of immense charity and he came to it. The historian said that he was with King of Abyssinia in the above-mentioned war. Vannai Sajjad turned the right wing over left side of Islam. The Christians outnumbered Muslims in war and they continued the fight. Three thousand foot-men of the lest wing were martyred. Mitan bin 'Uthman, Chief of the Şumal, father-in-law of the Imam Ahmad, Ahmad Jari, 'Ali Jarad brother of Mitan, similarly brother of Farshahm with his family and their equals stood with steadfastness. They made a severe assault on the right wing and joined with the centre after a severe struggle. All of them then assembled under banner of the Imam. He was then pleasing God, the Holy and His Messenger. There was great disappointment. Enemies of the faith were in quake. The space was darkened with dust. Distinguisher was only the phrase of the Unity. The polytheists were put to rout. The sword was active among them from forenoon of the day to end of the afternoon. Thanks to God for their efforts.

I say that it was a victory, a preface to other victories. It was conquered and Islām spread in Abyssinia. The faith elevated. Its citizens became rich. The muleteers multiplied. The Imām went. His designs were against the

Original Text, p. 598.

ts of Yaman. Most of them were for them. Abyssinia was about to me religion. Help of the Firangis arrived. They had assembled in the inthood of Dawārawā. It was that day when the Imām was martyred in aimed at him. He had attacked enemies of God. One hundred dipersons retreated from Abyssinia talking about period of Islām point-lofty position and extensive possibility. It did not stop on his death. die pleased with them and those who guided to the path.

#### CHAPTER XXIII

### Assassination of Ibrahim Mirza

A short account of it is that he secretly fled away from the captivity of Sultan-ul-Hind and thus escaped from his hand and went out of his nearby\* frontiers. Valiant warriors of his community numbering one thousand assembled around him. Every one of them was equipped with a horse to ride and set apart two previous Iraqi horses who did not know the time of decline (of the sun) and plunged in darkness of the night with great speed and traversed one hundred miles or something more than that. Every one of them had his armour: and two for necessity. There were one hundred camels. Twenty men from amongst them rebelled for accomplishment of their desire. The rest were with merits and demerits. He gained strength after strength, might and rascality. He continued harassment by plunder after plurder. What they were, were known by their foreheads (features). They neither expected anything (except plunder) and nor cared for blame. They did not live but for the bounties. They arrived in Gujarat in time of 'Imad-ul-Mulk Changiz Khan and all of them became amits. They then left him and proceeded to Ujjain and again came back to Broach after his death. On arrival at Baroda, Sultan ul-Hind received intelligence about Muhammed Husain Mirza that he had garrisoned himself within the fort of Surat, and showed himself in the vicinity of Champaner. Khān-i-'Alem prepared himself to march against him. He learnt that Ibrāhim Mirzā had passed by his camp at a distance of eight farsakhs. He pursued him. Ibrāhim Mirzā came out from the neighbourhood of Broach flying from him towards Modása. He proceeded in all rapidity with his guide Malek-ush-Sharq Muhammed Jiv Babu. He saw him in the vicinity of Sarnal Katnal. He had got down to eat what was present with him. The Sultan fell upon him suddenly and was about to throw him down by his hand but he missed him by three refractory horses. His men had paused in narrow passes for opposition with arrows from a distance. Only a few soldiers were present with the cavalcade of the Sultan. Ibrahim then marched towards Delhi. The Sultan was at a distance from him. Vagabonds assembled around him. Every one of them freely resorted to plunder. The affair became serious to command every one of them. it was an etiquette with the Mughals to unsheathe the sword in opposition to one who belonged to the House of Saltanat even though he may be of one, two or many generations. He continued assailing for plunder till he reached Multan. One day, he came out ahunting. In the meantime, he was in his search. Husain Quli Khan Turcoman, the Amir of Lahore surrounded him and attacked the tent

Original Text, p. 599.

wherein was his brother Mas'ud. He faced him and fought with him but fell\* down from the horse and was made a captive. On return, Ibrāhim learnt about this incident and was overcome with shame. He personally saw the game but did not fight with him. Many persons gathered around him. His term of life was complete. He came out of the battle-field with a wound which weakened his strength. He came to the tent of a Baluch Amir. He gave him shelter and brought a surgeon who treated him but he died in the evening. It was only, a short time after the slaughter of Rustam in a perfidious manner. He had taken an oath of the Holy Book with him. God took revenge on him for him as well as on his brother Muhammed Husain Mirzā also in the shortest time, the account of which follows. He came with his head to Agra and his brother as a prisoner living with weakness due to the wound. He who swindled and died, left his reputation behind.

Sultan-ul-Hind encamped at Surat. The Afghans assembled around Muhammed Khān son of Sher Khān Faulādi at Naharwāla Pattan and established control over the region. He sent for his father. He was in Kutiyana of Junagadh. He presented himself. Muhammed Husain Mirza joined him. They advanced from that place to Kadi and encamped in the plain. The side of the Sultan had prepared itself to fight with them under the captainship of Atka, the great an r, honourable nawwab Khan-i-A'zam Aziz Muhammed Kukah. His uncle Beglarbeg Atālik Outbuddin Muhammed Khān, Shāh Muhammed Khān and the Amir Syed Muhammed Bukhāri were with him. It was a hard fought battle. The Sultan's army fled to Ahmedabad. But five hundred horsemen stood firm in the centre with Nawwab and his Atalia (tutor). Defeat then turned into a victory. I was in the majlis of beneficient of blessings, fortunate in movements Mawlana Shaikh Jamaluddin Muḥammed al-Hashaibari, may God benefit me through him. Choice of the Saltanat Shaikh Muhammed Ghaznawi presented himself. I heard from him the report of this battlefield. It was so and so, he said. Muḥammed Husain Mirzā proceeded with headlong hurry with Muhammed Khan to enter the battlefield. Muhammed Husain then left him and came out of it with a muleteer with some suspicion lurking in his mind. Sher Khan was on horse-back for the war. He stopped in resistance against Khān-i-A'zam. His cavalry consisted of not more than five hundred horses. He stopped fighting as the Khan had stopped. An arrow came from the army of the Khan but the archer was not seen as to from which side he darted it. It brought a horseman down to the ground from the opposite camp. With that, the army returned and was near running away. Its amirs had now joined it. They fled with the going out of Muhammed Husain and Muhammed Khan, son of Sher Khan after killing Syed Muhammed Bukhari in the battlefield. Shah t

Original Text, p. 600.

Muḥammed Khān returned to Aḥmedābād in a miserable manner along with most of the soldiers. With the defeat of Muḥammed Khān, Sher Khān fled to Junāgadh and the rest to Kutiyāna in the reign of Muzaffer. The amirs deserted from him to Amin Khān Ghori, the ruler of Junāgadh. Among them was the famous amir, Miftāh Saif-ul-Muluk.

In 981 (1572), Muhammed Husain Mirzā conquered Broach. Its ruler was Outbuddin Muhammed Khan who was at Baroda. It so happened that when his brother proceeded to Delhi for getting back Sultan-ul-Hind with him to Gujarat leaving behind Surat in charge of one who guarded the fort. Ismā'il Asad Khan had proceeded with Muzaffer bin Ibrāhim, his mother, daughter of Kamran Mirza and the rest of the ladies to the territory of Nizam Shah Deccani. Muhammed Husain alone went to Naharwala. He went with the muleteer to Idar. When the Sultan-ul-Hind returned to Agra, he collected a number of ladders, carried them with him and proceeded with great precipitancy to Broach. He placed the ladders one night against it and climbed over it. In the morning, he established his authority over it. That very day, he left his Vakil and hastened to Surat. The governor of Surat was Nawwab of lofty dignity Qalij Muhammed Khan. He suddenly entered the port. Jahangir Khan was there. He made him a prisoner and returned with him to Broach. Making amends of his mind, he left him at Broach. He took his grandson Rumi Khān bin Rumi-Khan bin Jahangir Khan as his companion. He left for Baroda. Qutbuddin Khan did not stand firm with him. He was with three thousand horses except Saif-ul-Muluk Habshi, Sultan-ul-Hind had left Adil Khan Neki with him. Muhammed Husain Mirza had less than one thousand horses. Muhammed Husain Mirzā established his authority at Broach, Baroda and Chāmpāner. His brothers 'Aqil Khān Mirzā and Shāh Mirzā were with him. He then proceeded to Khanbhayat and stayed there. Khan-i-A'zam Nawwab 'Aziz Kukah was in the vicinity of Ma'murābād. Ikhtiār-ul-Mulk made his appearance with Muhammed Khan son of Sher Khan Fauladi, Wali Khan son of Jhujhar Khan, Farhan Jhujhar Khani, Hasan Khan, Dawlat Khan son of Muhāfiz Khān, al-Amir Hazabbar Sherwan Khan. The Habshis were more\* than five hundred and these Habshis were the followers of Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk. They had power over the Treasury and every day they spent a sufficient amount of money. In the meanwhile, Qutbuddin Muhammed Khan came to Khanbhāyat to fight with Muḥammed Mirzā. The ho murable Khān despatched Syed Hāmid Bukhāri for his help. There was a parry of Mughal amirs. When they came to Khanbhayat and paused on the side of the shore for war, they saw Muhammed Husain sinting on a wall of the harbour to the side of the sea. He came out with twenty horsemen. He personally supervised the war.

Original Text, p. 602.

There was a severe war between him and Syed Hāmid resulting in the death of Sved Mustafa, his daughter's son. During the encounter of both of them, Muhammed Husain Mirzā received a slight wound on the nose. On the fourth day, Saif-ul-Muluk advanced for war. Muhammed Husain was in search of him. He informed him as to what was the condition of his armour and horse. It so happened that the Malek had changed them. In place of his slave 'Anbar, the champion horseman of the battle-field, Khairat Khān had worn his armour and was riding his horse. When Muhammed Husain emerged, he was the first to enter the battle-field and he assailed 'Anbar supposing him to be the Malek inflicting several wounds on him, one of which was on the side of the forehead beneath his ear as well as on his right hand which got paralysed. The Malek crawled to him, returned to the city and sat on wall of the harbour. When the Malek advanced to the gate of the harbour, Qutbuddin Khan was in his wake. He came out from the other door towards the side of Ahmednagar. Shah Mirzā joined him. He was strong in his address to the honourable Khān. He then returned to Ahmedābād. Similarly, Outbuddin Muhammed Khān returned to Ahmedabad. All the Mughals assembled at Ahmedabad except Khan-i-Kalan the Governor of Pattan. Ikhtiär-ul-Mulk, Muhammed Husain Mirzä and Muḥammed Khān Faulādi met together. Rāi Narāin, ruler of Idar was with them as he was in their camp for three days to conquer Ahmedabad. They were partners in it. He then returned to his capital. They descended upon the city and all the amirs of the Salatanat assembled at the gate of Dar-us-Saltanat at the ballast famous as Chokhandi. They held consultation about the war and for going out to Pattan. They gave preference to the second. They appointed certain persons to see Saif-ul-Muluk for consultation with him. They questioned him. He, Syed Hāmid, Mirzā Muqim and Shāh Abu Turāb were sitting in a\* row. They despised what they stated about their dignity in a shocking way as well as their strength due to a large number. He said, "They are as God had stated." Thou woultdst think, they are united, but their hearts are divided." In the meantime, a report was received about their shift from Jetalpur to Sarkhej. It is a road of citizens for going to Pattan. They stopped and realized the gravity of this step. They got disturbed and became steadfast. In the morning, they emerged on the river. Ikhtiär-ul-Mulk stopped opposite to the gate of the city Raker (Raikhad) while Muhammed Khan was on a side from him. Similarly was the ruler of Idar. The city-army was equipped with arms and arrayed in rows at the gate of the Dar-us-Salatanat while the amirs were sitting at Chokhandi near the lord of order (commander) of Gujarāt Khān-i-A'zam 'Aziz Muhammed Kokaltāsh. Sultān-ul-Hind made over Gujarāt for his son Shaikhu Jiv titled Sultan Salim. The Khan-i-A'zam was appointed as his deputy in the kingdom. The gates were closed and guards were appointed at

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 603.

them except Shahpur, Khanpur and Raker ( Raikhad ). One thousand he come out for a skirmish from the gate of Shahpur, five hundred horses f gate of Khanpur and similar number from Raker ( Raikhad ). The rules had advanced with a cavalry for arrival at the river. They encount Raikhad party. Two were killed from among them. They captured the and returned. A party then came forward but returned with a retreat behind a third one. The army at the gate was glad with news of victor Ruler of Idar pondered over the matter. Only this one day was left promised days. They reflected over it and sent word to Khān-i-A'zam ? ing for presence and requesting for terms of treaty being disengaged from He wrote for safety to him, to his kingdom, and to his followers. In th ing, they moved away. Muḥammed Husain Mirzā stayed on for encor Shahpur. When the city army came out of it, it crossed the river, fou routed them. Similarly, Wali Khan fought outside the Khanpur gate and them. They pressed him in the wake till he was afraid of the guards gate from entry in wake. They closed the gate so that their chiefs safe against gun-shots and concealed themselves. Amongst them was Sultan, one of the descendants of the gnostic of God, Khwaja Ahrar. down from his horse. Fazil Muhammed Khan was the adopted son of Kalān. He sent help to Ahmedabad. He was killed in the battle field Shahpur gate. The door was also closed in face of the chiefs of th army. Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk did not move out from his house. His Wazir, med Asif Khan son of 'Abdul 'Aziz Asif Khan was hit on head by a ball. He died. "Verily to God we belong and to Him we return." He w perfect in goodness among the sons of Asif Khan with rigour in religion. and honour. He was unique in behaviour with his forefathers. May G mercy to him. With the approach of evening, the whole army cross river and encamped at Majhuri which was adjacent to the plain. morning, the Ruler of Idar apologised Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk with loyalty period and sought permission for return. His reply to him was as difficulty he had of his company except that he wanted the kingmembers of his family. He had advanced claims in pretence for Mul Husain Mirzā, "Sultān-ul-Hind is better than he. Do you not feel what will be acquired tomorrow?" He then rode with him to some following him for show. In reality, defence with him was of no avail. A'zam fortified himself, dug ditches and posted an amir for defence gate. His uncle Qutbuddin Muhammed Khan was at the Jamalpur gate an army which had camped outside. It was the army of Farahshi Fatch ]ang Khan Rumi which had spent the night at city-fort overloo

Original Text, p. 604.

river. He died during the regime of Changiz Khān in the year ...... at Champaner. There was a woman in the house for him and for Yaqut Khan Salmāni Bahr Khān also. He was in a turret overlooking the river. His son Khairuddin was with him viewing the passing of Muhammed Husain Mirzā after his disengagement of war with afore-said Fazil Muhammed Khan on the river at Majhuri. It so happened that his brother passed with Wali Khan beneath the turret. He talked with him. The naubat (drum-beating guard) of the turret adjacent to this house saw his stoppage beneath the turret talking with his brother. The chief naubat got down, went to his officer and reported to him what he saw. The report came to Khān-i-A'zam. He came with members of the family to the Dar-us-saltanat and charged them with offence of a talk between brothers in connection with time for opening of gate at this turret at night for entry into the city. He was strongly severe in talk with the owner of the house. There emerged from him swords and daggers glittered with gold and silver and an amount of money which were to be deposited with Muhäfiz Khan and Bilal Ramzan. It was the first money\* to be produced in the fort. Khan-i-A'zam ordered the family of Jahangir Khan to come to the Dar-us-Salatanat with what they had in their house for falling Jahangir Khan in the hand of Muhammed Husain Mirza as stated above. His grand-son, Rumi Khan had to come with them. They made no differentiation in wars. Similar was the case with Wali Khan and Nazar Bahadur who entered and came out together. He was the third who was most severe with the Mughals. Wali Khan was so out of revenge for his father. When Shah 'Abdul Muttalib son of Shah Badagh Khan invaded the vicinity of Asir Burhanpur, 'Adil Shah came and equipped Kamil-ul-Mulk Amir-ul-Umara ( commander-in-chief ) of his army Wali Khan mentioned above with what was present with him, particularly, men who never left him both at home and abroad. He asked him about this preparation with Kāmil-ul-Mulk. He said that he wanted to take revenge on the Mughals for his father. He praised him for his courage. He granted him leave for it and went out with him. The deposits which belonged to the mother of Changiz Khan and a part of it to Sher Khān, son of I'timād Khān since long were in the house of Shaikh-ul-Islām, blessing of Muslims, Mawlana, authority of the age, perfect in glory, Mia Wajihud-din al-'Alwi, may his grave be sanctified. He was a chief of the people of Gujarat for observance of good manners. During disturbances, they were not just with women in their houses. They deposited in the ground what was dear to them and the owner of the house did not know about it. Rich men among them who were acquainted with the house and the owner, returned to their houses and took away from it what they needed. It so happened that a woman-

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 605.

servant of this house who was acquainted with an unknown Mughal in the street who had nothing with him, informed him about what was in the house. He informed the Governor of the city about it to give him something for it. He sent his Wazir Mir 'Alauddin to the place. He took out from the house many precious pearls, jewel-studded ear-rings and gold coins which were not current. In the words of God, the Great "This is given by us, then oblige (by giving in charity) or hold fast to them, without any account from you." On his return. 'Alauddin, out of bad manners, sent it ahead walking before his horse, with what was entrusted to him in haste. When he presented himself in the mailis of his master, he kept himself far from it in respect of which it was his duty to guard. Syed Hāmid, Mirzā Muqim, Syed Jiv 'Abdur Rahmān and Shāh Abu \* Turâb waited for him. The Mughal amirs continued to wait. Syed Hāmid Jost his temper for the condition he saw himself in. His face changed with indignation, for God the Holy and His Messenger, may benedictions and salutations of God be on him, till the anger was displayed. He sat for help to his side. The master of the majlis did not lose his temper and asked him as to why he did not inform him about it. The proclaimer made the warner hear. His reply was, "I had no knowledge of it. On his supposition, it was not religiously allowable to lose that deposit with its information. He then allowed him to go back. Sved Hämid waited with him. He prevented him from riding a special bhail. All of them walked to his masjid, sat with him for an hour for pacification of his mind. They then took leave and returned. The afore-said Mawlana lost his control over restlessness. He gave up giving lessons for some days. A short time had not passed when 'Alauddin was involved in displeasure of his master. He suffered for his bad manners with the afore-said. He was suspended with a rope in a reverse position and beaten till death. He lost what he owned in inheritance. His father appeared in the Diwan-us-Saltanat and claimed retaliation (blood-money) for his son. He wrote a petition for hearing his claim and a reply for it. He came to Ahmedābād, convened a majlis for that and sought retaliation from one who murdered him. The other affair which first came forward was the conquest of Junagadh by the great amir Wazir Khan. The other matter was efficient management at Ahmedabad. It was the chief seat of Saltanat. It was placed in charge of Mawlana Shah Abu Turab. Khan-i-A'zam marched to Agra. He met the Sultan. He was reproached for certain things. He retired to a garden and did not accept the amirship. Some of his wellwishers persuaded him for some time not to behave in that fashion. Some of his friends reported to him, "your son fell down." On hearing this, he wept bitterly. It was said to him out of consolation, "Do you not bear his fall? You weep so much for him. His fall was from a house which was near the ground." His

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 606.

reply was, "It was easy to fall down to the ground, but who will raise him? Verily. I feared his fall from the eye of the people of God or their heart." It then came to light what Imad-ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk had deposited for the outfit of his wife, the daughter of Jahangir Khan. It was thus. The slanderers circulated the rumour among the people and thus the slander spread\*. The army alighted in the city. It did nothing. If Wali Khan had remained behind on his arrival with Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk, that was an advisable course for him; but he did not adopt this course on the pretence of Farhan and proceeded to Muhammed Husain Mirzā. Ikhtiār-ul-Mulk felt for it. His resolve and concern got disclosed. He refused to try for victory for some one else's kingdom. The inviter Farhan was sent for this slight to Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk on the day of his meeting with Muhammed Husain to request him to write to Luli Khan about the kingdom which belonged to his father and Ulugh Khan. The Malek breathed (took rest) and said, "Every one intends to be like Ulugh Khan." The messenger went away and reported his utterance to him. Farhan said, "He breathes like that from that day, then how can it be said that he had become stable?" He then met Wali Khan and carried him in concert with Muhammed Husain Mirzā. It so happened. When the wise men of the camp learnt about their meeting, they remarked that they first did wherein there was no good. They met together and agreed upon to summon Sher Khan. Someone was sent to him. When he came to Dholka, Syed Mahmud, son of Syed Miran treated him as a guest. Most of the Afghans went to him from the camp. It so happened that Sultan-ul-Hind arrived at Kadi on the day of his arrival to it. In the meantime, Sher Khan was supported at Dholka by the vanguald of the Saltanat. People suspected Sher Khän: At mid-day, the vanguard of the army showed themselves. The city-army prepared itself. Many soldiers came out of the Raker (Raikhad) gate. Many of them came out of the Asloria (Astodia) gate. When the army had descended upon the city, most of the Afghans were at Dholka and most of the Mughals at Baroda for acquisition of territory. Most of the Habshis were in Mundah with Farhan. He was hit with an arrow on the side of his knee on the day he killed Fāzil Muḥammed Khān. Those who were present, were drunk and the rest in a state of bewilderment. Under these circumstances, every amir stood under his flag. There was an encounter between Muhammed Husain and the Sultan. He receded but did not cease fighting. Such was the case with Wali Khan, Sherwan Khan, Rumi Khān, Ghālib Khān and Adham Khān and Nazar Bahādur etc. Muhammed Husain fell to the ground. He was made a captive. His companions dispersed. He was brought to the Sultan. Some respectable men were killed in the engagement. A party of men was lost. They were Saif Khan Kukah. I Muḥammed Wafā Sharbatdar, Sultan 'Ali Kukah felt sorry for him and came

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 607.

<sup>‡</sup> Original Text, p. 608.

to his grave for a visit. He said, "I did not say to your mother w asked me about you." He ordered his dead body to be carried on an el The Afghan regiment and Ikhtiār-ul-Mulk had supported it. He ordeits preservation. The Sultān proceeded for opposition of the army. I up in severity. The unbeliever who had become a Muslim at the I Muḥammed Husain got terrified in that crowd of death or because ev crowded upon him. In short he was killed.

(In the history of Akbar's dynasty, in a preface of the year, it is that he fell in the hand of Kadā 'Ali Turk who killed him but his fall and vity were seen by Nazar Bahādur in a dream. He would not give him u killed the unbeliever. Khwāja Sultān saw that in a dream. He present self as a visitor to Mawlānā, blessing of Islām, my Shaikh 'Afifuddin 'A bin Sa'ad. He said, "If one of the Mughal amirs had killed him, he have been contented with retaliation for somewhat one thousand after cotion with one who knew him).

It was a hard-fought battle by the army in which Ikhtiār-ul-Mi killed. Muhammed Khan went towards him. It was a general massacr field including market-places. At the approach of night, the Sultan ente city and questioned about Muhammed Husain. It was said to him as t made him to bring the head of II htiar-ul-Mulk. His son 'Imad-ul-Mulk. safely. Those who were killed in the battle-field or on their going out were Rumi Khan, Ghatib Khan, Adham Khan, Mirjan Istamboli Ulugh Raihan Badruddin, 'Anbar, superintendent of stables Jahangir Khani, 'Ali Shāwas, 'Abdullāh Afsah Khān. These were those persons who enjo rank of an Amir in the army. Soldiers of the army died in a large r Shah Mırza had fled away before the battle had commenced. It was him in every war. He, Wali Khân, Sherwân Khân and 'Aqil Mirzā met t and they all proceeded to Nazarbar. After their encampment on the fr blood began to flow out of the belly of Sherwan Khan. He repented of sins that he had committed before. He was despaired of life. On the thi he died of it in the year. He was buried by the side of Qutb-ul-Awliya, e with blessings, Ghiyas-ud-dunyā wad-din Mir 'Alāuddin, the fortunate i Shaikh Sādāt, may God sanctify his grave and benefit me through him. visited him many a time. I had mourned his death. He was one of m honourable friends, nay, one whom 1 loved the most. May God forgive h deviate from him!

Remaining account of the life of the afore-said Sherwan Khan the deceased

I say: He was in the service of Bijlikhan. He was an Amir of th He moved in all his house. He received two hundred thousand Ma.

Original Text, p. (09.

annually for his personal expenses. He did not demand horses with that amount. He was in a position to purchase them. He was lavish in expenditure during the regime of Changiz Khan. He came to Baroda with Bijli Khan, He was his benefactor. He obtained from him according to his luck. He did not part from him during the course of his life except on rare occasions. It was said about him that he was addicted to wine. He used to remain in a drunken state to such an extent that he did not see the crescent once in a month in a sober state. He kept a gold chain suspended with a ring in the ceiling of the lavatory, when he sat for evacuation, he held it in his hand at the time of standing to come out of it to balance his posture in intoxication. He made holes in the walls of lavatory for putting perfume-holders on four sides to be free from the harmful effect of stink and stench. Verily, I had done that for him. He displayed his thanks for the bounties he had from God. He provided poor men of his community with money. Those who had old horses, were given young horses, bells, daggers, swords, gilded with gold and thin gaudy dresses. He supplied the needy with their needs. He founded a society of friends for his community-men. This society made him eternally glorious and famous. He was particularly favourable to my lord, 'Abdulla Sa'eed al-Hadhrami, al-Yamini, of perfect glory, unique of the age. He was a conversationalist and charmed hearers by his polished conversation. He was expert in the play of a bow-like musical instrument. It moved minds and souls with transport of joy and hilarity. He revived what was noblest in imparting education. He served as polish to cleanse minds and hearts of impurity. He occupied a high status in state and religion. He\* was an intimate associate of persons of elevated rank. He stirred up righteous feelings in the heart. He was pure from the point of religion. He received from him more than he desired. He always enjoyed his company inspite of the fact that he was an Arab. He was more proficient and skilful than a Persian in the play of the instrument of joy. Something unique happened in the early part of his life for which, he mourned, later in the year. He belonged to Iraq-i-'Ajam which suffered a loss on account of his absence. He was in the majlis of the afore-said Khan. Ustad 'Ali, who was perfect in the art of music, learnt it from him. He was at Mahmudābād. I met both of them in the general assembly consisting of good and bad persons. I state with certainty that those times were not in tune with "the satisfied soul." The age was an age of embezzlement. He was second to none in the art of music in the whole of Hind. Mir 'Abdul Latif was a perfect wit. His presence was a source of coolness of the eye to the Khan. He was appreciated and applauded. He ultimately became famous. He was then in the mailis of Sultan-ul-Hind. He was much commended there. May God make the Sultan his friend and cause benefit to his ears through him!

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 610.

Life-sketch of Ghālih Khan:-

Sandal Ghālib Khān, may God make him work with His kindness is found worthy by me with what has been said, "Alas! such a time does not come! He was a perfect, wise man. He was a horseman and an administrator. Jahangir Khan bought him in Yemen. He was there with Amir Salman. He prew up under his training. He displayed his worth. Salman adopted him and treated him with exceptional kindness. He taught him reading and writing. He, then recited the Book of God, the Holy and studied books on theology. tradition and commentary. He used to understand them. He perceived what was lawful and unlawful. He glanced over literary books with discernment. and made notes of important and uncommon things. He associated with the great, lived with them and received training from them. He tasted sweets and bitters of life. He wielded sword before his afore-said master and particularly in days of Rumi Khan at Surat. He was in service of Jhujhar Khan also. He would not allow any one to advance. He used to say, "I was present in nearly forty and more than thirty wars. I do not miss row by a mere glance at the array to know who would be the victor and who the vanquished. He enjoyed the rank of an amir in the kingdom of Ulugh Khan. He received one hundred\* thousand Mahmudis only for the sake of his name. But prowess was denied to him though he was in the cavalry, cavalcade and equipment worthy of his status in the army. He was hospitable. A party of Arab Syeds and theologians of Yemen were always in his house. His mailis was never without friends, companions, particularly, on nights in Ramzan. Its account is previously given in the life-sketch of the Ruler Ulugh Khan. When Muhammed Husain Mirzā returned to Broach during the regime of Qutbuddin Muhammed Khān. he was with Saif-ul-Mulk. He was then with Muhammed Ḥusain Mirzā to the end of his life. I met him one day before the war and inquired from him about Muhammed Husain. He replied that he and his men had no goodness in them nor loyalty with them. He had luck without courage and therefore, his patience got exhausted. God has said, "The body troubles him with rights of service and the soul destroys his lofty-mindedness." Life passed that way in wonder. Comfort killed mercy Sincerity of brothers and veracity of affection existed between us, more than which could not be imagined. Ten persons from Jahangir Khan's family were killed along with Rumi Khan, son of Rumi Khān. None of them was disloyal to Rumi Khān. Inspite of this, Jahāngir Khan wept for Ghalib Khan and he felt aggrieved only for him. May God forgive him and show mercy to him! Under the regime of Ulugh Khān, I excluded the hand (of help) of every one to me for obligation or sought the favour of any one for a need. But Ghālib Khān met me in winter of every year in my

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 611.

house and asked me as to what clothes I had against cold. It was not necessary for me from him at all. Acceptance did not come in the way of our friendship. He used to send one thousand Mahmudis for purchase of clothes with instruction to the messenger, in case of non-acceptance to place the amount at the door and return. It then became incumbent upon me to accept it. May God be surety for him and forgive his sins. He was well-known for his charity and always distributed it. May God give him reward for that!

### Life-sketch of Badri Raihān:-

Abul Khair Raihān Badruddin Jahāngir Khāni practised many charitable deeds. There were few persons like him. He was a cultured and civilized man. He got reared in service of his master. He was trained in affairs of the world and religion. He was proficient in writing, accounts and noted for wisdom and sagacity. He was first entrusted with looking after financial matters by his\* master and then he was appointed as Wazir. He loved the pious. He made it his special duty to remain in attendance upon the saint of holiness, the sun of suns, Shaikh bin 'Abdullāh al-'Idrus, may God sanctify his grave and benefit me through him. He enjoyed the 'Idrusi favour. He had good faith in him and he became famous for it. He composed poems in his eulogy and distributed in charity what he had, in his attendance. He was an example. He was a slave but the master did not rule him, suited to his condition. He loved Hadrami Syeds etc. and bestowed liberal benedictions on them. Similarly, he behaved well with the 'Arabs. When the event of 'Imad-ul-Mulk took place at Surat, he was the Wazir of Khudawand Khan. He then became the Wazir of Ulugh Khan. Blessing of life, pole of evidence, master of flashes of glory and beauty with emotions of sanctity, the greatest manifestation, Mawlana Shihabuddin Ahmed bin Shaikh-ul-Idrus, may God sanctify his grave and benefit me through him, was at Ahmedabad. He made efforts in his attendance and contented himself with his respect, perfected himself in tasawwuf, became his partyman, corrected himself from his attraction and renounced deeds of the world. He enjoyed high praise. It was sufficient for him and worthy of him. Every one would wish for the same good fortune. He expressed his emotions thus by saying, "My Shaikh, the afore-said Shihābuddin, Raihān Badruddin, I and he, are in paradise rejoicing." Relations and correspondence existed between him and nobles of his community as well as with residents of the ports. He did not wish for my separation during day and night. I saw his grace. Nothing happened to him in the kingdom. May God be bounteous with him for good rewards and goodness in the next world.

Early part of the Life of Majlis-us-Sami Ikhliar-ul-Mulk:

Ikhtiär-ul-Mulk was titled Majlis-us-Sami during the Saltanat of Ahmed

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 612.

Shāh. In the early part of his life, he held the post of the superinte Crockery (Tashtdār) under Sultān Maḥmud. The name with which addressed was Dawlatyār. He then became a Salāhdār (man in clarmour). He then surpassed the class of salāhdārs and became i (watchman). He made others present at the appointed time. He in charge of patrolling of the Dār-us-Salatanat and guarding it. Ever he discharged his duty well.

In the year 957 (1550), he was awarded the title of Ikhtiār-The Sultan equipped him with an army to march against Sirohi. H hither and thither on those sides and returned with tribute. The Sultar him to be an efficient man. He specially favoured him with the govern Kartankalı and was put in charge of ten thousand horses. He was des as an amir of absolute command to Naharwāla Pattan in its precincts. trolled the territory as far as Nagor, Sirohi and Idar. After the marty. the Sultan, the wazirs were engaged in mutual feuds. He who paic went out of submission. The soldiers dispersed to eke out their means : hood from them to those who had become dominant among them. Mu Fauladi, therefore, descended upon Pattan. It was in charge of his 'Ain-ul-Mulk in the preceding regime. One night, Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk wer Ahmedabad. The Sultan was in the territory of Kamid. It so happer Fateh Khān Baluch arrived from Rādhanpur and Hasan Khān Decc Modăsa. It was stated before. He then went out from the battlefield to He then presented himself in the Dar-us-Saltanat and was titled al-Majlis-In accordance with custom of people of the kingdom, the absolute De the Ruler) was titled as Masnad-us-'Sami, the Wazir as Majlis-ul-'Āli. was called for sitting in the presence of the Sultan was titled with Ma added to it an appropriate word. It so happened that 'Imad-ul-Mulk these days, was despaired of Itimad Khan for his safety. The po territory near Modasa was his. He built a fort; there and named it Ma'n It was a residence of rebels. He harassed them by his strength, rapr them and prospered it greatly. It remained in his hand till the end of Three thousand horsemen assembled under his standard. He killed 'Ala Lodi as previously stated. He was a sexualist. Everyday, he used on of gold leaves for potency. He had many mistresses. Through them one daughter and twenty sons. He made a condition with the wet-nu if a daughter was born, she should press her throat while taking her out would give three misqals of gold to her. Use of gold harmed him His body got broken. He was forbidden to wear an armour and to sit horse-back. He had to be lifted up to seat or to make his feet fir

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 613.

stirrup. On the day of his martyrdom, he wore a garment of delicate cotton due to injury to him. He had a shield in hand prepared out of common cane in place of silk. His dead body was perambulated and carried by labourers. It was advisable to carry it in all pomp and grandeur as Amir of the army. He was greedy to amass wealth and he extracted it from members of his family. Many of them censured him for it. He was not secure from I'timad Khan in the early part of his life. I had made an error in stating as to what he said in his respect in the account of his second retreat from Fauladi. (In the history of the year of Akbar, it was Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk. Muhammed Husain had stationed with firmness; the city army was at Asloria, on the shore of the river against the Deputy of the city, who was besieged in the city. He prevented 'Aziz Kukah, the Naib of Saltanat to go out to take part in the war with the Sultan. He descended the fort on the hand of Sohrāb. It was reported by Khilâl son of Tarah Yafai'. He was his subordinate. In his coming and going, he fell down by an arrow aimed from the royal army. The archer was not seen. After entry into the city, he came with his head. Perhaps....... He recognised who killed him. He cut his head and brought it to him ).

After 'Imad-ul-Mulk, he relied upon Changiz Khan and after him he depended upon Ulugh Khān, when he learnt about their might, fury, determination and power for what they wished and when they wished. When Ulugh Khan was at Mahmudabad, he became related to Malek-ush-Sharo by marriage. His son Zain Khān married the daughter of Nāsir-ul-Mulk, son of Ajdar Khān, son of Malek-ush-Sharq to help I'timad Khan and thus to be satisfied with his evil with him. When Sultan-ul-Hind arrived he and Malek-ush-Sharq went with I'timad Khan to him. He took his elephants from him, then cannons and then arms. When he got an opportunity he proceeded to his territory as stated above, A person like him would not die. He had earned his fame by way of claim and that too in an encounter with Sultan-ul-Hind, May God forgive him and show him mercy! As mentioned, Sultan-ul-Hind came out of his capital, Agra on a she-camel (bukhti camel). The peculiarity of this class of camel is patience upon travelling a distance, rapidity in walk and his long neck helps him therein as well as its short legs. It has many bairs on face and head. Hairs near the neck reach the knees. Crookedness therein is helpful in moving the neck. Similarly, the amirs and the favourites rode with him upon Bukhti camels. When an important event took place, he travelled in rapidity in this fashion. He measured the distance and the army marched on as desired. He fixed manzils for them and he got them ready to present themselves in a manzil where they had to assemble with him or in time to see them in assemblage or \* commencement of war and they did not lag behind from what they had promised.

Original Text, p. 615.

If he had sent a cavalry and an elephant corps, he and those who were with him in their company continued to send them forward. He came. He did not take into account the number of the enemy. The moment they were apprised of his canopy on the side of the battle-field, the enemy got perturbed and he became completely unsteady. It is said that he stood in the battle-field on the ninth day of his issuing forth (from Agra). It happened as God, the Holy wished

Yesterday, their frontiers were idle without them
As if they were not created in the world.
Oh people of pleasures! It is a house which has no permanence
It is folly to be puffed up with a vanishing shadow.

In the year 982 (1574), those who had escaped death in the battle-field assembled with 'Imad-ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiar-ul-Mulk and he increased their salary. He honoured the great and showed mercy to the small ones as well as to those who stood with firmness in face of the Mughals and particularly, in peril for recovery of the kingdom and earned exceptional fame against the swords of those who marched on them first to lose members of their family and then those who joined them. Its account is that Baz Bahadur son of Sharif Khan Atka and Mirza Muqim stopped in the centre in the last battles and in skirmishes to this day. The slave of his father, Jahan Khan Habashi was in command of the right wing while Hasan Jiv Sanaullah Lari was posted on the left wing. He had become famous with his father. He was his lord and sympathiser till he attained fame. Rāi Kanbhir Deccani was in charge of the vanguard. When both the armies faced each other, the vanguard made an assault. Amir of the left wing turned his reins from the battle-field and close to him was the similar action of the amir of the right wing. With their flight, the vanguard got perturbed. With it, Habash-ul-Mulk Sultāni, Bilāl Khān-i-Khānān, Sa'ad Sultāni alias Bahr Khān, Nāsir Sultāni and the Habashi party were upset in the centre. They attacked for victory, raised dust and it was a severe fight which led to their martyrdom except Nasir. This reminds of the scattering of the dust in respect of exploits narrated in connection with 'Antar and Assandiyar. Rai Kanbhir was advanced in age. He did what a youth would not do. He was the first to twist the reins in the battle-field. He was then followed by 'Imad-ul-Mulk. May God show mercy to his youth! After his father, he distributed his treasures in charity. He gave his friends equal to their weight not in number. Inspite of this, those whom he trusted proved \* perficious to him. His reward is with God. His youth was verified with disappointment. To God we belong and to Him we return. After him, the flag was planted by another man in the kingdom. His father had control over it, It belonged to 'Imad. His father was censured for amassment of gold; he was

Original Text, p. 616.

praised later on with spending it on the recovery of the kingdom. It was 'Imād-ul-Mulk who praised him most. He had reached the age of twenty. He left nothing after him. May the mercy of God be on him.

Fragrance of safety with purity from breezes of sincere intention:

In this year (982 = 1574), on the 17th Ziq'ad, I was pervaded with a favour and guaranteed guidance. I entered the safe city of Mecca, in an hour which I do not exclude it from hours of graciousness and blessing. I performed perambulations of the House (of God), genuflaxions at Maqām (of Prophet Abrāham, may salutation of God be on him) and Safā and did Sa'y (running seven times between the hills of Safā and Marwāh). It was a sa'y for efforts for favour and thanks. It was an act of laudable virtue. Visit to a Holy Place was good. Time spent was pleasant. It is a favour and obligation of God on those who perform perambulation, stop there and pay a visit. Now I hope for the Sāqi of Kausar, intercessor of the Day of Assemblage, honour of acceptance and beauty of completion, may benedictions of God, be on him, His salutation who made me beneficient with the cry of "I stand, I am ready for service, Oh Lord!" at Mash'ar-ul-Harām (a place of sacrifice of the hājjis at Mecca.

Poem by Ḥasan for Ibn-i-Abi Ḥasan, my Shaikh my blessing Kuļb-uz-Zaman Mawlānā Shaikh Muhammed Bakri:

What the Most Compassionate sent or sends

From mercy ascends or descends In realm of Allah or his kingdom Everything which belongs to or contains Except for pleasure of the chosen, His servant His Prophet, the chosen among the Messengers, By means of him, through His attachment Every wise man knows it. Take refuge with him for everything that you hope He is the intercessor always accepting. Apologize him for everything that you fear For he is the refuge and the fortress. Put loads of hope before him For verily, he is the resort and the asylum. He gave moisture to earth which grew Plants and made weak strong. Oh most generous of the people! before His Lord\* Oh good to those who beg. Hardship had touched me and how many times

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 617.

Hardship relieved, some distracting. Did von not see my helplessness and what Its severity became strong and I did not endure Which placed you in fire (ruin) You fell from rank high. He made haste in coming to him who complained And acquainted himself with the question My plans went wrong and my patience exhausted I did not know what to do. You are the door of God. Do I see anything else? None enters except you. God gave him benediction for what you forgave Path radiated on which we walked. He was safe with protective perfume he diffused. idol and crystal gazer got comforted by it. And children and companions what sang Rhymes which moistened tree.

A pilgrim to the Probhet, may peace and benediction of God be always on him.

I came to you as a pilgrim with love—Beautified blackness of my eye

I was not a person that I should turn—From grave of the Messenger. Some have composed verses on Holy Madina:

Oh blessed land! You give me good news of your Tuba Purest body sleeps therein

I see you like a thing bought with pride
Cheap in the garden of wealth.

It is narrated by Abi Fadl Nahwi who resolved upon pilgrimage and complained of its residents on loss of his belongings. He wrote these two lines in a letter.

Verily I turned my face towards him—He is who left behind among people He attached me with them—His favour is more extensive than mine.

Know that I have given a short account and I had done bad in explanation and statement, because I got entangled in a great event; I fell ill in the previous month. When I recovered, I was deprived of the garment of decency, and loyalty (he was out of service), nay, and my reference to sweet bounties. I came out after the fashion of a qalandar and went to those whom I knew to be among the creatures of God. I moved the world in its rotation but I did\*

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 618.

not come out of its limit. On the festival of Sacrifice (Id-un-Nahr) Divine Grace urged me to go to the masjid. It so happened for me that I met my Shaikh, my blessing, Imām (leader) of the Unitarians, Shaikh-ul-Islām, Mawlānā 'Afif-ud-din, ash-Shaikh 'Abdullāh bin Sa'ad, Confidence of religion 'Allama Mawlana ash-Shaikh, may God be merciful to him and the charmer of the rank of perfection Mawlana Shaikh Hamid, may mercy of God cover them all, on the way. They were proceeding to the masjid of 'Id ('Idgah), They moved with me to it. After prayer, they saw the chief Justice (Sadr) of Saltanat, compendium of laudable perfections, the chief Imam, Shaikh-ul-Islam, Mawlana Shaikh 'Abdun Nabi al-Hanafi an-Nu'mani, may his grave be sanctified. I was left behind on the bhail waiting for them. Sultan-ul-Hind continued the religious endowment of Sultan Mahmud for the two Holy Places out of the income of villages and doubled it. The journey of the Sultan to the capital happened to take place between two prayers. The traveller moved and the voices became calm. I sent that person who came to me with a report of my benefactor, the ruler (Saheb) Ulugh Khan to inform him about giving the charge of his tents. I remained behind with inconvenience waiting for the Shaikhs. In the meanwhile, I thought of returning to the house to bid adieu to my parents. Mawlana Shaikh Hamid emerged from the majlis of the Shaikh for summoning me to him. He tried for me in lieu of my former services to him and efficient management of deposits. He had appointed me an Amin for the management of Waqf on behalf of the Sadr with a duty to carry Waqf money to its destination. I had no knowledge of it. I entered with him. He said to me that he had appointed a party for the management of Waqf and that I was one of them and further that my duty was to carry the money to its destination, and distribute it among deserving persons and my monthly salary was two hundred Mahmudis. I kept silent for a long time. I extemporised:

If I had appealed to another person, oh appealer, that would have satisfied you,

For greed, then you would have prepared yourself for another.

I said that what God had ordained was good. Praise is for Him in stay and travel. I paused for the arrival of my master and benefactor. It was doubtful future. I loved the call in those respectable situations and took stock with this intention that there was happiness in this world and the next in this public service. I was going to the masjid as one who moved coming to me with fire. He was in the Holy valley. It was a journey from Aḥmedābād on 17th Ziq'ad, 981 (1573).\*

In 983 (1575), my blessing, my benefactor, cause of my guidance, my bounty, my lord, my father Sirājuddin 'Umar bin Kamāluddin Muham-

Original Text, p. 619.

med bin Fariduddin Muḥammed bin 'Umar bin Ishāq bin Muḥammed bin Hasan bin Qāsim an-Naharwāli, may mercy of God be on all of them, died at the close of five hours of 11th Jamādi I in the city of Aḥmedābād. He was entombed on the morning of Friday, in the neighbourhood of the saints of God, Shāh Madār, Shaikh Nāsir, Shaikh Muḥammed Ikhtiār, Shāh 'Abdul Ghani and Shaikh Kabir, may God sanctify their graves and pervade them with blessings. I had formerly visited the tomb of his daughter Fātima, the daughter of 'Umar died in a state of pregnancy. I did not forget the two in Zilhajj 976 (1568) and found the chronogram of her death "Fatima died." She was born in Mecca in 945 or 946 (1538-39). I was present at her burial, may God show mercy to her. Then my son Jamāluddin Muhammed joined my father (died). He was born on 27th Ramzān, 984 (1576) and died on the same date of 985 (1577). I found the date of his death from "Light of my eye, I lost him." I composed the following lines for him:

Light of my eyes, I lost him
With weeping, less mourned.

If with my soul and my comfort,
He was to be ransomed, I would have given my life for him.
But the order of God is irrevocable
The world gave him no water, I would have given him some.
My grief is unending
My sorrow is ceaseless
My torgetfulness is not wound up
During length of my life, I will not forget him.

God made him to harrow the ground to store him. No other child was born to me. I lost him. I hope him to have double rewards. After that I was left alone for a long time, solitary and cut off from hope. I abandoned everything and led a life of negligence. I lost him who was a source of contentment for salvation in life and death. May best benedictions and most perfect salutations be on him! Paradise is beneath the feet of mothers. She was my chief lady, my mother, Maryam. She died on 23rd Muharram 1005 (1596) of paralysis. I had no doubt that she was in affliction for expiation of sins. May God befriend her to dispel her fear, illumine her grave! After her death, I became a lonely chief and found life useless. I will now spend my breaths or live in a grave in recitation of the Qurān or saying prayers for her and for them. God accepts the prayers of one who deviates from them and their deeds and becomes worthy with those members of the family he leaves behind. He becomes similar with the poet who said

He who desires life, then he should wear an armour Of patience for loss of his dear ones, And he who lives, should be worthy in self Not to wish it for his enemies.

May God meet them with his kindness and obligation in the residence of His mercy with our Prophet who will intercede tomorrow for all His creatures with his followers. Oh God! Love the deceased of Aziz Muhammed known as Dabir in the East. He says about the chronogram:

When service of the patroness was the associate of soul
The heart shone in fire due to separation of a kind lady.
As her soul was a bird of paradise, from these troubles
Flew away and hastened at last to her native place.
1 sought the date of her death from wisdom
It said, oh 'Aziz, consider that "she obtained perfect salvation."

The birth of my father took place in the early part of the 10th century at Naharwala Pattan. His ancestors emigrated from Persia due to Tātār invasion to the frontiers of Multān of Sind, by sea and land during the regime of Sultān-ul-Hind, Shams-ud-Din Iltamash in 617 (1220) as stated by Ibn-ul-Athir.\*

(In 842 (1439), in Rabi 'II, Abu 'Abdullah Muhammed bin 'Abdullah bin Muhammed bin Ahmad bin Mujāhid bin Yusuf bin Muhammed bin Ahmad bin 'Ali al-Kaisi al-Hamwi originally belonged to Damascus, ash-Shafai 'Shamsuddin died. He was known as Ibn-i-Nasiruddin at Damascus. He was poisoned. He came out with a party of men for division of a village in the district of Damascus. Its residents divided it. He was buried near his father. He was born in Damascus in the first days of Muharram, 777 (1374-75). He received his education from the shaikhs of the city as well as those who came to it. He wrote the slates. He then went to Ba'labak and Halb (Aleppo) etc. He performed hajj and heard traditions of the Prophet at Makka and Madina, may God make them holy. He did not travel to the region of Egypt. He educated himself and mastered this science. He became famous for it in the city. imparted lectures and gave religious decrees. He propagated the science of tradition and benefited the people. His equals acquired it from him. He was in the maktab of his friend Samit. Tanukhi had permitted him to propagate it. He has written books on this subject such as "Bard-ul-Akbad" on loss of children. He said therein:

> Oh weeper! He mourns his death in life Is there any one from loss of children? If you were with liver, exercise patience For patience is better. In it is coolness of livers.

Original Text, p. 621,

There are many rejections of what were sound as released by 'Ali ibn-i-Tavammiva Shaikh-ul-Islam for an unbeliever. Imams borrowed from him: such as Häfiz Shihābuddin ibn-i-Hajar al-'Askalāni. He was the best of them. He knew al-Balkini, Kādi 'Aini, Basāti and Muhibb Naşr-ul-lāh. He created and innovated traditions very frequently. Great Bukhāri resisted him. His book is in reality its rejection. When he resided at Damascus, he questioned about discourses of ibn-i-Tayammiya who was unique in it. He replied when he showed mistakes and detested it and fortified his order before him and explained its innovation, and then expiation. He then expounded it in a mailis. Those who left it were learned imams of his age belonging to all schools of thought except the Hanbalites for his being called an unbeliever. Al-'Alā wrote a letter \* to the Sultan but he did not achieve by the praise of God his object in toto. He conducted the case of Shihab ibn-i-al-Muhammarah, Kadi of Syria with his creation which he abhorred and brought his above-mentioned book. Al-Taki son of Oādi Shahaba complied with him while al-Balaţanasi gave up acquisition of learning from him, nay, it is said that he continued his pupil till the end.

He is the author of "Jama'-ul-Āthār" on birthday of the Chosen (Prophet) may peace and benediction of God be on him and "Minhāj-ul-Uşul" on Mi'rāj (ascension) of the Messenger, may peace and benediction of God be on him. He has also written 'Arjuzah' casted "'Ukud-ur-Durar on the science of monuments etc.

I was benefited by his book in connection with loss of children with consolation and patience. I read "Januat-ul-Jaze" of 'Allama Mardini as stated by Hafiz-al- 'Asqalani in his history "Anba-ul-Ghumar" and similarly by "Barul-Akbād" of 'Allāma Hamwi as mentioned by al-Sakhāwi in his history "ad-Daw-ul-Lame'." Every one of them is full of animosity and arrogance. The unfortunate event took place in the year 835 (1432). It was an extremely languid affair. Háfiz ' Asqalani talked with exposition of the author at Damascus. He did not pay attention to biassed persons. Hāfiz Sakhāwi said in account of his life in history and I have copied it here. In short, the author of biography was an Imam, Hafiz of sound heart, good character, courteously responsive to people, humane nature, graceful information and conversation. You will not ike to leave his assembly. He had immense politeness and great enduring power. He did not treat any one with detestation. He had improved his writing in the manner of Zahabi but he used to say that his hand-writing was better so much that he bought his books in his hand-writing and provoked desire in the purchaser with the thought that it was Zaḥabi's hand-writing. He said that our shaikh had stated about it in his Mu'ajjam. He said that when the region was without traditionists, he was the traditionist in that region and he permitted us frequently

Original Text. p. 622.

for narration of tradition. Similarly, Hafiz Burhan Halbi based it upon him saying that the Shaikh, the Imam, the muhaddith al-Fādil al-Hāfiz took out forty different traditions and brought as doubtful ones of Zahabi. He collected them. An intelligent and humble scholar found them. He was a traditionist\* of Damascus and he had committed them to memory. Similar was the case with Ibn-i-Khatib an-Nāsiria. He said, "I found him a good man. He was a traditionist of Damascus and its hafiz, al-Tagi al-Magrizi similarly said, "The hafiz went to Syria in search of tradition without any contention. He left none like him in Syria. Such was the case with Muhibb son of Nasrullah. He said that he recited it in his hand-writing. There was none in Syria for knowledge of tradition after him like him or approaching him. One who acquired from him was al-Taqi son of Firas. His pupil was Al'ala' al-Mardawi. His account is given by al-Taqi son of Fahad in the foot-notes of "Tabaqat-ul-Huffaz." The later ones agreed upon his authority and integrity. Al-Bukāi' boldly deviated in accordance with his habit. He said about him that "he was our shaikh so far as committal to memory is concerned. He is, in the opinion of many persons, a mean fellow. I informed him that it was in regard to fraud, erasure and change in respect of money-making." End of the letter. God is the taker of account. I had quoted in "Mu'ajjam" some part of his poem. They are in regard to ten men of good fortune.

Ten persons of good health in Paradises, verily
The Prophet promised them conversation without disturbance.
'Atiq, 'Uthmān, 'Āmir, Talḥa, 'Umar
Al-Zubair, Sa'ad, Sa'eed, ibn-i 'Awf, 'Ali.

It was a single book of refutation on the doubtful ones of Zahabi. Its name was "A'läm". These doubtful traditions of Zahabi were the outcome of misconception. He composed a poem with the help of imagination on incidents of migration (of the Prophet)... the most difficult therein is the account of liberation of Ādam and Musā, may salutations of God be on them. He has six traditions on help, six from Tariq, six traditions from hāfizs, six from Masha'ikh imams, six between sources and six between narrators. It is from the history al-Daw-ul-Lāme' of Sakhāwi and in the Anbā-ul-Ghamar of 'Asqalāni in the account of Sarij Mardini died in the year 788 (1385), the author of Jannat-ul-Taze' on death of his son. He lifted up the plot by placing the hadis of wheat-meat preparation. He is the author of Tabaqāt of Shuyukh).

Mawlānā Qāsim and a party of his family members migrated to Gujarat at the time of Timur's invasion on Delhi during the regime of Maḥmud son of Firoz Khurāsāni. They came to Pattan its capital. Zafar Khān, the grandfather of its Sultāns was the ruler for whom I composed this history. May

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 623.

God give them good rewards. The afore-said Mawlana lived in its capital while\* members of his family dwelt in villages. They bore arms. One of his sons Ahmad bin Muhammed bin Hasan bin Qasim known in his time with the name of Makhdum Bada (great) was appointed in the state service for recitation of the Ouran. He thus opened the door of knowledge for him. He summoned him and he made efforts for acquisition of learning. The teacher was stingy to lend books. The aforesaid made a vow to him for God the Holv. When the learned men came to him, he lent books to them as a loan. When God made him successful in it and he became qualified for benefit, he wrote his books by looking into those of students in the school. He tried hard to write them. His brother Ishaq tried for acquisition of books to write them. Hence half of the books were written in the hand-writing of Ahmad and half in the hand of Ishaq. When they were free from writing and collected pages in a volume, they separated its parts by cutting the ends for stitching the book. It was binding together of all the parts of the book. They placed them for view of the students like a stand. The character of fore-father continued among their sons. They sought learning, under-stood it and wrote most of the current looks. The number of books was more than five hundred to the age of the martyred Mahmud. They were written with strict exactness and accuracy with margins. Letters were very similar. ' During the regime of Mahmud, my father married the daughter of my uncle with 'Abdul Qadir al-Banbanā al-'Abbāsi at Mecca. He was officer of the police and the city. Three sons were born to them-'Abdul Khāliq, Rāji Muḥammed and 'Abdul Malek. He died, may God show mercy to him! His sons became miserable due to his death. They sold out books and other things my uncle had in his possession and that which his grand-father Ishaq and his sons had left. My uncle apparently led a life of retirement from the world. My blessing, Mawlana Shaikh Farid was never away from the masjid till the last night prayer. He was unmarried. It was difficult for him to maintain my aunt and to look after her sons. For prevention of wasting the lives of children, they all came with the Holy Quran with margin written in the hand of my grand-father. I obtained it when I entered Hind with my father in the year 962 (1554). I went to my uncle and grand-mother. She had reached more than one hundred years in age. The Quran is now with me as well as "Kitab-ul-wafi" a book on grammar with marginal notes in it. The sun of suns Mawlana Jamaluddin Muhammed ibn-i 'Abdullah bin Shaikh bin 'Abdullah bin Shaikh bin 'Abdullah al-Qutb-ul-'Idrus, may God benefit us through them and may their blessings be on those at whom they cast a glance. The book "Maniyat-ul-Musalli" written in the hand-writing t of the aunt of my father with different margins was borrowed from me by

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 624.

Shaikh 'Abdul Fattah son of Maulana Shaikh which he did not return. The death of my above-said uncle took place in the year 974 (1566). My father inherited from his father and uncle and the house, the whole house of learning and deeds so much so that even women read and wrote as has been said and talked with the neighbour and the traveller. Issue of religious decrees, imparting of education and magistracy in the ancient capital never quitted this house to the end of the Muzaffari dynasty. Makhdum Ahmad alias Makhdum Bada was comtemporaneous with the friend of the Beloved Shaikh of knowledgeutterance, Outb of ecstasy Mawlana Shah Yaqub, may his grave be sanctified and I be benefited through him. His creed in music was the creed of theologians. He stopped it. Mawlana Shah spent his life-time in listening to music in the footsteps of sufis. He was always in it. He had attained to great fame among practical 'Ulama. The city-Qadi, the censor and their party were present at the time of play of music to forbid it. When they were ordered to raise their musical instruments, they were permitted to enter the majlis. They were immersed in music and intoxicated with it. When they approached the majlis before its commencement with what they came secretly, they were drowned in it and overcome by unconsciousness. They then tuned the cords, played upon the instruments; they became solicitous for that from which they wanted to run away and were so transported with joy that they did not move except for doing an excellent thing. The first, who moved with ecstasy and danced, was the censor, who felt aversion for it. He was followed by the Qadi etc. Time passed with them and it was the pleasantest of life. Mawlana Shah, may God give benefit through him went one day to the house of the afore-said Makhdum and honoured his place of giving lessons by sitting in privacy with him for an hour. The Makhdum informed him about it. He stood up with the informer. moved towards the door to come out from it to the room of privacy. He then opened it by his hand out of blessing to come out from it to go to it. He saluted him and talked for long. There was no third person to hear their secrets except One Who knows the secret and the hidden. Then the saint, may his grave be sanctified, said, "I visited you for bidding adieu. At such an hour of such a day, my soul will return to her Lord." Perform my funeral ceremony and place me before the Holy Lord. When the time comes, I will not fail in \* my duty. I have no power over it. Then say prayer for me and bid me farewell." The Makhdum said to him, I wish the same thing for me. There will be no life for me after you. I request you now to whisper secretly into my ears with your return from music." He replied, "I did." He then kissed his hand and said prayer for every one before God. The afore-said Mawlana returned. It happened as he had said. The death of Makhdum also took place.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 626.

During the regime of Sultan Muzaffer bin Mahmud bin Muhammed. Shamsuddin Muhammed Hamid-ul-Mulk arrived at Pattan. One day, he met my grand-father Kamāluddin. My father was on a side of the Majlis. He inquired about him. He then said, "I intend him and my son 'Abdul 'Aziz to be together during their life." It so happened. My father was with 'Abdul 'Aziz to the end of his life. During the regime of Bahadur, his wazir 'Abdul 'Aziz Asaf Khan was distinguished as a Vakil. At the time of Humayun's invasion. he went with him to Mecca. He was an absolute wazir for what was connected with him and the Saltanat. After the martyrdom of Sultan Bahadur Masnadul-'Ali Asaf Khān went to Rum (Turkey) with the Amir Qāim al-Khamrāwi. It was stated before in an account of his life. When he returned to Misr, the Ruler of Misr ruled over Hijaz and Yeman. He received intelligence from Khusraw Pasha, the Ruler of Egypt that he sent a sergeant to the Amin of Jiddah for inquiry about the harem of Bahadur to confiscate what they have and place a seal over it. He tried for annulment of that order. Asaf Khan had sent a letter to his Vakil with the sergeant to the effect that he follows him with the envoy of the Sharif for such an order is contrary to the order brought by the sergeant. I heard from him that when the news of inquiry got spread and the Amir came to Mecca. They got terrified. The Khan had recommended to show regard to the harem as persons of Hind under such circumstances. We are in power. The ruler of the Qibla is not equal to us in it. How is the Amin? It is a disgrace to dishonour the strangers. The hand of Khilafat does not lift itself against us. We are established in our day as will be tomorrow. God the Holy has made our affairs secure. Our independent ladies have preferred death to exposition to disgrace. They have taken a bath, worn garments and sacrified themselves for God as lies within their power. The Amir of Harem, Malek Firoz Tawashi Habashi sharpened weapons for them. He vacillates within\* himself between life and death. The attendants of Bahadur have spent the sleepless night with lightheartedness without being anxious for coming events in the morning. It so happened that night that the nobles of Mecca met together in the house of Abil Baqa as Sukkari and this assembly was convened by his son Khattan. His house was situated by the side of the house of the Khan. He invited us to it. But we apologised to be present ourselves in it for we were sitting with roominess. It was the habit not to reply the Egyptian envoys of Mecca except in the morning. The envoy had to pass through the road near the gate of the house of the Khan due to roominess. He said, I sat in the morning over the spacious place (verandah). I called out by the usual name every rider that passed by. He then passed. He did not reply till a reply was given to him in the affirmative in time of need. He asked me, "Are you so and

Original Text, p. 627.

so?" I said, "I am so and so." I blessed him at his departure. I gave him a waxed candle with leaves in it. He rode bidding departure and went away, prostrated in thanks, retired and looked into the letter of the Khan. It was written in it "Help from God and victory is nigh." It was an order in the Turkish language. I sent for the confidential man who was qualified to sit with the Khan. He was a Turk who helped me in trade. He had virtue in him, He was Mulla Mustafa al-Mantashawi. I showed him the order. He read it. It was cancellation for the order of the Amin. He was worthy of a secret. I acted with caution in time and kept him busy in the house and went to the Holy Harim and met Malek Firoz and informed him about the news received from the ruler of Mecca forbidding the Amin to execute the order. I requested him to send the good news to the Harem. He did it. I then sent for the sharābdār and ordered him to take out one hundred trays of Hindi marmalade. stored sweets and came to the verandah. Malek Ibrahim. Taher Khan and Oaisar Khān were there. The trays arrived. Forty out of them were sent to the majlis of Khattan and a similar number to Malek Firoz and Bahaduri chiefs of attendants who spent the night with him in vacillation of life and death. I sat with rest of the people. I sent two trays to the detained, that is, Mustafā Mantashawi. Those who were in the majlis of Khattan were surprised at a thing which was presented untimely. One of them said, "the food, alas, who wished to send and in such a large quantity. His intention seems to interfere with the administration of the Amin during day-time." In short, after the morning \* prayer, we were invited to the majlis of the Amin in the masjid near Bab-us-Safā (Gate of Safā). Eminent Turks, prominent officers of the ruler of Mecca and the nobles of the Haram Sharif had gathered together. The order of the Amin was read before the chiefs. The Amin turned towards me for he sought permission from me for action on the order. I got up and gave him the order. He then took it from me. He had felt disgust at me. He lifted it up to him. He looked at it, recognised it, stood with it and pondered over it. It was a cancellation of his order. He gave it to the Chief Qadi al-Afandi, He meditated over it and gave it to the Amin of the Bait-ul-Mal (Public Treasury). They were amazed at it for there was least agreement among them for contradiction of order in a single majlis. The party of the ruler of Mecca and its chiefs had no power of speech to contradict it. They all agreed for action upon the date of cancellation though earlier. The reader ascended the pulpit and read the other order, mentioned the date and descended from it. The meeting broke up. Every one said that it was a miracle of Asaf Khan. He is acquainted with the kingdom and knows about the arrival of order and its time. If it was delayed and if the sun had risen to the length of a spear then it had come, it would have

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 628.

been said that it came after the eyes were ruined as the public likened it to it It bore fruit then. Those who were free turned to God with inward and outward peace. For example, God said to His Kalim (Prophet Moses), "you have no importance Oh Moses!" Who was with God, God was with him. Those who were with him said that it was his miracle at Mecca after his return from Turkey. Its explanation is that Asaf Khan was on his feet in prayer at Mecca as narrated by Hāfiz Shaikh-ul-Islām Shihābuddin ibn-i-Hajar al-Hisami in his history "Rivaz-ur-Rizwan." When he saw crescent of Rajab, the month of God, he firmly resolved upon retirement for prayers to God as was his wont, He remained erect in prayer at the Bäseti gate. He ordered me for a curtain which stretched from it to the space which joined the gate of Duraibah. During the whole day, he was at the dome of 'Abbas, may God be pleased with him which was behind the Zamzam. The ruler of Mecca, then was the great amir Khush Kaldi. He was a man of noble virtues in the noble region. He walked with me. His followers walked with ceremony before him. He was a man of wealth, dread, power and justice. He had approximately more than five hundred mamaliks with him. All of them were in armour with daggers, gold \* swords and belts. Naubat (drum) was besten in the morning and afternoon in accordance with the custom of Turkey. Besides the mamaliks, he had an army with an essential flag of the Government. He did not tolerate tyranny at Mecca. He elevated a person and not detested him. He showed no pride. The ruler of Mecca was afraid of him. He had access to the Sultan and in particular, to the Chief Minister. In the beginning of Rajab, he intended to perform 'Umra (lesser pilgrimage). He returned to Mecca, entered the Haram Sharif and looked at the curtain which had covered a part of the masjid. He stopped there and inquired about; it. It was said to him that it was Asaf Khān's. He ordered it to be torn to pieces. It was done. Āsaf Khān learnt about it. He was at the dome. He came out from it to the place of perambulation, performed seven perambulations and returned to his house. The information reached the Saheb of Mecca. He was in the direction of Yemen. He found a way for a complaint to the Amir. He secretly ordered for a report of books, placed letters of chiefs who were of exceptional knowledge at Mecca. He submitted a petition to the Khundkar of Turkey. The Sultan-ul-Haramain ( Holy Places ) was Sulaiman Khan son of Salim Khan. Its subject-matter was to inform him about a complaint of suffering and regret due to an insult to an amir such as the Khān in a state of retirement (I'tikāf) and at the Haram Sharif. He had sought protection with the House of Allah and safety under the shelter of Saltanat. It was not proper to stir up barbarity and to need a talk for a rebuke to the amir. The Khundkar learnt about contents of the petition.

Original Text, p. 629.

He had seen the Khān. He found him great in his eyes. He was affected by the amir. He deserved respect and regard as being the most glorious mamālik of the Saltanat. He wrote to him about what he was rebuked. When the Amir learnt about the order, he was about to vent his anger at his clothes. He learnt about the procés verbal and letters of imams. The Chief Minister had heard about it. He liked to suppress his anger due to all those documents. He then realized that what he did was not proper. When he personally went to the gate of the Saltanat, it was like that. He reported what was true and returned to Khusraw Pāshā, the Ruler of Egypt. He intended him to do things in accordance with the principles of religion. He realized it. He went to the port of Qusair to embark on a boat for proceeding to the port of Hijāz, Jiddah. This report was publicised at Mecca. He looked to what was in the prayer to God, "Verily I frighten you and frighten him who does not fear you." Āsaf Khān wrote to the Ruler of Mecca beginning with

God is accustomed to the beautiful Then, track upon what the predecessors had said.

The matter ended with solace to him, according to the statement that the sea \* flings (everything) at the shore but it did not. There is spaciousness for us on land and for you, it is sufficient what they have narrated that the medicine is in accordance with a disease, and the last remedy is branding. The imams of the city, those persons connected with the Khān and his master, the Qādi Tājuddin Maleki were in a confused state after getting the report. They all assembled in the majlis of the Khān. Their minds were at ease at the promise of security and efficiency. They were with him wherever he was. The author said that the Khān, in the meanwhile, expected some disaster at his arrival. It was said to him that Khush Kaldi was frightened with calamity for breaking the order at the time of landing on shore, A log of wood fell on his leg and it got broken and he perished. The following line was composed extempore

When fate has knotted an affair for you It will not be solved except by fate.

It was an event of joy after its grief. The imams assembled in his majlis. They said, "We had specialised you for mutual congratulations. Verily we specialised you with congratulations what God had amassed for you out of His favour and kindness. May God bless you therein! When Asaf Khān started for Gujarāt alone, he left behind the author among members of his family as he was the Vakil and Guardian. After his death, Shams Khān son of Āsaf Khān left for Gujarāt. It happened in 961 (1553), near the port of Div. I had noticed the signs which were displayed due to his embarkment in the boat al-Maruzah on

Priginal Text. p. 630.

approach of last night (of the month). Khwaja 'Alauddin travelled wit Khan to a port of Guiarat in exchange for debt to him. Mu'allim Mahm sailor ordered the sail to be lifted up. Wind was strong. The clouds down in their days. The tandel, that is, the chief boatman, advised him sail as the sea was stormy and to keep the boat near the land. But he re adamant. He was a young man, inexperienced with sea. He raised the half the mainmast. Then in the early part of the night, the chief b (Khamis) came to him to balance his mind to lower it to loss than one of the mainmast but he refused. He then came to him with all severit the third day, he saw him sleeping with a small vessel ( month of the The seaman did not control it. He said to him, "Nothing is left to ignorance and you are asleep also. You depended upon a small one. you to command over it at Div." He sat up and said to him, "If you Mu'allim, I quit the small vessel. What does your meddlesomeness me make you my substitute. It is my responsibility." The Khamis (s Tandel) lost his temper and answered him in ugly language, returned fro to his sleeping-place and slept till morning. A servant was near the M He heard what passed between them of softness and harshness. At day affair was over. The boat entered into the creek of Jagat. Its account I say, there was nothing left of wonder in which we were involved at th of the vessel at the shore. Movement of the wood ( boat ) hither and th well as the danger of plunder by the ruler of the shore, Rāi Sanga and out from all these hardships hiding women were the difficulties with w were confronted. Escape from the sea was a wonder. Over-flow of wa choked my breath. I had abandoned food out of distraction (forgetfi My hand had clung to the feet of seamen and it felt drawn towards wa it not been the help of Khamis Tandal (seaman), (I would have been ed ). Till now I talked about wonder of the sea. The more wonderft it was that we were all in it, my father, my mother, Shams Khan my patron, my generous man (Asaf Khan), my brother Kamal Muhi step-son of the house Mubārak (Mubārak was brought up in the hou male and female servants had surrounded us, through the favour of Go had nothing with us, we did not know any one and we were in the unbelievers. We were not familiar with Jagat. An unbeliever had cor it from us. There was no house for us to take shelter. We were in h due to rain. We had to prepare our food on seashore to which we v. accustomed and last of all, we had come with clothes only on our bodic did not find a tailor to get clothes to wear. Praise is to God, the Lord and the Lord of the earth, the Lord of both the worlds. Thus, we cam

Original Text, p. 631.

Jagat and went to a Muslim city Kutiyana of Junagadh district and then we entered Ahmedābād. It was the favour and kindness (of God). It is only a substance. Detail will be found in my history "Fawateh-ul-Igbal" written in the name of Mailis-ul-Ali Muhammed Ulugh Khan which gives his life-account to which the reader should refer. It affects men of need. It does not claim anything for itself except its importance. It records the time he spent in the Holy Places with felicity of religion and world. It was greatly his internal security. It is also a record of his residence in Ahmedabad from 962 to 982 or\* 983 (1554 to 1574). He kept himself to his house along with the event of Jagat. He divested himself of what was in his hand from the spaciousness of the world as Masnad-ul-Āli Āsaf Khān. During the whole course of his life, he lived a chaste life as vakil without acquisition of anything from it. He paid visits to officers of the state after he had become independent of life with what he had with him. He did not know anything other than that. He chose retirement and engaged himself for deeds of the next world. His daily practice was to complete the recitation of the whole of the Quran. He directed the rewards thereof to one and all whether he knew them or not. It was made general. It was his affair with God the Holy with perfect honesty and sincerity. His condition bore an evidence for indication of it. I did not know what he did before in the days of doubt and power. God seized his hand with severity in his old age. He made him completely humble. He had ample means of sustenance. He lived with honour, with preservation from disgrace of needs from equals. His means of lovelihood were extensive. He was in a position to practise deeds of goodness and sympathy to last days of his life. Similarly was the kindness to my blessing, my mother. I did not know the apparent cause thereof. God the Holy had graced me with their service and sacrifice for their sick women. I was not aware that she was created for that. Everything was obtainable. Our Prophet, may benedictions and salutations of God be on him and to Him the praise for the grace had said. When God made us secure from being perished in the sea, we made amends by kindness for practice of charity on land. We moved on for help but we had no acquaintance with any one until we arrived at the city of ractitude, Ahmedabad. It was a plan of God for them in old age and decrepitude was such as to make a young man old. One day I presented myself in the majlis of my master, Majlis-ul-Ali Muhammed Ulugh Khan. It was the time of sun-set. He had near him a book, a tablet of pages and a pen-holder. His wazir Khairat Khan asked me, "Do you know writing? I thought you will write what is in the book for him." I replied in t the affirmative. He ordered one to send a letter to Changiz Khan in thanks for getting back Sa'eed, the patrol officer of the Diwan tohim. He had left him in

- こので、中国の関係を全の対象では、日本ののなからし

Original Text, p. 632.

anger. I took courage for that. I occupied myself with what I found important. I observed him going out in answer to the call of prayer of sunset in congregation in capacity of a soldier. I busied myself with the When I was free from it, there was a call to prayer. They both left Majlis-i-. to go to the aiwan (palace). I left the pen and followed them. I came of the palace intending to go to my house. When I was in the Record room was alone with me. He reminded me of my sunset prayer with him pe my time would pass. I commenced the prayer. When I was free from su the Khan return d to his majlis but he did not find me. He said, call Dabir. I was not known by that name. I was known by the name of Muhai The servants began search for me. They questioned each other among selves about ne. He who knew me came out in their wake. He was acqua with the house. He was talking with them about my call. Attention t from him and they saw me. They got back to me and said, "He is Hāji Da When he was free, they entered with him and did that. I entered and the letter. It was not a good thing. I departed and did not come back remained in my house for some days. Then, there came a call for me, I w My mother ordered me to accept it. I presented myself and he ordered write to Shah of Div port, nakhuda Ismáil, the Deputy, in thanks for the horses sent as present. I said to myself that wealthy persons see their lu what they do not wish. They do not order a thing, but the thing is the them as well as the letter. I hope their good luck is inspired and dis towards those who are descriving with them. That happened. He orders always to come. The wazir was near me. He said to me that the order c Khan, the ruler is for your service. Every month, you will be paid hundred Mahanidis. From to day, do not wait for the call. He then en with me and made me stand before the Saheb, dressed me with garments, me a betel-leaf and ordered a horse for me and five hundred Mahn I saluted him and returned to my house on horse-back. I went to my m and threw the bag ( of money ) before her and said that it was livelihood, gave that amount to market for you. I am benefited. I ceased to visit fe own my fault. I was tried for what is written in the letter\*

> It is not with my power and my strength It is my creed of humility and peace.

In the letter, Haji Dabir was written for me. It happened that I waknown except by it. Titles descended upon me from the skies as was mer ed and popular. The letter was in Arabic language. I did not speal Persian language well. For some time, the service did not pass on well witill I wrote in Persian language also. They made me an exception for it v

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 634.

view to reliance till I attained to a stage, with no fault in language, on better posts in the Diwan. It was due to the fact that I was relied upon in service of my lord for matters with most perfect sincerity. It was due to God the Holy that I was sincere in intention, and to the Prophet's influence may benedictions and blessings of God be on him. It was also due to the Saheb's admonitions, best action for the state and in particular, for his kindness and in general, for the benefit. They were for me due to an army of prayers. They were called with submission to the will of God and with fear for executing the command of God the Holy and perfecting good manners being benefited by the traditions of the Prophet may benedictions and blessings of God be on him and they are many. My Shaikh, my blessing, 'Afifuddin 'Abdullah bin Sa'ad al-Mekki (deceased) told me at times, "Do what is essential for you, a slip will be forgiven for your service to your father. Kamāluddin ad-Damiri has stated in "Hayat-ul-Haiwan" and two lines have come from Karki for Abil Fatah Kashajam in address to his father about the nature of Karki when he grew up, his father wrote about them.

I find in me the sincerity of Karki (a crane)

I find in you sincerity of a bat

I, you do not abhor me to be in adversity

I abhor, you hope to pass over the bridge.

Abulfath praised this quality in a crane. The meaning of his statement is that sincerity of a bat, his son abhors. He does not give it up with its wastage, nay, endures it with him and went. What I knew with certainty with him that I moulded my character in their service. What I had of ample means of sustenance and good time and in particular with the Saheb, were due to their prayers. Before the invasion of Akbar, I was seventeen years more or less older than the şāḥeb. After the event, I was under the impression that local people were not in a position to conduct the government but some how or other, they retained power in their hands as far as they could. They exhibited more courage than was expected of them. I was in travel with the Saheb with a garb worthy of time. It was divine beneficience which made him kindly disposed towards me. He gave me the honour to accompany his haram. I accepted this offer with good advantages and beneficient hands. I said effective prayers and eulogized God, the Holy and expressed my gratitude to Him for that. I had referred to it before. After the death of my father, they stopped sending money to Makka With its stoppage, the services of the 'Amil, Amin, Katib (clerk) and Hamil\* (carrier) of the charity money to its destination, terminated. I had to perform functions of the Hamil. I then obtained a favour-a good reward-in shape of receipt of a summons from Sayf-ul-Muluk. He was in Nāsik Trimak (Trimbak)

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 635.

in the territory of Nizām Shāh Deccani. I put faith in the blessings of my mether. The good continued till rest of my life though difficulties came one after the other. He was in opulence with a large family and attendants. God, the Holy made me pure in life. I did not expect realisation of desire. I now wait for death.

I perceived promissing signs on reading its introduction. I hope it to be of advantage.

Know that the death, whenever it happens, is hard as indicative of separation of life. Thinking of it itself is most severe. Events which one desires in it, even in the last part of it, are hard for fulfilment. Life is reckoned nothing by the submissive and the sinner. The submissive who dies as a martyr in the path of God, desires to be in the abode of rewards. There is justice for him to return to the world for striving in the path of God. He dies a martyr. It adds to his felicity with martyrdom. The sinner, on the other, remains as he was in life, and was born. It would be his entry into abode of action, thus with death it would be going for him to abode of reward. Hence what would happen would be more severe than death and that he does not desire. The tounder of religion, may peace and benediction of God be on him, abhorred it. It would be said of it that it was same as it came. "Oh God! let me live such a life which you know to be good for me and give me such a death with deeds which are good for me." (In a margin). Abil Oasm Sulaiman bin Muhammed al-Tuburāni has said in his "Al-Mu'ajjam-ul-Awsat" that Muhammed bin Rāshid narrated to us a tradition; Ibrāhim bin Sa'eed al-Jawhari narrated to us a tradition, Hasan bin Muhammed narrated to us a tradition, 'Abd-ul-'Aziz bin Abi Salma from Qidama bin Musa from Abi Saleh from Abi Huraira narrated to us a tradition saying that "The Messenger of God, may peace and benediction of God be on him was saying this prayer 'Oh God! make my faith good for me which will make my affair pure and make my world good for me which will make my life good; and make my Hereaster good to which is my return and make my life long for every good and make my death a comfort for me free from every evil." Tabarāni said, "Did you not see this tradition from Qidama bin Musa? Only 'Abd-ul-'Aziz bin Abi Salma singled it out with Abu Qatn. )

He who questioned the Prophet Joseph, may peace be on him, was in \* Egypt during the saltanat of al-Rayyān son of al-Walid. He was in the creed of Joseph. When he died, the ruler of the saltanat after him was Qābus bin Maş'ab. He was an Armenian, an unbeliever, a vicious man. He did behave with good manners towards Joseph, may peace be on him. He retained what

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 636.

was during the reign of al-Rayyan. Joseph invited him to the religion of Ibrāhim, may peace be on him very often. When he was disappointed of his acceptance, he got weary of life and hoped for death with prayer from God, the Almighty. He said in prayer, "Oh my Lord! Thou hast indeed best owed on me some power and taught me something of the interpretation of dreams and events,—Oh Thou Creator of the heavens and the earth! Thou art my Protector in this world and in the Hereafter. Take Thou my soul (at death) as one submitting to Thy Will (as a Muslim) and unite me with the righteous." God accepted his prayer. God was pleased with him when he said in prayer, "Take Thou my soul (at death) as a Muslim and unite me with the righteous. I am alone. I am to meet the Holy. I am lonely. I do not hope for intimacy except from him. I am to be united with him. My constant prayer is "Oh God! Take Thou my soul at death as a Muslim and unite me with the righteous. He who prayed thus, He is the Hearer, the Acceptor. Historians have narrated that when Joseph, peace be on him, saw signs of acceptance of his prayer, he gave advice to his brother Yahuda and informed him as to what was from Phuraoh and from Moses may peace be on him. When Yahuda was free from his funeral ceremonies, he buried him on a side from the Nile. On one side of his grave, there was abundant fertility while the other side of it was infested with pestilence and always remained barren. People of Egypt assembled and decided upon transfer of his coffin to it. It became fertile and the other side barren. This state continued for a long time. They placed marble in the coffin and tightly closed its mouth to prevent water entering into it and deposited it in the middle of the Nile to make both sides fertile. It so happened. Moses, may peace be on him was ordered in his age to go out of Egypt. All the Bani Israil wherever they were objected to go out. Moses, may peace be on him was surprised on their move. He questioned them about it till he learnt that Joseph, may peace be on him, had admonished Bani Isrāil to the effect that they should quit Egypt carrying with them his coffin to the mausoleum of his forefathers. His place of burial was not known to him. He asked them about it. He was informed that it was not known to old persons who lived in distant past. His likeness and companionship in paradise were enjoined upon him. He then learnt it. It was so. \*

He who is familiar with this book will know that his parents or one of them are engaged in performance of compulsory duties or the duties enjoined by the Prophet (sunnat). They try in practice of good deeds according to their capacity. There is no good deed in reality, except for one's self. Were it not for fear of this book becoming long, I was disposed to write in detail about good deeds. That would be tedious for the reader. In short, may god the Holyguide you to the conduct as revealed in His Book: "Whether one or both o

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 637.

them attain old age in thy life, say not to them a word of contempt, nor repel them, but address them in terms of honour. And, out of kindness lower to them the wing of humility and say: My Lord! bestow on them Thy Mercy even as they cherished me in childhood". I act upon the commandment of our Lord, the Holy. I say,

"My Lord! bestow on them thy Mercy even as they cherished me in childhood." My Lord! bestow on them thy Mercy even as they cherished me in childhood." My Lord! bestow on them thy Mercy even as they cherished me in childhood."

I heard from the uniquely felicitous Mawlana Humam-ud-Din our Shaikh Hamid bin 'Abdullah saying," I was in Makka in presence of its Qutb (pole), mirror of divine glories Mawlana Shaikh Abi al-Sa'ud bin Hibt-ul-lah famous as 'al-Majzuli' attracted to God) may his grave be sanctified. He said to him, 'welcome to pillar of Makka.' He used to say I' I do not doubt.' When he died there that is, 11oly Makka; he spoke with regard to him as Pillar of Makka. In reality, the news arrived about removal of dead body from a grave to the grave dug for him his speech came to an end. He repeated what he obtained from him from Hanin to Makka and talked about his blessed deeds till period of his life. Those who obtained blessings at Holy Makka were Mawlana al Majzub afore mentioned, Mawlana, al-'Ārīf, al-Syed 'Abdullah Bāfaki al-Hadrami, Mawlana Shaikh-ul-Wajih 'Abdur Rahman al-'Amudi, Hafiz-ul-Millat Mawlana Shaikh Abul Hasan al-Bakari, Mawlana Shaikh Jamal-ud-Din Muhammed al-Bakri, Mawlana Shaikh Muhammed al-Khattab al-Maghrebi, Mawlana Shaikh Shihab-ud-Din Ahmad bin Ilajar al-Haithami, Mawlana Shaikh Nur-ud-Din 'Ali al-Muttagi etc. Others were there whom I did not know. May mercy of God be on them all.

In the year 584 (1576-77), a very learned man of comprehension, worthy of imāmat, the pious devotee with most perfect piety; the ephemeral had become everlasting with God, Honoured and Glorified; the pure şufi, sufficiently eligious, my shaikh as well as of Islām, blessing of the time, Mawlānā Shaikh, aged, most illumined, expounder of secrets of heart, 'Afif-ud-Din 'Abdullāh son of the uniquely most guided Salad as-Sindi, al-Madani, al-Makki, may God benefit me through him, died at Holy Makka at the close of Zilhajj. He was buried at Málāt beneath Hajnn in the grave prepared by the felicitous martyr 'Abd-ul-'Aziz Āsaf Khān. He performed hajj in a state of indisposition. He died after being free from the rites of pilgrimage. He continued in his Iḥrām (pilgrim's dress) with indifference towards world. He did not trouble any one. Stitched (sewn) clothes were removed from him. He was an accomplished scholar with control over his desires. He treaded to God walking in benefit. He walked on the footsteps of ancients in prayers. I was specialized with his

Original Text, p. 678.

favour getting benefits from him. He was in Sind when the Mughals invaded it. He had dispelled fright and sowed seeds of dissension among people. The author, Mawlana, pure and pious Shaikh-ul-Islam, my shaikh Nuruddin 'Ali famous as Muttagi, Mawlana, the accomplished scholar, perfect in abstemiousness and forbearance 'Afif-ud-Din, al-Qadi 'Abdullah, may God benefit me through all of them and may mercy cover them came out from the land of residence, with all members of their families and servants to Naharwāla Pattan. The author wrote to him about restoration to health and narrated from him. He wailed for his health. His recovery now was in the hand of his heir, Shihabuddin Ahmad. It is stated from it in the margins of the God-fearing Hāfiz Burhān-ud-Did Ḥalbi, in the 'Zubdah' of Ḥāfiz Jamāl-ud-Din Muḥammed al-Antāki 'Gharibin' of Hāfiz Abi 'Ubaid Ahmad al-Harawi, 'Nihāya' of Majad-ud-Din famous as Ibn-i-Athir, 'Muzail-ul-Khifa' of Hafiz Taqiuddin Ahmad al-Shumunni etc. This is verified from the above books. He did not mourn it. He was in my hand and between my eye. God willing, he would be with me for my enjoyment with him for I live for him; I am for him the first and the last. At the time of Mughal invasion, they assembled at Div in the year (nine?) forty. It was then under the Muslims. They emboldened them for voyage to performance of rites of Talbih (shouting 'I am ready') and sacrifice (performance of haji at Makka), and Sultan Bahadur had to help them without doubt as it was not possible that year. It was about to embark the sea. They divided into two parties after the occurrence of an event at sea in the land of Yaman. Its account is long. They moved on to the Holy Places. Aşaf Khan met them. He was a good helper in time. The pious ones journey-\* ed to the accepted residence, the city of the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him, and its residents. His death took place there within two years, of Oadi 'Abdullah, may God forgive him and show mercy to him. The author remained and started for residence in Makka, that of blessed good deeds. Its ruler looked after me, persons of his region and his relatives. He was for Aşaf Khan especially with all sincerity and the mother. He specially favoured Asaf Khan and in general to those who were from his family. The citizens did the same to end of time. He then entered Hind for obligation of his companions. Akbar Sultan showed sympathy towards him for his difficulties and displayed regard for him. It so happened that he had to stay in Gujarat with members of his family and for conquests. He was granted allowance for the period till he migrated to the Qibla. He was immune from what he owned and lest his family in Gujarat. I heard from him. Interval for intending departure pathetically felt the want of dispersed union and scattered gathering. He said to those who relied upon him and whom our shaikh son of the Qadi had nurtur-

Original Text, p. 639.

ed that they asked me for prayer for their needs but did not feel the evil of obligation. I am old in age and I am to quit the Hely Places. If I went out for righteousness of your obligation, I would not bear it. There would never be separation between us. I came out with you. Our Lord decreed that and you to join your brother Hamid; when we would be together; it would mean tranquillity of minds. Now he was symbol of the world to have come as basis of the affair for this required interval for decreed departure with dis-appointment for unity. The day may come when God may unite them with his first creation and the last. There was despair from your external appearance. You should not forget it in your prayer.

In this year, our Shaikh Jamaluddin Muhammed son of ' Abdur Rahim son of Mulammed son of 'Uthman son of Muhammed al-'Amudi, who was qualified with holiness, familiar with praise of God, chosen one among the righteous, cream.......God gave him the world and the faith, of noble qualities, died on Saturday night, 12th Rajab, in Ahmedābād, may God show mercy to him. He was entombed in the 'Arab grave-yard in the vicinity of Dar-us-Saltanat. He was a man of sound heart and noble disposition, an assemblage for the Arabs, master (patron) of literary men, full of value with worth of his fore-fathers,\* ambitious for acquisition of perfection. Many friends and acquaintances were benefited through him during Akbar's invasion. Al-Majlis-ul-'Ali Mahammed Ulugh Khan gave him sufficient means of livelihood. During Akbar's invasion God inspired him to send a childless man named 'Uthman to him. He was returning to his notive place. 'He stopped for effort in search of livelihood, nay, he determined upon separation of the place of residence. He fulfilled the duty as signed to him in that condition. God chose him for His nearness. He died. He was in the prime of youth. People lost him. His name remained after him. May God forgive him!

Felicitous in personality, laudable in qualities, a compendium of the principles of progress, containment of the branches of fear of God, an assemblage of favours embellished with virtues, the threshold of the station of guidance, of good features, Shaikh Sa'eed Habshi alias Sultāni died at the capital of Ahmedābād on Monday, 3rd Shawwāl, 984 (1575-76). He was entombed in a masjid near the Dār-us-Saltanat (palace) on a public road. It was an old monument built with brick. It was near his residence. It was constructed with stone and made strong. Its roof was raised and a ceiling dome was made. It was made elaborate with stone according to the principles of hewn stone. Every stone was of one or two arms in length with an elevated verandah in the vicinity of the masjid built on windows of lofty painted hewn stones. It thus increased the space. A nearby piece of land was purchased for appurtenances. A plat-

Original Text, p. 640.

form was constructed adjoining the enclosure of the masjid. To its right, his stone-tomb is situated. When he was free from construction of dome of the masjid, a path and a platform, he felt approach of death. It was prior to the platform, nay, it was constructed only after the pure of secrets and manifest was laid in the tomb. Blessing of existence, the attracted (to God) saint Mawlana Shaikh Aban, may his grave be sanctified, buried him as a trustee. His tomb also is near him. Porridge of crushed wheat was cooked for him on the left side of the masjid known there as Langar (a public kitchen)-public kitchen; for every day twenty maund were cooked. It was meant for masters of the bowl from among the faqirs. One-fourth of twenty maunds was cooked in the house near the langar-house for those who were modest. His table-cloth was laid out long for all those needy persons who assembled to be present. The rest was meant to be distributed among the inmates of houses. A table-cloth was laid at noon for the nobles of the Hadhramut, learned men of the city,\* brethren of purity, notables and their attendants. This was ten maunds in quantity. Many recluses who had renounced the world used to come there. The rich and the poor numbering nearby one thousand arrived at the cupolas in the winter. This charity continued till the Akbari invasion. He was at first with Rumi Khan. He was then with Sultan Mahmud. Hence he was designated Sultāni. After the Sultān, he was in service of the Amir Ihuihār Khān. He struck the sword with him. He was a brave man. He was present with him at the afore-said famous incidents of Muhammed Ulugh Kham. It was he who kept pace with Näsir Daryā Khān, a chamberlain (usher) to Changiz Khān in the last war. He then quitted the service of the sword. Jhujhar Khan and his brother set apart for the duty of a reciter of the Holy Quran on fifty lacs of tankas. A village was assigned to him as allowance and for charity from his side. It was due to this that he was comfortable with a house, maintenance. mamālik, good deeds, acts of help and sympathy, and perfect regularity in religion and world. Deserving men of these deeds gathered together in his majlis. Men of excellence sat there from whom he acquired different branches of knowledge. A very learned man of comprehension, most unique in guidance. Mawlana, Shaikh Traditionist, Hamid son of the most unique, forgiven, pure Qadi 'Abdullah Sindi of Madina and butied there, wrote Jame 'Hamidi, completed it and named it Jame 'as-Sa'eedi (after him) in dividing Hamidi in chapters. He tried for acquisition of books for him. He then set his heart for building a boat and got it ready for sail to Egypt and authorised the boatman to purchase books. Pride of merchants, Khwaja Salāmat Maghrebi alias Shātir wrote a biography in his name. On return from Egypt, the boat at the port of Ghogha near Khanbhāyat changed the vessel whereon were the books. He lost

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 641.

something and took out something. In this way, he made the division. He did not think of destiny. He had no power over it. His interior and exterior were good. His interior, as previously stated, was in relation to religion. exterior was disposed towards extension of houses, abundance of appurtenances and lofty buildings. He had Habshi slaves of his own more than twenty, near and distant servants nearly one hundred, nearly thirty horses in his stable and\* more than ten camels. He had fifty wheels called gardun (rotating objects) for the bhail to carry baggage. The village prospered during his time and its revenue was doubled. Externally, it was his property but internally, it was property for charitable purposes. It was out of good luck that he performed hajj in his boat with a party of his friends, paid a visit to the Holy Medina and worked for the next world in the Holy Cities. What will happen to him tomorrow is coolness of the eye. He was graced with prayer. He educated his community-men, in particular and they saw that Jhujhar Khan treaded on the path of his training. During last days of his life, those who stirred up dissessions among them, spoke ill of him through falsehood. That village was taken back from him which perished him with death. The cause of it was and there was no other than that was the offer of vikālat by Ulugh Khān during his days at Mahmudabad. He was originally the vakil of Jhujhar Khan at Bhamnol also. In the meanwhile, their relations got spoiled due to slander which resulted in their return to Ahmedābād. For that reason, Ulugh Khān gave him in return a better village and promised him more on better management. Its account is long and so I have given it up. He who slandered for what efforts the Saheb made for me and the friend to me, suffered difficulties in the beginning which are not to be disguised. Humanity was in him. All of them perished. There was nothing left for them except mercy and prayers for them. It is his good luck also that he was appointed as officer in charge of religious endowments out of the income to be sent to the Holy Places from the government of Akbar. He then died after some time. It was the trusteeship of service of the Holy Places which was his last worldly deed. His favour was immense with me. I wrote the following lines as a chronogram for his masjid:

I made the paradise of 'Aden near him
And tomorrow the reward will be increased.
For Sa'eed the veracity of Allah
For the good he practised.
He built a masjid for the sake of God
For if he is promised.
Therein is remembrance and prayer
And humility and vigilance (in prayer) at night

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 642.

Mercy (of God) descends covering Every middle-aged man and child. Pardon of Allah for a slave Prepares him for a threat Hāfiz of time and saver of prayer He is the guide and the instructor \* Life prospers with thanks You obtain what you wish, Hasten to prayer It makes you praiseworthy. Grace has begun from Him Who creates and recreates. If all people made efforts They erected buildings of goodness Every good act then is felicitous He possessed and God is witness, I cleared complete knowledge He who repairs it, becomes sound. He who questions about it Came a couplet for him, beneficial. 'Umar, the united one with God Sa'eed was the builder.

I said a chronogram for the wedding of his daughter: Khairum "Zutāfun". It took place in the year 978 (1570).

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 643.

## CHAPTER XXIV

## Daftar two-History of the Ghuris

I seek help in the name of God, the most compassionate, the most Mercif Praise be to God who bestowed an obligation on whom He wishes from amor His servants with what He wished when He wished for fulfilment of his desir He raised....those who wished consciousness of saintliness in religion ar rulership of cities in the world. He specialized Hind with the descent of Ada the Pure (bosom friend), may peace be on him from God. He came on : mountain in the island of Sarandip ( Ceylon ), mines of bright stones, residence of fragrance and places of pleasure. There is an impression of feet of the Pu: one of God seen by servants. Zakariyā Kazwini has narrated in his boc "al-Muntakhib min Mu'ajjam-ul-Buldan written" by Yaqut al-Hamawi an named it "Athar-ul-Bilad" that there is one foot impressed on stone (li plunged in stone). From that day till now it exists and the place is washed At night, it shines like a lightening without a cloud. It is the workmanship God who created everything in perfection. There is a lesson for those who a possessed of wisdom. Benediction and peace be on the Arab Prophet wh braved to God and received the Black and the Red. He helped him with aw made him strong and honourable and gave to his successors in creed ar successors in nation, Banu al-Asfar (yellow people). God took a covenant ( oath from them and so help was granted to them as informed in Suhuf lbrahim and Moses. There would come the Promised Mahdi and the word God and His spirit Jesus for honour of the creed as stated therein. Again it mentioned in Suhuf that there would come in future, Intercessor of men ar genii, prophet of the Holy Places, Remover of grief, preserver of the natio polisher of blackness, source of bounty, our lord, our authority, our intercesse our friend Muhammed, Messenger of Allah, owner of the Praiseworthy plac may peace and benediction of God be on him, his descendants and h companions.

After that, 'Abdullah Muḥammed son of 'Umar famous as Inājji-ud-Dab. al-Āṣafi, al-Makki Ulugh Khāni, may God show grace to them says that I wro what I thought necessary from histories, to explain about the Sultans of Gujarât as to how they established independent power and how they met wit fortune and misfortune. The first daftar is brought to completion with succes I turned reins of my description to composition of the second daftar. I single out Gujarât, with additions, looking to its Zafar who first established independent

Original Text, p. 645.

dent authority and his descendants in opinion of the people. It was not Hind\* with its extensive frontiers suspecting its qualifications for appreciation of its qualities. The book was written in a city which is made safe and secure by God, Makka, a door. There is no wonder that it is situated between sea-shore and Jiddah, its landing-place. It was conquered by Sikandar and made it famous as Bab (a door, a gate). He was protector of its honour. If you observe, for: You will find three vanishing things for sorrow; water, verdure and beautiful face. They are found in sufficient completion. It was under jurisdiction of Delhi and its capital was Naharwāla Pattan. Zafar Khān and his descendants established independent authority. Afterwards, it continued for a period. They expanded its frontiers, raised tributaries in the east, prospered regions and subjects lived in plenty. They followed the religion for which they had lofty praise. During the regime of the pious Khalifas, the companions, may God be pleased with all of them had victories towards Hind such as Sind, Kābul and Makrān. All these places belonged to Persia under Zal bin Nariman and afterwards under his son, the famous Rustam. There was a passage to him being adjacent to Basra, cities of Najd to Sind by land as stated in histories of Persia. Hence Amir-ul-Mumnin 'Umar, may God be pleased with them, ordered to populate Başra, to block up passage of Persia to Hind in expectation of asylum and assistance. During the regime of the Umayya and the 'Abbasiya, jihād continued constantly. Conquests in the neighbourhood were from top to toe. Mahmud had established absolute sovereign power in Ghazni. Before him, his father Subuktagin ruled over it. He opened conquests in the neighbouring regiou. He fought religious wars. Traces are found in the neighbourhood. The last ruler was Khusraw Malek at Lahore. It was last in course of time, Mu'azuddin Muhammed Sam became an absolute ruler at Ghazni. He was prop of Islām. One ruler followed another. His efforts brought successes. It became a centre for religion. Details will follow this short account. Praise be to God, Lord of both the worlds. This is an account from the conquest of Delhi region which is a base of directions of the kingdom of Hind sufficient enough for the ruler. It has passed through fortune and misfortune (rise and fall) till this time. I wrote in abundance. I had sufficiently written about the life of the deceased-biography of one who died during his days. He lived in Egypt, 'Irāk, Syria, Hijāz and Yaman. I havet given a concise account of events with pleasant anecdotes. I do not allow myself in everything concise out of importunity for obstacles such as this is little, it should be more and I do not exhibit myself like one acquainted with information. I resort to God for help and to Him is the place of return. Effort is from me and completion is upon Him. And now, I, with an oath of the

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 646.

rank of the Messenger, peace and benedictions of God on him, hope for acceptance. Muḥiyuddin son of 'Abd-uz-Zāhur says:

Verily the world is a night Then day is its place of disgrace. Do good, you will get Verily, profit in business.

Ali Muzaffar Muḥammed bin As'ad bin Muḥammed bin Naşr, al Ḥanafi al-Wai'az composed the following lines:

I became weary of the world and I was certain that I
Will leave it in disgust. I then left its emptiness.

My self exercised patience from its desires and always
I left them for its wishes are sinful.

Light of truth began to radiate
It showed its fraud to the heart.

Humiliation of the world is greatest. He who got interested in it
Wish it in every state and is pleased thereby.

Or He who sought honour with God, honoured his self
Became free from world and its contents.

If I were dead and then became alive—Shortly I will die
Honour permanence in abode of annihilation—Build a house
in abode of permanence.

Efface steps in glistening house He drinks tears who always suffer. Our time did not rotate which was With pleasure of wakefulness or dream.

Early account of Sultan Mu'izuddin Muhammed Sam al-Ghuri as an Amir. His relation to Dohak famous as at-Tazi. A section of their chosen lives.

Abu 'Umru 'Uthmān bin Muḥammed al-Minhāj al-Juzjāni narrated in his 'Tabaqāt' which he compiled in the name of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmud bin' Iltamish, mercy of God be on them, that a son of Dohāk at-Tāzi, king of Hind and Sind, Bistām fled to Ghor during the regime of Afridun. He settled at a place called "Hazār Chashma" that is, a thousand fountains for luxuriance of grass or for its being so. Sons of Dohāk remained attached to it. Time lavoured them with good fortune. They embraced Islām. It is said that a man from among the descendants of Sām came to Ghor. He was an Amir (commander) of the army of the king Sur's brother. Daughter of his brother was married to his son. Sām spent the night (with her) before the nuptial. Sur changed his mind for marriage of his daughter with him. His daughter

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 648.

informed her cousin about what was decided. He, thereupon, fled to Ghor with her and halted at a place called Rumandish. He was then called Malandish. She wave birth to a son. He had many children through her. They lived for a long time. They embraced Islam. They ruled over the territory and extended it. Their fame spread. It is stated in 'Habib-us-Siyar' from a historian of Ghor to the enect that when Afridun defeated Dohak, he summoned members of his family to a place of safety away from him. They found such a place in the mountains of Ghor. They lived there and built strong forts. There was always between him and the army of Afridun what happens between enemies. Later on peace was concluded on acceptance of payment of tribute. Generation after generation continued till King Suri of the race Dohak. He was a contemporary of Sultan Mahmud on that frontier. Suri became a captive in war. Sultan Mahmud shed his blood. His grand-son Ibrahim Sultan fled to Hind. He lived with unbelievers in one of the temples and died there. He left a son behind him whose name was Sam. He had a mantle of good fortune of Islam. He engaged himself in business. At the close of life he went by sea to Ghor. But when he approached the shore, the sea became stormy. The boat sank. His son Husain bin Sam alone escaped safely. He was on a wooden plankon a side from him there was an aged man-for three days. He landed on the shore and intended to go to the city. He slept on a shop in its market. At night, the night patrol arrested him on suspicion of a thief and imprisoned him. He had nothing to say in defence. He remained in jail for seven years. When the governor (hākim) of the city fell ill, he ordered for release of all prisoners. He then was released. On release, he went towards Shazni. On the way, he came across a gang of robbers. They found him young and strong. They gave him garments, or sword and a horse. They moved on taking him with them. By chance, there was an assault of army of Sultan Ibrahim, ruler of Ghazni.\* It was in search of them. They captured all of them including the youth. When they were brought in presence of the Sultan, he ordered to put them to death. When the executioner by turn came to him, he heard him saying in tears and moans "Oh God! know that they should not execute your commands erroneously. The cause of it is that they kill me without any offence. The executioner left him and referred his case to the Sultan for what he had heard from him. He summoned him and inquired about his condition. He informed the Sultan about his life from beginning to end. He felt pity for him and made him his hājib (chamberlain). He constantly rose higher and higher till he became an amir in the regime of Sultan Masud. When Husain bin Sam died, his sons invaded Bahrām Shāh Ghaznawi. During the regime of Ibrāhim Ghaznawi, they domineered over his kingdom. He fled from them to Hind. Suri firmly estab-

Original Text, p. 649,

lished himself in the capital, Ghazni, 'Alauddin and Sam returned to Ghor. On way, Sam died of pleurisy. 'Alauddin established his power as Sultan of Ghor. So said Khundamir, author of 'Habib-us-Siyar' and the historians of Ghor. The first Sultan of Ghor, whose account they give, is 'Alauddin. They were five and period of their rule lasted for sixty-four years. The author of 'Tabagat' Abu 'Umru-al-luzjāni says that the first amir-was Fawlāz. He was present at the conquests of Abi Muslim, master of the 'Abbasi mission. Then there was Banji bin Nāzān. He fought with Sish bin Bahrām and conciliated with the order of Harun al-Rashid 'Abbasi. Both came to Baghdad. Banji knew a merchant. When he saw him and his brother in dress of residents of Ghor he said to him. "I show you a trick to go head of your brother; will you give me liberal alms?" He replied in the affirmative. "Then come in the dress of amirs to Baghdad on the day of their entering upon the Khalifa. He wore the dress. His brother remained in the desert dress. Banji appeared great in view of the dress in the eye of the Khalifa. He verified the maxim " Men are known by the dress". He ordered amirship for him and command of the army for his brother. This status continued among their descendants even after their death. Amirship of the kingdom was for the son of Banji while command of the army remained with the son of Sish. Suri helped Banu Şaffür during his regime. Suri fortified himself within lofty mountains. He was followed by Muhammed bin Suri. He was a wicked man. He did what he willed. Mahmud bin Subuktagin invaded him during his regime and presented him in the fort of Ahangaran (bi sckemiths) and made him a captive and brought him to Ghazni.\* He had a ring with poison in his finger. He blew his nose, poison dissolved, he put it into his mouth and died. His son Abu 'Ali Sish bin Muhammed succeeded him as a king. He hated disobedience of his father to Mahmud even during his father's regime as well as his evil conduct in the kingdom. He always loved Mahmud and maintained relations with him by correspondence. When Mahmud captured his father, he decorated the son with robe of honour of the kingdom and returned. His son 'Abbas bin Sish invaded him, captured him and ruled the kingdom. 'Abbas was an arrogant despot. During his regime, it did not rain for seven years. No animal gave birth to a young one man included. He had dogs who were adorned with gold necktaces and chains and clothed with glorious gold-embroidered silk. He nicknamed one of them as 'Abbas Ghor, that is, himself. The other was nicknamed Sulian Ibrahim, that is, the Sultan of Ghazna. Hostility and animosity constantly continued between the two. Ultimately, he gained ascendancy over Ibrāhim, became furious and ruled over the people. When people experienced sternness from him, the chiefs decided to secretly help Ibrāhim, ruler of Ghazna. Ibrāhim

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 650.

came to Ghur. 'Abbas came out to fight with him. When they assembled in the battlefield, the amirs surrendered him to him. He captured him and returned with him. 'Abbas was proficient in the science of astronomy. He built a fort on Zarmurgh of Malandish. There was a palace within the fort which was strongly built on twelve turrets on number of months of the year. Every turret had thirty vaults; total number of vaults was three hundred and sixty. These are rising places of the sun like horizons of the sky in accordance with seasons of the year. I say, through his knowledge, he was able, inspite of largeness of the Sun's body to adjust its distance from the vault of its palace. It changed with rotation of its rising place in the sky to its adjacent vault. He was ignorant enough to realize his helplessness with smallness of his body and nearness of his self to it to control it. That would have proved good for explanation. Science of mathematics tries to explain possible things. Knowledge of guidance of self guides one to God. There is a tradition, "Oh God! Bring my soul to its guidance." I felt surprise at this place and was convinced of the art. Hāfiz Abu 'Abdullāh Muhammed bin Mahmud bin Hasan bin Hibtullāh bin Mahasin al-Najjar in the foot-note of Tarikh-i-Baghdad of Hafiz, al-Khatib Abi Bakr Ahmad bin Ali bin Thabit al-Baghdadi has narrated that there was a ledge attached to the Madrat-ul-Mustansariyat-ul-'Abbasiya, opposite to the Där-ul-Hadith containing a wonderful circle. Its figure was figure of the sky.\* In it were small vaults with doors. Whenever a gun-shot fell on it, one of the doors of vaults got opened. It was golden and then it became silvery. An hour passed. The gunners took out a nutfrom mouth of golden hawks in gold travs. The golden sun rose in the sky of swift motion (?). In circle of the sky, the sun moved with rotation and set with its disappearance. When the sun set the night came. Moon rose from light behind. After an hour, brightness became complete in circle of that moon. It then began in the second circle till cessation of night. The sun rose. During the regime of Muhammed bin Abbas, blessings multiplied and good deeds were abundant. His brother Jutbuddin Hasan bin 'Abbas descended upon Taknat from the region of Wajiristan and war lasted between them for a day for conquests of the fort when an arrow hit him in the eye and he died. This became the cause of victory. His men became furious for so aiming. They attacked singly and conquered the fort and burnt it with everything it contained. They met Quibuddin weeping and got engaged in shrouding him and returned with his coffin. He was succeeded by his son 'Izzuddin Husain bin Hasan. He was called Abu-al-Salatin. From Fawlaz to 'Izzuddin, these rulers were called amirs. After 'Izzudlin, they adopted the title of Sultan which continued till its extinction,

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 651.

First ruler with designation of Sultan

Saif-ud-Din Suri son of 'Izzuddin Husain son of Qutbuddin Hasan brother of Muhammed son of 'Abbas son of Abi 'Ali Sish son of Muhammed son of Suri son of Banii Nahārān was from the race of brother of Amir Fawlaz al-Ghuri. Fawlaz did not leave any one behind him and so the Imarat passed on, after him, to son of his brother. History of this dynasty ended with the regime of Amir Banji Nahārān. The historian al-Juzjāni said that his history was destroyed at Ghur along with other thing at the time of Tatar invasion. With its destruction, I recorded what I knew about them. As this account was not found else where, I describe it. Some of it would be found in 'Tārikh-i-" Nāṣiri' of Baihagi as well as in the history of Abul Hasan Haidam bin Muhammed ai-Nabi. I reproduce what I heard from the holy men of Ghur. Whatever was reliable for narration, has been recorded as their history. I apologize for what I had not seen. It is on hearsay. The narrator who narrated is intelligent. When Suri ascended the throne at Ghur after his father 'Izzuddin, he divided the kingdom among his brothers-Shihabuddin Muhammed, Fakharuddin Mas-'ud, 'Alauddin Hasan, Bahauddin Sam, Qutbuddin Muhammed, Shujauddin, Amir of Khurasan. Qutbuddin was titled Malek-ul-Jibal (King of Mountains) for making it its capital. It belonged to him in the region of Wazsār. He then searched a place for construction of a fort to garrison himself within it. His judgment decided a place at Firoz Koh. He built the present fort, which exists even to-day. He founded a city in expanse of its mountain. He invaded Ghazni before completion of the fort. It was later on completed after him by his brother Bahauddin Sam. Cause of his going out was what exists between brothers. He could not endure such a relation. He marched from Firoz Koh to go to Bahram Shah, ruler of Ghazni. He treated his arrival with honour and did what was proper in respect of him. He was of handsome appearance and not le in disposition. People loved him for that. Bahram was affectionate towards him for his good qualities and seated him near him. People were not devoid of jealousy. Some one of them caluminated against him before Bahram and attributed him perfidy in his harem. He, therefore, ordered him to be poisoned. He died and was buried at Ghazni. On account of this, there was insurrection in relation which brought about extinction of Subuktagin's dynasty. When Sultan Saifuddin Suri received intelligence about this occurrence with his eldest brother, he waited for a year in mourning. His brother Bahauddin Sam succeeded him at Ghur and become the ruler of Malek-ul-Jibal. He resided at its capital, Firoz Koh. It was in 544 (1149) Suri lived in the fort of his capital. Suri then marched to Ghazni when both the armies met in the battle-field, he defeated Bahram and conquered Ghazni. He ascended the Ghaznawi throne. Its citizens became loyal to him. Bahram fled to the

Original Text, p. 652,

frontiers of Hind which belonged to him. On approach of winter, he permitted soldiers of Ghur to return to it. Some of them remained with the army of Bahram. None of Ghur remained with him except his Wazir Majduddin\* al-Musawi and few servants and favourites. When the Ghaznawis learnt about blocking up of passages of Ghur due to snow-fall and it became extremely difficult for the Ghuris to come to the assistance of Suri or to get information from him, they wrote to Bahram about this state of his. He immediately, marched to Ghazni and arrived in his hour of inadvertence. Suri did not try except to come out with what he had with him to flee towards Ghor. The Ghaznawis pursued him and found him in the frontiers of Sang-i-Surakh, He turned his reins and made an effort to fight when his borse fell down. The rest went walking surmounting mountains. His quiver became empty, he sat on knees, and took to darting in self-defence. Only the Wazir remained with him. His arrows got exhausted and only the dagger remained. With this, none came to him from among those who had sworn for safety. When this happened to him at the hands of those who had taken an oath or with the departure of power and authority, those who came to him from Gate of Ghazni to make him ride a camel and the Wazir on another camel surrounded him around Ghazna and did not cross beneath a window or at the foot of it. On the contrary, they threw dust, ashes and filth over their heads. The general public did not approve of it. Such was the state of Sultan. When we were at a place from Ghazna, it was said to him that there was only one bridge. They were hard with him.

Bahauddin Sam bin Husain succeeded Suri at Ghur. He established his authority over it after him. When he was free from construction of Firez Koh. he built and repaired several forts. One of them was "Kaşr-i-Khajuran" at Garmsir of Ghor, port of Bughristan, Sursank among the mountains of Herat, Fort of Fiwar between Ghuristan and Fars. Daughter of Badruddin Gilan was married to him. He had two sons through her, Ghiyathuddin Muhammed and Shihābuddin Muḥammed. When he received news about his brother's fate, he stood up for religious war in retaliation for him. He issued forth with the army of Ghur to proceed to Ghazni. They alighted in the expanse of Gilan. It was here that they were overtaken by sorrow and wrath that he suffered from internal disease. He perceived death and died. His brother 'Alauddin Hasan succeeded him at Ghur. When he passed on to the mercy of God, the Almighty. His brother 'Alauddin Husain bin Husain established authority after him. He prepared and came out. When he encamped at Gilan, those who had come out with Bahauddin, met him. They all marched to Ghazni in grandeur and pomp, Bahram Shah received intelligence of that. He came out with his army andt

Original Text, p. 653.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 654,

passed Garmsir from Rakhaj and Taknābād to land of Dāwar. 'Alauddin had encamped at that spot. Bahram sent an envoy to him advising him for return to Ghur. He had informed him that if he had assembled for war, he had no strength to fight against him as he had elephants with him. 'Alauddin replied to him, "If you were one who bore the Holy Quran, there is wonder from you that you are indifferent to the Commandment of God the Holy. "He who is killed unjustly, we made a Sultan as his friend," you killed my brother. I am his guardian. How can I go back from you? It is again said 'Do not transgress in killing' for he would be victorious. He is promised victory thereon. Again you said that you have elephants with you but with me in your resistance are Kharmil Sam Husain and Kharmil Sam Banji. In regard to it, God has revealed in His Book "Did you not see what did your Lord do to masters of elephants? A veiled reply." He then sent for two brave men wrestlers and said to them as to what message was brought by the envoy of Bahram and what reply he gave by way of consultation. They kissed the ground in his presence. Both of them asked him as to what was his order. He said, "I want a match for his elephants." They repeated kissing of ground and departed. Both of them met at a place known as Kutah Bāzbāb (?) Each one dismounted from his horse and united sides of his armour and joined the army. They jumped right and left. He came beneath the elephant and rent asunder his belly by means of a dagger. He who was with the elephant on the ground was Kharmil Sam Banji. The elephant was upon him. Both of them died. When the elepanant fell down, the other one came out safely to 'Alauddin, 'AlaudJin was there at the time of assault in his armour. He sent for a silken robe red in colour and wore it over the armour. He was questioned for doing it. He said, "I intended to hide blood in case I am hit by an arrow etc. so that the Ghurian soldiers may remain engaged in war while the Ghurian infantry may maintain array for reliance in war and they should not come out from hide of exen like board on height of man. They place a cottonstuffed cloth over the face joined with it. It is called Kāruh. When they stand in a row and receive a blow on shoulders, it covers them. They become like a wall. Arm is not softened. Whenever there was a war, Dawlat Shah son of Bahram Shah came forward, 'Alauddin ordered the infantry-men to open the path for him to enter. They keep aside on a side. He came with his elephant and horse. Dawlat Shah ordered them to assemble and to array with shields as usual from all sides. He then fought with all those who were with him. Bahram fled away\* with the rest of his Ghaznawi soldiers. 'Alauddin pursued them manzil after manzil to a place called Josh-i-Ab-i-garm in the neighbourhood of Taknabad. Bahrem returned, fought and fled to Ghazni while the Ghuris were in his wake.

Original Text, p. 655.

Those who were at Ghazna met together and fied to the frontiers of Hind. 'Aläuddin entered Ghazna and alighted in government palace and subjected the city for seven days to assassination, ravishment, plunder, capture, murder and arson. 'Aläuddin dis-appeared for sport. He neither moved in it except hearing from those whom he met nor lived in it out of disregard for knowledge of it. On the eighth day, he raised the veil and composed following lines extempore for self-glory:

World knows that I am Sultan of the world I am a lamp of the family of 'Abbas 'Alauddin Husain son of Husain I am May kingdom remain permanent for him. When I sit upon Gulgun (horse) of fortune Earth and sky become one for me Hope is a striker of whip around my soldiers Death is a juggler of point of my spear. I will conquer the whole world like Sikandar Seat a new king in every city. I had decided that from vagabonds of Ghazni I flow a river of blood like the river Nile But for old men and children My young fortune pleads intercession I pardoned them their lives So that their souls may unite with my soul.

He ordered a songstress to tune up a song and she chanted it. He then issued a proclamation for amnesty. He entered the bath and came out from it in mourning dress to visit his brother's grave. They had pitched tents there and carpeted it. He visited them and shed tears for them and permitted the high and the low for mourning. He stayed there for seven days for alms, feeding, recitation of the Holy Quran and litany. He did not spare a single grave in Ghazni from which the buried was not unearthed and burnt except that of Mahmud, Mas'ud and Ibrahim. Such is the decree of the Powerful and the Knowing. He then ordered to blow the bugle and marched with coffins to Ghur. He captured many persons and carried bags of dust on their backs from Ghazna in retaliation for the Wazir. When he arrived at Firoz Koh, he collected in heap earth of Ghazna and killed all carriers of earth on it. He mixed it with\* their blood and built turrets in Firoj Koh. He was designated 'Jahansoz' (world-burner) on account of his incendiarism at Ghazna. He committed excesses in destruction of Mahmud's monuments. His manner in his return was swift. Whenever he saw a monument of Mahmud, he remarked that it would

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 656.

be of none else than he and ordered to construct palaces similar to them, and approaching them. Those which were lofty on side were pulled down to the ground. His other excess was that he did not make captives other than the Syeds of Ghazna. "There is no power and strength except that of God." The historian al-Juzjāni said that those turrets exist even to our age. May God forgive us and he. When he settled down at Firoz Koh, he ordered to remove Ghiyathuddin Muhammed and Shihabuddin Muhammed, sons of his brother Bahauddin Sam to fort of Wajiristan and imprison them. It was practice of the king of Ghur to carry every year arms and textiles worthy of him to the ruler of Khurāsān. The ruler of Khurāsān in that age was Sultān 'Alauddin of the Sanjar Dynasty. 'Alauddin arbitarily stopped that practice and continued upon it. It became cause of invasion of Sanjar on Ghur. 'Alauddin received report of it. He came out for resistance with army of Ghur to the frontiers of Nab town situated between Herat and Firoz Koh. He collected grass in abundance from neighbourhood in the plateu of Hariv river where there was moss spreading far and wide. It is called "Seh Koshah Nab," The battle took place in its proximity. A day, before the battle began, 'Alauddin ordered to establish control over water at that spot which was behind the army of Ghur. The place was rendered muddy. By proclamation, he ordered his soldiers to remain firm and steadfast in order to prevent them from flight. There was no passage to come out of mire. Both the armies arrayed themselves face to face. There were six thousand horse from Ghuzz, Turks and Khalaj on the right wing of the Ghuri army. They had only to heed to attack opposite array of Sanjar. The Ghuri fled away immediately without a war. Most of his amirs and soldiers got stuck into mire. Many of them were made captives and the rest killed. 'Alauddin was brought to Sanjar. He ordered him to be imprisoned. When the man intended to put him in chains he said to him to seek the opinion of the Sultan in respect of him. He further said, "Tell him, do with me what you have decided in his respect and that if you make him a prisoner he should be in gold chain out of regard for a sultan. He had carried with him all my treasure." He reproduced the discourse of 'Alauddin before Sanjar. He accepted it. They\* brought gold chains, put them in his feet and carried him on a camel. Sanjar returned from his place to his capital. 'Alauddin was renowned for his intellectual power, graceful temperament, marvellous witticism and sagacious wisdom. Sanjar treated him with affection when he was informed about his qualities after a day or three of his imprisonment. He ordered for his release, invited him to his majlis, honoured him by seating him on his side and addressed him in apologetic language. There was a tray in front of him full of octagonal gems. He presented them to him. He took it with decorum and composed these lines extempore:

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 657.

He captured me and the king did not avenge me Though I certainly deserved to be killed. He gave me a tray full of precious stones Such should be forgiveness and gift.

Sanjar was surprised, he seated him and elevated him. One day, he was on the throne stretching his legs to the ground. 'Alauddin saw a mole. He stood up in the majlis and improvised:

Oh! dust of door of your palace is a crown for me Oh! ring of your servicude is an ornament for me When I kiss a mole of sole of your feet Fortune imprints a kiss on my head.

He then sought permission to kiss it. He granted it to him. He desired with his head to sole of feet and kissed his legs. When he desired to raise his head, Sanjar toyed with his beard and caught hairs with thumb of leg. He lowered his head. Those who sat there began to laugh. 'Alauddin felt ashamed. Sanjar understood it. He made amends for what proceeded from him and said. "I grant him amnesty. There is no excuse. I am pleased. I accept in heart. I give your kingdom to you. Have triangular meat preparation in it." He was about to go against the Ghuzz. He granted him leave for return to Ghur, and cor signed to him his stores and treasures. As he was going against the Ghuzz, he did not take out horses, camels, cattle, goats and oxen. He said to him on his departure to go in safety and keep his pledge for what had been deposited as a secret from the Ghuzz, for they would remain with him till necessity. Abu'Umaru said that during the absence of 'Alauddin, the affairs of the Ghuzz had become serious in the Sanjari kingdom. They caused great harm on the frontiers of Ghor. Amirs of Ghor decided to nominate Nasir-ud-Din Husain bin Shihābuddin Muhammed Mādini bin Bahāuddin Sām as Sulvān. During his\* regime, a portion of territory went out of his hand and treasures and stores became empty for being spent on the amirs, favourites, vagabonds and most wonderfully on mistresses of 'Alauddin. When the people of Ghur learnt about his return, those who were disposed towards him decided to murder Nasituddin, They induced those mistresses to assassinate him. They agreed to it. He slept in a state of drunkenness. They placed a pillow on his face and blind-folded him under its heavy weight till he died. 'Alauddin received news of it and thanked sufficiently for this. Soldiers of Ghur gathered around him. He entered the capital and examined its affairs. He then went out to the region of Kishti. Its residents had rebelled. He entered it and demolished its lofty palaces, more than one thousand, uprooted mischief-mongers and returned to mountains of Ghur and subdued it and returned to Firez Koh. He then con-

can be assert as a se

Original Text, p. 65d.

quered Bāmian, Jakhāristan, Jarun, Dāwar and Bush. After six years of his return, he encamped at the fort of Tulak. It was in Khurāsān among mountains of Herāt, conquered it and made peace. A poet of the name of 'Umar bin Sirāj lived here. When the war ended in peace, he composed a poem himself addressing 'Alāuddin

Having sat on a horse Warlak Fulak Your object is Tulak, here is Tulak,

He intends by Warlak and Tulak, a race of horses going up and below. He then conquered Ghuzistan. He married Nur Malek, daughter of King of Ghuzz. Shah bin Ibrahim bin Ardashir bin Sabur. He subdued Marghab in the plateau of Rudbar and its forts except the fort of Sanbakji. Continuously for six years. he was engaged in conflict. He then enjoyed peace. At the close of his life, a deputation of heretics waited upon him. He gave them asylum. He permitted them to carry on their mission. They spread themselves for propagation in his dominions. It was a blemish on him. He was overwhelmed with repentance on their expulsion. Death suddenly seized him and he died before that. He was buried by the side of his ancestor at Sanbaka(?). His son Saif-ud-Din Muhammed son of 'Alauddin Husain son of Husain became the ruler. He was a young man of handsome appearance. He was just, generous, a kind patron for subjects, humble, helper in the cause of religion, one who put into practice duties as enjoined by religion. In the first year of ascension, he ordered wealth to be distributed among those from whom his father had illegally taken and cancelled rights of unjust confiscation. He summoned messengers of the heathens. They had spread themselves in different parts of dominion. They stood for totality \* of their mission. He arranged their general massacre. He pursued those who accepted their creed. Many people of his kingdom had accepted their mission. He counted their number. He killed all those who did not abandon misguidance. Similarly, he pursued mischievous carmalthians in his kingdom. None was left. People of Ghur loved him and they prided themselves on obedience to him. These persons respected him for three reasons. He ordered release of his cousins Ghivathuddin, and Shihabuddin. They were incarcerated by his father at Wajiristan. Ghiyathuddin chose to live with him. Shihabuddin was with his uncle Fakharuddin Mas'ud till life of his brother Ghiyāthuddin. During the regin e of Saifuddin, the country prospered, good multiplied and comforts became general. His period did not prolong. His reign lasted for something more than a year. The Pahelwan of Ghur and the Chief Amir Abul 'Abbas Sish murdered him. It was practice of amirs of Ghur and Muluk-ul-jibal (kings of mountains). When they eulogise great men with respect, they ride him on a horse with trappings of gold studded with jewels. In the later age, the royal robe of honour

<sup>·</sup> Original Test, p. 659,

what was called in their language 'Kamar' belt of gold, studded with jewels. as a strap with a knot in the middle. It so happened with Saifuddin that as in the courtyard of his residence. He ordered to fix a target, he took up t, and invited the amirs who were present to participate in archery. There present the Commander-in-chief Warmish son of Sish, brother of Sulaiman 3ish and son of a brother Abil 'Abbäs Sish. When he stood up for a throw he target, he saw a sawar with two riders. He recognized them. They for the seraglio of his father 'Alauddin. Nasirud-Din Hasan was respected ng them during his days. He stood after his father in the kingdom. He what he wished. He had power over the stores of his father. Self-zeal ed him up. He cast a dart at the target and ordered him to come with an w. He went towards him. His back was void. He filled his bow with an w and darted it; it pierced through his heart. He fell down dead. Abul as bore spite for him and kept it secret in his heart when Saifuddin went n search of the Ghuzz. During Sanjar's decline of fortune, they had become inant on frontiers of his kingdom and extended their hands to environs of Saifuddin started for Ghuristan and Fars. He marched thence to bar-i-Mary left it behind him and passed beyond the city of Dazk. He\* ht with the Ghuzz. At such a time, Abul 'Abbas came from behind him stabbed him with a spear. It penetrated through his heart. He was savat the place of target," Do not kill a man as my brother was killed." He in such a plain. He instantly fell down. There was some breath in him. his fall, the army of Ghur fled away including Ghiyathuddin. A man the Ghuzz stood upon Saifuddin and saw the signs of grandeur of Sultan im and especially the belt. He intended to remove it as it was difficult for With the help of knives, he cut out the knot. He plunged needle into open it. He inserted a running band into its depth with all strength. It ed through the belt to its end. This passed with him, may mercy of God . him.

Chiyāthuddin Muḥammed bin Bahāuddin Sām sat on the throne of nat of Ghur after him. He was in the army of Ghur. He had fled from the n of Rudbār and environs of Dazk and treading the path of Asirdarah and came to the city of Afsin, capital of Shārān Ghuristān. Thence the encamped at a town called Wazāwarad. At this spot, Abul 'Abbās Sish Ghiyāthuddin. He had collected chiefs of the army. They were obedient im. He, therefore, took the oath of loyalty first. He then ordered them ike the oath. None objected to it. He built a fort there. It existed till invasion and similarly the town. Ghiyāthuddin, then, marched to Firoz and ascended the throne of sovereignty. His title was Shamsuddin but he

Original Text, p. 660,

was titled Ghiyathuddin. His brother Shihabuddin Muhammed came to meet him from Bamian. He was appointed head of Jandariva and Amirs. He was given the region of Astih and Kajuran. Ghiyathuddin then came out to punish disc bedient elements of Ghur. They belonged to the party of the Commanderin-Chiel Abil 'At Las Sish at d his followers and to make them take of oath of allegiance. He became chief commander of the army (Amir Umraul Jish). established more power than the king and obtained extreme priority therein till Ghiyathuddin had become almost a king in name. Besides, when Ghiyathuddin, mentioned the name of Saifuddin, he saw him that he was put to the blush. It was done in an hour of leisure. He did not feel safe and remained in anxiety for long. It chanced that his brother was free from anxiety in respect of him. He sent for the Turk in whom he had confidence and said to him that when Abu 'Abbas presented himself, and Shihal uddin placed his hand upon his cap.\* he should hasten towards him to cut off his head. One day, he sat according to his habit when Shihabuddin entered with his men as usual. Abul 'Ablas then came, saluted and stood at his place as usual. The Turk was watching Shihābuddin while the Sultan was talking with Abul 'Abbas with mildness and kindness to keep him engaged when Shil abaddin raised his hand to his cap and Abul 'Abbas's head was near his feet. With his assassination, Ghiyathuddin became an absolutely independent ruler and his order was treated with seriousness. None of his uncles except Fakharuc'd n Mas 'ud was left. He was the suler of Banian. Fakharuddin saw importar ce near him elt but it belonged to his biother's son. He coveted the saltanat of Ghur. At the same time, the amirs of Ghu, were in his service including a large number of persons. Hence cordest of Ghur was near with their help thinking that his mission would be accepted with their summons. When he marched to Ghur, 'Alauddin Kumāj al-Sanjati, ruler of Balkh and Tājuddin Ilduz, ruler of Herat came out for succour in response to his call. Gluyathuddin received intelligence of that. He came out of Firoz Koh with the army of Ghur. His brother Spihabuddin was commander of the army with him as far as the place called Zāgh Zar and halted there. Heiat is nearer to Firoz Koh than Balkh. Tajuddin treaded the rath of Hariv river to it. He liked to fall upon the army of Ghur without them so that the victory would be in his name. He went in all haste. When he encamped at Zägh Zır, Ghiyathuddin learnt about it. He rode the horse and arrayed his army and stood under his standard. Horsemen of Ghur paused in his presence for war moving towards and kissing the earth and asked his permission with satisfaction. Tājuddin came, eulogised them and said to them, "we ride in the name of God for He is the Best Helper and He is the Best Assistant for you against him. They tode on and emerged from the row. His

Original Text, p. 661.

flags fluttered and marched towards him and terminated near his array. One of them shouted and asked "Where is the king?" Some one from beneath the umbrella replied. People imagined that they were in delegation to him or they had some need from him. None heeded it. They entered into the army and penetrating further and further when they saw him beneath a canopy, arraying his companions. They moved and jumped upon him like a lion and pilfered his soul quickly within twinkling of an eye. He became a corpse on \* ground. His army fied away returning to Herat. The horsemen returned with tidings to Ghiyathuddin. He embraced them and praised them and elevated them with robes of honour. 'Alauddin Kumai learnt the next day about misfortune of Heratis. Ghiyāthuddin despatched a heavy battalion against him. He was going out by the high road from Ghuristan. Before he could arrive at Fakharuddin, he had pitched his tents when the Ghurian battalion fell upon him and won a victory over him. They killed him and returned with his head to Ghiyathuddin. His soldiers dispersed. They assembled after dispersion at Balkh. Ghiyathuddin ordered to carry head to his uncle. He was near him and rode in wake. When his uncle stood at the head, his wisdom fumbled. He turned his reins to return to Bamian. The Ghurian army surrounded him. He paused staring and saw Ghiyathuddin and Shihabuddin walking towards him. Both of them behaved with decorum as was his right and requested him to come to their pavilion. He did it. They seated him on the throne and stood before him with submissiveness and humility. He felt extremely ashamed by their good mannerly behaviour. Out of great disgrace, he did not try to attribute their obedience and excuses to ridicule. He talked with them in that respect, got down from the throne, went out to his horse, rode him and returned to Bāmian. They followed him in company to a distance of one manzil. He permitted them to return to Ghur. Ghiyā huddin then marched to Garmsir and Dawar and conquered them. The kingdom of Ghur was raised and put in order by him. Abu 'Umru said that after Tājuddın Yalduz, Bahāuddin Tughrii al-Sanjari established his authority at Herāt. It remained under his control for a period. He conquered the region of Kadas, Suliwan, Fiwar and Sifarud. He married Tāj-ut-Harair Jawbar Malek daughter of his uncle, Sultan 'Alauddin. He constantly conquered some portion of some region. Ultimately, the Knutba was recited in his name in all the cities of Ghuristan, Ta kan, Jaruran, Jarum and Taknabad. He then assembled his army and marched to Ghazni. The Ghuzz had become dominant over it during the regime of Khusraw Shah. His period had come to an end. He had left behind his son Khusraw Malek bin Khusraw Shāh at Lāhore in Hind. When the Ghuzz received news of it, they came out for war with him. They encamped

Original Text, p. 662.

at a place which they had chosen for battle. They adopted roads through wood preventing the enemy from show and attack. When both the armies encounter. ed, they assaulted the centre and put them to rout. Ghiyathuddin was in the centre. They got the better of the royal standard and returned with it and displayed it on all sides. The Gharians of the Right and Left wings saw it. They knew with certainty that the Sultan was beneath the flag and that he had entered the paths. They assaulted from all sides on roads (Tarak), rent as under their arrays, entered into them and placed sword among the Ghuzz. It was a victory. Ghiyathuddin received news of that. He returned to them. praised them and marched to Ghazni, conquered it and conquered Ghazni and their kingdom called Kābulistān and Zābulistān. It happened in the year, five hundred and sixty-nine, 569 (1173-74). His brother Shihābuddin became the Sultan at Ghazni. He was given a canopy. He was titled Mu izzuddin. returned to Ghur. In the year 571 (1175-76), the Harawis invited him. marched to Hera. Bahauddin Tughril al-Sanjari fled to Khwarazm. It was a victory. In 573 (1177), he conquered Kushanj. He was then invited by the people of Sajistan. He cor quered it as well as the country of Nimroz and its all frontiers. All the people of Khurasan entered into his obedience. He gained ascendancy over Kirman which was under the Ghuzz, Balkh, Taikan, Andkhud, Maimand, Färyab, Panjdeh, Marw-al-Rud, Jalam, Dazk etc. Khutba was recited in his name in all these places. In the year 538 (1192), Sultan Shah Jalaluddin Mahmud bin II Arsalan came to Ghiyathuddin for partition of Khwarazm for his brother Takash bin 11 Arsalan for his ascension on its throne. He welcomed him and elevated him by reception as far as possible. There was a pact between Takash and Ghiyāthuddin to esteem him in every respect. Some directions of Khurasan were under control of the Ghuzz and a portion of it under control of the Sanjari kings which the rest was added to Ghor. Sultān Shāh requested him for help against his brother Takash to release it from him as well as the Ghuzz which they had under their control in Khurasăn so that he would become Sultan. Ghiyathuddin waited for sometime fir compliance with his request and gave him a portion of his kingdom for his sufficient management out of regard for him and that he should spend its income on his maintenance. He prayed to him for breach of promise. Sustan Shah stayed for a period in Ghur in hope of help to him. When he was despaired of it, he parted from him and went to Transoxiana (Māwarā-un-Nahr) in Turkastån and met its Sultan Khan-i-Khanan-al-Khanai. He sought help from him against his brother. He agreed to help him. First of all, he conquered what§ was under control of the Ghuzz in Khurāsān. When he settled down at Merw. he equipped an army for march on Herāt. They encamped at Kushanj besieg-

<sup>\*</sup>Original Text, p. 663.

ing it. They then entered the frontiers of Ghur and instigated an insurrection. From among those who joined the revolt was Bahauddin Tughril Sanjar, king of Heiat. Suitan Shah then resolved upon despotism. He did not stop with correspondence and communication. Ghivathuddin summoned his kings from different parts of his dominions. His brother Mu'izzuddin Muhammed arrived from Ghazna, Shamsuddin Muhammed from Bāmian, Tāzuddin Harb from Sistan etc. They marched towards Rudbar Merw and encamped between Dask and Merw-al-Rud. In like manner, Sultan Shah encamped for opposition. This continued for six months. The only distance between them and their advaceguards was a river known as Murgh Ab. They moved right and north and changed directions. Aibak Shal al: Mu'izzi was Amir-i-Akhur (superintendent of stables) in charge of the stable of Mu'izz at Ghazni. In the camp of Murgh Ab, he became Amir-i-Kāḥi (Superintendent of Grass) for fodder. He did not find out fodder in the plains. He first rode out in search of it under protection of soldiers in order to get it from army of the Turks. After six months, it so happened that he was captured in a revolt between he and the Turks. Mu'izzuddin received intelligence of it. He lost his temper on him and crossed the river with his army. Ghivathuddin followed him in his wake for help and crossed the river. Mischief stirred up and the war blazed forth. There was display of great might and the battle had become hot. It resulted in defeat of the Turks. Sultan Stah returned as an unlucky person to Merw. Many of his followers perished. Bahauddin Tughril, king of Herat was captured by the sold ers of Shamsuddin of Bāmian. His head was cut off. It was brought to Ghiyathuddin. He ordered it to be sent to Herat. He turned kindly towards Shamsuddin and titled him as Sultan and gave him a canopy in accordance with practice of the Government. Head of Tughril was propped up in Herāt. A poet composed:

Tughril who raised his head beyond pinnacle of the sky Had ornament and crown of pride and arrogance. He had come bodyless for spectacle of Herāt He had too much wind (desires) of Herāt in head.

This event took place in the above year (588 = 1192). Sultān Shāh came to Merw. He suffered from a disease. Its treatment was poison. It recurred every year. It hastened him with return. It occurred to him through despair. As usual, he treated it with poison in a mischief in which he was involved. He\* took a heavy dose of it and died. Ghiyāthuddin was sufficient for his kingdom. On the death of 'Alāuddin Takash-Khwārazmsbāh, in 596 (1199-1200), Ghiyāthuddin marched with Mu'izzuddin to Shād Yākh Nisābur. It was under 'Alī Shāh bin Takash. When he descended upon it, he went around it for a day for

The Robert Land

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 665.

fortification looking for a side for adjustment of catapult. When he stood on the purret, 'Ali Shāh was there—this is in Habib-us-Siyar—He saw him seeking peace. Victory was nigh from him. He raised his hand. He was talking with his king pointing out the place by hand. He said, "From this to this. He agrees to peace." With walls of the fort to measure of his limit, pointing by the hand, joins with the ground. It opens a passage for entry from it. That was, He made 'Ali Shāh, Sar'āsh and Qızıl Khān etc. amirs of Khwarazm captives. In " färikh-i-Guzida" of Hamdullah Mustawfi, it is stated that 'Ali Shah was brought to him as is brought a captive. Ghivathuddin did not like it. He ordered to send him to his hand, seated him by his side, talked with him with kindness and respect and permitted him to go to Khwarazm. In "Al-Kämil" of Ibn-i-Athir, it is stated that he conquered Nisabur in the year 507 (1201) 'Ali Shah was brought to him on foot. Ghivathuddin felt disgust at those who brought in that manner to him. It is a great matter. Nurse of 'Ali Shah was present with Ghiyathuddin. She said, "Does he do this with children ot kings?" He said, "No, nay, in this manner." He took his hand and seated him on the throne with him. He was pleased etc. Those who were present with him at the conquest of Nisabur were Abu Ali Diauddin Muhammed bin 'Alauddin, Abi 'Ali ibn-i Shuja'uddin, 'Alı bin 'Izzuddin Hasain. He was son of his uncle. He had married his daughter. Nisabur was given to him. He went to Merw Shah Jahan. After its conquest, he issued an order that Naşıruddin Muhammed Khurnak should act as his Naib ( Viceroy ). He conquered Sarakhs and nominated Lajuddin Zangi bin Fakharuddin Mas'ud al-Bamiani as his Naib. This took place in 598 (1201). Juzzāni said that he established order in Khurasan. Envoys of Muhammed Khwarszm Shah visited his court for friends) ip and pact as existed in the regime of Takash. He was asked,\* citing examples of Khwarazm and Khurasan to conquer 'Iraq, and Mawara-un-Nahr. He wrote to him in respect of his mother whether he would like her to be married to his brother Mu'izzuddin and adopt him as a son. That would be better. When Mu'ızzuddin received news about it, he did not accept it. Ghiyathuddin wrote to him at Khurasan. That led to wars and bias. Ghijathuddin was triumphant in them at the close of his life. Muhammed Khwarazm Shah was disposed to despotic rule. 'Abbāsi Khalıfa complained against him. Gh yāthuddın avoided it. Al-Nāşir Le Din Allah Abul 'Abbas Alimad bin al-Mustadi corresponded with Ghiyathuddin. The first who came to him as an envoy from the Khalifa was Ibn al-Rabi'. He had brought with him a robe of the Khalifa. On his return, he made Kāḍi Majaduddin accompany him as leader worthy from his side, to the Khalifa. Ibn-ul-Khatib came and addressed a sermon on Friday at Firoz Kob. During the course of his sermon, he said when Ghiyathuddin

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 666.

was at his seat of prayer, "Oh Helping God! I seek, I seek your help against Takash, the rebel, the insurgent. The historian al-Juzjāni said. "On his return Imām Shamsuddin Turk accompanied him. My father Mawlana Minhaj Siraj was with him." When Shamsuddin returned with a robe of Khilafat from the Khalifa, Ghiyathuddin obtained saltanat and kingdom from East of Hind and from frontiers of Chin Machin to the frontier of 'Irag and from the frontier of Jaihun and Khurāsān to sea of Hormuz. Khutba was recited in his name for forty-three years. He lived for sixty-three years. Juzjāni said that his (historian's) father died on the environs of Makran. Nașir wrote that Siraj Minhaj had fallen on the road, may God reward him. This account preceded on the conquest of Nisabur in the account of Shad Yakh. Ibn-ul-Athir says in his 'Al-Kāmil' that 'Abdullāh bin Tāhir bin Husain al-Khazāi' was Amir of Khurāsān on behalf of Māmun 'Abbāsi. He saw a beautiful woman leading a horse intending to make him drink water. He asked her about her husband. She informed him that she would bring him in his presence. He said to him. "Looking after horses is the work of men, I think. Why did you sit in your house and send your wife with your horse?" The man wept and said, "We bear your injustice for this." He said, "How?" He said, "you lodge soldiers with us in our houses. If I had gone out, my wife would remain in the house with no work. The soldier would take away whatever was with us in the house. If I were to conduct the horse for drinking water to him. I have no faith in the soldier in respect of my wife. Hence I remained in the house and my wife\* looked after the horse," He attached much importance to it. He immediately came out of the city and lived in tent. He ordered soldiers to come out of houses of people. He built Shad Yakh Nisabur with houses for himself and the soldiers. He lived there and they with him. He thanked God for that. He watered his grave. It is written in "Al-Kāmil" that there lived a Turk in Balkh whose name was Atiz. Every year he carried tribute to Khatā in Māwara-un-Nahr. He died in the year 504 (1197). Its king was Bahāuddin Sam bin Muhammed bin Mas'ud al-Bamiani, son of the sister of Ghiyathuddin Muhammed. In that year, Khwarazm Shah Takash journeyed to Ray, Hamadan, Ispahan and encamped there and ruled them and demanded saltanat and Khutba in Baghdad. The Khalifa at Nasir Le Din Allah Abul 'Abbas Ahmad sent an envoy to Ghiyathuddin Muhammed al-Ghuri to have designs on the cities of Khwarazm Shah to make him give up his designs on Iraq. Ghiyathuddin corresponded with him threatening him about his wicked deed. Kharana Snah sought help from Khata (Cathay). If they did not correct him in what no soid, he would seize Mawara-un-Nahr as he had occupied Balkh. Help arrived from Khatā with the amir Ţāyanku. They marched and crossed

Original Text, p. 667.

Jaihun. Ghivathuddin was with him from Alankaras. He did not prevent him from march. His brother Shibabuddin was the commander of his army to Hind. When Khata arrived, Khwarazm Shah marched to Tus with an intention for Herāt. Khata crossed the river. They arrived at the cities of Ghur, and resorted to plunder and pillage, capture and murder. People sought for help from the Helper of religion. Amir of Talkan Muhammed bin Khurnak Ghuri lamented for war with them. He was brave. He wrote to Amir of spearmen Husain bin Kharmil. He had created disturbance in his region of Khata. Amir Kharosh Ghuri met them. They marched to Khatā and made a night attack on them and killed a large number of them. It was a custom of the people of Khata that they do not come out of their tents at night. They defeated them. The Ghuris pursued them. Jaihun was in front of them. They imagined that it was Khatā. Ghiyathuddin took them unawares. In the morning they knew who fought with them. They stood firm and fought with the public at day time. Volunteers joined the Ghuris and there came succour to them from Ghiyathuddin. They were engaged in war. The Muslims stood firm. Amir Kharosh assaulted the centre of Khata. He was a great shaikh (old man ). He received a wound and died of it. Then the two amirs assaulted among their companions. They \* proclaimed neither to hit any one by bow and nor stab by a spear. They took their swords and assaulted Khatā. They put them to rout and joined at Jaihun. Those who waited were killed while those who cast themselves, got drowned. A report of this came king Khata. He sent an envoy to Khwarazm Shah informing him that "you killed my men and I want ten thousand dinars for every killed man. Twelve thousand persons have been killed. Give him who returns to Khwarazm and compel him to appear before him." Khwarazm Shah sent an envoy at that very moment to Ghiyathuddin to acquaint him about this state of affairs in connection with Khatā and conciliate him instantly. He ordered him for obedience of the Khalifa. Khwarazm Shah returned the reply "your army had designs for expropriation of Balkh but they did not come to my help. They also did not assemble with them. I did not order them for Ghur. Whereas you became helpless against the Ghuris. I was ready myself for this word. I had entered into obedience of the Ghuris. You have no devotion to me." Malek Khatā prepared a large army and marched it to Khwārazm and laid siege to it. Khwārazm Shāh came out to them in the night. A large number of volunteers had joined him. He always fought with them and killed most of them as they came. Most of them fled away. Khwārazm Shāh moved in their wake with intention to lay siege to Bukhārā. He prevented its citizens to come out from it. They fought with Khatā. They seized one-eyed dog, dressed him with a robe and a hood and said that he was Khwarazm Shah. He was one-eyed.

Original Text, p. 668.

They moved around with joy. They then cast him in a catapult to the army saying 'This is your sultan.' He continued the siege and conquered it and forgave the residents. The historian Juzjāni said that what preceded in regard to a question of Muhammed Khwārazm Shāh for his adoption as a son by marrying his mother, I heard from a reliable person who wrote to him thus: I, Muhammed Takash, request you that Sultans accept me as a son. If I do not possess worthiness of a son, it is necessary that Sultan Ghāzi Mu'izzuddin who is lord of the world should marry my mother so that I may gain victory and unsheath sword for the servants of that world-court in the name of coin and Khutba of His Majesty and be one of his servants.\*

The historian said that Ghiyathuddin looked to suitability of the subject. But Mu'izzuddin did not accept the proposal and started for Khurasan. He subdued its frontiers. On their return to Ghur, Muhammed Khwarazm Shah followed them and came to a distance of one or two manzils. He was in complete flight and did not pause for resistance to them due to their strength. He was almost exhausted to death. He then came to Herāt and its governor 'Izzuddin Husain Kharmil al-Ghuri came to him and made him safe in it. Ibn-ul-Athir mentioned about generosity of Ghiyathuddin. When he heard about the death of Takash Khwarazm, he forbade beating of nauba for three days and sat in mourning inspite of war and enmity with him. He said prayers on his behalf. Observe his wisdom and manliness. May God, the Almighty be merciful to him. Juzjāni narrated in the life of 'Alauddin Muhammed Khwarazm Shah bin Takash that when he conquered Turkastan, Balasaghun and Kashghar, the army of Khata assembled for war. The soldiers were numberless. The general of the army was Tayanku Taraz. He was a man of age, of victorious banner and a famous horse-man. Forty-five rows of soldiers were with him. He gained victory in all wars. These wars included war with Sultan Sanjar and war with Sultan Mu'izzuddin Muhammed Sam. In this war, Muhammed Khwarazm Shah made him a captive. The army of Khatā was defeated. He first of all saw that he was safe in his hand. He dismissed his majlis and called him for his account. One day, Muhammed Khwarazm Shah asked him about his previous wars with kings and Sultans as to which he found more difficult and which stripped him of his valour and who was a powerful horseman and who was weak in prowess. He replied "al-Ghuri". If I had seen him and even though I was weak with few men, his horse crawled from running in different directions and I overpowered him." He said to him, "you are true. He was such." Ghiyathuddin was on the religion of Muhammed bin Kirām. He saw in a dream that he was in a masjid and the Kādi Wahiduddin Muḥammed al-Marwruzi al-Shāfai was with him. He was with Imam Muhammed bin Idris al-Shafai; may God be pleased

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 669,

with him in the holy arch saving prayers. Both of us stood behind him to say prayers with him. When he awoke from sleep, I thought over what I saw. He sent for the Kadi. A chair was brought for him. He gave a sermon and ordered him for deeds of the promised day. He saw that night in dream what \* Ghiväthuddin had seen. They opened topics in regard to seeing of dreams. When he finished. Ghiyathuddin remained alone with him. He spoke about his dreams to him. The Kadi informed him about knowledge he had of dreams also. They agreed to renounce the creed of carmathians and follow the path of Imam Shafai. It was the guidance of God to them. In 'al-Kamil' of Ibn Athir it is stated that al-Fakhr Muhammed bin 'Umar bin Husain al-Rāzi, the famous Shafi 'Imam came to Herat in the year 595 (1198-99) for death of Bahauddin al-Bamiam. Ghiyathuddin and his brother Shihabuddin honoured him. They built a madresa for him at Herāt in the vicinity of Jāme'. The theologians intended to remove him from the cities. It became a serious matter with the Carmathians. They lived in a large number in Herat. All the Ghurians were Carmathians. They detested him. Diauddin son of Ghiyathuddin's uncle was powerful among people. The Carmathian theologians, Hanafis and Shafi's were brought together before Ghiyathuddin for debate. Fakhruddin Razi, Kädi Majduddin 'Abdul Majid bin 'Umar known as Ibn-ul-Kadwa were present. The latter was a Carmathian. He occupied an eminent position among them on account of his religious devotion, knowledge, and night vigil. Razi spoke to him. Ibn-ul-Kadwa remonstrated with him. The debate prolonged. Ghiyāthuddin stood up. al-Fakhr-ur-Rāzi lengthened the debate, insulted and reviled and exaggerated in causing him harm. Ibn-ul-Kadwa did not allow him to speak more than what he said "Do not do, oh Mawlana, no, may God punish you, I seek forgiveness of God." The majlis dispersed on this. Malek Diauddin stood up in midst of that incident and complained to Ghiyathuddin and reproached al-Fakhr and connected him with heretics and creed of philosophers. Ghiyāthuddin did not hear him. Next day, there was a public sermon of Majd ibn-ul-Kadwa in the Jame'. When he ascended the pulpit, he said, after praise of God, the Almighty and benediction on the Prophet, may peace and salutation of God be on him, "There is no god but Allah, our Lord with what He revealed to you and we obey the Messenger, write us down us the witnesses. Oh men! I do not say except what is correct with us from. Messenger of Allah, may peace and benediction of God be on him. We are not acquainted with learning of Aristotle, unbeliefs of Ibn-i-Sinā and philosophy of Fåryåbi. Alas! yesterday, a shaikh from among shaikhs of Islam used abusive language frightening us with wrath of God, the Almighty and rule of the Prophet may peace and benediction of God be on him, and wept." It became clear to people. The Carmathians wept, complained and sought help from the Sultan

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 670.

for he who was mild to al-Fakhr-ur-Rāzi. People got excited at every place, the city was full of insurgence and on the point of spreading wherein many \* persons would have perished. The Sultan received a report of it. He despatched a party of men who were with him to the people. They pacified them and promised them for expulsion of al-Fakhr from him. They approached him for return and departure. It happened. Ghiyathuddin abandoned the Carmathian creed and became a Shāfai'. The cause of it was that there was a man by his side. He was called Fakhr Mubarak Shah. He composed verses in Persian language. He was an adept in many branches of learning. Shaikh Wahiduddin Abul Fath Muhammed bin Mahmud al-Marwruzi, a Shāfai' theologian came to Ghiyāthuddin. He explained to him unsoundness of the Carmathian creed. He became a Shāfai'. He built Shāfai' madresas. He built a masjid in Ghazna for them. He mostly showed regard to them. The Carmathians tried to cause harm to Wahiduddin. But God, the Almighty did not enable them to do so. It is stated in "Habib-us-Siyar" that Fakhr Mubarak Shah was a poet of Ghivāthuddin. He composed encomiums in his eulogy. There are books to his credit such as "al-Madkhal-ul-Manzum Fi Bahr-un-Nujum." It is stated in "Rawdat-uş-Şafa" of Syed, a scholar Mir Khwand bin Khawind Shah that Fakhr-ur-Rāzi lived at Ray. He used to reproach heretics and heap curses on them from the pulpit. Their king was, in those days, Muhammed bin Hasan. One of the heretics made him his pupil. He sided himself with the creed. He approached with effort in acquisition of the service of the Imam. He superseded all his other servants. The Imam looked to him with favour. He presented himself before him even in hours of his privacy. He waited for an opportunity which came to him. He got it after seven months. He rejoiced at it. He closed door of privacy and came up to him. He caught him by his two hands and laid him flat on the ground and sat upon his chest. He took out a dagger from his waist and raised his hand to see him. He was stabbing him. Fakhr said to him "What do you intend with this?" He said, "I want to split you from your navel to your chest." He said to him, "Why do you shed my blood?" He said, "For extending curses upon us from the pulpit." He said, "I will stop them, took an oath and strengthened it by the right hand." He uttered a word. I uttered it for freedom from him. He then explained or pronounced unbelief and returned to from what I did not return. He said, "I will never go back to it." He then took a pledge and stood away from chest † and said, "I was appointed for your murder. I tell you that my master Muḥammed bin Hasan 'Alā writes salām to you and requests you to honour him with your presence in his mailis to wait on you and bear your scarf. He then says to you, "Do not cause harm to me by your public utterances. He suffers from delirium tremens. It causes pain to him by what men like you speak. It

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 671.

becomes like an impression on stone, you turn back from it perhaps he may mourn your loss in course of time. He acknowledged what he said. There was no alternative in his presence. His talk was his last pledge. In the meantime, he took out from his pocket three hundred and sixty mithkal of gold and placed it in his hands and said to him. "This is from Mawlana for you, an allowance of this year, you will have similar to it every year till you live. Abul Fadl, the head-man will bring it to you as per order. In my room, there is a pair of cloth-sheet of Yaman. When I go out from you, you take them from it. He saluted him and left him. Juzjāni said that the chief Abul Fadl used to come to him with an amount of money every year till end of his life. The Imam was engaged in opposition to the principles of Isma'ilism and stuck to it. Before, he spoke against the heretics, may God curse them. His enemy questioned him about his previous behaviour and a change to the second. He replied," It was so with me and there is a convincing proof for it. He said that this Muhammed bin Hasan was in his sixty-seventh year. His son Jalaiuddin Hasan bin Muhammed bin Hasan assaulted him and killed him. He cursed his father and grand-father. He burnt books of the Head of heretics Hasan Sabbah. He changed his creed of heresy to that of men of sunna. He thus made his Islam good. Zakariyā bin Muḥammed bin Maḥmud al-Kazwini has written in his " Áthar-ul-Bilad" that Ray is a city in the fourth region. Imam Fakhruddin Abu 'Ablulläh Muhammed bin Umar al-Rāzi belonged to this city. Abul Qāsim bin 'Asakir counted the number of mujaddid (reformers) to one sixth in hundred. The first is 'Umar bin al-Khattab, may God be pleased with him. then Muhammed bin Idris, then Abul 'Abbas Ahmad bin Sharih, then al-Kadi Abu Bakr Muḥammed bin aṭ-Tayyab al-Bāqlāni, then Imam Abu Ḥāmid Muhammed al-Ghazāli, then Imām Fakhruddin Rāzi. He said that Fakhr came to Bukhara and presented himself in the circle of Radi-ud-Din Nisaburi. There were four hundred scholars in that circle such as Zakiuddin al-'Amidi,\* Ruknuddin al-Tawoosi as well as those who were of their class and those without them. They sought information in that majlis. There was none from the community who did not bring a question or two in it. Every one sent it to him and he replied it and put forth excuse for such advantages. Radiuddin said that there was no need for the reply for there was no more for it. People were surprised at his control, return and arrangement. It is said that he went to Khwarazın before his renown with a messenger of the Sultan. People of Khwātazm said to the messenger "We have heard that a scholar is with you. We intend to hear from him something of advantage." They were in the Jamé on Friday after prayers. The messenger suggested to Fakhruddin about it. Fakhruddin said, "I do that on condition that they should not debate except face to face. They undertook it. He said," From what knowledge do you

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 673.

want?" They said, "From scholastic philosophy." It was perseverance. He said, "What problem you want?" They chose the problem of religion in it. He spoke for a short while. There was a large crowd of the public as well as the public of Khwarazm. Every one of them was a scholastic. They realized that Fakhruddin established proof. He won a victory over every one of them. He wanted the people to be in order to keep a secret of that preservation for the mahfil of the Rais. He had said that it took a long time and the advantages multiplied that day. There should be conciseness. He completed in another sitting in the presence of Mawlana Fakhruddin. The Razi said, "Oh Khwarazmis! verily the Mawlana spoke without standing in this majlis. Whether one be an unbeliever or a wicked person, the order is obligatory with argument. If he does not believe, he is an unbeliever upon his own responsibility. He who believed it and did not know, is a wicked man upon his own responsibility. God is the Gracious. He delivered a sermon from the pulpit at Khwärazm. There cropped up different problems between the Mu'tezalites and the Ash'aris. He then delivered a perfect speech. It was said that the Mu'tezalites were unable to make such a speech. It was said to them, "Is this speech good?" They said, "yes." It was said, "Hear its cancellation. He made it null and void with strong arguments." The Mu'tezalites resolved upon abandonment of secession (retirement) for it was obligatory upon them to obey the argument. Their mashaikh said to them, "Do not give up your creed for God has given this man wonderful power of speech. This is due to his power, not to weakness of your creed." He was on the pulpit when he quoted a thing from Taura. It was said, "How do you know that it is from Taura." \* He said, "What travel you intend to see with eyes till I read it before you." A pigeon came to him followed by a hunting bird which intended to hunt it. The pigeon entered behind back of the Shaikh. One of audience extemporised:

Solomon of the time came with solicitude
And the death flashed from seizing wings
He who recognised the pigeon that it was on your sides
Forbade and verily there was no fright.

The Shaikh covered it with his shirt and turban. The Imām died on 'Id-ul-Fitr day, in the year 606 (1209). Mercy of God be on him. He said that Ghiyāthuddin was disposed to devotion of God. He helped the religion. He ruled with justice over his subjects. He applauded men of scholarship. He was affectionate towards the learned. He esteemed the righteous and honoured swordsmen. He paid attention to the faqirs, cheered the guests and extended his territory. In "al-Kāmil" it is stated that Ghiyāthuddin was victorious and triumphant in his wars. He did not suffer a defeat in wars. He had finesse

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 674.

and fraud in him He was liberal, of good faith, much charity and abundant knowledge of Khurāsān. He built masjids and madresas in Khurāsān for the Shāfai's. He built houses (inns) on the roads. He gave up drinking. (He repented of drink's. He did not interfere in the wealth of any man. When a man died without an heir, his wealth was distributed in alms and charity. When a merchant of known city died in his city, his wealth was given to residents of his city. When no one was found, his wealth was entrusted to the Kādi. The Holy Quran was recited on his behalf and the amount spent was taken from what was found on him according to requirements of religion. When he went to the city of his uncle, he obliged members of his family and esteemed every one who came to his presence. He possessed kindness to an abundant degree and very wide decorum besides beautiful calligraphy and eloquence. He transcribes books and visits madresas he founded. It is vicious to say that he was a bigot in religious matters. He suffered from the disease of arthritis and so it was difficult for him to take direct part in wars. He was probably found to be in a litter. He died at Herāt on Wednesday, seventeenth of Jamādi I of the year five hundred and ninety-nine, 599 (1202-03). He was entombed in a cupola which he had built for this day in vicinity of the famous Jame'ul-Kabir. May mercy of God be on him.

Conqueror of Hind Shihāb-us-Saltanat Mu'izzuddin Muhammed Abul Muzaffar ibn Bahāuddin Sām bin 'Izzuddin Abi-us-Salātin Husain al-Ghuri.\*

The historian al-Juzjāni said in his "Tabaqāt that Mu'izzuddin Muḥammed was Head of Jāndāriyat (body-guards) during the regime of his brother Ghiyāthuddin and he had Astih (as Jagir). He happened to go to Sajistān in censure. He was conciliated. He annexed Qasr-i-Khajurān to what he already had. He was appointed Chief Commander-in-chief (Amir-i-Umrā-ul-Jaish). He was Sipahsālār in the terminology of Persia. Shamsuddin then was the ruler of Sajistān. He returned to his brother after a year. He stayed with him. Ghiyā-thuddin had Garmsir under him. He gave Taknābād from it to him. At Taknābād, a battle was fought between the Ghuris and the Ghaznawis. It was the most famous city of Garmsir. 'Alāuddin Jahānsoz descended upon him during the regime of Khusraw Shāh. He composed following verses there:

First of all, your father laid foundation of revenge So that all people of the world fell to injustice. Yes, so that you may not give for the sake of Taknābād Entire kingdom of Maḥmud's descendants to ruin.

This was what he said. When Mu'izzuddin settled there, he saw the defeated Ghuzz of the army of Khatā who ruled over Ghazni. They had snatched the kingdom from Khusraw Shāh and Khusraw Malek and established absolute

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 675.

authority over it since twelve years. For that purpose, he resolved upon seizure of kingdom from them. He always assailed their environs for pillage, let loose his horses in pasture-lands and graze fodder on entry in 569 (1173-74). His brother Ghiyāthuddin marched to Ghazni and conquered it in that year. He assigned it to him and appointed him its Sultan. He elevated his dignity by grant of a canopy. It was a shade over head. He titled him Mu'izzuddin. His laqab (epithet) was Shihābuddin. He returned to Ghur.

In the year 571 (1175-76), Mu'izzuddin conquered Multān. It was under control of the Carmathians. In that year, there was an insurgence of its residents. He led an expedition against them and killed a large number of them.

In 575 (1179), he crossed over Ujja and Multān as far as Naharwāla capital of Gujarāt in ancient times. An unbeliever was the ruler. He was called Rāy Bhimdev. It was his ancestral dominion. He was a minor at the time of invasion of his kingdom. He, therefore, did not fight with might and vigour. When Mu'izzuddin entered boundary of his kingdom, Bhimdev's Vakil\* came out with Bhimdev for resistance. He had ample men and elephants. He cast all of them in the battle. It was a fierce battle to end it with entry. He, therefore, returned to Ghazni.

In 577 (1182), he descended upon Lähore. Its Sultan was Khusraw Malek. His son Bahram Shah came out with a corps of elephants to be presented to him for conclusion of peace. He accepted them and returned.

In 578 (1182), he conquered Dewal in Sind along with its villages and towns which were situated on the bank of its river Saihun and adjacent to it. In 'al-Kāmil', it is stated that he laid siege to Ujja but did not conquer it for long. It was situated in Sind. A woman ruled over it. Shihābuddin corresponded with her for marriage. The reply was that it was not advisable for him. She had a beautiful daughter whom she sent to accept her in marriage. Her husband drank poison and died. The city thus remained safe. He took the girl with him, converted her to Islām, married her and carried her to Ghazni. He appointed a teacher for her to teach the Qurān to her. He was anxious for her on the death of her mother after ten years. He did not see her. He did not go near her. He erected a mausoleum over her. People of Ghazni pay visits to her tomb.

In 580 (1184), he returned to Lāhore, plundered its environs and chose it for pillage. He marched to Sialkot, repaired its forts, entrusted it to Ḥusain Kharmil. He was appointed an Amir of Sialkot. He returned to the capital. Khusraw Malek came out with Hindi army to Sialkot and descended upon it. He strove hard to win it but failed and returned to Lāhore.

Original Text, p. 676.

In 582 (1186), he conquered Lähore. Khusraw went to him for peace but he was put in captivity along with his son Bahrām Shāh bin Khusraw Shāh. He left behind his commander-in-chief 'Ali Karyākh as its Amir and returned to Ghazni. He sent an envoy to his brother Ghiyathuddin with them from Ghazna. He imprisoned Khusraw Malek in the fort of Balrawan, a fort in Ghuristan while Bahram Shah was incarcerated in the fort of Sifrud in jurisdiction of Ghur. They continued in prison till Ghiyathuddin came out to Murghab in the incident of Sultan Shah. It was then that he met with felicity of martyrdem in 557 (1191). He was the last of the Mahmudi class of the family \* of Subuktagin. May God forgive them. In the 'Rarwdat-us-Safa,' it is stated that Khusraw Shah, father of Khusraw Malek died at Lahore in a siege. Ibn-ul-Athir connects the invasion with peace with him. He states in "al-Kamil" that Muhammed Sam sent Khusraw Shah to his brother Ghiyathuddin and his son was with him. When both of them came to Karshapur, its residents went to them weeping and inviting them with prayers. The servants restrained with reproof. They said that "a Sultan pays a visit to the Sultan. Why do you weep? ' They beat them so they returned. The son came out for an address from his father in a painful manner. He said, "When I came to him, I informed him about a message of my father. I said to him that I had not talked with him. I had no need for the service of any one else." He said to me. "Salute him." Give me an apron of freedom and a prayer-carpet which are the deeds of a sufi. This was a reminder of his father to my father. He saluted him. Hemistich: Know. How can one have a house in the world. He recited with eloquent tongue:

And it was not like the period of house, Oh mother of Malek But surrounded by chains of control.

He said, "I departed from my father knowing his condition." He wept and said, "I had known man with certainty for death." He was the last king of Subuktagin dynasty. Blessed is He whose kingdom is permanent and times do not change it. He cried tush for this mean world. How do you do this to your children? We question God, the Almighty to unveil it to our hearts till we see it with eyes of reality, and accept it and get engaged with it. Verily the is powerful over everything.

In 584 (1188), Mu'izzuddin assailed the fort of Tabarhind in Hind for good. Its ruler fled to Rāy Bathu (Prithviraj) for shelter to Ajmer. His brother Rāy Kubha was there and met him. His brother Rāy Govind ruler of Delhi got ready for his help. He returned to Tabarhind with them. Mu'izzuddin received intelligence of it. He marched against them to Narāyan and there he saw both of them assembled. They arrayed rows of the army. It was a fierce

Original Text, p. 677.

battle. One of them was emboldened in self to repel it. The unbelievers were in a large number. They came in the way of victory. In the meantime, it so \* happened that Mu'izzuddin in his encounter with Ray Govind could not recognize one from the other. The unbeliever was on an elephant. He struck him with what was in his hand, that is, a mace or what was heavy in weight on his shoulder. The blow was near the teeth with a stab of Mu'izzuddin. Two of his teeth gave way. They fell upon his face and turned to his elephant from him. Mu'izzuddin, inspite of the wound and the stab being in even combination, as preordained, lost his consciousness by the wound. He turned reins of his horse and he fell on the ground. The Ghurian army fled. One of the preoccupied men who was near him saw him in that state. He followed him and embraced him and came out from the battle-field with him. His soldiers gathered around him. They dismounted him from the horse in a painful state. They took out with a fork the point of a lance and applied something to soften it. They attacked them on heads and drove them to a place of safety. It is stated in 'al-Kāmil' that Mu'izzuddin took a stock of difficulties in a war with Hind. When the army was separated from him, his wound was healed. His left hand became useless. He fell to the ground by another blow on his head. The night stopped war between them. Ghiyāthuddin sympathised with his party of Turk slaves in darkness of the night. They were in search of him in the battle-field and weeping for not finding him. The Hindus had returned. They talked with them. He was in strain due to what had happened. They came to him in all haste and attacked them on heads, walking by turns. They continued attack till they reached Uija. His safety's report spread. The first thing that he did was that he punished the Ghurian amirs who fled from him. He kept them safe. He filled nose-bags of horses with barley and took an oath. In case they failed to eat it, their necks would be struck off. They ate it through necessity. His brother Ghivathuddin received a report of his defeat. He wrote to him blaming for his haste. Abu 'Umaru al-Juzjāni said that Kadi of Tulak was in the fort of Tabarhind as its Amir. When this event took place, Ray Prithviraj besieged it. War continued constantly between him and the amirs Diauddin, Kādi of Tulak, Muhammed bin 'Abdussalām Narsāwi Tulaki along with men of Tulak twelve hundred or more for three months. Ray Prithviraj retreated. He returned to Ghazna with his companions.

In 588 (1192), Mu'izzuddin made his appearance with his brother Ghiyāthuddin. He had encamped at Murghāb in an encounter of Sultān Shāh.† He then equipped himself with one hundred thousand (foot) and twenty thousand horse for Tabarhind. Rāy Prithvirāj came to his brother and decided upon war. Mu'izzuddin had come to Narain. He arrayed his army. He had

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 678.

taken with him some weapons of iron resembling points of Kitad (a thorny tree) with triangular head to control elephants. He ordered to sprinkle them on the plain at a distance of bowshot (furlong) or two. The commander-in-chief had eighty thousand soldiers under him. He advanced with vanguards of forty thousand. He became a dodge for the army of unbelievers, retiring and fleeing, right and left. They were under the impression that vanguards of the army are not equal. Vanity assailed them to attack the vanguards. They scattered themselves in search of them. They were before and behind till they supervised the army which had a mistaken notion. They distributed the vanguards from face of the army near scattered thorns. One joined with the other. The elephants came and treaded upon thorns. They felt pain and turned against their companions. It became extremely difficult for them to isolate them. They goaded the army in their wake. Time became a strong factor as well as action of the sword. It was an uneasy day for the unbelievers. Ray Prithviraj was killed in the battle-field. His head was brought. Ray Govind perished on the environs of Narsi at the hands of one of his followers for the sake of plunder. He came with his head. Mu'izzuddin had known him on the occasion of spearfight. Rāy Kula (Gola) was lost. God made His party victorious. Mu'izzuddin then advanced to Ajmer and conquered it. He conquered Hansi, Sarasti and all the region of Siwalik that year. He then elevated the rank of one of the amirs from among his mamālik, Qutbuddin Aibak. He appointed him his Nāib ( Vice-roy ), in this region. Its capital was Kuhtam fort. He advised him with what advice was o be given and returned to Ghazni. At the time of this victory, Malek Diauddin Muhammed, son of his uncle made his appearance before him and praised him.

In the year 589 (1193), Qutbuddin marched from Kuhrām to Meerat and conquered it. That very year Qutbuddin conquered Delhi, basis of the kingdom of Hind.

In the year 590 (1193), Mu'izzuddin marched from Ghazni to neighbour-hood of Banāras and Kanauj and conquered them on the environs of Chandāwal. It was a fierce battle with Jaichand which resulted in his defeat. He left his elephants behind him three hundred and ten rings in number. They fell in the hands of Mu'izzuddin. Afterwards, his conquests in Hind continued in succession at the hands of Qutbuddin Aibak. An account of his conquest, in particular follows in this book.

In 599 (1202-03), Mu'izuddin marched from Ghazna towards Khurāsān to meet his brother. He got a report of his death when he was between Tus and Sarakhs. He turned towards Bādghis and alighted there. He sat in mourning. He then divided his kingdom. He gave Bust, Farāh, Asfarār to Ghiyāthuddin

Original Text, p. 680.

Mahmud bin Ghiyathuddin Muhammed and Firoz Koh, the capital of Ghur, Dawar, and rings of elephants to Diauddin Muhammed Aba 'Ali and Herat to his sister's son Nāsiruddin Ghāzi Alp bin Kurra Arsalān Saljuki. He then returned to Ghazna. In 601 (1204), Mu'izzuddin marched to Khwarazm and encamped there. Its ruler was Muhammed Khwārazm Shāh. Each one of them strove hard for a period for escalating the city. Ultimately, it was won. Many persons of both the parties were killed. When he felt scarcity of fodder and blockade of supplies Mu'izzuddin moved on from that place towards Balkh travelling on the coast of Jaihun. On the environs of Andkhud, he encountered the advance-guard of the kings of Turks and Khatā. They had alighted at river on his way. They were in large numbers preventing him from opposition. Mu'izzuddin, inspite of a small army with him-he had become weak on account of his encampment at Khwārazm—put sincere faith in patience, stirred his men with reward and advised them to be firm recited what God had revealed in His Book "A small army overpowers a big army by the command of God and God is with those who are patient". He assailed the vanguard of the commander of spearmen, Salar Husain Kharmil, pressed him hard, routed him and returned endeavouring to move on to his army in their wake as far as their kings' encampment and to take them unawares without their knowledge. He replied "Since long, I was in search of such a day, when God has obliged me with it, I will not mix it with what mischief one commits out of perfidy, night-attack and artifice. He ordered for encampment. At mid-night, Malek-ul-Gurzwan (king of spearmen ) was covered over by darkness and isolated through intense desire \* for martyrdom with multiplicity of the Turks. He had five thousand horses. He was deprived of divine grace. He had a large number of followers, double the number of men and horses. In the morning, Mu'izzuddin had none of his muluk with him except those who were like pure gold and mamalik needed for the occasion. He ordered to blow the bugle and despatched elephants in advance as was his wont and in their wake were footmen. They passed with all grandeur and splendour with remaining companions, one hundred horses, and some rings of elephants. He was not returning from war, with a canopy over his head with a thing like porcupine in its centre. Just then, one of his greatest mamaliks, the Turk Aibak Akhu Aibah Joki stood in his way and turned him with his reins to the fort of Andkhud and entered the fort with him along with the subordinates who were with him and spent the night in it. A large number of Turks and Khata perished. The Muslims were inclined for peace with their efforts and the effort of Malek Uthman al-Samarkandi. He belonged to the party of Mu'izzuddin. They concluded peace. Army of Khatā went from where they had come. Mu'izzuddin came out of the fort and started for Ghazni. Juzjāni

Original Text. p. 681.

parrated in this manner. But Khawand Mir had narrated this incident i "Habib-us-Sivar" thus: When he alighted at Khwarazm, he fought with its Sultan Muhammed Khwarzm Shah. Mufizzuddin was defeated by him and fled t Firoz Koh or to Ghazna. On different versions, Khwarazm Shah corresponded with him saving "It was dread from you in the beginning and later on injustice I treaded the path of warning. You then turned to personal reform. I had resolved upon it." Mu'izzuddin replied to him. Juzjāni said that when he came to Ghazni, he decided to conquer Turkastan. In the meantime, he received a report of Khokhar revolt. The residents improved. He took pride for he was free from it. He said in the account of Ghiyathuddin, that Muhammed Khwarazm Shāh questioned Ţāyanku Tarāz al-Khatāi when he was safe in captivity. "Whor. did you find of strongest might?" He replied, "The Ghuri". He did not mention Ghiyathuddin who fought with him. He intended thereby one who came to him from Khatā for help of Takash Khwārazm Shāh or for help of Sultān Shah. Just then, he fixed the Ghuri to be Mu'izzuddin. He did not mention him as he fought with him with steadfastness. Perhaps it was sufficient. He\* informs about victory of Tayanku Taraz in wars, in accordance with the statement "like war of Sanjar and war of Mu'izzuddin. He is clear for it was he whom he intended.

In the year 602 ( 1205 ), Mu'izzuddin Muhammed Sam's career came to an end with his martyrdom. When he resolved upon entry in the region of Turks and Khatā and had announced for preparation, he received news of insurgence of the Khokhars for three years. They committed robbery and brigandage on the environs of Lähore. It was most important to summon the outside ruler ita make amends for that. He came to Lahore. Qutbuddin Aibak presented himself with the army of Hind. He moved in various directions eradicating mischief-mongers. On one of the events, Mu'izzuddin saw Shamsuddin Iltamash wading through river Jhelum with his horse. He fought with great ferocity He was surprised at this. When he appeared before him in company of Quibuddin; he inquired about him from Quibuddin. He spoke of him with praise. He admonished Quibuddin to marry his daughter with him. He permitted Quibuddin to return to Delhi while he himself set out for Ghazni. When he was at the manzil of Damik an Isma'li heretic came to him in his leisure time for which he was waiting and stabbed him with a dagger. He died. May mercy of God be on him! Juzjāni states that it is narrated that the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him was asked about the Day of Judgment. He replied that it would take place at the end of sixth century and some more. Martyrdom of Mu'izzudin took place in 602 (1205). It exhibited one of the signs of the Day of Judgment. In that year, Changiz

Original Text, p. 682.

Khān al-Mughali, King of Tatār issued forth (for his barbarities and atrocities). Thus, he became cause for fixation of the Day of Judgment, for he stood for absence of security. Changiz Khan's emergence was for destruction of the world. There is no doubt for the Day of Judgment. Ibn-ul-Athir has parrated that Mu'izzuddin was brave. He was the precursor of many religious wars in Hind. His character was excellent. He was a ruler with religion. It is related that an 'Alawi child, who was five years of age met him. He called him and said prayers on his behind. The child said. "I have not eaten anything for the last five days. Mu'izzuddin returned from ride. The child had departed. He alighted in his house and fed the 'Alawi with good food in his presence. He then gave him money. He surrendered the amount to his father. He distinguished him among all the 'Alawis by great wealth. The historian further says that he made learned appear in his presence. They talked about theological problems etc. Fakhr-ur-Rāzi used to give sermon in his:palace. One day he\* appeared in his presence and gave a sermon. He said at the end of his sermon, "Oh Sultan! you are not the Sultan to live for ever. Fraud of Razi also will not last. Verily our return is to Allah. Shihabuddin wept. People pitied him for his copious weeping. He was tender-hearted and belonged to Shāfai'school of thought. Again it is said that he was a Hanafi. Mu'izzuddin had no son but only one daughter. He was very fond of purchasing Turk mamalik (slaves). He educated and trained them. Forty of them had become famous. They became muluk (kings). One day, it was said to him "We wish you had a son to be remembered." He said, "I have forty mamalik. They will rule after me. My name will remain because of them." The historian said that they were known as "Chahalgāni" that is, the number forty. It was like that. He further said that his treasure contained gems of different varieties, as it reported that Ismā'il was his treasurer. He said that diamond is the most precious gem. The weight of diamonds alone was fifteen hundred maunds. From this, imagine the rest of gems which were other than diamond. Gold and silver were in untold quantity. There is nothing to invalidate evidence. Some one has written about the date of his death t

> Martyrdom of king of sea and land, Mu'izzuddin No king like him was born from beginning of the world. Third of Sha'bān in the year six hundred and two He fell (died) on the way to Ghazni at manzil Damik.

Original Text, p. 683.

## CHAPTER XXV

## History of the Slaves

Outbuddin Aibak, the Conqueror of Delhi

It is stated in "Tabaqāt-i-Nāsiri" of al-Juzjāni that Outbuddin Aibak was paralytic and that he was a Turk by origin. He came to Nishapur. He was bought by the Chief Kādi Fakhruddin 'Abdul 'Azif al-Kufi, a descendant of the Imam-i-A'zam Abi Hanifa, may God be pleased with him. He gave him the most excellent training and seated him in the Maktab (school) along with his children. He learnt the Ouran and acquired necessary knowledge of theology of religion as well as nice practical behaviour in the world. He displayed himself as a worthy man. Some one bought him from Fakhruddin and came with him to Ghazni. He brought him to the presence of its Sultan Mu'izzuddin Muhammed who bought him from him. He had paralysis in his hand. He became known as Aibak (paralytic). Though he was not qualified with handsome appearance, he was a man of excellent morals, laudable in qualities, a horseman, brave, wise, accomplished, great, generous, upright, felicitous, an\* amir (commander), administrator, victorious, grateful and worthy of praise. Imām Malek-ul-Kalām (king of speech ) Bahāuddin Awsani speaks thus about him:

Your gift is in lac in the world

Your palm has tired mine with work

Through envy of your palm, the heart of mine is congealed with blood It produced sufficient rubies of great value in its midst.

The cause of his advancement was that Sultān Mu'izzuddin had pleasant night conversation in connection with eminent leaders. At times these were means of pleasure and delight. At the end of assembly, there was a general award of gifts and presents to those who were present as well as close asseciates. There was a turn of mamālik. He had reserved a share of every one of them except he. He distributed presents among servants in the majlis. There did not remain anything for him. Mu'izzuddin learnt about it. He applauded him and thanked him for his liberal attitude. He looked towards him with favour and made him nearer to himself and raised him rank after rank till he attained to the post of "Amir-i-Ākhur" (Superintendent of Stables). In the battle at Murghāb, he was an amir for supply of hay-stock. He fell in captivity. It became the cause of victory as narrated before in the account of Sultān Ghiyāthuddin. After the victory, he was brought in iron-chains on a camel.

Original Text, p. 684,

Mu'izzuddin ordered to break chains and invested him with Amirship. When Mu'izzuddin conquered Ajmer and Siwālik, he gave him Kuhrām and ennobled him by appointment as his Naib in Hind. Victories continued in succession during his vice-royalty. He conquered Meerat in 587 (1191), Delhi, basis of Hindi region in 588 (1192) and in the year 590 (1193), Mu'izzuddin made his appearance. He and Sălār 'Izzuddin Husain Kharmil were in command of advance-guard in the vicinity of Chandawal. After a fierce war, Ray Jaichand, ruler of Banāras fled away. It was annexed. In 501 (1104), he conquered Bhikar (Bakhkar) and in 503 (1196-07), he marched toward Naharwala and routed its ruler Ray Bhimdev in a war and conquered it. It got included in the dominions of Islam. It was the capital of Gujarat till this day of ours. He continuously conquered a city after city till his conquests in the east touched distant countries of Chin, Māchin (a country to the south of China and east of Hind, Tibet). After the death of Sultan Mu'izzuddin, the Mu'izzi Muluk in concert wrote to Ghiyāthuddin Mabmud son of Ghiyāthuddin Muḥammed requesting him to remain in the capital of his uncle, Ghazni. He complied with the request and contented himself with what he had of his father's territory. He\* examined the question of appointment of his Naib in Hind. He chose him and addressed him as Sultan Outbuddin. Till that date, he was called by his name Aibak Shall. He sent an envoy with a canopy. In 602 (1205), he marched from Delhi to Lähore and ascended the throne there. During his regime, Ikhtiyāruddin Muḥammed Bhakhtiyār Khalji conquered Bihār, Bang (Bengal), Kāmrud and Nudiya. In 603 (1206), a battle took place between him and Taj-ud-Din Yilidiz al-Mu'zzi, Sultan of Ghazni at Lahore. After a victory, he pursued him to Ghazni, entered it and stayed there for forty days and returned to Lähore. He married a daughter of Tajuddin Yildiz.

In the year 607 (1210), he was playing polo when he fell down from the horse when the front part of the saddle came upon his heart and he died. He was buried at Lāhore. A cupola is built over his tomb. The period of his rule in Hind was twenty years from conquest of Delhi to end of his life. His exact rule was for four years and some months. His name became current on the tongues in Hind on his conquest of Delhi. From the outset, he had design against the city. Its conquest became difficult. He went out for hunting once in one of its directions. He was isolated from his companions in the search of game. He became hungry. He stood at a house. The lady of the house brought hot milk for him and placed it in his palm to drink it. He was unable to take a morsel out of tray due to its being extremely hot. He tried frequently but failed. She laughed and said to him that he was like Sultān Qutbuddin. He said to her, "What is the matter with him?" She said, "He wants the kingdom

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 685.

but does not intend except the city. It was difficult for him. It he began wenvirons and surranding region, like him, you will not place it in the mid of hand. It prevents you to take it from sides. Come to it, it is cold." said, "you spoke the truth. You have given good advice." He did accord to her advice and conquered Delhi. Quibuddin had three daughters. Two them were married to Malek Nāṣiruddin Qubācha al-Mu'izzi and one to mamluk Shamsuddin Iltamash. The daughter of Tājuddin Yıldiz was mari to Sultān Quibuddin, may mercy of God be upon them.\*

## Sultan Aram Shah bin Kufbuddin

Ārām Shāh ascended the throne of his father Qutbuddin at Lāhore. Normalin Kubāch who was with him then marched to Uchch and Multān. Dur the regime of Ārām Shāh, the Qutbi government was divided into four pasteruled at Lāhore. Nāṣiruddin Qubācha was in Sind with its adjacent te tory; 'Ali Mardān Khalji at Lakhnawat and Shamsuddin Iltamash at De Ārām Shāh then marched to Delhi. A battle took place between him Shamsuddin on its ontskirts. He was captured. Shamsuddin sent him Badāun and suppressed the information. That happened in the year of ascension.

## Abil Muzaffur Shamsuddin Iltamish

Shamsuddin was a Turk by origin. He belonged to the tribe of E Ailam Khân was head of this tribe. He loved Shamsuddin and distinguis him from among all his sons who out of jealousy sold him to a merchant pas on the road. He was a child of handsome appearance. Jamaluddin Ci Oabā bought him and took him to Bukhārā. He came with him to M zuddin at Ghazna. He demanded him for a cheap price. He did not agree t Mu'izzuddin became angry and proclaimed against him in the city that no should buy him from him. He returned with him to Bukhārā. He came l to him after three years. Qutbuddin was with him. He represented him him and apprised him of the proclamation. He kept silent till the day o departure to Hind. He took leave to purchase him. Mu'izzuddin said to "But not in Ghazni; as I have proclaimed against him. If you want him, him from him after you go out of it." Jamaluddin accompanied him to L and purchased him from him at a sufficient price according to his pleasure paid regard to him in his training. Juzjāni said, "He who heard the r Shamsuddin inform me about him." He said, "When I was brought to Bukl for sale for relationship with Sadr-i-Jahan, I was like a son to him. All members of his family took care of me. One day I was sent to the market particles of gold to purchase grapes. They fell down from my hand. I seare for them but did not find them. Some one found me weeping. He was wea

Original Text, p. 686,

a robe. He asked me as to why I wept. I informed him the cause of it. He\* bought me grapes at the price of those particles of gold and gave them to me. He said to me, "When you become the Sultan, you call a man wearing a robe (khirkā)." He stared at him and applauded him. He looked at him with perfect eye. He took a promise from me for that and went away from me. Verily, it was a blessing for him. Juzjāni says that it became one of the causes of his advancement. A hājji, a merchant of Bukhārā bought him. Jamāluddin Chust Oabă bought him from him, From him, he came to the Sultan Outbuddin. He regarded him as a son, nurtured him, beautified him with decorum and reached him to the attainment of men. He presented himself with Outbuddin in service of the Sultan Mu'izzuddin. He had come to Lahore to punish rebels. He was then at the river Jhelum when he appeared to be great in the eyes of Mu'izzuddin. He admonished Outbuddin to take care of him and ordered him to marry his daughter with him. He did it. He then became chief of Jandariya (body-guards). He then became Amir-i-Shikar. After Quibuddin's conquest of Kaliwar, he became Amir of this strong fort and its environs. He then annexed to it portions of the town of Baran and its suburbs. He bestowed upon him the region of Badaun and designated him Malek on account of valour, prowess, administration, personal accomplishments and qualities. He was formerly an amir and now he became a Malek. When Outbuddin died, he was at Badaun. 'Ali bin Ismā'il, Amir-ul-'Adl (Minister of Justice) in concert with other amirs and nobles decided to nominate him Sultan. They wrote to him. He came to Delhi and ascended the throne in the year of Outbuddin's death. The Outbi and Mu'izzi amirs who were at Lahore and against whom he was biassed, came to Delhi. They were in his favour as wished by God. Those of whom who were in captivity perished. Those who surrendered to him were safe, Ruler of Ghazna, Sultan Tajuddin Yildiz al-Mu'izzi received intelligence of his coronation as Sultan. He was the greatest among Mu'izzi amirs from the lifetime of Mu'izzuddin. He sent to him a canopy and other appurtenances and promised everything else later on, on concord. Tājuddin had caused trouble to Outbuddin in Lähore. Just after that Shamsuddin cajoled out of regard for him to come out of his hand. Muhammed Khwarazm Shah conquered the suburbs of Delhi in the year 612 (1215). After their subjugation, he conquered Zāwalistan and Kābul and controlled the region upto the sea of Sind. He was designated as Naib Khānsālār" between two seas of the sea of Persia, that is, † Māwarā-un-Nahar and the sea of Sind. His son Jalāluddin Mankabarni son of Muhammed Khwarzm Shah ruled as Naib of Sultan of Ghazni. Dawar and Jarrum as well as that portion that belonged to the brothers of Ghiyāthuddin and Mu'izzuddin. He returned to his capital. After the war, Sultan Tajuddin came to Sang Surakh and thence to Lahore and stayed there without esteem

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 657.

and courage. He extended his hand to neighbouring region of Shamsuddin's frontiers. He was prevented to do so but out of pride, he refused except by force. Shamsuddin marched against him. A war took place between them at Nārāin. Yildiz was made a captive. He was sent to Delhi and then to Badāun. It was at the close of his reign that Shamsuddin conquered Lāhore and what belonged to him on the environs of Hind. It took place in the year 612 (1215). It was the year of misfortune of Yildiz. His reign lasted for a few months to be of no account.

Rise of Yildiz to power and his fall

As stated above Sultan Mu'izzuddin left no son but a daughter of the daughter of his uncle Näsiruddin Muhammed Mādini. He multiplied by purchase of Turk mamaliks. During his regime, they obtained their freedom, became famous and turned out dignified amirs. Among them were "the famous forty" known as Chahalgani. They became worthy of the kingdom and the canopy. Sultan of Ghazni, afterwards Tājuddin Yildiz bought by Mu'izzuddin belonged to them. He had approached adolescence. He looked upon him with favour. He specialized him with nearness to himself. He taised him in esteem in the early part of service and gave him precedence over his other mamalik. He was always looked upon with affection till he became worthy of government. He assigned him Kirman and Asfarar as his fiefs. He thus became of the renowned amirs. He stayed at Kirman when Sultan Mu'izzuddin marched to Hind. His way lay on Kirman, he used to stay there as guest of Tajuddin. He, his muluk, amirs and followers were his guests. After he came out of the essentials of\* feast, he advanced trays of tashrif (robes of honour) before him. Every one of them was given a piece of cloth totalling one thousand, one thousand robes of honour and the cash was given to attendants. This was his annual practice. At the close of his regime, he had halted as usual. Tashrif was placed before him. He took a piece of cloth in his hand, a robe of honour and clothed them with robes while a tashrif was given to him. He raised his rank by grant of the banner of Malek. He was a black man, It was the last of his age, He had two daughters, one of them was married to Malek Nāṣiruddin Qubacha al-Mu'izzi and the other was given in wedlock to Sultan Qutbuddin. He had two sons. One of them was in the maktab. The teacher was giving a lesson. The child was extremely hot-headed. He showed bad temper to the teacher. There was a jug of water before him. He lifted it up and hit it on the teacher's face. He died. Tājuddin was informed about this incident. He sent for the heir of the teacher and gave him an amount of money to go out of the city wherever he liked. The teached had a mother. The amount was placed in her hand. It was a limit for the patience and fortitude on behalf of the teacher.

Original Text, p. 689.

After martyrdom of Sultan Mu'izzuddin, his coffin was brought to Ghazni. The mamalik assembled to remove what was in the treasury. The treasury was under control of the Ghurian muluk. It fell into their hands. When they came to Kirman they appointed the Wazir Muaddul Mulk Muhammed bin 'Abdullah al-Sanjari to move with the coffin accompanied by the Turks and the Amirs. Others remained at Kirman in concord with Tājuddin Yildiz. It was a group of Ghurian amirs consisting of Sipah Salar Sulaiman Sish, Sipah Salar Kharush. They sent information of Mu'izzuddin's death to Bāmian to send its Sultān 'Alauddin Muhammed bin Bahauddin Sam al-Bamiani for the saltanat of Ghazni. After arrival of the coffin to the capital in two or three days, 'Alauddin Muhammed and Taläluddin Muhammed two sons of Bahäuddin al-Bämiani came to Ghazni. He ascended the throne in concert with the Ghuris and the Turks who were present there. He controlled the Mu'zzi treasure and divided it half to half between himself and his brother. Juzjāni said that a reliable person informed me that half of it which moved on to Jalaluddin at Bamian consisted of a load of one hundred and fifty camels of gold, silver, jewel-studded instruments and gold and silver utensils. But Tājuddin and his confederates wrote to\* Ghiyathuddin Mahmad b'n Ghiyathuddin Muhammed from Kirman inducing him to ascend the throne at the capital of his uncle for he was a rightful claimant from among the sons of Bahauddin. He replied, "I am quite contented with what my father had, Ghazni for Tājuddin. A canopy and designation of Sultan were sent to him. They took up arms for going out to Ghazni. In the meantime, letters of summous arrived to him from the Wazir Muadd-ul-Mulk and the Turkish amirs. He marched from Kirman to it, 'Alauddin came out. It was a fierce war between them outside Ghazni. Muadd-ul-Mulk and his confederates stopped their help. He and the Shansabaniya muluk were captured. Tājuddin entered the capital. He granted leave to 'Alauddin and his confederates to return to Bāmian. Julāluddin met the ruler of Bāmian on foot for his boundary and al-Ghur. The army of Be'u from Waksh and Badakhshan helped him with might to get something out of Ghazni gold. He came out from Bāmian for succour of his brother 'Alauddin and conquered it. He stayed there and returned to Bāmian. Tājuddin returned to Ghazni and 'Alauddin prepared the army of Ghur for resistance. When they alighted at the inn of Sanakram, Amir Aitkan of Tatar fell upon them. Tājuddin prepared him against them. He captured the amirs in a state of drunkenness and killed all of them. Tājuddin descended upon Ghazna and besieged it for four months till Jalaluddin met him and arrived for help to his brother. When he was in its neighbourhood, the Turks encountered him. His soldiers fled away. They were captured and brought to Tājuddin. It was a victory on his death. He came to 'Alauddin as

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 690.

a captive. He was kind to them out of regard for Mu'izzuddin. He then released them and permitted them to return to Bāmian after taking a pledge from them. Difference arose among them.

Jalaluddin was full of courage and valour. He marched to Muhammed Khwarazm Shah requesting him for help for the conquest of Ghazni. But he did not do it. After the death of 'Alauddin, his brother Jalaluddin sat on the throne. He came to him after conquest of 'Iraq on inadvertence of Muhammed Khwarazm Shah, captured him and killed him. He conquered Bamian. Then there was a war between Tājuddin and Qutbuddin on the frontiers of Panch Ab of Sind. But he was defeated. Qutbuddin came to Ghazni and returned as stated before. Tajuddin entered it. Mahmud Husain Kharmil was an Amir at Herat on behalf of Ghiyathuddin. He rebelled against him. He got inclined towards Muhammed Khwarazın Shah. Tajuddin sent an army to help Ghiyathuddin. It was a victory. Tājuddin then marched to Sajistān and descended upon it.\* It lay within jurisdiction of Tajuddin. He fought, made peace and returned. On the way, a war took place between him and Malik Nasiruddin Husain, Amir-i-Shikar contrary to what they wished from him. Nasiruddin fled away and proceeded to Khwarazm and then returned. On Tajuddin's proceeding towards flind, the Ghaznawi amirs agreed upon killing Nasiruddin Husain and Khwaja Muadd-ul-Mulk Muhammed bin 'Abdullah al-Sakhari, It so happened, After a lapse of forty days from their murder, Muhammed Khwarazm Shah came to Ghazni from side of Takhāristān. Tājuddin came out from the way of Sang Surakh to Lahore. A war took place between him and Shamsuddin. He was captured and martyred, mercy of God be on him. He was buried at Badaun. A mausoleum was built. People get blessings. He ruled for nine years.

In the year 614 (1217), a war took place between Shamsuddin and Näşiruddin Kubacha at Lähore. He fled to Sind.

In 619 (1222), Shamsuddin marched towards Lähore. The cause of it was that Jalahuddin Muhammed Mankabarani son of Muhammed Khwarazm Shah was with his brother in the event of invasion of Changiz Khan, Malek of Tatar. When he died, many persons gathered around him and among them were those who were under the sovereignty of his brother. Tartars fled away. He defeated them many a time. His rule became serious. Victory was about to be his.

Account of Jalahuddin Mankabarani al-Khwarazmi

The historian has narrated in his 'Tabakāt' that Jalāluddin ruled over Ghur and Ghazni during the time of his father. His wazir Was Shihābuddin Alb al-Sarakhsi. He governed Ghazni on his behalf. He was a man of perfect

Original Text, p. 691.

ent and a Malek of Karbaz. Mubārizuddin Shirāzi was at Firozkoh, ul-Umara at Kirmān; Abi Bakr at Pur which was in jurisdiction of Malek ruddin Muhammed bin 'Ali Kharbust. At the time of Tatār inroad, he mained with his father. He dispersed his soldiers at Madan and invincible is reserve. He encamped outside the city of Balkh. In 612 (1215), the atrocities started at Bukhārā in the shape of assassination, captivity, and incendiarism of books, martyrdom of learned men including Ruknudnāmzāda. It is related that he composed the following verses on the on of his martyrdom:

I said, "Who?" My heart said, "Who has shed our blood?"

I said, "My soul" He said, "Who is behind us?"

I said, "The dog of your lane fell among us."

He said, "Do not speak for it is elevated by us."

(1220), he received intelligence of what occurred at Samarqand. His rs consisted mostly of Tatars and Khata. His soldiers were old-fashioned. residents of his kipgdom who were with his fore-fathers gained ascendancy hem at Madan and Kala' (forts). Only a small number of them remained in. Those who were with him from Tatar and Khata proved perfidious. carried him to Changiz. He received a report of it. One night, he came his tent to a side. When he was with him, they surrounded his tent and ed to plunder. His fear became most serious. He went to Nishapur with who were with him. The Mughals soldiers of Changiz came in his wake. ed to Māzandarān and halted at a river known as Darah Kamisa. The als saw him. He went walking in flight from them to mountains of ıdaran and ascended them. Jalaluddin and son of Ra'is of Mazandaran with him as well as a small number of his subordinates. He journeyed hem to halt at an island of Kharba in the sea of Khazar. He stayed there period. He then complained of stomach-ache. He came out of it with prerance of black bile in him. Abdomen pain recurred. He said to his son. sh you to carry me (on back) to Khwarazm. My intention is to get hold alth which is there from the commencement of my saltanat. It is on the se as :

When people are engaged seriously in their work

Nothing is better than this that they should be joined to it, as weak enough to ride. He was carried in a camel-litter. They went to razm. He died before reaching it. He entered Khwārazm. He was i by the side of his father, Takash. It happened in the year 617 (1220). In the absence of Muḥammed Khwārazm, Ukim his son ruled under the nee of Quṭbuddin Arzalushāh. He was younger than Jalāluddin and †

cautious among all. Jalaluddin separated him and entered deserts of Sharastan. He treated thence deserts of West Nishapur and Khurasan to Kirman and to Ghazni. The historian narrated from reliable sources that he met Khidr, may peace be on him in that desert he treaded and gave him good news of kingdom on condition of not shedding the blood of a Muslim himself. He gave him a pleage for it. When he came to Ghazni, the king of Herât Amin Hâjib titled Malek Khan from the outset of invasion was there on his way to Hind along with his men. He met him and joined with him. Changiz received news of it. He prepared his son-in-law Fikar Nawin to march to Ghazni. Jalāluddin encountered him and fought with him on the environs of Barwan and put him to rout. Help continued to come to him to Thalath. He continued to fight and defeat him upto Ghazni. Changiz Khan learnt about it. He was at Talqan in Khurāsān. He marched towards him. A multitude of hordes prevented him from resistance. Jalaluddin proceeded towards Barshur. He was going in his pursuit and a war ensued between them on the shore of sea of Sind. After a fierce war, he entered his horse in sea and came out of it. He was safe against Changiz, Changiz was wonderstruck for he was out of the sea. It was most wonderful for its depth. The shore was at a distance. He would not have crossed except by the horse or similar to that. Juzjāni says that Malek Ikhtiāruddin Muhammed bin 'Ali Kharbust came, under order, from his region of Barshur to Ghazni. He was accomplished in person and qualities and renowned in wars. He was an administrator, brave, intrepid, and victorious. He was from among the greatest maleks of Ghur. All persons who had gone away assembled around him at Ghazni. Their number was one hundred and thirty thousand horse. Shihābuddin Alp, the Wazir along with Jalāluddin was in attendance upon Khwarazm Shah. He too came to Ghazni; Malek Khan also was there. The Wazir then brought the report of Jalaluddin's march from Khurasan to Ghazni. Salahuddin, Amir-ush-Shurta (Superintendent of Police) hinted for the murder of Malek Ikhtiäruddin Muhammed. A feast was arranged. Şalāḥuddin stabbed him with a knife and he died of it. All those who were with him dispersed for this reason. A large number of 'Arabs had gathered in the army of Jalaluddin. It was a third defeat of the Mughals. They lagged behind for the spoils in \* Persia. When Persia was conquered as desired, the soldiers dispersed, with the death of the Malek and the isolation of the 'Arabs. In an hour of need, Jalaluddin was undone by despair. He waded through the sea with horse. Changhiz was surprised at his rashness. He forbade to throw dart at him for he was to be caught alive. When none took conrage, he entered the sea and ordered to throw a dart at him. Only the last breath of life remained with him. He had caught his collar by the teeth when the waves flowed over him. He turned to

Original Text, p. 694.

his sons and said, "If one had a son, he should be like him. This incident took place in the month of Rajab, 618 (1221).

Jalaluddin then roamed about in the neighbourhood of Sind. He used to receive news in it. He journeyed to Dewal and Makran and returned to the precincts of Lahore. Shamsuddin permitted him to come to Delhi. He turned away from him. He then journeyed to Uchch, Multan and Siwastan and thence to Kirman and Fars. He married the daughter of Atabek Abi Bakr ruler of Diyar Bikr and treated him well in a feast. He stayed at Fars for several days. He then travelled to Azarbaijan and conquered Karkh, killed unbelievers and subdued the region. He then invaded Syria and Rum and conquered the people of Syria. He returned to Multan. Tarani Mughal had encamped there. When he heard about him, he embraced Islam at his hands. He then attacked the Mughal and gained a victory over him.

In the year 618 or 619 (1221 or 1222), he descended on the outskirts of Azarbaijān from the direction of Diyār Bikr and Syria and the Mughal army made an assault on him. He fled from them to a village of the region of Akhalāt. The ruler of the village recognized him. In a battle with Syrians, his sons were killed. He fell upon him unawares and killed him in their retaliation. The ruler of Syria learnt about it. He felt sorry for it and killed the killer. His wife, daughter of the Atābek was in the village with him. The ruler of Syria sent her to her brother. The Khwārazmshāhiya Dynasty, terminated with him.

In 622 (1225), Shamsuddin marched towards Lakhnawati. Its Sultan Ghiyathuddin made peace with him in exchange for recitation of the Khutba and the sikka and sent to him thirty rings of elephants and eighty lacs of coins of the age.

In 623 (1226), he marched to Ranthambhor and encamped for two months and conquered it. Histories of Hind relate that when he landed there,\* seventy kings met him for opposition. He travelled from them without a victory.

In 624 (1227), he conquered the fort of Mandur on the outskirts of Siwalik and returned with booty.

In the same year, his son Nāṣiruddin Maḥmud bin Shamsuddin conquered Lakhnawati. He sent a canopy for him and confirmed him in the saltanat. His account will come in the history of Sultāns of Bengal as to how the victory was won.

In the same year, Shamsuddin marched to Uchcha and Multan. The historian, Juzjāni reported that he left Khurāsān in the last months of the year

Original Text, p. 695.

623 (1226), at the time of Tatar inroads and came to Ghazni and Bany. arrived by leading the horse to Uchch and entered it on Tuesday Jamadi I. 624 (1227). Its ruler was Sultan Nasiruddin Kubacha al-1 In Zilhaji of the year, he appointed me a trustee of Firoziva Madresa army of his son 'Alanddin Bahram Shah was ended. In Rabi'l of th Sultan Shamsuddin came to Uchch and encamped outside it. Naşı Kubācha had encamped outside the town of Lahrut. Boats of the sea c had anchored with their cargo. Others were on the coast of sea. In the time, a report came from Multan about the arrival of Nasiruddin / al-Mu'izzi from Lahore to him. Multan was under him. On the arr Shamsuddin to Tabarhind, Wazir 'Ain-ul-Mulk Husain al-Ash'ari, under carried treasures of Uchcha with him to the fort of Bhakkar. It was a fort in the middle of the sea. In the wake of its departure from it, the ad guard of Shamsuddin came there. Malek 'Izzuddin Muḥammed Sālāri as Amir Hājib and Malek of Tabarhind, Kazalik Khan Sanjar Sultani wer it. Shamsuddin came there after four days. In the meanwhile Nasi embarked the sea to Bhakkar and garrisoned it. Shamsuddin sent his Nozām-ul-Mulk Muhammed Junaidi to it for a siege. Jamāluddin Muha 'Awti narrates in his book "Jame' ul-Hikāyāt" advancing arguments information of it for he was with him inside the fort. He begins the box divides it in chapters where he takes his side. When Nasiruddin perist stopped for time to arrange it and divide it in chapters. He lost it bu on, found it in the majlis of Nizām-ul-Mulk the Wazir and obtained it t his favour. He improved its arrangement, completed it and adorned it v address in his name. He described him "On end of Nizam" with an enc in his praise. On 1st. Rabi'I, 625 ( 1227-28 ), Sultan Shamsuddin encam the fort of Bhakkar. On 12th of the month, Nizām-ul-Mulk the Wazir enc at its gate and the ruler Nāṣiruddin was in it. He was making prepa but the sea was there. On Monday, 2nd Jamadi I, Nizam-ul-Mulk got from a boat intending to enter the fort. The ruler had taken shelter in to Nizām-ul-Mulk opened the fort and proclaimed amnesty to those who wer the fort. Hence none lost anything. People said prayers on his beha then granted amnesty to Nāṣiruddin. Only fifty persons had remained w inside the fort. He sent son 'Alāuddin Bahrām Shāh bin Nāşiruddi treasures to Shamsuddin. Nizām-ul-Mulk raised no objection. When Shamsuddin, he was not contented from him for sending his son, nay, he him to come to him. He took courage to come to his majlis. It was : thing for him to demand safety with surrender of self. He came out of t and stood at the sea and recited.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 696,

If your benefit lies in harm to a person like me May days of mark like me be few I did not choose a hair that in may get polluted Hand of a person like you is in blood of one like me.

Image of death in his eye created fear in him. He fell in the sea and got drowned. It happened on Thursday night, 19th Jamadi I of the year.

Early life of Nāsiruddin al-Mu'izzi

Juzjāni narrated that Nāṣiruddin Kubācha was a great Sultān from among the Turk mamalik of Mu'izzuddin. He was wise, sagacious, intelligent, full of judgment with valour, prowess and pride etc. elevated mind, skill and forsight. He boiled over with praise for him for all his services chiefly as an\* Amir of the army and regions and in the incident at Andiud with Turk Muluk and Khatā. Malek Nāsiruddin Aitam al-Mu'azzi obtained martyrdom as ruler of Uchch and Multan. He was praised for his deeds. Mu'izzuddin returned to Ghezni by granting him Uchch. He had married the daughter of Outbuddin. 'Alauddin, Bahram Shah was result of the union. Bahram was handsome, and liberal in morals. He was submissive in youth. May God pardon him. On her death, Outbuddin was at Lähore. He went to Uchch, in the reign of Aram Shāh. He conquered Multān, Sandustān and and Dewāl as far as the sea. He did not leave a single fort in Sind, nor a city, nor a town which belonged to him, He raised two canopies over his head. His kingdom terminated to Jabarhind. Kuhrām and Sarasti. He acted in Lahore many a time and in a battle which was fought between him and Khwaja Muadd-ul-Mulk al-Sanjari, wazir of Täjuddin Yildiz, his feet slipped and he returned from Lähore to his capital Uchch and lived there. At the time of Tatar inroads, many great men of Khurāsān, Ghur and Ghazni fled to him for shelter. In a war which look place between Changiz Khan Mughli and Jalaluddin Mankabarni Muhammed Khwārazm Sbāb, Jalāluddin came to Sind and journeyed towards Dewal and Makrān. After Mughal ascendancy over Nandana, Tarani Nawin Mughal encamped for a period with a large army at Multan and besieged it for forty days. Nāsiruddin retracted in a war with him and made efforts as efforts should be made in the path of God, seized the treasures and distributed them for protection of abode of Islam and for help to needy persons. He gained victory, Tarani Narain returned in a fearful manner. This happened in the year 621 (1224).

In the year 622 (1223), Maleks of Ghur and its eminent men passed through a period of trial due to exile. They came to Nāṣiruddin who sheltered them and treated them well.

In 623 (1226), the army of Khalaj from the Khwarazmiya came to the land of Manşura from cities of Siwastan. They were under the banner of Malek

Original Text, p. 697,

Khan Khalji. Nāṣiruddin marched towards him, fought with him and defeated him. Malek Khān was one of the killed. He returned triumphant to Uchc. On Tuesday. 17th Jamādi I, Shamsuddin besieged Uchch for two months ar twenty-seven days and conquered it. When Nāṣiruddin received intelligence its conquest, he sent his son to him. After his arrival on the 22nd Jamādi. Shamsuddin heard about conquest of Bhakkar, Nāṣiruddin cast himself in t sea and got drowned. He ruled for a pretty long time in Sind, Uchch, ar Multān that is, twenty-two years.

In the same year, those who belonged to the party of Nāṣiruddin assemble in the Diwān of Shamsuddin. Among them was Malek Sinānuddin Ḥabas ruler of Sind, Dewal and territory extending to the sea and what belonged Nāṣiruddin. He returned to Delhi. Juzjāni, the historian narrates that on the day of his alightment outside Uchch, he met him, enjoyed his favour and too him in his service to Delhi. His arrival took place in Ramḍān of the year, 6 (1227-28). That very year, the envoy of Khaiifa of Raghdād came by land Nāgor.

In the year 626 (1228), the ambassador of the 'Abbasi Khalifa Amir-t Muminin al-Mustanşir Billāh, Abu Ja'far bin al-Zāhir came with a robe honour of the Khalifa and standards to Shamsuddin. He received him at ordered him for decoration. It was a day worth seeing.

In this year, he received news of death of his son Nāṣiruddin Maḥmud. Lakhnawati as well as the invasion of Balkā. He marched towards it.

In 627 (1229-30), Balkā Khāriji fell in his hand. He ordered him to leput to death and invested Malek 'Alāuddin Jāni with vice-regency. He retured to Delhi.

In 629 (1231), he descended upon a famous invincible fort at the fort Käliwar. Its ruler was an appressive unbeliever. His name was Milakdev so of Bisal. He strove to climb over it and fought several times. The siet continued for eleven months. Guzjāni said that he was appointed for fixin stated time in the majlis. He used to remain present with Shamsuddin, was he who recited the khutba and led the prayers on the occasion two 'lds.'

In 630 (1232), he won the fort on Tuesday, 16th Şafar. One nigh Milakdev went out of the fort. His eight hundred or more men were capture All of them were brought and produced in front of the Sultān's tent. When I was free from conquests, he made Sipahsālār Majd-ul-Mulk Diauddin Muhamma Junaidi an Amir. Amir Rashiduddin was charged with administration of the Police Department. Juzjāri narrated that he was in charge of Qaḍā (magi

Original Text, p. 698.

tracy), khutba, Imāmat (leading prayers) and accounts. He marched back to Delhi on 2nd Rabi II of the year. In 631 (1233), Shamsuddin marched to Mālwa and conquered the city of Bailsān and its fort and demolished its famous temple. The historians have narrated that its citizens built the temple by digging its foundation and raising its walls one hundred cubits from the ground in 300 years. All the images are fixed with lead. The temple is called Gawājit (?) (Vikramajit) Sultan of Ujjain Nagari. The history of the temple is a proof of what is said about its construction and demolition, that is, eleven hundred years. People of Hind are ignorant of history.

In 632 (1234), Shamsuddin directed his energies for conquest of Khurāsān. He marched towards it with very powerful weapons, which were not with muluk and amirs at the time of Tatār invasion. He was accompanied by chiefs of tribes as well as common people. They all assembled in his Diwān. Swordsmen were in large number. It was a great multitude. His kingdom was extensive. It was efficiently governed by those who were connected with him. they carried earnest desire to their lands and loved them with faith. They marched with such sincerity. On conquest, they encamped. When he alighted in the expanse of Banyād, he fell ill and became extremely weak. He returned to Delhi. He entered it in a litter on the morning of Wednesday, 1st of Sha'bān as chosen by the astrologer: The Lord of the Star does what He wishes.

In 633 (1236), Sultān Shar suddin Iltamish, mercy of God be on him.\* died on Monday, 20th Sha'bān (20th April). He was virtuous, wise, a complished, clement, generous, righteous, felicitous, gracious, triumphant, a good horseman, an administrator, submissive, brave, laudable and grateful. He was full of sound judgment and intellectual powers. He was well disposed towards scholars, loved the righteous, helped the poor, bestowed gifts upon them. His days were prosperous. He was humble to sufis and donned them with robes (khirka) according to their rank. He always continued to carry out his pledges with the sufis till end of life. He used to say, "I am in blessings of them." He left behind him a daughter, Radiya Sultān. He had five sons—Ruknuddin Firoz, Mu'szzuddin Bahrām, Nāşiruddin Maḥmud and Ghiyāthuddin Muhammed and Qutbuddin. His tomb is at Delhi. He reigned for twenty-six years.

#### Sultan Ruknuddin Firoz

Ruknuddin Firoz son of Shamsuddin ascended the throne of his father on Thursday night, 21st Sha'bān, 633 (30th April, 1236). He was his eldest son after Nāşiruddin who died at Lakhnawati. During the regime of his father, he was a sultān at Badāun. His father had granted him a green canopy. 'Ain-

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 700.

ul-Mulk Husein al-Ash'ari was a Wazir to him. He was a Wazir of Nasirruddin Kubācha. It was in the year 625 (1227-28). He was then granted Lähore in 630 (1232). When he marched towards Khurāsān, Ruknuddin had accompanied him. He was present at the time of his father's death in Delhi. He sat on the throne after him. His officers rejoiced at his saltanat for he was accomplished in person and qualities. He then dispersed all those who were present at the travel to Khurasan. Every amir returned to the region of his charge. Ruknuddin enthialled himself to his satan (devil) and allowed low desire to rule over him. He indulged in intoxicated drinks and loved carnal desires. He squandered away what his father had amassed and neglected state affairs. His mother Shah Turkan dominated over him and conducted affairs of the state. It happened what God had wished, due to his vicious deeds. She established her power over everything that belonged to fellow-wives out of\* iealousy. Shamsuddin did not cause harm, injury and ruin during his life. Outbuddin was blinded and murdered. The amirs got prejudiced against her and resolved upon opposition to her. In like manner, Ghiyathuddin Mahammed son of Shamsuddin, ruler of Oudh invaded Ruknuddin and seized the treasure which was being carried to him from Lakhnawati and his horsemen carried on pillage in surrounding places. Most of the amirs of surrounding places decided to become insurgent. They were Malek 'Izzuddin Sālāri, governor of Badāun, Malek 'Alauddin Jani, governor of Lahore, Malek 'Izzuddin Kabir Khan, governor of Multan and Malek Saifuddin Karaji, governor of Hansi. They resolved upon establishment of independent power. Ruknuddin set out from Delhi to make reparation for these incidents. Wazir Nizām-ul-Mulk Muhammed lunaidi separated and marched from Kilokhari to Kaul. He met 'Izzuddin Salan. Both of them went to 'Alauddin Jani and Saifuddin Karaji while Ruknuddin marched towards Kuhrāni. On the way, the Turk amirs who were with him assaulted Tājul Mulk Mahmud ennobled with the title of Malek, Babauddin Husain al-Asheari, Karimuddin Zāhid, Diauddin bin Nizam-ul-Mulk Junaidi, Nizāmuddin Sarfāni, Khwāja Rashiduddin Māykāni and Amir Fakhruddın Dabir and all the 'Arab nobles, in the vicinity of Mansurpur and Nārain and killed all of them. The Delhi nobles met Radiya Sultān daughter of Shamsuddin-Shah Turkan emboldened herself to capture Radiya Sultan. She moved to take that step. Residents of Delhi stirred up to take the side of Radiya Sultān. Sháh Turkān was compelled to fortify herself in the palace for asylum. Radiya Sultān pressed her, seized her by force and killed her. After the murder of above-mentioned persons, Ruknuddin returned from his designs to Delhi. In the wake of Shah Turkans assassination, he came to Kilokhari. He learnt what had happened at Delhi so he halted there. The Turks parted

Original Text, p. 701.

company with him and assembled around those who were in Delhi for taking an oath of allegiance to Radiya Sultān. She despatched some Turk mamālik and Amirs to Kilokhari. They captured Ruknuddin and came with him to her. She ordered him to put in prison on Sunday, 18th Rabi'I. Without\* prolongation in prison, he perished in a day or two in the year 634 (9th Nov. 1236). He ruled for six months, and twenty-eight days. He was a sultān of handsome appearance, features, morals, clement, generous, humble, sound, devoid of qualities of rulership, naturally disposed to good and not inclined to harm. He kept aloof from harm and abomination. He leaned to passions and passionate desires preponderated over him. He did not offend and did not obtain harm but he suffered because of his mother. During the life of Shamsuddin, he was known for good and qualified with good deeds. His deeds were like those of people of salvation who lived between fear and hope. Oh Lord! do not punish us for what the account is lengthy and protect us from evil place of return.

### Sultan Radiya

Radiya Sultan daughter of Sultan Iltamish ascended the throne on the day of arrival of the Turks from Kilokhari to Delhi. She commenced with freedom from her brother Ruknuddin. She then examined the problem which created confusion in the kingdom due to weakness of her brother and excesses of vices of his mother. She made amends for that with tranquillity and reforms. She won applause for that. She displayed herself to men in the style of men. Shamsuddin trained her up for wisdom, nobility, judgment and statesmanship He looked after her much more than he did to his other children. He consulted her in his difficulties. In the early part of her ascension, 'Izzuddin Sālāri, 'Alāuddin, 'Izzuddin Kabir Khān, Saifuddin and Nizamul-Mulk assembled out-side Delhi in opposition to her, Malek Nusratuddin Tānsi, al-Tāzi al-Mu'izzi, governor of Oudh crossed the river Ganga in loyalty to Radiya Sultan, The opponents encountered him. He was an invalid. He was captured. He died after a few days. Radiya Sultan received news of his death. She came out of Delhi and encamped on shore of the river and sent envoys for concordance, 'Izzuddin and 'Alauddin presented themselves one night in her Diwan. She conciliated them. They decided upon their captivity. They learnt about it. They left the manzil and dispersed. The army of the queen pursued them, They captured Saifuddin and his brother Fakhruddin. She ordered to put them to death. 'Alauddin Jani fought in the neighbour hood of Bayal and Darigwan, His head was brought to her. But Nizām-ul-Mulk fled to mountain of Bardārt and perceived his death. She established per power as a sovereign after them. She appointed Khwāja Muhazzab with the title of Nizām-ul-Mulk as her Wazir.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 702.

He was a deputy. Saifuddin Aibak Bhattu was designated as Katlagh He was promoted to the post of Commander-in-chief (Amir-i-'Askar). he died Outbuddin Hasan al-Ghuri succeeded him to the post. He prepa go to Ranihambor to the succour of the garrison. When he came the army of unbelievers dispersed. The Muslims came out of the fort. desolated it and returned to Delhi. 'Izzuddin Kabir Khan marched to Lal which he was the Amir. He entered into loyalty with other amirs from nawati to Dewal. Malek Ikhtiatuddin Aitkin became Amir-i-Haiib Chamberlain). He advanced to highest ranks of nearness to Malek Jama Yaquit who was Amir-i-Akhur (Superintendent of stables). He always ros till the Turk Muluk became jealous of him. Envy entered into their I Radiya Sultan as hinted before had adopted the style of men. She rode a and el-phant. She suspended a sword, wore a hood like the Turk Sultans did not wear a veil. She prepared the army for Kaliwar. The historian I said that he was with her. 'I came out from her in company of Maid-u and Amir Diauddin Junaidi etc. on 1st Sha ban, 635 (1237) to Delhi. I met her, she favoured me with appointment in Nāsiriya Madresa in Dell magistracy of Käliwar. In 637 (1239), 'Izzuddin Kabir Khän, governor of I rose in opposition: Radiya Sultan marched to Lahore. He returned to le and she gave him Multan. It was under Malek Karakash. She return Delhi. Malek Altuniya rose in rebellion. He was governor of Tabarhin was at the instruction of most of the Turk amirs of Delhi. Radiva ! marched to he. They were with her till she encamped at the fort. meantine, the opponents decided upon her captivity. They first assailed Jamaluddin Yakut al-Habashi and killed him. They then captured her carried her to Malek Altuniya in the fort and returned to Delhi. That hap in the year. Malek Altuniya left her in captivity until she agreed for marr The amirs of Delhi such as Izzuddin Sālāry and Malek Karākash met to upon nominating Mu'izzuddin Bahrām bin Shamsuddin as Sultān. Badr Sankar al-Rumi, Amir-i-Ḥajjb rescued Radiya Sultān from captivity and her to Delhi in regaining sovereignty. In Rabi'l of 638 (1240), the amirs out with Mu'izzuddin in opposition. When both of them met at Kaitu other Turk amirs lagged behind and joined Mu'izzuddin. «Her husband Alt was foremost in war. He had a canopy over his head and name of the St None was a victor due to extreme heat. They turned back. Radiya S followed them with a canopy. They were in the difficult neighbourhood Kaital. It was adjacent to rebel unbelievers. They fell in their hand killed them on Tuesday, 15th Rabi'I of the year. She ruled for three and six days.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 704

Chief of the heretics, Nur Turk in James' of Delhi on Friday, 6th Rajab, 634 (1236)

The bistorian Juziani has narrated that in the early part of the reign of Radiya Sultan, a revolt took place due to a man called Nur Turk. He made his appearance in Delhi in the garb of a sermoniser, and the deed of the appointed day. More than one thousand Carmathians and heretics assembled around him for his sharp wit. He was as God has informed "Satan makes promises, and creates false desires. But Satan's promises are nothing but deception." Men of the sunna and among them Marijya and Nasibiya put faith in his sharp-witted sermons. Future life formed part of their creed. He permitted fraud and made imposture brisk. He instigated to assassinate learned men of the sunna and mashāikhs of the Hanafis and Shāfai's. He held assemblies of the fixed day in the Great Jame' of Delhi. Persons of ecstasy and mourners attended them. He instigated, by hints and suggestions, to kill those who gathered to say prayers on Friday in the Chief Masjid. They exhibited themselves fully equipped with arms. Their number was one thousand. Their parties came at the time of recitation of the Khutba and showed humility in hearing it and a party of them entered the masjid from its gate and a party entered from gate of the\* fort. People began to leave the masjid with consciousness but the masjid was full of these people. They were with swords on the side of the masjid. Thus they fell in the hand of a heretic. Every one was afraid to see a sword in his hand. They had nothing for defence including a knife. They closed the door. They went in midst of people in the masiid and blocked their road. The strong one perished because of a spearhead and sword in their hands. The weak one perished being trampled under feet in a crowd. The news spread in the city. The first who tried were Amir Nasruddin Aitam Bilarami and the Amir An-Nāṣir ash-Shā'er as-Sāmi and his party of brave men. They entered the masjid from the gate of al-Mawana and utilized their swords and killed heretics. Those who were at the foot of the masjid were overpowered by pelting stones on the heretics. Nur Turk perished. God is sufficient. Praise be to God.

#### Sultān Mu'izzuddin Bahrām Shāh

Mu'izzuddin Bahrām Shāh son of Shamsuddin Iltamish ascended the throne at Delhi on Monday, 17th Ramḍān, 637 (1239). It was written to those who had gone out with Raḍiya Sultan and to those who resided in Delhi about it. On their return to Delhi, they entered the palace and renewed oath of fealty to him. It was Sunday, 15th Shawwāl of the year. Ikhtiāruddin Aitkan was nominated Nāib with the unanimous opinion of the amirs while Nizām-ul-Mulk Muhazzabuddin Muḥammed was appointed Wazir. Within less than two months, Ikhtiāruddin communicated with firmness the marriage of his divorced sister

Original Text, p. 705.

with him under compulsion and reluctance. He then ordered for the nauba of elephants at his gate. He displayed emblems of sovereignty one after the other. Mu'izzuddin suppressed anger. One day, the Naib and the Wazir made their appearance in the palace for a meeting. It was held in the palace according to practice for certain days in a month. He used to hear. When he was with the Turk mamluks, al.-Mu'izz ordered them to kill him while he was present. He \* was stabbed to death by a knife. They were about to stab the wazir but his death was to take place later on. He went to his house in flight otherwise he would have met with the same fate. They wanted to be safe from the subordinates of the Wazir in time. Badruddin Sankar, Amir-i-Hājib came and controlled the situation. It happened on Monday, 8th Muharram, 630 (1241). In this year, the assassination of Radiya Sultan and Altuniya took place as narrated before. Bedruddin Sankar established himself with firmness after the event. He was next to 1khtiäruddin. Nizam-ul-Mulk Muhazza buddin continued Wazir as before with Ikhtiaruddin, Badruddin behaved with arrogance with the Wazir and managed state affairs in an arbitrary manner without reference to the Sultan. The Wazir tried to bring about a change in his temperament. Badruddin understood it from the Sultan. He resolved upon amends by making his brother remain with the Sultan. The Wazir was with him outside the palace. He concealed stabs which were more severe than embers. He intended to bring about Badruddin's ruin first for facility. He instigated him upon what he had resolved with proof of stabs to bring it gradually and then to cause fall. In the above year, on Monday, 7th Safar. Badruddin Sankar rode to the house of al-Musharraf Sadr-ul-Mulk Tajuddin Ali-al-Musawi. He was in concord with him in relation to dethronement of the Sultan. All the principal officers for management of state affairs presented themselves in a meeting. They were Kādi Jalaluddin al-Kāshāni, Kādi Kabiruddin, Shaikh Muhammed Shāmi, They deeply meditated over the question of dethronement and arrived at unanimous decision. Sadr-ul-Mulk sent a messenger to the Wazir to summon him to know his mind. The Wazır internally was with the Sultan, not for sincere devotion to him. He was for destruction of Badruddin as has been said.

> He who loved him, pitied him But other persons hated him.

It so happened that some persons of the Sultan hid themselves with him on arrival of Sadr-ut-Mulk to him. He kept them concealed in privacy hearing the conversation of those who were outside. He then called Sadr-ut-Mulk. He sat with him at the door of the private room and heard from him the information in regard to assemblage and their concord on dethronement. There was

Original Text, p. 706.

no delay except for his arrival to them. He had come to summon him. The\* Wazir applauded him and responded to him. He ordered him to return to his house and promised him that he would come in his wake after performing ablutions and saving prayers. Sadr-ul-Mulk returned. The Wazir opened the private room. When the man who was inside came out, he said to him, "you heard what he said, without any intermidiary. Go in haste to him and inform him with what you heard from him; and tell him to ride at that very hour to the house of Sadr-ul-Mulk like a visitor to him without sitting and coming out from his house to his house and they would come out with him. When he entered with them, he would say something to defend them." A reliable person reported about it. The Sultan rode to Sadr-ul-Mulk and returned with them to Dar-us-Saltanat (royal palace). When they assembled with him, he ordered Badruddin Sankar to go to Badaum immediately as an Amir. He dismissed. Kādi Jalāluddin and expelled with fear Kādi Kabiruddin and al-Shāmi from the city. He imprisoned Sadr-ul-Mulk. After four months, Badruddin returned to Delhi without a summons from the Sultan. He ordered him to be imprisoned and done to death. Sadr-ul-Mulk was killed in prison that year.

Juzjāni narrated that in that very year, a large number of unbelieving Mughals and Tatārs who were in Khurāsān and Ghazni assembled at the fort of Lähore. Karākash was its Amir. He tried for some time to defend the fort but he noticed weakness on the part of its citizens and inadvertence to help him when he was repelling them from them. He went from Lahore to Delhi. The unbelievers entered it on Monday, 16th Jamadi II of the year. It was a great event in Islâm. It was a famous city. There were assassination, captivity and pillage of one-fourth of the prosperous city. But the Wazir Nizam-ul-Mulk and persons of similar status did not say that it was made desolate. When the city returned to normal peaceful life, Badruddin Sankar was done to death. He was safe against his fear, nay, he forgot the effect of knife. He was free from retaltation for himself from the Sultan. The first thing that he did was exhibition of truth in the incident of Badruddin. He mentioned nothing against the amirs. It was Badruddin who obsessed him till the Sultan disclosed with caution. He was suspicious of him for that. In the midst of fright, the Sultan put faith in Ayyub al-Turcomani al Şufi. At the outset, he secluded himself in t the palace of "Hawz-i-Sultani" in the garb of a Qulandar. The Sultan visited him and commenced to put faith in him. It culminated in propagating royal orders and hearing them for himself. He lived before in the town of Meher and at times he went with Kādi Shamsuddin and he did not like to endure anything from him so he ceased to call him. The Kādi did not allow any one to disobey him but to respect him. It so happened that the Kādi one day made his

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 707.

appearance in his face in the Diwan of the Sultan. Ayyub saw him. He ordered him to be thrown at the feet of elephant and that was done. Dread of the amirs and the wazir became very severe on account of this incident. There was always some kind of conflict between the two parties in his office. It was a proof for embers to blaze forth. It developed into the incident of Lahore. Amirul-Umra Qutbuddin Husain al-Ghori accompanied by the Wazir Muhazzabuddin and other amirs went against him from the side of the Sultan. When they were at a distance of one manzil on the shore of the river Piyah, the Wazir opened the door of mischief by writing a letter to the Sultan informing him about sedition of the amirs and the advisability of putting them to death. He further informed him to summon himself and Qutbuddin immediately for submission. He requested him for a reply for execution of it. It so happened that the reply was as the Wazir expected. He did not wait. The Wazir held a meeting and showed the letter and consoled them for him. They agreed with him on his dethronement. Mu'izzuddin received a report of it. He sent Shaikh-ul-Islam Syed Qutbuddin to them for amends of sedition and to suppress it from whomsoever it may be when he did not expect him to improve. On his return, the Wazir and his companions followed him. They alighted at Delhi and laid siege to it for two months and certain days. Mubarak Shah, the chief carpet-spreader advanced for defence of the city. They had encamped at the city on Monday. 19th Sha'ban of the year. The historian said that a large number of persons of both sides perished in the siege. Eminent men of the city including Qadi of the army and the kingdom made efforts for peace as lay within their power. They did not agree on peace because of the carpet-spreader. He was a favourite of the Sultan. He ruled his mind and dominated over his temperament. He was not pleased with peace and the Sultan did not go against his will. When the Wazir Muhazzab ordered those who were connected with him in the city to conciliate stupid fellows by grant of something in cash. After the Friday prayers, they commenced to give money. Fools of the city presented them-\* selves including vagabonds. Their number swelled. They stirred up mischief when it became difficult to control them. Mubarak Shah felt anxious because of them for defence of the fort. Juzjani said that, "I was in the Jame. Some persons of my community instigated against me. They approached me with their swords while I had nothing in hand except a staff which was called Ghaddara. They brandished sword at me and I defended myself with the staff. I had a party of mamalik and attendants with me. I was safely escorted from their midst to my house. This uproar continued in the city till night. It was 8th Ziqa'ad." The Wazir resorted to an artifice and the city-gate was opened for him. All the amirs entered it and spent the night till dawn of the morning.

Original Text, p. 709.

They then designed against Dar-us-Saltanat, entered it and captured the Sultan. They killed Mubarak Shah, the carpet-spreader. It was Saturday 8th Ziqa'ad of the year. On Saturday night of the 16th, Mn'izzuddin was martyred. The historian narrated that three thousand Jitals were spent on unsocial elements of the city. I say, "It is an insignificant sum to he recorded by a teacher in a girls' school. He was only teaching them pronunciation of letters only. It is of no reliance when compared to expenses of those who had encamped for a siege who themselves had become weak for a long time. There were so many poor men on both sides. There was none in the city to defend it. As the histories relate that it was the carpet-spreader who prevented the managers of state affairs the maleks and soldiers and defended against them. He was, therefore, titled Mubarak Shah. He exhibited himself with a drum, a flag and prevented their entry. If the Wazir had paid the paltry sum on the first day of encampment to the unsocial elements, there would have been no anxiety for prevention. They then spent the night in it. They did not think over it before. Such was the will of God. "A man does not own anything and does not know it. He has no judgment of himself. The will of God controls him or he controls the affair. Verily God manages his affair and He had made him capable to do everything."

Sultan 'Alauddin Mas'ud son of Ruknuddin son of Iltamish Shamsuddin.\*

'Alauddin Mas'ud son of Ruknuddin Firoz son af Shamsuddin Iltamish ascended the throne on 8th Ziqa'ad, Saturday, 639 (1241). He appointed Qutbuddin Hasan al-Ghori as Nāib. Nizāmul-Mulk Muhazzabuddin was appointed as Wazir. Bahāuddin Karākash was appointed Amir-i-Hājib. He was in the royal palace called Qaşr-i-Sufid (white palace) on the day of captivity of Mu'izzuddin. Three persons-Nasiruddin, Jalaluddin and 'Alauddin were near him. He came with them to the Firozi Palace. The one who was present with him from among the Turk muluk was 'Izzuddin Balban. His name was proclaimed in the city. There was unanimity about 'Alauddin's sovereignty. He appointed 'Izzuddin Balban to the government of Nagor, Mandur, and Ajmer; Tājuddin Sanjar Katlak to that of Badāun; and Wazir Muhazzabuddin to that of Kaul. The historian says that Mu'izzudin was relieved of magistracy and 'Imaduddin Muhammed Shakurkāni was appointed to it on 4th Zilhajj. The Wazir prayed on his behalf for stability and tranquillity as he wished to keep himself away from Badruddin and Mu'izzuddin as well as expulsion of Turks from participation with him in execution of order and organization of the high and the low including elephants with nauba. They should always be at his gate for display of stability. He was stern in despotism and consequently the Turks decided for his murder. The 'Alai soldiers alighted at the gate of Delhi near

Original Text, p. 710.

the Hawze Rani. It was on Wednesday, 2nd Jamadi I, 640 (1242). It was as informed by God, the Holy " whey they delighted with what they received, we suddenly seized them with punishment and then they got confused." The historian narrated that "I went to Delhi from Badaun on Friday, 9th Rajab of the year. Tajuddin Sanjar Katlak was there. I then went to Oudh where was Qamru idin Kiran. He showed me favour which could not be more than that. 'Izzu idin Tughril Tughan Khan, governor (sahib) of Lukhnawati chanced to come there by water to Karah. I travelled alone from Ough to Karah and met him. I enjoyed his company till arrival to Lakhnawati. I departed with his famliy from Oudh and lived under shade of his favour for two years. 'Alauddin\* appointed Sadr-ul-Mulk Najmuddin Abā Bakr as Wazir after Muhazzab. 'Izzuddin Balban was appointed as Amir-i-Hujjāb at the capital. He (Alauddin) married his daughter. He was designated Ulugh Khan and fief of Hansi was granted to him. Conquests on surrounding places became easy during this period for 'Alauddin. Vast wealth accrued to him. In the year 641 (1243). on his return from Kara to Lakhnawati, Tughan Khan sent Sharaf-ul-Mulk al-Ash'aia to the Sultan for his services. On behalf of government, Qadi-jalalud-din Kāshāni was got ready with him. He worked as a Qādi in Oudh. He brought a red canopy and tashrifat for Tughan Khan. He arrived in Sakhnawati on Sunday, 11th Rabi 'II of the year. Tughan Khan went out for his reception. He was applauded with canopy and thus his status was elevated. On 'ld-ud-Duha of the year, 'Alauddin due to his above conquests, freed his aunt from observance of ceremonies in the palace. His uncle and aunt presented themselves in the majlis when he granted Kanauj to his uncle Jalaluddin bin Shainsuddin and prepared him to go there. He granted Bharaich to his uncle Nāşiruddin bin Shamsuddin and prepared him to go there. Many praises and prayers are due to him for this. They fought religious wars on those sides.

In 642 (1244), unbelievers, residents of Chāchnagar alighted in a large number at Lakhnawati. The Sultān sent Tamar Khān Kirān to help Tughān Khān in the early part of Ziqa'ad. The unbelievers produced fright between Tughān Khan and Tamar Khān. Peace was concluded on Wednesday, 6th Zika'ad of the year on the term that Tamar Khān should remain at Lakhnawati. Tughān Khān came to Delhi on Monday, 14th Şifar, 643 (1245) and met 'Alāuddin. The historian narrated that "I had come out with him from Lakhnawati. When I met 'Izzuddin Balban on Thursday, 17th Şifar of the year, he bestowed upon me the Nāsiriya Madresa and management of its religious endowments. Similarly, he made the deed for future life at the Jāme' and Kaḍā (mag stracy) of Kāliwar. It was with me before this date. He ennobled me with the usual robe of honour which was with him for such posts. More than the such posts.

Original Text, p. 711.

this cannot be for human beings. It included a horse. In Rajab of the year, reports poured in for arrival of Mughals to the vicinity of Uchch with their Amir Mankuta. 'Alauddin marched with the intention of Jihad and encamped on the river Piyah. Mankuta received a report of his arrival. On receipt of his arrival, he returned towards Khurāsān. The historian narrated that he prepared an army which consisted of multitudes of men and might and the soldiers were tried and experienced. He halted for certain days on the river and left for Delhi after he ceased to hear about them. The historian parrated that 'Alauddin was a sultan of agreeable qualities, good deeds and enjoyed company of wise men and scholars. He was of sound judgment. He avoided evil. He feared harm as one fears an evil eye. He then acquired evil from wicked persons. He became vicious and resorted to assault, disparagement of reputation and power with the amirs. It was with them. What he acquired from them, he committed abominable deeds and indulgence in intoxicated drinks and abandonment of good qualities and absorption in forgotten pleasures. How can they be congenial to king. When he exceeded the limits, the amirs resolved upon his dethronement. They secretly wrote to Naşiruddin, God gives kingdom to whom He wishes." He was at Bharaich. His mother carried him in a litter in which she sat and arrived in Delhi. No eye had seen and no ear had heard about it. The seekers assembled around him and entered the palace with him on 3rd Muharram of the year 644 (1246). They carried 'Alauddin from mailis of pleasure to prison where he died on the above date. He ruled for four years, two months and one day. It is a couplet composed by a witty vouth:

How the freedom! he had divided his heart—between clear full moon and gazelle

But you surrendered yourself to low desires—Be firm when you meet with perils.

# Sultan Nastruddin Mahmud

Sultān, fortunate, guided, Naşir-ud-Dunyā Wad-Din Abul Muzuffar Maḥmud bin Sultān Shamsuddin Iltamish al-Qutbi al-Mu'zzi ascended the throne in the Green Palace at Delhi on Sunday, 3rd Muharram, 644 (1246). The absent and present muluk and amirs displayed their loyalty to him. It was a public oath of allegiance for him in the Firozi Palace on Tuesday; 15th Muḥarram of the year. That very year in the month of Rajab, he marched for looking after the kingdom and defence of frontiers from the onslaught of unbelieving Tatārs towards the river of Sind and the region of Banyān. On Sunday, 1st Ziqa'ad of the year, he crossed the river of Lāhore known as Nilāb.

Original Text, p. 713.

He encamped on his way on the shore of river Sadra. He sent 'Izzuddin Balban Ulugh Khan al-Shamsi, who was Amiri-i Hajib during the regime of 'Alauddin and on which post he continued with increased elevated rank, with a large number of soldiers under him towards Jabal-i-Jud. The rest remained at the coast as reserve with elephants and baggages that were with him and with them. 'Izzuddin marched singlehanded—an account of his being titled as Ulugh Khān follows—to the aforesaid mountain. He waylaid surrounding places and most of them by assassination, captivity and obtainment of spoils. He moved hither and thither in the vicinity of Jhelum, Gokhran and adjoining places, and the region of Nandana as far as the big river of Sind, Saihun (Sindhu). He returned with spoils uncontrollable. Nasiruddin turned his rein towards Delhi. He had said his 'Id-ud-Duha prayers at the mountain of Jalundhar on Thursday, 25th Zilhaji of the year. He returned to the capital on 2nd Muharram. He marched for religious war between Doab in Sha'ban, 645 (1247). alighted at the fort of Tasanda under unbelievers in the vicinity of Kanaui. It was an invincible fort. Sultan of Hind Nasiruddin descended upon the fort under direction of a guide inspite of its impregnability and might of its inmates. It was unconquerable. It was won after a war of two or more days. It was won on Thursday, 14th Shawwal of the year. He encamped on the frontiers of Kara on Tuesday, 12th Ziqa'ad of the year. Ulugh Khan Balban had gone to those sides three days before this date. It was situated between Doab among losty mountains, impregnable forts, narrow ramified lands under a renowned unbeliever Rana Dalki and Malki. When he heard about it, Ulugh Khan\* went to mountains and entered them. After assassination and captivity, he carried what was there to Kara. From all that fell into the hands of army, there were fifteen hundred horses. Other things can be accordingly imagined. Jalaluddin Mas'ud bir Shamsuddin was at Kanauj for the same purpose but it came to his brother Nāşiruddin. Ulugh Khān met him and showered favours on him. He granted to him Kanauj, Sanbal and Badaun. After bestowal of tashrifāt, Jalāluddin returned to Kanauj and Nāsiruddin to Delhi. It was Wednesday, 14th Mnharram when he entered it. On 6th Sha'ban 646 (1248), Nāṣiruddin went out for a religious war among mountains. It so happened that Julaluddin Mas'ud harboured suspicious ideas about his brother and so he went from Sanbal to mountains of Santur under security of its ruler. Näsiruddin equipped the army to go to mountaneous Ranthambhor for pillage. He returned to Delhi on Wednesday, 9th Ziqa'ad of the year.

Qidi 'Imaduddin Sakurkani was charged with an allegation and so he had to go to Badaun on Friday, 9th Zilhajj. He was shown an order for the same. Malek Bahauddin Aibak Khwaja was martyred. This happened in the neigh-

Original Text, p. 714.

bourhood of Ranthambhor fort on Sunday, 11th Zilhaji. He was one of the amirs sent there under the standard of Ulugh Khan. On Thursday, 3rd Safar, he returned to Delhi. On Monday, 10th Jamadi II, 657 (1240), daughter of Ulugh Khān Balban called Maleka Jahān was married to Nāṣiruddin. On Monday, 12th Rajab, Qādi Jalāluddin Kāshāni returned from Oudh to Delhi and met Nasiruddin and departed from him to his house. He was the Chief Qādi of the kingdom. On Sunday, 4th Shawnāl, the Sultān crossed the river Jamna and equipped an army for a religious war against those who disobeyed him or who were unbelievers. The historian Juziāni says, "I received a messanger from my sister who was in Khurasan. I produced him before Näsiruddin. He ordered a robe of honour, mandate forty muluk, one hundred animals to carry baggage while Ulugh Khan gave me a piebald horse, and a gold-embroidered robe of honour. May God multiply their good deed and may they live long, I left Delhi by way of Abuhar to go to Multan for equipment\* of servants and animals for Khurāsān. It was Monday, 29th Zilhajj. I was on the bank of river Piyah on Sunday, 11th Safar, 648 (1250). I met the great Malek Sarkhan, governor of Multan: I journeyed forth with his permission. I arrived at Multan on Wednesday, 6th Rabi 'I. On the day of my entry, Malek 'Izzuddin Kashlu Khān Balban, governor of Uchch came from it to it to gain ascendancy over an adjoining portion to annex to Uchch. I saw him. He had encamped outside it. I stayed with him till 25th or 26th Rabi' II while he was there camping. But he did not succeed in conquering it due to Sarkhan's prevention and opposition to him with a strong fort. He returned that day to Uchch. I returned from him to Delhi after preparation of things to be sent to my sister in Khurāsān. All those things were in her name. I met Nāsiruddin on and Jamadi I. In Shawwal of the said year, the Tatars made their appearance at Multan. The frontiers of this kingdom are adjacent to those which are on the way of Tatars from the direction of Chin Machin; while those frontiers are adjacent to Khurāsān. The Tatārs had scattered over that region. When the Tatars advanced. Malek Sar Khan was not there or he had no strength to resist them. God assisted his kingdom through the great amir Ikhtiaruddin Karbaz. He encountered them, fought with them and expelled them from frontiers. He became weak for having fought with them. He was about to lose life. One of them was fastened to the other. When he gained this victory, he wrote a letter of victory. In wake of it, prisoners came to Delhi. It was a day worth seeing. The Sultan ordered the city to be decorated. He sent an envoy to him with a reply of a robe of honour and other mandates.

In 649 (1251), 'Izzuddin Balban Kashlu Khan proved disloyal and he descended upon Nāgor. Nāşiruddin marched against him to Nāgor. 'Izzuddin

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 715.

came to him and surrendered. He pardoned him and returned to Delhi. In the absence of Izzuddin from his seat of government. Uchch as stated before. due to his encampment at Multan, Sarkhan encamped at Uchch. 'Izzuddin received intelligence of it at Nagor. He came out from it to Uchch and when\* he approached it, he resorted to caution and practised an artifice. He, therefore, fell into his cords. When he advanced upon his army with a special party of soldiers to him he, according to usual tactics, delighted his guest to go back with life. Sarkhan did not know him. When he came to him, he welcomed him and displayed him with what a brother intended from him, just when Sir Khan alighted before his eyes at Multan. Besides, he met him in a majlis. he gave him to think that he was definitely for a march. He ordered for ceremony for him and said to him that he was safe in surrender of the city. It happened. He was in the majlis when friends of Sar Khan in the city came and expelled him with what he had with him-members of his family and subordinates. He then conciliated the soldiers with what they had from him and increased thereon for them. They left his party. Sarkhan entered Uchch. He then did away with ceremony and permitted him to go wherever he desired. He marched to Delhi and Nāṣiruddin granted him Badaun. On Tuesday, 25th Sha'ban Nasiruddin marched to Kaliwar. He encamped within precincts of Malwa. Ray Jahir Ajar was the greatest king on this side. He had a Narol fort. Näsiruddin had designs on it. One day, the Ray exhibited fifteen hundred horsemen and one hundred thousand footmen. He strove for war. The party of God vas small but they were successful. The Ray fled away. The fort was won. It was prosperous. He looted what was therein. On Monday, 22nd Shawwal, 650 (1252), Naşiruddin marched to Lahore by way of Uchch and Multan. He was accompanied by all the muluk and the Khāns. They consisted of Qatlagh Khan, govenor of Bhatana and 'Izzuddin Balban Kushlu Khān. On his encampment at the river Piyah, 'Imāduddin Raihān was under displeasure of Nāṣiruddin for the sake of Ulugh Khān, nay, he was displeased with most of the amirs due to slander of Ulugh Khan. On Saturday, 1st Muharram 657 (1253), he issued an order from one manzil on the river for march of Ulugh Khān to region namely Siwālik and Hānsi. Nāşiruddin returned from the river to Delhi with displeased temperament against most of the muluk for the above slander. He entered it in the early part of Rabi 'I of the year. Imām Māwardi in his book "Adab al Duniyā wal Din" says, "Know that the place of falsehood does not remain stable with truth. Back-biting is perfidy † and insult. They are a screen for talks from envy and treachery. God the Almighty said, "One of you should not back-bite the other. Does any one of you like to eat the flesh of his dead brother?" It is reported by Asma daughter

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 716.

of Zaid that the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him said, He who crawled through flesh of his brother with show of back-biting, it was right for God to make his flesh lawful for fire." Slander is an addition of baseness and evil to censure of back-biting and meanness and perfidy add to blame. It tends to separation of two united beings, creates distance between two close persons and produces rancour between two confidential friends. It is reported from the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him that "May I inform you about your evils?" They said, "yes". He said, "your evils create desire in you for slander of malcontents between friends who transgress defects." Calumny is the third evil. It mixes censure of back-biting and blame of slander with reproof of souls and wealth and disparagement of ranks and states. Ibn Qutaiba, may God be pleased with him reported that the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him said, "The paradise does not give entry in itself to the shameless deuce and ithe caluminator." A deuce is one who mixes with men and women and back-bites and behaves in a shameless manner. Kalla' is a caluminator. He is an influential man with the amir. He always drops something into the ears of the amir who ultimately uproots the other man. What 'Imaduddin Raihan said in egard to Ulugh Khan will bring about his fall. 'Ain-ul-Mulk Muhammed bin Nizām-ul-Mulk Junaidi was nominated as Wazir. Kashli Khān was appointed Amir-i-Hājib of Ulugh Bārbak. Tuli Aibak brother of Ulugh Khan obtained mansab of Imarat for the region of Kara. He went to it. 'Imaduddin Raihān was appointed as Vakil in Jamādi I of the year. The Sultan marched to Hansi. On 27th Rajab of the year, 'Imaduddin summoned Shamsuddin Bharaichi for management of magistracy of the kingdom. Ulugh Khan learnt what Nasiruddin had intended to cause inconvenience to him. He went from Hansi to Nagor. He gave Hansi to Ruknuddin bin Nasiruddin. He made him Amir-i-Hājib and returned to Delhi.

In the early part of Shawwal of this year, Nāṣiruddin marched to Uchch \* and Multān. They and Tabarhind were under jurisdiction of Sar Khān. He marched to Turkastān after being defeated in a war against the unbelievers in Sind. He left his territory in the hands of Amirs. The Sultān established his authority over them and appointed Arsalān Khān Sanjarjab over them and eturned to Delhi from the river Piyah (Bias). In 652 (1254), Nāṣiruddin marched to the frontiers of Koh Pāya Bardār and Banjor and brought much booty. On Thursday, 13th Muharram of the year, he crossed the river Ganges rom the side of Mayāpur and travelled keeping himself at level of Koh Pāya to end of the river Rahab. He encamped there. The amirs continued to go to the direction of Nangla Bāli. One of the amirs was 'Azizuddin Raḍi ul-Mulk.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 718.

On Sunday, 15th Şafar of the year, he was about to carry out pledge with Kāman when he got martyred. On 16th, the Sultān rode out and brandished sword among unbelievers of Kāthir whom he was about to destroy. He then turned to Badāun and thence to Delhi. He had appointed Şadr-ul-Mulk Najmuddin Abu Bakr as Wazir. The historian narrated that he was conferred that title of Şadr-i-Jahān on Sunday, 20th Rabi' I of the year on the outskirts of Kaul. He arrived at the capital on Tuesday, 26th Rabi' I.

In this very year, an insurgence broke out at Tabarhind. When Naşiruddin dismissed 'Izzuddin Balban Ulugh Khān from the deputyship on account of slander of 'Imaduddin Raihan and appointed 'Imaduddin as Vakil, a party of great amirs were affected thereby. Among these amirs were Arsalan Khar. Sanjarab and Yati Khān Aibak Khatai. Ulugh Khān issued forth from Nāgor which was his charge for Tabarhind on the counsel of lalaluddin Mas'ud son of Shamsuddin. It was the seat of government of Malek Arsalan Khan. din made his appearance and joined him. Nașiruddin received intelligence o that. He marched against them. He said his 'Id-ul-Fitr prayers at Sanam He then marched from it to Hansi. Jalaluddin came to Kuhram and Kaita along with his confederates. Nasiruddin turned towards them. The amir. approached with might to wage war. The advance-guards were about to com to clash. It was a great mishap for Nāṣiruddin. He returned to Hānsi. Th amirs assembled at Kaital. Prudent persons of both the parties made attempt for peace but 'Imaduddin Raihan refused to make peace. He was mainly responsible for the conflict. None could approach Nāşiruddin. When Nāsirud din alighted at Jand, Ulugh Khan secreetly corresponded with him. Ulugh Kha sent his mamluk Sipahsālār Karah Jamāk to him. There was no match for hin in valour. After making representation for which he had come, he returned to him with his reply. 'Izzuddin Balban, Nāib Hājib had accompanied him as security. Peace was to be concluded at his hands by the great amirs. Yat Khān Aibak al-Khatāi and Ḥusāmuddin Katlagh Shāh sent standards of sepoy: When they came to the cupola of saltanat, 'Imaduddin resolved upon killin Yati Khān just when he entered upon Nāṣiruddin. But 'Izzuddin remonstrate with him. Peace was concluded and he remained as Vakil. It so happened tha Quibuddin Hasan al-Ghori learnt about it. He hastened and sent Sharaf-ul Mulk Rashiduddin al-Ḥanafi to Yati Khan to inform him as to what embolden ed him to see Nășiruddin and that he ordered him to stay at his place till th news to be would be received by him after his seeing Nāşiruddin. Qutbuddi. Hasan as well as a party of amirs saw Nāṣituddin and represented to him wha 'Imaduddin Raihan had resolved upon for stirring up conflict. Nasiruddin go infuriated. He immediately ordered him to go to Badaun. Quibuddin Hasa

Original Text, p. 719.

then met Yati Khan and informed him about what had happened. He saw Nāṣiruddin and spoke on peace for the pleasure of both the parties. Yati Khān returned. At an auspicious hour, Ulugh Khan, his confederates and Jalaluddin Mas'ud arrived on Tuesday, 17th Ziqa'ad of the year. Jalaluddin was appointed at Lähore. He proceeded to it. Näsiruddin returned to Delhi with Ulugh Khan and entered it on Tuesday, 9th Zilhajj. In Rajab of the year 653, (1255), 'Imaduddin Raihan was done to death. Its account is that a Hindi eunuch 'Imaduddin was an attendant of Nasiruddin. He back-bited Ulugh Khan as stated above. Men of his kind assembled around him and obtained elevated mansabs and superseded the Turks in offices. They got prejudiced and gathered around Jalaluddin Mas'ud to prevail upon Nasiruddin to dismiss him and send him to Badaun and then to Bharaich. He was an Amir of it. The Turks had\* rancour against him with his expulsion. Amir Tājuddin Sanjarmāh Peshāni Siwastani, governor of Oudh hastened to him at Bharaich. 'Imaduddin was there. He suddenly caught hold of him and killed him. The Turks enjoyed tranquillity of mind. In this year, the incident of Qatlagh Khan took place. The mother of Nasiruddin was in wedlock with him. It so happened that Nāṣiruddin became angry upon her. He ordered their expulsion to Oudh Then an order was issued for their expulsion to Bharaich. But he halted. He despatched the Amir Baktam al-Rukni to expel him. When he was on the frontiers of Oudh, Qatlagh Khan met him. A fierce conflict took place between them. Amir Baktam was killed. Nāşiruddin received intelligence of it. He got infuriated and started to expel him personally. When he approached him, he went away to Kâlinjar. Nāşiruddin pursued him. Arsalan Khan Sanjarjab was in the advance-guard. He saw him in the neighbourhood of Kara. He fled to Santur and sought refuge with the unbelievers. He was with majesty and might and he had mountains well fortified and expansive valleys, and impregnable ramifications. Till now the army of Delhi has not penetrated into his region. The rebel amirs received news of his mighty power. They joined with him and Muslims and ignorant persons had become a part of his armies. He personally prevented the advance-guards as Näşiruddin was in the wake. Izzuddin Ulugh Khan Balban advanced. It was a resistance and fight which resulted in their rout and dispersion. Ulugh Khān pursued them to Salmur and encamped there and conquered it as a preliminary. He did to it as does a passer-by with disappointment and returned to his sultan with spoils beyond calculation. He was the first to descend upon it and conquered it in the early part of the year near to it. Kutbuddin Hasan 'Ali, the great Malek, Naib of the Saltanat achieved martyrdom in Rabi II of the year. Nāṣiruddin heard something about him which infuriated him. He stood in his presence on

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 720.

Tuesday, 23rd of the above month of the year. He was stern in address and rebuked him. Then an order was issued for his capture and impriso He was then ordered to be put to death in a day. He was a worthy ma

He who committed evil slightly He who did good, was cut.

In this year, the great Malek Kashli Khān Ulugh-i-A'zam Bārbak Ail Sultāni came to Delhi from his seat of government of Kara. He met Nāṣirī He was delighted to show regard to him. He was ordered to go to the of Meerat and its adjoining territory. He set out for it on Monday, 7th I of the year. On Tuesday, 13th Rajab, Nāṣiruddin raised the rank worthy 'Allāma (a very learned man), with depth of knowledge in branches of learning to Imāmat (leadership). He was Mawlānā Jamī al-'Allāmi-al-Bistāmi. He was designated Shaikh-ul-Islām. He was wor it. In Shawwāl of the same year, Nāṣiruddin marched from Delhi to loo the frontiers of Hind. On Sunday, 17th Ziqa'ad, Ulugh Khān, under a order, marched to guard the region of Siwalik and Hānsi accompanied by and friends. He turned to royal pavilion on Wednesday, 19th Zilhaji.

In the year 654 (1256), Salmur was conquered. Nāṣiruddin aligh the Dār-us-Saltanat at Delhi on Wednesday, 4th Rabi' II. On a report return, Taghlak Khān made his appearance on the environs of Kai Manekpur. He was accompanied by rebel amirs who bore wrath of the thence they joined with him. It was for Arsalān Khān Sanjarjab. He him and expelled him from his limits. He returned with disappointm soize anything from Hind to Sanhir-residence of insects and worms, etc known trade friend. He therefore conquered Salmur.

In 655 (1257), the great amir of Government and administration, Ya Aibak al-khatāi was on horse-back on Sunday, 6th Rabi.I. Men of hi were talking in his army. He was of forgiving nature, upright charact controller of self; he had presence of mind and was watchful of conjecture a slight movement he fell down from the saddle to the ground and died, stated in saying that he does not bear disturbance except its smoke. I stern to those insurgents who attached themselves to Qatlagh Khan, were in necessity of sympathy and need. They suffered harm because of They assembled and decided upon deserting them and assailed Taghlak on ment. Nāṣiruddin was in Delhi. He marched to Agra. The leader of dis amirs Tazzuddin Balban Kashlu Khān encamped with his army at Ucha Multān in vicinity of the river Bias. The rebels of Taghlak Khān and joined it. On news of their insurgence, Nāṣiruddin sent Ulugh Khān to

Original Text, p. 721.

them. Kashlu Khān and Taghlak and those who were with him alighted in the limits of Mansurpur and Samana. On the encampment of Ulugh Khan at a distance of two or three farsakhs from them, some of the nobles of Delhi such as Shaikh-ul-Islam Syed Qutbuddin, Qadi Shamsuddin Bharaichi etc. decided on perfidy because Delhi was without an army on account of Ulugh Khan being away against them. They wrote to Qatlagh Khān and Kashlu Khān about emptiness of the city. They incited him to come under such a situation. They further informed him that they had taken the citizens' oath of allegiance to them and that the door would be opened unto them. It was for their information. Juzjāni narrated that some sincere followers wrote to Ulugh Khān about it, : He wrote to the Sultan about what the leaders of the city had resolved upon and requested him to expel them from it. Action should be taken on perusal of the letter. On Sunday, 2nd Iamadi I of the year, Nāṣiruddin ordered them for expulsion to their residences. He then looked after for protection of the city. The letter of the Syed and the Qadi came to disloyal amirs. They were at a distance of two furnakhs They rode from Sāmāna at night and went post from Ulugh Khān, haste to Delhi. They covered the distance of one hundred farsakhs in two days and a half. In the morning, they were at gate of the city on certainty of its conquest. But they found no way to entry. They questioned about it. It was said to them as to what was good for them. One day, they alighted at the famous garden called Bägh-i-Juz situated between kilokhari and the city. They took shelter with severest repentance. Efforts had been made for defence of the city and the gates were closed by Amir-ul-Hujjab 'Alauddin Ayaz Zanjāni, Nāib Amir-i-Hājib as well as Ulugh Kotwāl Beg Jamāluddin Nishāpuri, sāhib-i-Diwān-ul-'Ard (officer in charge of presenting persons and petitions to the king). At night Kashlu Khan went back. He was followed by Kallagh Khān and most of the nobles who had gathered around them lagged behind, They joined the Sultan's party. Ulugh Khan returned. The whole region was arrayed by row of soldiers. On Wednesday, 8th Ramdan, Dia-ul-Mulk Tājuddin titled Nizām-ul-Mulk and designated with the most elevated manşab of Şadr-ul-Mulk seated as the Wazir. Sālin Navin came from Khurāsān to Uchch and Multan this year, 'Izzuddin Balban Kashlu Khan was in the region of Siwalik. He joined with him. His arrival was at request. Similarly, Qatlagh Khān\* united with him and joined his party.

In 656 (1256), the Sultan pitched his pavilion outside Delhi with an intention for religious war. Most of the amirs who were near him except those who were on the frontiers assembled around him. He sent them to Uchch and Multan for defence against the Tatars. He returned to the palace. He

Original Text, p. 723.

wrote to his brother Jalaluddin Mas'ud for the grant of Lakhnawati. He marched from Lahore to it.

In 657 (1258), Malek-ul-A'zam Kashli Khān Aibak Ulugh Bārbak died in the month of Rajab. He had the region of Kara Manekpur under him. He was an equal of 'Izzuddin Balban Ulugh Khān in government, administration and rank. He was in relation of a brother to him. Nāsiruddin appointed his son 'Alauddin Muḥammed to the manṣab of his father-Amir-ì- Hājib. In this very year, Sar Khān returned from Turkastān. The Sultān gave him Kaul, Bhatāna, Balārām and Kāliwar. In this year, Imām Hamiduddin Bārikala died on 1st Ramḍān. In this year, Shaikh-ul- Islām Jamāluddin al-Bistāmi died on 6th Jamādi II.

In this year, Qāḍi Kabiruddin whose account was given in the life of Mu'izzuddin Bahrām Shah died on 24th Jamādi II.

In this year, Malek-ul-Kabir Tez Khan Sanjar came from his seat of government with what he had amassed in money and recruitment of soldiers. These were accepted with favour and regard.

In this year, the Sultan was delighted with birth of coolness for his eyes.

In 658. (1259-60), 'Izzuddin Balban Ulugh Khan marched from Delhi towards a mountaneous region inhabited by wild, disloyal persons with ten thousand horse on 13th Şafar. He pentrated into all sides of the region, killed

thousand horse on 13th Safar. He pentrated into all sides of the region, killed and captured unlimited disloyal persons. It was the region of Mewät inhabited by violent insurger ts, with strength of men. Its residents were feather-brained vagabonds from ancient times engrossed in destruction and humming like flies over sweets and table-cloths. He returned victorious and grateful with spoils \* in hand. People greeted him.

Abu 'Umaru Uthmān bin Muḥammed al-Minhāj-i-Sirāj al-Juzzāui author of Tabakāt dedicated to Sultān Nāṣiruddin son of Sultān Shamsuddin Iltamish, may hir efforts be grateful, said that "what I wrote for the year 658 (1259-60) about Balbani conquest, of victorious standard was based on the knowledge of "Suwar-ul-Wakāya'-ul-Nāṣiriya" which I had. The pen moved with its ink to describe what happened on fall which was said to be for him. He forgives the slip, and improves mistake. He hoped to speak about it. I have narrated everything which I had with me as an eye-witness. I was in service of the Shamsiyya, Nāṣiriyya as well as those persons whose names I have mentioned in between. I did work for them in management, removal and partnership in tyranny and justice as was ordered to me at its suitable occasion. I described these events as happened by the bounty of God and His abundant beneficence. If life is spared to me, I hope with Divine Will to write about him till end of life

<sup>.</sup> Original Text, p. 724.

d year of his death. My God spare him for assistance of religion and osperity in the world, a protector for the kingdom and respect to the ruler. ie further said in the life of Ulugh Khan Balban. In the year 658 (1250-60) envoy of the king of Tatars, Hulaku came to Nasiruddin from Iraq. Muluk d the amirs received him well. The city was decorated for him. It was a ene worth witnessing. Arrival of the envoy became the cause of operation of rine will without the knowledge of any one of both the parties. Nasiruddin uḥammed bin Hasan Karlagh, Amir of Banban had become loval to Hulaku im among the Muslim amirs. It began with the marriage of his daughter th a son of Ulugh Khan Balban. Ulugh wrote to his confidential friend cretly with what to begin with him. He gave information about it. He blied to him. He ordered Baktama to go to see the above-mentioned amir. ugh sent his envoy with a present with an instruction to meet him secretly thout the knowledge of Sultan. When he came to Multan, he saw Izzuddin ashlu Khān from the side of Hulāku there. He questioned him about rrespondence and present. He said that it was for the king of Iraq alone and invited him to him. He went to Banban and met Nasirududdin, conveyed him the deposit and informed him. 'Izzuddin questioned him and he replied him. He did not try for invitation but permission as 'Izzuddin informed him." e news spread about him. An envoy was sent from the king of Hind and : absolute Naib Ulugh to the king of Iraq with a letter and a precious gift nich Ulugh received from his daughter's father-in-law and received him. The ng of Iraq received intelligence about it. Contents of the letter and the esent were represented to him. He issued an order to the munshi (scribe) to inslate it into Turkish language of the Tatars. The Sultan alone was known Tatår. Hence Ulugh Khan was not addressed as Naib. It was sufficient to ntion his designation and name, 'Izzuddin Balban, Till now, only the itāb is mentioned in Iraq. Hulāku became acquainted with contents through inslation. There was no mention of Naib in it. From his name, he undernod humility towards him from him as well as decorum. He was wonderuck at his behaviour of good manners towards him. He ordered the munshi give him a reply with his known address in Hind and Iraq. He wrote to the irs who were on the adjoining frontiers of Hind to show regard to the Sultan Hind without restraining him there. Näsiruddin Karlagh started to send an voy of Iraq to Hind. He intended something and God the Holy intended nething. Affairs came into existence as pre-ordained from causes. The envoy ! Nāsiruddin after a feast and award of robes of honours. He stayed for two inths or more. He then was the guest of muluks and amirs under royal ler and gave him tashrifat to free men and slaves for their sultan. Abu

Original Text, p. 725.

'Umru Juziāni did not mention the date of death of Nāsiruddin. Zia Barni too had not mentioned it. But Husam Khan has mentioned it in his history. I narrate from it. Sultan Nāşiruddin Mahmud fell ill in the year 662 (1263). He became extremely weak. His health was beyond treatment. Hence it was given up. They engaged in performance of good actions and charitable deeds for reward in the future life. His death took place on 11th Jamadi I. He was wise, scholarly, accomplished in person and qualities, God-fearing, abstemious, sound, generous, brave, administrator, statesman, pious in religion, indifferent to worldly pleasures. In spite of his extensive kingdom and powerful might, he personally devoted himself to accounts and economy of the state. He restricted his life to what has been reported from the Messenger of God, may peace and benediction of God be on him that a human being should eat as much as to maintain his health. He earned his means of livelihood by writing. Many a\* time, he sold his books and obtained a sum of money. When he inscribed his books in gold letters, he fetched more price. He then increased his expenses. He sent some one to sell the book with instruction not to say whose handwriting it was. One day, his wife asked him for a maid-servant. His reply was, "I will not buy her for you till I get in the Bait-ul-Mal (Public Treasury) of the Muslims. He ruled for nineteen years, three months and certain days.

Early life of 'Izzuddin Bâlban Ulugh Khan al-Shamsi with a title, later on, of Ghiyathuddin.

Abu 'Umru Juzjāni said that Ulugh Khān Balban was a Turk of the family of al-bara. He was from the most famous house of the Khāns. Most of the the people assembled around the family and were its subordinates. He said, "I heard from Karyāt Khān Sanjar that till now his cousins were men of distinction and renown among the Turkish families. Their family consisted of about ten thousand houses. Father of Ulugh Khān and father of Sar Khān were brothers. No member of the family was disloyal. During the Tatār inroad, he was captured and was taken to Baghdād in childhood. Khwāja Jamāluddin al-Baṣri bought him and brought him up along with his own sons. He grew up under his kindness and treated him with felicity. He displayed signs of advancement and nobility. He came to Gujarat with his patron.

In the year 630 (1232), he came with him to Delhi during the regime of Shamsuddin Iltamish. He produced him before him along with other mamālik. He was inclined towards him. He bought him from him. The rest were not. He engaged him in service and always kept him under his glance and in nearness. Whenever, he found him worthy, he sympathised with him. He always raised his ranks one after the other. Due to his powerful fortune, he chanced to be,

Original Text, p. 726.

the service of his brother, Kashli Khan, Amir-i-Hājib. Something is narrated pove about his life and death. During the regime of Ruknuddin, the Turks eserted him and rallied round him. Ruknuddin ordered him to be imprisoned a place worthy of him in the palace. The historian said, " I did not see that scept in accordance with a saying, "the action of a wise man is not without \* isdom". What is related is that the Sultan was to him like a son. He grew o under his tutelage. He wrote to those who were away from among the iends and ordered those who presented themselves with a rise to the rank of sciplinarians. Those who assembled in his mailis were meritorious with that ialification. He was content with the most accomplished and departed the st. The disciplinarian made effort in his education till he became perfect and us the Sultan attained to that. He ordered him to be present in the majlis examination. The teacher delayed three days for him. On the first, he went it with his son for a ride outside the city. He then ordered him for a travel. e moved in front of his horse to a distance of farsakhs. The teacher was on arse while he made him to walk by his side when he was about to stop due to tigue. He was not fond of walking in compound of the palace except with fficulty. Then how he could walk by the side of the teacher's horse. He en permitted him to ride. On the second day, he was made to appear in a hool. He ordered him to acquire knowledge near him but he was found to be eak and helpless. On the third day, he bound his hands and feet and beat m and left him in that state. The disciplinarian fled away from the city ithout the knowledge of any one for fear of retaliation. One who entered the aktab found him in that state. He unbound him and went with him to the ailis of his father. He pursued one who unbound him. He was wonderstruck his examination in two days before. He then summoned the teacher but he as not found. He then assembled teachers of the city and ordered them for amination of his son. They put him some questions. He answered them d they showered praise upon him for the knowledge he had acquired. This lded to the wonder of the Sultan as he had after all acquired so much knowlge. He did his duty well. The sultan had to pay the teacher dues of his ition. How could he do for what he did as he was not there. Who could vite him for that? He then ordered to make search of him. After some ne, he came with him to him. He made him easy in his presence, called him ar to himself and thanked him for education of his son. He then questioned m about it. He said, "He responded to receive highest kind of knowledge it he did not understand how to practise it as he was brought up in a royal adle. When he rode a horse, he never cared to walk. How can he walk? nade him to move in front of the horse to understand trouble of walking. He

<sup>\*</sup>Original Text, p. 727.

moved easily with mildness by the side of the horse. I applauded him for understanding it. I imparted to him all the knowledge I had from the first day. When he sat, he failed to realize the hardship of one who stood. He prolonged his sitting. While he who stood was unable to stand. He had a need. He was disposed to stand or he abhorred sitting. He connived at it to a limit of\* pleasure and anger. What disturbance was to him therein, was not hidden. I liked that he should know it also and that he should not transgress the limit of moderation in anything. I did for him the next day. When he ordered punishment in administration, he failed to know the pain of him. He would cross the limit of punishing him to death unknowingly; or he practised tyranny over some one or he treated him with severity which he did not deserve. He would be indifferent to the suffering of the oppressed. He would bear rancour towards one who doe: deserve it. I liked him to acquire its knowledge. On the third day, I imparted that kind of knowledge to become informant and farsighted in administration of the state." The Sultan said to him. I received benefit, guidance, applause for your ideas. Inform me why you ran away when what you did to him was good." He replied, " I was afraid of gallows for kindness for waste of trouble." He ordered to give him his wages and departed him. The historian remarks that the teacher did, not out of insult but for his great estimation. It was out of completion of his learning according to decrees of the knowing. During the regime of 'Alauddin, he was Amir-i-Hāiib. When his daughter married the sultan, he advanced in rank and designated him Ulugh Khān. He was granted a canopy. During the regime of Radiya Sultan. he was Amir-i-Shikar while during the reign of 'Alauddin, he continued in the same post. At the time of Manku Nawin, it was he who displayed judgment and prowess which prevented him to advance further and retreat. It would have been difficult for 'Alauddin to encamp at the river Bias. Mu'izzuddin returned on a report of Manku Nawin's retreat. He alone went to punish Rana, ruler of Jud for his exit from the kingdom because he entered into his frontiers with the help of a guide. He resorted to murder, loot and desolation. During the regime of Nāṣiruddin Maḥmud, he advanced and attained to the post of a Vakil. He married his daughter to Nāṣiruddin and gave him counsel. On a siander of Imaduddin Raihan against him, he was transferred to the region of Lakna. He rebelled which he did not do before, under necessity. He then corresponded with him and met him with loyalty. This account is previously given in the account of Nāṣiruddin. His special conquests were Narol and† Salmur. His other conquest was Kara and Koh Paya in concert with Rānā Malka. The number of killed unbelievers was beyond ten thousand. Such an account is written by Abu 'Umru Juzjāni in his Tabagāt.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 728.

The following account is given by Diauddin Barni son of Muayyad-ul-Mulk. He begins with the reign of Ghiyāthuddin.

The historian Diauddin Barni narrates in an introduction to his history of the Sultans of Hind called Tarikh-i-Firozshahi that he saw the compilation of Şadr-i-Jahan Minhaj-ud-Din Juzjani called Tabaqat-i-Naşari. He applauded it because of clarity and arrangement. I read it and wrote the following from it. I saw arrangement of his history into twenty-three Tabaqas. It begins from tabaqa of Prophets, may peace and benediction be on them and our prophet and ends with a tabaqa on Shamsiyya son and Sultan Naşiruddin Mahmud. ... thought to myself if I adopt his arrangement, it will not be free from what it is his. Its reading would be only to obtain substance. If I write something other than it, the style would be different. Perhaps the reader will shrivel from it imagining it to be in the Tabaqat. Hence I moderated it from all that he narrated in the Tabaqat under its guidance. I narrate what he stated in the early life of Ulugh Khan Balban upto the close of reign of Nasiruddin. Thus I have moderated the whole of Tabaqat. I have moderated the account of Balban also from his early life, amirship, naibship to an account of his ascensior to the throne. May God help us!

# Sultan Ghiyathuddin Ulugh Khan Balban al-Shamsi

Ghiyathuddin Ulugh Khan Balban al-Shamsi ascended the throne at Delh in the year 662 (1263). All the Mu'izzi, Qutbi and Shamsi muluk assembler around him. He established himself firmly in the issue of orders. He administered the government with good deeds under Shamsi rules and regulations, He imitated him in most important matters. He had a body of accomplished persons. He uprooted vagabonds. They stood in the way of comforts of life He eradicated sorrow and sadness. He ruled with judgment and with sword. His kingdom, including the capital city of Delhi, was without a share of anothe person, the same as it was during the regimes of the descendants of Shamsuddir Iltimish. It was of vicious impression for their engagement in producing calamity. When Balban established his power as Sultan, he eradicated those evils. The country and its inhabitants enjoyed peace and security. There were slaves of the best rank on whom he relied. He had risen by degrees to the elevated position of Sultan from the post of Amir-i-Shikar. He was exceptionally renowned in the knowledge of limbs and proficiency in hunting hence the khil'at of Imarat fitted him well on his proportionate stature, and that too especially in winter from among the seasons of the year during th regime of his saltanat. He always marched with ease and rode in the morning with wings of birds. Those who were appointed for hunting followed him; the

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 730.

were one thousand eminent men. They were such whom he knew as an amir and of reliance. He had one thousand foot-men to carry his bows and arrows and rifles. He had one thousand horsemen who were of continuous appointment. They shared him in food and dress. Due to appointment, he would not return from hunting to the city and none lagged behind him. The historian narrated thus and his report is reproduced here. When the king of Tatar, Hulaku received this report he remarked that the Sultan of Hind was an experienced administrator, a wise man not indifferent to future. He goes out frequently for hunting but not for it. He returns in time when events are not in his hands except his horses and men. Ghiyathuddin learnt what Hulaku spoke about him. He praised him and said that a sultan did not know administration unless he is a knower of his age. The historian said that one day, 'Adil Khan and Tamar Khan made their appearance before him. They were from among the greatest Shamsi muluk of the mamalik. They conversed on the Qutbi and Shamsi conquests. He asked them to stay as far as it was necessary for them. They replied that they had leisure because of the cessation of Tatar inroads. They spent money from the treasury to elevate the phrase of Allah, currency of religion and restitution of the Public Treasury of the Muslims to double and double of what has been spent. Now we are in time past the rule of the Tatars. We are adjacent to the frontiers and region from the boundary of Lahore as it was not during the 'Alai regime. This is not sufficient as it was in the Nasiri regime because of the departure of the muluk of mamalik of his father to the Tatārs and surrender of ancient cities of Islām to them. The Tatars had learnt about wealth of Hind. Accordingly, they came out to conquer that part of the country. They gained ascendancy over the middle region of Doab and they coveted what was in Delhi from the Public Treasury. Hence most of them came out\* for the sake of benefits. They spent away their collection in the kingdom for recruitment of men. They deemed a centre indispensable. The Tatars alone were before their eyes. They preserved what was in hand and deemed it most important to seize what was in the hands of others. In the early part of saltanat, they sought information from all about the strength of his fortune. Tamar Khān son of Arsalan Khan al-Shamsi with sixty rings of elephants was sent to Lakhnawati as its amir. All said prayers for establishment of general security in all directions and frontiers. After Sultan Shamsuddin, the caravans were waylaid, the frontiers were in a disturbed state, there was no peace and security. Residents of Delhi sought security from any ruler on its outskirts. During the regime of Ghiyathuddin, peace and security were established, and the roads were safe in the first year of his ascension. That was due to the roads being in charge of free persons, and virtuous men. For every deed has equal punishment according

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 731.

to terms of the contract. Deeds improved because of the amils. Benefits accrued in abundance, blessings increased, regions prospered and the roads became safe. In the first year of his ascension, similarly, the dacoits infested environs of Delhi, and hid themselves in woody neighbourhoods, and created fright on roads. He ordered to root them out and cut down insurgents till the surface of the earth was cleared of them and their hiding places were turned into open space. These people belonged to the community of Mewan ( Mewat ). They plundered unawares the descendants of Shamsuddin. They prevented citizens to go to the Hawz and places of delight and pleasure from afternoon. They entered the city at night to commit theft etc. with the strength of heart and hand. When he was free from this, he despatched an army to the middle portion of Doab. They killed most of them, plundered them till the earth was scattered with their corpses. They took warning from it and returned to their places and became loyal. Ghiyathuddin then marched to Kanpal, Patiali and Bhaiburki. There are situated on the entrance of Hind. Caravans laden with goods pass through them to neighbouring places. Their owners assembled in unlimited number. He brandished sword among insurgents of those people and obtained immense booty. He built forts and masjids in every city. A rais with a large number of followers was appointed its Amir. They were mostly\* Afghans. He ordered them to populate them in large numbers from the army and servant class. He permitted spoils to them. The historian narrates that from that day till his day the roads became safe and the caravans entered and went out of Hind with guarantee of safety and honour. Ghiyathuddin returned from it to Charāli. It was on the way also. After Shamsuddin, its residents did not find it prevented. They assembled through his dread and abandoned brigandage. He built a fort for them. He gave them the Afghans as amirs. He ordered them for maintenance of safety on the road and returned to Delhi. One day, he went to environs of the city at an untimely hour without any follower. He precipitated when he was on the bridge of Kuhar on the Ganges. He ordered five thousand archers to cross it. He then crossed it himself and attacked Kaithar taking its residents unawares and spared none with his sword except a woman and a child. Blood flowed in that place and it went beyond it. He did the same in all adjoining places. The place was terror-stricken. With the blow of wind, the atmosphere became stinking on the river and to a distance. The cause of his wrath was to subdue insurgence. The amirs of near-by neighbouring places were afraid of his awe. These places were Kabdaun, Amruha etc. After a lapse of time, they were upon the same activities as they were before, "They adopt Satans as friends other than God and they think that they are guided." On account of this, their number increased and their intrepidity became strong. After the death of Sultan Shamsuddin to their day, they were

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 732.

thus seeing afar but a party frightened them and the amir did not disperse them. They assembled at an elevated place and got down like a drizzle. Unlawful things were lawful for them. The surrounding places became secure and their prosperity was widened. The historian narrated that this state of affairs continued till the close of Jalali period. Ghiyathuddin then marched to a locality called Kohjud and strove to punish its residents. They were horsemen in a large number. They assembled in his Diwan in an unlimited number and thus a multitude was there in the camp. Price of a horse rose to forty tankas. He then returned and marched to Lahorc. It had become desolate by the Mughals in the regime of 'Alauddin. He rebuilt the fort and repaired all the sides. He put it in charge of an efficient amir and returned. He then examined the army and preferred a muster-roll and recalled in his mind and informed them about their respective duties.\*

In 663 (1264), he bestowed the title of Kaān on his son Muhammed Sultān bin Ghiyāthuddin and put Sind, its suburbs and Multān under his charge. Multān was the capital. He was granted a canopy and made him a ruler. He appointed a party of great muluk and powerful Khāns to attend upon him. He came out for it and reached Multān when the Tatārs made their entry into Hind. He was not there but only so far as fo protect its frontier because at any time he may he needed without return of the Sultān. He appointed Nāib at Sannām. He was his son Nāṣiruddin Maḥmud Buqrā Khān son of Ghiyāthuddin. He granted him Sāmāna and its adjoining territory and marched to his kingdom.

He appointed his slave Tughril Turki al-Balbani his Nāib at Lakhnawati. His account will be given in the history of Sultans of Bengal. After his incident, he appointed Buqra Khan bin Ghiyathuddin as Sultan over it and distinguished him with a green canopy. He advised him to visit the righteous and seek spiritual help from men of Allah in affairs and events. He then said to him, "Oh my son! Qāḍi Jalāluddin was sent as an envoy to Sultān Shamsuddin by the Khalifa of Baghdad al-Mustansir son of al-Zahir al-'Abbasi. He was accomplished in person and qualities. One day, he copied from a book in the hand-writing of Māmun. I heard Shamsuddin saying, 'I loved to distribute half the glory of my state to one who copied it'. Jalāluddin said, "I learnt about the book in the hand-writing of Māmun al-'Abbāsi. He has written therein, 'my father al-Rashid was of elevated status. He has spacious palaces. At night, he came out walking with one of his favourites and went to Dawood Tai and Muhammed bin Samak, may God sanctify their graves and may we be benefited through them. When he stood at the door, he sought permission for entry. He sat on dust. Hours of night passed but the door was not opened unto him. He returned. In this way, he went night after night but the door

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 733.

was not opened. His faith and love increased inspite of his forbiddenness. He always pleaded everyone who entered but he returned them with a call of goodness. One who was with al-Rashid was annoved to wait after prohibition Al-Māmun said, "One who was with Rashid said to the Qādi Abi Yusuf Ya'qub\* in his presence in the majlis. When you go to meet Dawood Tai, take me with you to Imam Hanifa. He replied, "You and I are poor. When I went to him, I called him. Since then, I acted as Qādi and I am an envoy. Al-Rashid said to him, "I increased my faith in him." The Kādi said, "Oh Amir-ul-Muminin! It was not from Syed, and a learned man and a Shaikh and a teacher and an eminent man. He is a delegate of the Khalifa. He was in his majlis. It was a matter of pride for that for your relationship with the Messenger of Alläh, may peace and benediction of God be on him. You are his Khalifa, you are, because of it. Shadow of God on earth. The two hid themselves from you. For you are more rich than they," Al-Rashid said, "Alas I They are indifferent to the world. Hence they were indifferent to me. Others coveted it, hence they became needy of me. There is a difference between them."

In the year four or as the historian said five and sixty, (564 or 565 = 1265)or 1266), the great amir al-Mu'izzi Sar Khān, cousin of Ghiyathuddin Balban died in his capital, Bahtir. He had built a cupola there during his life and so he was buried there. The historian Diauddin says that he was a Shamsi Turk and formed part of forty eminent Turks called Chabalgani. He was a Khan among them. He was a man of reliance and with extensive lands. His fame spread far and wide. He was renowned for his valour and strongest might. He was an intrepid warrior. He formed friendship with the Tatars at Uchch and Multan. They were to him from his own region. During his time, the frontiers were safe against the Tatars. During his rule, he built the forts of Tabarhind and Bahtir. They were under his charge. He marched from Multan to Turkastan during the regime of Nasiruddin. When he returned, Nasir gave, in exchange for what he had, Sannām, Dibālpur and Lāhore. He conquered Ghazni and recited Khutba in the name of Nasir. He continued in its government to the end of Näsir regime. When Ghiyathuddin firmly established himself as Sultan, he expected from him to come to Delhi. The question arose as to who should rule the state after Shamsuddin, they paused for certain affairs. Muluk of the mamālik for Mu'izzuddin, Qutbuddin and Shamsuddin were in favour of other than the muluks who plundered the spoils or who harboured revenge that perhaps they would have partners in the kingdom other than they. It was such a state of affairs with them. But they were on their guard for upright judg-t ment of eminent men. They met together to decide as to who had a mark of good men. He could not be in the kingdom from among them except one who converses little. The mamālik had decided upon absolute power and what they

Original Text, p. 734.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 735.

had in pursuit of carnal desires for good or bad. Transgression and insurgence would get them nothing in spite of equality in number and equipment to oppose them, or

When God intended for departure of wealth
It was due to wrong judgment of men.
He who is not void of envy from one who envied.

It was so. After Ghiyāthuddin, the kingdom departed from the Mu'izzi House, because of the mamālik, to others. Its account follows. Sar Khān had merits in him to advance unceasingly in the state. Ghiyāthuddin could not stop its departure. Hence, he was administered poison in beer under his own instruction. He died of its effects. Ghiyāthuddin divided his kingdom among efficient muluk in expectation for fulfilment of pledge and loyalty. He gave Sannām and Sāmāna to Tamar Khān bin Arsalān Khān al-Shamsi.

In 684 (1286), Qaan son of Ghiyathuddin was martyred. He received news of march of Karah Mughli to his frontiers. He marched against him. Both the armies encountered between Dibalpur and Lahore. It was a fierce war. Many amirs and muluk got martyred along with innumerable soldiers. It was a great calamity and chiefly the calamity of his father. Qaan was a virtuous man. Members of his family glorified themselves because of him. He was prudent, perfect, noble and scholarly. He moved in company of those who were men of felicity and derived beneficient advantages. He was disposed to decorum. Pleasure was not worthy of him. Amir Khusraw and Amir Hasan were his associates. Time cannot produce a man like him. He was fortunate enough to derive blessings through correspondence and messages from Shaikh Musiehuddin Sa'adi. He had requested him to visit Multan. He prepared himself to come to him with a request for book which he saw him to write. He had resolved to build for him a madresa, and inn to be religiously endowed out of income of villages and immovable property in proportion to its benefits and for expenditure on his companions and servants. The shaikh got indisposed with weakness to travel. In spite of that, he continued correspondence with him and sought his help in prayers, and hoped to be near the friends. The shaikl. came to him with his book of ghazals written in his fine script and auspicious hand. He got an excellent occasion of meeting him. He fell in captivity\* because of incident of Amir Khusraw but God expedited his release. The books contained eulogies and elegies. Sultan Ghiyathuddin lived but he was seizec with intense gloom for death. He had become very feeble. He felt thereby the approach of death. He sent for his grand-son Kaikhusraw bin Qaan who was always with him and under his glance. He gave him what was his father's from the state and the saltanat. He came out of the Diwan of his grand-father with

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 736,

a canopy over his head and the chiefs saying prayers on his behalf were in front of him and sergeants by his side inviting the muluk and the amirs to join the procession with decorum and on march to Multan. After a short while, he sent for his son Bukra Khan. He came to him from Lakhnawati. When he saw him, he said to him, "My death is near. I wish you to remain present at your house of the saltanat after me. I have none except thee, therefore do not remain absent. Kaikhusraw and your son Kaikobad-theylare my sons. They are not in the run for the kingdom of Delhi. They are minors. Lacking in experience and so they are not able to bear the load and understand politics. If you were at Lakhnawati and death made its appearance before me, you should be under the order of the ruler of Delhi. When you are there, bring all the surrounding places under your charge. "Call those persons whom you love," He said prayers for his long life in his presence. When he saw his weakness, he feared and lauded his recovery to health. He was desirous of the climate of Lakhnawati and its water. He, therefore, marched to it and did not seek his permission.

In 685 (1286), before his reaching Lakhnawati, weakness recurred. After the death of the martyred Khān, Kaikhusraw son of Qaan came for a sick-visit to him. This disease relapsed and became severe. Three days before his death. he sent for Malek-ul-Umarā Fakhruddin Kotwāl, the Hākim of the city and Khwāja Hasan Başri the Wazir. He and Fakhruddin talked among themselves what he had in mind. He said to him, "you are aged. You know what he does not know before of his small age. You are wise with experiences. You know the world as it should be known. You saw vicissitudes of the sky and that you do not need now till you are disturbed for death or delighted with life. God the Almighty said "Muhammed is nothing but the Messenger. There had been Messengers before him." Now death has made its appearance before me. My son, the martyred Khān was the heir-apparent. He has preceded me. After him, I make his son Kaikhusraw my heir-apparent. He is now upon what I\* had pledged to him. He has merits of saltanat in him. He is grown up in the chamber of my training. When I die, take him by hand and seat him on the throne of saltanat. He is minor in age. If Bukrā is present I needed to give him advice. If he gets the news and comes to me, the sick king, but no body knows what he will get the next day." Put faith in my advice and you who are present. All the affairs turn to God" The historian narrated that when he was free from giving advice, he left them and lay down his bed and abandoned the world. May God the Almighty show mercy to him. He ordered for moderation of advice. At the hour of his death, Kaikhusraw went out at their suggestion to Multan, his capital. They assembled around Kaikobad son of Bukra Khan,

Original Text, p. 737.

designated him Mu'izzuddin and seated him on the throne of saltanat and saluted him. They went out with the coffin of Ghiyāthuddin in the morning of his death from the palace to the grave. His muluks and mamālik made themselver bare-headed and rent garments. Others sprinkled dust over his face, wept and mourned. Malek-ul-Umarā Fakhruddin was the first to lament. They hastil, carried him to a secret place. It was said of him that he was experienced with the world. One who narrated, heard of him that he wept and lamented. How should he not weep at such a king. He governed the kingdom for forty years fie had many rights over his subjects. It is said that he slept on earth after him for six months and abandoned comfort etc for forty nights. Residents of the city grieved his loss including the most distinguished. There was none who gave in charity for him. Many persons recited the Qurān and gave reward of recitation to him. Many persons fed the poor for his reward. May God accept this on his behalf and show mercy to him!

### Sultan Mu'izzuddin Kaikobād

Mu'izzuddin Kaikobād bin Nāṣiruddin Maḥmud Bukrākhān bin Ghiyā-thuddin Balban ascended the throne at Delhi in 685 (1286). He was, more or less seventeen or eighteen years of age. He was of extremely handsome appearance and his character was moulded in the chamber of training of his grand-father Balban. He was in the prime of youth and therefore, he sought information from his compeers about subjects which satisfied the youth. He chose companions in whom he had confidence. They guarded his time and supplied him with information he sought. He was, during the course of his training restrained from lustful desires and enjoined upon accomplishment in person and qualities. He was in the prime of youth, much against ephemeral nature of the world, the characteristic of old age. But now, he completely changed his nature and disposition as stated in the couplet:

Do not miss an opportunity when possible For the world is fast in rotation.

He then forgot refinement and cultural training received from his teacher. He adopted the course of pursuit of base desires. He indulged in society of pretty gurls for satisfaction of sex and engrossed in drink. It became a matter discussion among all sections of population: "People follow the religion their kings." During his regime, there came forward the son-in-law of the brother of Amir-ul-Umarā Nizamuddin Amir Dād. He rose up without dispute and opposition. The manṣab of Niyābat and Vikālat was held by 'Umadat ul-Mulk Qiwāmuddin w'.o in reality conducted government. Nizamuddin was in Diwań-ul-Inshā (Department of correspondence etc. Chancary). Mu'izzuddin

Original Text, p. 738

needed only intoxication of the cup. His intoxication of inadvertence placed control of administration in hands of the Muluk and the amirs. This led to assumption of independent power. Mu'izzuddin went from Delhi to Kilokhari to live on the bank of Jamna. It got extended in construction for him. The Muluk lived there and made it a place of residence. No noble resided at Delhi. Mu'izzuddin lived in the midst of grossest pleasures in company of his associates, wits, singers, songstresses, poets, sycophants etc, listening to tunes of flutes and sitärs. Every hand had a timbrel and cymbals etc., some instrument of pleasure. They were proficient in giving delight to minds. They flung excellent witty remarks among themselves. They originated subjects of passionate pleasures. They were expert in production of pleasantry, impudence, ribaldry, theatrical representations and dance. Every beautiful woman and handsome man, noted in arts was present in the assembly. They all congregated to him from different parts of Hind. They thronged into his gathering and gave all their time to his intimacy and played games of drink with him. They renounced, as is said, 'the bird has no heart but wings,' and similarly, all men. Again, the\* buyers and sellers fell attracted to the markets. The beauties were ignorant of adornment, decoration, embellishment, fragrance except wickedness in love. The historian parrated in connection with this that all such people had crowded themselves in the capital during his regime. Every house-holder had locked his house. There was general engrossment in pleasure, there was extensive acquirement of property; article of non-sense had a brisk market, they preferred insanity to sanity till revolts became easy. Everyone was blindfolded with arrogance and there was none but a slanderer. Every youth touched the hilt of his sword under these circumstances. Nizāmuddin seized this opportunity of negligence; his self instigated him to rise to saltanat and he began to prepare its means. He first began with Kaikhusraw son of the martyred Khan. He approached Mu'izzuddin in his state of intoxication and said to him, "In your sport and play, you are not safe. The muluk have assembled to summon him for kingship. He is the righful claimant to the throne. You call him and kill him." He summoned him. When he came from Multan to the town of Rohtak, he killed him. It was a great calamity for the muluk though it was not for the Ghiyathiya and the Shamsiyya. They outwardly sought information for internal working of his mind. They got plunged in anxiety. They had preferred him to him. They suspected Mu'izzuddin but there was no evidence as to who killed Kaikhusraw. They doubted him for he was in intoxication. He must have brandished sword and killed him. A party plundered their houses. Famous Ghiyathias were pursued. They were carried to distant forts for imprisonment. Then an effort was made to kill Malek Shahak, governor of Multan and Malek Nur. governor of Baran. Diwan-ul-'Ard was with him.

Original Text, p. 739.

Both of them were in solidity and power during the regime of Ghivathuddin. That took place. He then ordered to punish the Wazir, the great Khwaja who was paraded through the city on a donkey. He also wickedly punished those whom he suspected to have gathered for his sexual pleasure. Mu'izzuddin fell in anxiety and the unreal became real to him. He needed the loyalty of Nizāmuddin. He used to say to his wife, who was daughter of Malek-ul-Umar. 'She is my mother'. She became ruler in his harim. She informed Nizamuddin what happened there and Mu'izzuddin informed him as to who came to him. In short, he informed him about everything nay, he felt safe with him. Muluk of the frontier region and amirs of provinces became cautious of Nizāmuddin.\* Those who were in the city became careful of him. Mu'izzuddin was always in drink with his youth. Nizamuddin went beyond the limit. He was son-in-law of Malek-ul-Umara Fakhruddin. He was also the son of his brother. One day, he closeted himself with him and said to him, "I am your patron. You are my son. My daughter is in wedlock with you. Government of the capital belonged to my father. It is now for me. It is for the last eighty years. Do not take it out of my house. This became the cause of peace and safety of the muluk and equality with them. Servants and attendants desisted from harm. The public were obliged. The high was treated with regard. The root of it was loyalty to the saltanat, well-mannered behaviour and practice of good, you are mine and your end is to sit in my mailis. The saltanat was not of members of his family. It is distant from you. Did you not see that those who put confidence in him were killed? My house is destroyed by you, you have heard what Ardashir had said, "The more fearful thing wear the kings is head which became a tail and a tail became a head.

I was not surprised at claim of petition to be rejected

Even if a thousand witnesses stood to prove it true.

you are beguiled by answer of your sultan in a state of intoxication, you insist on killing his people at his request. It is not for you as it is said

The world had become dark for him, the rich got it Wisdom of the world reveals it to him,

Do you know who are the muluk who ruined themselves and laid waste the kingdom? Do you try to ruin what Shamsuddin tried from 612 (1215) to unite them, train them and give them experience? Ghiyāthuddin tested them for twenty years of amirship and shelter and twenty years of saltanat to 685 (1285). The sultanat became a prop and a head (capital) and a basis for the kingdom. In less than a year, this unity is torn asunder. Elevation is sough: with this status. Alas! Alas! whence is this fog! It aimed at the cloud. The eagle desired a crow. Alas! the earth has acquired gracefulness of breeze

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 740.

or the full moon becomes like the sun in brightness. Abi Husain Muhammed bin Tha'lab al-Fawshanji has said:

How much of the sun you see in a gentle stream It is the favour of light and its spirit in movement.

Oh my son! hear me and return from your disobedience. Keep yourself busy with a comfortable life and make your life orderly for tomorrow as it is today.\* I have given you advice as I was inclined towards you." "There is no life for one who cries." The historian said that the information reached Nasiruddin Bukra Khan. He was much affected thereby. He continued correspondence with his son. Mu'izzuddin in regard to demands of the time and goading him to make amends and improve himself. He found himself determined after hearing him. He kept himself on guard against Nizamuddin. He moderated himself due to admonition of his father. He then wrote to meet him. He repeated the same thing and he responded to him. Nasiruddin came to Oudh. Mu'izzuddin also went to him and encamped on the bank of the river where Nasiruddin had encamped from his side. It was the famous river Sarāv. Nāsiruddin had resolved to come alone at an appointed place to meet. When he learnt about Mu'izzuddin's coming out with those who were with him and what he had of preparation and learnt about that Nizāmuddin had frightened him from his father, he too came out with those who were with him and what he had. Every one of them encamped on the river. Mu'izzuddin sought permission to cross the river. He forbade him and said, "It is better that I should show regard to you as the Sultan at Delhi." He ordered him that he should not come out of his pavilion and not get down from his throne. He then crossed the river with his men. Men of his son Mu'izzuddin assembled together outside the pavilion on its different sides in an array. When he passed by the side of an amir, he greeted him with salute. He came to a place when he got from the horse; the muluk also dismounted from their horses. There was a problem of priority in obejsance before Nizāmuddin. When he went beyond the curtain, Mu'izzuddin was on the throne. He did what he was asked to do by kissing the ground three times at three places. When he was near the place of the throne, Mu'izzuddin could not bear the relation between him and his father. He dismounted from the throne, he could not control himself to behave with respect towards his father. He walked fast, prostrated at feet of his father and kissed them. Nāṣiruddin raised him up to his chest, embraced him and wept much so much so that others who were there began to weep out of pity. They then moved towards the throne. Nāṣiruddin held the hand of Mu'izzuddin and raised up to the throne and decided to sit without him. Mu'izzuddin got down. held his hand and raised him to the throne. They sat together. Their knees †

Original Text, p. 741.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 742.

joined together in sitting before him out of respect for him. He ordered a offering. They were brought in trays of gold and silver. They conversed fo an hour. They found some yearning due to seeing each other and the bount of union with each other. A table-cloth was spread out. They sat upon They stood at a place without any one and talked about the positions of th boat. He left and returned to his pavilion. Next day, Mu'izzuddin crosse the river to go to his father. When he returned, he ordered to proclaim in th camp that he who was near or saheb (officer) in the camp of Nasiruddin and intends to meet him, he should do so. Now he was alone. Men of both th parties visited one another and commingled among themselves. Näsiruddu came to Mu'izzuddin and Mu'izzuddin went to Nāṣiruddin. It was an excellen meeting between them. Most of the poets have sung encomiums relating wonderful deeds. Amir Khusraw was one of them. He has composed at independent poem in Persian language called "Qiran-us-Sa'dain." It is good in its respect in the style of history. He narrates therein the early part. Mu'izzuddin's life, life of Nizāmuddin, conversation between the father and th son, meeting, camping on the river Sarav, departing, mutual visits, admoni tions about covetousness and secrecy etc. There is a couplet in regard to visit

> There is parting for sincere friends when meeting There is a fraction of those who are without parting.

He ordered to make an announcement in the camp that none should go out from either party without permission of his master. The historian narrated that bot of them halted at the river for some time. They visited each other and held assemblies. Similarly, the literary men exchanged visits. There were fruit and fragrances in the majlis, musicians and minstrels, cups were drunk in company of pretty girls. It so happened that Nasiruddin said something in the majlis about his father Ghiyathuddin and his training for him as well as of hi martvred brother. He began to weep. He then said to Mu'izzuddin, "Oh m son! When myself and my brother were free from learning the language, copying the script which was shown to our teacher. He then taught us theology grammar and etymology. These subjects were taught in the beginning. W asked the teacher which was better for study from amongst optional subjects The teacher replied, "Artistic calligraphy brought a good reward. He ther excused himself and departed. In theology as much knowledge is necessary as it is needed in prayers and fast. They have no relation with grammar. Durin the reign of Sultan Shamsuddin, there came books from Baghdad called "Adabus-Salātin" and "Maāthir-us-Salātin". They assembled together to read these books in presence of a perfect teacher. All were benefited. People sat in the majlis of aged persons who were full of wisdom, experience, knowledge of the sky and its vicissitudes. Teachers of history and literary men met together in the majlis. Many benefits were derived also from grammar. Accordingly, my

self and my brother began to read etiquette of the Sultans from the teacher Khwāja Tājuddin al-Bukhāri; he was one of the associates of our Sultan Shamsuddin. When we were free from learning, we were produced before the Sultan, our patron. He ordered for the teacher an amount of money and two villages to be granted to him for life. Nasiruddin said that they learnt in the early part of the book about Jamshid and his grand-father Kayomurth. Every head-man of horses had ten horsemen under his command. He was designated Mugaddam. In Persia, he was called Sar Khil. Every Qa'id had ten mugaddams under him. In Persia, he was designated Sipahsālār (commander-in-Chief). Every Amir had ten Qa'id under him. Every malek had ten amirs under him. Every Khan had ten maleks under him. Every Sultan had ten Khans under him. Every subordinate officer had to be with his wife, children, servants, animals and baggage. The important condition in the saltanat, besides above conditions, was that he should be of good family, renown and nobility. As they had positions of trust and authority, they should not be base-born, obscure and idiotic. Every vessel trickles what it contains. Hence Jamshid said to his son, "Every Sultan should have all these attributes in him to be called a Sultan. There is a similar story about wise men and wazirs. Every Sultan is not a Sultan if he does not administer justice. The idea of Kayomurth in so enumerating qualifications of the Sultan was that his officers, should, at least, be so united for purposes of benefit as stated above. The officer should not talk about the \* Sultan and his absolute authority in the world. Nașiruddin ended his conversation and then made a movement of return to his pavilion. Mu'izzuddin said to him, "Do not hide nor keep it a secret from me about what you heard from my grand-father and seasoned men when you find me sometime needing are advice and wakefulness from sleep of negligence. I hope, you will guide me. through your paternal kindness, with beneficial admonitions conducive to welfare of the creed and the kingdom". Näsiruddin replied to him, "Oh my son! 1 alone sat in the majlis of my father. The question arose of my inheritance during my life. I am pleased with it. Know that I traversed this distance to come to you. You invited me to meet you that I should give some advice to you. I did not leave you without hearing me. It was bitterness and I concealed it under sweetness. It may be at the time of departure from me. He then stood at his pavilion. The historian said that when Nasiruddin and Mu'izzuddin met together in the majlis of farewell, he said, "Nizāmuddin and Qiwamuddin sought bitterness in what I said to you in their presence. For example, when he ordered them in their presence to sit down in the row of Mu'izzuddin and said that the meeting ended in departure; why did tears not flow down my eyes. That was not certainly for meeting. Your father, I did

Original Text, p. 744.

not see anything, ordered hearts for separation. He wept, I wept". He then said, "Oh son! For the last two years, I hear about disparagement of your reputation and your negligence. I was not surprised with that about your life in your state. The strongest surprise is as to how you are left, by detesting, and not killed. Oh my son! The world is delightful verdure. The greatest delight of it is saltanat. Upon it, is the death of the father of the son and son of the father. Oh my son! The head is not without love of valuable government. First, you were not worthy of it. Oh my son! as a Sultan, I console with you. You are alive. There is mourning in my kingdom and I am alive. Oh my son t my brother died. His father established him in the state. He recognized his claim and appointed his son in his place. He willed for him the state after him. For nothing, I made his blood lawful, I tried for your blood. Oh son! I submit to your violence for murdering muluk of your grand-father and his mamalik. They were to him the strength of Sultan. They extended the kingdom. they doubled his authority and made your kingdom. Oh my son! Balban had four to mourn. One of them died during his life. After that, the death of another man was in his hand. I was engrossed in my own anxiety while you are in a state of your negligence. At the coming out of the Malek from the\* house of Balban, he raised you in the meantime and turned out a person who committed a sin. There did not remain anyone in the house of Balban. There was none with a load (pregnant) in his harem. Oh my son! I heard Balban saying that there was no meaning in multiplying number of women. I heard him who was an experienced man to have said that the kingship is laden with a number of males and females. Males do not survive after his father. He does not leave them behind. But women who are married to him, raise the wind of saltanat in his head. He does not emanate it except by cutting it. Many came to that which had no good. He continues because he becomes an heir. If he is some one else, none claims him and I care for that. Oh my son! If Balban had not left muluk and mamalik who planted the tree of saltanat with firmness behind him, its arteries would not have shaken with every blow of wind. How would you have spent years in a position that you occupy, the authority that you possess and the kingdom that you rule? Oh my son! Ponder over your languid eye and your yellow colour, examine your vigour with preservation of your health and insufficient means about which I fear to make mention to you. If you obtained the kingdom with what your grand-father Balban obtained, you would have recognized its value and applauded his men. I wish you know the honour of saltanat and feel in your self more honourable than it and fear murder perhaps you fear he who works with you. I advise you to be good to Nizāmuddin and Kiwāmuddin for they are your two pillars and their hands are

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 745.

in pairs. Nominate one of them as Wazir and elevate his rank over others and the second for Embassy; the third to the post of Diwan-ul-'Ard, the fourth for Chancery and consult them in matters of state policy. Permit every one of them to perform duty in their respective departments with absolute power. Do not be negligent in state-affairs and his merits. Abandon excess and deficiency. Do not make this possible except with your consciousness. You will not be in your consciousness unless you give up the cup, you are enjoined prayers and fasting. Do not listen to those who make its abandonment with expiation for sin through offerings. They are chiefly vicious learned men. Do not allow them a way to you. I enjoin upon you to sit with virtuous learned men. I heard Balban to have said who heard from learned men on oath of God that he who deliberately abandoned prayers, was an unbeliever, and one who did not fast, died young. I consign your faith, your world and ends of your deeds to the care of God." He then stood up, embraced his son and kissed his eyes and cheeks. While kissing, he secretly said to him to kill Nizamuddin otherwise he would kill you. He wept during this interval and recited a verse\*

Permit me to weep like a cloud in spring

For a stone weeps on the day of departure of rain.

Every one of them rode their horses with sufficient load of grief upon them. They all turned reins of their horses to the direction of their region. The historian narrated that Mu'izzuddin remained on the pledge of his father for certain days. He was moving and halting. The cup and the damsels had retired from him. They were moving around him and keeping a watch over him. Tunes were in grief. Musical instruments were in sadness. Handsome youths and virgins like stars of Pleiades were on the shining horizons in the cavalcade. In between them, he was fulfilling the promise he had given to his father. God guarded him therein. He walked the path with his muluk. Divine grace befriended him on his path. He was with a horseman from a horseman. He was the moon in guise of a human being upon a horse. He was a flaming live coal desiring to create mischief on right and left. He was surrounded by fascinating lads with ringlets, tresses, girdles tight to appear emaciated and what his eyes could not conceal. Around him were black-eyed damsels, slim, luxurious, smiling and lasemine-tender. Their hands were embellished. But he refrained himself from them. They were forbidden to come near him by the naqibs and the sergeants. He got down from the horse near him, kissed the ground in front of him and recited a couplet:

If you wish to place your feet on our eyes We place our eyes on path for you to tread,

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 746,

Mu'izzuddin held back reins from his side and let loose his eyes in desire of hi and stared at him.

You created pretty persons for us, a trial (fascination) You say to us, "Oh my servants! fear me.

The youth bent towards him mistakenly in a wonderful manner and in coquet: He eulogised him and spoke in such graceful language as if every hair address him. They then said, "We mourn for him who separated you from that which you were worthy and given you headache by renouncing the world whi contained him and played with his religion for your world and you retired from it. Collect courage for your delight you repented. There is no repentant except from him:

Oh silvery cypress, you go to a desert It is a breach of faith that you go alone.

When you came near me in my majlis Your face was dripping with water of cheerfulness You looked once at me with an eye Which formerly used to look at me.

Mu'izzuddin was delighted at his speech. He was ravished by his handsomene He was about to walk out of intense desire to embrace him. But he controller himself till he reached house. He gave up repentance. He ordered a maj for drink and assemblage of pretty girls. The youth who was the cause renunciation of his repentance came in the garb of a cup-bearer. Muhamm him Şâleh al-'Alawi composed

Afterwards there began for him what satisfied his desires Lightning which cast off sloth for help.

He begins like base attendants and without him 'It was difficult for his nobles to forbid

Near to see, where is solicitation? He did not prattle Glance at him; he turned out the jailer

Fire engulfed him

Water was not indulgent with eyelids.

I say, repentance did not result in breach of promise. The cup returned Mu'izzuddin. The historian did not attribute this meaning to it. It is substar from his book. A wit informed us about these verses. It is related fr Ibrāhim bin Mudbir. He said, "Muḥammed bin Sāleh bin 'Abdullāh bin Mt

Original Text, p. 747.

bin 'Abdullah bin Hasan bin Husain, bin 'Ali bin Abi Talib, may God be pleased with all of them came to see me. After the Khalifa was pleased with him, he raised him in esteem". I stood up in his majlis and sat in front of him. I said, "Oh my master! I was ordered to come to von. I questioned him about the cause of his coming to me". He said, "I inform you about it. During the days of my coming to the Amir-ul-Muminin, I came out with men along with the hajis who rode. They gave me a lift. In the meanwhile, I was on grey horse. My men collected spoils. A woman lifted up a brocade curtain from the howdah and displayed her sun-like face. She said, "Oh young man! Where do you go with such speed? I have need of you". I said, "I hear your conversation". She said, "I ask you, by God, you are he". I said, "yes". She said, "Know, my father was so and so. Without fear from you, his place is near the Amir-ul-Muminin. He is noted in the state. I am a woman going out from my seclusion to do my compulsory duty. You have palliated my exposure for you saw me in screen. No one had the power to bring me out from my howdah. I urge you with sweetness that I have three thousand dinārs in my hands. As far as possible, do not reveal to any one \* about me in a screen. I give that to you. If they are in your hands for I provoke desire with you in concealment". When he heard speech, I could not control weeping. I raised its publicity and proclaimed it with a loud voice. My men gathered around me. I said, "Go back to the people. I did not call you but for them. By God, only fetters of a camel remained with him. I called him to fight. All of them went back. It was a great sum of money. I was screened. They represented to me that day their legal wealth. It was immense. I refused it. They showed me more. I again refused. They concealed me in their shelter. When the Amir-ul-Muminin gained ascendancy over me and put me in prison, he instructed the guards to be very stern and strict towards me. Some time passed, when one day, the jailer came to me and said, "Women are at the door saying that they are from your family and that they had given you money and they intend to come to you". I said, "I have no family in 'Iraq. I then said that perhaps they are from Hijaz. They have arrived for disclosure of my condition. I said to the jailer to allow them entry. They came. She was there with a maid-servant who carried something. She prostrated before my feet to kiss and she wept. She then said, "Oh my master! honour me by taking what I have brought or I have no strength to carry that from you". I then ate that which was with the maid-servant. It was a fine, clean cloth and five hundred dinars and most delicious eatables. She then said, "Oh my lord! This happened to you in this week since you came. By God! you did not assist me in joy even though my soul is to depart". She went away. She kindled fire in my heart. That first glance of her oppressed me. I speak of the

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 748.

lightning of teeth, lightning of teeth of Hijaz. I then said, "Afterwards, ther began for him what satisfied his desires"; the above lines. Never enter into covenant with me with double of charity and kindness. God has released me Amir-ul-Muminin made me his favourite. I was transferred from the prison of Amir-ul-Muminin to prison of carnal desires. She had talked to me about he father. I forbade her. She had come to you to assist me. I said, "Oh Amir it was medicine for self. I refused her with my art. God willing, to reach you pleasure. She then rode to the father of the maid-servant. My intention wa great. She asked me about my intention. I said, "I came to you inquiring from you about such and such". He said, "Is she your mother?" I said "Not for me, nay, he is nobler than me in dignity and a great position, Muham med bin Şâleh al-'Alwi. He said, "He had attributed to her talk with hin which feared me that it was wicked". I said that there arose some doubt in' you. He said, "No, Praise be to God. Those statements should not be talked about ". I did not leave him till he replied to me. I now come to all my wealth Muhammed bin Şāleh came. He was waiting for me. I said to him, "Oh my master! Your object is achieved through your good luck. It is for you to fix time for marriage." He said, "I glorify your art, your obligations are many on me. I carried the maid-servant to him. Thanks to God for their efforts May God show mercy to them and to me. He is the Most Compassionate and the Most Merciful.

The historian says that Mu'izzuddin reverted to his former state. He preserved it till he came to Delhi. After some time, he gave up acting according to his lather's advice. He ordered Nizamuddin to march to Multan and look after it. He learnt about his intention. He made excuses to accept it. He thought that it was the time to execute his design that day by instructing favourites of Mu'izzuddin to plan for ridding him off. He permitted them in his wakeful state to intoxicate him and to put poison into drink. He died in a day. The historian stated that Nizāmuddin belonged to the category of Shamsi and Balbani Muluk. He was full of prudence, statesmanship and efficiency. If he lacked firmness in him which is necessary for a sultan in a state, there was none to compare with him in his time. His majlis was replete with men of accomplishment. They were full of wisdom, excellence, prudence, medicine, art, poetry, music etc. He applauded every one of them. He possessed sincerity and sagacity. He was well-informed with worth of men and he had knowledge of their condition. He was afraid of the illiterate men base persons and worthless people. He was versed in etiquette of malek and sultan. Persection belongs to God, the Holy. Qiwamuddin had a noble relation also with Shamsi and Balbani Muluk. He was in the department of

Original Text, p. 749.

chancery (inshā) and state matters. If they did not exist in the Mu'izzi era, there would have been disturbance in less than a week. That was witnessed after Nizamuddin. He administered the state with elevated ambition. People were obedient to him and they did not abhor him. Every malek and amir was full of personal courage. When Mu'izzuddin died in negligence and indifference, they strove to find a way. They talked about state matters. They sought partnership for management of state affairs. There was difference of opinion and conflict of desires. Ultimately, they decided to send for Mu'izzuddin, head\* of the Jandaris, Jalaluddin Firoz Khalii from Samana. They allotted to him the headship of "Diwan-ul-'Ard" and assigned to him the region of Baran and titled him Shayasti Khan. Diwan-ul-Barbek (commisserial) was entrusted to Malek Aitamar Kachhan, Diwan-ul-Vikālat was assigned to Aitmar Surkha, They were muluks of mamaliks of Balban. They divided equally the mansabs of the Diwan of saltanat among the amirs. Inspite of this, they differed in ambitions. There was no stability in orders and actions. Within a short time, Mu'izzuddin fell ill. He lost vigour and suffered from paralysis. He got bedridden. His disease worsened. He became useless for work like a cast away stone. All the three loved him. They enjoyed equality in power and position. None of them came to a struggle for power. They were despaired of health of Mui'zzuddin. They were afraid that the kingdom would pass away from the house of Balban as well as from the Turks. The Turks of Balbani and Shamsimamālik assembled together. Their chiefs were Aitamar Kachhan and Aitamar Surkha. They removed his son from the harem to seat him on throne of his father. The historian parrates that his account follows. He came to Mu'izzuddin from among the group near his bed to talk to his father. His father was from among the amirs. He was thrown from the palace in the flowing river lamna. It was so written in the book. His regime was reversion of comfortable life to all. The wicked did not rely upon any one. During his regime, one of the muluk who perished was Nizām. He died in the year 688 (1289).

## Sultan Shamsuddin Kaikāus

A child Shamsuddin Kaikāus son of Mu'izzuddin Kaikobād son of Nāṣiruddin Maḥmud Bukra Khān son of Ghiyāthuddin Ulugh Khān Balban sat on the throne of kingdom. All assembled around their sultān. The three—Jalāluddin, Aitamar Kachhan and Aitamar Surkha, continued in Diwan-ul-'Arḍ, al-Barbak and Vikālah. They then ordered for the cupola of saltanat. They pitched it outside Kilokhari on the Nāṣiria platform. They came out with Kaikāus to it.† Other persons sat around with difference in rank and status. Jalāluddin got down at Bhāpur. The Khalji was a man of strength and of good family. All the Turks were afraid of him because he did not belong to their race. They

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 750.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 751.

were engaged in their respective posts. Al-Barbak and the Vakil sought for arbitrary power in the kingdom. They all came to decision for murder of a group of muluk who were strangers and not of the race. He was the permanent chief of infantry with the name of Jalaluddin Shayasti Khan. He attended the Diwan regularly as usual with them. He lost charge of infantry. He took caution and ordered men of his race and members of his family to assemble and sat around him in their respective places. This place was beyond the river. His halt was publicized from the presence of the Diwan. The non-Turk group of muluks and amirs secretly came to some agreement among themselves. When paused by the presence. Barbak said to the Vakil, "He had taken caution and so he did not come. When deceived, he came to Shamsuddin to kill him immediately". Barbak rode to him with a small number of men for defence. When Jalaluddin was informed about his arrival to him, he ordered his companions to make arrangement for the tents with all preparation. He ordered his son Husamuddin and his nephew 'Alauddin to be away from Barbak when they saw him. He would be coming in all haste to approach Shamsuddin to attack him along with sons of Malek-ul-Umra Fakhruddin Kotwal. In the meantime, Barbak came and got down from his horse for entry. Jalaluddin came out, met Bärbak, made him got down from the horse, cut off his head and fixed it on a spear in front of the palace. The party howled and killed those who were with him. Jalaluddin rode out with his armour and waited in expectation of what was to happen. The Turks received intelligence of the death of Barbak. They 50 perturbed and occupied themselves for discussing about assembling around their Sultan to guard him. Some one from amongst them came with Shamsuddin and sons of Malek-ul-Umara and went with them to Jalaluddin. Others followed him to guard his back. The Vakil learnt about it. He rode out in the wake making his horse run fast after him to take him from him. One of them aimed an arrow at him and fell down dead. His followers paused with those who were with him. When Jalaluddin got hold of Shamsuddin, he met to think of him. Those who were in concert with him joined him. Residents of Delhi from the army and the civilians became strong to help their Sultan and came out from twelve gates to fight with Jalaluddin. It was a \* great multitude. Malek-ul-Umrå, for fear of death of his sons who were hostages with Jalaluddin, made amends for the matter and turned citizens back to Delhi. After two days, Jalāluddin ordered that any one who came across Mu'izzuddin after his being thrown into the river and knew that he was alive after being kicked to death should inform him as stated above. Jalāluddin then crossed the river with Kaikaus and alighted at the Nāşiriya platform. Kuşli Khan Jhajju son of Ghiyathuddin Balban had fortified himself at Kilokhari. Jala-

<sup>.</sup> Original Text, p. 752.

irbak was that he was from him and therefore it happened. This Kaikāus is he Sultān as he was. Choose one of the two—Vikālat or region you like. He eplied, "I do not want Vikālat but the region, he thought, of Manekpur should e assigned to him. He wrote to him about it. He went to it after an hour ith a party of Turks. He vacated Kilokhari. Jalāluddin sent message to alek-ul-Umarā apologizing him and asking him to choose either Vikālat or egion. His reply was that he would come to him. He returned to Delhi with n idea of region he liked and for his sons who were hostages. Jalāluddin then ntered Kilokhari. The historian did not mention anything about Kaikāus, Ie was last of the sultāns of Hind from among the mamāliks connected with ne Sultān Mu'izzuddin Muḥammed Sām al-Ghori. They were only the Turk namāliks after him. After him, the saltanat lasted for two years upto 688 1289). Reign of saltanat lasted for one hundred and nineteen years except nonths. God alone is Permanent.

## CHAPTER XXVI

## The Khaljia

## Sultān Jalāluddin Firoz Khalji

According to the saying, the world, from the outset, is a state. God the Holy says that there is a warning to one who gets puffed up from the cradle to the chamber of inheritance with power and possession. It gets disturbed and it grows. "Verily, the earth belongs to God. He gives it in inheritance to whomsoever He wishes." One who proved it true says that the world would not suffer a decline. A gnostic compares it with a vicious woman. One da,y\* it is found in the house of a perfumer and one day it is in the house of a veterinary doctor. The way of God was vacant before. You will find a change in the way of God. In the meanwhile, Jalaluddin Firoz Khaliji was the chief of Jandaris under the Turks. He was contented with the region of Sāmāna. He had with them power, influence, rank and dignity. He was in charge of Diwān-ul-'Ard, Shāyasti Khān. Besides, Sāmāna, he was assigned Baran by the Sultān. Divine will seized his hand and with that he became the most notable chief (sultan). It was decreed that he would be elevated to kingship. Circumstances demanded that. Abi Nawās says in this respect

A desire has a cause

It begins from it and shoots into branches.

Barbak tried to come in the way but he suffered a fall therein, as well as in regard to the vakil, the child and his father. Concealed evil reversed into good in his case and the evil was good. Trouble exchanged with favour and fear with obligation. There was no peril in the mind. He crossed the river and a large crowd gathered around him. At an auspicious hour he was at Kilokhari and sat on the throne of saltanat in the year 688 (1289). In a day, the residents of Delhi consisting of the Ghori Turks lagged behind him including those who were under their shadow of their training for the last eighty years. A large number of them had, under compulsion to take an oath of allegiance. He did not reside far the present in Delhi. He personally remained at the capital Kılokhari. He ordered those who were with him to prosper it. He built a stone fort with lofty turrets and made it during his days, like the capital Delhi. Residents of Delhi used to come and go. They entered the Diwan and felt surprised when they found the Khalji on the throne of the Turks. When they found him a man of good character, they turned from jealousy to acknowledgement of worth and ability. They took an oath of allegiance and gathered

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 753,

round him with loyalty. In the meanwhile, he rode out, one day, with all thief men, nobles, horse-men and elephants from Kilokhari to Delhi and lighted at the well-known gate of Dawlat-Khana and said genuflexions out of hanks to God, the Holy. He then sat on the throne which was in front of him. Ie addressed those who were sitting with him. He stood up in front of them nd said, "you saw me in genuflexion. How should I be not humble before God and thank Him. Yesterday, I was placing my forehead near this throne \* .hile today you saw me sitting upon it. He then got down from it to go to the norse to ride. He came to the renowned palace called Kushak-i-La'l (Ruby Palace). He dismounted from the horse and stood in front of the palace with lecorum which was decorated for him. Son of his sister Malek Barbak Shihaouddin Ahmad Chab Ashwal said to him, "Oh Sultan! Why did you walk from he horse when the house and the kingdom belonged to you?" He replied. 'Oh Ahmad! My grand-father and father did not build the house so that it can be mine. It was built by Sultan Balban during his Niyabat (Vice-gerency). .t belongs to his heirs and they had ascendancy over it." Ahmad said to him, 'There is no claimant to inheritance in regard to kingdom. He who became strong, embezzled, that is, he who gained ascendancy, plundered." He replied to him, "This is the way of one who became a ruler but there is the abode of the sky upon him. He who inherits from his father, obtainment of inheritance nakes him rise in bubbles. I find before my very eyes that every one is censured on fall except one who had mannered attitude for Balban. He remained in his palace. I have entered into it. "Verily to God we belong and to Him, we shall return." He then entered the palace and turned towards the platform, He remained silent for an hour and wept secretly. He then heeded those who were present and expounded the event and made apologies. He then said, 'This is the throne of saltanat and you are its members. Those from you who ire its slaves, take an oath of fealty to it and bless it. The era had not qualiied one like Balban. He ruled for forty years in the kingdom and died. He eft heirs behind him and muluk and mamalik like you in his kingdom. Saltanat passed away from his house, not from a long period. Can I hope for it myself and my heirs after when there is before my eyes the action of time, and from it his majlis in which we are. Within less than one-third of the years Balban lorgave all those chiefs whose existence, near his death he demanded to be dive. I find only a small number of them. Condolence is better than congraulation for me. Adopt for your-self that which should make you concordant with time." They said. "This is the path for those who are others to you," They then held his hand and seated him on the throne of saltanat of Delhi. They took an oath of fealty for him. All other persons did the same. He decorat-

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 754.

ed Malek-ul-Umrā Fakhruddin Kotwāl with a robe of honour in the majlis and designated a mansab for him. He favoured many persons with titles. His eldest son was titled Khan-i Khanan; the middle son, Arkali Khan; another middle son Kadr Khan; his brother Yaghrash Khan and ennobled him with the charge of 'Diwan-ul-'Ard" He titled his brother's son as Ulugh Khan and appointed him as an 'Amir-ul-Astabal' in Persian Akhur Beg (Superintendent of Stables). He raised the rank of his second son to amirship. He was 'Alauddin. Malek Ahmad Chab was assigned the charge of "Diwan-ul-Barbak."\* Malek Khuram was appointed to "Diwan-ul-Vikalat." Khwaja Khatir was appointed to "Diwan ul-Wizarat" At the close of day, he returned to Kilokhari.

In 689 ( 1290 ), there was an incident of Kushli Khān Jhajju. Its account is that when he came out from Kilokhari to proceed to Karah Manikpur, most of the Turks gathered around him. A multitude of residents of the earth thronged to him. He got puffed up with their support. In course of his imaginings, Amir 'Ali Sargundar al-Balbani, governor of Oudh came to him. I or his kindness, people called him Hatim Khan. He rose in rebellion. He raised a canopy over his head, designated himself as Sultan Mughithuddin, and propagated Khutba in his name in places under him. Those who instigated him to rebel proceeded with him against Delhi. Jalaluddin received intelligence of his ceming for attack. He nominated his son Khān-i-Khānān to work as his deputy at the capital. He marched to Badaun. His son Arkali Khan was posted in command of the advance-guard. He was a man of great prowess and valour. The Khaljis etc. in whom he had confidence joined with him. The number swelled up to twelve thousand. The commander of the Firozi army marched to Badaun. He crossed with his special followers the river Kalayatkar. Kushli Khan happened to be near him. They encountered each other. Arkalı Khān pressed violently upon his men. Kushlı Khān was in the advance-guard with limitless number of soldiers. Sword smashed them and they retreated. Kushli Khan's men dispersed and fled to a nearby ravine from the battlefield which was a rendevouz of rebels of the earth. He was captured and brought to Arkali Khan along with his companions Amir 'Ali Şarjandar, Malek Ulughji bin Malek Fuighi, Malek Fajudar Salahdar, Malek Babhar, Malek-ul-Kark lighāri and Bahrām Dev Kavila etc. He fettered all of them with iron and wood and carried them on camels to Badaun. A man led him in bands of wood also for he was the ringleader of revolt. There were residents of surrounding places, renowned horsemen and they formed part of the advanceguard. The historian said, "I heard from Amir Khusraw Dehalvi, a companion of Jalahuddin in privacy, saying that the Sultan was in a public assembly and † I was standing near him. In the sight of the Saltan, Kushli Khan and his

Original Text, p. 755.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 756.

confederates were besmeared with dust to such an extent that their faces were not recognized. He raised a side of his muzzle for protection of eyes and said in a loud voice "Alas! Alas! with pain of shackles." He ordered immediately to throw them off. Iron and wood were removed. They were called do-shakha (two-branches), Dust was shaken off. Then they were taken to a special pavilion under his orders. After a bath, a royal dress was brought to them and fragrant substance according to need. The Sultan repaired to a private majlis. He summoned them there and seated them near him. He apologized to them. They repented of wine that day and talked long. At the close of majlis, he wished them to make a choice for residence. Kushli Khan chose to be at Multan. He was sent there in a litter. He wrote to the amir there to alight him in the best house and to look after him by supplying his needs to satisfy his self and delight his eyes. Amir 'Ali and his confederates chose to reside in Delhi. They were permitted to go to their respective residences with sufficient means of livelihood. Husam Khan narrated in his history that Arkali Khan went ahead of the Sultan to Kalayatkar and encamped there. Kushli Khan had encamped there from his side also. Water was not fordable for swimming or for going by planks. They, therefore, stationed firmly for certain days in opposition. When he received message from the Sultan to encamp on a distance near the river, he was seized with fear for a rout. One night, he came out of his camp with a party of amirs including Bahrām Dev Kavila and Malek-ul-Kark Ilghāri, Arkali Khan heard about it, he crossed the river along with his followers. He killed a large number of his followers including Amir Barhram and Malek-ul-Karl. He was always in wake of them until he caught him and his companions. He sent them in that condition on camels, when they passed by the public market of the camp, people saw them in that unsightliness. There was a wonderful clamour at the vicissitude of the world. The Sultan arrived to silence the uproar. He questioned about it. He was informed about the state of affairs. He denied it and said with sadness that it was the end of story. The historian Ziauddin said that the Sultan consoled them in the mailis and said that there was no objection to their attack on him for they were from the family of Balban and there was his salt in loyalty. He valued them for his sake they were excused from both the sides. Husam Khan narrated in his history from Malek-al-Mughli.\* He was a man of renown during the regime of Balban. He narrated from the Amir Mubārak Shikārbeg. He was brave and intrepid. There was a covenant among them to kill the Sultan. The Sultan got scent of it. He sent for them. They presented themselves in his diwan in the midst of other nobles. When they came near him, he said to them, "Who is that man who conveyed to me from you. Every time he resists any one who sits in my majlis. It is his anger. There is no fall. He tries to say it to you. Inspite of this, he has no power

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 757.

over you today. He honoured Malek Mughli with a robe and sent him as an amir to Badaun and later on, he was appointed at Tabarhind. They departed to their respective regions. The historian Barani said that Sultan Jalaluddin had excessive elemency, sound temperament and good faith in God. He returned obligatin for evil and modesty prevented him to oppress the notables. In a holy tradition, it is said that modesty results in good. Wise men deny him any artfulness at other places and even with his enemies. As for example, somebody approved him by raising a canopy, and he did not commit a great offence. It enjoined upon him to put to death Kushli Khan and his confederates, in regard to one who sought his murder. Ahmad Chap was near him. He prevailed upon him in denial and talk. When he received information about it, he said to him "Oh Ahmad, you abhorred him. You did not come out inspite of knowledge of it. I am more than seventy years in age. I did not shed blood. God has made it unlawful to shed blood of a great man who fights with us for welfare of the state. When God bestowed the kingdom on me, there was almost nothing left of life. When I did not die with the sword of a member of his family, I died with the passage of its worthiness. Oh Ahmad! Put your head into your collar and think whether any one of your ancestors was a sultan. Only yesterday, I, my elder brother Shihabuddin in this kingdom, in this Delhi were in service of the Sultan Balban. We think of his bounties upon us. He has many claims on us. He did not speak of them to us. I sat in his majlis. Members of his family came out of it to assemble around him in an hour of difficulty; plundered\* the state and acce, ted his govelnment. Oh Ahmed! you did not see but your father saw those who came in shackles of iron to me and made amends for their reputation as you see from me and I did not blame him. They were worthy of the state during the regime of Sultan Balban. They were the stars of his majlis. You and your father were in the Diwan of Balban. One of us was desirous of his attention from them in particular, Malek 'Ali Garjandar. We observed him to salute to him. He was seeing us and preparing us food for good luck. Just when we were about to bend for our salutation, he responded by nodding his head or break of an eye-lid (wink). He called those who were like us. Every one honoured the kingdom. He had a right of attention, favour, kindness, merit of living, pleasure, hospitality, respect honour, help and regard. We constantly assembled in the majlis, visited and hobnobbed. We were in need of them while they had not of the kind with us. They had with Balban. They were sultans of the age while we were like subjects to them. They were good to us in their time so much so that we shared their goodness. Today, the time is reversed and it came to me from them with that sloth. I am ruler of the age. How am I ashamed of them. Modesty brings goodness. You see that if your subordinate commits a mistake like that from me and the kingdom, he becomes

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 758.

needy of the sultan, powerful and mighty. They gather together and my children are the sultan as you desire. I call them to Multan because of the Tatars as the Khan therein is the Sar Khan. I prevent their entry and protect the neighbours. "The historian said that those who assailed him, were collected in prison of Delhi. The disobedient elements were in a large number. Their number was more than a thousand. It was said to him about them. He ordered them as well as those who were in prison to be banished to Lakhnawati. It was due to his clemency. The muluk and the amirs assembled together in the majlis of Malek Tājuddin Kuji for rotation of cups and hilarity with pretty girls. In a state of inebriation, it reached from those who were in allegiance to Tājuddin about abundant delirium tremens in Jalāluddin when one of them got up in the majlis with a sword in hand saying "I will wound his head with this." He sent for Tājuddin and men of his assembly. When they assembled near him they blamed him and became very stern towards him. He was not so angry as he was that day. His sword was sheathed and thrown at one who spoke about killing him. One of them said in his inebriation that he would strike his dagger to another man. He said as to who was he from among them to take that sword and he advanced openly to me. I said 'I am here sitting.' When one\* of them got up and said that he talked over the cup. He was weaker than a woman in menses. One of the men in the assembly was Malek Nusrat Sabah. He was an intelligent wit and known as sar Dawatdar (one who holds the inkpot before the Sultan). He said, "Oh Sultan! this is an assembly of drinks. Every thing is abandoned in it. There is no warning in it. We take the sultan to be sound like you. If you order us to be killed, you will have to take others as muluk. We do not attribute any thing to you except your clemency. Do not be despaired of us. Our offence is great. "He so said. Jalaluddin began to shed tears. He forgave them and ordered them to depart to their respective regions. Malek Nusrat Sabāh had no cup in his hand. He ordered him to continue his jovial conversation. He was made one of his associates. The historian said that Jalaluddin was sar Jandar during the regime of Sultan Ghiyāthuddin Balban. Kaithal was assigned as Jāgir to him. He then became a Nāib at Sāmāna adjacent to Kaithal. On his way to it, he alighted at a village under the jurisdiction of Sirajuddin Sāwa. He was a famous poet at Sāmāna. This village belonged to him. When his wazir wrote to him about the salary of some of the khaljı soldiers as ribute from the revenue of the village which was in jurisdiction of Sirājuddin. Some khaljis came and began to trouble Sirājuddin out of harassment. He composed in praise of Jalāluddin and conveyed complaint and redress through eulogy. Jalaluddin did not heed him. Sirāj was much affected. He composed a booklet called 'Khaljinama' and wrote a satire on him. He received intelligence of it. He was the Naib at

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 759.

Samana. Sirāj was afraid of him within himself and went out of it. During his regime, he was afraid of being summoned. He was a man of dignity in the kingdom. One day, he stood at the gate of the Royal Palace in a state of submission with fetters waiting for an order of punishment. Jalāluddin learnt about him. He sent for him. When he approached his assembly, he stood before Jalāluddin. He embraced him and permitted him to sit. He ordered a robe of honour for him and made him a nadim (associate). In short, he was an embodiment of clemency. It is a matter of surprise about his wrath in case of Syed Mawla. If it were not clemency, it was not a wonder for the sultāns get\* wrathful for a trifling. It was a great matter whose account follows.

Khan-i-Khanan son of Sultan Jalaluddin died this year at Kilokhari. He was Naib of the saltanat. He raised a canopy on head of his son Arkali Khan. He appointed him as his Naib at Kilokhari. He marched from it to Rauthaubhor. He first encamped at Jhayan and conquered it. He demolished temples and broke idols. He killed, captured and pillaged. He then advaced to Mālwa and did to it what he did and came to Ranthanbhor. The unbeliever ruler had garrisoned himself within the fort with his men. The Sultan, while on his march to Jhayan, had sent an amir to get ready with implements of siege. He began with sabat ( sub-terranean passages ) and arrayed the cannons. When he alighted at the fort, he pondered over it and observed places of entrance, he found it to be impregnable. That very day, he turned back to Jhayan. He assembled veterans of matters near him and said, "I am resolved upon conquest of this fort. When I thought over it, I saw it was not conquerable unless some Muslims were destroyed in raising the sabat. What are your views on it, "He then lost such chiefs in the opening and entering It was nothing but a stonehouse. I am not pleased to win ten such forts for loss of a hair of a Muslim. His soul would be lost for nothing or arrows should be darted before taking up swords. Spoils as ordained would be collected near me. I would produce orphans of martyrs, their women and the event would prove the same with them as with them. It is a call for passing life and spoiling life. No advantage will accrue therefrom. I have resolved upon saving lives of my men. There is space in the kingdom. In the morning, he returned to the capital. In 691 (1291-92), an incident of 'Ab fullāh ibn bint-e-Halâw (?) al-Mughl took place in the vicinity of Bairam. Its account is: Changiz Khan al-Mughli, King of the Tatar felt approach of death after his return from 'Iraq to his kingdom. Kāan son of Changiz Khān succeeded him. During his regime, Halāw marched with preparadeness to 'Iraq. The territory of Muhammed Khwarazm Shah passed on to him. Those who were spared in the invasion of Changiz from among the chiefs of the kingdom, joined him. In this state of security, their

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 760.

prosperity grew in extension and with a change, there was a balance in progress. he king died an unbeliever. The kingdom passed on to one after the other. slam spread among them. All the people became Muslims. In early days, the iorse-men of Changiz laid waste every thing of civilization in round-about\* laces. 'Abdullah belonged to their race. When Sultan Jalaluddin heard bout him, he came out and encamped on a river on whose bank the Mughal ad encamped on one of its sides. It was deep. During the period of their ncampment on the river, there were vanguards with constant expectation. n every encounter, the victory was gained by the Muslim party. A large umber of Mughals were captured in singles and amirs in command of hundred then came an order for peace. Eminent men of both the sides began to come and o. It was decided that each army should stop on its side on water where it vas. There were skirmishes even though they saw mutual visits in between. 'isits of envoys continued. The Khalji adopted the Mughal as son while the Jughal adopted the Khalji as father. Every one of them returned to his espective pavilion. Presents and feasts were exchanged. In the morning, they eparted to their respective capitals. In the Mughal army, there was an Amir Jighu ibn bint-i-Changiz. He chanced to get guidance and joined with the Chalji from nearby place. He was one of the amirs under command of one housand soldiers. The Khalji was pleased with them. Amir Ulghu met with acreased familiarity and joy and saluted those who were with him. It was an uspicious time. When he came to the capital, he got his daughter married 7th him. He took for himself and for those who were with him reside stial laces between Kiloknari and Ghiyāthpur and Andabhat (?). Every one of hem was assigned a jagir from the kingdom befitting his status. Their women, hildren and servants joined with the Mughal. They built their houses adjoining ne another. The locality came to be known as Mughalpur. The Sultan ordered itizens of the kingdom to associate with them, deal with them and enter into nutual marital relations. Their offespring multiplied and their party gained in trength. They became citizens of the state. This is the account of some of hem and of Ulghu and most of others. They were in the kingdom for the last wo or three years. They ruled over the portion of territory assigned to them or the same period. He returned to his land with family in a state of indisposiion due water and climate. With the return of most of them, Mughalpur did not xtend. In this year, Jalaluddin marched to Mandur and plain among mountins and pillaged its neighbourhoods and returned with spoiled to the capital. n the wake of it, he went or a religious war to Jhayan and returned. de permitted 'Alauddin for a religious war in Bhilastan. Jalaluddin hadt narched to Mandu. 'Alauddin influenced his uncle by the booty of the eligious war. It was immense. It contained a Nandi idol carved in yellow

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 761.

<sup>+</sup> Original Text, p. 762.

metal and equal in weight to an animal. Jalāluddin ordered it to be placed at the entrance to the Gate of Delhi famous as Badāun Gate. He was pleased with 'Alāuddin and put the "Diwān-ul-'Ard' under his charge and added Oudh to Kara. Outwardly, 'Alāuddin appeared to be with his uncle Jalāluddin but inwardly, he was against him. After making appropriation of the spoils, he came to him. After assignment of Oudh to him without his demand or with demand of a request to assign Chanderi to him. He then gave him permission to spend revenue of Kara and Oudh in collection of soldiers to march with their strength to Chanderi and its expectes were to be borne by the Treasury. He was granted permission for expenditure and march which he was about to lake. It was his certain belief that he needed no permission for appropriation of spoils except profit to him,

In this very year or a year previous to it, the incident of Sidi Mawla and his being thrown at the feet of elephant took place. Its account is narrated by Zianddin Barani. Sidi Mawla came to Delhi during the reign of Sultan Ghyarhuddin Baltan. He said that he arrived from the upper (Bālā) region and he made disciples in different distant parts of Hind as well as from the capital Delhi. He was at Ajodhan. Perhaps, Bala indicates it. It is far-off from Delhi but near to Persia. It is situated on peaks of mountains. The word bala is related to highest and nearest to height of mountains and there is an open field in the lower part of it. There lived Kutb-uz-Zamān Mawlānā Sharkb Faridude a Ganj-Shakar, a saint of blessings and miraculous powers, may his grave be sanctified. Sidi Mawla was distracted with love with the saint and paid visits to him. In some of his majlises, the Shaikh addressed him and said, "Suff, do you intend to go to Delhi and open the gate and name and ceremony which wid help you. I inform you wherein hes your welfare and I know in what hes the right course. Do as you wish. I enjoin upon you to remember my advice. Do not mix with kings and do not think that salvation lies in their visits to you. Oh durwish! open the door of their association with you. You will make your\* future life filthy. Husamkhan narrated in his history that he came to Delhi during the regime of Ghiyathuddin Balban. He built a spacious building outside the gate known as Bab-i-Ajwad. The faqirs lived with him. Zia says that he did not attain to fame during the reign of Baiban by visits of muluk to him and not by liberal expenditure. The kingdom enjoyed stability and good establishment of order. During the reign of Mu'iz addin Kaikobad, the period was of indifference and negligence. This state of affairs proved a source of help to him. Muluk visited him fer association with him. The clite and the plebians thronged at his gate. He widened his expenditure according to his desire. During the regime of Jalaluddin, he attained to perfection in rank and renown

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 763,

and award of daily allowances to the high and low. It was mainly due to the fact that Khān-i-Khānān had put faith in him. Sidi Mawla adopted him as his son. Khān-i-Khānā was the Nāib of his father in city. It turned from him to him in reality. Hence the muluk and the amirs who belonged to Khān-i-Khānān's party followed suit as a necessity. The subordinates of Jalāli muluk also put faith in him. Kādi Ialāluddin al-Kāshāni made it necessary to attend bis mailis. He was the man of most elevated rank. He was personally most virtuous and most accomplished in qualities. He was mischief from head to foot. He sheltered him and spent nights, nay, he was always during night and day with him. During the Jalali regime, the powerful Balbani Turks were loval to him. Their muluks had decided among themselves to remain with him by turns. Hence, they were in search for his fall. They met together constantly in the house one from among themselves to narrate what happened there. From this, they feared the future. They found the house of the afore-said mawla to be spacious for themselves for living sufficiently. Their meeting near him was said to be most extensive for excuses. They, therefore, assembled in his majlis. As indicated above, the Kadi Kāsāni was mischief-incarnation. No mailis was without him. His blessing was beneficient. They were always in tying and loosening and the time was adulterated with mischief. Inspite of this, the maula did not own anything. He did not accept a gift. Every day, one thousand maunds of flour, five hundred maunds of mutton, three hundred maunds of sugar, and one hundred maunds of vegetables were utilized in his kitchen. Ghee etc should be imagined accordingly. The muluk, amirs, nobles of the city, chiefs of the army attended his inn, gate and mailis and enjoyed\* meals of his kitchen. His table consisted varieties of delicious food which was not served at the royal table. If a precious thing was demanded or by way of a gift, the seeker was instructed to go to a room or a plank and was asked to take such and such a thing from beneath it. The seeker took it as instructed. It appeared as if it had come an hour before from the mint. It was said in regard to him that he was an al-chemist (kimyagar). The historian says that during the nivabat of Arkali Khan from his father at the capital, my father was vakil to him. His palace was at Kilokhari. It was the loftiest palace. He lived there only for some time. It was not void of mischief of the time from guards who associated with me. They spoke about the mawla as most hypocritical. I stayed for an hour in his majlis. I saw him particularly with the muluk, amirs, great men and eminent persons. He said that they were the Balbani amirs who presented themselves for mischief determined to create some thing new in the capital. Kotwāl Biranjin, Hatyā Pāyak Pahelwān famous as Vakānā in the Balbani era and led the most luxurious life, and his salary was one hundred thousand jitals were present. During Jalali age, there was nothing for them, no

Original Text, p. 764.

jital. Jital is a small copper coin. In ancient times, it was current in regions of Hind. When looked to Hind's prosperity, it was great in value. Sons of Turk amirs of Balban presented themselves in the majlis of the Mawla. Some of the retired amirs also attended his assembly. They had sufficient time to spend at a place which was noted for invisible expense. During the life-time of Khān-i-Khānān, the tesidence of the Shaikh was a place of refuge and shelter for all people in general. After him, it became a special resort for the chiefs of mischief. It was a place of faith of the Jalali Amirs and blessing for the Turks for service of his mails. It was brought to the notice of the Sultan as to who attended the majlis and they had decided to elect the Mawla as Sultan and marry him to the daughter of Sultan Nasiruddin. They had divided the kingdom among themselves. Multan was assigned to Kādi Kāshāni with a title of Kādi Khân. Kotwâl Biranjabin and Hatiya Pâyak Pahelwân had undertaken to murder the Sultan at the time of his going for the Friday prayer. The Sultan summoned them all to his presence along with the mawla. He asked them about what was conveyed to him about them. They denied it. He ordered tirewood to be collected for fire at Bahärpur. Flames should be raised, big stones should be thrown into its circumterence which should be widened, flames should be high enough to touch the sky to test its members with it. He then rode to Baharpur in company of leaders of the time and sat at an elevated spectacleplace. Arkalı Khān was upon his horse while the muluk and the amirs were\* beneath his observation on a side and the dephants were on other side. The leaders sat in the vicinity of the spectacle-place. The time was like an hour of the day of resurrection, nay, it acted slyly and passed. Fire with its musk-like blackness had blackened its blaze and it cast sparks. Jalāluddin was never so wrathful as he was that day. He sent for the Mawla and his men. He was brought with his arms pinioned behind the back. He looked at them knowingly. He turned to the Imams (leaders). He questioned them and blamed them. They sought affirmation and were stern in denial. He said, "If you are on truth, enter this fire and pass through it. He then questioned the Imams about what they professed. They replied. Our religion does not permit it. Fire is burning in nature. The pretender does not prove it by a single tradition. The order is highest. He then said, "Danish tlem from Delhi and let them go this very hour to distant places. It was done. He was surprised at Kotwal Biranjin and Hatiya Pavak Pahelwan. He addressed them saying that they performed their duties in that manner and that they resolved to kill him as it was said. Hence the punishment for such resolution was that they should be put to death. Both of them were executed. He then addressed the Mawla and was very stern upon him in reproach and rebuke. Imām Shaikh Abu Bakr al-Jusi al-Haidari and a party of Haideria group were present. The Sultan turned to them and

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text. p. 765,

said, "who does justice to me or who acts as a judge for me from amongst you? He pointed out the Mawla. He was pinioned with hands backwards." Bahriul-Haidari said, "I will act as a judge for you. He stood towards him and stabbed him with a knife. The Mawla fell to the ground. At the order of Arkali Khan he was brought near the elephant driver. He moved and knelt down. It was as decreed by God. Neither Haidari nor the owner of elephant was addressed. When God wished an affair to happen its means are got ready. There is a written document for every death. Mawlana Shaikh Fariduddin Ganj-Shakar remarked that precaution is no defence against fate. The historian says that it was a frightful, dreadful hour. It immediately coincided with blow of a severe storm which darkened the atmosphere at the right hour. People were seized with fear and there was abundance of grief and repentance. The historian says that such a merciful Sultan did not bear to hear an attempt \* for his murder. He issued an order in respect of the derwish. He did not respect the power of derwish. He departed at the persuasion of his son Arkali Khan for what the elephants did not execute. The historian says, "I describe the day of execution. Wind blew with such intensity that it darkened the atmosphere. It produced weakness in the Jalali kingdom. Murder of the derwish was inauspicious in the opinion of great men. The Sultan did not kill him and was successful. In the wake of the event, there was a famine, food-grains became scarce. People considered scarcity of food-grains as due to it. Siwālak parbat is parbat, a mountain, saw hundred and lak, a lac. Its meaning is one hundred thousand and one lac twenty-five thousand. There is a range of unlimited mountains between Ajmer and Nagor. It is therfore called Siwalak parbat. There was not a drop of water. Its residents migrated to Delhi. It was intense here. Innumerable persons came to it for the sake of food. They formed groups of thirty and forty or more. They talked about the families and relatives. They bade adieu to one another. They threw themselves in the river Jamna along with their children and wives and floated along with the current of water. Lot of charitable deeds were done by the Jalalis during famine. The muluk also distributed in alms. Were it not for this, there would have been innumerable deaths. This year of dearth was followed by a year of plenty. There was abundance of rain. The historian Dia Barani says that Sidi Mawla, inspite of his lavish expenditure, was economical in respect of his dress; he contented himself with a cotton sheet of cloth and trousers. His food consisted of a rice-cake and a small quantity of seasoned vegetables. He was a man excessive austerity and efforts in prayers. He had neither a wife, nor a servant and nor a maid-servant. He neither owned a piece of land nor he had movable property. He was contented with any means of livelihood. He did not accept any gifts and presents. He gave to every one who begged of him or he supplied him

Original Text, p. 766.

what he wanted from the room, the ground or the vault. His need was fu filled. He did not hover about any thing of desirc. His Ajwad Khankah w situated outside the Delhi Gate. It was spacious enough to contain a kitche Sufis, derwishes, needy persons of land and sea dwelt in it. He performed I compulsory duties of namaz at the appointed time though not in accordance wi habits of accomplished persons with fulfilment of conditions for congregatio He presented himself in the masjid for Friday prayer. He gave informatic about future events and invisible objects. He had renounced the world. 1 was in his state of ecstasy and statement. He was perfect in it. If he act according to the admonition of his spiritual guide and abstained from it, would have been better for him. Perfection is alone with God, the Holy. feel, it was evil which affected such a celibate, of self-control who contented himself with coarse clothes and small quantity of food to curb passiona desires. He was pleased with the mansab of a Sultan, passion for marriage at regarded respectable blood as lawful. How can one succeed when he adopte desires as gods. There is no power and no might except of that of God. Hapi is one who was not admonished by others. I say, "The manner in which D Barani had described the incident of deceased Mawla points out that t incident happened before Jalahaddin led an expedition against. Ranthanbhor. the year 680 (1290)". Husamuddin narrated in his history that the eye happened in 691 (1291-92). Similarly was the case with the death of Khan Khanan and the expedition to Ranthaubhor. Did fixed the event with t year. The pair tion did not perforate to this warning. He presented t occurrence. There were persons in the saltanat. There was difference in givi information through narration or through hearsay.

An account of 'Alauddin's relation with his uncle fulfilluddin and circumstances the latter's death in the year 695 (1295).

Da said that 'Alauddin 'Ali son of Nasiruddin grew up in a room training of his nucle Sultan Jalauddin Khalji. His daughter was in wedloo with him. Her mother was Maleka Jahau. She ruled over his uncle and histened to her words. 'Alauddin was always in trouble with women due passionate jealousy with the daughter of his uncle. He was in great afflictic with her mother. He did not find a way out of her fear to the harassment his wife. He did not bring it to the knowledge of his uncle out of his awe at fear of disgrace to send for him to a region to soothe him. After Kushli Khān, was the Amir of Kara Manikpur. He then talked to some of his specifavourites to be away from the kingdom of his uncle. When he marched Bhilsan, he received a report of untold wealth of Devgir. He had no knowled of places of assembling for search of it. There was no way to it except w

Original Text, p. 767.

men who joined him willingly but there was no knowledge of that. For that purpose, his plan was to carry the spoils of Bhilsan to his uncle. The Sultan appointed him governor of Oudh in addition to that of Kara Manikpur. During this period of favour of his uncle, he requested his uncle for assignment of\* Chanderi to him. He requested him to carry that to his treasury and permit him in a year to recruit soldiers from the revenue of Kara and Oudh. When Jalaluddin stopped him due to trouble with his daughter and her mother, he talked to him about Chanderi. Danger shot up. For the sake of that affliction he intended to conquer territory and to be away from them. It was for this that he had sought permission. He returned to Karah and started to collect soldiers. After Kushli Khān, those who were with him from amongst the Balbani and Shamsi Turks gathered around 'Alauddin. 'Alauddin was planning the ruin of his uncle. For that purpose, the cause of addition became strong. He assembled the Turks etc and spent upon them the revenue of one or two years and started from Karah with three or four thousand horsemen with most perfect equipment towards Devgir. Only the guide knew his intention, It was propagated among the soldiers that he intended a march on Chanderi. The historian said. "My uncle 'Alaul Mulk was appointed in his place. He was qualified with that," 'Alauddin treaded the path to Elichpur and thence to the famous valley of Lajura. 'Alaul Mulk was informed that he was here. Then there was no information about bim. He used to write to Jalaluddin giving him accurate and inaccurate information. He was, therefore, indifferent towards him. When 'Alauddin halted at the valley, it so chanced for Raindev that he had equipped his son with number and preparation to a distant limit against his enemy and the residents of Devgir to the day of arrival of 'Alauddin. They then heard about Islam. He had no information about the direction of his soldiers. Neither the Sultan nor the Khan nor those who were sheltered with him had ever crossed their land. Devgir was replete with gold, silver, pearls and jewels and many precious articles and of pleasing varieties including curious implements. Rāmdev heard about the encampment of 'Alauddin at the foot of the valley. He sent those soldiers who were with him under command of veteran general to prevent his ascent to the valley. 'Alauddin had might and majesty in his army. He climbed up the valley and put them to rout and descended on Devgir. Ramdev garrisoned himself within the fort. On the first day of his descent, he got thirty rings of elephants or more and many thousands of horses. They were all in the stables of Ramdev. Its details are given in the conquest of the Deccan. Its account is given in the first daftar. Its substance is that Ramdev, ruler of the fort met 'Alauddin, surrendered himself to him and gave him what he had and which is beyond calculation. The historian says that epoch after epoch passed and in every event, the expenditure goes †

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 768.

beyond imagination. Inspite of that, it exists in the stores of Sultans of Delhi. Husam Khan said that 'Alauddin came out from it to Kara with forty thousand bulls whose cavities were filled with gold, silver and jewels etc. Jalaluddin received information through letters of 'Alaul Mulk and what he heard form the grandees of the state. When he ceased to receive information from him, his kindness compelled hun to be apprised of him. He marched towards Gwalior and encamped on a side of his frontiers. News flowed to him from his return from Devgir and his victory till he came to Kara. He was delighted with him on a belief that he carried to him as he had carried the spoils of Bhilsan. He arranged an untimely mailis on receipt of his news. Every intelligent man gathered around him for drink. He held an assembly for consultation. Those who attended the meeting were Malck Ahmad Chap and Malek Fakhruddin Kun. 'Aläuddin said, "In regard to obtainment about which you have heard, I seek your counsel during the interval whether we should wait for it or move out for its reception or return from it to Delhi. "Ahmad Chap replied "Collection of treasures, elephants and horses in themselves and in hands is mischief and calamity. There who were with Kushh Khan had assembled around 'Alanddin. They had raised a canopy over his head. One day, 'Alauddin made it public that he had nothing with him for his solicitude which would not make him loyal. Today, he had in his hand what is not in the treasures of Della. After a day, it would not be. That will not dispose him from loyalty It was said that he would settle with it at Kara and spend it on recruitment and preparation. It was proper to receive him to Chanders and encamp on his way for he is now with a treasure without soldiers and the Sultan in the army without a treasure. There was no way to him except Chanderi. The might and majesty of the Sultan will prompt him to be graced with surrender and contentment with which the sultain is qualified. He would not abandon gold, silver and elephants obtained as spoils which are in his bands. This is what I see of him, "The Soltan said," 'Alfuddin has no claim on me except that of my goodness. Which is that thing which prompts him to appropriate? I do not understand \* him. They belong to my men and my treasure. "He then turned to Fakhruddin Kuji and Kamāluddin Abil Ma'āli and Nasnuddin Kohrāmi and said to them," you have heard what Ahmad had seen in the problem. What is your opinion in this matter? "They, as they saw him, were influenced by the reply of Ahmad Chap. He was right. "They all agreed on flattery in judgment sought when he is pleased thereby. They said, "Ahmad had rightly judged. There are seditious rumours which should not be acted upon. With decrees of faith, on his arrival at the receipt of news of the Sultan's encampment, on his way, he would suspect that he would not seize him. He and his companions agreed, what they did not see, on the existence of weath in their hands. They would

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 170.

enter into a safe place without knowing its entrances and exits. They should be surrounded by men of different directions. They would try to get back as far as possible or they would assmble for plunder and disperse. The difficulty would be solved for 'Alauddin. If it happened like this and he received information of it, he would terminate his journey to Devgir in search of them. If monsoon sets in and Ramdan comes, it would be a season of melons at Delhi. It is proper not to travel but to come back when such fruits are there. The month of fast passed. There was a correct report of 'Alauddin's return from Devgir with wealth and elephants. The Sultan stopped in order to associate with them for sake of safety from all directions. He comes to kara. His correspondence continues explaining what is in his mind. He informed about his desires. The Sultan hastens to him and seizes him with wrath. Ahmad said "A great knife should reach Fakhruddin. There is a proverb that the counsellor should be trustworthy. He had flattered in time. He bore it. I replied him for his action. When 'Alauddin came with triumphant heroes to Kara, he saw it was monsoon and therefore there was leisure. He crossed the river Sarāv and gained ascendancy over Lakhnawati with strength of wealth, men, and elephants. Signs of good luck came out to him or to you. The Sultan said to him, "Oh Ahmad! you have always a bad opinion about 'Alauddin. He was nurtured in my room. He became adolescent under my training. How is it possible for him to oppose me and deny my claims upon him. My opinion in this respect is for good. "Fakhruddin was not in accord with this view. Ahmad replied, "The Sultan had resolved upon return. He had killed me with his hands. "He then stood up and went out of mailis. Drums were beaten with permission to march. Ahmad was perturbed and he struck his one hand in another and recited.

> When life becomes dark for man He does what is of no use to him.\*

In the wake of drums, the Sultān rode for return to Delhi. After his halt at Kilokheri, within a few days, there were continual reports about 'Alauddin's arrival at Kara in safety with spoils. Then arrived a letter to the Sultān informing him as to what happened to him during the period stating that he was engaged in that campaign for nearly a year. He had gone to a region unknown to the Sultān without permission. Till that day, he had not received any letter from the Sultān nor any petition. During this period of his absence he did not know what report he received about him from his enemies. Further, his temperament must have changed against him and misconstrued attitude towards him. He and his companions were full of fear till arrival of a letter of the Sultan's pleasure. In the meanwhile, he marched with them and came to gate

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 771.

of the palace. The historian says that 'Alauddin did send letters so hir Whenever he received a letter with pacification against a certain thing, he made excuses with another thing for confirmation of the Sultan from him. He was preparation for a march to Lakhnawati. He sent Zafar Khān to Oudh to colle planks or boats to cross the river Sarav. It so happened that 'Alauddin wit his companions received news that day that Jalaluddin was proceeding to Ka to cross the river to Lakhnawati with what he had in hand and those who we loyal to him. He understood them to be Jalali Muluk. He does not hear an thing therein and he feels inconvenienced with one who addresses him a rebukes him. They have abandoned him and submitted themselves to the w of God. In short Jalaluddin wrote to him in his own hand in form of a covenaand guaranteed him with patronizing kindness and nothing can be more tha this. He sent it through two reliable persons who possessed honour, ran judgment, character, training and experience. When both of them m 'Alauddin, he found them the men of confidence of Jalaluddin, extremely distar Both of both deduced what he had in mind about movement and that he migl produce something new. He had a brother whose name was Ilyas Beg, Amir stables of the Sultan whose daughter was in wedlock with him. He was alway with the Sultan. He wrote letters to his brother informing him about tl Sultan and what new things happened with his companions in regard to his It was at the suggestion of his brother that he intended to go to him by sendir a letter. He, therefore, always said that his brother created fear of Sulti among the people bout the cause of his departure to Devgir and return and that he did not find him coming out of fear. He wants to kill himself wi poison or drown himself in water. Jalaluddin was moved by compassion for h pain and anxiety for life by immersion. Those persons who were sent with letter of pledge saw that he had no patience to conceal a secret from Jalaludd and they had no power over innovation of correspondence. On supposition they were not able to undertake a risk for giving advice to him. They had r trust in him for acceptance of advice nor for veracity of his going out. In th meanwhile, Almas Beg said that 'Alauddin's brother received a letter from 'Alauddin wherein he had stated that "he had marched to Devgir withou permission from the Sultan. Being overcome with fear, I secreted poison c side of my turban to reach my hand. When I was alone, I took it into m hand but there was a honey-comb near it. Otherwise I had resolved upon rewith poison and come out with whatever property I had in the shape of treasure elephants and rare, precious commodities and proceeded from this kingdom i some one else's. The historian said, that 'Alanddin and his confederates ha decided to bring Jalaluddin gradually out to themselves alone with suc fraudulent devices. They had knowledge of his negligence and stupidity alon

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 772.

with compassion or perhaps, he would lose with his out-going what he had brought with him from Devgir. When he met them alone, they would have power over him and they would be safe from their side. Almas Beg took the letter and handed it over to him. When he got acquainted with its contents, he began to say "God is Holy". It is said "When their death approached. there was no delay." Their trick began to work. Almas Beg ordered to ride to him that very hour post-haste before he comes to know what is written in one of orders and to inform him to go alone to him. That happened. It was raining in cats and dogs. It was so muddy that the feet could not be steadied. The historian said that Almas Beg rode in his shirt and reached his brother in seven days. He met him in the city of Karah, informed him about his arrival and cheered him. 'Alauddin ordered the drums of joy to be beaten and said. "My brother has encouraged me. He has come to me in guarantee of safety. The friends of 'Alauddin assembled together to march to Lakhnawati. They said to him, "Greed has seized them to assemble with 'Alauddin. He will take you out in such rain which has made surface of the earth a sea for darting stones from cannons. When they have terminated to you, you know what would be \* after this. The historian said that Jalaluddin firmly determined upon journey to Karah after the march of Almas Beg. His companions met together to prevent him from going. He who approached him for advice was rejected in accordance with: "A friend firmly called you from wickedness". He who came to him to blame, was departed: "Verily, the friend is determined to save him from a censurer". He then set out from Kilokheri alone with special companions and one thousand horsemen to Damhayati(?). Thence he went by water to Kara. He ordered Malek Ahmad Chap to move with the army by land to Kara. 'Alauddin received intelligence of his march. He crossed the river Ganges from Kara with what he owned and with elephants, horses and men and planted a pavilion between Kara and Manikpur and halted there. Inspite of heavy rain. Jalaluddin came out wonderfully safely, through the river Ganges which had assumed the appearance of a sea. During the course of his passage to Kara, Ray Tilak instigated by 'Alauddin proclaimed to his soldiers to be equipped with armours and he ordered his brother Almas Beg to oppose him in his shirt and beguile one thousand horse-men who had accompanied him by inviting them to Kara and join him for succour with a few men he had. He met him in his shirt and said to him, "Ray Jalabak! beware and prepare for flight. He had carried what he had on elephants. I had come with a small number of soldiers. You would find him in his house. I find you with weapons and horses. He had travelled on his face. He would seize treasures and elephants from you and from him. He ordered only his shirt. He had only ten soldiers at Kara. He marched with Almas Beg. Almas Beg waited for a

Original Text, 773.

moment. He was moving with him. I saw him in shirt with veteran swo: men but he had prevented them. He requested them to depart to Kara. did it and remained with a small number of men. He requested them to aside their arms. In short, he dived the river to him. There was none v him. When he neared the shore, the boat in which he was and the boat wl followed him he waded through water on seeing the shore. His arms sh forth. Inspite of it, he did not examine his mind. The Vakil Malek Khu said to Almas Beg, "your brother is in what we see him. your patron though there are swordsmen with him, this state of affairs taken place. We do not demand it." He replied, "what he is in, he inter to petition him." Jalaluddin said, "In this Ramdan, I treaded such a l distance and rode the peril of this river while 'Alauddin did not receive Inspite of his being near the shore in a boat. That was proper for him." replied, " He paused at his house for the sake of his lofty rank to condescenit. This assemblage in front of you is for you. He conveys salutation surrender. He obtains honour inspite of weakness. Anyhow, all of us are ! of his brother and nurtured by him and his aides. Think good of them. Holy Book is in front of him. He reads its contents with a sincere heart repentant. His companions understood with certainty his destruction at t hands and they destroyed themselves with him. They were loyal to him submission. They occupied themselves in reading the chapter of Yasin as recited just when one is on point of death. The boat came to the shore. was the early part of afternoon. Jalaluddin got down from it with a few t 'Alauddin came to see him with all the muluk. He fell at his feet. He ra him up to his chest and kissed his eyes and cheeks. He held his beard t grace and slapped his cheek with his fingers as one does to a young son. slaps with fingers out of rebuke. He said to him, "Oh 'Ali! I always car you on my shoulders when you were a minor and still I feel the smell of urine. I brought you up in a chamber of my kindness till you grew up to age. How should you be afraid of me. I looked after you for long. I never kill you. You are my hand and forearm. Did I need this inconvenie from you in Ramdan?" He then held his hand and went to the boat. of them waited at the water. 'Alauddin withdrew his hand from his ha At his instruction, an idolater gave a blow of sword and he fell dead. He away getting into a boat. He cried out "Oh 'Ali! oh ill-luck! What did do?" A wretch, called Ikhtiaruddin Hud saw him in water and drew towards him. He descended and, slaughtered him and cut his head. He reciting the Kalima, article of faith of the Muslims. He carried the hea 'Alauddin with flowing blood. Dia said, "I heard from a reliable person saw Jalaluddin that he repeatedly recited the Kalima when his head was t

Original Text, p. 774.

severed from body. He recited it at the time of slaughter." I say, "It was worthy of a religiously fighting, virtuous Sultān. He was close to eighty in Ramdān. Split had set among members of his family on account of which\* they lost him. He was speaking when blood was dripping while the tongue was in his mouth. The martyrs live in graves. 'Alāuddin did injustice to his uncle, his patron and ruminated upon God for blood of one who was like a father to him. Covetousness in kingdom is not lasting for him. Allāh makes happy and miserable one whom He wishes. If it is a surprise to you what happened and "Good he sees and evil he sees" should be the motto. I was surprised at this that his head was rotated on a spear in the public roads of Oudh, Manikpur and Kara."

No calamity is a wonder in our age Safety in it is most wonderful.

Dia takes admonitions from the incident with proofs. He widened his topics over which he had control. He says, "In that vacant interval, he came with a Jalali canopy. His head between his two eyes was dripping blood on the spear. His grandees raised a cover from his head. There was no life. They restrained themselves. There was no loyalty. It prevented them, They thought that his blood was flowing uselessly. After him, they enjoyed the world. By no means, God is slow but not negligent. Within a short time, his brother Almas Ulugh Khan was gradually brought to loss of life. It was not at the instruction of his sister's husband Nuşrat Khān. It was not at instigation of revolt of his sister's husband Zafar Khan. It was not at the pleasure of my uncle 'Alaul Mulk, Kotwal. It was not due to Malek Badruddin Asghari Sardawäbdar and not Malek Fakhruddin Junadad Beg. They were the sharers of applause. It was not due to their trust. It was not due to a blow of sword. It was not due to slight leprosy which scattered flesh of his body. It was not due to cutting of his head at the hands of Hud. He went mad quickly. It led to his death with a shriek. He used to shout, "Alas! Jalaluddin! He has an open sword in hand. He cuts my head. It is not a round head. Upon them was the circle of evil. Something will be said in the account of 'Alauddin. I say about Ikhtiäruddin

Did I not know you a Jew Ikhtiaruddin Hud?
The sword tried your head It was prostration to God.

'Alauddin swallowed grief from the harim of his uncle Malek Jahan. He suffered from his wife, the daughter of his uncle, which added to his grief. He had † a beloved whose name was Mahak. He always kept her concealed. He

Original Text, p. 775.

constantly pursued her. Due to glory of his uncle and sharp longue of his aunt, he suffered with patience. It so happened that she entered upon them when they were in privacy. He ran away from her to a side. She was bedecked with jewels and ornaments. He would not lift his feet for her until she retired. He stumbled down with her. She saw her on the bed. She caught her by hairs and beat her on head. 'Alauddin returned in a painful state for her and separated them. He got infuriated and gave her a blow. He beat her by the sheath of his sword. She was slightly wounded. She was released by his beloved. This was the cause of mischief. He, therefore, went out to a strange country from the kingdom of his uncle. During his anxiety, he received intelligence about Devgir. It was from him what was. Jaläluddin marched to him in pouring rain and in Ramdan. He achieved martyrdom on 17th. He had become weak in the year 695 (1295). Dia said that Malek Ahmad Chap received news of his martyrdom before he arrived with the army to Kara. He returned, as soon as he received the news, to Delhi.

Sultan Ruknuddin Ibrahim son of Jalaluddin Firoz Shah

As Arkalikhān son of Jalaluddin was an absolute Sultān in his capital of Multan from the life-time of his father, he had a brother who had attained to adolescence at Kilokheri. Women were as they were. They had no power to issue order. Their existence was a source of mischief. They haltered their husbands and kept them under their command. Under such circumstances, they planted shaded trees of trouble. Here the allusion is to such women as Maleka Jahan. On receipt of news of Jalaluddin's death, she took unawares who were not congenial to her. She made haste in a day to seize kingdom for her son the next day. She marched with what she possessed from Kilokheri to Delhi and took the oath of allegiance for Ruknuddin Ibrāhim son of Jalāluddin Firoz Shah. She acted as Vakil for his minority in years. She administered state affairs in the absence of Jalali muluk. Within a short time, Malek Ahmad Chap arrived with what he had and took an oath of allegiance willy nilly. Arkali Khan heard about her evil and so he cut off information from her. In \* the meantime, there arose difference between her and Ruknuddin in sharing the government. The matter ended in severance. She repented her efforts for his enthronement. She wrote and repeatedly summoned her son Arkali Khān saying, "I am desective in reason. Do you expect steadiness from me? I had received news of martyrdom of your father unawares. No, I had become mad so much so that I did what did not please you. I have made a mistake, oh my son. Pardon me. You make amends soon for the kingdom of your father. Who will succeed when neither I nor you claim it? Be on your guard that it may not lead you to repentance. Arbitrary power will not benefit a repentent being

Original Text, p. 777.

like me. Your father's muluk are ungrateful to him. Those that are, are not accomplished in view of your brother. Hence come soon." He replied without apology. He ended by saying that as ungrateful muluk had joined with 'Alāuddin who would come to help me to fight with him. The rest would have to encounter. What advantage would be there in my being near you.

Men of truth are of opinion that fruits should not be eaten Of a tree which spreads its shade in the garden of another.

If the sky practises tyranny, what will it take from us. If it stretches hand of tyranny, what will it take from us. When we have gambled with life before death Day on which death comes, what will it take from us.

Taqiuddin 'Abdur Rahman al-Wasti says

Verily, calamities when continual Good patience is the remedy Then prayers for repelling harm God does what He wishes.

After the martyrdom of Jalaluddin, 'Alauddin returned to Karah and occupied himself with recruitment of the army. He paused for Arkali Khān's being at Multan. He was personally strong himself. His might had spread to mofussil places. At the ascension of Ruknuddin on the throne of Delhi, the Jalalis assembled around him. When he learnt what happened between Maleka Jahan and her son, he was greatly enthused and his hope widened in scope in the kingdom. He convened an assembly and said to those who were present, "Arkali Khān was sufficient for our anxiety. Ruknuddin is a novice. He does not manage his affairs. Rain will not come in our way of march. Recruit who-\* scever came and buoy him up with hope. Do not reject-broken or whole. Widen covetousnous." He then set out for Delhi in heavy rain. He had catapult to place in front of the thresh-hold. Encamp wherever you like. When the spectacle presented itself whole, he scattered among them tankas of approximate weight. They rushed to catch them and hastened to pick them up. The news spread and people thronged to him from all places. He scattered tanka coins according to their value. Similarly, swordsmen assembled on announcement. They arrived from all sides and swelled his frontiers. The number reached in Badaun to fifty or sixty-thousand horsemen and footmen. At Baran, the residents assembled at 'Idgah around the Wazir Nuşrat Khan. He recorded names and gave money. He did not question about the recruit's merit or ability or caution in a thing and there were no conditions. People

Original Text. p. 778.

heard him saying in a loud voice, "We are kings of Delhi. In the first ye one hundred tanka coins would be exchanged for gold coins for those who h gathered around us in Devgia campaign for bestowal of life and drippin heart's blood. That is dearer to us than to possess hand of the enemy dispersion of illiterates with what we had hardened him for his recruitme The historian said that Alauddin ordered Zafar Khan from Baran to be on way to Delhi at Kaul and many with great speed to traverse to Baran. marched with those who followed him as soldiers. Ruknuddin received cor nuous reports about 'Alauddin's march from Kaul and from Baran. Zafar Kt got ready for resistance with a party of muluk of his father consisting of Ma Tajuddin Kuji, Malek Abaji Akhur Beg, Malek Amir 'Ali Diwana, Malek Uthr Amir-i-Akhur, Malek Amir Kalan, Malek Amir Surkha and Malek Harim When they found leisure, they marched to Baran and deserted to 'Alaudo' On the day of their arrival, they were given rewards according to their sta in the state. Amins were paid fifty gold coins while others twenty. Eve soldier was paid three hundred with kals of gold. On their desertion 'Alauddin, the Jalali house weakened. Rewards emboldened residents of De to go out with him. 'Alauddin had abundance of fodder on the day he march ed and encamped for some days. But the Canopus rose and water beca scarce. In the meanwhile, he crossed with all his soldiers from the cross place Kath and encamped in the maidan of Jud. Ruknuddin marched for Delhi with men who had remained with him and alighted for opposition. midnight, there was an uproar from the left wing. Its cause was that commander of the left wing rode with soldiers under his command as wel subordinates to the side of 'Alauddin and joined him. Ruknuddin was desp. ed of Amir of the right wing as well as of the vanguard. He rode in time the gate of Badaun. It was opened for him. He entered it and took as mi money as he could from the treasury and as many horses as he needed. In morning of the night, he rode to his mother and wife. He issued forth from the Ghazni gate to proceed to Multan. He was followed by Maleka Jahan a Jalaii Malek Qutbuddin 'Alawi, his sons, Malek Ahmad Chap, Alghwas daugh of Changiz and Malek Bughrā Gilāni. The historian said that since 'Alāude came out from Karah and encamped outside Delhi, there were rows of wea moving in front of him and the catapults with him. The Jalali muluk a amirs who received him were ordered to be given gold coins in cups placed catapults and they were thrown to them by way of offering once and thrice accordance with his status in the state. When he saw him at his manzil, weighed for him in a big pair of scales. When one of the chiefs of the arr met him, he was given in a balance. He thus pacified people. He consol rancourous minds due to his atrocity at his patron. He continued it till th

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 779.

forgot Jalaluddin. Only four persons who proceeded to Multan with Maleka Jahan, left behind. On his encampment outside in, residents of Delhi decided to recite Khutba in his name before allegiance for the sake of gold. Imams and sadrs went to Siri to congratulate him. The historian said that Malek Tājuddin Kuji and those who were his subordinates at Baran said by seeing citizens deserting Ruknuddin and becoming locate to the murderer of his father. They did no justice therein. A Jalali malek carbout from his son on the day of his departure from the palace to attempt his life at Kara. He heard the news. He saw the effect of it. He advanced to play with his head and heads of his companions. We did not do. He said the same thing on 'Alauddin's gift. His murder became easy for the Jalali and the general public. They expressed desire to serve in the saltanat. It became clear by this event to the general public that it was gold which destroyed Jalaluddin while 'Alauddin got infuriated with his uncle because of gold. All went over to his side because of gold. The kingdom departed from its heir.

Gold spilled the blood of all while gold is at its place There is none who seeks blood by gold.

Ruknuddin Ibrāhim ruled for nearly five months. It was during this period that 'Alāuddin treaded the path from Kara to where he encamped on the river Jamna at a distance of three farsakhs from Delhi. On the second day, Ruknuddin set out to Multān. He rode in with state cavalcade to Siri and encamped outside it. I say, gold was offered through catapults to recruited soldiers and novices from among the high and the low. It was constantly done till ascension on throne at Delhi and also loyalty of hearts. He was fond of those who worshipped God literarily. A day before, he got his uncle murdered even though he was his patron. He tore open the pockets. During these months, gold was distributed beyond imagination to those who were present. It was bestowed upon even on men of lowest rank in numbers. It was a wonder which distracted mind for the number spent. There is nothing to be said about its amount. Gold that came was not less. How can one imagine of its being spent in balance or scales or through catapults. For such a thing Mu'arri says

This is what bewilders fancy
It made a proficient learned man a heretic.

The historian said that the general public got enriched and the vagabonds prospered on his arrival at Delhi. Every intelligent man devoted himself to his literary activities with sufficient means at his disposal. Persons of power and might extended hands of liberality. 'Alauddin engrossed himself in the world

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 780.

and raised those whom he wished in his elevated hands. I say, he broug untold wealth from Devgir. It was carried on one thousand animals reported by Husam Khan in his Tabagat. Diauddin said that 'Alauddin c tributed gold and made public rejoicings in the year of his ascension. ripped open the curtains of intoxication and guaranteed every door at t house of a vintner. I had not seen time like this. I was assisted with obligation in my old age. I did not see any one greater than myself. Times alw produced wonders. On his first ascension, he prepared Ulugh Khān and Za Khan to murch to Multan. After a siege of a month or two, the Kotwal, tl is, the Police Officer inclined towards 'Alauddin. Residents and the amirs of the same. Arkali Khan was despaired of the kingdom and members of family. He became a faithful believer of Outb-uz-Zaman, my Shaikh, Barlul-Islam Bahauddin Zakariya and Shaikh-ul-Islam Ruknuddin Multani, n their graves be sanctified. The city remained safe because of them. Th who sought refuge with them deserted to 'Alauddin with amnesty. The ar marched back. This was due to the assemblage on the way with Nusrat Kh He blinded his brothers, Ulaghkhu, Ahmad and killed children of Arkali Kh He imprisoned him and his brother in the fort of Hansi. It was his close of l Such was the case of Ulughkhu. He returned with the harim and Ahmad ; all the treasure to Delhi.

## Sultan 'Alanddin 'Ali son of Nașruddin brother of Julal Khalji

'Aläuddin 'Alı son of Nașr brother of Jaläluddin Firoj Khalji ascended throne at Delhi on 19th Zilhajj, 695 (1295). This date is recorded by Hu-Khân in his Tabaqāt-i-Bahādurshāhi. The historian Ziā was acquainted w the year and month clearly but he did not speak of the date 19th. He mentioned about his coming out from Kara to his ascension of the throne Delhi but it was not in the year. The event took place during Ramdan a there remained three months for completion of the year. It is an error of scribe and not of the historian as I guess. None was left out of oath allegiance. It was a day worth witnessing. He raised ranks of his companiin state and titles. His brother Almäs Beg was titled Ulugh Khan. Hazbarud Yusuf son of 'Alauddin's sister was designated as Zafar Khan. Malek Nuş Jalesari, husband of 'Alauddin's sister was titled Nuşrat Khân. He was Wazii him. Amir-ul-Majlis Sanjar was titled Alap Khan. Similarly, ahads (orderlie were raised to the rank of tens; tens to hundreds; hundreds to Imarat (amirsh and imarat to malekship. Wizatat was transferred from Nusrat Khan Khwaja Khatir, Malek-ul-Umara Fakhruddin Kotwal had died during the reg of Jalaluddin. He was an efficient man. When 'Alauddin sat on the throne

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 781.

delegated his charge to Nuṣrat Khān. Kotwāl means the governor of the fort. It is an important office. Kādi Ṣadr-i-Jahān Ṣadruddin 'Ārif father of Dāwar-ul-Mulk became Malek-ul-Kadāt (Chief Kādi). Umdat-ul-Mulk was assigned Diwān-ul-Inshā (Chancery). His father was ennobled as Malek Ḥamid-ul-Mulk as a sitter in his assembly. Malek Fakhruddin Kuji was made Dād Beg that is, Amir-ul-'Adl (Minister of Justice). Zafar Khān was appointed as Diwān-ul-'Ard (Master of Ceremonies). Malek Abāji was 'appointed as Ākhur Beg (Superintendent of Stables) while Malek Haranmār as Nāib Barbak (Deputy in charge of commissariat). Uncle of the historian 'Alāul Mulk was appointed as governor of Kara and Oudh which were under charge of 'Alāuddin. Malek Junā (old) became Nāib-ul-Wakil. Muaidd-ul-Mulk, father of the historian was appointed as Nāib of Baran. Similarly, he was in charge of property and religious endowments. In his early part of reign, he created a department of virtue where prayers were recited on his behalf which changed vices into virtues.

In 696 (1296), the incident of Arkali Khān, Ruknuddin, Ulghu and Aḥmad Chap took place. It was a calamity to him at Multān. In this year, 'Alāul Mulk came from Kara with what was left behind in his charge of treasures, elephants, stores, muluk and amirs. In this year, Nuṣrat Khān reverted to Wizārat. 'Alāul Mulk was appointed to the charge of Malek-ul-Umarā Kotwāl. He was very fat and could walk with difficulty. Hence he lacked vigour to work. 'Alauddin assigned to him his former charge. In the early part, he did not meet him. He was in anxiety about the Jalāli muluk and amirs. Gold made him an ambassador between him and they till they turned loyal and dutiful. After the incident of Multān, the kingdom was cleared of them. 'Alāul Mulk, the Kotwāl extended his hands to their property and wealth. Nuṣrat Khān obtained all their wealth by possible stratagem. In the year of his Wizārat, he collected all fines and penalties and recurred to Tanka.\*

In this year, there was a war between the Mughals who had crossed the river of Sind in large numbers and Ulugh Khān and Zafar Khān on the frontiers of Jāran Manjhur. On receipt of news of Mughal crossing, both of them marched from Delhi. After a severe struggle, it was a victory for them. With news of victory, they became with Mughal heads to Delhi. It was a great victory because of their large numbers. Drums of congratulation were beaten. With the incident of Multān, the Jalāli house terminated. 'Alāuddin became an absolute ruler with establishment of his power. With this victory, multitudes of people thronged and steadied their feet. The matter became serious. He feared violence and dispute. The cities were decorated. Disputes received their full share inspite of control of the censor in public. 'Alāuddin, therefore, ordered to punish those who were ungrateful to his uncle and who had joined him for

Original Text, p. 783.

the sake of dinars and dirhams. The malek and the amir were penalized. rewarded those who took no part in the incident and who were reliable supplied him with information. They were summoned, examined and rewa He continued gifts and presents. Thus they were out of difficulty in respe property, wealth and women and regions. Many of them were imprisblinded and killed. Only Outbuddin 'Alwi, Malek Nasiruddin in charg elephants and Malek Amir Jamāluddin Qadr Khān were spared. Those had preserved the salt of Jalaluddin in bases, migrated at the time of including Maleka Jahan to Multan. The rest dispersed including Ilyas as required. 'Alauddin did nothing to him. Even after the incident, he did take a particle of his gold. 'Alauddin learnt about them. He showed far to them for years. (Know that my historian is Mirkhwand of Habib-us-S The narrators of reports always differ according to their hearing. They on what they have heard relying upon the understanding of news. The obsc look to what is said and not to who said. Most of them narrated at night picked up news then. Hence what took place between scholars of places publicised in dafters. It was not accurrate narration from first to las refer it to Muhammed bin Jarir al-Tabari, Ahmad bin Thabit al-khatik Baghdadi, Hafiz ibn-un-Najjar, Hafiz al-Mas'udi, Hafiz ibn-i-Kathib, Hai Zahabi, Hafiz ibn-ul-Jawzi al-Mukadasi, Shamsuddin ibn-i-Khallikan, Ahmad bin Hajar al-'Askalāni, Hāfiz al-Suyuti, Hāfiz ibn-i-'Asākir, Abi Barbaqi, Abi! Fath etc. There is no region without a historian, no kin without its his prian. It is only the historian, of the region or the kin who gives information of what he saw or heard from the city. As far as regions are concerned, his information depends upon hearsay. Narrators calamity of history. The account of this Alauddin Sultan of Hind is desc by a historian in his history called 'Tarikh-i-Firezshāh-i-he is Diăuddin Ba with deviation of nature, evil temperament, scantiness of faith, roug of character, incongruousness in niorals as I narrated in the life-account He has mentioned without good qualities and asks you to say prayers o behalf. As I said that Barani has recorded some years of events of his lif some incidents are described in short fearing repetition as there was no for it ).

Dià Barani said that Ulugh Khan came to Naharwala in the yea (1297). Its ruler was Ray Kawan (Karan). He gained ascendancy over He repeated the principles of Islam as was done in the regime of Sultan Mal Subuktagin. He was foreign to them. Mahmud demolished Somnath it year 416 (1122) and carried its relics to Ghazni. After his death, un returned to Naharwala as its residents took an idol and buried it on a

Original Text, p. 784.

There was publicity of return of Somnāth. They took it out from its burial place. It was exhibited and fixed at a place where it was. Malek Ulugh Khān is along with all the spoils to Delhi. They made it the threshold at its gate. This victory took place on Wednesday, 20th Jamādi I, 698 (1299). What Dā has described on the date of victory after the conquest of Naharwāla to 'Alauddin's march to Ranthanbhor should be 698 (1299). He has stated it 697. Another man said that he conquered most of the places of Hind such as Delhi, Ajmer, Naharwāla, Asāwal and other hundred places. There did not\* remain any fort and strong hold of unbeliever in Hind except Ranthanbhor. It was held, during the regime of 'Alāuddin by Lahmar (Laxman) dev Rāy. He fled to it relying upon its impregnability. Every powerful ruler rallied to him.

In the year 696 (1296), the Mughals of al-Tatari came to the environs of Delhi. Ulugh Khān marched against them. He did not spare them from killing except those who accepted Islām. There were three thousand Muslim Mughals. He turned to them. They were safely conducted to Delhi. 'Alauddin found them worthy of service. He assembled them in his diwan and selected most of them as amirs. One of them was Muhammed Shah, Others were Kisra, Tamar Beg, Shādi Beg and Katlagh Beg. He despatched them in company of his brother Ulugh Kban to Naharwala. On his return from it, his soldiers demanded one-fifth of spoils at Jalor. They were those persons who were sought after. They killed his envoy Malek 'Izzuddin, the brother of Nusrat Khān and attacked him. They thought that he was dead and moved with what they had to Ranthanbhor after killing the son of Sultan's sister. They plundered him to the extent they could. They were given shelter by Hamar Dev Ray. 'Alauddin then did to the members of their families and their children by way of retaliation for the son of his brother. Ulugh Khān prepared himself for march to Ranthanbhor in the year 699 (1300). They say that it was won on 3rd Zilka'ad, 700 (1300). It is said by one other than Dia that 'Alauddin had collected for this campaign, which was not done before, seventy thousand horse who were always ready at his gate, eleven hundred elephants who never separated themselves from backs of elephants as well as untold wealth. He acquired reputation after continuous victories. He acquired rare commodities and wealth with desires. Stupid fellows met together and exchanged forbidden things. Distraction gained ascendancy over them. He neglected state affairs. Satan overpowered him. He aspired to be a prophet or he wanted to be like Alexander the Great in the kingdom. He did not accept advice of any one. He was nearly forty-three years of age. He then turned from his character by giving up what was to be given up. He moulded his character to obligation...... from sins and went

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text. p. 785.

beyond limit in punishment. He would not become submissive. He clain super-natural powers. It was due to his lack of worthiness for control. Ul Khan then marched to Ranthanbhor as stated above. He returned to Del after victory. He recommended his plan. It was annual. He engaged recitation of the Holy Quran and resolved upon revival of religion. He m efforts to acquire virtues. He asked Mawlana Mughithuddin as to what was religious order in connection with the wealth brought from Devgir. He rep that it belonged to the Public Treasury and that he had a share to a cer extent. He then removed all oppressive measures and made administration justice and practice of obligation essential for the state. He personally condustate matters with efficiency. He made efforts for progress and prosperity. enjoined upon his officers for the same. He examined accounts. He adoj progressive policy. Thus there was no curtain between him and his subj. They loved him and said prayers on his behalf. In the year 702 (1303) equipped a large army for march to Chitor. He then marched in person to When he encamped at the foot of mountain, its ruler realized his helplessnes biniself. He did not inform any one of the chiefs who were his friends, waited for an opportunity. He descended with one who was in accord with view to go to the pavilion of the Sultan. He surrendered himself to him acknowledged his authority in the mountain over all those who were there. Sultan rode in time and considered the mountain as his own and its resic had knowledge of it. They came in the way of the mountain and fought fie as far as possible. The ultimate victory was of the Sultan. The sun was it metidian and he did with the sword with doors locked. Thirty thou residents of the mountain or more were killed. It was a victory on Monday Muhariam, 703 (1304). At sun-rise, the Sultan was there and every one with ruler of the mountain who did not depart from him. They surrou the mountain well. The government of the mountain was entrusted to his Khidr Khan and Chitor was named as Khidrabad after his name. He scended from the mouncain to his pavilion at the bottom. He received a re or Talari Mughals' arrival to the environs of Delhi. Their number cons of twenty thousand horse. He entrusted government of the mountai. some of his men and marched to Delhi. Zafar Khān was in charge of mountain. They did not find a way to a sort of life they wanted to It was difficult for another man to undertake his charge. They coveted to I the Kingdom. The Sultan wrote to Malek Fakhruddin son of Ghazi. He on the frontiers of Telangana. He was transferred to be in place of Zafar K It was done. He built forts and penetrated decply into the entrance directions of the Mughals. Most of them were killed while most of them

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 786.

made captives. Their killed were more than twenty thousand. The captives\* were brought to the Sultan. The Sultan threw them at the feet of elephants. It was a great affair and serious. They learnt a lesson from him. They went away far off from him. Residents and travellers became safe. There was no report of their inroad. It became a forgotten affair. The Sultan turned from this matter to that of imarat of Ranthanbhor, Chitor, Karha, Chanderi and 'Alapur. Ulugh Khan was transferred as an Amir of Gujarat while Tajul-Mulk was appointed an Amir of Siwastan, Zafar Khan had conquered it in the year 698 (1299). 'Ain-ul-Mulk was equipped for the conquest of Mandu. When 'Alauddin marched from Chitor to Delhi, there remained some agents for its defence. He sent his wife for surrender to the Sultan. He had heard that she was the most beautiful woman and that there was none like her. Further it was said to him about her that she was the most excellent woman, A woman with this quality is spoken of in Hind as Padmini. The existence of such a woman is rare. When the envoy informed him as to what the Sultan wanted him to send. He promised him to surrender her. In short, he agreed to that. It is said that the Sultan before he marched was asked by his wife for his release which was promised. When he marched, he was to follow him in his stirrup, he asked him to wait at the foot as he would send some one to summon her. Her surrender would please the Sultan. She would come with some trustworthy servant. The Sultan agreed to that. He started march to Delbi. The unbeliever said to the servant that he sent for her but she was unable to come alone and therefore all the women of the harem would come to the mountain to join with me. When they present themselves, I will surrender her to you. He replied to them thus. He sent for his men at the mountain to inform them about the state of affairs. He sent word that five hundred men with arms should sit in five hundred palkis. Each palki was carried by four men. They did so and came to the camp. They sought women. But the camp was surprised when the palkis were put down from shoulders, twenty-five hundred men with swords descended into the camp. The ruler rode his horse in the midst of those persons who came out from the palkis. Only a few persons of 'Alauddin were left behind. Many of them had fled away. When the Sultan received intellig-t ence of it, the affair of the mountain was arranged by the daughter of the ruler's sister who was married to the Sultan. He established his own control over the mountain and kept it under his subjugation. The Wazir of the ruler, in course of time obtained the rank of proximity to the Sultan. He killed her in an hour of leisure. The unbeliever returned to his mountain and administered state affairs as before. This state of affairs continued till the Sultan of Gujarat Bahadur son of Muzaffar descended upon the mountain and conquered it in Q4I

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 787.

(1534). From that time, Sultan 'Alauddin killed an unbelieving ruler. 'Ain Mulk descended upon the fort of Mandu. A battle was fought between him : its ruler Mahlak Dev who had forty thousand horse and one hundred thou: foot. He died while in flight. 'Ain-ul-Mulk conquered the fort on Thursc 2nd Jamādi I. 705 (1305-6). Kāfur made preparations for march to Devgii 708 (1308). Another man says in 706 (1306). Dia does not mention the obedience of Ramdev's sons after him. Another historian says that they revol 'Aläuddin despatched an army in fury against those who allied themselves v them and killed them in the above year. 'Alauddin went out on a hun expedition and turned from it to Siwana. Its ruler was Santal Dev. He assa him and killed him after a short siege. He also killed his ally. He had an at of nearly one thousand or more. He conquered the fort and governed it. 7 victory was gained on Wednesday, 13th Muharram, 708 (1308). Another hi tian says that the ruler of Jalor fort was Kanhar Dev who was obedient to Sultan and in his service. It is said that calamity is an agent of speech. In meanwhile, he was present along with others in the Diwan. One day, some heard him saying that an unbeliever alone opposes my army. He was seized . stupid jealousy. He said "submission to the Sultan is better than war with I Hand of the Sultan is not longer than another hand. The Sultan, if called for opposition, I will come to him." He came to the mountain of Jalor fortified the fort as far as possible. The Sultan equipped an army against under Ahdi Jawariah-one of the concubines. Her name was Kul Behisht. fort was stormed. Her son came forward to fight for the fort. It so happ that she died. The Sultan received news of it. He ordered Malek Kamaln famous as Bakrak to command that army. It so happened that on the da of his arrival, Malck Shahin, son of the concubine Kul Behisht entered the mountain. Känhar Dev encountered him. He caught hold of his hand s killed its ruler. It was a victory for Kamaluddin in 708 (1308)] In (1297), the territory of Ray Karan, ruler of Naharwala, capital of Gujarat invaded. 'Aläuddin prepared Ulugh Khān and Nuşrat Khān for invasio Gujarat. When they were near Naharwala, its ruler, Ray Karan came ou encounter them. A fierce battle took place between them which resulted in flight of Riy to Devgir. Members of his family were captured. He left be his horses, elephants and stores. The capital was plundered. pillaged his territory and left nothing. The historian said that there was an in it. It was kept by a Brahmin after being mutilated by Mahamud. It Lamnat. They named it Somnath. They worshipped it out of mis-guide from ancient times. They carried it to Delhi. It was placed at the entranc the gate. Nustat then marched to Kanbhayat and seized from its merchants residents case and commodities by violence and left nothing with them. Ka

Original Text, p. 789.

al-Alfi a unuch was with some merchant. He was extremely handsome. He was famous as Kāfur Hazār Dinari. He was taken from his owner by force inspite of his dis-dain in the name of 'Alauddin. Alauddin loved him and kept him as a slave and raised to the status of his Naib. His account follows. He returned from Khanbhayat. He and Ulugh Khan treaded the path to Delhi with the spoils of Gujarat and the family of Ray Karan including his wife: It so happened that both of them demanded one-fifth from the booty of the army and they were serious with insult and blow and insisted with exaggeration to take it out. The army had a party of neo-Muslim Mughal amirs. Husam Khan savs that the demand was made on the environs of Nagor. The chief of the Mughals was Muhammed Shāh. He had a command of three thousand. The trouble became serious. His companions assembled with arms. They assailed the tent of Ulugh Khān. He came out from an opening of the external screen of the tent and fled to the pavilion of Nusrat Khan. He was not aware of this affair of the Mughals. 'Izzuddin, Amir-ul-Hājib, brother of Nuṣrat Khān was asleep in the tent near the bed of Ulugh Khan. They killed him thinking him to be Ulugh Khan. They came out and extended their hands to his belongings. The friends of \* Nuṣrat Khān met together for this matter and they forbade them to approach him. The Mughals seized as much as they could and dispersed on the frontiers of the unbelievers. It is stated in the history of Husam Khan that they all went to Ranthanbhor with the booty. Their object was to take one-fifth portion of booty of Nusrat Khan. When the Mughals, entered upon him, he was sitting on an elevated seat. One of them cast him down by an arrow. He bent down towards the earth so his arrow missed him. With his separation from the seat, they became sure of his death. They then came out and stretched their hands to his belongings as much as they could and went out of the camp. The army was much affected by their demand. They stood up to prevent the Mughals from this. Ulugh Khān came to him and forbade him to make demand of onefifth portion. He proclaimed among the soldiers about it. The mischief subsided. They marched to Delhi safely. 'Alauddin learnt about this matter of the Mughals. He ordered for imprisonment of their wives and children. Dia says that much in his history. There was no punishment at Delhi to women and children for the offence of men. Nuşrat Khan originated this injustice as he originated complaints of others. He harassed women for the murder of his brother, exposed their privates, surrendered them to the sect of sewage-cleaners and slaughtered their children in their presence. Grief overwhelmed every one that day for he did not do good to them but evil. There was no love between them for a pretty long time. In this year, the Tatars dominated over Siwastan. The name of their amir was Şaldi. Zafar Khan marched against him. He

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 790.

encamped at the fort and opened it violently with the sword. There was neit cannon nor rifle. Inspite of hordes of the Mughals, they were not powerfu darts. He assaulted them, captured them and sent them in chains to I including Saldi and his brother. The historian said that 'Alauddin was delight at this victory and the safety of Zafar Khan. He thanked him for his Rust like heroic deeds. He was afraid of his involvement into peril. He was no for his stubbornness and was worried for his death. In like manner, Ulugh K had lost his brother for that. He enjoyed immense fame because of them. Tl was compassion between him and they as well as service, loyalty and execu of order even at peril of death. He was anxious for them either with poiso with charge of distant frontiers. I say that the world is like this: I wish life while he wishes my murder, then where is his desire in what I desire of l Their affairs were sufficient. He vanished anxiety for them and they were frie and loyal to outward appearance; from first to last. They were near him wi ever he desired them to be. They understood that he would not assail the as an enemy. It was not said of them that he was afraid of him. For purpose he returned to them with a desire for repentance. He shed tears their sake. In this condition, he did not fail to do what was necessary. was worthy not to be alraid of him? In this year, he summoned firmness t out of moderation of illiterate persons. In our time, there are no men to r amends for the faithful. Their actions would be in accord with words. Diau said that when 'Alauddin perfected his self and owned mines and treasures. were not for any 'uler of Delhi till his time. There was no year free from news of birth. His victories continued and the number of his soldiers increa There were seventy thousand horses in the stables. Similarly was the case elephants and animals. His kingdom had extended. No teacher of reli gave him a lesson for reciting the Quran. Only swordsmen till today sat in assembly. It was in the nature of ignorance, hardness, pride and arrogance was for this reason that he did not follow talks of privacy either in hints c explicity. Sometimes, he addressed his assemblies and said "I sought my self with two matters of freedom. How to act with them. I did not ach what I sought but disturbance therein. When Ulugh Khan, Zafar Khan, Nu Khān and Alp Khān were with him, he said one day, "God, the Holy helpec prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him with four Khalifas, God be pleased with them. They achieved what was achieved in his time. A him, they met for preservation of his creed and victory of his religion till faith became stable and the Muslims assembled upon him. I am in a sin position. I sought my own self with the religion I originated and faith I crea You four are for me like the four companions, helping me with the sword

Original Text, p. 791.

follow me in life. After me, my name will last because of you as the name of the Prophet may peace and benediction of God be on him and that of the companions lasts. This is one of the matters you see. Another matter is that which myself sought. It is following in the footsteps of Alexander to conquer the world. I have as you see horses, elephants, men, treasures, arms, power and strength and that I should mention in the khutba and the sikka as the Second Alexander. It occurred to my mind. I had conquered this region and \* I want to nominate in it a Nāib from efficient men. I will conquer another region, control it and appoint therein a Nāib. I will go beyond that region and similarly conquer the fourth prosperous one and return to Delhi." The historian said that whenever he met men of the assembly, he displayed pride of saltanat, sharpness of temperament, fury of intoxication and absurdity of ideas. They defended him with politeness and means of approximation till the majlis was over and there did not remain anything except this. It was similar to him in meaning:

Your speech, oh! this empty toast void of meaning but it rattles.

Dia said that his talks spread of their own accord. People laughed at them and made mockery of them. They abstained from them. He saw ends of things before their beginning. He had amassed wealth and gathered strength. He said. "My uncle 'Alaul Mulk the Kotwal had resigned but he used to visit him with his heavy fat body on the first of each month. He heard from him what was noised abroad. He waited till night. When he entered upon him. he found him in a majlis of cup and near him were the four aforesaid persons, After swallowing drink, one, two, three cups, he hinted at his favourite matters, He said to him, "Permit us to enjoy majlis of association of Joviality. We four alone are present in it. I will answer your question." He did so. 'Alaul Mulk first begged his pardon. He then said, "speech in religion and faith is for the prophets with revelation to them. It is not for the sultans. Religion has taken shape with wisdom and judgment from the time of Adam, may peace be on him to the time of our Prophet Muhammed, may peace and benediction of God be on him. God chooses for prophethood whom He likes and descends revelation upon him. It happens every time for a person whom He wishes for the sake of reforms. He who follows the prophet is called upon for war and his help. The Prophethood terminated with Muhammed may peace and benediction of God be on him. The Khalifas enliven his rules and regulations and his religion after him. On his death, news from the skies is stopped. His character is imitated and people act in accordance with their teachings. After them, the learned men follow their character. They record it and preserve the

Original Text, p. 792.

faith with what is recorded in the Book and the Sunna and with that wh comes from them. They carry out what is extracted from the consensu opinion of the Imams by spilling blood. After the Khalifas, that turned fr them to kings till our day. He who administered Justice, would get rewar He who made effort and made mistake therein, his rank would not rise fr what was in times of pious Khalifas. Those who could, made efforts. The is no way to prophethood and there is no way similarly to religion other th that of Muhammed, may peace and benediction of God be on him. Pun. ment in religion is made easy upon his followers. How can any one origin religion. There is no disturbance emerged between the general people and public. It is only the propagation of the formula. "There is no God but ( and Muhammed is the Messenger of Allah." Your mission is to repulse att of Changiz Khūn the Mughal for he spills blood of the Muslims. There i torrent of it on surface of the earth. There is no value to the mission of Mughal for invitation to religion. No Muslim is heard to accept the faith the Mughal. I am a servant of the Saltanat. I do not speak except w I know to be good. My life depends upon the existence of Saltanat. I disturbance takes place in the kingdom in respect of religion, I would be first to be killed at their hands with my wife and family. I am moderat reply with goodness and politeness. I know what is harmful and what is b ficial. I did not act a hypocrite in search of pleasure of my patron. S persons were afraid of sharpness of the Sultan's temperament. This is what I to be a reply in the query put to me." 'Alauddin applauded his speech and wonderstruck at its truth. Such was the case with four famous men. 1 found a way from his speech to a petition with acceptance though he did like it. They praised him, 'Alauddin realized the truth.' He said to 1 You have distinguished me with your harangue. I know it is out of 3 sincerity, truth, resolution and wisdom. You are true as far as possible pondered over what you explained and found it as you said. By truth, true to follow it. I seek forgiveness of God for what is from me. May God ward you with good. Another problem remains. I want you to answer it. said, "we hear it with loyalty. I inform you about it." He said, "God collected causes for its master. He has fixed your dominion. You intend insitate Sikander. Thanks are due to his ambition. He did not rule over D as he knew by spending dirhams. To whom did it go in niyabat? It goes one who gives from his treasury and maintains an army. Who resolves enter kingdom of another man and opened its gate? It was not easy. direct knower knows it. On this supposition is conquest of the one-fourth ! of habitation. It is a short period of absence in movement and steadiness f return to the capital of Delhi Where is it from your determination to its s

Original Text, 793.

to return. He ruled over those regions and he traversed over those sides. In such wide rotation how do you imagine its residents to be safe from revolts. The age of Sikander was different from this age. In spite of this, it was easy for him as he wished. His Naib was in the capital of Rum. With a multitude of residents, extensive neighbourhood, his minister was the philosopher Aristotle. There were continual reports propagated through different tongues that he returned to Madain after a lapse of two, three or four years. There was no disorder from the day he left his Capital even to the extent weight of a particle or hair of the head. Most citizens of Hind are unbelievers. Most of the rest are vicious while the Muslims are illiterate and the wise among them are indifferent, nearer to injustice, more distant from lovalty. They had neither wealth for them from a mighty sultan nor a sharp sword. He missed when I did not come out from him and his posture changed." 'Aläuddin gave ear to his speech. He then said to him. "On this, I am contented with Hind. I will derive benefits from these horses, elephants, treasures and preparations. I have no name and ceremony in the conquest of regions which is the life of the world. 'Alaul Mulk replied him as mentioned. Lofty ambition accomplishes one's desire. One of his ambitious desires was accomplished by his conquests in Hind over which he had established his authority such as Ranthanbhor, Chitor, Chanderi, Mālwa, Dhār, Ujjain and the eastern portion as far as the river Sarav; similarly Siwalik Parbat to Jalor and Multan to Damrila; from Balam to Lahore, Div and Balpur. With regard to the second desire, it has been observed to be most important and to be undertaken first. He had anxiety about the entrances of the Mughals to Hind and to prevent them through them. He blockaded the roads by building forts and erection of fortresses and strengthened them by cannons and guns and constant transfer of soldiers and retinue under command of renowned amirs. He constructed rest-houses one after the other on the frontiers and frightful paths and worthy armies were always on duty there. The frontiers were thus defended by preparation of buildings and population of entrances. One of muluks of the saltanat\* was appointed as Amir at Sāmāna; similarly at Multān. The localities were made secure against inroads of the Mughals. They were prevented from entry into frontiers by might. Reports of security spread to neighbouring parts of The Caravans started coming and it widened the gate of revenue. Immense good accrued from every direction. When it became easy for the saltanat to establish order in the region of Hind, the frontiers became safe against inroads of the Mughals. He remained at Delhi to equip an army to different regions for establishment of control and order. He then said that the head of Government was vigilant of state matters. There was no indifference

Original Text, p. 795.

to major and minor state affairs. Signs of intoxication existed among tl He abandoned it in a proper manner. Similarly, he gave up hunting for all time which was not without engagement with birds and wild animals w brought about inadvertence and indifference to person and important s affairs. Economic measures were taken in the palace. He went for garr siri. It was a limited maidan for hunting. It was expanded for throwing game length-wise and breadth-wise from four directions. He delayed the out of desire for preservation and collection of thought. I wrote a book statecraft out of his kindness towards me. It deals with etiquette of the st I represented therein for my own safety. He was safety for you. The pointed man stands excused. 'Alauddin took counsel from what was sai him. He was honoured with a gold-embroidered robe with images of lion o Another person was not allowed to wear such a robe. He was given a neck on girdle of gold weighing half a maund and two horses with saddle and en lishment as well as ten thousand tankas, coin of his time. It was mor weight of two cavities. Gifts from the four Khans came to him to his he They were belitting their renown in the saltanat. They were delighted the pleasure they had from him. Afterwards the earth pressed upon them all its spaciousness due to serious events and might of ignorance. 'Alau sought his opinion in execution of his two schemes. He started with conc of the strong-hold of Ranthanbhor. Its account follows.

At the close of the year, that is, 697 (1297) the inroad of Katlagh Kh son of Dawa al-Mughali, the chief of heathen Tatars at Transoxiana took p Its short account is: His father Dawa flourished during the regime of Hulal in his wake, his influence became firm in Samarkand. His authority exter over Transoxiana and its adjacent places. During the reign of 'Alauddin, had received reports about excess and deficiency (strength and weakness regard to his uncle both in the state and his worth. He thought of conques Hing. He prepared his son Katlagh Khan with an army numbering tw taman (one taman = 10,000 men) to Delhi. He advised him to blind t Hindis who were not frightened for the sake of benefit. It was a prospe country. It should become his. He executed his will and marched continuo from manzil to manzil till he crossed Sindhu. Report of invasion sprea-Delhi. Within a short period, he encamped at it. Residents living on environs fled through fear for harm not from the causer of harm. That was to his imagining the kingdom to be only a portion. When he landed on river Jamna at a distance of farsakhs from the city. It was 'Alauddin's j diction. He was troubled because of his hordes. He advised 'Alaul Mulk, Kotwal for defence of the house of Hind and the house of saltanat including

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 796.

belongings of the harem, the treasure and the stores. He left Delhi for Siri. 'Alaul Mulk followed him to it. On his return to Delhi, he requested for a private interview and said that in an event like this, do not be despaired of victory. It is for those who are always the emblems of saltanat in matters of experience. They should, first of all, be with the advance-guard. They should be strengthened with amirs, then succour of muluks to amirs. Then the last remedy is branding. If victory is gained, there should be general thanks-giving. He excused himself greatly. It was proper for the amirs to proceed to Siri. They surrounded and took to the paths and the army encamped there for some days to steady themselves or discontinue march for examination. His men joined him, restrained them from movement and prevented them from taking hay by force. It was higher than they. They disobeyed his order for long march and halted afterwards. Correspondence continued to him. His tongue gave information of what was in his mind. There was wisdom in his action otherwise: The sword showed greater truth than pen. 'Alauddin ordered his muluk to be present, and said "'Alaul Mulk the Wazir and son of Wazir. He is my sincere servant. From the early days of my imarat till to-day, he always guides me with his judgment, but I had to relieve him from the post of the Wazir because of his heavy fat body. He advised me as usual in this event and I will hear his reply in your presence." He then turned to him and said "'Alaul Mulk, as stated in this maxim, they do not put on a level" You stole a camel and walk in the manner of a hunch-backed person; in like manner, they do not mix up saltanat of Delhi with blockade of roads for the sake of war. Do not say that the enemy formed designs from a distance of one thousand farsakhs (leagues, 3 miles = farsakh) and encamped beneath the minar of Delhi. It is not graceful on my part to traverse a distance of farsakhs to meet him. I am\* like a duck sitting on its egg calling who makes excuses to me. Nay, tomorrow I will march from Siri to Kili encamping in the maidan. The will of God will operate. Defence with judgment is not to be imagined. It would take time. The enemy is eye to eye and so wisdom from us is on one side and we are on the other side. There would be no advantage from the sword and the mace. I will not be in tune to cut heads. If you make the city and the palace safe against them; I would salute him and surrender keys to him. Afterwards, he would build the gates." 'Alaul Mulk kissed his hand and bade him adieu and returned to Delhi. He defended the city at every gate except the Badaun gate. People engaged themselves in distribution of alms and saying prayers to ward off the calamity as descended.

> Tidings of victory and martyrdom of Hazbaruddin Zafar Khān, maymercy of the Obliging Lord be on him.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 797.

'Alauddin marched in his armour to the maidan of Kili and encan there. In like manner, Katlagh Khwājah stirred up movement for war marched towards him and encamped opposite to him. They both assemble the maidan and the armies encountered. Equals fought and the time serious. Hazbaruddin Zafar Khan was in command of the right wing. assault was fierce. His attack was furious. He splendidly penetrated de into the ranks of enemy. The breeze of victory blew. Feet of the Mu slipped and they turned back in retreat. All of them followed in rout. 2 Khan would not turn from them. He had killed a multitude of them to a tance of eighteen farsakhs. His army was cut off from him. He remained a centre in the circle of the Mughals alone. Almas Beg Ulugh Khan wa command of the left wing. Before a fall, there was an interval between th They breathed or felt environs. He restrained his reins from him but did no him. The Mughal lay in ambush under the standard of Targhi in the neighb hood of Buruhi on the road. He saw rout of the Mughals by the forces of Z Khan and none else. He was not in wake. He got slightly agitated fo victory inspite of not cutting the distance. He came out from the amb followed him and perceived him and reviewed his position to himself with routed Mughals. He assembled them to fight with him. He had a small nur of soldiers but his compeers were renowned for intrepidity and constance flogging, and bent of elevating the formula of God. Management of war with them and their tongues recited "God is sufficient for you and he, who you followed me from the faithful." They in steps and on tongue recited ' any do turn his back to them on such a day-unless it be in a stratagem of or to retreat to a troop (of his own)—he draws on himself the wrath of Gi They uttered the phrase of evidence and felicity being in joy for the good 1 of beneficence of God coming to them. Dia said that Zafar Khan remained there was none with him. His horse stumbled, the saddle got separated an knel! on his knees, his quiver got scattered before him, darts spread around and he was like a centre of circle in their midst. No arrow was placed for The Mughals praised him. They demanded his surrender for his personal se with one tongue. Katlagh Khwaja sent some one to him telling him for security and requesting him to be with his father Dawa and that he would ! double than what he had in his country. But he lent no ear to him. 7 attributed despair for his fall. He achieved martyrdom, the other of his a panions. It was not far-fetched that he was the first of them to enter paradise as was the case with their leader in following with him to entry: the door. May God elevate their ranks and accept their deeds. The Mug did not pause in their flight from the maidan of Kili until they covered th

Original Text, p. 798.

farsakhs from it. They encamped that day and searched for their companions and found a large number of them missing. It was a great affair with them from Zafar Khān alone. They got despaired of Hind. They unanimously decided to seek safety by covering distance at long halts. Sultān 'Alāuddin was elated outwardly with the victory. His fame spread far and wide and his might got noised abroad. His heart was all delight at the affliction of Zafar Khān at the hand of another person. He had desired it. He was seeking counsel of his self to poison him. It was a means of comfort from him. He returned from Kili to Delhi. The Mughals were not emboldened from this age to descend upon Delhi when Qatlagh Khwāja was absolved from calamity of Zafar Khān's sword. He was involved in dread which divested their hearts so much so that a horseman brought water for his horse who would not drink it out of fear on mention of Zafar Khān's name.

In 699 (1300), 'Alauddin resolved upon the conquest of Ranthanbhor. It is a lofty mountain and on its peak, there is an invincible fort where Hanbar Dev son of the daughter of Ray of Delhi lived. He was an unbeliever of great might and renown in his frontiers. In an occurrence on the environs of Nagor. when Nusrat Khān and Ulugh Khān returned from Gujarāt, the Mughals who\* had taken part in the campaign of Gujarāt, had deserted Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan. They were sheltered by the Ray. He had extended his territory with their help. A historian other than Diauddin Barani narrated that 'Alauddin corresponded with him for their surrender or their expulsion from his boundary but he did not respond to him. Therefore or when it occurred to his mind for conquest of regions from Hind, he equipped his brother Almas Beg Ulugh Khan, governor of Biana, to march to Ranthanbhor. He wrote to the Amil of Kara Nusrat Khān to join him with his army along with the amirs and retinue of those sides. He and Nusrat Khan assembled at the foot of the afore-said mountain. It is stated in the history of Husam Khan that Ulugh Khan made preparations and encamped outside Biana and Hanbar Dev Ray received intelligence of that. He assembled his companions and told them about it. They said, "We disengage him from the fort by laying waste his territory. He would return for its defence and give up his designs against the fort." Ulugh Khān had fifteen thousand troopers. Chiefs of the various localities joined with him including Muhammed Shāh Mughal with three thousand horsemen of his companions. He formed the vanguard. Both the armies faced each other at Biuna. It was a fierce battle. Many Muslims achieved martyrdom. Ulugh Khān paused and wrote to 'Alāuddin. He was helped by Nuşrat Khān as well as those who were on those sides. All of them stepped forward to Ranthanbhor. They descended upon the fort and besieged it. Hanbar Dev had garrisoned

Original Text, p. 799.

himself within it with his reliable men. The army of Islam gained ascendancy over Jhayan. They brought pressure upon the fort. One day, Nuṣrat Khan arranged peril at the camp. He then stood face to face with the cannons on the turret wherein was Hanbar Dev. Muḥammed Shāh was on his side. When Nuṣrat Khān saw, he recognized him. He said to Hanbar Dev, "Where is such and such a rider? I am from you if you or I get it." He said, "This is my necklace and pointed it out with his fingers. It was of gold studded with octagonal gems." He threw it through the cannon. He slanted from his saddle, touched the ground. Men of the turret raised a clamour in applause and joy with the fall of horseman. Hanbar Dev removed necklace from his neck and gave it to him.

## Martyrdom of Nușrat Khan Jalesari:-

His special companions gathered around Nusrat Khan and carried him to\* his tent alive. A surgeon treated him who made it conditional for him not to move with difficulty till he regained strength. For forty days, the wounded should be attended upon by some one. A day passed. On the next day, Ulugh Khan paid a sick visit to him. When he went near his bed, he could not breathe out of respect for him. He strained himself to move. Mouth of the wound opened up through pressure of strength. He died then and then. Similarly, Husam Khan informs us about his death. But Dia Barani narrates that one day, he rode to the fort. He was near it. In the meantime, he struggled to raise the subterranean passage when he was accurrately hit by a stone from a cannon. He died after two or three days. 'Alauddin received news of his death. He marched from Delhi to Ranthanbhor. Husan Khan says that he mourned his death. He went to his wife and told her that she had no patience to mourn death of his brother Nusrat Khan. Immediately, he recited fatiha for him and then set out for Rauthaubhor to seck revenge for him. When he reached Talbhat on the way he halted there for some days moving in neighbour hoods and penetrated deeply in those places in search of game famous as 'Shikar-i-Kumraghah.' One day, he perceived a game in the evening in vicinity of a village Badah. He spent his night in the village. At sun-rise, he ordered horsemen and retinue to plant a circle for prevention of game. It is like this. Animals are shied from a place of doubt for some days. They assemble at a place from all directions in a measure of one or two farsakhs. It is increased or lessened to the extent of animals. A circle then is formed out of screens etc at a place, preventing animals thus from coming out of place. The circle is defended by men in order that nothing should pass from it. The hunter enters the circle on horse-back. Similarly, those persons who are with him enter it with various kinds of arms for killing the game. In case, the game is a lion, it

Original Text, p. 800

cessary that those who are with him, should be afforded protection and ince. He then orders to make animals run within the circle with no passage me out. When made to run from beyond the circle, he assembles them in of him or his right and his left. He hunts what he likes and entices it to it of his desire. He then sits on an elevated place which he has chosen for day to overlook the place of hunt adjacent to the circle. He orders similar he similar within the circle. They get a share of sport and play while he ooks them from the elevated place. He rejoices at their movements in h of game till the turn comes to bring down and it is caused to bring down. rame assembles alive and they are killed in a large number. The game igs to one who hunted it. During his days, 'Alauddin made animals run." circle is kept intact. He ordered on the morning of the day wherever he t the night to arrange a circle. He occupied himself by remaining present He sat on one side and close to him sat the special attendants. A son of rother and his vakil Akat Khan was with a party of expert horsemen. In arly age of Islam, people were noted for archery. They came before him darted arrows. He was upon his seat. It was winter. He had lot of wine s robe. When they assembled for throw of darts, it descended upon his He removed it by hand restraining it. With its fall, two arrows straight came to his body and wounded him slightly. From one side, the mamalik cled him between himself and throw of darts. He was safe because of their ber. The remaining small number of retinue assembled with their armours nd the Sultan guarding him. Akat Khan stepped forward with his panions to kill them. He came near him to descend upon him to cut his . The retinue saw them with drawn swords inspite of their massacre. were on feet for his protection. They waited a while from him. In the atime, the retinue shouted for his death and displayed that by gesture. e who lacked wisdom attributed it to their veracity. The historian stated if he got down for action and came to what he intended, it was therein is said "No water is left for you and there is no clear freedom in you." n seditious persons heard about his death, they returned from him to the on certainty of his murder.

Safety of 'Alauddin and his preservation and repentance for lack of caution after determination. Akat Khan died.

Khān was his near relation. He was his Vakil. He was loyal to him in t and horse. 'Alāuddin was frightful among them for his severity. He did tread the contrary path which was not declared to him out of kindness for a with his fear and for his death. Akat Khān had come with those who with him to the pavilion of 'Alāuddin and sat on his throne and said in the

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 801.

loudest voice addressing those who were present from among the chiefs of the army with the news of his death to him. He who saw his boldness to sit on his throne, found him sincere in what he said but he who sought the effect of it, was in doubt about it. Inspite of it, different sections of people in accordance with their habits, assembled in the Diwan. He came with elephants with a flatter of banners on the side of the expanse and publicised congratulations with saltanat. \* He was about to adjust order in a perfect manner. He did not display arms in time but he did not act with precaution as required except the Amir of Harim. I'timād-us. Saltanat Malek Dinār al-'Alāi al-Tawāshi. As soon as Akat Khān arrived and sat on the throne, he assembled his companions with arms and prepared himself for war in defence of the Harim. In the meanwhile, he was occupied with efforts and inducement of his men when Akat Khan made a demand on him for entry into the harim under excitement of beastly nature for passionate desire of the harim. Malik Dinar sent message to him conveying that there was no entry for him into the harim until he saw his head through his murder, eaten his red flesh and white fat. When 'Alauddin settled down to what he settled down. It was said of him at a place of incident that he did. He roamed about in the circle with pride for the incident. Sixty or seventy attendants remained with him. They shared descent with him. From among the grandees, Näib-ul-Wikālat, Malek Hamiduddin son of 'Umdat-ul-Mulk, Aristotle of the age was with him. When Akat Khan returned from them, they saw 'Alauddin's wound, washed its blood, dressed it for healing. It was done with his help. He had become weak due to flow of lot of blood. When blood stopped to flow and the wound was dressed, 'Alauddin pondered over the incident. He thought of concord with many to march to his brother Ulugh Khan who was at Jhayan. He sent Hamiduddin to the camp. He who saw him on the road, joined with him and moved with him and halted at a hill overlooking the pavilion. More than five hundred troopers had gathered around him. He paused at the overlooking hill and saw people of the canopy hastening towards him and female elephants hurrying to male elephants. There was hilarity in the camp which appeared similar to clamour of delegation. There was shrill note of bugle on one side, beating of drum on the other, announcement from one direction, horses neighing, elephants screaming, shooting of guns and thunder of cannons. He was marching to the hill from pavilion or there was a majlis or he was proceeding from floor of the Diwan or from wherever he was. He did not place his feet in the stirrup. He was on a hill like an arrow of bow or a stone of cannon. Out of joy he was about to fly to him. He had forgotten the heap; he did not know the path; residence had parted him; noise had subsided; solicitude had reached such a pitch that it approached a hasty walk at an arm

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 802.

and two arms' length so that God the Holy may take him near to him. Just vhen the canopy was raised, and all persons started for march. Akat Khan came out from a gate other than the Gate of Sultanat on a horse running to Afghanpur. Alauddin descended from the hill with that majesty to proceed to his pavilion. He entered it and sat on the throne and permitted all persons to salute him. 'he curtain was lifted up for that purpose. Akat Khan was pursued by Malek Izzuddin, Tughan Khan, and Malek Nasiruddin Burkhan. They saw him at Dahand from Afghanpur and so both of them returned with his head to Alauddin. He ordered that it should be placed on point of a spear and a proclamation made of it by perambulating it in the camp and in Delhi and it hould then be sent to his brother Ulugh Khan at Ihayan. He was his younger prother. His title was Taghlak Khan. He ordered him to be slaughtered in the camp. He paused at Malhab along with those who were with him and in concert with him. He killed all of them by way of punishment unimaginable. heir property was confiscated, their wives and children were ruined in captivity, mprisonment and exile. He then marched from Malhab to Ranthanbhor and incamped in his pavilion at the foot. He ordered punishment for rest of disloval persons, the companions of Akat Khan by way of warning to those who did not ee that punishment. He then pressed the siege. A multitude of uncivilized persons and vagabonds had assembled from all sides for active operation of the iege. Great intellectual giants were in employ for collection of materials for ccomplishment of vicory. They filled up a large bed of a torrent, furrowed its nouths like the Egyptian measure of capacity and cast it into its depth's and litches, levelled the earth and raised it also. 'Alauddin collected persons by payment of large sums of dirhams. He saw that elevation of cannons would ead to conquest of the fort and similarly the subterranean passages for the annons would blast and destroy from different directions. Inmates of the fort vould be brought under authority by desolation of subterranean passages and plowing them up by fire by casting infiammable materials. Men at the foot yould make possible efforts to accomplish victory. In the meantime, 'Alauddin eceived news this year of a revolt of his sister's son Malek 'Umru Mangu Khan n the region of Badaun and Oudh. He marched against them and seized by orce what they had taken and came to Ranthanbhor with them. He extracted\* heir eyes and divested them of bounties.

Afterwards, there was an incident this year of Ḥāji Aḥad Mawāli, Malekil-Umrā, Fakhruddin Kotwāl. He was a mischief-monger, a malevolent person
and a daring man. He was in charge of crown-lands. Government of the city
vas in charge of a man called, Tirmizi. It was his duty to announce
proclamations. He was extremely rich. Out of his illegal money which he

Original Text, p. 804.

acquired by oppression over citizens, he built a building from the Badaun Gate to entrance of his house. He had also a building in the Siri maidan for Diwanul-Wizārat. 'Alāuddin Ayāz was Hākim of the new fort. The afore-said Kādi saw that the city was without a Hakim while people assembled around him and restriction of 'Alauddin was at a distance from him for he was at Ranthanbhor. lle won over those whom he knew during the days he was Malek-ul-Umrā. He came out from the city in afternoon in the middle of Ramdan. The sun was in the sign of Gemini. People kept themselves within doors due to extreme heat. He returned to it. He had a forged letter in his turban. People saw it, He stood at the gate of Tirmizi and called him to announce the contents of the letter as having come from the Sultan. Tirmizi went to him alone. He ordered his servants to seize him and kill him. People gathered around Tirmizi from every side. He said that he killed him under that order. He showed him the forged letter. People returned to him. They rejoiced at the murder of Tirmizi. These persons consisted of watchmen at the gates who were heretics. They closed the gates. The heretic sent some one to summon 'Alauddin Ayaz to acquaint him with contents of the letter. Some Kharejis informed him about the state of affairs. He did not reply. He closed gates of the new fort and made efforts for its defence. The Khāreji attacked the palace known as Kushak-i-La'l in Dār-us-Saltanat. He sat on the raised platform. He released all the 'Alāi mamäliks from prison. They joined him. He controlled the treasure and distributed it among his followers. He took out arms from the armoury. He opened the stables and gave away horses to his followers. In this way, many vagabonds assembled around him. He rode out with them to 'Alawi house which had become famous with the son of the king's daughter. He was from the side of his mother, son of the daughter of the Sultan, Shamsuddin. He was taken to the palace by force and nominated as Sultan. People were called therein for oath of allegiance. He began to bestow manşabs, and distribute territory. The city was set fire to in revolt. People got involved in his\* rebellion. They were loyal to 'Alauddin. A week passed and they were in amazement at what had taken place and would happen. God made amends for his servants through Malek Hamiduddin, Amir-i-Koh, that is, mountain. He prepared himself with his sons, relatives and followers, entered the city from the Gate of Ghazni and laid designs on Dar-us-Saltanat. The Khareji garrisoned himself. Hamiduddin besieged him. It so happened that the army of Zafar Khan arrived from Amruha with the intention of Diwan-ul-'Ard. They made their appearance at the siege with Malek Hamiduddin. Hamiduddin entered the palace from the gate. He was in the market of shoe-makers. Hamiduddin went on foot and met the Khareji. After brandishing the sword, Hamiduddin

Original Text, p. 805.

aught him by hands, wrestled with him and sat on his chest. His Khareji companions assembled for his release with swords. Hamiduddin received some wounds. Inspite of that, he did not rise from his chest till he killed him. He then entered the 'Alai palace and killed his Khareji companions whom he found. Alawi was among them. They cut his head and fixed it on a spear and perambulated it in the city. The city thus enjoyed peace and security. Hamiduddin wrote to 'Alauddin about what had happened. He then pursued the Khareji's helpers and recovered from them what they had taken from the reasury and killed all of them. This incident happened and 'Alauddin had eccived intelligence of it in the beginning of it. He did not engage with it because of what he was in. When he learnt about the end of it, he sent his prother Ulugh Khan to Delhi. He came alone and alighted in the palace known as Mawradudabi. He hunted out the followers of the Khareji and inflicted punishment upon them so much so that blood began to flow on surface of the earth. The Khāreji was in the house of Malek-ul-Umarā and so all the sons and grandsons of Malek-ul-Umara were expelled from it and repudiated. Similarly, the remaining members of the household of Malek-ul-Umara did not remain with him in name even during their life with safety for a long time. It 's a subject-matter of a logician. The world is an accident and it is its subject. Every accident undergoes a change. The result is that the world is changeable. When it is said that the world is changeable and every changeable object is accidental. Hence it is said that the world is accidental. The historian said that 'Alauddin gained a victory, after attempts and efforts, over Hanbar Dev Ray and over those Mughals whom he had sheltered. He killed all of them. He bestowed the fort upon his brother Ulugh Khan with what it had and the\* territory. Husam Khan had given account of 'Alauddin's encampment at the loot and its victory. The causes led to hold of it by the firm rope and turning in affairs to that which is good and lasting. It was achieved by purity of faith in pure beings soliciting bounties through medium of saints. They are watchmen at His gate and residents of the screen on his threshold. It is better to have them as trustees and retirement in mountain and desert. Salvation is with them and to them is the refuge. May God benefit us through them. It is a short account of it. Ray Hanbar Dev had two ministers, one of them was Ranmal and the other Ratanpal. When the siege prolonged, and there was help from members of his community, both of them said to him one day, "We are berieged white 'Alauddin is a besieger. You are from the beginning pressed. Peace should be requested. He is from the very outset with extension of time. Permit us to descend to him. We make efforts to make peace which may be acceptable to you and him. Perhaps, those terms may be accepted. "He gave

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 806.

them permission. Both got down the fort and made efforts for peace. He replied that there would be no peace except through surrender of the fort and daughter of the Ray called Diwari as well as well-known 'Arab horses numbering ten thousand, elephants and treasure." This is the fort. Islam has gained ascendancy over Delbi. It is a place of residence for the Muslims. They defeated Ray Hanhar Dev and members of his family. Delhi belonged to his father. It was a well-fortified fort and peak of a mountain. As they had descended with a view to peace, they had no need for it except to take a pledge for their salvation from agony of severity which resulted in victory by force. They therefore petitioned him and said " If you wait for his surrender, what is the order to us and specially for us." He replied, "To you and to them is amnesty." They said, "A large number of Rajput swordsmen have assembled in the fort. It is possible that they have assembled to go out with us. We have nothing with the saltanat as they." He replied, "It is left to you." They said, "We intend for them a plan we have in our hand and relation to him. There should be regard for the Girasias from them. We intend for us the grant of Gondawa, with its territory. Ponder over our request. We know from our master that he would become angry on mere mention of the name of his daughter. He would suspect us. It will not be possible, after our going out from his mailis, to return to him except with despair of life. For that purpose,\* it would be the beginning of separation and coming to you with them. After their descent, there would be few persons for defence of the fort out of mercy and the Mughals." 'Alanddin ordered to draft terms of covenant as they requested. They left the Diwan for the fort. Both of them informed him about their questions and his replies. When he heard about Diwari, his anger became most severe. He said to Ranmal, "If any one else other than you had mentioned her, he would have extracted his tongue." He then said to him, "You know my nature. I wish you had not mentioned her name in my majlis." Rannial was afraid of what he hastened to him in talk. He left him and met the Rajputs. He said to them "Wisdom of the Ray is not in order. There is no way to safety. He suspected us. There is safety in hasty separation from him. This is the document of covenant for us and for you. What do you see in it?" They said, "We have entrusted us to your care. We are with you." He said, "Follow me." He got down as well as Ratanpal and those who were with them, the Rajputs and their followers. None knew except Muhammed Shah Mughal. He informed the Ray and hastened to stop them. They had reached the foot. They assembled with 'Alauddin and became his followers. After their descent, one day, the Ray was in the turret and Muhammed Shah stood by his side. They overlooked the Sultan. He saw a dancing girl in his

Original Text. p. 807.

resence. He permitted Muhammed Shah to throw a dart. He said to him, He is at a distance for the aim. I will first aim at the dancing girl. If the row reached her, it would reach him; he aimed her and she fell to the ground. e said. "It is the dart of Muhammed Shāh." The Rāy applauded his throw. e then permitted him to aim at 'Alauddin. He was in his house. He did not ave it for the sake of dart knowing his steadfastness. He said to him, "Wait ll I get permission of my mother for it." He went to her, she said to him, Do not do it. He is the Sultan of Delhi. He has despotic power. He would ) what he wished. We are enjoined to observe good manners. We need to be pologetic. If you aim a dart, the canopy would upturn in case of its hitting right. Perhaps he might take a lesson and think of return." He came to the irret and apprised him with what she said. He threw a dart which straight av returned. 'Alauddin stood up from the majlis. It forced him to delay ore. He had killed a large number of persons in the manzils of the fort. God spired him with victory. He wrote to Shaikh of the region of Delhi, master his age, administrator of internal and outward territory to whom he wished\* ı what he wished and when he wished, Qutb-ul-Awliya, help of faith and world, ar lord, our blessing, our salvation, our purity, our spiritual guide Nizāmuddin wliyā may God sanctify his grave, with a request for victory and prayers. His ply was there was no prayer for victory with me. He is 'Imad Khalji, I call im in your army and request him for prayer. 'Alauddin was surprised at the sistence from whom to seek counsel who is master of his age and in his army. le questioned the master of rolls about every 'Imad in the record. He informed im about them and mentioned the name of 'Imad Khalji. He was informed pout his tent and character. He then met him and requested him for dua' prayer). He humbly apologized. He informed him about the letter of the haikh to him. He asked for a delay of three days. At midnight, he dressed imself in the uniform of a warrior, rode a horse upto the foot and spurred him ad came to the house of the Ray. He was asleep over the cot. He called him I his name, and announced to him. His heart divested of mourning from im. He pacified him a little and said to him, "You have completed the period here would be no advantage to you from preparations. Come out of the fort therwise I would stab you. His spear was held up aright." He said, "Give ie time for a day." The Ray woke up in the morning with uneasiness of ight. He assembled his nobles and said, "I inform you which is similar to emency or melancholia which I had at night with such and such a horseman. he night will come, "I will keep you present to hear him without any ediatory." At mid-night the horseman was there saying to him what he had tid on the previous night. The Ray heard him as well as those who were present

Original Text, p. 808.

near him. The Ray said to him, "Permit me to put a question to you." He replied, "Ask except life, fort and successor." He said, "What is your name?" He said, "He is to you after you." He said, "Permit him to come out of the fort." In the morning, he proclaimed to those who had resolved upon death with me for my family would come with his family to meet for jauhar together. Fire and no disgrace. He who is concerned with life, he should descend from the fort with his family for I have secured amnesty for those who would descend. He then called Muhammed Shah Mughal and said to him, "You are a Muslim. You remained constant with me in affliction and now I do not load you with what is not in your religion. Hence get down all of you with your families; farewell, farewell. He said, "I respond to you." He then remained at his house and said to his companions, "what do you see?" The Ray had resolved upon jauhar and death. We are involved in this trial on this day. You had determined for loyalty to him; he who is not on my footsteps, should descend with his family, there is enough time. They say in an adage, "A sincere friend is one who remains with a friend even in fire". Their\* we then and children assembled in the house and they killed them. Muhammed Shah returned to the Ray and held his hand upto his house. He then looked at women and children and reproached them out of kindness. He then said to him "Alânddin is bad to us but you are good. He reclaims you for us and he pushes you from us. This would happen you in a day. We see you and we secede from you for salvation. That would not be." He embraced him and said to bim, "Permit, I have children. I intend to go with them to Mandalgarh." Perhaps one of them lives to keep his name. He then ordered all. Brother of the kay came out with five hundred men including Muhammed Shah who was left with his men. They then descended to the foot at night, and treaded the path wherever they found order for 'Alauddin engaged them and Muhammed in war till they passed. He was then disposed from encounter to encirclement. In this manner, they had order at every place till the brother of the Ray connived at places of orders. He returned from him to the fort. Most of his followers had perished. He met Ray Hanbar Dev. Fire was in operation and it was said in a maxim that fire was upon flag. He descended with him. It was morning when they came to the foot to join death with members of his family. Renowned chiefs were in straits in that battle-field. First of them was Hanbar Dev, then his brother Biram Dev and the prince Mabhar Mir. There was resident of the fort. He wanted to marry his daughter Diwari. She was proverbial in point of beauty. She accepted his proposal. He sent for her for that purpose. He ascended the mountain before descent of the soldiers upon him. It so happened that she was with him in descent. He knew that, she

Original Text, p. 809.

ared his affliction and perished with him. Thus the three perished. The poet escribes exploits of their great men in sword-play, their boldness in death and ilogises them. Last of the name was Chāchā, that is, brother to him who was ith him. They too were three. The Muslims were also three-Muhammed Shah ughal, Amir Kabhar Mughal and Amir Baljak Mughal. In short, they were me in all. They were on one side. The 'Alai army and 'Alauddin were in ms. He was on his elephant with bugle and drum on the other side. They epped forward for war with ancient swords and passing hearts. They strove, ade efforts and moved to be calm when they fell all in the battle-field. When \* Jauddin stood by the killed, he found Muhammed Shah among them with a st breath. Wounds had made him thick. 'Alauddin said to Ranmal or to atanpal who were walking in his stirrup, "he has reached me. He would be it free with me." He replied, "I had come out at night with sons of the Ray. was left living with them in the fort." He got infuriated by his statement. e was riding an elephant. He drove elephant upon him and placed him beneath is weight. He perished. Ranmal asked him about Hanbar Dev who was mongst them. He pointed him out by the thumb of his foot to him and raised is face with it from the ground to the side of 'Alauddin. He dis-approved I him for his bad manners towards him. He asked him, "what did you and our brother suffer from him? He replied, "The kingdom had nothing from im. He ate, drank and clothed himself. Nothing more than this. He was for s and in our hands." He said to him, "What importance you will have for ou from me. He deserved touch of skin for what he had given you from his ingdom. You raised skin of his face by fingers of your feet. Your patron was ot worthy of it. "He then ordered his fingers to be removed and then ordered severe their heads and throw their bodies in a ditch. He ordered funeral remony for Muhammed Shah and his companions and got them buried. He marked that nothing could be expected from ungrateful persons at an opporane time and especially from swordsmen. They should have displayed steadiess to the Ray out of their loyalty. Loyalty is praiseworthy even if from an nemy. He then ordered the Ray and his followers to be carried from the battleeld. On next day of battle, the Sultan ascended the fort and went round it to et information. He bestowed it with its contents along with adjacent territory nd Jhayan upon his brother Ulugh Khan and returned to Delhi. This victory ok place on 3rd Zika'ad, 700 (1300) as narrated by Husam Khan in regard to onquest of Ranthanbhor. Ziauddin said that he returned to Delhi after the ictory. The residents were filled with fear due to the incident of Mawla Malek-1-Umara on account of allegiance for 'Alawi and particularly covetous persons ho had enriched themselves by gold from the treasury on that day. He vented

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 810.

his wrath especially on leaders of the city and its grandees. He issued orders for their expulsion from Delhi to its environs and neighbourhoods and for residence outside the city. He was free from anxiety because of their expulsion. None prevented him for so doing. For Ranthanbhor, his mind was free from anxiety because of Malek of Malek Hamiduddin son of 'Alauddin and his brother 'Izzuddin and Malek 'Abdul Malek Multani, having been, posted there. He returned to Delhi with reliance on base and construction on it as to be described later on.\*

## Death of Almas Beg Ulugh Khan bin Nașr Khalji

Diā said that Almās Beg Ulugh Khān son of Naṣr Khalji died in the year 701 (1302). 'Alāuddin attained what he attained from his uncle with him. He was one of the four who established his authority. Besides, they desired to see their blood shed in gaining victories etc. except Nuṣrat Khān. Zafar Khān witnessed martyrdom of Nuṣrat Khān. He was at ease in respect of him. Husām said that Ulugh Khān took poison on his return from Ranthanbhor. Its effects continued for four or five months. He was busy during this period with collection of soldiers for the conquest of Arangal (Warangal) in the south. He fell ill. His illness became serious so he was brought to Delhi. He died on the way. He was brought dead to Delhi. He was buried in his house. Diāuddin said that 'Alāuddin mourned his death with sadness, distributed alms on his behalf, mostly he recited the Holy Book for delight of his soul and said necessary voluntary prayer. An account of his relation with Alp Khān in disease of death follows.

In 702 or 703 (1303 or 1304), 'Alāuddin marched to Chitor, and conquered it and returned to Delhi. He equipped Malek-ul-Umrā Fakhruddin Junādād Beg, and Malek Fakhr son of Nuṣrat Khān's brother, 'āmil of Karah along with all the amirs of Hind for a march to Warangal. Targhi the Mughal heard about his march to Chitor and that Delhi was without an army, he marched towards it with more than twenty to thirty thousand troopers and alighted at it and blockaded the roads. He alighted at 'Delhi while it is said that it was Siri where 'Alāuddin came behind him from Chitor. The soldiers were in need of new arms for fresh preparation for their having been used up in the siege of Chitor. In the meantime, 'Alāuddin marched from Delhi to Siri, encamped, dug up wide ditches around the camp, made roads of timber with the help of doors of houses for placing on them. He made gates and watches and arranged for number of horses and elephants on every side of it. He strove for prevention of the Mughals from entry on roads. The Mughals made efforts similarly in pressure † and siege of Delhi. It was a serious trial for the residents. None could come

Original Text, p. 811.

1 and go out. Their needs had to be realized from outside the city such as rater, hay, fuel and other necessary things of life. The river was at a distance f farsakhs from Delhi. People derived benefits from wells, spacious ditches nd Sultāni Hawz which was called Tallāj (talāv, pond). It was at a distance, ound in shape and walled by stone on all sides with a shore under shade of big ees and a building in front. It was for this purpose, that the Mughals always ame to it for drink and general recreation during day. Their horses came and ent to Mauradudahi and a raised platform known as Subhāni Chabutra. Many time, vanguards came and dispersed and skirmishes took place between them. rictory was for the army of Islam. 'Alauddin was always on the roads for strict evention with a small force of men for two reasons. Firstly with scarcity of eeds, he had to equip himself with fresh preparation. The enemy was with rge numbers with strong preparation. Secondly, he was prevented from lunging into a total war because of absence of his army in Warangal. Malek akhruddin Junadad Beg had encamped at Warangal and he had pressed the iege. Monsoon set in and rain poured in torrents. Period of encampment had rolonged to four months and yet there was no victory. Difficulty pressed on, upply got exhausted and there was need for amends. He returned from 'arangal to his respective charges, Targhi had encamped at Delhi. He had plockaded roads and surrounded the city. He paused at Kaul and Barni. He and heard about 'Alauddin's encampment on roads in the maidan of Siri while larghi had alighted opposite to him. Vanguards used to come and go. He lefended the river Jamna against crossing it from all imaginable places and taus here was no passage to cross. The army of Hind was not at Div Balpur. samana and Multan and various other places to come in the way of Mughals or entry into frontiers. In short, Targhi made efforts for assault, similarly Alauddin strove for defence with his mamaliks, muluks, retinue, and elephants. Ie was a mighty swordsman, of felicitous fortune, victorious in battles like a protecting lion in a forest till Targhi marched towards Samarqand after a nonth without any reason. God the Holy is Merciful towards the faithful. At he extreme end, there is an opening. It became necessary for him to defend is frontiers. It was essential not to go out to the fort and that the army hould not be despatched to a long distance. He started to build up Siri and nade it the capital city. The muluks, amirs, wazirs, chamberlains, envoys,\* leputies, elite and common people populated it. He built fortress of stone for it and took omens for its habitation. When Targhi returned, none would be able o dominate over it. Malek Fakhruddin Junadad Beg presented himself with preparations he had made. He repaired the fort of Delhi and established authority over it. He ordered for defence of the forts which lay on the route of

Original Text, p. 813.

the Mughals and those that needed repaired were repaired, old ones were rebuilt and new ones were constructed at places of needs. They were strengthened by renowned amirs, troopers, equipment, arms and stores. There was no need for anything at the time of defence against the enemy and for his attack; on it. Amirs were posted at Samana and Dipalpur who were noted for stern control and who could make the Mughal weak for entry. After control of frontiers, he assembled in his majlis those whom God had endowed with wisdom and prudence. He dived deep with them in matters of defence of the frontiers and control of forts, eradication of the Mughals, propagation of safety and security and price control. After great cogitation on thoughts and veracities, they came to a decision that a soldier should be pure in character, strong in physique, brave in war, perfect in use of arms, an expert horseman with a renown in horsemanship. They then meditated over the problem of their discipline and training. They decided upon distribution of gold hoards. It should be recorded in the musterroll under their names as to what is paid to them in the first, second and third year. In like manner, a large treasure would become empty after a lapse of five or six years. The kingdom cannot afford it. With decrease of treasure through passage of years, their strength will suffer, their ambition will be stultified and their affairs will be nullified. This will lead to disadvantage of imagination. I had directed my energy to training of a perfect horseman, with a salary of one hundred tankas, forty and thirty tankas. A man with two horses should be paid eighty and seventy tankas. On this analogy, there would be more and less. With this petty sum, how can his training be of first class. I seek your help in this matter for lifting up the veil from the face of possibility." They met together for the solution of this difficulty. They said in representation of it "Training of such a soldier does not enter into the mind. It is not possible to say as to what such a person needs for the horse, arms and other preparations and then for drink, food and clothes according to his needs. He gets these \* articles at cheap price. When he obtained them cheap, he satisfied his needs with the low salary. Something is left in his hand which he feels to be more, High salary with rise in price is equal in his opinion. He contents himself with low salary with lower price. He is most pleased with it." He applauded them. He said, "Put your judgment in action for lowering prices. It should be done with sternness, wrath, punishment and coercion. If it is not achieved, discuss it." They said, "Prices cannot be stabilised by our judgment. It should be done through balances and controls, may be agriculture. First of all, it is necessary to cheapen food-grains. It depends upon controls. Secondly, clothings and thirdly, horses and the rest of animals, servants and maid-servants, fourthly, materials, utensils etc. Diauddin said that when 'Alauddin made efforts

Original Text, p. 814.

or defence of frontiers and strove for lowering prices, the regions were safe and ecure against treading of the Mughals. Those Mughals who entered the oundary were killed and captured. There was permanent progress. Amirs of ne frontiers despatched heads of the killed after gaining victory over them in vars. 'Alāuddin threw captives in chains at the feet of elephants. He erected arrets and platforms out of their heads. At other place, it became a matter for ride in Islām. Only one person captured a party of Mughals and led them. Muslim horseman put one hundred Mughals to rout.

In the year 704 (1304-05), approximately, the Mughals arrived at Amruha. Ali Beg used to say that he who was born of Changiz Khan the Mughal and sarbak Mughal was head of his army. Both of them entered the frontiers of mruha with forty thousand horsemen. Malek Banka was despatched against aem from Delhi. Both the armies encountered at its environs. After killing hem on a large scale, 'Ali Beg and Barbak were captured. The malek bound hem in cords and drove them along with other captives to Delhi. He sent forses of the killed. Their number was twenty thousand. Similar was the ase with horses of the captives. When they came to Delhi, 'Alauddin came ut from Där-us-Saltanat to the raised platform what was called the Chabutra iubhani. He summoned all in his presence. He sat on the throne at the raised platform. He was shaded with royal pavilion, the troopers were arrayed in rows\* n front of him with rows on right and left beneath the cupola to the entrance. there was an assemblage of muluks, 'Alai Amirs, cavalry, infantry, elite, ommon-folk, long rows of elephants with banners and discipline. The captives tood for punishment after that. Horses of the killed were produced. It was a lay, like the day of resurrection. A jug of water was brought where in there vere twenty jitals and half tanka. He ordered first the review of horses, which vere removed to stables through rows. He then sent for the two amirs 'Ali Beg and Barbak. They were brought to bottom of the platform and made to stand in his presence. First with first, he ordered punishment for being trampled under feet of elephants. Husam Khan said that he ordered their heads to be severed. They were twenty thousand. Last to be killed were 'Ali Beg and Blood flowed in the plain of lines to be flowed to the river and beyond.

In the year 705 (1305-06), the Mughals came to Kangra. It was ruled by Rāy Kabk Kabir. The Mughal army entered into limit of his kingdom. They encamped at Kangra. The Rāi assembled its citizens to fight with them. After a fierce battle, the Mughals were put to rout and killed many of them. He who escaped from the battle-field was killed in the neighbourhood and was thrown nto a pit. Stinking smell continued for a long time. They were captured in

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 815.

large numbers and driven in fetters to Delhi. 'Alâuddin ordered them to be thrown at the feet of elephants outside the Badāun gate. This was his order for punishment to them. Their filthy smell spread and spoiled the atmosphere for a long time. The historian said that a turret was erected out of their heads at Badāun gate. It existed even to our day.

In the year 706 (1306), the Mughal amirs entered with their hordes in the jurisdiction of Siwalik. They resorted to assault and pillage and to lay waste its neighbourhood. The army of Delhi marched against them, 'Alauddin ordered the army to encamp at water on their way and prevent them from it. The Mughals returned with the spoils and the soldiers made efforts to reach water as they were thirsty for having traversed a long distance but found no water on the way except that place. There was no place to cross. They saw\* water. Their thirst became more intense by prevention and fear and loss of strength. They became helpless. They kept aside the spoils and humbly requested for water as far as possible. The amirs returned the spoils to those from whom they were seized. The Mughals were assembled in bondage with their women and children. They returned to Narain from the river. Their men were made to assemble in its fort. Women, children and servants were sent to Delhi. An order was issued for their sale in the market of Delhi. Malek Khās Hājib marched to Narāin to kill their men. The historian narrated that a river of blood flowed for a multitude of them were killed. In the history of Husam Khan, it is stated that Rai Gang had seen them at the river. He killed those who fought with him and enchained the captured and returned with them to Narain, capital of his territory. He kept men in prison and sent their wives and servants to Delhi. Punishment was infleted on them at Delhi at the gate of Dar-us-Saltanat. Blood flowed to the river outside the city. Malek Khās Hājib marched to Narāin for having been appointed to kill the captives. There was lot of lamentation. Killing was restricted to three places.

In the year 707 (1307), the Mughals made their appearance at Dahand. The Mughals were despaired of Delhi. It was current on tongues of common men among them that Hind was paradise for them. They asked them, "Is there plunder?" They replied, "No." They said that there was nothing. They resolved upon pillage on the frontiers. Every group used to come out with their subordinates to Hind. After the conquest of Ranthanbhor in 700 (1300), 'Alauddin strove to strengthen the frontiers by posting great amirs. Malek-ul-Kabir Ghāzi Khurāsāni was posted at Baluhu and Dev Bālpur. Amir Mardi 'Ali was at Dahand. During his days, the Mughal Amir Iqbālmand came with a large number of Mughals. He was a great man in his nationality. Amir 'Ali

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 816.

acountered him. It was a fierce struggle which resulted in the death of Iqbaland. His grandees and chiefs of tribes were killed along with him in the attle-field. Those who escaped alive to neighbourhood were felled to death or ptured. None was a Muslim under his banner. He bound the amirs of one lousand and one hundred and all their subordinates in chains and despatched 1em to Delhi. As usual, the order of punishment was issued for them. Amir \* ili was under the banner of Malek Ghazi. Through good luck of his banner ad its flutter in expanse of the battle-field, Iqbalmand perished. Afterwards, me of Malek Ghazi spread in Hind and Khurasan very much. During his ays, the Mughals ceased to come to his frontiers. He used to penetrate deeply to their frontiers and called them. This state of affairs continued to the close the regime of Outbuddin. "Root of the people who oppressed was cut off. raise is for God who is Lord of both the world." The historian said that when viauddin became anxious for the Mughals, he defended entrances and exits ith strong men. He built forts. He stored up treasures with plenty. He immoned men of elevated courage to conquer territory situated in neighbourpod of his frontiers. He seized the territory of one who disputed with him. He dered grandees of his kingdom to array the new army for new kingdom and e did not neglect the old from training.

## Booty of age with Concern of the Deccan

The historian said that when a large army got ready with him as well as he means of victory, he retained all the amirs on the frontiers and charges they ad. He had no anxiety from the āmils and their parties in the saltanat. In ie year 708 (1308), he despatched Malek Kafur Hazar Dinari to Devgir. hwāja Hāji, Nāib-ul-'Ard accompanied him. Rāmdev was the ruler during ie regime of his uncle. During his regime, he had neither sent a letter nor a esent to him. Kafur gained ascendancy over that region, pillaged it and ptured Ramdev with his family and confiscated what he owned. His spoils cluded seventeen rings of elephants. He wrote to Delhi giving information pout it. The letter was read from the pulpit. Drums of joy were beaten for ctory. He returned to Delhi with Ramdev and the booty. 'Alauddin turned Ramdev and surrendered his family to him as well as what belonged to him. e gave him the canopy and a title of Rāy-i-Rāyān. He pacified him by an surance of his kingdom. He permitted him to go. He helped him with one indred thousand tankas of gold. He came to Devgir and ruled over it. He mained loyal to him through course of his life. (A historian other than Zia irrated that Kāfur came to Kandahar in the month of Rajab, 709 (1309) and left for a diamond mine to Barakar and conqured it on 10th Sha'ban of that year.†

Original Text, p. 817.

He then alighted at Warangal and conquered its first fort. Its circumference was twelve thousand, five hundred and forty cubits and its width one hundred cubits. He conquered with Salalam on 12th Ramdan of the year and...... peace was concluded as stated by Dia. Kāfur always gained one victory after another until he dominated over Jagannath and consigned it to fire. He returned from it on 5th Zilhaji of the year 710 (1310) and arrived at Delhi on 4th Jamādi II of the year 711 (1311). It was a day worth witnessing. No one had undertaken such campaigns before him and there would be none after him. A good omen was drawn from his arrival with that booty for his sultan and for general Muslim public. They believed that all these victories were facilitated by the blessings of Qutb-uz-Zaman, Qiblat-ul-Aşfiya Mawlana Shaikh Nizamuddin Awliya and Qutb-uz-Zaman, Madar-ul-Jamkin Mawlana Shaikh Nasiruddin and similarly the two Qutbs of people of the world and faith Mawlana Shaikh Ruknuddin and Mawlana Shaikh 'Alauddin, may God benefit us through them During their life time, whatever they desired from their Lord, became the sunna ( rule and regulation of the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him). Every member of the house of the 'Alāiya Sultān was a disciple and spiritual follower of Mawlana Shaikh Nizāmuddin Awliya includding the wazirs and amirs and persons of rank. His blessings were upon them all. They had become famous among people for their treading the path of men of the path (of divine love) and they were known for their adherence to shari'at. Persons possessed of divine grace showered praise upon them. When they promulgated their disposition towards religious sciences and sufi practices, men of the different sects turned to them from every valley to this city so much so that its citizens were inconvenienced and they extended their goodness. A learned man, a spiritual giude, a sufi, a philosopher, a literary man, a poet, a man of profession and vocation, in short, every proficient man had enlivened the assemblies, madresus, masjids, and rendevouz of spiritual guides. Music had achieved same in all places. Dancer had become an object of joy and ecstasy and most of the people had power over it. It was an age prosperous with men of God. People received guidance from them. Many persons had become sufis ( lovers of God ) including men of rank. It was due to the blessing of Shaikh Nizāmuddin Awliyā. The anniversary of the gnostic of God, our Shaikh, Shaikh Farid Shakar Ganj, may his grave be sanctified took place on 5th Muharram of the year. A historian other than Diauddin Barni narrated that many thousands from among eminent men of syeds, imams, mashāikh, sufis and\* turban-wearers were present in the majlis of 'Urs (anniversary). A large number of the general public of these sections also attended. Such a large gathering did not chance to meet at any time afterwards, nay, even before

Original Text, p. 819.

stly. But Dia had mentioned only special persons. He was surprised, inspite lack of attention of Sultan 'Alauddin towards them and with a short notice them, at them to have met at Delhi during his regime. Such a thing did not ppen at any other time. Another historian narrated that Sultan 'Alauddin is pleased with and kindly disposed towards subjects during the life-time of e four pillars of his kingdom-Zafar Khan, Ulugh Khan, Nusrat Khan and pkhan or similar to them or of near approach to them in sincerity, jurisdiction, ite and authority. He had ignorance of people and he refused to acknowledge eir rights. It was due to his giving priority to those who were not virtuous d lagging behind the wise. 'Alauddin was engrossed in profanation of things ide lawful by God and he enjoyed sitting with those who toyed with his faith his world. It so happened in his case that he, in time, turned to his sense. th the help of his reason, to subdue self and restricted his time, by summoning ugh Khan who was in Gujarat and Kafur Hazar Dinari from Devgir. With fur, the kingdom was going out of his race, nay, from the Khalji house and members of his family as mentioned by Diauddin in calling him).

In the year 709 (1309), 'Alauddin honoured Kafur with a robe of honour d appointment as his Näib and elevated his dignity with a title of Amir-ulnrā. He despatched him to Warangal and placed all the muluks under his mmand. He ordered a red pavilion for him which in Hind is an insignia of tanat like a canopy which is not lowered except on a sultan or on a person to is so permitted. In an assembly, for his departure, he favoured him with admonition not to behave with the ruler of Warangal, Rai Ludra Dev with nstraint and fright. He should be liberal with him in respect of terms of ace in regard to gold, gems, horses, elephants and excusing him from attendce in his majlis or travelling with him to Delhi. He should be contented with s lovalty for he would enter into an unknown land with reluctance of his bjects. He should treat them with regard and kindness otherwise they would t gather around him. He should seek his counsel in respect of command and ohibition of his state affairs. Act according to their judgment particularly of wāja Hāji, head of Diwān-ul-'Ard due to his efficiency. He advised him for \* ndness and mildness with infantry and cavalry. It is your duty to give them vice and it is their duty to be loval with you. He admonished him to say d do what is good for the ear and the eye. By these means, he would make mself secure against their insurrection. When he had gone out of his territory, admonished him in respect of amir, and men of charge to observe the limit middle path in mildness and severity. Deficiency in mildness is attributed daring and leniency while excess in severity results in rancour and discord. advised him with concern of the camp and looking after the conditions,

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 820.

knowledge and vigilance and preventing commanders from constant visits. He admonished him to be liberal in respect of one-fifth portion of spoils without gold and silver. He should keep more than one-nifth portion of booty in the hands of muluks and amirs of the cavalry and slaves etc. and pay them loans in case of need after taking a receipt of money. He whose horse died or fell in the war or was stolen from him, should be given another in exchange from the stable without recording it in the daftar of Khwaja Haji, perhaps he may demand its price later on which would necessitate expenses for him to own which belonged to another. All these admonitions are a part and not a whole for one who ponders over them and who commands an army. The historian said that Kāfur marched to his town of Råbari and waited for his followers. He then journeyed forth with them, camping and marching to Chanderi. The amirs and the muluks joined him here. Diwan-ul-'Ard sat there. Käfur asked to be shown who were appointed with him. When he was free from it, he marched to Devgir. Rämdev, the ruler of Devgir received him along with his attendants. He used to visit him during the period of his stay. He used to carry necessary articles of the market to his soldiers. He ordered his subordinates in his jurisdiction to move with the army, guard it and carry every needful article to him till the army left his frontiers. Those who lagged behind were taken to the army. He personally followed him to several manzils. He returned with gratefulness. Kafar entered the territory of Telangana and stretched his hands in pillage and assassination: Residents who were on his way, removed themselves to Warangal and garrisoned themselves. It had a stone fort wherein lived its ruler. It had an earthen fort where the subjects assembled in an hour of need. Kafur encamped at the earthen fort. It had a big circumference spacious in the middle and the stone fort in it was like a centre. There was similarly space for army of the king, cavalry, elephants and stores. Kāfur made an effort to take it\* while its residents strove to prevent him for a certain period. There was a victory and the stone fort was pressed with its residents. Its ruler sent an envoy for conclusion of peace. He accepted it on terms of removal of his hereditary treasures of gold and jewels that day. Every year this much amount was to be sent to Delhi, along with one hundred elephants, seven thousand horses and a document of acceptance. He came to Kafur after settlement of terms of peace and went to Delhi in the early part of the year 710 (1310). He sent ahead a letter of victory to 'Alauddin. He read it on the pulpit. The drums of rejoicing were beaten. On his arrival, 'Alauddin sat on the Nasiri platform in the expanse of Badaun. All the people assembled there for rejoicings. Naib Kafur made his appearance and represented to him in public what he had brought from Warangal. The historian Diauddin said that it was the practice of 'Alauddin

Original Text, p. 821.

that when he despatched an army from Delhi to a side from the place of Talbhat was the first manzil for one who went from it to the last manzil, a post-horse was posted from manzil to manzil. Pedestrian-messengers were posted between two manzils on every half a farsakh to carry news to the post-horse. It was a speedy service for various directions. Men in charge of villages and towns which lay on the way looked after the post and the news. In a day or two, letters constantly reached 'Alauddin informing him about the army. There was never cessation of news to him. He further said that he did not receive news for forty days when Kāfur had marched to Wārangal. The cause of it was that it was not due to fear on the way of Telangana. Kāfur was engaged in its siege. Some conjoined arrangement on the frontiers of Telangana had disappeared from certain places due to sedition. Hence news had ceased, 'Alauddin was amazed and did not know what had happened. His anxiety had become serious. He sent Malek Karā Beg and Mughithuddin, Oādi of Biāna to Outb of the age, help of era, Mawlana Shaikh Nizamuddin Awliya, may his grave be sanctified. He said, "Convey my service to His Holiness and tell him from me that I was very much concerned with stoppage of news of the army. I am disspirited about the army of Islam without your blessings. If he revealed to you by his internal\* light, the news would be delightful. Request him for good news from you. He advised them that it was an important affair. Hear him after the request. Give him information without more or less as it is." They represented his request to him. His reply was. "This is a victory as far as possible. I expect many more conquests after this victory," Both returned to him with what they had heard from him. 'Alauddin drew a good omen from the speech of His Holiness. He became assured of the conquest of Warangal. He opened a winding of his turban and took one part of it from its extreme side, knotted it by way of omen with his words and said, "I had taken an omen with his speech upon my belief in him that it would happen, for he does not say what is not to happen. If God had bestowed conquest of Warangal, I hope for other conquests as well. It was a message and good news of the chief man of the day." Some time after that, (alternoon) there arrived a letter of victory. It was preceding night of Friday. When people said their Friday prayers, a man mounted the pulpit and read the letter. News of conquest got circulated. Drums were beaten. 'Alauddin's faith in master of the age augmented and with that to his history. He did not attend his majlis. He did not speak on any day without being influenced by internal light. In absence of divine grace, he always mentioned the name of His Holiness the Shaikh with what he knew. His ignorance stirred him up and he did not listen to him. At the close of his regime, he lost his faith completely in him. He did not meet him.

Original Text, p. 822.

In the year 710 (1310-11) Malek Naib Kafur marched from Delhi to Dahur Samand, and Ma'bar accompanied by Naib-ul-'Ard Khwaja Haji. Dahur Samand was ruled by Rai Bir. Husam Khan said that its ruler fled to Sarandip. It was won. Diauddin said that he controlled his treasures and elephants, thirtysix in number. He reported to Delhi about its conquest. He marched to Ma'bar which was also won within two days. He demolished its temple. It was of gold and its images were of gold studded with jewels. He collected its gold and jewels for the 'Alai treasury. He dominated over their treasures and elephants and reported about its conquest. In the early part of the year 711 (1311), he returned to Delhi with elephants six hundred and twelve. The weight of gold was six thousand and ninety maunds. Several boxes were filled with jewels. There were twenty thousand horses. Kafur represented them to 'Alauddin when he was in his palace. At this time, the muluks and the amirs received one,\* two and half a maund. From the time Delhi was conquered till his day, none has mentioned entry of gold, jewels, animals-elephants and horses-as spoils. This was the booty from Dahur Samand. It is stated in the first daftar of Husam Khan's history in the account of 'Alauddin that Kafur broke at Dahur Samand the famous idol of Ram Ling Mahadevki and demolished the famous temple of Jagannath in the region of Sira.

In the year 711 (1311-12), Diauddin said that Rai Ludra Dev, ruler of Warangal and Malek Telang petitioned Sultan 'Alauddin informing him about all the guarantees he had given them. Kafur promised to send the petition and its acceptance as required and to surrender the reply of the Sultan. Diauddin said that new Muslims were faced with a problem in Delhi at the close of his regime. Some of the new-Mughal Muslims whose rations were discontinued for the last one or two years complained to him about that. They related their hardships and mentioned to 'Alanddin that people were hard pressed for their livelihood and that their properties were consicated as fines, intoxicated drinks were prohibited to them and they were made to pay taxes beyond their power. Some one said that his partners in race attacked them. None stopped him. I killed him in the maidan of Shergah. He had only one cloth. He had let loose a hawk. His glance was at him. In like manner, other persons looked at the hawk. During this opportunity, he carried away two to three horses in one flock. He does not surrender them. They constantly assembled around him with such complaints. 'Alanddinl earnt about this state of affairs. His energies were directed to reforms, personal and state. In code of punishment, there are no restrictions with shariat nor exceptions for relatives. He ordered all neo-Muslims to be assembled. They consisted of those whose rations were discontinued and those who were in service. The tribunal of

Original Text, p. 823,

sat for a day perhaps one of them may pass away. The historian hat twenty or thirty thousand of them gathered together. Many of them i with their tongue except a small group of them. They had no edge of any thing except that they were there to be killed all at once neir houses would be looted and that their families would be dispersed.\* wake of it, there appeared in Delhi a sect of Ibahiya (one who makes 'ful thing lawful). 'Alauddin ordered to pursue them, He was very stern st them. When they gathered in prison, he inflicted severe punishment them. He placed a saw on bifurcation of roads. When one of them out from the joint, he was caught. Diauddin said that three sections of ns helped 'Alauddin in administration of the kingdom and in its conquests. y, those who conducted state affairs and its policy-Ulugh Khan, Zafar , Nuşrat Khan, 'Alaul Mulk, Fakhruddin Junadad Beg, Aşghari sar Dawatand Tājul Mulk Kāfuri. It was with their support that he attained to Saltaoverpowered his uncle, nay, they attacked him to murder. They were contifriends in their time and proficient in battle-field. They would descend a fort for victory and conquer it at the first assault. They derived benefit the state only for a short period. Secondly, Malek Hamiduddin, Vakil, < 'Izzuddin Dabir son of al-'Alā' Dabir, Malek 'Ain-ul-Mulk Multāni, Dabir igh Khan, Malek Sharaf Kabani, Naib-ul-Wazir, Khwaja Haji, Naib-ul-'Ard. were renowned in victory, ascendancy and they were noted for stability e kingdom. Thirdly, Malek Nāib Kāfur Hazār Dināri had control of all state s. They were referred to this applauded beloved amir and to his wisdom, gnorance was the cause of his advancement, Bahauddin Dabir was like that as titled 'Umdat-ul-Mulk. It was due to management of such persons that smissed such as Hamiduddin and 'Izzuddin and put to death Sharaf Kābni. cingdom lost its stability and the state organization was disturbed. In this on can be reckoned Malek Kiran, amir-i-Shikar, and Malek Kira Beg. They etired from meddlesomeness. Diauddin said that it was a wonder of the hat prices of commodities brought to markets were low. Corn in a year of ne was not sold at a higher price than in a year of plenty. That continued ig the course of his life. There was help in victory. His army never red a defeat. He uprooted the Mughals by general massacre. There was a iplicity of horses with paucity of fodder. There was general loyalty and ity in the kingdom. Dealers were honest in markets etc. Many buildings constructed. Seventy thousand professional men used to assemble for the in for ever. They gathered in construction of his houses and those of thet is. They were found to be present in shops etc. The ninth wonder at the of his reign was the meeting of hearts of most of the scholars of Islām on

Driginal Text, p. 824.

rectitude, steadiness, integrity, justice, piety and truth. There was submission and loyalty from unbelievers. Tenthly, assemblage of imams, eminent men and teachers of every art without wish for anything from him and who did not go to him. Diauddin said that the most wonderful thing is that the Imams and teachers of all arts were in a large number in the capital while he was not inclined to their assemblies; he did not know about excellence of any one of them, nor did he see any one of them. Existence of such persons in the capital was a glory of the state. If one of them had lived in another kingdom, he would have been like an amulet for its ruler, 'Alauddin did not acknowledge their rights nor he rendered thanks for them. A man like me died to be benefited by their existence otherwise I would have killed myself in their service thinking to be alive with them for ever. It is rare to see such persons and know them in any age. I live in an age which had slanted from moderation. There is incompatibility in life. Now I see none from them. I had known the bounties which are lost. Verily to God we belong and to Him return. Asharaful Mulk 'Alai suffered misfortune. Sultan had no worth of merit. He gave preference to mean persons. He dismissed good persons and appointed evil persons to conduct state affairs. He pledged Saltanat for his son Khidr Khān. He gave him a canopy. He dictated to him a letter of covenant and letters to his muluks. He acted according to requirements of his youth and sat in the company of men of play and pleasure. During his regime, his marriage and that of his brothers took place in Delhi. It was full of abomination and mischief. He did not know that in time. 'Alauddin was in love with Kafur which led him to be under his subordination and under his say. It so happened that ennsity existed between him and Alp Khan brother of his beloved. It was ruination of the 'Alāi kingdom. In the meantime, 'Alāuddin got involved in the disease of dropsy. Every day, it was on the increase. Kāfur and Alp Khān were in animosity. Kāfur was Nāib of Devgir while Alp Khān was Nāib for Gujarāt. 'Alāuddin's temperament under-went a change due to the disease.\* His nature became extremely peevish due to loss of vigour. He summoned both of them to himself. Khidr Khan was engrossed in sport and play during his illness and the wife was busy with feasts immersed in ease, and comfort. 'Alauddin was in what he was while he in his pleasures. When Kafur presented himself and found him in displeasure against Khidr Khān and the harim, he made efforts for murder of Alp Khan noting change in his mind, and he spoke without reason which how could one hear. He then strove for captivity of Khidr Khan and sent him to the fort of Gwalior. Mother of Khidr Khan is sheltered in the red palace. He alone remained in the majlis. This is how the 'Alāi house got demolished. The news of Alp Khan's murder came from Gujarāt. It was

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 826.

done by his followers. Malek Kamāluddin Gurg was sent from Delhi against disloyal persons who had raised a revolt. The insurgents assembled and killed him. 'Alauddin failed to make amends for it by sending an army because he was engaged in his illness. The historian Diauddin said that there were wise men who would have facilitated matters for 'Alauddin by going against the rebels but it was a surprise that none dared to take any step. Those who would have mended matters were those who looked to his deeds and actions. These were state matters. There would be concord when one cared for it. He does not speak by the tongue who orders before the event takes place. None had evil in mind except showed it. He did not seek anything which he did not get it. He did not prepare an army which did not win. He was on one side while men of the kingdom on one side. With all this, he executed his order against them as desired and did not take anything from one who opposed. I say, he petitioned 'Alauddin for departure from the world contrary to his pride and to rob him of his gifts. It was not at any time completion with security. His hastening to death was clear. I stated what ambassador of pen narrated about Kaikhusraw, Sultan of Persia. He had authority over seven regions. It occurred to him to renounce the world when he had knowledge of it. A certain person who came to him told him about the resolution of the Sultan. He told him "I want to know the cause of it. Regions are under your authority, the world is under your command. You would have no power over it after you quit it. You may need a person like me of knowledge and thought to bring you back to your former authority." He said to him, "Oh my son! I have become o.d. I saw death. I have gathered many experiences. I have sermonized good\* deeds. I have quaffed anger many times. I have witnessed changes of night and day. I have heard about it before my very eyes from which I am despaired of it. It cannot remain on this condition always except as you colour the goblin in his garments. My forefathers worshipped it but they were enriched any way by its worship. I also worshipped it and there was nothing but a shadow to be puffed up with it. I abandon it as death abandoned them. No. nay, I abandon it and am free from it. I tasted disgrace of the rich from it, I am sound in health and it is a miracle. Wealth gets separated from us with remorse and regret at death. He collected means of wealth and deposited them and left them and retired in seclusion for prayer and devotion and separated men. Its report was on tongues and it became a story in ages. Muhammed bin Bashar saw that every proud man is desirous of his own self. A year had not passed when safety stood face to face with him. It is narrated by 'Ali bin Husain, may God be pleased with them, that he who dis-dained the world is with God. Yahya bin Zakariya may peace of God be on them said, "He guided me in beginning to rebellion of Bani Israel in tray of gold and therein was

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 827.

consolation for the independent." There was a difference between Kaikhusraw and elevation of the world 'Aläuddin for that did not die for the world and this was contrary to him. He was greedy for the world with all his might which was deceptive for him. His command and dread were in hearts of servants and subjects. He was a representative figure of incompatibility. His command was second. Play with the state was the function of the third section. Revolts became order of the day. They became serious for remedy. It defiled his character to the extent of an han when it was beautiful. It was an allurement for Käfur the Näib. It was said that he poisoned him. His deeds are an evidence thereof or his pride brought about his death.

The histori in said that 'Alauddin died on the night of 6th Shawwal, 711 (1311-12). They took out his ceftin from his palace in the capital of Sai to his grave in the Jame 'Masjid, may mercy be on him. Yazid Rakkāshi says "your days are three, the day on which you were born, the day of your descent in your grave and the day of your cetting out to your Lord. It is a short day for you. Two days are hidden for him. It was Saiāyan bin 'Ayyina who illimerates very much by these two verses:

The world receives mean servants\*
Old age with aversion from infusion of caulocynth Daughters of world are always its vicissitudes.
Therein events are like a fall to the ground.

The historian put and following verse after an account of his death:

When speed comes on the path of a traveller It matters not whether he is Jamshid, Parviz or Khusraw.

The sultan was an according blood-shedder, tyrant, oppressor, inflicter of punishment and discipline, authoritari in and find of wrath. He conquered many frontiers. He was proteined of armics. He was the first to penetrate into the December He brook it under a mines and treasures. No insterian of Hind has meete and it quantity. He was up of my but graced with wisdoms. He did not preside a the code of puncture. He was up of my but graced with wisdoms. He did not preside a the code of punctured of religion. He was post-intensity for stinguless in the book real and government. He never spoke a thing which was not done. He was not are ved with order...... During his regine, the Mughals were associanted a instantly and in rows, Muchans and unbelievers, more than one handred their and. Similarly, rebels. There are many seditious persons in Hind.

D.ā Barani narrated that one day Sultān 'Alāuddin said to Mughithuddin, Kādi of Bhāna, "I ask you about certain problems. Give me their replies as based on truth." The Kādi replied, "Verily, I feel approach of my death."

÷

Original Text, p. 828.

'Alauddin said, "How did you know that?" He replied, "The question will be in connection with the command of religion. When I give you a reply with which you may not be pleased I will paint it with truth. You will put me to death." He replied, "I will not kill you," He then questioned him about the payer of tribute and unbelievers. He replied, "The unbelieving payers of tribute should be conditioned with loyalty and precedence. They should pay jizya in hand in person. In case they practise mean things, it is stated in hadith that they should be killed or they should be asked to embrace Islam. Imam Abu Hanifa is alone in stating that jizya should be accepted from them under such circumstances." 'Alauddin laughed and said "I did not understand you what you say. I have heard this in respect of cultivators and farmers etc. in case they ride fast horses and wear gaudy dresses, gird themselves with Persian bows, go out for hunting and do not pay tribute and take a share from aggiculture and do not pay anything, they make use of wine etc. and fight among themselves. They do not present themselves in the Diwan unless summoned They do not pay it to the collector. It was not that, I say that they came in my way of conquering other kingdoms and now that they are under control of my hand. Therefore, I have placed a balance and prompted\* my subjects under orders to make use of it. I ordered use of a stone immediately without any delay. Now you tell me that in religion there is dis-dain for an unbeliever and roaming about for him," He then said, "Oh Mawlana Mughith! You are a learned man but not experienced (practical); I am an ignorant man but experienced. It is not possible for an unbeliever to be submissive except when he is tepid. I had ordered that revenue is to be demanded from cultivators upto a particular sum so that he maintains himself without becoming contemptible." He then asked him about theft of men of learning and their dishonesty. He said, "I do not know what had come in religion in respect of this. But I read in a book that in case a man committed theft or lessened tribute or accepted brises, the hakim does what is advisable in respect of fine, imprisonment or dis-dain except one who does not steal out of care. his hand is not cut off." 'Alauddin said, "I, for example, ordered severity and got back the amount. The officer, on that account, paused from punishment." He then questioned him about those who collected money with difficulty from Devgir, " is it his or is it for the Public Treasury." He replied "What is gained with strength of the soldiers of Islam, it is for the Public Treasury and what is acquired individually, it is for you." 'Alauddin became angry and said, "It is not what you have said according to your opinion. I made myself miserable and brought it and it is for the Public Treasury." He replied, "You asked me as to what was in religion in respect of it. I replied you accordingly." He then questioned him about the share of his son and wife from the Public

Original Text, p. 829.

Treasury." He replied. "I feel my death," He said, "That would not He said, "I reply you contrary to what had come. There is a burden : to-morrow (day of judgment). If I say what has come, I will be put to de He said, "Speak the truth," He replied, "The Khalifas paid two, thre four hundred tankas to a mujahid including members of the family. If the not sufficient, then for you is a sum which is for your wife from you. If he to the majesty of saltanat, then for you is not more for them and th nothing of gold for the harim (queen). 'Alauddin lost his temper and so him, "You are afraid of my sword. You say that I did not spend it for wife. It is not that." He replied, "I am afraid of the Sultans' sword. sufficient that it should remain in my head. You have asked me c problems I replied to you about them. If you had asked me about the king I could have spoken more than I have done." He then said, "You attr that which I have not done and that is not in religion. Now I have order horseman to present him for review otherwise fodder for the year would be celled for him. I have ordered that a seller of wine and its drinker wou imprisoned in pits which are meant for them. He who fornicates with a v his organ would be cut off and the woman would be killed. I have or seditious men with their followers to be put to death. I have taken measures for wealth: If a dirham is left, it would be as you said to me t' was not legal." The Kath stood up from the mailis and moved to a hearing him. He placed his forehead on the ground and said in a loud "Oh Sultan of the world! If you wish, be liberal with me or if you wish me. This is in religion. Not beyond it, not beyond it. What is not perm in similar matters of punishment to rely upon, they stop for punishm 'Alauddin heard what was said by him, he remained silent and entere haram. Mughith returned to his house. When next day, he decided to the Diwau, he hade adieu to his family, distributed alms, took bath and to the Sultan. When he saw him, he sought protection of God from canabled him and bestowed a robe of honom upon him. He gave hir thous and tankas in cosh and said to him, "Oh Kādi Mughith! I did not in a book. I am hereditarily a Muslim for repulse of insurgents and punish of seditious men. I have killed thousands of men. I acted wherein advisability. People do not pay heed to that and they do not carry or order. Necessarily, I act with sternness without knowing whether it religion or not. I order wherein I see welfare. I do not know what wor my reply tomorrow. Oh Kā(h Mughith! I always sing hymns of God a know. If any one cohabited with another man's wife, there is no ha my kingdom, similarly, wire, theft etc. A thief does not take wealth ... Similarly, he who paused to carry out the order in view of punishment a

Original Text, p. 830.

who let go ten and twenty, the order is not legal for him. In respect of these four sections, I do not know what has come from the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him. I do not remember chapters of the Qurān other than those of Fātiha, Ikhlās, prayers for despair and benedictions. Verily, I give orders......to cut off organ of a fornicator and return of fodder. He who does not carry out the order, he is sent to prison where he dies. They do not cease to disobey my orders. How should I not inflict punishment on them. \*

The historian said that Mawlana Shamsuddin Turk came from Egypt to him after the conquest of Ranthanbhor. He was an Imam of traditions. He had brought with him books on traditions, numbering four hundred in all. He arrived at Multan. He learnt about him that he did not say Friday prayers. nay, he did not ever say compulsory prayers also. As he had no religiosity in him, he was asked to go wherever he liked. Mawlana Shaikh Shamsuddin Fadlulläh son of Mawlänä Shaikh Sadruddin bin Barkat-ul-Anäm (blessing for human beings) Shaikh-ul-Islām Bahā-ul-Hak Wad-Din Mawlānā Shaikh Zakariyā Outb of Multān may their graves be sanctified, were at Multān. When they heard about his determination to return, they met him and pacified his mind. He compiled a book on Traditians in the name of Sultan 'Alauddin and sent it with him to him with a message informing him about his coming from Egypt to him. He received intelligence about learned men of the kingdom that they were content with knowledge of theology and passed over knowledge of traditions. He loved to propagate knowledge of hadith in his kingdom by assembling them before him. They obtained with him the honour of address by the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him. The reader of the Ouran establishes communion with his Lord so the reader of the hadith communes directly with the Messenger of God, may peace and benediction of God be on him. Travel from the city pressed heavily on him. He exercised patience for his distant journey with all its hardships until he arrived at Delhi and was near achievement of his object. It was heard about his indifference to Friday prayer, nay, to compulsory prayers. He turned reins of resolution backwards. It was not for us to be aright. He was content on his arrival to him with this compilation and the contents of admonitions in the pamphlet. He acted on that and so his efforts were not unsuccessful. "And God guides whom He wishes to the straight path." Diauddin said that the book and the risäla came to Bahauddin Dabir. He transmitted the book and with-held the risāla for he had learnt from Kādi Hamiduddin Multāni about the author that he was of unpraiseworthy character. He condemned him and asked him for his removal. Bahauddin got apprehended of his threshold otherwise he would be involved in blame of his sultan so much so that he was about to be demoted

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 831.

in rank and involved in punishment for that. 'Alauddin felt sorry for h missed the meeting after its being in proximity and terminated suddenly return empty-handed, nay, with a feeling of chagrin by thinking of it. the followers of Muhammed may peace and benediction of God be on him a good deeds. This is acknowledged by all who are the followers and oth They are immune from perils and what are called falls. I hope it so in ca 'Alauddin who suddenly terminated his meeting with Shamsuddin, the II ul-hadith of his age. Multan is distant from Egypt. He had come in the of its most glorious sultan. He returned without meeting him. His a ended in his departure. It is stated in a laudable hadith that deeds ! accordance with intentions. In the Holy Book, it is stated that virtues out evils and the deed moves on with its much acceptance. It is said b obvious, true man, Ja'sar bin Bäkir, may God be pleased with them, their fathers and descendants, the meaning of which is that the Umma (follow will suffer no ruin between the Kalima, intercession (of the Prophet) mercy (of God). The knowing Amir 'Abdul Quddus al-Ghasyani said tha achieved security from mercy ' in his book " Ajib-ul-Muddakhar " in explan of "Gharib-ul-Hadith Wal-Athr." He narrated from Abil 'Aliya who nar from the Prophet of Haramain, a tradition. "Verily, minor sins are between two limits." My spiritual guide, the theologian Ahmad al-Hafaşi that the learned are of two kinds-obedient and disobedient. The obe ones would be in paradise through favour of God, His mercy. There are proofs for the same. The disobedients are of two kinds—persistent and persistent. The non-persistent has no right with the obedient. Alonghty said, "If you but eschew the most beloous of the things which are forbidden to do, we shall expel out of you all the evil in you, and a you to a gate of great honour! The persistant on the major sin are o kinds. One kind believes in its solution. He is surely in fire ( of hell ) : God otherwise wills. Another kind believes in its forbiddance. He is i will. It is related in respect of two hadds (limits),-limit of the work limit of the Future Lite. Limit of the world consists in its punishment ir world such as theft and adultery. Limit of the Next World consists i punishment in the Next World such as undutifulness towards parents, sle usury and similar other deeds. Hence minor sins are sins and they are bet these two. They do not impose a limit in the world upon their doer and torture in the Next. The origin of it is in the word of the Almighty i chapter of Najm: "Yea, to God belongs all that is in the heavens ar earth; so that He rewards those who'de evil, according to their deeds, an rewards those who do good, with what is best: Those who avoid great sin shameful deeds, only (falling into small faults-verily thy Lord is am-

Original Test, p. 832.

forgiveness. He knows you well when He brings you out of the earth, and when you are hidden in your mother's wombs. Therefore justify not yourselves. He knows best who it is that guards against evil." Al-Kāshaghari said that the latter meaning is probable. Minor sins are between two hadds, that is, punishment between two punishments in sin and hardship like small \* troubles which are for men like fever and headache and such other pains or sadness of the heart and contraction of the chest which afflict man involuntarily and unknowingly that these troubles are expiation for minor sips which are between two hadds. He whose heart is replete with light of the faith, certainty, different kinds of devotions like white garments extremely white where another colour even to the slightest extent can be detected. When a faithful person comes with a minor sin, he finds it to be pure in heart for he seeks forgiveness of God the Almighty Whom he had found to be Forgiving and Merciful. If he does not seek forgiveness, expiation becomes essential for him. He feels affliction and then he turns to Him in repentance. He seeks forgiveness of Gcd, the Almighty, turns to Him and hopes from Him what His men get from forgiveness and mercy for he is His servant with good view and hope. He is not depressed with affliction, nay, he praises God the Almighty wherever there is His punishment cut off in this ephemeral world, but which is not joined with the lasting Next World. Abu Saleh said, "I put a question about the word of God, the Almighty, 'al-lamam.' I said who is the man who commits a sin. He did not repeat it. I mentioned that again to Ibn-i-'Abbas, may God be pleased with them." He said, "The Generous Ruler will help you therein," Ibn-i-'Arafah said, " Al-lamam, in the opinion of the 'Arabs is that which a man does in time for which he has not formed a habit. He further said that sinners are four. Firstly, a thing comes. He knows but it is lawful for him. He then renounces it. - It is the greatest sin. Secondly, a thing comes. He knows it. It is lawful for him without abandoning it. He is persistent. It was in the will (of God). Thirdly, he is a doer when a thing comes to him without a habit of it to him. He is forgiven for that as he has avoided a major sin. Fourthly, he is disobedient. He then turns to God. It is a matter of acceptance. Some one of them said, "My mother is in a country ruled over by an unbeliever while I am in a Muslim country. God the Almighty brought me out to meet her but it is not possible for me. Some of my friends told me that cheapness prevailed in that country and that there was prosperity and no poverty. Exercise patience a while for your poverty and exile. When you't would visit your mother and notice prosperity of that country, you would not feel so much." I told him, "I am a seeker of the pleasure of God, the Almighty. I am with my desire, even if I am cut to pieces. I will not cry woe. I cannot give up His pleasure. It was sun-set time. I said night prayers and recited

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 833.

litanies. I then got down from my cot; a scorpion stung me. I did not se like of it. I took a warning and said that it was atonement for my patient which I prayed. It was Friday night. I did not sleep till morning. My to moved with praise of God, and seeking His forgiveness. They were prayer minor sins. There was a part of hypocrisy and a vain-glory in it. If one of his body was cut, there would be no patience except what God wished. tried me with sting of a scorpion. He did not cut anything of his flesh he learnt a lesson by practice of some patience and disciplined him for fa from God with prayers. There is mercy with him not tyranny and harsh This is an illustration of the word of God: "when you are afflicted w trouble, you have acquired it by your own hands. God pardons ma What he narrated is wonderful. The subject of biography was a unite He would come under general intercession and extensive mercy. His assat tions were due to defence of frontiers and security of his subjects. Confisc of property from its owners was due to suppression of causes of invasion sources of mischief. In that respect, Diauddin said that Akat Khan son ( brother and 'Umar Khan and Mangu Khan sons of his sister suffered beof their misdeeds. Akat Khan was his vakil while they were his muluk. made efforts in respect of the problem of Hamiduddin and Izzuddin, sc Ala Dabir and Abdul Malek Multani. They were in the rank of Asai position of Buzurchemehar in statesmanship and wisdom. Such events rea in revolts and sedition in the world. After full investigation, statesmer experienced men told him about revolts and seditious deeds. They told that the cause of it was four things, inadvertence of the Sultan in response mutual matters of intercourse among the people-good and bad, existence of Men assemble for drinks in majlisis. There they cannot maintain a secret influence of wine. Its evil dominates over them and gradually brings the seditious plots. Thirdly, relationship and friendship! The muluks and amirs maintained friendly relations among them and exchanged visit. something happened to one of them with which he was not pleased d relationship or friendship or visits, a hundred persons stood up for his caus they became his hand and heart. They were about to create trouble. Four the root of insurgence and sedition was gold. Its accumulation beyond and necessity was conducive to sloth and freedom to meet for wine. It is mother of all vices and strengthens the class of visitors. Its absence for every kind of wanton play to be engrossed in and makes way to activit profession. No judgment or opinion is held except for that over which h authority in seclusion, avoidance of 'intoxicants, severance of relations others and knowledge of good deeds. The Sultan formulated his decision due consideration about the fourth. He loved to give priority to it ov

Original Text, p. 235.

third. The first thing that he innovated was that he issued an order that all villages held in proprietary rights or as ina'm (free gift) or as benevolent religious endowment were confiscated to the state as crown-land. He then imposed fines without any cause just to rob people of wealth or gold as far as possible by stern measures to such an extent that it remained in the houses of muluk and amirs. officers and eminent merchants. People had to live on Dehalvi benevolent endowments and free gifts amounting to thousands of tankas. Citizens and cultivators were in dire need to acquire and settle their accounts in gold which was the originator of insurrection and sedition. He began to come out of negligence in matters of administration. He established a spy system by which people feared him to such an extent that they severed friendship, stopped mutual visits and paused conversation. He then prohibited liquor and beer and took possible drastic measures of beating, punishing, banishing while selling of it was punished with exile. He ordered to reduce what was upon him for tribute. It was a sum pointing to its excess on its spreading, promulgating and involving with it. First of all, he ordered to carry crystal vessels, China-wares, beady utensils, gold cups from the palace to Badaun gate. They were broken there one after the other. They were openly full of liquor. The place became muddy with wine and rose up reddish brown colour from pieces of land. The muluks proclaimed its prohibition in cities. They moved on elephants in markets announcing severe punishment for sellers and drunkards. Inspite of that, the seller and the purchaser always were found to be in chains and fetters. He ordered pits to be dug with wide ventilators at Badaun gate like cisterns as prison for them. Very few persons came out of it. Those who came out of it were not able to live except by long treatment. Thus a large number of persons gave it up. He who felt a desire to drink went out of the \* city to a distance of one day, more or less. They acted with sternness but it did not last long. Inspite of that, they drank it at all times by locking the door. People distilled it, and drank it alone. Prohibition of liquor stopped seditious revolts. He prohibited mutual visits, meetings and marriages among them without permission of the Sultan. None in his way or in an assembly was able to talk in secret or sit knee to knee and complain of his condition. On account of this punishment, devotion to God became popular and sinfulness was rooted out and revolts ceased. At the close of his reign, every one had become disciplined and had no weak points for punishment. He earned a name by prohibition of usury, abolition of monopoly, stoppage of falsehood by marketmen, weighing less, adulteration and similar other things. If the Sultan confiscated their properties, and wealth, it was due to revolt, desire for misguidance cause of additional mischief. If he failed to do that, there would have been no control of administration and establishment of order in the kingdom.

Original Text, p. 836.

He who had something in hand, it was kept hidden and equal to his needs of life. This is indicative of his influence. He took measures out of pure motives without involving in pain. They dared not take poison. They loved him. He led the nation to goodness. Oh God, let us live on his creed and let us die on his creed. Make us safe in his followers through your mercy Oh most Merciful among the Merciful.

# Sultan Shihabuddin Son of 'Alauddin Khalji

Diauddin Barani has narrated in his Tarikh-i-Firozshāhi that Kāfur Hazār Dinari revealed in the palace of Sultan 'Alauddin after his death that he would not like to see any one else other than he to conduct state affairs. The 'Alais presented themselves and took an oath of allegiance for Shihābuddin in accordance with the document of covenant which was dictated by 'Alauddin as Kafur himself was tempted to seize power in his own hands. He imprisoned Khidr Khān at Gwāljor. Shihābuddin was not more than six and less than five years of age on the day of his accession to the throne. Kāfur personally completed every thing and nominated himself as his absolute regent. He turned away the 'Alai muluk who used to sit and share in the for:nulation of state policy. He became totally independent of them and lived in the famous palace of Hazar Situn, that is, one thousand pillars and he elevated Shihabuddin there. When the muluk assembled themselves in the Hazar Situn, he overlooked them from\* a room of the palace. In short, Kāfur sent in his day his favourite such as Ikhtiaruddin Sunbul to Gwalior with a set purpose to blind Khidr Khan and his brother Shadi Khan. He caused incovenience to the mother of Khidr Khan, queen of 'Alauddin Maleka Jahan. He deprived her of all bounties and confiscated that belonged to her in her days. He subdued all those who were connected with Khidr Khan. It was a large number of persons. He ordered Mubarak Khan son of 'Alauddin to be locked up in a room of Hazar Situn and decided to blind him also. He was of the age of Khidr Khan. Shihabuddin used to make his appearance in the palace at the time of assembling of the muluk to supervise over them. He then retired to his mother. She was the daughter of Ramdev, ruler of Devgir. He then remained with his confidential favourites, most of whom were eunuchs. He decided to appoint new grandees of the state and transfer the officers. He appointed new persons who were in his mind which led to the kingdom alipping away from the 'Alāi house. He was not affected thereby. When he closed the doors, his helpers and assistants assembled around him and they talked the night out in newness and change.

Assassination of 'Alaism through grace of the Almighty for the Sake of Kafur Hazar Dinari.

The historian said that there was a party of 'Alāi mamālik who were

Original Text, p. 837.

constantly in the Hazar Situn from the regime of their Sultan. They presented. themselves by turn. When they saw a party of Kāfuris in jovial conversation and vigilance who had ruined the house of their master at the hand of Kafur and who had not spared any one except Mubarak Khan, they tried to improve this state of affairs and make amends for his name and practices. Shihabuddin was a minor and for that purpose, he pretended to be serious with his order. Those 'Alai Amirs decided to kill Kafur for his despotic power. They rallied against him, those who were dispersed, reunited and they secretly sought help from one another. They assailed him one night and killed him along with his confederates. They brought out Mubarak Khan from the room and made him secure under the regency of his brother. In the morning, he was in elevation with his brother in the palace of Hazar Situn. The 'Alai amirs stood in readiness before him. The news spread and the publicity increased with beating of\* drums. All people rejoiced at the assassination of Kafur, and presented themselves for allegiance and congratulations. They applauded the action of 'Alāi amirs. They attributed praise to lightness and sought precedence in government. Diauddin said that they tempted themselves as to who should have the power of trusteeship and retirement and who should be spared and who should be put to death. Their responsibility became heavy for the sake of government and they decided to share power among themselves. Hence, muluk of his father were inclined towards Mubarak Khan and dispersed willy milly to the frontiers. Murders and imprisonment took place among them. They removed his brother Shihābuddin from the majlis of saltanat to Gwalior. Kafur enjoyed authority for thirty-five days.

Sultan Quibuddin Mubarak Shah son of 'Alauddin 'Ali Khalji

Qutbuddin Mubārak Shāh son of 'Alāuddin 'Ali son of Naṣir Khalji ascended the throne in 711 (1311-12). He was agreeable in character. He thanked God, the Holy for his liberation from Kāfur on the day of accession. He ordered release of all prisoners in the capital and country from the regime of his father. The prisoners were seventeen thousand or more. They said many prayers on his behalf. He ordered to administer justice and obligation. He settled allowances for men of merit. This step elicited much praise for him. He favoured the 'Alāis and the retinue who assassinated Kāfur. He was liberated from his clutches because of them. He ordered that they should be paid six months' salary and city allowance from the treasury and they were confirmed in service. Were it not for them, the matters would have gone beyond limit and discipline would have been marred. They came out as they felt it their responsibility. They were noted persons. They thronged him and showed no mercy to him. He cancelled the order passed by his father for confiscation of

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 838.

property which was given back to them. So was the case with benen endowments. He removed the fines and repressive measures of his father had caused hardship to people. In mutual dealings and orders, he revert religion. He did everything contrary to the behaviour of his father. S and care departed during his regime and people enjoyed peace and p During the regime of his father, the powerful persecuted the weak who maeffort except to get himself involved in a rough life. They exchanged r visits, glorified themselves with extravagance, listened to musical note thanked for the bounties the effects of which they enjoyed. Seditions lay dormant became vigilant from the day of indisposition of 'Alauddin ' solution of difficulties by Kafur. This was the cause of it. He then fat the muluk and the amirs, the infantry and the cavalry and doubled mansabs, raised their ranks, widened their means of livelihood and issue general, an order for the retinue. Diauddin said that wealth got circu among them and gold became cheap. It was heavy in weight. They appr reliable persons for removal of needs. Needy persons responded to them those who appointed them. Imams and literary men obtained lavishly they did not obtain at any time. They and others regained their confis villages and lands. Taxes were lightened and they were obtained Whatever was obtained by sternness through fines, chains and fetters as w captivity got scattered. In short, time improved matters with kindnes facility which were not improved with wickedness and severity. The elit the commoners enjoyed comforts as there was security during his days. men were safe and secure. His mercy and clemency got stultified. He demand of wine. There was circulation of cups and jovial companions! purses. In the meantime, 'Alai controls were lifted, desires extended demands of money. Formerly, people never begged except through praysayer of prayer. It terminated to the problem of beardless and giant became similar to Mu'izzuddin after Ghiyathuddin. Ghiyath controlle administered. Mu'izz wasted and uprooted from foundation. The kir passed away from his house with its saltanat. Such was the case with 'Al strengthened and Qutb who dissolved. With him, the kingdom passed fre house. Its account comes. The historian said that the rank of Malek 1 superintendent of 'Alāi elephants, was clevated and he was titled Zafar Maiek Muhammed Buli was titled Sher Khan. Diauddin son of Baha Khattat ( calligraphist ) was titled Şadrjahan while Malek Kirabeg was enn with several lofty charges. Similar was the case with some mamaliks nay most of them. They were made exceptional with elevated offices. Malek Nāib Khās Ḥājib had a beardless youth whom he loved. His name was Rão Bachcha. He made him afterwards his special servant. He was

Original Text, p. 839.

Khusraw Khān on his accession. He sat on the seat of Wizārat. He assigned to him what was with Malek Nāib from the kingdom and the retinue. Qutbuddin loved him. He saw the world only through his eyes. In this year, 'Ainul Mulk Multāni marched to Gujarāt as a governor. After Alpkhān its residents had renounced loyalty. At the close of the reign of 'Alāuddin, he despatched Kamāluddin Karki (Gurgi) against them. They encountered him and killed him. 'Ainul Mulk then marched to suppress rebellion. Its residents returned to loyalty.

In this year, daughter of Malek Dinar was married to Qutbuddin. He was titled Zafar Khan as stated above. He was appointed governor of Gujarat. He proceeded to it. He was a man full of experiences. He administered Gujarat better than Alp Khan and amassed wealth more than he. The historian said that the strength which 'Alauddin had established weakened during the regime of Qutbuddin. The muluk from among the mamaliks of 'Alauddin held fiefs in proprietary rights. They had control over extensive districts and great localities, hence they established order and control and there was general security in their administrative units.

In 718 (1318), Mawladi, one of the 'Alai mamaliks was a Nab at Delhi. He was called during 'Alāi regime, Yāol-i-Yaldā. His name was Shāhin. He was titled Wafa Malek in his days. He marched to Devgir from Delhi, The ruler was Harpaldev, son-in-law of Ramdev. When he alighted at it, Harpaldev left it and went to a side. After Kafur, he had shunned obedience. Some of the amirs pursued him and returned with him as a captive. Qutbuddin ordered him to be flaved alive and crucified him on the gate of the city. It was then the season of rains. Outbuddin waited for it and conquered the Maratha frontiers and invested Malek Yaklakhi al-'Alai with Wizarat of Devgir. He was for two years in charge of post office during the 'Alai era. He despatched Khusraw Khan to Ma'bar, gave him a canopy and placed all muluk under his standard, He returned to Delhi and indulged in drink. It was on the tongue of time that his beloved Khusraw was with a canopy while he looks after the muluk. He was similar to his father in point of oppression. On the way, he always indulged in wine and murdered youths. Malek Asaduddin son of Bughrash Khan, uncle oft Sultan 'Alauddin emboldened himself to kill him. He was a sly and renowned for valour. He won over some novice youths and they decided to kill him at the time of his descending into a well known valley of Sagun and entering into the harim and Asaduddin sitting as a Sultan. There was some time left for his death or he came to the manzil of the valley when one of them informed him about the plot. It was night. Asaduddin and his companions made their appearance

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 840,

and their assassination took place immediately at the door of the royal pav He wrote to Delhi for the murder of his sons, divesting his bounties, murihis women and daughters and seizing his property. Number of his slaugh minor sons was more than twenty.

He returned this year from Devgir. He sent an envoy to his br Khidr Khān to divorce his wife Diwāri Rāni. Husām Khān said that she the daughter of Rāi Karan. She was the most beautiful woman. When and her mother were brought to 'Alāuddin, Khidr Khān married her while mother was married to 'Alāuddin, When a son was born to her thr Khidr Khān, there was a separation between the two. It was a custom in Sultān's house that when a son is born to a son, his wife retires from for a long period. Khidr Khān loved her. He was afflicted due to her se tion. He had intense love for her. Poets sang about his love. Amir Kht composed a poem called "Khidr Khān Diwāri Rāni". It is a beautiful famous in Hind.

God forbid, the house of sky to be prosperous For it separates friends from one another. It opens up knots of friendship It cuts bond of life association. Two friends who love each other Who do not separate from each other even for a moment Are so thrown afar that after some time They get satisfied with name and letter. If every joint of body is separated Pain thereof is not so much as pain of separation. If they kindle fire in heart Its burning is not like burning of separation. Every one is a purchaser face to face Friendship is valued when distant. One ought not to be less than a particle for from dust It moved in bewilderment towards sun of skies Observe water-lily which from love permanent a Goes down when sun gets hidden.\* Faithfulness ought to be learnt from fish If separated from water for a moment, burns itself. When burning of love-play became essential Proximity and Distance matters not with heart-ravisher. When lamp accepts oil with life It burns with and without it and dies

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 812,

He should utter name of love Who is ardent to be cut in twain. If you are a lover, drink fire For every one pleases palate with sherbet. If in garden hundred orchards are before They are not like rose-cheeked of one's own. Why does rose not pluck its skirt from nightingale For it sits every moment on another rose. Why does a bud not tear its garment For it loves rose and rose garden. When weeping washed blackness of my eves Necessarily. I wish antimony from her dust. My face is on back of your wall Your face is on other side of wall of me. Story of anguish did not contain in heart If blackened head of pen with blood of heart.

These lines are from his poem. He who understands fragrant plants of ideas, will find brides of virgin topics. Thank God for him. Husam said that Khidr Khan refused to divorce her. Qutbuddin who had no character got infuriated with him. He sent Shadi Kutla, Amir of Salahdars to Jhayan. He killed Khidr Khan as well ss his brother Shadi Khan. Kafur had blinded them as well as Shihābuddin when he came out from his Niyābat and assumed full powers. Diwari Rani was carried from him against her will for marriage with him to make her religiously lawful or it is not said: I am a drowned person, I am afraid to be moist. Men of the religion and the world found fault with him. It was brotherhood at Gwalior. Shadi Kutla carried her mother with her and the rest harim of Khidr Khan and his brother with servants to Delhi. Diauddin said that Khidr Khan had relation of discipleship. His hand was held and he was taken to Qutb of the age, sun of the pure ones Mawlana Shaikh Nizamuddin Awliya, may his grave be sanctified. For that purpose, Qutbuddin attributed bad manners to the saint in word and being instigated by his devils ascribed arrogance indeed to the saint. He, therefore, objected to his being enlisted as\* his disciple: "He who caused harm to a saint, he was harmed in war". Dia said that he became arrogant after his return from Devgir. He stultified his tongue inspite of his lofty dignity and coloured his hands in blood. Accomplished men got afraid of him. It was time for the sultan's decline. Zafar Khān, Nāib of Gujarāt was killed without any cause. He was devoid of shame and exhibited himself in decoration of women among men though a sultan. He gathered around him prostitutes and jesters. He disdained muluks and nobles

Original Text, p. 843.

such as Ainul Mulk Multani and Malek Karabeg. They were near him. He was heard to have used indecent language by sitting on the throne in Diwan-i 'Am in dress of a woman. His nauba and soldiers had heard him using abusive language from the Hazar Situn. He prohibited men of the world to kiss the threshold of the saint and to visit him. He stayed at Ghiyathpur but he heard what he uttered as if he was near. He used to say in his drunken state that he would pay one thousand tankas to one who would bring the Shaikh's turban to him. It so happened that the Shaikh came to the enclosure of Shaikh Diauddin Rumi. Qutbuddin presented himself there. He came to the saint who neither turned to him not stood up out of regard for him. He had regard for Shaikbzāda Hām due to his enmity for the Shaikh Qutb. He had attained to rank of nearness with him. Apparently, he sent for Shaikh-ul-Islām Ruknuddin Multani to Delhi out of his incompatibility with the Shaikh. After Zafar Khān, he sent Ḥusāmuddin brother of Khusraw Khān from his mother in all haste to Gujarāt. He was a malicious heretic. He succeeded to the charge of Zafar Khān.

In the year 719 (1319), the amirs of Gujarāt decided to capture its governer Ḥusāmuddin. After his arrival in Gujarāt, he became a renegade to\* Islām and assembled his relatives, unbelieving rebels and mischief-mongers of the world and renounced loyalty to government. It so happened that Amirs of the army carried him in captivity to Delhi and took over administration of Gujarat till arrival of a new governur. The amire who carried him brought him to Qutbuddin in a state of captivity. He gave a light slap on his cheek. He was set free. He was a eunuch. Out of consideration for his brother Khusraw Khān or his worth as a scavenger, those who were near him, out of his being a Nāib of his brother assembled around him. He rose to rank of nearness because of him. He rebuked those who captured him and favoured him.

In this year, Wahiduddin Qarashi titled Sadrul Mulk was despatched to Gujarat. He was an accomplished man in being and attributes. He was unique of the age and renowned in the world.

In this year, Malek Yaklakhmi, the Wazir marched to Devgir as a deserter. He sent some one to Devgir who captured him and brought him with rebels to Delhi. He ordered to cut off his nose and ear and paraded him. The rebels were punished.

In this year, 'Ainul Mulk Multāni was invested with Wazirship. 'Ali Mujiruddin father of Rijā was appointed as Nāib Wazir. Tājuddin son of 'Alā Dabir was nominated to accounts in the kingdom. Afterwards, he was sent with them to Devgir. Şadr-ul-Mulk was recalled from Gujarāt and titled Tājul Mulk. He became a wazir and his nāib. Diā said that this happened by placing

Original Text, p. 844.

ring at its proper place. In an adage, it is said, "with the erroneous, the w is accurrate," From an expert, it is in a place of separation.

In this year, Khusraw Khan was charged with sedition for having not ried out his responsibility. Ma'bar campaign was not easy for Khusraw Khan it was for Kafur Hazar Dinari. On his arrival, the citizens got ready to go out a their wealth so he found nothing in the city except one hundred elephants more. They were in a scattered state in the streets of the city. Monsoon in. He waited for it to be over. There lived a Muslim merchant whose ne was Khwaja Taqiuddin. He had inmense wealth. He was left in the city ying on the Muslim army for his safety. His opinion proved to be false when learnt about Khusraw Khan and his severity to take out what he possessed. chose his wealth and killed him. He then resolved upon sedition. He\* rays collected soldiers and his secret agents looked to murder of muluks who re against him. He made Ma'bar an abode of sedition. The muluk learnt out this. They all decided to capture him. The first among them were iek Tamar, governor of Chanderi, Malek Mal Afghan and Malek Talighah, vernor of Karra. They were with troopers and might. They sent to him a ssage saying that they had heard reports about him which might involve him hardships and so he must return to Delhi before that might happen. When he used, they returned with him to Devgir confiscating by mere threats. They ried him as a prisoner to Delhi and explained his case. This is how Disuddin narrated. When Qutbuddin met Khusraw in privacy, there was a doubt n them. Qutbuddin abused them and deprived them of their bounties. ey would get their needs fulfilled only through friendship of Khusraw as their inties were confiscated because of him. In the meantime, Qutbuddin issued order against Bahauddin Dabir to turn out his wife from him. There was no y for him to cancel that order except through clinging to the skirt of Khusraw. waited for what was in his mind about insurrection. It was one of the strongest ses for him. When Khusraw resolved upon his murder, he sought permission summon his followers and relatives from Bhilwal and Gujarat. He then ected them as well as from vagabonds and a large number of Gujaratiraos. overflowed them with gifts, strengthened them with arms and horses. There : Yusuf Sufi among them. When the time of his death came, he requested m to be present before him at night. Qutbuddin ordered Dlauddin Qādi an who was his teacher in calligraphy etc. to open for him the gate of the ace when he wished. The keys were in his charge. He enters upon him with difference whom he loved. Diauddin informed his sultan with what he erstood from their gathering. He eliminated for the sake of perfidy. usraw Khan learnt about his prohibition. He said that jealousy for me led

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 845.

to slander me and that he feared flirtation. He embraced him and kissed him and pleased him with what was said in between. In his coming out to Hazar Situn, the raos etc. met him, including Kolad Karah, Kumar and Yusuf Sufi. They were a day before this day or two days. Kutbuddin had gone out for hunting to the side of Sarsawah. The party of raos had resolved upon his assassination in the hunting ground. Karah Kumar and Yusuf Şufi said to\* them that that was not the place for his murder as they knew what he did not know. Its place was the palace and that they would guard him. The muluk would present themselves and close the door. They would blame or get angry. It would be easy for them to do what they did not do. Besides, he who did not agree with them, they would kill him and thus the matter would be free with them. Diauddin said that it was like that. When he came from the palace to go to Hazār Situn, he ordered Diauddin Qādi Khān to be killed. He entered the palace. Voices were raised for his murder. Quibuddin said to him that he had come with his news. He came out and returned, and said, "Horses are in the stable. Take them out from their ropes." When they climbed up the palace, he heard movement at the palace gate. It was for the murder of nauba of the gate. He said, "What is this? I feel mischief." He stood up from sitting-place and went in haste to gate of the Haram. Khusraw followed him fearing he would miss him. He caught him by hairs of his head and pulled him towards him. Qutbuddin returned, carried him in front of him, dashed him to the ground, knelt down upon him with roughness and severity. Khusraw then called out to his companions. He was saying "I feel my death." Jaharia from among them stabbed him with a dagger and unceasingly stabbed him. Outbuddin died. It was upon him as he lived. Khusraw came out from beneath him when he had almost perished. They cut his head and killed all those who were in the palace and Hazar Situn. Jaharia entered harim of the sultan with his party and killed mother of Farid Khan, wife of 'Alauddin and her sons Farid Khan and Umar Khan, sons of 'Alauddin. The historian said that I do not endure the affliction. Soul of Sultan Jalaluddin supervised the palace, harim and Hazar Situn. See the demands of world for him from the 'Alai house. It is an adage "Do not practice evil so that evil may not visit you. Do not sink a well, you will fall into it." They who were scattered assembled in the palace and harim after killing, plundering, controlling the palace, lighted torches and opened the door of the palace. It was mid-night. Khusraw sent message through the tongue of Qutbuddin to summon 'Ainul Mulk Multani, Tajul Mulk Wahiduddin al-Qarashi, Fakhruddin Juna son of Malek Ghāzi, Bahāuddin Dabir and sons of Karābeg etc. When they appeared, they closed the door. They went up to the palace, spent the night like hostages

Original Text, p. 846.

till it was day. The Sultan was killed, ministers were in prison and the house was full of followers of Khusraw.\*

In the year 720 (1320), as said by Diauddin that he asked Shaikh Bashir Diwana who was a man of revelation as to what was the solution of the 'Alai House from ruination. The Shaikh replied "The 'Alai Sultanat was not based on foundation. It did not see stability of its kingdom and assistance of decrees of fate. Hence it was brought about gradually in its case and blindly for others. 'Alauddin had murdered his uncle his patron and gained ascendancy over his throne. The throne which dominates over him as blowing wind. What 'Alauddin did in respect of sons of others, their families and houses, others did to his sons, family and house. As he played with others, others played with him. God the Holy says "He who does evil, is rewarded with the same." Similarly, there is reward in the world. None knows except God, the Holy as to what is in the future Life. I say, with this, there is account to the Generous. When one dies, the Generous ends his right.

# Khusraw Khan's accession to the throne of Quibuddin

It was stated above that he forced the muluk in confinement in the palace. It was a contrivance to show them Outbuddin in what state he was with his head shamelessly cut off. Such was the fate of man who disposed of religion and the future life for his lustful desire for Khusraw. He tyrannized over people of the world beyond limit, disparaged the muluks for meanness of elevation inspite of the fact that they were efficient and equal to Khusraw. They waited for a day to see effects of it. The incident of their confinement happened in the palace. They were in the palace and the murderer, in the morning, sat on the throne of Outbuddin. He summoned them for allegiance which they could not reject. After the oath ceremony, they retired to their houses. They feit no sorrow except for ill-luck of the throne over which ascended one who was always below it. After the oath of allegiance, he pursued Outbi muluk of mamalik. He killed them in their manzils, in the Diwan and in their houses along with those who were with them. He then titled his heretic brother Husamuddin as Khan-i-Khanan. He titled his infided father-in-law Wartad Hawl as Rāy-i-Rāyān. Son of Karah Kumār was titled as Shayasti Khān. Yusuf Sufi was bestowed the title of Sufi Khān. Bahāuddin Dabir was designated as A'zam-i-Malek. These were the Khusrawis. Others for the sake of advisability† of time were also ennobled with titles. 'Ain-ul-Mulk Multani was designated as 'Alam Khan. He had no relation with him externally and internally. Tajul Mulk Oarashi remained in charge of Wizarat as he was in the Qutbi days. In the same manner, those who were in charge of Hawala (army) were retained.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 847.

He was not alraid of any one except Malek Ghazi, governor of Div Balpur. He favoured his son Fakhruddin Junk and appointed him as "Akhur Beg." Jaharia, murderer of Outbuddin was favoured with more of wealth, proximity and elevation. He was embellished with jewels from head to foot. He divided the Qutbi houses among those who expressed a desire for it to Rāozāda. He permitted them to enter the Qutbi Harim except his wife and Diwari Rani. After five days of his ascension, Khusraw installed an idol in his house. He spread out temples in the city. Men of his sect thronged for its worship. A large number of persons who were, free in sharp tongue with him assembled around him. They stretched their hands to the belongings of Muslims including their daughters and wives. He substituted idols in place of the Holv Book in arches of masjids. Banner of viciousness was raised aloft in the abode of Islam. Abominable deeds multiplied, its citizens became arrogant, they promulgated their practices. Religion relegated as a stranger. Members of his caste became powerful. They opened treasures and made them lawful for themselves. He constantly paid regard to Fakhruddin Juna and bestowed continual gifts on him for pacification of his father. Malek Ghāzi. He was a kind man in those days who had subdued greed and covetousness for friendship and loyalty. He borne with serious pleasure the difficulties of religion and world. He led a life of contentment and purity in the face of animosity and tyranny. He strictly retained to himself that which was of religion and world. He displayed his pleasure with what was in his hand or when he socially associated himself with citizens. His heart abhorred unbelief, viciousness and rebellion. Water was not palatable for drink and its flow does not always deliver him from God. Malek Ghazi asked his son Fakhruddin Juna not to visit him secretly. He was extremely favoured by Qutbuddin. He exercised patience till he got an opportunity when he fled to him. Ghazi was in constant correspondence with him. Khusraw had designated him as Näsir Khan. Diauddin reported that Fakhruddin Juna's\* patience got exhausted after two months and a half of Khusraw's accession of what he saw of the fate of the house of 'Alai and Qutbi, of the muluk and amirs and the retinue connected with both the houses. He could neither see the incidents nor deny them. He was moved by zeal and pride to make a move. He fled to Div Balpur with his mamaliks. He issued forth with that assemblage. He did not mind the multitude. He was like a lion who came out from the forest with his claws and teeth. Ghazi was gladdened at his courage and safe arrival from Khusraw; it was not possible for him to move as he was in the hand of Khusraw. When he was pacified from his side, he crossed the verandah of Div Balpur he sent for his father Bahram, Malek-us-Sind, its ruler. He responded to him, and met him. Both of them came out of Div Balpur for Delhi to avenge Qutbuddin. Khusraw Khan learnt about Fakhruddin's

Original Text, p. 849.

are from Delhi in the evening. Enjoyment of his life and those of his erates got embittered. He was pleased with it. He despatched Shavasti in wake of him for his search. He was head of "Diwan-ul-'Ard." He to find him and so he returned. Before Malek Ghāzi's coming out, he espatched Muhammed Sartabah to Sarasti with one hundred troopers. not under jurisdiction of Ghazi. He came to it and won it. When uddin came, he encamped there. He then marched from him to Div . After return of Shayasti Khan, he despatched Khan-i-Khanan and han, with might of soldiers and treasure, from Delhi to Dib Balpur. For rewell, he raised a canopy over his head. Sufi Khan, on his march, bade to spiritual guides of the city and requested them for prayers for safe . They could do no more. "Oh Lord! help with Your help the religion shammed. Oh Lord! abandon, disdain of the religion of Muhammed." din said that it was half the prayer on behalf of Malek Ghazi without sting for it. They were concerned for victory of Muhammed's religion. ther half of it was against Khusraw and his followers. They were the as to disparage religion and helped infidelity by their practices. When -i-Khanan reached Sarasti with what he had except Amir Muhammed can with one hundred troopers. He did not know how to advance upon He and Sufi Khan were sons of the same mother. They had not taken\* n any war nor they had seen a stab and a wound. They had grown up gh fear like that of the Mughals. They were afraid of their Amir. They ap sides and moved to Div Balpur. Malek Ghazi learnt about approach. arched to the town of Dalila, crossed the river, left him behind, saw him ncamped opposite to his army. Next day, the two encountered in the in. Ghāzi gained ascendancy over the heretic Khān-i-Khānān at the ssault and he returned as an unlucky man leaving behind him his elephants, ment including canopy and treasure. The amirs were made captives and imber of the killed was large. In short, it was a victory for Malek Ghazi. surned for friends and dis-graced miserable wretches. He was an amir of my, he rose to be a malek over amirs. He got strengthened with treasure dephants and fortune shone with him, Khusraw Khan learnt fate of retic brother with loss. After a week, the Ghazi collected materials for th and marched in company of a powerful ally Malek-us-Sind to Delhi. :aw marched from Siri and encamped between 'Alai Hawz and Delhi called wat. Those who were at Delhi and Siri were with him. He had treasures possession. He did with them what a losing man does when he finds the om slipping under his feet. Kumar abandoned him in his ruin without a He collected records and burnt them. He distributed wealth among h and the low. He was greedy for wealth which he had acquired illegally

Original Text, p. 850.

and so he felt despair at its distribution. 'Alanddin's greed had amassed so much wealth. This sort of distribution caused a disappointment in him. It was hermaphrodite with no precedence and no pursuance. He feared greed on which he relied but he could not collect for his benefit nor for others. Tomorrow, he would have to give account for it so he burnt the records. He felt envious of those who had it. For the rest of days, he rode to muluk and amirs. He was friendly with them with humbleness. He was pursuading them to fight with Ghazi with liberality and stores. They mocked at him, derived benefit from his gold and disappointed with curses. When Malek Ghazi alighted on the environs of Delhi, in the midst of buildings of Indrapat; at night 'Ainul Mulk Multani marched towards Uijain. Khusraw had decided for an encounter in the morning\* when he found himself broken due to his departure. He was with him at night. He travelled for a day. Malek Ghäzi had marched from between the buildings and supervised the maidan. Similarly, Khusraw stirred up his infidels and stood with them at the plain of Lehravat. The vanguards clashed and the vanguard of Ghazi was the victor. He came with head of Malek Talia Nagori to Ghazi. He was a great malek. Shayasti Khan emerged from the regiment to buildings of Indrapat and stretched his hands to plundering Khusrawi baggage and proceeded to a side with it. The other regiments observed till afternoon. Ghāzi attacked the centre of unbelievers with Muslims and they dispersed and scattered helter-skelter. Khusraw went to Tilbhat with his own horse because everything that was in the maidan was brought to Ghazi. He returned victorious to his pavilion in luck of night and spent the morning similarly. When Khusraw came to Tilbhat, he did not find any one whom he had got ready for the day. He returned from Tilbhat to the mausoleum of his old patron Malek Shādi 'Alāi and concealed himself there. Raozadah and others plundered and killed at every place they went after the defeat. Those who turned towards Gujarāt did the same. On Saturday, second day of war, Khusraw was brought to Malek Ghāzi. He passed an order for death for him. After spending the night at Indrabhat, the officers of the city came with keys to him. All the muluk, amirs and soldiers of Islam assembled around him. On the second day of victory, when Ghazi was free from Khusraw, he rode to all the muluk and the amirs. They met him with preparation of splendour, awe and saltanat at Siri. alighted at Dar-us-Saltanat and entered the Hazar Sutun and sat there along with all the muluk, sections of men and cogitated deeply over the incident. Some wept and some were wept over. After showing mercy to them, some said that Khusraw was from the caste of Raozada etc. They were killed. After thanks, Malek Ghāzi said, "I am a step-son of 'Alāi and Qutbi State. I have preserved salt and loyalty for them. I call on you to seek revenge and come out of rights for this house and make pessible efforts for the same. Praise be to

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 851.

God Who is Holy. I with His Grace, request you to help me without caring\* for death when it comes to you. You are now the pillars of this house and basis of its elevation. A remnant of this house is to be seated on the throne if he deserves it. If he is in the womb of his mother, there should be no connivance at him. If the enemy had not spared any one, you are eminent men of these two houses, it is your duty as men to take an oath of allegiance for one to whom you appoint. I am the first to take an oath of fealty to him and to be his servant." They said to him, "There is none left as heir. The Malek had trodden the path to suppress this sedition. There is a need for Sultan who is a protector and a defender. But we do not find any one from among us to possess merit to govern a country. Our life is for sacrifice. You have claims of priority and we have attachment with you. Firstly, you defended the region and frontiers against the Mughals. The region and the districts enjoyed security because of you. In regard to the appending quality, it should be said that it is more dignified than the preceding one. It is applauded in religion and world. We choose you for retaliation of the 'Alai and Kuthi house. We wish you victory for Islam by purifying the house of temples and worshippers of idols. We do not see any one else for the saltanat except thee. All of us would be under your command. We shall never come out of your loyalty. We will execute your authority. If any one fails in his duty towards, we make-a covenant with you that we would force him to do duty towards you. They then got up from their seats, held his hand, seated him on the throne and took an oath of fealty stage by stage. They addressed him as Sultan Ghiyathuddin Tughluk and ordered that he should be proclaimed in the city with this designation.

Khusraw Khān's rule lasted for a few months. He was assassinated in the year, 721 (1321).

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 825.

#### CHAPTER XXVII

## The Tughluqu

A bright flash from lightning of the salb of Khurāsāni Ghāzi, Sultān of Hind, Tughluq Shāh, Helper of Shari'at with Divine support,

Every place has a discourse and every age has its state and men. As an illustration, there is evidence of the Holy Revelation: The Word of God, the Almighty is "Did not God check one set of people by means of another, the earth would indeed be full of mischief." What is stated in the Holy Book. happened in the regime of Khusraw. It is in tune with the Holy Word. How is it not! Delhi is the city of Islam. Idols prevailed over it. That gave \* honour to them over the heads of Muslims. Time was in need to renovate religion. For that purpose, God arranged for jihad on his part. He suppressed michief. He who was with a small party proved a match against a big party. It was proper for one to make effort to bring about a change in usage by renovation of faith and earn the name of a ghazi. He deserved (to become a ghāzi) among the 'Alāi Muluk by means of his efforts. He was more elevated in rank and position to occupy the throne of Sultanat to be called 'Zillullah' (Shadow of God). Ghiyāthuddin Ghāzi Tughluq Shāh became the Sultan at the 'Alai Capital of Siri in the year 721 (1321). According to Husam, it was the 1st. of Sha'ban, 'Alaud-Din had drawn a good omen from Siri from the event of Targhi. He adopted it as his place of residence and made it a capital. Jalaluddin made Kilu Khari his residence. Fearing mischief of the Turks, at the time of his accession, he made Delhi his capital as all the Turks dwelt in it. During his regime, Delhi became capital of Hind after its conquest and before it. Sikandar Ludi made Agra his residential quarters and transferred himself with his family to it. Hence it became a capital for him. It continued to be so after him and even to the day of the Author. Diaud-Din says that he favoured the Ghiyathis, Jalali and 'Alai-the old houses with Amirship and government posts. He raised dignity of members of ancient families and distinguished them with mansabs and ranks as well as of those persons who were equal to them. He bestowed amirship and other offices on persons of merit. He settled other matters in their central places and assigned offices to qualified persons. He ruled over the general public with justice, equity and kindness. He acted in accordance with tenets of shari'at in all matters. He maintained an equilibrium between two extremes of excess and deficiency.

Original Text, p. 853.

He remained steadfast on the middle path in all dealings of religion and world. He made reparation for the disturbed state of affairs which had taken place after the 'Alai regime and established control over the frontiers and districts by appointment of persons who were noted for thrift, self-pride, purity and modesty. He brought down people to their respective positions. He set expenditure in proper order among different sections of people so that every one of them got what was proper for him. They were thus immune from request for it to one another. He forbade persecution of persons in collection of taxes and tributes, He ordered leniency to be shown towards farmers and cultivators. There was no jihad due to control of the frontiers and taxes and tributes were recovered in plenty due to stoppage of harassment. There was general prosperity and ease. The state enjoyed stability on account of a large army. It was large \* because of transport facilities to reach places of disturbance within a short time which was again due to plenty and prosperity. A silver Kirāt (a weight of four barley-grains) was equal to a mithkal of gold. Dia has quoted the following line of Amir Khusraw, the poet of Delhi in respect of it:

He did no work except with perfections of learning and reason You might say that he kept a hundred turbans beneath a cap.

One of his good points was the spread of fame in cities about immense wealth acquired through monopoly. It was multiplying more than average and sufficiency. Similarly, another thing which got circulated was corruption in state matters with casting of doubt and suspicion. In like manner, worthless persons were a source of trouble even though they had nothing to do with anything of the Diwan. He forbade their entry into the Diwan to dispel doubts and suspicions. One of the good features of his administration was strength of Shari'at with his own steadfastness in it first of all and then that of the people. He first of all preserved time to say prayers and that too with the congregation. He sat in company of learned scholars and heard them in respect of commandments and prohibitions. His another good quality was regard for the 'Alāi and Kutbi houses. He helped them and did not refuse grant of bounties to them. He sent for one who had arranged for the marriage of Khusraw with the wife of Kutbuddin just at the time when it was not legal for him and sufficiently rebuked him. He ordered him to be paraded in the city with sternness due to his disparagement of Kutbuddin's house. He obliged the muluk of the house and its mamalik with enlargement of largess to them, grant of glorious mansabs, elevated offices. and showed favours and treated them with respect and good manners. Similarly, he looked after the daughters of 'Alauddin who were alive by giving them more than sufficient and arranged for their marriages with suitable persons with lavish presents. His another good characteristic was preservation of the frontiers of

Original Text, p. 854.
 AH30

Islam during his amirship. Diauddin says that it was in respect of the Mughala always. In short, none ruled over the kingdom as he did or approached him in that respect. His another good feature was that he did not cause people to enjoy the world.

It is written in Siyar ul-'Ārifin composed by Mawlana Hamid bin Fadlullah famous as Darwish Jamali-it was composed during the regime of Sultan Humayun, the Mughal, in Persian-that Khusraw Khan Parwan (Parmar) ascended the throne of Delhi after murder of Qutbuddin Khalif. He distributed treasure among plebicians and patricians. He sent an amount of one, two, and three lakhs of tankas to holy men (mashaikh) and learned scholars also. Some of them made use of it, some waited to see the fate of \* Khusraw while others refused to accept the gift. He sent five lakhs of tankas to Quibul-'Arifin famous as Nizām ul-Awliyā. He took the amount and distributed it immediately among needy persons. He did not particularly make use of it for himself. After five months, Ghāzi Malek Tughluq Shāh became the ruler after murdering Khusraw. He established his control over the remaining treasure. On his accession, he first made inquiry about the extent of wealth and its expenditure on whom. Every one of them who had received, returned the amount. Now came the turn of turbaned persons. Those who had not utilised it, handed it over to the king's messenger but those who had spent it away, excused themselves. But Qutb-ul-'Arifin replied that it was from the Bait ul-Mål, (Public Treasury), needy persons had come to him; (he distributed the whole amount among them); he did not spend anything out of it for personal use. He particularly praised those who did not spend anything and those who did not accept anything. He reproached those who spent it on their needs, The Sultan did not send any person a second time to Qutb ul-'Arifin. It was below his dignity to meet a person like Khusraw. The Sultan kept the rest for himself and that was in accordance with religion.

In that age there was a large number of scholars who disapproved of the majlis of music (simā') and assemblage of sufis at the residence of Qutb ul-'Ārifin. It was ecatasy and dancing in a state of music. They got an opportunity to make a move against him when they learnt that the Sultān was against it himself. They represented to him about what they disapproved of. They said to the Sultān whether it was proper for the Sultān to continue that innovation, when Imām-i-A'zam (Abu Hanifa) had said about it that it was unlawful. The Sultān should convene a majlis wherein the 'Ulamā and the Sufis should be present for helping the cause of shari'at. They should then be excused and the reply should come to him from the lord of authority. There

. . . .

Original Text, p. \$55.

was something wrong between him and Bakhtiyar the Qutb of Delhi. He, therefore, ordered as represented to him. He, therefore, hastened for its response and convened a mailis at Tughlucabad. There was no turbaned man who was not present and who did not write a fatwa (a religious decree). The number of such persons reached to two hundred and fifty-three, every one of whom was a mufti. Simialrly, every one was present. The Sultan sent for the Qutb ul-'Arifin. Men of perfection and others who were noted for accomplishment in it presented themselves. Among them was Fakhruddin al-Zarrad. renowned among the suns for state (Hal) and word (Kal) and who had attained to the stage of ijtihad (diligence, one who can decide a religious problem), The Sultan then explained as to why the meeting was called and requested the scholars to speak. Mawlana Fakhruddin al-Zarrad turned towards the Sultan and said to him to choose these the rules of speech. For the rest, there should be consensus for saying wrong and then to explain that it was right or wrong from riwayat (narration). The Sultan turned to the Kadi of the region Ruknuddin al-Walwälji and said to him to question what he liked. He turned to Sultan ul-Awliva and said to him. "What do you say in respect of sima. and what takes place in your mailis? To what riwayat you adhere to?" He replied what was stated in the hudith (tradition). The Kadi said, "you are not a mujtahid. Reply me according to a riwayat from Abi Hanifa." He replied. "I tell you from the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him while you demand from me the riwayat of Abi Hanifa. If that is so from you, it is due to your pride of hukumat, you should immediately be dismissed from it. If that was your daring against Allah and against whom who loves them and they love Him. You are devoid of faith in you, Al-Fādil, as-Sufi, al-Kāmil, Mawlānā 'Ilmuddin, grandson of al-Qutb ur-Rabbāni Mawlānā Shaikh Bahauddin Zakariya, may his grave be sanctified, was sitting behind Outbul-'Arifin, agreed with him and stated that it was right. The Sultan stood up from the mailis and moved a few steps forward out of respect for him. When he extended his hand to take his hand the Shaikh turned towards Outh ul-Arifin and saluted him first. He then turned towards the Sultan and saluted him and said, " what made you to give trouble to the gnostic Shaikh Sultan ul-Awliya to make his appearance in this majlis? He replied, "I bore upon him the trouble of the 'ulama to convening this majlis to talk on sima Praise be to God for the benefit we have received from your presence also for verification of truth and falsification of falsehood." The Mawlana said to him, "I travelled to Mekka, Madina, Egypt and Syria. I perambulated those prosperous places with deeds which are in accordance with shari'at. I saw with those blessed traces that there is manimity on Sima between the Sufi mashaikh of elevated rank and Imams of Shari'at and Kadis of Islam as he made an

<sup>\*</sup> Original Test, p. \$56.

effort to show them in that. There is no objection for them for having with the 'ulama and the Hukkam (rulers). There is no doubt about sibility of music for its people. Mawlana Qutb ul-'Arifin and his comps are people of that category. Their interior and exterior are embellishe abstemiousness, fear of God and good morals. Every one of them is a state and perfection. All persons who imitate their morals and dve ther according to their way, receive their beneficent blessings. What ha settled by the Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him simā' and ecstasy is the truest truth to follow. When the Sultan heard M Shaikh 'limuddin what he said in the public majlis, he repented for having trouble to Qutb ul-Arifin but he had no power over it. He stood up w face towards him kissing his hands with humility, decorum and respec followed him to his house apologetic towards him. The Outh moved Ghiyāthpur, his residential quarter, may his grave be sanctified and may benefit us through him and the Muslims and may He make our visit blessed grave easy: Amen, Amen, Amen. May God accept it wit obligation. The narrator said about the character of the Sultan that w returned after following the Qutb to his majlis, he reprimanded th Ruknuddin Alwalwalji and dismissed him from the post of the Qadi. Th of this was received by the Qutb before he entered his office.

This is what is narrated about the good qualities of Sultān ul-Awlijhis grave be sanctified from Imām Shihābuddin. One day, the Quṭb pay a visit to Quṭb-i-Dehli. Mawlānā Shaikh Quṭbuddin Bakhtiyār almay his grave be sanctified. He said, "I and Mawlānā Burhānuddin were moving in his stirrup. When he returned from the blessed tor passage of the Quṭb chanced to be by Hawd-i-Shamsi for a visit to the of some of the saints situated at the Hawd (reservoir). When he w from the Fātiḥa ceremony and prayers, he saw Khwāja Ḥasan b. 'Alā' S the famous poet and his companions sitting on a side of the Ḥawd for He had knowledge of it beforehand. He composed the following lines:

For the last so many years, we are associates Had there been impression of association, where is it? Our piety did not lessen wickedness from our heart Our wickedness is better than your piety.

The Qutb heard what he recited. He said, "yes, there is influence of something of the Qutb created an impression upon him and that ver his head revealed (something), he fell at the feet of the Qutb with reperand became his disciple and followed him along with his companions. He

Original Text, p. 857.

reached the age of seventy-three. He coloured himself in the colour of the Qutb by his acceptance, organised himself in a single thread of his companions and compiled a book "Fawāid ul-Fuwād." This book has become an intimate friend of men of God, a guide to the path. It was applauded by the Qutb. The world famous poet Amir Khusraw said, "Would that, the approbation of 'Fawāid ul Fuwād' was connected with me. I would have given away all my books in exchange for that. Khwāja Ḥasan writes about his poetic name

Oh Hasan! you repented only then. When you had no power to commit sin.

### On Music

I have written in second chapter of my book "Nathr ud-Durar" on coffee. I have also reproduced the statement of Shaikh-ui-Islām Shihāb ul-Millat wad Din 'Umar Suhrawardi about music. He says that religion permits it but under certain conditions. Conditions of the circle are four pillars (arkan): 1. Zaman (time): 2. Makan (place): 3. Akhwan (brothers); 4. Quwwat ul-Iman (strength of faith). For every rukn (pillar), there are four attributes. One of them is the attributes of Time. One does not like wasting his property or mourning like the early part of night or like it and not the close of night and its like. Wasting time for prayers is not good. The condition of Place is to be alone except the party which intend for music. The condition of brothers is safety of hearts of one another. The condition of faith is that no one should stand or move except under a state of true ecstasy and overpowered state. We should seek forgiveness of God after departure of these conditions. Removal of one of the attributes of every rukn is sufficient as there is tune in it. Shaikh Ahmad b. 'Atāullāh al-Sikandari says that music is based on three means: I. He hears it with disposition. The elite and the commoners share it. 2. He hears it with 'state'; he ponders over action and reaction of rebuke and reproach in a clear manner. He hears it with truth; with God and for God. The gnostic Sayvid Ahmad b. Musa b. 'Aiil al-Yamani may his grave be sanctified was questioned about the Sufi Simā'. He said that it was permissible though I am not worthy of it. I do not disapprove of it also. I had heard from one\* who is better than me, Shaikh ul-'Arif Abul Hasan b. Salem may his grave be sanctified said, "How can I disaprove of it when I have heard about it from one who is better than me. Some of the gnostics entered into a majlis of sima' followed by certain thelogians who disapproved of it, among the Sufis. They began to go round in an ecstatic state in the house with all joy. He said, "Oh theologian! I saw you taking rounds." He said, "It is a difficult problem for me to enlighten you. I was disposed towards it with all joy. My joy was uncontrollable. I stood up and moved round and round as you saw." He

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 859.

said, "Oh Theologian! This is from your joy. How can you disapped one who is exultant with God, the Holy and the Almighty?" Junay his grave be sanctified said, "You hear it and then do not be benefited by He said," You hear it and your self." He said from what was said that it was from God. It is said in "al-'Awārif," they do not hear it from worthy persons with worthy persons. They give it up when the brare missed. Hāfiz Muqaddasi says that Abā Maş'ab asked Mālek, may G pleased with him, about simā'. He said, "I do not know it. Men of lessay it is legal and they do not disapprove of it. They do not sit away in nor they disapprove of it except a récluse, or an idiot or an ignorant dirty temper. In the 'Tātārkhāniya', conditions of its legality as stat the Şufi masbāikhs are mentioned. It is also stated that falsehood in e is worse than slander etc. etc. In short, there is no permission for simā' age. Junayd, may mercy of God be on him repented of it.]

Diäuddin said that he titled his son Fakhruddin Juna as Ulugh Kh the day of his accession. He favoured him with the country of Hind canopy. He titled his brother as Fakhruddin. They were four: B Khān, Zabar Khān, Maḥmud Khān and Nuṣrat Khān. He bestowed th of Kashlu Khān on Bahrām, King of Sind. He assigned Multān to him in tion to Sind. There was fraternity of faith between them. He disting Tughluq Shah son of his brother Malek Asaduddin with Deputyship of E while he appointed Malek Bahauddin son of his sister in charge of Diw 'Ard. His son-in-law Malek Shadi was appointed as Wazir. He was Amirship of Dadbek (Minister of Justice). Tatar Khan the adopted so titled Tatār ul-Mulk. He was favoured with Zafarābād. Malek Burhān, of Katlugh Khan was titled as 'Alam ul-Mulk. He was favoured wit manşab of Kotwal. Katlugh Khan was assigned the Wazirship of I Malek 'Ali Haidar was appointed as Näib Vakil. Qādi Sama'uddin was f ed with Qada (magistracy) of the city and titled as Qadi Kamaluddin, Jahan Malek Tājuddin Ja'afar was appointed as Deputy of Gujarat and s Khwaja Khatir, Malek ul-Wuzara Auhdi (?) and Khwaja Muhazzab be to the ancient house of wazirs. The world seated them and made them with its favour, and distinguished them with pomp, respect, regard and They were granted appropriate means of livelihood or more according to status. Robes of honour were conferred upon them. They were invited in his majlis. He was helped by them in state matters.

When he was free from assignment of offices to different person settlement of affairs in their appropriate places, he prepared his son Khān for march to Urangal (Warangal) in the very year of his accession

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 860.

ruler Ludra Dev garrisoned himself in the fort along with a party of other rais. His entry in his country was a signal for ruthless massacre. Ulugh Khan alighted at the city ... and ordered to sack the region. He took stern measures to capture the fort while men of the ruler prevented him to achieve his object. Rāi Ludra Dev sought for peace on the same terms as peace was concluded with Kāfur Hazār Dināri but he did not accept the terms. In the meanwhile, means of correspondence and communication were cut off. Ulugh Khān used to receive post every week. There is no doubt that fearful places were without men of watch and nauba. He was in his anxiety when news spread in the camp about death of Tughluq Shah. This rumour was started by the poet \*Ubaid and Prince Damishki. Both of them enjoyed the special favour of proximity with Ulugh Khān. They did not satisfy themselves with this alone but they informed Malek Tamar, Malek Takin, Malek Mal Afghan and Malek Kāfur Muhtadār ( seal bearer ) as having heard from Ulugh Khān that he had resolved to kill the whole party and that their names were first in the list. They were 'Alai Muluk of the first rank and of wide renown in the sultanat. They were at their respective places. They did not see their falsehood. They got themselves ready and left the camp. Their exit with their followers created perturbation in the camp so much so that one was about to fall on the other. Hence, men of the fort dared to come out. They fell upon their baggage and resorted to extensive sack. Ulugh Khan rode out with those persons who were with him leaving behind his baggage and proceeded towards Deogir. He did not know what was the cause of it. In the meanwhile, a messenger of the Saltanat arrived and reported contrary to what was rumoured. Ulugh Khān collected his mind and marched towards Deogir without a return. His army assembled around him with the exception of the above mentioned persons. They dispersed on arrival of the messenger. Their soldiers deserted them and joined Ulugh Khan. Tamar went with a small band to the frontiers of a Hindu ruler in whom he had confidence and died there. Takin, amir of Oudh delighted in fighting with the unbelievers and died. They sent him with his skin to\* Deogir. Mal, Käfur, poet 'Uhaid and Damishki were sent as captives to Deogir. It became clear to Ulugh Khan that the cause of mischief was 'Ubaid and Damiski. He sent them along with Mal to his father. He thus became triumphant over them. The Sultan assembled all members of their families in a prison. When they came to him, he received news of the death of Tamar and Takin. The Sultan came to Siri and ordered all of them to be presented in a public assembly. They were thus brought before him. He ordered all of them to be crucified. He issued an order to punish their wives and children. They perished under feet of elephants. His dread settled in hearts. He then prepared the muluk and the amirs for march to Deogir. He sent a canopy for his

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 861.

son and made him an absolute Sultan so that the muluk and soldiers mi look to any other except he and that they should have connection only him. He feared disturbance following it as before. Ulugh Khān march wards Telang (Telingana). He first encamped at the city of Badr. conc it and made its chief a captive. He marched to Urangal (Warangal alighted at it and conquered it by force. He captured Ludra Dev. alonthose who were with him, his treasure, his elephants and what he owned indited a letter of victory to Delhi. He sent Ludra Dev with what he charge of Bedår Kadr Khar and Khwaja Ḥājji, nā'ib Diwan ul-'Ard to He stayed at Urangal (Warangal), named it Sultanpur, controlled T. administered it and collected its annual revinue. He then marched to nagar and collected forty chains of elephants. He returned to Urangal an them to Delhi as stated in the history of the Dekkan. The Sultan foun city in his own name and called it Tughlakābād. He resided there with bers of his family and followers and made it the capital. He received a from certain 'amils about harassment of 'amils of Lakhnawati and its bouring region. He sent Ulugh Khān to it. After his arrival, the \$ marched to Lakhnawati. When he encamped at Tirhat the Sahib (lord, governor) of Lakhnawati, Sultan Nasir ud-Din Mahmud Bukra Khan, Sultan Ghiyathuddin Balban came and met him. In his wake, the chief locality and prominent residents, arrived. None was left out. Tatar ul started from his place to come to Sarangpur in pursuit of its governor Ba Shah who had become proud. He faced him and led him to the Sultichains. He returned with all his elephants. That locality was turned booty for the soldiers. He permitted Nāşir ud-Din to return to Lakhn He sent an 'amil of pomp and power to Satganw and Sonarganw. He ret to Tughlukabad while Bahadur Shah in chains was under his charge. commander of the army (Amir ul-Jaish) was left behind with baggage a hastened to Tughlukābād. Ulugh Khān received news of his hasty arriva ordered to construct a structure at a distance of four farsakhs from Tugi bad near Afghanpur with a door on its outside to alight for the army ordered Tughlukābād to be decorated. The Sultan arrived and alighted structure. Ulugh Khan hastened with muluk to him. They kissed the in obeisance and decorum. Tughluq Shah sent for food. They came out majlis after eating. A lightning fell on ceiling of the majlis. The ceiling down upon him and he died a martyr along with a party with him, history of Husam Khan, it is stated that elephants were at the elevated ex place overlooking the maidan. They were thousands with bells and banners standing section after section in front of the Kharja ( outside plac the distance of an arrow-shot. He ordered them to come all of them to

Original Text, p. 862.

the Kharja. They rushed forward, the earth stretched under their feet, the structure quaked, the Kharja collapsed and he died. It was also that he was against music as sanctioned by religion, Outb-ul-Arifin Mawlana Shaikh Nizām ud-Din Awliya was in favour of it. When he came to Tughlaqābād, he sent some one with a request to stop it. I say, he had resolved to wait upon him at his first arrival. He said and repeated it saying that he would ask him to stop it on his arrival at Delhi. His Holiness remarked, "Still Delhi is far off." It was from his order as it was. It was on the last day (of the month?) of the year 724 (1323). He left behind all his children as stated above. Dia-ud-Din said that the Sultan raised Islam to its honourable place. He made strennous efforts to conquer the world to please his Lord. He returned to the neighbourhood of his palace. It was not destined for him. He was in sound health to be with members of his family. Tush for this world and alas for its seeker. It is nothing but a dream.

> Sultan Fakhr ud-Din Ulugh Muhammad Shah son of Ghāzi Tughlug Shāh.

Muhammad Shah son of Tughluq Shah Ghazi ascended the throne of saltanat at Tughluqabad. All obeyed him. It was in the early part of the \* year 725 (13/4). He stayed there for forty days. He then had his accession at the old capital of Delhi. Following his predecessors-sultans-he ordered it to be decorated. He issued forth from Tughluqabad with all the muluk. He ordered to carry gold and silver on all elephants to be kept in front and make an oflering of them to the people. These precious metals were kept in charge of a party of maink. When he entered from the Badaun gate to penetrate into the palace-gate, the muluk took gold in their hands from trays and showered it in all directions on the public from windows of howdahs. Diaud-Din said that none was superior to bim in this respect. Many prayers and praises were showered on hun. Many persons enriched themselves. On the day of his accession, he appointed his uncle Firuz as Bărbak and Qiwam ud-Din Qutlugh Khān as Vakil. Muḥammad Alp Khān son of Qutlugh Khān was appointed as Amir of Gujarat. Ayaz Khān Shihab ud-Din was nominated as Malek-ut-Tujjār (merchant prince) at Navsāri, in Gujarat. Husam Khān has also narrated in a similar manner. He further said that he indulged himself in reforms of matters which complicated his time. He treaded over it by reversing established rules. He intended to mak- Deo-gir his capital. He began it by building carayanserais and villages at every manzil from Delhi to Deo-gir on the path. He then ordered nobles of Deshi and prominent residents to transfer themselves from it to it. He paid them price of their property, means of transport and

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 863. AH3I

provisions. He marched with them to Dec-gir. He built a city called D tabad at foot of the fort. He prospered it as capital. People constructed buildings. Delhi became empty in toto.

Daud-Din said that the first revolt which took place in the saltana that of Bahram Kashla Khan, lord of Sind and Multan. Husam Khai that Muhammad Shāh sent Ali Khattati to summon Kashlu Khān from He responded to him and came out with him to Multan. A conversation place between the envoy 'Ali Khattati and Luli, son-in-law of Kashlu Kh to what led to the revolt. The envoy was killed in this wrangle, where Kashlu Khān did not come. The Sultan received news of the envoy's mu He therefore marched against him. He marched from Deo-gir to Delhi. collected the army and set out for Multan. The two armies encounter Kashlu Khan was killed in the battle-field. His followers fied away. His was brought to the Sultan. He issued an order for massacre of the peor Multan. There lived in Multan Shaikh ul-Islam Mawlana Shaikh Ruku ud He pleaded in respect of citizens. Amnesty was granted, Muhammad returned to Delhi. Dia ud-Din said that he stayed for a year. Soldier. with him while their women and relations were at Dec-gir. In the mean there was general ruin of land, animals and men who were forced to go. sold their animals, and burnt their property. An order came for massac people and their belongings. People were despaired of life due to severiti harassment and assassination of helpers of the state. Soldiers sacked country from side of the saltanat and they killed the residents. The S went out for hunting to the region of Baran. He legally permitted soldie plunder and murder. The chiefs kept themselves close to elevated places a Baran fort. There was general ruin in it also.

Dà nd-Din said that secondly, there was a revolt of Fakhr in Benga the death of Bahiām Khān. He marched to Sonārganw from Delhi, account will come in the history of Bengal. His army marched to Kanaw year. He resorted to plunder and massacre as far as Dalāmu. Thos: escaped to desolate and descreed places were alone spared from death. Poin said that a third revolt took place in Ma'bar in the Dekkan while he in the frentiers of Kanawj. The cause of it was the invasion of the fatl Ibrāhim Kharāitdār (bearer of bags of letters) called Sayyid Aḥsan camirs. He killed them and established his independent power on desert the Saltanet's army to his side. The Sultān received a report of it. He reed to Delhi. He was surrounded by Ibrāhim and members of his family marched from it to Deo-gir. At the third or fourth manzil, he received a famine at Delhi. Its roads were blocked up by robbers. When he re

Original Text, p. 864.

Dee-gir, he was very severe upon its 'amils and amirs. Many persons perishe in search of them. He was then violent with Maratha cultivators. He achiev ed his object thereby. He then sent Malek Ahmad Ayaz to Delhi and favoure him with deputyship. He marched to Telang. After arrival of Ahmad Ays at Delhi, there shot up a revolt at Lähore. Ahmad Ayaz suppressed ! Simultaneous with the arrival of the Sultan at Urangal, an epidemic broke of and disease spread. Many muluk and amirs died. The Sultan also was caught in the disease. Malek Kabulan was appointed as Nā'ib. He was given the country of Telang. In a state of indisposition, he returned to Deo-gir. Shiha Sultani was prepared to march to the city of Badr. He was titled Nusrat Khar He guaranteed one hundred lakhs of tankas in its monopoly. He gave Deo-g' its adjacent territory, and the whole of the Maratha region to Outlugh Kba and left behind him there. He returned to Delhi in an indisposed condition He had determined at Telang to permit people to return to their property Delhi. They moved to Delhi. Those who found it difficult to move on accoun of heavy baggage, made the Dekkan their native place.

Fourthly, as Husam Khan said that the Sultan gave people money fror the treasury on their return to Delhi as was done at the first time. The caus of it was that when Delhi was evacuated, as hinted at before, the whole of Deli including door-keepers, was evacuated; or as Diaud-Din narrated that whe he returned to it, he did not find a particle out of one thousand. The Mugha: heard the report of migration in Khura-an and 'Iraq: Narma Shirin, brother c Outligh Khwaja prepared himself for march against it. Muhammad Shah hear about that, he travelled and made people travel to it. After his arrival at i Narma Shirin came and encamped outside Delhi. His soldiers scattered them selves on the sides of Lahore, Badaun. Samana etc. They assailed, plundered pillaged and demolished buildings. They did what Muhammad Shah had r conrage to do. All Muslim places in Hind had practically become devoid agriculture and prosperity. Muhammed Shah remained in a besieged state ti Narma Shirin returned after laying waste the whole region. After he crosse the river of Sind, Muhammad Shah came out to Kalanaur in his wake an returned. This is what he has narrated. But Dia ud-Din said that Muhamma Shah returned to Delhi. There was desolation, draught, and it did not rain i the year. There were cracks in the land, Nothing grew up except rubbish grass Horses and cattle perished except what God had wished. He opened treasure He ordered to sink wells as help to agriculture. But God grows with water the skies, water of the wells do not grow. A large number of people perisher

In 724 (1323), there was a revolt at Multan and this is the fifth. T. Sultan did not maintain a balance in his movements and postures. He aspire

Original Test, p. 865.

that which was beyond his power in regard to Persia. Its account will fol in detail at the close of this book. He lost what he did not control in I His head was not void of government. He coveted full power and authorit his kingdom. Shahu Alghani revolted at Multan. He became dominent it. He killed its Amir Bahzād. Muḥammad received a report about it. was thinking of world prosperity. He marched against him. He was no from Delhi except a few stages when he received news of death of his me Makhduma-i-Jahan. His life became bitter. She was blessed, pious, virti She distributed much money among needy persons, poor men, orphans, w and travellers. There were many prayers on her behalf as well as invocation God's mercy compared to her good deeds and charity. He returned givin his march. Just then, he heard news of Shahu's invasion against his kins Afghāns. Diā said that he wrote to Muhammad Shāh that he had resumed submission and that he would not return to do a similar deed. Muhan Shah returned to Delhi and made efforts for fertility of the land and spent upon it. He ordered to sink innumerable wells. Cultivators had reached extreme limit of helplessness. They could not go against his order. tongues had become wide due to despair. He inflicted severe punishmer negligence in agriculture and its operation. He then marched to Si Sāmāna, Khaitul, Kuhrām, Koh Pāyah for disobedience of their residents. stretched hands in plunder. He subdued chiefs of Koh Payah. They called Ranas because they suspended sword. Residents, eminent men headmen were brought under submission. He returned with them to f. They had with them, members of their families, servants, cattle etc. accepted Islâm. They attained to the rank of amirship. They were cl Their emment men achieved great status. Besides amir-ships, they favoured with mansabs. In like manner, he widened means of livelihor others in accordance with their demands. Those localities enjoyed sect He then marched to the sides of Koh Payah. After pillage, he turned to notable men who embraced Islâm as residents of Koh Pāyah had done. E became secure thereby. Sixthly, there was the event of Urangal. Malek F was in charge of it. Kitá Nāyak invaded him. It was difficult to fight him. He left it and returned to Delhi. Kita Näyak conquered Urangal a. as all the districts of Telang. This portion went out of control of Delhi jur tion to this our day. Husam Khan narrates that Bahaddin, cousin of the S invaded Dawlatabad. Mischief was suppressed by his murder. His attack earlier than that of Kita Nayak. It is mentioned in the history of the De in the first daftar. Diaud-Din said that the 'Amil of Kanbila renounced Is He was a relative of Lakanpul. This portion of territory also went out of : control. Continued attacks became general in the region. It spread to

Original Text, p. 866.

external territory except Deogir and Gujarat. Whenever Muhammad Shih heard of a revolt, he became severe upon the people and inflicted hard punishment upon them. Wherever news of his punishment spread, most people got themselves dispersed. Skies became silent, and famine became severe. Muhammad Shah strove for prosperity. Citizens secretly went out with his soldiers and elephants to Badaun, Katihar, and return to it. They then migrated to it. They then migrated to other places when famine conditions became very severe. He also encamped on the Ganges leaving behind Patiali, Kanphol and Khor. He built houses for residents. He began with the soldiers. The whole shore became a place of residence. It was named Sargadawari. It is a trade centre. Banjaras from Karra and Oudh bring food-grains to the market of Sargodauari. People are slightly happy because of corn. 'Ayn-ul-Mulk and his brother are 'amil. They have subdued disobedient persons by sword and established authority in round-about places and spread order. The Sultan halted for a period at Sargodawari. 'Ayn-ul-Mulk and his brother tried foodgrains and cloth to be brought to it and to Delhi. The cash realised is seventy or eighty lakhs of tankas. The Sultan put faith in the worth of 'Ayn-ul Mulk for the state. Because of his efficiency in administration, he was appointed to Wizārat and Niyābat. He heard from the 'āmils of Tughluq Khān at Deogir that they were dispirited because of fall in revenue. He therefore transferred 'Ayn-ul-Mulk to Deo-gir in place of Tughluq Khan. He was appointed as Wazir of Deogir. 'Avn-ul-Mulk learnt about it. He had administered Karra and Oudh. They had certain dealings agricultural interests etc. There were many notable men at Delhi particularly men of pen. They go out to Karra and Oudh and Zaiarabad out of dread for punishment of the Sultan. Those who returned to 'Ayn-ul-Mulk with obedience to him did so because of tras-action in monopoly and agriculture etc. Many a time, the Sultan had heard about departure of men of pen.....he was not pleased with this but he connived at them. He\* wrote to him to submit his account of Sargodawari. He went out in all haste from Delhi to Sargodawari. He heard about his Wizarat of Deogir. Hefeared it to be a trick. His fear became serious when it was written to him and called him for that purpose.

Dâud-Din said that his departure from Delhi to Sargodawari became a cause of revolt of the Sultān of Māyan. It was the seventh revolt. He exacted something more for himself from businessmen in lieu of monopoly of Karra district. When he came to Karra, he had no power over the ten topics of the Diwān. The mamālik brought him to the extent of his power and helped him with a number of office-men. He carried a canopy over his head and styled himself as Sultān 'Alāud-Din. Muḥammad learnt about it. While he was going

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 868.

out, he heard from 'Avn-ul-Mulk that he proceeded to Karra, caught hir killed him. Just after receipt of news, his skin came to Delhi. Inspite of Shaikhzāda Bistāmi prepared himself for march from Delhi. He was th in-law of the Sultan being related to his sister. He gave him Karra pursued the helpers of Mayan and killed them. There was a revolt of S Sultani in the city of Badr. It was the eighth event. Shihab was tit Nusrat Khan. Bidr was cut off to be joined with Karnatak ( Kartank. the last three years. He did not take one-fourth of revenue. He was shop-keeper. He was seized with dread of punishment. He rebelled garrisoned himself within the fort of Bidr. Qutlugh Khan, lord of I alighted on him, scaptured him, sent him to Delhi and controlled the fo returned to Deogir. Then there was the revolt of 'Ali Shah in the De It was the nineth. 'Alı Shah was the son of 'Alai Zafar Khan's sister was an Amir of one hundred in service of Tughluq Khan, lord of Deogisent him to Gulbarga to collect tribute. He took it old from the army. brother and his companions joined him. He killed Bahran, amir of Guand brought the city under his control. He captured Bidr and reno submission of the Sultan. Tughlaq Khan marched against him under the order. When he entered into his boundary, he offered resistance and for an hour. He fled to Bidr. Qutlugh Khan alighted on him and grante security. He sent him with his followers to the Sultan at Sargodawat sent with them to Ghazni. They returned from it. He ordered them punished in the expanse of the palace.\*

Then shot up the revolt of 'Ayn ul-Mulk at Karra. It was raised ! greatest muluk who enjoyed elevated rank in the neighbourhood of the § They were all members of his majos. In spite of this, they wanted to a from his punishment. Because of fraternity, they assembled at Sargod They issued forth at mid-night with his brotherhood and soldiers to Zalarābēd. His brother was prepared with four hundred horse and he mtowards Gadaragang from the side of Sargodawari. He seized the elegwho grazed at Gadara. He moved on with them to his camp. Hence, a broke out at Sargodawari. Muhammad Shah summoned the contingent Sāmāna, Amroha, Baran, Kaul and Aḥmadābād. After their assembla murched towards Kanawj and alighted in its building, 'Ayn ul-Mulk was man of the category of pomp and grandeur. Sultan Muhammad had wit his exploits with his father in a war with the Mughals. He had gained v over them at twenty places. Besides Ayn al-Mulk had crossed the river from beneath Bankarmu. He alighted in opposition to the Sultan with hi of pen. Army of Delhi may desert the Sultan in favour of them. The

Original Text, p. 869.

spent the night and in the morning, some amirs opposed him and put him to-flight and captured him as a prisoner. He killed his brothers in the battle-field. His followers fled to the river Ganga. Those who were left behind from the river were killed. Most of them entered the river and got drowned. Those who came out of the river, fell a captive in the hands of unbelievers. The Amir and his soldiers collected spoils of war. When he came with 'Ayn ul-Mulk to Muhammad Shah, he said, in regard to him, "He is a man of wisdom with soundness of heart. There is nothing in his nature anything of evil. A fall alone was ordained for him. He did not care for it. Days were in accord with him as they came to him. He then summoned him, showed favour to him, raised his rank, bestowed a robe of honour on him and assigned to him elevated position as befitted him. His children, family and subordinates niet between themselves.

He then marched from Bankarmu to Bharāich and visited the tomb of the suspicious martyred commander of religious war Sultān Maḥmud Subuksagin. He distributed a large sum of money in charity among those who looked after the tomb. He ordered Aḥmad Ayāz to advance and encamp on the way to Lakhnawati. He did not invite any of the rebels who sided with 'Ayn ul-Mulk to go there. He who gained a victory with him and who had fled from Delhi, joined them to go there. The Sultān returned from Bharāich to Delhi. In like manner, Aḥmad Ayāz returned to it with what he had taken from them.

Diaud-Din said that he recollected at Sargodawari that the Khutbs in his. name in the saltanat was not proper without permission of the 'Abbasi Khalifa of the age. Husam Khan writes in this respect that Tughluq Khan entertained no fear about it hence the Sultan emboldened himself about it. I say, that he questioned about it to the Khalifa of the age. He clarified it saying that he who was contemporaneous with him in the region of Hijaz or Egypt was Hakim bi-Amrilläh. Abil 'Abbās Ahmad b-al-Mustakfi Billah Abir Rabi 'Sulaiman. b. Hakim bi Amrillah Abi 'Abbas Ahmad b. Abi 'Ali al-Hasan al-Kubbi b. 'Ali b. Abi Bakr b. al-Khalifa al-Mustarshid Billah Abi Manşur al-Fadl al-'Abl.asi. One of the Egyptian Khalifas. First among them was al-Mustansir Billah Abul O Qasim Ahmad. The Sultan of Egypt was now az-Zahir Bibras. Al-Mustansir of Baghdad separated in the event of al-Must'sim, the last Khalifa of 'Iraq.. That was in formality. He came to Egypt and proved his lineage az-Zāhir took him by the hand and took an oath of fealty for Khilasat on 13th kajab, 659 (1260). Muhammad Shāh wrote a letter to Hākim. He was at Sargodāwari. When he returned to Delhi, he sent an envoy to Misr with a letter and recited the Khutba in the name of Hakim. He suspended the Khutba in his name till permission. That was in the year, 742 (1341). Diaud-Din said that it win

2011

Original Text, p. 870.

· 744 (1343), when the envoy returned from Misr (Egypt) accompanied by an envoy of the Khalifa Hājji Sa'eed al-Sarsari. He had with him a letter of the - Khalifa for Khilafat, a robe of honour and a flag. Muhammad Shah received him with all the muluk, amirs, sayvids of the state, imams, mashaikh, sufis, kādis, sadrs (justices), muftis, khatibs, nakibs, preachers, eminent men of every art, chiefs of every trade. He had ordered for decoration of cities and manifestation of rejoicing. He alighted at a distance of a bow-shot from his horse and walked on foot to him and kissed his feet. He took the letter from him as befitted it and ordered to make offerings on khil'at and leva (flag). After that, he presented himself in the Jame 'for the first Khutba. He ordered to make a mention of the Khalifa first in the Khutba and then his mention. He forbade the Khatib to speak anything which was not permitted in the Khutba. The Khatib then raised his voice with the mention of Hakim when trays of gold and silver were sprinkled in offering. He ordered to inscribe the\* name of the Khalifa on fringes and banners. He then gave lot of gold and cloth to Sarsari and permitted him to return. He gave him presents befitting the Khalifa and himself. It consisted of a very precious jewel. His envoy Hājji Rajab al-Barkai' was with him. I say, the statement of Diaud-Din follows informing that the hajib who opened the letter was his mamluk Malek-i-Kabir Jamdar. He spoke at length in praise. He was from among the mamalik of Muhammad Shah. He said that he spoke about his good qualities, justice, kindness, obligation, purity and integrity. There was no sultan of Delhi who had perfection of being and attributes. He said that there was none who could approach him in respect of servants of his master Muhammad Shah who is made Khahta in the kingdom after him and who is titled "Qabul-i-Khalifati". Out of his abundant faith in al-Ḥākim al-'Abbāsi, he wrote a letter to him in his own hand-writing surrendering his own self to him. After two years, Hājji Rejab al-Barkai came back to him. He was accompanied by Shaikh ush-Shuyukh of Egypt from the side of the Khalifa. They had brought with them a letter, a khil'at and a fisg. Muh unmad Shah welcomed them. H: displayed extreme bumility in manners for the letter of the Khalifa and lost no moment for its respect. Love of the Khalifa implanted itself in his mind. His faith increased in him. There was no second when he made no mention of the Ktalifa. The word Khalifa was constantly on his tongue. At this time, he dismounted from his horse from the city-gate and walked to his place in the palace with a letter of the Khalifa on his head. He had issued an order whereupon the Mughal amits and nobles took an oath of allegiance for the letter of the Khahia. He had always in his hand a copy of the Holy Quran, Mushariq and the letter. None advanced to him but took an oath of allegiance for the letter. Muhammad Shah received Mughal deputations for allegiance with un-

Original Text, p. 871.

told wealth. After showing regard to Shaikh ush-Shuvukh, he permitted him to return along with his companions to the Khalifa with lewels and presents unheard of and unseen. They were from Khanbhayat of Gujarat. After Shaikh ush-Shuyukh, envoys of the Khalifa repeatedly came to Khanbhayate and Broach with letters and other things sent. The letters mostly contained humility, decorum and service. Makhdum Zāda arrived from Baghdād with greetings, met him and came to Siri with him. He was alighted in a palace. He made him a hakim at Siri and Kanawi and designated him Makhdum Zada. When he presented himself in his Diwan, he got down from the throne, received him by moving a few steps and seated him on the throne. He sat before him on his knees with etiquette and did so when he returned. He bore faith in him by paying him ten lakhs of tankas added to which was the revenue of Siri and Kanawi both from inside the fort and outside of it. He was granted gardens and reservoirs and springs adjacent to them. The historian of Firuz Shāhi was greatly amazed at his contradictory qualities and wonderful attributes. I did not believe it with certainty. It is so with me now also. I found his deeds in conformity with sharifat. He styled himself as Sultan Muhammad. Besides, his name is the noblest name of the sons of Adam. I found him avoiding titles and designations which were of Sultans from ancient times and regarded them as shameful. I tound him in humility and decorum for alive and dead 'Abbasis. His own mamalik were not pleased with that. Inspite of this, what I witnessed with my own eyes was that a day did not pass when blood of the muslims was not spilled in expanse of the palace. It used to flow over it. His Diwan us-Siyasat (Tribunal of Punishment) was situated at the palace-gate. It was a rendezuous of scholastic philosophers who had receded from Islam. There were multis, kadı, muisit and muhtasib (censor). He who renounced their creed, was ordered to be punished. Would to God! they had contented themselves with debate. Their enmity carried them to argumentation and made gemands from men of unity. People were always in serious calamity from them on which their sultan lived. I, the historian, how can I be on certainty from his side and express amazement. I say what has been mentioned. He was one of the wonders of creation of God, the Holy. He did not restrain external opposite qualities by guess and conjecture.

Diaud-Din said that after his return from Bharaich to Delhi he stayed for three or four years and devoted himself to state affairs. Firstly, he devoted himself to fertility of the land by means of agriculture in accordance with the ideas of the Sultan. He found out some new means for that. He restrained the pen and paid attention to practical method. If the land was not cultivated in accordance with his method, the advantages would have been few. There

Original Text, p. 872. **¥32** 

was more of agriculture and the fields were replete with bounties. Treasur became full. It became easy to increase employment of retinue which led possibility of conquest of the world. He created a Diwan for this method a named it D wan-1-Amir-Karohi. He appointed men of charge and police to lo after it. As for example, in a circle of thirty in thirty kirch (kos) that is, farsakh, there was no vacant place even to the extent of a cubit of hand ire cultivation. Barley was changed with wheat for example and wheat wi sugar-cane and sugar-cane with grapes and dates. For fertilisation of such circle, he appointed nearly one hundred Havaldars. He presented before hims who did not think of the future. His glance was limited to greed for love of 1 world due to help for collection of dirhams in the treasury-a large quantit They wrote letters for the Diwan to cultivate three hundred thousand bighas barren land within three years. Produce of it would be sufficient for \_ thousand horsemen and gold embroidered clothes of the sultanat as well beasts of burden such as horses, animals and cash. He fixed for cultivation every 300,000 bighas, 500,000 tankas as instalments for men of avarice in dec They should be increased. They wrote letters and took from the treasury i every 300,000 bights of the barren land and one thousand horsemen, 50,0 tankas. It was cold booty for them. They spent it for their maintenant Those pieces of land were mostly barren. They were unfit for cultivation. Th spent the money and waited for punishment in change. More than sevelakhs of tankas were spent from the treasury for them. Within a limited peric the land did not yield as much as the expenditure from the treasury, not to t extent of one thousand part. If the Sultan returned from Thattha to Delhi, of them would perish in punishment. Secondly, his offerings to the Mughfrom the treasury. In winter, the amirs of Altaman, Hazāra land Alhasān, a women and slaves waited in large numbers in deputation upon him. He w generous to them by giving feasts, help, daily expenses during the period their stay approximately for one or two months. On their return, he gat. them gaudy clothes, jewels, gold and silver and similar other articles. The who heard about this, came back to him constantly every year in the form or deputation. Thirdly, he was always finding out methods for reclamation of land and increase of wealth, to collect army to conquer Persia with absurd ide Fourthly, Excessive punishment. Because of it, the region went out of contr there was disturbance in the country and many foreigners intruded themselv Whenever he heard something, there was severe punishment in that city, word in enmity or falsehood against a person was sufficient for his punishme There was a party in the city whose business was slander against people their punishment. Fifthly, he always transferred 'amils and men of pen. heard that there was mis-appropriation and falsification of accounts at Dec-

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 874

and that the income has gone down from one hundred lakhs to one hundred thousand. It was a rumour started by mischief-mongering slanderers. He looked to the tribute and taxes of the Maratha land. He appointed an accountant for sixty-seven kartanka and divided the land into four kinds. He appointed an independent 'Amil for every kind. They were Mukhlis ul-Mulk, Sardawatdar, Malek Yusuf Bughtā and 'Aziz Khammār. Diāud-Din said that they were heads of mischief-mongets. He appointed 'Imad ul-Mulk Sartez Sultani in the Diwan ul-Vizarat at Deogir. He appointed Dahārādahar to the Diwan ul-Uslub. When they prepared themselves to go, he ordered them to kili amirs of hundred, notable men and men of monopoly. Every one of them was to be killed on a flimsy cause. They should be expelled except the men in the Diwan of Usinb. If any one is not able to collect taxes of the Sultan, he should be transferred to the Diwan of Kirchi. Kutlugh Khan was dismissed from Deogir on an imaginary mistake. On his departure from it to Delhi, the region was disturbed and the nobles perished. The Sultan appointed Nezam ud-Din, brother of Kutlugh Khan from Broach at Deogir. He established control in the region, augmented the treasury which was amassed by his brother in the fort of Deogir called Daharagir. The cause of delay was the roads from Delhi to Deogir were unsate and insecure at Mālwa. On Tughluk Khān's recall, 'Aziz Khammar was appointed as Amir of Mālwa and Dhār. He was notorious for malignity, wickedpess and was of base origin. He gave him lakhs from the treasury. On his\* departure, he said to him " My ears had heard about you but my eyes saw you," Rumours which spread in the region about dispersion of rebels and mischiefmongers had reached him. The cause of it was that the amirs of finance carried, on their departure, a portion of spoils with them. "I should have surrendered them to you and relied on you in repelling the mischivous elements. I assign their office to you." After his arrival at Dhar, he buckled up to his office. He killed, m one day, eighty amus and a party of prominent retinue of Dhar. This news spirad to Deogir, Gujarat and extreme limits. The amirs became cautious and resolved upon departure. What Khammar did, the rent widened for the patch-repairer. The door of desolation for the kingdom was opened, the Sul'an could not close it. Khammar wrote to the Sultan to the effect that what was from him in respect of the amirs was to meet the situation. That was necessary to receive rubes of honour under an edict of the Sultan. The Sultan ordered his muluk and amirs to send him letters of applause for what he had done and to favour him with robes of honour belitting his position. Diaud-Din Barani said that "I am a Firuzi historian; for me is the service of Sultan Muhammad for seventeen years and three months. During this period, I constantly received beneficence from him. I was always in distraction. I do not know what I say. Only thanks to him occur to me. Many a time, I have heard him extending

Original Text, p. 875.

censure to him who had no character, base in origin, and lineage, tempo mischievous, urgrateful, mean and niggardly. It was said that they were n worthy of training and that their plant does not produce except mischief. avoids them. I saw him seizing the hand of the son of a songstress, base origin, mean, stupid 'Aziz Khammar. He raised his rank over a large number great muluk. He favoured him with an order for Gujarat, Multan and Badau He raised the rank of his brother. Similarly Firuz barber, Mainkala, coo Ladha gardener and similar others. He bestowed upon them elevated offic He raised the importance of Shaikh Babu son of Nakar Hayak by assigni; a place near him. He favoured Sira Mali, meanest in Hind and Sind wi Vizărat. He ennobled Muqbil, basest slave of Ahmadyar, in appearance as character, with Deputyship of Gujarat." How would he not surprise wi similar actions of the Sultan. He is equal to Kisra and Kaişar in administration of the kingdom. In practice and prudence, he is a match with Buzurjmeher Disturbance in deeds should arise with such a balance in administration as action. The world needed training for the mean to bear disgrace of waiting the gates and residence for chamberlains. He allowed his vast kingdom to out of his control by his innovations and absurd ideas. He made the wor legal in Islam. Ingratitude and ungratefulness assailed him. Whence is th boldness against religion in him? There is again a good feature in him. Who he heard agan for prayer, he hastened from his majlis and remained standing say prayers with congregation. When he finished compulsory morning prayer he began his litany till sun-rise. When he intended to enter harim, he first se eunuchs to instruct ladies to veil themselves as it was not permissible for him took at them. He greatly insisted upon Kutlugh Khan for recitation of the Hc Quran in Youth. He was obedient to his mother Makhdum-i-Jahan at who feet he fell. Who else has this quality in him ! An assemblage of such contrad tory qualities is an amazement in knowledge. I know this as a wonder of t creation of God in this world." In the meantime, the smirs fought with Muqb naib of Gujarat for treasure and horses on the way of Dabhoi. On his arriv to the Sultan, the Amirs of Hundred fell upon him at Dabhoi and Baroc They took what was with him for the merchants. Muqbil returned to Naha wala with nothing. The amirs enriched themselves. Their number increase They dominated over Khanbhayat. They subdued it on the departure of amirs from Guiarat

In the history of Husam Khan it is stated that there was an event of issue of copper coins in 734 (1332-33). Sultan Muhammad resolved upon current of copper coins in his kingdom in place of gold coins. It was this step which to the ruination of his kingdom, waste of his exchequer and strength of enemi

Original Text, p. 876.

of the faith. He issued an order for extensive use of this coin in all major and minor dealings. There was a large quantity of gold coins in the treasury. Wise persons realised that this measure would not continue; they, therefore, hoarded gold and made use of copper coins in their transactions. It was done by enemies of the faith who dwelt in the region and frontiers. They exchanged copper coins in accordance with their capacity and strength with gold tankas. Foreigners heard about it. They stopped their entry into Hind and severed commercial relations with it. Thus all transactions stopped. It was an obvious loss. He removed currency of this tanka by a proclamation but the purchaser could not get anything for it within a usual period. With its discontinuance, there was no dealing with it. They felt a need to issue another proclamation for remitting all these coins to the treasury. He paid gold coins in exchange of these copper coins. It indicated his weakness and ruin in the state.

From among the causes of ruination was also the payment of tribute and taxes in counterfeit coins. One copper coin was equivalent to three or four coins. That was a severe measure upon the cultivators from the 'āmils and other officers. A conflict arose between them and amirs of the hundred. It led to war on both the sides and consequently, the land remained uncultivated.

Another cause which contributed to ruination was that he was personally enticed by embedding women of Karāchal (between Hind and China) and enjoyment with them through marriage. When he received a perfect report about them, he evinced a desire for them. He prepared the Malek and an army of 80,000 amirs was got ready. The path was distant. It contained valleys, ravines, deep hollows and unfathomable mountain passes. He advised him to post, on the way at every valley and ravine, an Amir to guard the place and wait for his return to it. He carried the treasure sufficient for two months for the army. Imagine preparation of this army first and then difficulty of the path, then an unfixed period and look at the treasure at its even level. None-returned from the army to give report of the campaign. All such fantastic-designs left nothing but ruination. In the year 739 (1333), there was an event of Bengal. Its departure from Delhi led to death of Bahrām Khān. Its account. will come in the life account of Shir Shah Sur in relation to Bengal.

In 743 (1342) there was an incident at Lahore on the arrival of Hulachune Mughli to it with a large army. Its 'Amil Malek Jafar went out to offer resistance to him. He got martyred. After his martyrdom, a great amir Khwaja. Jahan came to Lahore. He gained a victory over the Mughal.

In 744 (1343), the envoy of Egypt came (to Delhi). I say, his account was given before as narrated by Diaud-Din. In 746 (1345), monsoon set in.

Original Text, p. 877.

It had fallen on the river Ganga. He went up from the shore to a lofty hill and stayed there till the rise of Canopus and named that manzil as Sargodāwari. Its account was given before. In 747 (1346) he directed his energies to building of Delhi. Its account also was given before as stated by Husam Khan in his history.

The historian Diaud-Din Barani said that the Sultan learnt in 745 ( 1344 ) what happened to Nat'b Muqbil from the amirs of Gujarat. His thoughts got scattered and he determined on a march to Gujarat. Dia said that "Kutlugh Khan sent for me and said to me from the Sultan about his departure to Guiarat. It was not proper. Those who attacked him are in Gujarat. He had marched against them in person. He did not call them to himself. There was no punishment to 'Aziz Khammar. When they learnt about departure of the Sultan, they attributed that to partiality. Other smirs of the hundred had joined them. He then took out the order for establishment of order. The Sultan has ordered me to do this work. I go to them at my own expense. It is sufficient for this matter to bring them to him in chains as I did in case of 'Ali Shan and Shihab Suitāni. His talk ended at this. He ordered me to make its representation to the Sultan and return to him with his reply or bring to my notice the requirement of circumstances. I went and conveyed to him but he did not accept his ideas. He had ordered Shaikh Mu'ızzu-Din son of Shaikh 'Alaud-Din Ajodahi to make ready to come to him. He then liked to march in person. He sent to him three lakhs of tankas to recruit one thousand horsemen in two or three days and to join him." He left behind the heir-apparent Firuz Shah as Na'ib of his in the capital. He was accompanied by Malik-i-Kabir Khalifati and Ahmad Avaz. He came out from the palace to Sultanpur, at a distance of fifteen farsakhs from the city and stayed there for the remaining days of Ramadan. In the meantime, he received a petition from Dhar from its lord 'Aziz Khammar containing what report he received from the rebellions amirs of Gujarat and Baroda. He collected an army from adjacent places and marched against them. When he stopped at the subject-matter, he did not like that from him and remarked that 'Aziz did not know artifices of war. He is not experienced. It is surprising that he is safe. In wake of arrival of the petition, he learnt from him that he came to them. When both of them met, he did not know what he did out of amazement. They attacked him, captured him by force and killed bim most wickedly in retallation of eighty.

Diaud-Din said, this news was received at the close of night in Ramadan at Sultanpur. He sent for me; when I stood before him, he said, D.aud-Din, you see what revolts take place. I am indifferent to them. People say that these revolts arise because of punishment of the Sultan. Besides, I cannot

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 789.

revent talk of the people and occurrence of revolts consequent upon punishnent. He then said to me, 'I read much history and paused at what theultans received and stood upon punishment. I read the history of Kisra and. concluded from it that punishment is necessary in a state. Were it not for it, people would retire from faith and there would be no praise of God on occasion if calamity. Obedient persons do not approve of wickedness and viciousness. amshid was asked as to what crime necessitated punishment. He replied, Withdrawal from religion, murder of an obedient person, fornicator, perfidious erson, rebei and his accomplice and abandonment of Command of God. He hen said that Jamshid spoke about places of punishment as it is stated in the oly tradition. I said, in case of withdrawal from religion, assassination of a 'uslim, confirmed fornicator and the fourth one is for the sultans. Taking ction on these should be in accordance with advisability. He then said to me hat it was in the age of Jamshid that punishment was for disloyalty. A nischief monger was rarely found. Hence, he was contented with punishment s stated. But in our age, there are many seceders and mischievous elements. punish on grounds of rebellion and mischief. I fight against exodus till I xterminate people from exodus or I bring about their ruin. My Vazir is ufficient for me for his administrative control in the kingdom. Hence I shorten my hand from put ishment and assassination. I find people turning away from ry loyalty completely and so I am determined upon their death through punishnent. I have granted to the people beyond enumeration from my treasure. n spite of this, they assail me. I have tried them many a time. I am thoroughly equainted with their minds and temperaments. I find them only enemies and ntagonists. I cannot do justice to them except through my sword. There is . religious decree for it. He said and then he marched from Sulfangur to the irection of Gujarat. He turned to Naharwala from certain manzils. It was n his lett. He despatched Shaikh Mu'izzud-Din and men of pen in his company, e came out from Mount Abu and Dabhoi and Baroda were near from it. hence, he made commander of the army ready to go to the rebel amirs. Therevas a war between the two armies when many rebels were killed and the rest: ook to their heels with their families to the side of Deogir. The Sultan came-Broach and pursued the rebels from among the amirs of the hundred whoere at Broach. The rest proceeded to Delhi. He ordered them to be loval Mukbil, Na'ib of Gujarat. Muqbil saw them at the river Narbada. They vere inadvertent. He fought with them and put them to flight. Many of them 'ere killed. He captured their families and seized their baggage as spoils. heir notables came out from the camp on horses without saddles and whipa nd ran to Saler Maler. Ruler of that locality Nandev captured them and xtorted from them whatever of jewels and gems they had with them. Gujarat

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 880.

became immune from their evil. The Na'ib Malek Mukbil stayed at the river for some days. Under a royal order, he put to death the captives from among the amirs of the hundred of Broach and returned. Those who were safe, escaped to Deogir and to the Mawas residents at Gujarat. The amirs of the hundred were made the special butts of wrath and murder. This revolt had begun due to murder of eighty amirs of the hundred by 'Aziz Khammar.

The Sultan halted at Broach for obtainment of broken wealth at Broach and Khanbhayat and the whole of Gujarat for several years. That was done by severity and violence. During his stay at Broach, he got immmensely infuriated at the people, killed most of the ruling amirs of the hundred and inflicted severe punishment on every section of residents of Broach. The Sultan then addressed a letter to Mawlana Nizam brother of Kutlugh Khan. He was the 'Amil of Deogir. He indited him to send him Amirs of the Hundred from the retinue of Deogir and fifteen hundred horsemen in company of the who bears the royal order to Broach. It became publicly known before arrival of the royal edict for he sent, after inquiry, one who had fought in opposition at Deogir. He was called Zain Rindah. When the royal edict came, Nizam prepared to come, as ordered, with a following of the Amirs of the Hundred, fifteen hundred in number. When he issued forth from Deogir, the two amirs journeyed with him with the royal order to a manzil. They then talked among themselves that those who have come in our search have come only for our assassination—there is no other reason-as was the case with our companions who did not submit themselves to him. They killed the two amirs at that manzil and returned to Deogir. They assailed the royal palace in inadvertence and imprisoned Nizām. Busan, Khan said, "for regard of his brother Kutlugh Khan, they killed servants of the Diwan and men of pen whomsoever they came acsoss. They also kulled Zam Rindah, son of Thanesari. They controlled the treasury at Daharagir. They assembled around Mukh Afghan. He was one of the Amirs of the Hundred at Deogir. He sat on the throne of saltanat. They surrendered themselves to his order. They disbursed the treasure and recruited soldiers. All these who were with Nandev joined them. He imprisoned them near himself and thus insurrection raised its head. The Sultan learnt about that. He came to Deogir. Mukh Afghan came out into the maidan. It was a severe war. Mukh fled to Dhārāgir along with those who escaped with safety and garrisoned himself in it. A large number of his followers who were left behind got killed. That was between the amirs of Hasan Gangu. After flight to the city of Bidar, be went to his region along with his brother Mukh Afghan. The Sultan sent Imad-ul-Mulk Sartez to Guibarga and ordered him to stay there to control that region, guard it and pursue the disloyal elements wherever they be. The

Original Text, p. 881.

sultan alighted in a building at Dawlatābād. He wrote a letter of victory to lelhi.

In the meantime, he looked into the affairs of Deogir when he received a report of invasion of Taghi Turki on Gujarat. He was a shoe-maker from among the mamālik of Şafdar-ul-Mulk Sultāni. The Sultān returned from it to Deogir o conciliate the Amirs of the Hundred and some residents of the land. He hen marched to Naharwāla and entered it inadvertently and killed Malek Muzaffar nā'ib of the Shaikh Mu'izzud-Din. He captured Mu'izzud-Din and ther men of the pen. He left behind an 'Āmil. He marched to Khanbhayat and sacked it. He paid attention to Muslims and Hindus who met him on his narch to Broach and besieged it. The Sultan left behind Khudāwand Qiwām-ad-Din, Malek Jawahar, Shaikh Burhān Balārāmi and Zahir ul-Juyuah (comnander of the army) for consultation. Thence he besieged Mukh Afghān and narched to Gujarat.

Diaud-Din said that the Sultan then alighted at the valley of Sagun. I net him and petitioned to him what I had sent to him Firus and his two sahiba\* bout congratulations for victory. I was favoured with kindness and distinction of proximity with him. In the meanwhile, I journeyed to him one day. He aid to me: Do you see what the rebels do to me? Revolt had not subsided vhen I had to move a second time. If I order killing of all the amirs of the undred wherever they might be at Deogir and Gujarat, I would not be troubled rut I would not get anything by killing some and sparing some. Now Taghi mamluk of my mamluk has revolted at Gujarat. If I had killed him or sent im with pass-port to Sultan of Aden, a day would not pass with him without evalty to me like others of the foreign rebels. But I had no power to tell him hat the source of these revolts was excess of Sultan's punishment. If I exclude to a time, it is possible that hearts of mutual aversion would unite for disloyulty. There is a fear from his sharp temperament and troubled mind. I said to nyself, would to God, my knowledge of wisdom informs me about ruin of the tingdom. There is no sign of improvement of his heart. It is only the essence mischief. Husam Khan said that among those who had garrisoned themelves at Deogir was Amir Ismā'il the Afghān, brother of Malek Mal. When the jultan came to the outskirts of Broach, Taghi went out to Khanbhayat along vith those who were with him. The number of his companions consisted of three hundred horsemen. The Sultan alighted at the river Narbada flowing eneath Broach. He pursued Malek Yusuf Bughra with one thousand horsemen and a party of amirs. A meeting of these amirs chanced to take place in the plain. It was a fierce conflict which resulted in the death of Malek Yusuf and light of his companions to Broach. The Sultan learnt about that. He crossed

Original Text, p. 882.

the river, entered Broach, made efforts for preparation and proceeded to Khan-bhāyat. On news of his arrival, Taghi left it and encamped at the old city of Asāwal. He then went to Naharwāla. He killed Shaikh Mu'izzud-Din and those from men of pen who were in his captivity. Diāud-Din said that I write with regret about Taghi for his misery along with what I have written in my history about powerful Sultāns. It pains me also. I find him in severest grief for he has to fight with a small contingent against the Sultān. How do I say? I did not see his contingent. He fied from Taghi. I did not see with this lowness and army of the Sultān for example which is the substance of this verse:

How can a fly be killed with a sword How a lion can slap a gnat.

The Sultan paused at Asawal on the side of the city for the rain and to give some rest to animals. In the meantime, he received news about Taghi that he\* left Naharwala to come to Asawal and that he had encamped at the famous town of Kadi. The Sultan rode out from Asawal to it in severe downfall of rain and came near Kadi after three or four days. On the second day of his encampment, he issued forth with arms for a war with him. Taghi was with his small contingent of three hundred against a large army. He then chose one hundred self-sacrificing warriors being assisted with the malignity of mother of maliciousness (liquor). He rushed in person against the Sultan. The Sultan's elephants issued forth from the army. He had begun to retreat to Naharwala. He killed a party of his companions and nearly four hundred of the margin. His baggage was left behind. The Sultan pursued him and the son of Malek Yusuf Bughrā. It was evening. Night spread its darkness. He alighted for rest. Sleep overpowered him. Taghi came to Narharwala, took his family with him and removed them to Kantha and thence to Thattha. The Sultan came in his wake to Naharwāla and encamped at the tank of Sahasraling. He viewed for welfare of the residents and cultivators. Flame of Taghi subsided. People became safe and secure. A party of Taghi's followers who were left behind took shelter with Rana Mandal Batari. He killed them. The Sultan gave presents to their chiefs and families and carried them with him. The Sultan distinguished him with a robe of pleasure and suspended him jewel-studded sword. He thus became secure with that and presented himself in the Sultan's Diwan. In the meantime, he received news from Deogir that Hasan Gangu and his gang of rebels assailed 'Imad ul-Mulk and killed him in war. Qiwam ud-Din Khudawand Zāda, Malek Jawhar, commander of the army proceeded to Dhār. Hasan Gangu came to Deogir, raised aloft a canopy over his head and encamped at: Dahāragir with those who were with him. People assembled around the saltanat of Hasan Gangu. Whenever he heard about gatherings of people, against him, temper of

Original Text, p. 883.

the malek became irremediable. He did not pay attention to make amends for disturbed state of Deogir. He paused at Naharwäla for the sake of punishment. He wrote to Delhi summoning Ahmad Ayaz, Malek Ghazni, Amir Qabgha Mir Mihan to come with whatever number of soldiers they had for sending them to Deogir. After their arrival, he heard that Hasan Gangu had gained in strength and power. The affair of Deogir was delayed for control of Gujarat and destruction of Taghi. He started for conquest of Karnal (Girnar). A famous\* headman of Deogir came to him. When he did not find from him that those who came to him were not put to death, they retreated to him one by one. Diaud-Din said: During this dispersion, one day he called me. When I stood near his throne, he said to me, my kingdom has become diseased with diseases of opposite nature. There is no effect of medicine on it. When the physician 'reated it for headache, his temperature rose up in fever; when he treated it for lever, it suffers from pleurisy. In like manner, my kingdom is united on one side and dispersed on the other; there is improvement in one direction when there is rottenness on the other. There is no control over such a disease. There was no treatment for this disease with the former sultans. I made it necessary to read histories. I found that the sultans of the age treated state diseases in various ways. Their treatment for aversion of hearts was dismissal from saltanat and replacing him by another man. The nawwab was invested with authority. He devoted himself to hunting, music and similar other matters. reatment of perilous branding for the state is the meeting for the elite and the common people of opposite views. When he heard from me what I represented to him, he said, I had determined upon that if I controlled the state according to what is in my mind, I would entrust the affairs of this calamity to Firuz, Kabir and Kabir and I would go to the House of Allah. But I am troubled by the people in these days and people are troubled by me. People are acquainted with my temperament and I am aquainted with their matters. Everywhere I reated with the beneficial medicine. My treatment now is the sword. Wherever there is lot of antagonism and disloyalty, the punishment should be severest. le said and the Sultan delayed his stay in Gujarat for nearly three years. He spent monsoon of the first year in Mandal Patri being engaged in prosperity of Jujarat and organisation of the retinue. He spent the second monsoon in proximity of the fort of Karnal (Girnar). He conquered Karnal after the nonsoon and subdued the seacoast from its side and brought its rulers under his submission, each of them being called the Rana. All of them are Ranas. In ike manner, chiefs of residents and cultivators were subdued. Rana Kumbhar was the Rana of Karnal. He took to his heels but was captured and brought tack. The unbelieving 'amil called Mehta entered the fort and surrendered

Original Text, p. 884.

the fort with its environs to the Sultan. He spent the third moneoon at Gondal. It is a place on the side of Tattha inhabitated by Siwmarkan ( Jains, Shravaka and Marila (?). The Sultan fell ill here. It was fever which necessitated his stay for a few days. He fell ill before he entered it. In the meantime, he received\* news of death of Malek ul-Kabir at Delhi. He was much affected thereby. He despatched Ahmad Ayaz and the na'ib Malek Muqbil to Delhi for its affairs. He summoned Khudāwand Zāda, Makhdum Zāda, some mashāikhs, 'Ulamā, great men, notable persons, the harims of muluk, and amirs, horse and foot to Gondal from Delhi. Large sections of people thronged around him. He sent for many persons for business from Dipalpur, Multan, Uija and Siwastan. Many of them arrived there. The Sultan recovered from his illness. He marched from Gondal to the sea coast of Sind, crossed it and encamped there. At this place. there arrived Amir Mughli Altun Bahadur with more than 4000 horse by way of help to him from Amir Kazghan. The Sultan received them with favour and regard, particularly, Bahadur. The Sultan marched moving to the shore to the direction of Tattha to punish the section of Siwmarkan. Taghi had sheltered with them. He encamped among them, When the Sultan encamped at a distance of thirty farsakhs from Tattha-it was the day of 'Ashura, (9th Muharram)—he was fasting. He broke his fast with a fish. His disease took a reverse. Fever augmented. He got into a boat while the army moved along with him. On 13th Muharram, he encamped at a distance of fourteen farsakhs from Tattha. The army was ready. Soldiers waited for an order to sack to find out Taghi among the Siwmargan but destiny prevailed over plan

The king was with this plan but he was not aware that the decrees of God

Had drawn a line of God's will on the page of plan.

His disease became serious. People were greatly exultant for their being in a foreign land with their families and children and there was a distance of one thousand farsakhs between them and Delhi. They were in a shady land as opposed to the enemy. There were the Mughal foreigners. The Sultan was on the point of death. What a calamity! It would be the greatest in a foreign place. They were disappointed of freedom. They believed as if they lived life of death due to above affairs. In the meanwhile, the calamity became most serious because Sultan Muhammad died on 21st Muharram 752 (1351) on the shore of the river of Sind (Sindhu) at a distance of fourteen farsakhs from † Tattha. In the history of Husam Khan it is stated that when the Sultan went in pursuit of Taghi with the son of Malek Yusuf as stated previously, the calamity descended and sleep overpowered, Taghi spent the night. He was robbed. The Sultan learnt about it. He blamed the amirs for a gathering of

Original Text, p. 885.

many amirs and a small number of followers of Tagbi as it was previously statad that its number consisted of three hundred horsemen and their fault in his straits. He was captured and killed. He was taken out from them and they did not see him and did not find him. He then said in rebuke to them. From that day, he who helped Taghi on his side. His death was due to his being killed or he came as a captive. He was taken thereby and reproached thereon. Taghi heard that, He avoided the amirs and went without showing himself in opposition to the contingent wherein was the Sultan. He alone spent the night. The Sultan was in the neighbourhood of Kadi. He marched from it to Naharwala and ordered the son of Yusuf to pursue in his wake. He slept for the night and Taghi took what was hidden with him as booty and proceeded to Sind. The Sultan paused at Naharwala and summoned whom he summoned from Delhi. He received a report about the deeds of Hasan Gangu. This matter was delayed till freedom from the affair of Taghi. He encamped at Gondal Patri and conquered Karnal and what was adjacent to it Sayalku etc. Its lord Rana Khengar took to heels embarking in a boat while he pursued him sea-wise who returned with him as captive. Karnal was conquered in 750 (1349). He then marched to Thari where he received news of death of Kabul Khalifati one of the three appointees for the region of Hind. His ideas got scattered. He sent Ahmad Ayaz and Kabul na'ib to Delhi. He summoned the nobles with their families. At Thari there arrived who arrived. He extended its buildings. On his encampment, he caught cold due to its water. It increased and dominated over his temperament. He therefore returned to Gondal. He became indisposed, suffered and journeyed to Sind in search of Taghi. He had taken refuge with Siwmargan of the residents of Tattha. They were in a large number there. He crossed the river of Sind and encamped on its shore. Altun Bahadur arrived. Then, during the course of his thinking, his disease relapsed and he died as mentioned before. It was on 11th Muharram.

Diaud-Din said: Muhammad Shāh was a wise, scholarly and perfect Sultān. He was generous, eloquent and elegant in speech. The hearer got engrossed in his speech. His pen was incomparable in scattering pearls and organising them. He used to quote from histories such as Sikandarnāma, Abu Muslim Nāma, Mahmudi etc. With administrative power, his memory was retentive. He did not forget what he heard once. Nothing remained invisible from his sight what he saw. He was proficient in medicine and far-sighted treatment. In debate, his heart was wide. He was fluent in speech, illustrated his arguments by examples and he had presence of mind. If he were more practical than philosophical, he would have been of the category of Sa'ad logician and 'Ubaid the poet. He was well versed in astronomy and theology. He was

Original Text, p. 887

an Imam in knowledge and learning. He was disposed towards philosop Those who attended his majlis were devoid of religion. The attendants w of the creed of Hakim (Avicenna). He was a scholar of philosophy. He v one of those who acted according to the creed of the Imam. He was a scho of religion but he spilled blood. He killed a number of scholars of religion. mashāikh, and sufis. He always sent for people in his palace who were on creed of the Hakim who argued under strength of the Sultan. Those who ste up for argument on pretence of their own knowledge perished under his puni ment. Those who desired out of ignorance of the Muslims such as the Oalande clerks, scribes business-men, swordsmen whose number was beyond enumerat also perished. His harshness reached such a pitch that he brought about general massacre of scholars without debate and argument. Not a week pass nav a day when blood did not flow through expanse of his palace, reasonably unreasonably. No one could imagine of the causes of murder. People used say that an image of murder formed itself in his mind and it was immediat carried out in action. When an image of seceders from Shari'at was formed, votaries did not see it nor they knew about it. It was attributed to enmity him or disloyalty to him. He who became disloyal, was put to death under order and he transgressed the limit in this respect. None found a way simi to denial. Then how can one expect it with clarity. One could not quest legality thereof.

Dia ud-Din said: We had a party of ungrateful persons in his majlis. V. our knowledge of lawfulness and unlawfulness and power upon denial, he g on spilling the blood of 'Ulama' of religion, we defend greed in his world : avarice in nearness from him against word of God in punishment. We do depart love of life which is under force of circumstance vanishable and wha not imagined in the shape of denial cannot be accepted. I wonder at it as v do not forbid and we do not deny perhaps it suffices us to be silent. Nay, do not talk in unanimity and we see him in pleasure of murder through separa anecdotes and above-mentioned events. Would to God! I had knowledge this partnership in what we help and what would be our end in the world depriving of vision and party. But I, after every imaginable bounty, was ir to this day of mine. I had reached old age. I see myself severing itself fr everything it desires and dropping that which it does not like. Honour changed to dishonour, fortune to misfortune, wealth to poverty and knowled to denial. Adversity touched me with need, I obtained ignominy with solici tion. This is in the world. I do not know what would be in the other wor Verily to God we belong and to Him we return. The cause of writing introduction is that I was one of those who was benefited by the bounties

Original Text, p. 888.

The second of th

Sultan Muhammad. Whatever I have is due to him. It is not from any one else at any time. After him, I do not know of it except in dream. I toiled for him. Besides, whatever I possessed of personal qualities and attributes are due to him. Without philosophy, no time was similar to it. He said that it was true. He was the king of Hind, Sind, Gujarat, Malwa, Maratha region, Telang, Kanpala, Dahur Samand, Ma'bar, Lakhnawati, Satganw, Sonarganw and Tirhat, It was pious, forgiven (deceased) Tughluk Shah, the ruler of Saltanat in the wake of dispersion of Khusraw Khān which was collected by Sultan 'Alaud-Din in the treasures. It fell in the hand of one who wasted it. It was mostly for the muluk and people of the world. He gathered it to the treasure. He was liberal to those whom he found to be worthy from all sections of people. Base persons and common men did not leave it in their hands and preserved it in the treasury by minting and controlled it due to mean persons committing mischief. Sultan Muhammad made addition to it in almost the same proportion. His innate quality of generosity distributed it even among places of suspicion. When Bahādur Shāh returned to Sonārgānw for his accession, he distributed immense treasure to renovate organisation of his administration. He gave eighty lakhs of tankas at one time to Malek Sanjar Badakhshani. He gave seventy lakhs of tankas to Malek ul-Muluk 'Imād ud-Din, forty lakhs of tankas to Savvid 'Add ud-Din; he gave similarly to Nāṣir ud-Din Tawil, Khudāwand Zāda Ghivāthud-Din, Khudawand Zada Qiwam ud-Din, Malek un-Nudma Naşir Kami. . Malek Ghazni used to receive one hundred lakhs of tankas every year. He gave immense wealth to Qadi Ghazni in the shape of jewels. None from the deputa-\* tions as well as the questioners was disappointed. Deputations came to him from Khurasan, 'Iraq, Trans-oxiana, Khwarazm, Turkastan, Herat, Misr and Damascus. When news of his generosity spread, Mughal Amirs of Taman, Amirs of Hazara, eminent men, notable women waited upon him in deputation. They received more than they needed. Among them were those who staved on and those who returned. Whenever he found a new thing out of his judgment, people applauded him, they moved on with him for conquest of territory and augmentation of wealth. There was no other object besides this. In the meantime, he directed his energy to conquest of the whole world and devoted his thoughts to planning of it. But it could not be accomplished without wealth and wealth was not possible except from districts of Hind which were under him. He thought over measures which may yield wealth to him. He formulated rules and regulations of action. He was strict with the cultivators for its acquisition. His plan got inverted. Prosperity changed into ruination. It has been hinted at above. He was confined within his fantastic ideas. For execution of his plans, he resorted to murder. He trans-gressed the limits in case of those whom 

Original Text, p. 889.

he suspected of antagonism. The root cause of it was enmity of religion had determined for murder of Ahl-i-Sunna (Sunnis) who did not equate him in his malignity and evil towards creatures of God from the time of # may peace be on him to the ill-omened day of their birth such as of Zain Mukhlis ul-Mulk, Yusuf Bughra, Khalil b. Dawatdar, Muhammad Naji fortunate Shaikh Zāda Nihāwandi, Karanfal Nabastāf and his cursed so Mujir Abu Rejā. After their account, Diā ud-Din pronounced one tho curses upon them along with the son of Qadi of Gujarat and the threei ll-si sons of Thanesari. Those persons evinced fondness for murder of Sunnies. then took an oath of God the Holy and said by subduing his suspicion ti one of these-Zain Rinda, Yusuf and Khalil-gained victory over to prophets, they would abandon association with them. How should I not ! respect of Sultan Muhammad. Those persons had established their aut over him, who was one of the wonders of creation. During night and da directed his energies to nothing but assassination of imams of religion. he thought over conquest of the world and fixed a programme for collecti dirhams, he ordered for levy of taxes on the region between Doab by a 1 which the 'amils had levied upon it from the year of conquest of Delhi by ud-Din to day of his order, ten and twenty. There was no increase in empty treasury by the tanka also. The 'smils became very strict. The vators killed them. He sent Amirs of the Hundred who killed cultive Getting an opportunity, the cultivators killed the amirs and completely waste the land. He then ordered migration from Delhi to Deogir, accou which is given before. These were the causes which brought about the Due to the transfer, a vast majority of persons perished. Firstly, it was and separation from the house and traditions. Secondly, movement of with what was in the house. Thirdly, distance. Fourthly, taking t uncongenial land with difference of water and climate. Fifthly, the place was always a hot place for unbelievers became a graveyard for the Mu Delhi became empty because of this migration to such an extent that ther no dog to bark. The Sulfan helped them with means to effect migration arrival at Deogir, men of delicate temperament underwent many han' When he issued another order for return to Delhi, eminent men returned small number due to death at Deogir. He then issued an order for collect: army for copper coinage. He ordered coins to be minted in the mint. house of an unbeliever turned into a mint. It could not be distinguished coins of the mint. They took advantage of it in place of gold tanka. They taxes and tribute in copper coins. They exchanged them with costly arms excellent horses. Every one of them attained to power and pomp. It was to their strength, that the power of the Muslims became weak. Transac

d Original Text, p. 890.

with foreign countries completely came to a standatill. Internal business went on for some time and stopped at another due to punishment. Value of the gold coin rose up. It had almost disappeared. The existing gold coins fetched one hundred tankas each. The copper tanka became untouchable for the hand. It became like a sea-shell. They felt a contempt for it. The Sultan felt a need to proclaim for collection of copper coins in the treasury and pay gold coins in exchange for them. It was referred to above. He then cherished a vain idea for conquest of 'Iraq and Khurasan. He started giving large sums of money from the treasury to deputationists who waited upon him from those regions. Nobles of those regions arrived in the shape of deputations, guaranteed him for the same and returned with unlimited sums of money from him in coins and kinds. What reached 'Iraq did not come back to the treasury for what it had gone out. He then thought of moving out. He ordered for collection of soldiers. Wherever there was a region, that was made empty by blow of fire. In the\* first year, they moved on to places where there remained with them a few things and a few coins. In the second year, the treasures got exhausted for what was collected was spent away. There were three hundred thousand and seventy thousand horsemen. He then conceived an idea for conquest of Karachal mountain situated between Hind and China on the road to Khurāsān. He liked its conquest. He despatched an army to it. When he entered its mountains, it turned into a war-theatre. Its residents assembled. They controlled the valley which was situated on their passage. The soldiers were hard pressed. They found no way of escape, none from them. They perished. It was an obvious loss of Delhi army. It was his good fortune that there was correspondence and contact between him and Shaikh ul-Hakikat, Imam ut-Tarikat Mawlana Shaikh Musleh ud-Din Sa'adi, may his grave be sanctified. When Sultan Muhammad died, he left no son. He had one out of three during his regime Kabul Khalifati. He died during his life. Khwaja Jahan Ahmad Ayaz died when he was at Delhi. There was son of his uncle, Firuz. He was with him. He presented himself at his death. He attended upon him during his illness. He tried for his treatment. He stood firm with claims of his bounty and training so much so that Sultan Muhammad was pleased with him and thanked him. Hence he cast his glance at him, gave him admonition and made him at the close of his life, his heir-apparent. On the day of his death, there was chaos and confusion in the camp when one fell upon the other, there was general pillage, destruction of the harim and death of children. People delayed for two days in the manzil of his death through fear of Altun Bahadur and the Mughal party and also of attack of residents of Thattha. Before the accession of Firuz Shah, the grandees decided upon separating the Mughals. They sent them away with presents in cash, things and animals, and permitted them to

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 891.

depart. Some of them requested them before travelling to let them tents of the army for defence in case of revolt. It was granted. They marched on their day and all of them came out from the camp to go to their respective places. In the meanwhile, Nawroz Karkaz, son-in-law of Narma Shirin (Tarmashirin) decided upon revolt. He enjoyed bounties of the Sultan Muhammad for two years. He got ready and joined with the Mughals. He informed them about confusion among the people. He requested them for accord in pillage. On the third day of his death, the Sultan's army marched towards Sistan on the way. return to Delhi. It was a path which was not well laid. Before they could traverse two farsakhs, a contingent was charged with to remain on back of the Mughals in face of the army and the residents of Thattha were behind it. There was looting in a fierce manner so much so that they went with women and children. Every row of the treasures remained on one side. People had not yet come to the manzil but with despair of life. Similarly, was the condition in the second journey. Great nobles such as Mawlana Shaikh Nasirud-Din Mahmud Oudhi, well known as Chiragh-i-Delhi, Makhdum Zada 'Abbasi and Shaikh ush-Shuyukh Misri etc. assembled together. They saw Firuz Shah and requested him to make amends for the people by his accession to the throne of saltunat. In like manner, tribal heads of all sections of people met him. This took place on 24th Muharram, 752 (1351).

On the second day of accession, they journeyed from the manzil with this arrangement: those who were on back of the Mughals on a side had perished or made captive. The amirs were posted in rear of the army. Those who were on back of residents of Thattha were in support of the army for plunder of baggage. They fell in hands of amirs of the rear who killed them and captured them. On the third journey, the residents pursued the party of Mughal amirs. They then captured the party of Hazāra amirs and the amirs of Altaman and the Hundred. There was neither Mughal nor Sindi. There was general security.

Sultan Abil Muzaffar Firuz Shah Son of Sipahsalar Rajab brother of Tughluk Shah,

I say, I got acquainted with a history which begins with his name. It deals with the early part of his life and his bright future more than what Diā-ud-Din Barani has given in his history. It begins with his name from Ghiyāthud-Din Balban. I do not know the name of the historian. If he had mentioned his name in the introduction to his History I should certainly have stated in his name what I have copied from him. I do not find him to be an Arab, as I say, he has not mentioned his name as is the habit of the Arabs. I

Original Text, p. 892.

doubt whether he was a Persian for in that case he would have mentioned his name as is the Persian custom and they are quite right in this. The object in so stating is that the historian has collected materials of his account with care. But the introduction is without his name. He does not mention it in accordance with their custom. In spite of it, he deserves the reward of deriving benefit from him. Good is for those who do good and more.

They were three brothers during the regime of Sultan 'Alaud-Din Khalii. They waited in deputation on him from Khurasan-Sipahsalar Rajab, Abu Bakr and Ghāzi. They were men of merit. He gave them asylum and behaved well with them. They assisted him in his reign. Ghazi stepped forth and advanced in his service. He was the eldest among brothers. He nominated him an Amir at Dipalpur. His brothers were with him. When he was confirmed in the region, he got his brother Rajab married with a daughter of Rai Ranmal, one of the chiefs who were inhabitants of the land. Dipalpur was the place for him to return to. But he did not agree to it. When the time to collect revenue came, he was strict with him and caused him trouble beyond his endurance and imprisoned him. After putting him into prison, his wife one day wept. She had a daughter with her married to him. She separated the daughter from her and asked her as to why she wept. She replied, "I weep because of harshness shown to your father because of you". When she attributed harshness to her, she felt much and said, "who prevents him from his freedom? I am pleased to marry with him". Her mother remained silent. She met her husband and informed him about the utterance of his daughter. He said to her, "Where she is pleased with her Islam, I turn to Ghazi in surrendering her." He took him a means of solicitation and conveyed to him acceptance. He was immediately released. He donned him with a robe of honour, behaved with him with leniency and made him sit by his side. His daughter had the most excellent marriage with his brother Rajab. She gave birth to Sultan of the age Firuz Shāh. Rajab died. He was seven years of age. His uncle Ghāzi looked after him and brought him up as one of his sons. When Ghazi ascended the throne of saltanat, he was fourteen years of age. On the basis of it, he must have been approximately born in the year, 697 (1297-98). When Ghazi was Amir at Dipalpur. Firuz Shah presented himself with him in the mailis of Shaikh ul-Islam, Barkat ul-Anam (blessing to people), Qutb ul-Waqt Mawlana Shaikh 'Alaud-Din, grandson of the famous Qutb Mawlana Shaikh Farid ud-Din famous as Ganj-Shakar, may their graves be sanctified; there was a piece of cloth before him. He tore four and a half cubits out of it. He gave it to his uncle and ordered him to turban it with it. The remaining piece measured twenty-seven cubits. It was for Muhammad son of Ghazi. He ordered him

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 893,

similarly. He gave to Firuz forty cubits for a turban and gave him tidings of saltanat. Period of reign of every one of them was equivalent to number of cubits of cloth given to each one of them. During Amirship also, one day, they presented themselves in the majlis of Mawlana Shaikh Sharaf ud-Din Pānipati, may his grave be sanctified. He ordered to bring a tray of eatables. When they saw him, the Shaikh said, "Those who are present should see three sultans eating from a tray. One day, Firuz Shāh before becoming a sultan, presented himself in the majlis of pivot of God-fearing persons, blessing to pure, pious men, Qutbud Dunya Wad-Din, Mawlana Shaikh Nizam ud-Din Awliya may his grave be sanctified. He asked him, "What's your name." He replied, "Kamal ud-Din." He replied, "Wad-Duniya. It was his name in childhood.

Husam Khan narrated in his history; when Muhammad Shah died, Mawlana, the famous Qutb Nașir ud-Din Chiragh-i-Dehli, may his grave be sanctified visited Firuz Shah and said to him. "I intend to take an oath of allegiance for you after the fashion of the pious Khalifas. Stretch out your hand for kissing." He stretched it. He took an oath of fealty and said, "I beg forty years for you." Diaud-Din said: The Sultan came to Siwastan and staved there for certain days. He looked to the muluk and the amirs as well as sections of the people with favour and granted them robes of honour and gifts, He particularised the people of Siwastān with favours and regard and fixed allowances and stipends for them. He returned properties to men of property and looked with favour at those who waited in deputation on Muhammed Shah in calamities for obligation. Many deputations waited on him. He sent them away with good presents and helped them on their journey. He then returned from Siwastan. When he encamped at the maidan of Bhakkar, he first of all visited holy tombs and distributed money in alms. He then favoured its pious men and imams with presents and wished its residents well. He advanced to Uchch. He had lot of good in it. He repaired the Khanka-building of Shaikh Jamalud-Din at Uchch. He then came to Indiras. He extorted villages and gardens from their lords. During his stay there, the leading scholars of Multan and all men of turbans etc. came to see him. He received them with approbation, fulfilled their needs and behaved well with them. He then marched from Uchch. On the way, he received a report about Khwaja Jahan Ahmad Ayas that he seated a child connecting him in lineage from Muhammad Shah, on the throne and took an oath of allegiance for him. He was surprised at this step on his part inspite of his being perfectly wise. He said addressing his muluk that Ahmad Ayaz was not a man of war. With his age, he has depraved it. He has grown up in our day. I never saw a bow, any day, in his hand as well as riding a horse unless the horse was a draft-horse. What made him behave in this?

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 894.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text. p. 895.

? No battle-field can be ascribed to him. I feel askamed as to what made take this step. He is weak and aged. I do not know who is that person ose case he has taken up and that too in age like this. He sees, is wise and rs that this path is not for him. His forefathers did not take such a step. en he alighted at Dipalpur, he halted there for some days to give rest to ses and supply them with fodder. He then proceeded further. When he stoached Ajodhan, he went to pay a visit to the mausoleum of its Qutb wlana Shaikh Farid Ganj-Shakar. He assembled all members of his bouse-I and then dispersed. He showed special favour to children of Shaikh aud-Din and fixed for them what villages were endowed to them in old days which were seized by the rulers. In addition, he granted them many rards. It was his dignified behaviour. He then marched by the shore of r of Sind to come to Delhi. Husam Khan said: When he alighted at aswati, Mawiana Shaikh Naşirud-Din Charagh-i-Delhi said to him, "Upto : Is my limit. Till today, you were in my neighbourhood and charge. Now are in the boundary of Shaikh of the time Khwaia Bakhtiyar. Outb-i-Dehli, 7 his grave be sanctified. You seek his permission for entry into his limit." paused and wrote to him seeking his permission at the instruction of the ve-mentioned Qutb. His Holiness accepted what was said by Nasir ud-Din ing "He who returned to us and entered into our limit, he was in our 'hbourhood sharing our favour." On his encampment at Fathabad. Vazir qbul Khan Jahan came with those who had taken shelter with him. Malek ogha Mir Mahan etc arrived from Delhi and received his favour. In like nner, Malek Mahmud Beg titled in Firuzi regime as Sher Khan came with contingent of Sanām and Sāmāna. On his march from Hānai, Shaikh ia Bistāmi, Nathu Sudhal and a party of helpers of Ahmad Ayaz arrived -headed and hand-kerchiefs round their necks with humility requesting giveness for themselves. Just after them came Ahmad Ayaz bare-headed, an-shaven. People of Hind do not say shaven except when involved in this nner and his hand-kerchief round his neck. He stood at the door of the an's pavilion demoted from that honour which he enjoyed as one of the three his promised region to this disgrace which was for a man like him, concealed ith for him. The Sultan summoned him. When he kissed the ground with state, he said to him, "You were not from men of this conduct with your , your wisdom, perfection of all your qualities. What led you to take this which is not worthy of you? and against one who addresses you?" He lied, "Whatever good I did till today, that was due to my good fortune, shadow is vanishing for me. Hence I am as you see me." He stood with uette. When he encamped at a distance of three farsakhs, residents of erent sections of Delhi came out to welcome him. He entered Delhi in the

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 896.

last ten days of Jamadi II of the year. He alighted in the palace and sat on the state throne. There was general ceremony of oath taking for allegiance. He showed favour to all sections of people except Ahmad Ayaz and Natthu Sodhal. These two were in their class. They were to be punished. They had left their families and followers in their estates. When he firmly established himself in the Saltanat, he revived Sharl'at and acted with justice and obligation. He prospered that was laid waste during the regions of Muhammad Shah. There was general security and prosperity. He augmented buildings such as the Jame 'Masjid at Delhi, madresa, fort at Firuzābad on the river Jun ( Jamna ). The Sultān was a builder. He dug out many canals and made water flow to its destined place. There were plenty of flowering plants, fruit-yielding trees and a Firuzi reservoir outside Delhi: Dia ud-Din said: There was no blood-shed except of five amirs in the early part of accession and eleven or twelve others. His son Shādi Khān was Wakil. He loved his son Fatch Khan. He had other children. Brother of the Sultan Malek ush-Sharf Ibrahim b. Rajab was appointed as Barbak. His brother Malek Qutbud-Din son of Rajab was Amir-ul-Umara. Ulugh Qatlugh A'zam Humayun Kabul Khan Jahan was Vazir. Tatar Khan Bahadur was from among the great muluk. The great Sayyid Jahan al-Karamsi was the Chief Justice and Malek ul-Umarā Sayyid Sharaf ul-Mulk was the Nā'ib Wakil while Sayful Mulk Tirmidi was Amir-i-Shikar. Bashir Imad ul-Mulk from among the mamālik was Sahib-i-Diwan ul-'Ard. Malek Shikār Beg was Mir-i-'Ard while Iftikbar ul-Mulk ai-Mustawfi was Na'ib of Gujarat. They were mamālik. From among his muluk, Amir Qutligh grandson of Tamar Amir Taman al-Changizi. He was his special favourite. During the regime of Balban, he was one of those who were present at the martyrdom of Muhammad Sultan Oaan son of Balban from the side of Changiz. He entered Hind, became a Muslim and was specially favoured by Muhammad Shah b. Tughluk. He used\* to address him as Amir Mihān. Similar was the case with Amir Ahmad Iqbāl. They were from among those who sat with the Sultan in that age. The incident of Akdala took place in the early part of his accession wherein he gained a victory. Diaud-Din's History ends with the victory of Akdala. He had collected materials for it. It was named Tabakāt-i-Firuashāhi. He thanked God for his efforts. After that, I have copied from the History of Husam Khan.

Ḥusām Khān said: Abul Fath b. Abi Bakr b. Abi Rabi 'Salmāni arrived with a Khil'at of the Khalifa from al-Mu'taḍid Abil Fath b. Abi Bakr b. al-Mustakfi, the Egyptian Khalifa in Zilhajj of 756 (1355). Envoy of the Sultān Shamsud-Din Bhangara arrived with it. He was appointed Sultān. In like manner, the envoy of 'Alāud-Din Bahman Shāh was appointed as Sultān. He went to Zafarābād for the death of Shams ud-Din Bhangara in 760 (1358-59) Shaikh

Original Text. p. 897.

Zada Bistami came with a Khil'at from Nasir Hasan b. Malek Nasir Muhammad b. Malek Mansur Guide of Sultan of Egypt. He enpobled him and titled him as A'zam ul-Mulk. Muhammad Shah had banished him from his kingdom. . Sayyid Rasuldar came with an envoy of Sikandar. The Sultan had expelled him to Lakhnawati. He returned from it to Jaunpur. He proceeded Chachnagar in Bihar in 761 (1350-60) leaving his brother Outb ud-Din at Karra Manekpur. He sacked Songhira and Shakar Khan was left there. Rai Sudhan brought his daughter with her suckling mother. He adopted her as his daughter and came to the river Mahindari in search of Rai of Chachnagar, lord of Banāras. He fied to Telang. Wāhagdi evinced his loyalty to him with many jewels and three hundred elephants. He marched to Padmavati and Medawaki. These two places are situated with dense jungles with luxuriance of trees and water. They are at no time without elephants. I mean for hunting purpose and they are sufficient for two halkas (He hunted twenty elephants). He returned to Karra. His brother Outbud-Din met him and he arranged a worthy feast. He then marched to Delhi and arrived there in Rajab of 762 (1361). He then went to the canal of Salim and branched it to Sirbind. He built a fort and named it Firuzābād. He then conquered Nagarkot. He then Vesieged Thattha whose ruler was Jam. He felt scarcity of provisions and so he returned to Gujarat. Nizām ul-Mulk Nekņām b. Amir Hasan b. Amir Mirān al-Mustawfi\* was its governor. He dismissed him for his fault to supply provisions. Zafar Khān was appointed as its governor. He then returned to Thattha and descended upon it and conquered it peacefully. Its ruler Jam met him. He returned his kingdom to him. Khan Jahan Maqbul, the Vazir died in 772 (1370-71). Zafar Khān, the Amir of Gujarat died in 773 (1371). His son was substituted in his place. His father's title was bestowed upon him. Fateh Khan b. Firuz Shāh died on 13th Safar, 777 (1374-75). He was born in the early part of his kingdom. Shams ud-Din Dāmghani hired Gujarāt for forty lakhs of tankas, more than usual and hundred halkas of elephants, four hundred Habashi mamluk and one hundred Arab horses. Zafar Khān son of Zafar remained intact its Amir as before. Shams ud-Din became helpless to fulfil the contract. He harassed people for revenue and transgreased limit whereupon one of the Amirs of the Hundred Shaikh Malek b. Fakhrud-Din assailed him and killed him and sent his head to Delhi. Malek Mufarrah Sultani was appointed to his monopoly. The Sultan marched to Etawah and Akbula in 779 (1377). After a war and flight, the ruler Rāi Sabirā Dharan made his submission. Firuz built a fort. He marched to Samana in 781 (1379). Malek Kabul Kiran was there. He advanced to the Santur mountains. Rai Sarmur hastened to make preparations to give him essential things. He returned from him. He marched to Kanthir in 782 (1380). Its ruler was Rai Kharkar. He practised tyranny in

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 898.

his own way. He killed the 'amil of Badaun. When he came to it, he subjected it to plunder. He then appointed Malek Kabul Kiran to it and advanced to Sanbal in search of Rai Kharker. He fled away from him to the region of Mahikan situated amidst the mountains of Payah Kamaun. He pansed and despatched Malek Khitab ul-Afghan against him. From this year to the year 787 (1385), the Sultan frequented these places. He built fort at Siwali and named it Firuzpur for establishment of control over it. It was the last fort which he built during his reign. Khan Jahan son of Khan Jahan Vazir son of the Vazir enjoyed an elevated rank with the Sultan. He had become the Sultan to a great extent due to feebleness and advancement in age. He managed the affairs and his word was accepted by him. It so happened that he requested him about his son Muhammad Khan son of Firuz Shah and Darya Khan son of Zafar Khān, Nā'ib of Gujarat. A party of men decided upon expulsion. He\* used to verify it. He ordered for their captivity. Muhammad Khan learnt about it. He deemed it necessary to remain within doors. Darya Khan fell in captivity at the house of the Vazir. Muhammad Khan saw his father for his release and said to him, "Khan Jahan has resolved upon disappointing me in favour of Kafur on account of which he acted with Khidr Khan to prepare the way for saltanat for himself and expel your son from it. If you are pleased with expulsion, so far so good. I am before you." He meditated and said to him, "Take his office. Do with him what he begins to do with you." He came out with those who were with him and thronged at his house. When he found himself defeated, he killed Darya Khan and came out fighting. He received a wound. He fied to his house and entered it through a door and came out from another door and fled to Mewat to take refuge with Koka Chauhan. Muhammad Khan sacked his house, captured the amirs who helped him and killed them at the gate of the palace. The Sultan appointed him as Vazir. He then renounced saltanat and ordered him to ascend the throne and designated him as Muhammad Shah. He seceded from the palace and felt loyalty during the regime of Tughluk Shāh son of Fateh Khān son of Firuz Shah. An account of warning follows in the account of Muhammad Shah. It took place on 18th Ramadan, 790 (1388). He became the ruler and Firuz died.

Sultan Nasir ud-Din Muhammad Shah son of Firux Shah

During the life time of his father, Muḥammad Shāh son of Firuz Shāh sat on the throne of saltanat at Delhi in the month of Sha'bān of 789 (1386-87). He did not remove any one from his mansab which he held during the regime of his father. He treated them with greater regard than during his father's regime. Khān Jahān son of Khān Jahān had taken shelter with Kokā Chauhān, ruler of

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text. p. 899.

He sent Malek Ya'qub Sikander Khan to him in search of him. He dered himself to him with iron-chains. He cut off his head and sent it to He was then ordered to proceed to Guiarat as its Na'ib. Muhammad marched to Koh Payah Sirmur in 790 (1388). He learnt from Malek rah that Sikander Khan, Na'ib of Gujarat was killed. He showed no\* of regret for his murder and devoted himself to his love of sport and play. It afflicted for his blood when there arose an uproar from muluk of the mamāliks. They were one hundred thousand or more. Samāud-Din and I ud-Din were the leaders while the rest were their followers. This happenen Firuz Shah was alive. They assembled around Firuz Shah and capture palace. Muhammad Shah heard about it. He returned to Delbi. he came in front of the palace, he sent Zahirud-Din Lahori to them asken to give up opposition. They pelted stones at him. Muhammad Shāh i on to the palace. They came out with Firuz Shah in resistance. They upported by him but he was under their thumb on account of his weak-He saw who were with his son Muhammad Shah from among the soldiers. sheathed their swords, dismounted from their horses and came under him. mmad Shah turned from them with his special men and went out of Delhi. Firuzi mamaliks sacked his house. They obliged their master for his ition and that happened. Firuz Shah died, may mercy of God be on him. andson succeeded to the throne. Dia ud-Din said in his eulogy:

On one trunk of a hundred vast armies like the sun
Decoration of this verdant circle is due to you.
You are not in need of an army because through fortune
You are keeper of army camp for this strong structure.
Of Rustam's victory, nay, of awe of Faramurz
Of Jamshid's splendour, nay, of Kayumarth intelligence
'Ali like, you are a red lion
You are from king of Badakhshan, nay, a descendant of blanket,
On Imperial throne and on reclining cushion of honour
Be of Elijah-permanence for you are paradise-faced.

d-Din connected him with Badakhshan and then with Khurasan.

Sultan Tughluq Shah son of Fatch Khan son of Firuz Shah

ughluq Shāh son of Fateh Khān son of Firuz Shāh sat on the throne of and father during his life-time at Delhi. He nominated Firuzi Firuz Khān to Vizārat. Ghiyath ud-Din Khudāwand Zāda became Head of the lārs (armour-bearers). Malek Firuz son of 'Ali became Head of the is (body-guards). Malek Mufarrah was nominated to Gujarat as he was

Original Text, p. 900.

before. He was titled Rästi Khän. Chiefs of mamäliks decided upon murder of Amir Husain—son-in-law of Firuz Shäh for his daughter—for his inclination towards Muḥammad Shäh as their leader. Firuz, head of the Jändäris and Bahädur Mewäti were sent against Muḥammad Shäh. He went to Sirmur. They pursued him and thence to Baknäri, Sakhet and Nagarkot and halted there.\* Tughluq Shäh engrossed himself in his lustful pursuits; disturbances arose in different parts of the kingdom. He imprisoned his brother Abu Bakr Shäh son of Zafar Khän son of Firuz Shäh. Ruknud-Din, nā'ib Wazir gave him his accord. They attacked his palace and killed Malek Mubārak. Shouts were raised. Tughluq Shāh learnt about it. The Vazir was by his side. Both came out from another door of the palace. They fell in hands of the retinue who came with their heads to Abi Bakr. This incident took place on 11th Şafar, 791 (1388-89). He ruled for six months and eighteen days.

Sulfan Abi Bakr Shah son of Zafar Khan son of Firuz Shah

Abu Bakr Shah son of Zafar Khan son of Firuz Shah sat on the throne of saltanat at Delhi. He nominated the above mentioned Ruknud-Din as Vazir. After a short while, he became suspicious of him and killed him. After his murder, he learnt from Amir of Samana that Sultan Shah had killed its 'amil and sent his head to Nagarkot. He then learnt about Muhammad Shāh that he went to Samana and sat there on the throne of saltanat. When such was the case, a party of Dehalvi amirs joined him. He moved from Sāmāna towards Delhi with twenty thousand horse and the same number of foot. On his encampment at the famous palace of Jahan Numa, the number of his horsemen rose up to fifty thousand. The Firuzi mamālik then assembled at Firuzābād around Abi Bakr Shah. Bahadur Mahir joined them. They marched out for war. Muhammad Shah took to his heels with one thousand horse to Doab. He sent his son Humayun Khan and Dia ul-Mulk Abu Reja to Samana. A party of amirs including Malek Sarwar, Police officer of the cities, Malek ush-Shark Nāşir ul-Mulk Amir of Multan, Khwas ul-Mulk, Amir of Bihar, Hisam ul-Mulk, Amir of Oudh, Sarwar Khwaja Jahan and Raij i-Rayan Sabz Rai. All of them numbered fifty thousand horse. Muhammad Shah wrote to all regions for murder of Firuzia wherever found and whoever they be. It happened. Revolt spread and disturbance made its appearance. Humāyun Khān marched from Sāmāna with a large army in the month of Muharram, 792 ( 1390 ) and encamped at the † rivulet of Panipat. His soldiers sacked all localities adjacent to Delhi. 'Imad ul-Mulk Shahin issued forth for war with him. Humayun Khan set out for Sāmāna. Abu Bakr Shāh marched to Chahitra in the month of Jamādi I of the year. Muhammad Shah was there. He was with strength and power due to assemblage of above mentioned amirs. They seigned inadvertence from him as

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 901.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 902.

they were at a distance from Delhi. He then started alone with four thousand horsemen in all haste to Delhi. When he halted at the gate of Badāun, soldiers of the nauba did not allow him to enter the city. He ordered to burn the gate and entered the city and stayed in the government house for some days. When Abu Bakr Shāh returned, he went out to Chahitra. In the meantime, Wakil ul-Mulk Mubashshir Rajab came to him—he was from among the greatest Firuzi Muluk and loyal—and petitioned him to return to him and surrender to him who was in concert with the Firuzis. Abā Bakr Shāh received a report of what he said. He was seized with fear on march from Delhi to Kotla. He entrusted the charge of city to 'Imād ul-Mulk Shāhin. Kotla was for the Amir Bahādur Māhir. When he came out from the city, Malek Mubashshir Rajab wrote to Muḥammad Shāh to send for him. He raised the canopy over head of his son Khān Khānān and marched to Delhi.

Return of Nāşirud-Din Mahmud Shah to his capital.

He entered the capital on 19th Ramadan, 792 (1389-90) and alighted in the Firuzi Palace and sat on the throne of saltanat. He donned Malek Mubashshir Rajab with a Khil'at of Vazirship and designated him as Islām Khān. All the Firuzi muluk and mamālik entered into his submission. They then became his antagonists and joined with Abi Bakr Shāh. The rest among them in the city announced after three days. Blood was spilled. Humāyun Khān came from Sāmāna to Delhi. He then marched to Kotla. The two armies encountered at Mahindwāri. It resulted in defeat of Abi Bakr Shāh. He garrisoned himself in Kotla. Humāyun Khān had descended upon it. He then went to him for amnesty. Bahādur Māhir was with him. He returned with them to Delhi. On the way, he ordered for murder of Abi Bakr Shāh. It took place in that year. Civil war subsided because of this incident of murder.

In 793 (1390), he received a report of harassment to cultivators and disloyalty of the 'Āmil of Gujarat, Mufarreh Rāsti Khān. He chose A'zam-i-Humāyun Zafar Khān son of Wajih ul-Mulk Tānk as the Nā'ib for Gujarat. He proceeded to it. As stated before, the will of God was for his saltanat. His efforts were in accord with destiny. Its fortune was with his descendants. I compiled this History "Zafar ul-Wāleh b-Muzaffar wa Ālehi" (Excellent victories of Muzaffar and his descendants), in two daftars. The first Daftar deals with the Sulfāns of Gujarat. He who reads it, will get acquainted with information about it. The second Daftar contains history of establishment of Islām at Delhi and its conqueror and those who were after him. The author is particularly interested in Zafar Khān for his being sent to Gujarat, may mercy of God be on all of them. I recite the opening chapter of the Holy Qurān and prayer for good and more from him who gets acquainted with what I have

collected for me, for him, for them and for the Muslims. God accepts it from him.

In 794 (1391), men on the frontiers and infidel rebels became dominant. Muqarrab ul-Mulk was sent against them. When he came to Kanawj, he deceived them by soft talk. They assembled around him whereupon he killed them all and returned. In 795 (1392), Muhammad Shāh marched to Mewāt and sacked it. He turned to Chitara. He fell ill there. He heard a report of antagonism of Bahādur Māhir. He therefore returned to Mewāt. When he descended upon Kotla, Bahādur Māhir came out from it, fought and returned to it defeated. The residents wielded sword and so he (Bahādur) fled from it to Chhar while Muḥammad Shāh returned to Chitara. He rebuilt it and named it Muḥammadābād on becoming a sultān. His disease became serious. He sent Humāyun Khān to Lahore. At the first manzil, he received news of the death of his father, Muḥammad Shāh. He returned to Muḥammadābād. His death took place on 17th Rabi I, 796 (1393). He ruled for five years and two months. Sultān Humāyun son of Muḥammad Shāh

Humāyun Khān son of Muhammad Shāh ascended the throne at Muḥammadābād. He did not change 'Āmils of his father. He died on 5th Jamādi I of the year. He ruled for two months and eighteen days.

Sultān Nāṣir ud-Din Maḥmud son of Muḥammad son of Firuz son of Rajab, brother of Ghāzi Khurāsāni

On the death of his brother, Nasir ud-Din Mahmud son of Muhammad\* Shah son of Firuz Shah sat on the throne of his kingdom at Delhi. He retained districts in the hands of 'Amils. He raised the rank of Mallu Firuzi and titled him Iqbal Khan. He nominated him Vazir. The Firuzis did not approve of it. They assembled together in opposition. Among the opponent Firuzis, there was Sa'acat Khan who held the hand of Nusrat Khan son of Fateh Khan son of Firuz Shāh and made him a Sultān at Firuzābād in 797 (1394). The cause of disapproval of the Firuzis was that when Iqbal Khan was nominated as Vazir, he became independent in issue of order. Mahmud was only a king in name. In like manner, Sa'ādat Khān issued order alone. The Fituzis did not like this. They attacked him at his house. He saved his life by departing to Delhi. There was a distance of four farsakhs between it and Firuzabad. When they passed by him, they decided upon the Vazirship of Muhammad Khān son of Zafar Khan, lord of Gujarat and titled him Tatar Khan. He was brave and intrepid. During his Vazirship, he held territory between Delhi and Firuzābād by means of sword. The Sultan held Doab, Sanbhal, Panipat, Jahajir, Rohtak while the muluk had dominated over the region. Delhi and its neighbourhood

Original Text, p. 904.

alone remained for Mahmud Iqbal Khan had no grace to conciliate the muluk. Hence revolts continued and desolation extended. Masnad ul-'Ali Khidr Khan was at Multan Iqbal Khan dismissed him in favour of his brother Sarang Khan Firuzi. When Sarang Khan encamped at its environs, the mamalik of Khidr Khan joined him. They were powerful. Khidr had to vacate giving place to Sarang Khan. That happened in the year 798 (1395). In 799 (1396), Sarang Khan occupied Samana and expelled its Amir 'Alam Khan to Firuzabad. He sent Nuşrat Shah with him to the succour of Tatar Khan. They recovered it by means of sword. In 800 (1397), Iqbal Khan won over the 'Amil of Panipat during the absence of Tatar Khan. It belonged to Tatar Khan. He sent a contingent, occupied it and gained a scendancy over that which was possessed by Tatar Khan including animals, and wealth. On account of this, Tatar Khan sought permission from Nuşrat Shah and came to his father in Gujarat to seek aid of army to invade Delhi. That happened as detailed in Daftar one.

The event of Malek Tājud Din, lord of Multan took place in Rabi'I of this year. Amir ul-Kabir Pir Muhammad son of Amir ul-Kabir Timur, Şāḥib-i-Qirān Mughal came to Uchch from Khurāsān and laid siege to it. He received a\* report of it from Tajud-Din about his arrival for relief of residents of Uchch with forty thousand horse. He marched from Uchch to him and left him when he crossed the river Bias and found him. It was a fierce battle which resulted in the defeat of Multan army. Many of them were carried away by water while crossing it on return. In 801 (1398), Amir Timur, Şāhib-i-Qirān came to Delhi. There was general desolation in the region of Delhi-massacre, capture, pillage, arson on a vast scale. During the days of Mallu Iqbal Khan, there was constant antagonism. Hence only Delhi with adjoining territory remained more or less in his hand. For help to his brother Sarang Khan, there did not remain any friend for him in distant places. It was from Sarang that he ruled over Multan and Sind. He persecuted Amir Shaikhā Khokhar. He occupied his territory lying between Multan and Lahore. Shaikha Khokhar went out of Hind to Persia, met Amir Timur and brought him for conquest of Delhi. He served as a guide to him and entered with him through nearest roads and made it most easy for him. When the Amir alighted between Doab, number of his killed reached fifty thousand. He marched from it. Stink of killed and captured spread all over the river Jamna. He crossed the river Jamna in Jamadi 'I of the year and alighted outside Firuzābād. In the meanwhile, he was in the palace of Jahan Numa which he appeared to him an elevated heap of dust on the side of Delhi. He returned to his camp. He ordered to blow the trumpet for preparation of war. He rode and led the advance-guard. He infuriated the elephants. Banners of contingents waved, the amir of the

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, 905.

advanced-guard came out. Both the armies encountered. The Mughai gained a victory. They returned with a number of elephants. They were toothless. On the third day of his alightment, Amir Timur assembled his grandees and soldiers and instructed them for war and urged them for mutual assistance. His son, Pir Muhammad stood near him. He said, "More than one hundred thousands of Hindi captives are in our army. The Mughals had made them slaves and perhaps, being of the same race, they might originate mischief at a favourable opportunity. What is the order?" He waited a while. He then raised his head and said, "The announcer should make a proclamation in the camp that any one who has a Hindi captive in his hand should kill him by his hand. He who neglected it or turned from his murder by giving him to another person, his blood would be spilled." That was done. It is related from Nāşir\* ud-Din 'Umar -he. was from among men of the turbans-saying "Because of clemency, I do not know that I killed a sparrow till the day of proclamation. I had fifteen of them with me. I kept them. I did not know how should I kill a human being. I will sacrifice my life for them. I said, I strike my sword and I transgress the limit among them once or many times. There is no power and no strength except that of God. On Saturday, 7th of the month of the year Amir Timur rode out for war. He stood in the centre. On the right wing was his son Muhammad Jahangir and with him were the amirs Shaikh Nur ud-Din, Sulaimān Shāh, Yādgār Barlās, Kamari Yasāwal, Timur Khwāja Wāk Bukā and Midrāb. On the left wing were Sultan Mahmud Khan, Sultan Husain, Khalil Sultan, Jahan Shah, Shaikh Arsalan. In the vanguard were Rustam, Shah Malek and Aliahdad. Nāşir ud-Din Mahmud Shah came out for war from Delhi. Mallu Ikbal Khan was in the centre. Malek Mu'inud-Din and Malek Khan Multāni was on the right wing while Khatāi Khān and Amir 'Ali were posted on the left wing. The total army of Delhi that day consisted of 10,000 horse, 20,000 or 40,000 thousand foot, and 120 elephants. In Zafarnāma of Sharaf ud-Din 'Ali Yazdi it is stated there were 40,000 horse; Matla' us-Sa'dain, half of it; Tabakāt-i-Bahādurshāhi, 4000; in the Ḥabib us-Siyar, it is stated that the Mughals were frightened of them because of facing horses and elephants who were like mountains. They shone lightening-like with steel plates as if they were polished mirrors. Those plates were connected with nets of rings of furbished iron. There were daggers in hollow fixtures carrying canine teeth for piercing. They were lightened upon them for stabbing in war. There were heavy chains carried on trunks in length of eubils to strike with on right and left. Khwandmir, author of Habib us-Siyar said: When both the armies faced each other, lightenings of plates and swords shone forth. Amir Timur stood at a particular place heeding to the amir who was moving out from men of the turbans joking with them saying "Oh lords! Where is your post today?"

Original Text, 906.

Khwāja Afdal ud-Din son of Mawlānā Jalāl al-Kashi and Mawlānā 'Abdul-Jabbār son of al-Kāḍi Luqmān ud-Din al-Khwārazmi said to him, "Our post is with the armour" and gave a proof with this verse: \*

If Mars has fright in heart
It makes head-gear of Venus a garment.

The two armies then encountered each other, horsemen fought with one another: Iqbal Khan retreated and turned towards Delhi. Nasir ud-Din was with him. At the approach of night, he went with him to Baran. Amir Timur alighted at Hawd-i-Firuzi. Khwāja Fadl ul-lāh Bijli, the Vazir at Delhi sought amnesty and went to him. He said to him inspite of sack "None should enter into the Treasury. If it is to be amnesty for those who pay a fixed amount of money, I guarantee this service." The Amir replied, "Request those who sit at the gate of the city for prevention of horses and retinue." He ordered for it. He took the drum with him, placed it at gate of the city and beat the naubat. The city was decorated after announcement of amnesty. He entered with the Vazir for obtainment of Mawlana Jalal ul-Islam. The Amir sat alone at the Hawd and convened a Majlis of Ten. He placed the saddle on the sides of the Hawd in accordance with the Mughal custom in case of victory. In the meanwhile, a man entered to bay sugar-candy. He was followed by another man. They followed one after another in succession and crowded at the shop-keeper. He weighed in haste for one, two, three. They thronged at the shop and those who were present followed one after another in succession. They subjected the shop to plunder. News spread in the camp that pillage had taken place in the city. They rushed like a flood. The Amirs of the Nauba became helpless to stop them from entering the city. People took part into it, plundered houses and markets and sword played its part from each side. Arson was committed by infidels of the city. They were overtaken by disappointment when they closed doors for women-folk. Hence they resorted to fire to burn houses with those who were inside them. They assailed with swords the followers of the Amir. Thus they killed and were killed. Pillage continued in the city for eighteen days. The least number of Mughal captives was twenty. Metals and cloth (destroyed) could not be counted. The Amir took an oath of their children from tradesmen and artisans and of those whom they wished according to the Chingizi custom in case of pillage. The city was laid waste due to arson and it became extinct. The Khutha was recited on Friday, 10th of the month of the year in his name and in the name of his son Muhammad Sultan. Nasirud-Din 'Umar was the Khatib (reciter of the Khutba). Amir Timur marched † to Wazirābād on 26th of the month of the year. An envoy of the lord of Lahore. Bahadur came to him. He took his lunch with all consisting of fowls and eggs.

Original Text, 907.

They had heart to heart talk about Tughluq Shah. Bahadur then came for lunch with his son Kaltash. He was ennobled with favour. He then marched to Dawlatabad, and to Meerat. Mawlana AhmadaThanesari and Rai Safi were at Meerat. He ordered for Jawhar and came out with his son. They killed and were killed. There was general massacre of men of the fort. He then ordered for its destruction and moved on to the river Ganges and killed a large number of heretics on its sides. He thence proceeded to Siwalik and Kotla. When he alighted in the vicinity of Mayla village, an envoy of Shah Sikander, lord of Kashmir came to him. When he crossed the river Jammu, he left behind some soldiers in ambush and marched on. Local people including its ruler Rai Jammu saw then moving. They came out of ambuscade and captured Rai lammu and came with him to the Amir who presented Islam to him. He embraced Islam and chose to journey with him. On Tuesday, 27th of the month, he had alighted beneath a viaduct where the roads met. He granted permission to his children. They resolved upon (proceeding) to their respective localities. He permitted those Hindi Amirs who had accompanied him to return to their respective places. Khidr Khān was among them. He was granted Multan. He then nominated him as Deputy of the army in its march. He looked after the baggage of those who had trusted him. He marched on Monday, last day of Jamādi II to his kingdom.

In 802 (1399), Nuşrat Shah returned to Delhi. 'Adil Khan, lord of Meerat and Shihāb Khān, lord of Mewāt and Malek Almās, lord of Doāb joined him. Delhi was empty of the Mughals who were left behind by the Amir Timur. They were involved in an epidemic. Many of them died within less than a month. Supply of provisions was cut off. It was heard that it was done by local men. They left Delhi at an opportune time. They took their way to Kābul with an intention for deliverance. Nusrat Shah was nearby. He entered Delhi. Ikbal Khān heard about his arrival. He sent Shihāb Khān from his side for his defence. On his encampment outside Baran, the local unbelievers made a nightattack on him. He achieved martyrdom. It so chanced that Iqbal Khan came in its wake to Baran. He regained what was his such as horses, elephants and baggage. It was cold booty for him sufficient for war. He collected it, mourned him and marched to Delhi. Nuşrat Shāh came out to Mewāt and Ikbāl Khān \* entered the city. From that period, the amirs established independent power. Every one with power and pomp became a sulfan in his kingdom. They resembled feudal kings in their respective principalities. In Gujarāt, the Khutba was recited in the name of Muzaffar Shah; at Dipalpur and Multan in the name of Khidr Khān; at Kālpi and Mahuh in the name of Mahmud Khān son of Malek Firuz; at Qanawj, Delwarah, Jaunpur, Bharaich and Bihār in the name

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 909.

of Khwaja Jahan Sultan ush. Sharq; at Malwa in the name of Dilawar Khan; at Samana, Ajodhan in the name of Alam Khan. Such was the case throughout Hind.

In 803 (1400), the incident of Taghi Khan Turki took place. He decided upon conquest of Dipalpur. Khidr Khan marched against him. He took to his heels. He then alighted on the frontiers of Ajodhan. 'Alam Khan was there. That very night, 'Alam Khan made a night-attack and killed him.

Mahmud Shāh b. Muhammad came to Delhi in 804 (1401). Iqbāl Khān met him and entered the capital with him. The Khutba continued in his name while the kingdom was for Iqbal Khan. He had entered Gujarat during Timurian invasion. Zafar Khān had met him. He was then his Nā'ib in the kingdom. He asked him to stay for some time in Gujarat till passing of hardship of the invasion. He did not see to that. Present time helped him. He moved with him for a send-off beyond his frontiers to the frontier of Mandu. He then returned to Naharwala. The Khutba and the Sikka were in the name of Mahmud Shah. On his arrival at Mandu, Hoshang met him and he travelled with him in etiquette of muluk for their master and tarried there till he heard return of Iqbal Khan to Delhi. He went to him and remained with him for fear of sudden calamity weighed heavy upon him. He marched with him to Jaunpur for its conquest by tongue and not by heart. It was a stratagem for defence to the enemy which would suffice his purpose. He descended upon him when the brother of Mubarak Shah. Ibrahim Shah was there. He staved for some days. He then parted with him on an excuse and returned to Delhi. Mahmud only apologised. His meeting was definitely with a purpose. He remained like a guest for some days. He begged for help but did not get it from his people. He bade him adieu and left Jaunpur for Kanawi. Shahzada al-Marwi was its Amir on behalf of Ibrahim. He ordered him for its surrender. He did it and went to Jaunpur. Mahmud remained contented with Kanawi and lived there.

Muqaddam Narsingh Deo conquered Gwalior in 805 (1402) and died. His\* heir was his son, Bahrām Deo son of Narsingh Deo.

Iqbal Khan descended upon Gwalior in 806 (1403). A battle took place at Dholpur. Bahram Deo fled to the fort and garrisoned himself in it. Iqbal Khan left an Amir in the region and returned. Iqbal Khan descended upon Kanawj in 807 (1404) and besieged his patron. He returned a loser with disappointment.

Iqbal Khan marched to Samana in 808 (1406). Bahram Khan Turki was there. Peace was concluded. He returned to Multan. On his encampment at

Original Text, p. 910.

Ajodhan, Khidr Khān met him. After a hard war, fate turned its face with a wound. Khidr Khān pursued him, captured him, cut off his head and sent it to Fatehpur. Ikhtiyār Khān was his Nā'ib at Delhi while Dāwood Khān was from among the amirs. When he heard about the event, he sent for Maḥmud Shāh. He left Kanawj for Delhi and sat on throne of the kingdom. Bahādur Māhir and Iqlim Khān joined with him.

Ibrāhim Shāh conquered Kanawj in 809 (1407-08). Tatār Khān son of Sārang Khān Firuzi joined him.

Ibrahim conquered Sanbhal on alightment in the same year. It belonged to Asad Khān Ludi to whom Tatār Khān had given it. He then marched to Delhi and encamped and encamped on shore of the Jamna. Zafar Khān, lord of Gujarat was at Mandu. He marched for succour of Maḥmud towards Delhi. Ibrāhim learnt about it. He returned to Jaunpur.

Sultān Mahmud invaded the fort of Baran in 810 (1408-09). Marjān, mamluk of Iqbāl Khān on behalf of Ibrāhim was there. He killed him after a victory. Mahmud then marched from Baran to Sanbhal with Asad Khān Ludi in attendance. Tatār Khān received a repost of it. He abandoned it, came out and it became Asad Khān's as it was.

Khidr Khān came to Fathābād in this year. Dawlat Khān learnt about it. He was at Sāmāna. He marched against him and crossed the river Jamna. He had left his amirs behind him. Bahrām Khān Turki was one of them. He was the first in loyalty to Khidr Khān. He joined him. Khidr Khān marched to Fatehpur along with those who had assembled around him. Afterwards, he conquered every region which belonged to Mahmud Shāh except Doāb.

Khidr Khān alighted at Fatehabād in this year. Malek Tuhfa was sent against Doāb. After its conquest, Khidr Khān marched to Firuzābād. Ikhtiyār Khān was there. After alightment on it, the fort alone remained for cutting off caravans of supply of provisions. He returned from it to Fatehpur.

Mahmud had attacked it in 811 (1409). He made peace on loyalty. He employed his son. The son was with Mahmud. He defended the city but he did not meet him so he abandoned it. Khidr Khān assailed Siri. Nāṣirud-Din Mahmud was there. Khidr Khān then returned for blockade of supply to Siri. In 812 (1409-10), Dawlat Khān and Bahrām Khān met on the river Jamna when Khidr Khān arrived there. Both of them met him, joined his party and marched with him to Fatehpur. Bahrām Khān had formerly joined Khidr Khān, he then returned to Dawlat Khān. But now both of them joined him and became one.

<sup>911\*</sup> Original Text, p. .

Khidr Khān assailed Nārnol in 814,(1411). Bahādur Māhir titled Iqlim an was there.

In 815 (1412), Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmud went to Kanthir for hunting vls and wild animals. He then perched a hawk on his hand and approached game and hunted it. He was surprised in its movements in flight high up descending with the game and caught it in its claws. He then sported with cheetah and played with its implements of hunting. He returned with plenty ame to Siri. On his return, he suffered from sciatica which became serious he died in the year. With his death terminated the saltanat of the dynasty Ghāzi Tughluq Shāh of Badakhshān, Khurāsān in the region of Hind. mālik of his grandfather gained ascendancy over him. He had raised him to status of Wizārat and titled him Iqbāl Khān. The Timuri invasion took ice during his days. The cause of it was the bad policy of Iqbāl Khān and tiality for his brother Sārang Khān. The muluk in different parts of the igdom established independent power. He died. His Khutba was recited in this and his coins were current. Saltanat of his grand-father Ghāzi lasted from 1 (1321) to end of the year 815 (1412).

### tan Dawlat Khan

After the death of Nāsir ud-Din Maḥmud, Dawlat Khān sat on the throne his Kingdom at Siri. The historian Ḥusām Khān had not mentioned him ough he had knowledge of him. He turned from Khiḍr Khān to him. His try into Siri coincided with his death. Destiny did not help him. He died 816 (1413).

Khiḍr Khān invaded Siri in this year. Dawlat Khān garrisoned himself thin it. There was constant war when he came out for amnesty. Khiḍr Khān nquered Siri. He then imprisoned him at Firuzābād. The historian did not that he came out from it: Every one did not obtain happiness that he ight.

Original Text, p. 912.

#### CHAPTER XXVIII

# The Sayyids

Rise of the star of kingdom and government of People of the House. First the Salfanat of Khidr Khan son of Sayyid Mardan, titled Rayat-i-A'la

The kingdom is not permanent for any one. It comes through the benesicence of God at His convenience. He takes it away without any cause for it. He has made the causes which are known to men of wisdom, to take it away with its goodness and refrains from what is evil. With efforts, it is in apology\* from servants. For that purpose, Mallu's good luck turned into bad luck. There is information from the historian in the invasion of Timur. He did not mention any one except Khidr Khan. Amir Timur specially favoured him by appointing him Amir, on his return, at Multan. God punished Mallu for its owner. He thought him worthy of deserving help. He therefore helped him in the year by reaching him to saltanat. He (Khidr Khān) sat on the throne at Siri on 17th Rabi'I, 817 (1414-15). He is Khidr Khan son of Sayyid Mardan Nasir ul-Mulk titled Rayat-i-A'la. Good news about it, is hinted at before in the account of Sultan Muzaffar of Gujarat in his case by Qutb-i-Rabbani Mawlana Jalal ud-Din Makhdum-i-Jahanian, may his grave be sanctified. Both of them met and ate pink in his majlis. It was for his father Mardan Naşir ul-Mulk during the regime of Firuz Shab son of Rajab of Multan. When he died there, his son Shaikh b. Mardan ruled it. He died and so his brother, Sulaiman b. Mardan ruled it. He died and so Khidr Khan b. Mardan ruled it. He continued to be Amir till Iqbāl Khān removed him in favour of Sārang Khān. Were it not for the attack of mamalik upon him in unity, he would not have abandoned it. He met Amir Timur, Sāḥib-i-Qirān, after his conquest of the capital and accompanied him on his return to a viaduct. He permitted people of Hind to return, when he favoured him among them by award of Multan. He settled there. Iqbal Khan became his enemy. He fought with him and killed him. Iqbal Khan was the cause of departure of saltanat from the house of Ghāzi. It was Khidr Khān and his father and his grand-father who nurtured the house of Ghāzi. It was proper that he killed him. It was a punishment of death to him on behalf of the family. It was in the movement of Iqbal to suppress revolt by death of heir to the kingdom, settle himself, and after an oath of allegiance, he should treat all with kindness and not exclude anyone from his bounty. He neither reproached anyone for former faults nor killed any one. He behaved well with all sections of people. He appointed his vazir

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 913.

ane whom he sent out for conquest of Doeb from Fatchäbäd. He was Malek Tuhfa. He was titled Tāj ul-Mulk. He nominated Malek Sarwar as Nāib and Khair ud-Din Jāni as Diwan ul-'Ard. Malek Mardān had adopted 'Abdur-Raḥim. He was titled 'Alā ul-Mulk and appointed as Amir of Multān."

Amir Bahrām Khān Turki died in 818 (1415-16). He had Firuzpur and Sirbind under him. He appointed his son Mubārak Khān son of Khidr Khān to their government.

In 821 (1418), he attacked Badaun which was under Mahabat Khan. He had heard about design for rebellion on the part of Ikhtiyar Khan and Qiwam Khan. He killed them on the bank of Ganga.

In 823 (1420), Särang Khan, brother of Iqbal Khan made his appearance on the frontiers of Jälandhar. He sent amirs against him. He fied from the frontiers to mountains and barren entrances. Amir Tughan granted him security. He came to him and killed him.

In 824 (1421), Khidr Khān invaded Gwālior. It belonged to its Rāi. In the midst of the siege, vazir Tuḥfa Tāj ul-Mulk died. His son Sikander was appointed vazir. Khidr Khān fell ill and so he returned by concluding peace.

Sultan Khidr Khān died on 19th Jamādi I of the year. He was a good Sultan, a Sayyid, divinely graced, clement, generous, sincere, kind, pious, brave, just, forbearing, forgiving and pure-hearted. He ruled for seven years, two months.

Sulian Mu'izzuddin Mubarak Shah son of Khidr Khan

Mu'izzuddin Mubărak Shāh son of Khiḍr Khān acceded to the throne on the day of death of his father on 19th Jamādi I at Delhi. All sections of population took an 9ath of allegiance for him. Shaikhā Khokhar returned to Hind during his regime. He was with Amir Timur at Samarqand. He then permitted him to separate and so he came to the centre of his kingdom, Tilhar in Sind. There was a fierce war between him and the lord of Kashmir, Sultān 'Ali. Sultān 'Ali was captured. It was a wonder that he gained strength through loss.

Shaikhā Khokhar made an assault on Mu'izzuddin in 825 (1422). He sent an army against him. He then marched to Tilhar. When he approached † it, he went to lofty mountains. Mu'izzuddin descended upon him and stationed the army. He then turned to Lahore which was in a desolate state due to wars. He tarried in it and reconstructed it. Malek ush-Sharq was appointed its Amir. He returned to Delhi.

He donned the robe of Vazirship on Malek ush-Sharq in 826 (1423).

<sup>\*</sup> Original Test, p. 914.

Jasrath, lord of Tilbar met him this year as well as Rāi Bhilam, lord of Jammu in the maidān. It was a fiercely fought battle in which Jasrath had an upper hand. He extended his hand of occupation of territory as far as Lahore. Sikander b. Tāj ul-Mulk Tuḥía was its Amir after Malek ush-Sharq. He encountered him in the maidān. It was a victory for Sikandar.

'Alā ul-Mulk, lord of Multān died this year. Maḥmud b. Hasan attained to its Amirship.

It was in this year that Shaikh 'Ali son of Sargatmash Mughal, lord of Kābul marched on Bhakkar and Siwastān.

Hoshang, Sultan of Mandu marched on Gwalior this year. It belonged to Mu'izzuddin. He too marched to it. Both corresponded at a manzil on the river Jital, made peace and guided each other. Every one of them marched to the centre of his kingdom.

Amir Malek ush-Sharq Rajab known as Nādira came to Multān in 830 (1427). Its Amir Maḥmud b. Ḥasan was transferred to Firuza as Amir.

Mu'izzuddin marched to Biyana in 831 (1428). He heard a report of attack of Ibrahim, lord of Jaunpur on Kalpi. Qadar Khan was its Amir on behalf of Mu'izzuddin. Mu'izzuddin journeyed from Bayana to it. He crossed the river Jamna and encamped at a place Abruli. Here he learnt that Mukhtass Khan brother of Ibrahim had alighted on the frontiers of Etawah. Malek Mahmud b. Hasan got ready to march on him. He had ten thousand horse. On receipt of this news, Mukhtass Khan returned from it to his brother. In like manner, Mahmud went to his kingdom. Ibrahim then crossed the river Jamna for Bayana. Mu'izzuddin also crossed the river. They encountered on shore at Kanthir. A war ensued between the two from the early part of the day to evening. They then maintained moderation for encamping to its side. They made peace and returned to their respective places.\*

Amir Sikander assailed Kalānaur in this year. Jasrath was there. Jasrath garrisoned himself for some days. He then came out and fought and put him to flight. There was confusion in the region as far as his centre Lāhore. Aid poured in for Sikander. He came out from Lahore, fought with him and routed him to his capital Tilhar. He returned.

Malek ush-Sharq Rajab Nādira, lord of Multān died in 832 (1429). After him, Maḥmud b-Ḥasan, titled 'Imād ul-Mulk ruled over it.

Amir Fauläz Turki attacked the fort of Tabarhind in 833 (1433) and conquered it. Malek Yusuf was sent against him from the side of saltanat. He made an assault on the fort. Fauläz played a fraud by correspondence and

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 916.

feast and acceptance of submission. His envoy came to him, sounded him and felt inadvertence. He came out from the fort and assailed him and defeated him. He did not acknowledge his authority. He then made amends for help of the saltanat. 'Imad ul-Mulk lord of Multan returned to the fort with them and attacked him. Faulaz sent a messenger for conclusion of peace and promised to come out to them with 'Imad ul-Mulk. 'Imad ul-Mulk went to him and stood at gate of the fort on a side when Faulaz met him. He took his pledge and decided to move with him. His companions forbade him. He returned to the fort fighting. He then issued forth, fought and returned to the fort and garrisoned himself. 'Imad ul-Mulk returned to Multan. Yusuf 'Ali remained hard pressing him for six months. Faulaz constantly sent for Shaikh 'Ali, lord of Kābul with an amount of money forcing him to come.

Shaikh 'Ali marched from Kābul for his succour in 834 (1430-31). Inhabitants of round-about places joined him from Hindia. Among them was the tribe of Khokhar. Malek heard about their arrival to the river Jhelum, He marched to the help of saltanat on return from the fort. The Shaikh came in their wake and encamped outside the fort. Faulaz marched to him, met him and gave him the promised amount—two lakhs of tankas. On his return to Kābul, he claimed security for confidence. He surrendered his son, and wife as hostages. He sent them with them to Kābul. He then marched from outside the fort with Fauläz in attendance. When he was in the neighbourhood of Jalandhar, he resorted to pillage and created disturbance as usual. He then laid designs against Lahore but Sikander pacified him by payment of an amount of money. He returned from him to Multan, sacked its suburbs and created too much anarchy and he made a large number of persons of round-about places \* captives. Amirs of Sulaiman Shah Afghan Ludi pursued him. Sulaiman perished in a war with the Mughal. Those who were safe, returned. Lord of Kåbul was in their wake. He then attacked Multan. Imad ul-Mulk tried for its defence but he fought for some time. There was no continuous war between them till the saltanat-help came to him under shade of standard of Majlis ul-'Ali Fateh Khan son of Abil Mujahid Muzaffar Shah, lord of Gujarat. On his arrival, 'Imad ul-Mulk waved flags, came out and fought. It was an aid in advance. It resulted in the Mughal defeat. The Hindi soldiers pursued them as far as the river Jhelum. Most of them broke swords. The rest joined, through fear of killing, with Shaikh 'Ali and got drowned in the river. Those who escaped drowning were a small number. They returned to Kābul. Mailis ul-'Ali returned with those who were with him as well as 'Imad ul-Mulk to Delhi. Khayr ud-Din Jāni was appointed at Multan.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 917.

Amir Sikander, lord of Lahore, encamped outside Jalandhar in 835 (1432). A war ensued between him and Jasrath in ferocity. Sikander was captured and Jasrath assailed Lahore which was defended by Khush Khabar, mamluk of Sikander. In the meantime, he heard about arrival of Shaikh 'Ali to Multan along with other residents in all fierceness. In like manner, Fawlaz Turki came to Taberhind. Sultan Mu'izzuddin marched to Lahore. Jasrath retreated to Tilhar with Sikander in captivity. Shaikh 'Ali withdrew himself to Barbut, Nusrat Khan was nominated Amir of Jalandhar and Lahore on behalf of the saltanat. Mu'izzuddin returned. Jasrath continued as a rebel to raise disturbance in the kingdom.

Mu'izzuddin marched to Pānipat in 836 but heard about illness of his mother while he was on the environs of Tabarhind. Amir Sarwar ul-Mulk ordered to besiege Faulāz Turki who was in the fort. He returned to Delhi. On the way, he received a report of her death. He was almost about to reach her when he paused and encamped on the river Jamna, he constructed a building and prospered the place within a short time when others built their houses following his example. He received news of Tabarhind's victory. In the wake of news, there arrived the head of Fawlāz Turki. The place was named\* Mubārakābād. He then journeyed to Tabarhind and then returned to Mubārakābād.

In 837 (1433-34), Mu'izzuddin received report of a conflict between Hoshang and Ibrāhim Sharqi in regard to Kālpi. Dahliza came out to Jaunpur. He then encamped under his cupola and tarried there for a certain period. He always rode out to the maidān of Mubārakābād. It was Friday of Rajab. He rode out for Friday prayer to it with a small number of retinue. Şadr ul-Umarā Mirān waited for an opportunity. When he settled down, the door was closed by making an unbeliever whose name was Gangu pause there. He ordered Sudhanbāl son of Kho to strike him a sword. He was free from him. Şadr ul-Umarā was in concert with Sarwar ul-Mulk. When he killed him, he sent news of it to him. Sarwar ul-Mulk entered the house of haram and came out with Muḥammad Khān son of Farid Khān son of Khiḍr Khān for saiṭanat. Mu'izzuddin ruled for thirteen years and three months. God the Holy alone is Permanent.

Sultan Muhammad Khidr Khan b. Farid Khan b. Khidr Khan

Rāyāt-i-'Āli Muḥammad Khidr Khān b. Farid Khān b. Khidr Khān ascended the throne at Siri. He appointed Sarwar ut-Mulk as absolute Nā'ib. He did what he wished for those who killed and got him appointed. During

Original Text, p. 918.

118 -

his office as Na'ib, there were unceasing revolts among the amirs for unurpation of power. The amirs besieged him for murder in Siri. The Sultan was externally with him while internally he was with the amirs. In spite of this, Sarwar ul-Mulk was always on guard against him. It so chanced that one day he saw the Sultan in company of unbelievers who were generally in conflict with those in whom he had confidence. He collected them in a house and ordered to kill all of them including Sarwar ul-Mulk. He sent the retinue. They came with Sadr ul-Umara and he ordered him to be crucified at the palace-gate. He opened the gate of the fort for amirs. They entered the city and pursued the nobles of Sarwar ul-Mulk, and his followers. He collected them in captivity and chains, including Sudharan Gangu Khatri. The Sultan was in search of him, They then passed with them by the mansoleum of Mu'izzuddin Mubarak Shah and killed those who committed evil of crime of murder at its gate. He then cut off the head of Malek Mubariz the Kotwal at the gate of Red Palace. In like\* manner, Malek Hoshiyar, slave of Sarwar ul-Mulk was done to death. Kamal ul-Mulk and his follower-amirs and sections of state people came forward for oath of allegiance. Kamāl-ul-Mulk was bestowed upon the title of Kamāl Khan and appointed as Vazir.

The Sultan marched to Mubarakpur in 838 (1434-35) where amirs of the frontier assembled. They included 'Imad ul-Mulk, Islam Khan, and Majlis-i-'Ali Sayyid Khan. When he encamped on the outskirts of Multan, he donned Khan-Khanan with Amirship and made him an absolute amir and returned to Siri.

In 844 (1440-41), Sultan Mahmud Khalji encamped at a distance of half a farsakh from Delhi and the Sultan (of Delhi) garrisoned himself. Bahlol b. Ludi Afghan was his amir. He ordered him to fight with the Khalji and raised his position to that of Amir ul-Umara of the army. He was young, intrepid, strong, alert, horseman and brave. He issued forth from Delhi and encamped outside of it. The Khalji, on hearing about his encampment, faced him. He tarried in his pavilion and encountered him with his son Ghiyathuddin b. Mahmud and his brother Qadr Khan. He stood in the midst of two armies that day. In the evening, every one of them returned to his pavilion. With the rise of dawn, the envoy of Khidr Khan came for peace. It so happened that the Khalji saw a dream that night to the effect that there was disturbance in parts of his kingdom. He took a lesson from it. He was aggrieved thereby. He made peace with the envoy and immediately marched for retreat to his kingdom while Bahlol pursued him to some farsakhs and seized his baggage which was left behind. He returned and was ennobled with favour of the sultan and

Original Text, p. 919.

his regard. He raised his dignity by adopting him as his son, doubled his territory and got to the top of his rank in the royal palace.

In 845 (1441), the Sultan marched to Samana and granted Dipalpur and Lahore to Bahlol. He sent him against Jasrath and returned to Delhi. When Bahlol entered into his frontiers, Jasrath sent a message to him saying, "there is a sword between me and this saltanat. I had come fighting from the aide of my enemies. I am at war with you side by side. For you I am a helper and peaceful. If he goes away through your good luck, his name will not be mentioned from pulpits. It is not for you as to who helps. I am for you as you love me." The messenger came frequently between them. His request was clear. He made peace and returned to Dipalpur. He began to collect men of his kind and became powerful. In the meantime, the 'Amils extorted revenue with severity. They had imprisoned many cultivators. Many of them migrated to other territory. Thus hearts of the followers had scattered. The Amir of Bayana had gone over to the Khalji. The saltanat had weakened because of dispersion.

In the year 847 (1443-44), Sultan Khidr Khan died. He ruled for ten years and two months.

Sultan 'Aldud-Din b. Muḥammad Khidr Khān b. Farid Khān b. Khidr Khān b. Mardān Naiir ul-Mulk, Rāyāt-i-'Alā.

'Alaud-Din b. Muhammad Khidr Khan b. Farid Khan b. Khidr Khan ascended the throne at Delhi. He cared for personal comforts, relied upon others for his policy and was more negligent than his father. His administrative organisation got confused without delay.

'Alaud-Din marched to Bayana in 880 (1475). He heard that the ruler of Jaunpur had come for resistance to him. He returned to Delhi. Husam Khan was his Vazir who reproached him to return.

In 881 (1476), 'Alāud-Din marched to Badāun smarting under reproach of his Vazir to him. The Vazir said to him, "Time does not bear separation from the capital. Badāun is not the place of residence to those who are near Delhi. Do not return from the wish of one who advises." He left behind mamluks, one of whom was Amir in the city while the other one was on the precincts. He marched of his own accord towards it and gave himself up to his pleasures. Within a short time, the mamaluks disagreed among themselves. There were mutual discords and dissensaions and massacre. The Vazir also fought. 'Alāud-Din was much affection by the action of Vazir. He became fearful of his future life with him. Bahlol heard about what happened at Delhi between

Original Test, p. 920,

the Vasir and the Sultan, at Dipalpur. He seized an opportunity and wrote to the Vazir, "It has reached me that you have become anxious about your future. Let us exchange our places. Let Delhi be mine." He replied to that. Bahloi came to Delhi and got ascendancy over it. He left behind his confidential men but the Vazir had come out prior to his arrival. He then wrote to 'Alaud-Din, "I had made amends for disturbed state of affairs in time". He returned to Dipalpur, 'Alaud-Din learnt about the Vazir's departure and his arrival. He was devoid of worthiness to rule the kingdom. It was sad. He wrote in helplessness a reply. "I had called you myself with meekness and comfort. You are my brother when my father adopted you as his son by giving me Badaun and the rest of territory to you." When Bablol got acquainted with exact state of affairs, he sent to him a mandate of Badaun. He wrote to him, "what territory I have from your father and your self in addition to Delhi is in my hand. I will not renounce your loyalty and the mamluk and what they owned from their master. He marched from Dipalpur to Delhi. After that, 'Alaud-Din died in a year.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 921.

## CHAPTER XXIX

#### The Ludis

Elevation of banner of fortune of the time with the Saltanat of Bahlol b. Ludi Afghan

It is within memory of an intelligent man and ken of a literary pe that that there is nothing static but of obvious dynamism through cong causes for thinking and seeing with the eye. Trust in God does not come it way of relation with causes. It does not raise the curtain from heart like '. has come and upon what it depends. In the tradition of the Prophet, peace and benediction of God be on him, it is related that a desert 'Arab ' to the Prophet. He asked him "where is your camel?" He replied. " I ] left it free to the care of God." The Prophet said, "Tie it up and leave the trust in God." There are potent causes for the saltanat of Bahlol. are primarily concerned with the will of God. What is other than that fro is the march of the Khalji (dynamism) and frigidity (staticism) from F Khān: again it is retreat of Khidr from advancement of steps to him advancement of Bahlol to desired object; further, Khidr Khan adopted Bi as a son. He advanced during his regime one day and controlled power di the regime of 'Alaud-Din the next day. As stated above, 'Alaud-Din dive himself of saltanat during his life and remained contented with Badaun v he had. He lived there till his death. Bahlol son of Ludi Afghan sat or throne during his life at Delhi in 885 (1480). All the 'Alais assembled ar. him. In the early part of his reign, all the amirs evinced their loyalty to At the time of Khalji's invasion, Khidr Khan garrisoned himself and inv Bahlol with Khil'at of Amirship of the amirs' soldiers and ordered him for campment outside Delhi in opposition to him. No where did the Khali an equal to himself. He encountered his son Ghiyathuddin. On the de battle, he stood in the midst of it. On the next day the Khalji accepted t of peace. Buhlol rose high in the esteem of Khidr Khan. He adopted hi his son, raised him in status and bestowed Dipalpur upon him. During regime of 'Alaud-Din, he was at the topmost position with the decline of of 'Alaud-Din in the saltanat due to his engrossment in pleasures and imme in his time of getting what emerged from his faculty of thinking. On Bal invasion of Tilhar and fighting with its ruler Jasrath, he rendered wha help he could. He returned from it but inadvertence of 'Alaud-Din summ him and watched his fall. Negligence did harm to one whose temperament

Original Text, p. 922.

not capable of guidance and which brought him nearer his falt. It so chanced that the Vazir was pressed for action due to disturbed state of affairs. He renounced allegiance and the split widered which needed a patch. The Vasir took an action in this risky affair. Bahlol seized the opportunity and invited him to himself and he became a roler in that year. He augmented size of his army, particularly by men of his own race and gave them what he had in his hand. They respected him and he gained strength, He gave them clothes. He gave them horses. They loved him. They held him in esteem in their hearts. He gained in strength from amirs of the nauba. They were supplied with horses as well as clothes. The daughter of 'Aland-Din son of Muhammad Khān was married to Sultān Husain, ruler of Jaunpur. For that purpose, he was obsessed with conquest of his father's territory. He repeatedly came (for attack) but ultimately Bahlol gained a victory. At the last time, Bahlol pursued bim to Jaunpur and conquered it. He stationed his son Barik Shah there. It was mentioned in the first daftar of my history "Zafar al-Wälih b. Muzaffar wa Alehi." Sikander had become the independent ruler at Jaunpur. Bahlol died in 904 (1498).

Sultan Sikander son of Bahlol

Sikander son of Bahlol Afghān ascended the throne of saltanat. He was a brave and obedient sultān. He conquered Bengal. He recovered what was lost by Delhi. He made assaults and conquered. He always moved with his harim. When he issued forth from Delhi for conquest, the amirs remained loyal to him till he returned. He assailed the fort of Antari, conquered it by force and resorted to general massacre in it and its adjoining places. He then attacked Gwalior. Its ruler Mānsingh came out to fight with him frequently but he was defeated every time. Sikander then marched to Agra and encamped at its river and made it his capital. He constantly waged war with Gwalior. The fort remained with Mansingh during his life time while the rest of his territory was conquered by Sikander.

In 923 (1577), Sikander suffered from the disease of corroding nicer. When he was despaired of life, he, of his own accord, invested his son Ibrahim with authority in the saltanat. Oath of allegiance was completed during his life. He then died at the close of the year. He was powerful, delightful, intrepid, and severely harsh.

I now narrate anecdotes full of grief and sorrow. These are not in history but they are of hearsay account. I heard some Afghans saying about Sikander at Nāsik Trimbak in the Dekkan. It was the capital of Sayf ul-Muluk Miftāḥ Ulugh Khāni Habashi. Hè was one of the amirs of Murtaḍā Nizām Shāh

Original Text, p. 923.

768

famous as Bahri. I was a hajib and dabir (secretary) to the Amir. One day, there was a mention of power of Sikander son of Bahlol in course of conversa. tion." I heard an aged men saying who was at Agra during his regime. He heard about his strength that a genii who could not be overpowered in strength made his appearance in his harim (seraglis). He would not go unless he promised to part company with his wife. According to a report, he would stake his kingdom but not his wife. Sikander was well disposed to his wife. He would visit her in her turn. In the meantime, he disapproved of what he saw of her yellow colour, [change of body, want of joy, and her grief after enjoyment. He asked her the cause of it. She replied, " If the questioner limits his turn. I will not disapprove of the question.". He then said with increased clarity "I will not exceed my turn." She said, "At the time of your coming to me, I always see one who enters upon me in your likeness, in your dress, with your caress, chicanery and sits in your manner. He does not transgress his habit in your movements and postures. He goes away. I do not see him except at such an hour. I am in pains for that. He was amazed and resolved upon to see him. In the evening, he wore his armour and lay in wait for him. He was as reported by her to him. He came out from his hiding place and stabbed him with a poniard. He then grappled with him and took out his dagger to stab him. The jinn said to him, "Is this better than that? I\* promise you not to come back to your wife. I will not enter your city as a foreigner. I inform you about that." So saying, he stood up and never returned to his wife. He always spoke about it. The narrator said that it so chanced that Babur arrived with a party of Kalandars to outskirts of Agra. The jinn informed him about him and his house. Sikander went to him and alighted at the place of Kalandars. When Babur saw him as a fortunate man, he held him in esteem and regarded him great in his heart. He connived at him. He was among the Kalandars like one of them. He approached Sikander from his party and sat near Babur on information of the jinn in his qualities and clothes. He began conversation with him by asking his name, as to who he was, whence he had come and where he would go. He did not speak the truth in anything in his reply. Sikander smiled and named him. He said, "Yes. You are the guest, you are worthy, you are welcome. You are experienced. I am so and so. This is my capital. I have no power over you. You are pious. For you from me is what you love." He then turned to the party of Kalandars and made them intimate by his speech. He said to them, "I had ordered a feast for you and I request you to accept it." He ordered to spread the carpet, a shade, eatables, drinks, fruits, sweets of different kinds, various kinds of perfumes, and flowers. He then went to his quarters. The

Original Text, p. 924.

stor said: When he disappeared from sight, Bibur stood up and went on way. He said to his companions, "Every one of you is against its ruler way today. The promised place of meeting is that who lives. The ator said: When Bäbur came to Kābul, he said to his companions, saw Sikander. He is more than what I heard about him. Under these emstances, there is no way to his kingdom.

#### în Ibrahim b. Sikander b. Bahlol Ludi

Ibrahim b. Sikander b. Bahlol Ludi Afghan sat on the throne of saltanat ne city of Agra. Sikander had given his son Jalal ud-Din Jaunpur, raised canopy over his head and permitted him the Khutba and the Sikka during ife-time. When Ibrahim became the Sultan, he divested him of saltanat\* aunpur and conquered it. He conquered Gwalior during his regime leaving a ion of territory in the hands of its ruler Vikramaditya. After a short while, irty of amira became his antagonists. He killed some of them, imprisoned n and dismissed them. Those who feared him, decided to summon his uncle ım Khān son of Bahlol from Gujarat and nominate him as Sultān. It has n stated in the account of Muzaffar Shah in the first daftar. He accepted invitation with Muzaffari help. He met Babur, ruler of Kabul on the skirts of Agra. He said to him that perhaps he would need help of men. e were his five hundred Mughals who would be with him. He replied, here is aversion between the Mughals and the Afghans. They would not e and would not defend. I request you to wait till I get power." Babur I, " If it happens as is your counsel, you are excused. They defend themes as I know." Bäbur bade them farewell and 'Alam Khan journeyed to hi and he met him on its outskirts. They sought him. When they saw the rhals, they intended to rebuke him for the information. They said to him turn. He so ordered them. They refused to do so as they had girded ds. They then got ready and stood in the maidan and hesitated for an . They then turned to go back to Babur. Such is the information of the rali. 'Ālām Khān agreed to summon them; they raised a canopy over head lizam, titled him 'Alaud-Din and entered Delhi in perfect order.

# län 'Alāud-Din son of Bahlol Afghan

'Alaud-Din 'Alam Khan son of Bahlol b. Ludi Afghan sat on the throne at hi on 10th Zilhajj, 931 (1524). They then marched against Sultan Ibrahim was in Agra. Ibrahim got a report of it. He made amends for the causes liscord between him and the amirs, laid restrictions on what had passed and ided for them to the amirs of Delhi. He corresponded with them and did as pleased. Opinions divided and 'Alaud-Din looked for a party of them at

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 925.

every mansil. His judgment get confused. He was overpowered by fear-from rest of them who were with him. He came out of his pavilion at mid-night, alone singly. He was on a very fast running home and went to Babur, met him and informed him of what had happened with him. He stood a security for belp. He got ready and proceeded to Agra with nine thousand Afghan horse: Sultan Ibrahim received him with eighty thousand horse and seventeen hundred elephants. At dawn with the departure of night, Babur ordered for array of banners and waving of flags, heaping up of baggage of one after another with horse and foot on right and left. He marched to a side. Ibrahim then made his appearance from behind. It was a gathering in the neighbourhood of Pānipat. In the morning, Ibrāhim intended for array of war-carts and elephants in chain to be posted in front with boxes of fire-muskets (naphtha) on them. The Mughal vanguard made its appearance from the side of war-carts. Muskets began to be discharged. The elephants startled; they turned against friends, collided with horses in chains and striking them with kicks. Babur made his appearance from a side. It was the work of decrees of God on Ibrahim. He perished under blows of elephants and horses falling one upon another. Elephants were in chains in rings. It was due to a startle of elephants standing in row after row. They passed on those who were behind kicked them and pounded flesh, muscles, blood and intestines into dough. The number of those who perished with Ibrahim beneath feet, of amirs was forty-three and 35,000 horse. The enemy also killed a large number. 'Alaud-Din son of Bahlol met Băbur but the historian Husâm Khân does not mention his condition after Bābur's entry into Delhi in 932 (1525).

Original Text, p. 926.

# CHAPTER XXX

1.

### The Mughals

Zahir ud-Din Muhammad Babur, the Mughal son of Timur Gurgan

Zahirud-Din Muḥammad Bābur b. Sultān 'Umar Shaikh b. Sultān Abu Sa'ced b. Sultān Muḥammad Mirzā b. Mirān Shāh b. Amir Timur Gurgān Ṣāḥib-i-Qirān, sat on the throne of salţanat at Delhi. He was born on 6th 'Muḥarram, 888 (1483)

The noble king was born on 6th Muharram Chronogram of his birth was also Shash (sixth) Muharram.

He was a rarity in his own way. Khwandmir narrates in his Habib us-Siyar that Shaikh Bahādur was in prosperous circumstances in the early part of his life. He was at Andjan, his capital. One day, he climbed up a turret. There was a bath-room. He fell from it and died. It happened in Sha'ban, 800 (1404). His son Zahir ud-Din Muhammad Babur sat upon his throne. In event of a war between Muhammad Khān Shaibāni and Sultān 'Ali Mirzā outside Samarqand, Khwāja Abul Makārim and the citizens were in favour of surrendering Samarqand to Babur. They wrote to him to come at such and such a time of night. Bābur arrived and Abul Makārim opened the city-gate for him in inadvertence of the Uzbek and admitted him. There were more than five hundred men in the city. They killed all of them and Babur sat on his ancestral throne at Samarqand. Muhammad Shaibani learnt about it. He returned from Samarqand in 906 (1500). Bābur had vacated Samarqand in a war with the Uzbek but now he permitted his army of Andjan to return to it. After a short while, the Uzbek Khan came back and made an assault on Samarqand. Babur retreated to Andjan and the Uzbek Khan made his entry into Samarqand. He established his authority in Transoxiana. He sent an army against Andjan. War and pillage continued between him and Babur for several years. When power of the Uzbek gained in strength, Babur marched from Andjan to Tirmidh and the Uzbek entered Andjan. Muhammad Baqir was the Amir of Tirmidh. He met Bābur who consulted him for war with the Uzbek. He replied, "Derive benefit from what you see of wars in the beginning, be polite with time, retire from it to a side and wait for an opportunity." Both of them agreed and journeyed towards Kābul. Their passage lay on Kunduz. Khusraw Shah was its ruler. When he came to it, Khusraw Shah came out, met him, treated him as a guest and gave him guidance. In spite of it, he made him a captive, overpowered him with what was present with him.

Original Text, 927.

Muhammad Bagir advised him for flight from him before he puts him in captivity and makes a demand of what is not with him. That happened. Babur came to Kābul. Amir Muḥammad Muqim son of Amir Zun Nun was its Amir.\* He requested amnesty. He was seized with dismay from the beginning. He moved with what he had to Qandahār. Bābur entered the fort and conquered the city and its suburbs. It was a peaceful victory in 910 (1504). In the early part of 912 (1506), he received a report of Khan Uzbek's assault on Balkh and Herat. The rulers of these places were Badi'uz-Zaman and Muzaffar Husain respectively. They were rulers of half to half territory while the Khutba was recited for both of them. They had to face the invasion of the Uzbek and most of the sons of Sultan Husain Mirza. But he did not leave behind him except one or two. Such was the case with the army. On their assembling, Babur marched to Herat, met them and they all issued forth with a vast army for defence against the Uzbek. They agreed for a short while They then differ in views. They withdrew to Herat and their unity broke up and did not meet afterwards. Babur returned to Kabul.

Muhammad Zamān b. Badi'uz-Zamān b. Sulţān Husain Mirzā invaded Bulkh in 913 (1507). Kiwām Beg was there. He wrote to Bābur for surrender of Balkh to him and to come to him. Qanbar Beg arrived and he surrendered the fort. Qiwām Beg went to Kābul. In the meanwhile, Muḥammad Zamān had encamped on the outskirts of Limkar at the invitation of Amin, Beg Amir Sharghān. He was extremely negligent. Jābukā Beg Muqbil fought with Amir of Balkh. They had come to straits. He fought and defended personally. His horse slipped, nay his fate and he fell a captive. The Amir recognized his status and treated him with great respect. He proceeded to Kabul. When he came to Bābur, he showed him regard and bestowed on him Balkh and its dependencies. Herāt and the whole of Khurāsān belonged to Shāh Ismā'il in the early part of his entry. Bābur corresponded with him. He then sought permission for conquest of portion adjoining his region. He permitted him for conquest of Transoxiana.

In 917 (1511), Bābur marched to Mawarā un-Nahr with the army of Zābulistān and a fierce battle took place between him and Mirzā Sultān Uzbek in the vicinity of Badakhshān. Bābur came out victorious. He killed the Uzbek amirs such as Hamz Sultān, Mahdi Sultān and conquered places which belonged to the Uzbek such as the fort of Shādmān, Khatlān, Kunduz and Baklān. He wrote to Shah Ismā'il Qazilbāsh about these victories and requested him for help to conquer Samarkand with acceptance of Khutba and Sikka in †

Original Text, 928.

his name. He showed sympathy towards him and belped him with Amir Ahmad Beg Sufi Ughly, and Amir Shah Rukh Beg Afshar. Muhammad Timur Sultan Uzbek was the Amir at Samargand 'Abdulla Khan Uzbek was Amir at Bukhārā. When both of them heard about his arrival and with help of the Shah, they fled to Turkestan. Babur entered Samarqand and sat on the throne of his forefathers and he recited the Khutba in the name of Shāh Ismā'il Qazilbāsh and impressed coins in his name. He wrote to him for victory. Khutba and sikka. He dictated similar matter to his amir also with care for loyalty. The Shah sent to him a robe of honour worthy of him with his envoy. He authorised him to rule over Samarqund and Bukhara while he authorised Khān Mirzā for the fort of Shādmān, Khatlān and Badakhshān. Whereupon, Amir Ahmad Beg and Amir Shāh Rukh returned to Herāt and Bābur sent message with them. The envoy Muhammad Khān Aishak Āgā came back with the reply of Bäbur that he was extremely pleased for his kindness to him. He connected it to the movement of attack and the effect of his speech. The Shah sent, from his side, one who would control Transoxiana. He was the great Amir Najm Beg and with him were Zain ul-'Abedin Beg, Khwaja Kamāl-ud-Din Mahmud Sagharji and Sädat Khan Beg. In the meanwhile, there was a war on the frontiers of Herāt in which the Uzbek had won a victory. Its account is that the Uzbek heard about departure of Muhammad Timur Sultan and 'Ubaiduliah Khan to Turkastan due to help received by Babur from the Shah. They decided upon recovery of Transoxiana for them. The amirs such as Jani Beg Sultan accompanied them with followers of their tribes. When they came to Bukhārā, they encamped at its frontiers. Bābur was in the fort of Bukhārā, He got ready for war. Amir Mazid Tarkhan advised him to make necessary arrangement for the fort for the Uzbek would attack with all his might. He immediately went out with those soldiers who were present with him. The Uzbek deceived him by abandonment of resistance and withdrawal from him to a distance of one or two manzils. Babur got puffed up with lustre of his sword and regarded the enemy weak for their retreat. He hastily rushed upon them. They were in their armours by way of caution. When he approached them. they retreated and came face to face with him. It was a fierce battle which resulted in the flight of Babur to Bukhara. They attacked Bukhara, he fled to Samarqand. They entered Samarqand and assaulted it. He took to his heels and took refuge in a fort. They entered Samarqand and behaved well with \* residents and cultivators. It happened in 918 (1512). Najm Beg got intelligence of it. He sent for those amirs who were on the frontiers and they responded to him. Among them was Ghiyathuddin Muhammad, lord of the fort. When he met him, he informed him about the arrival of Babur in his

Original Text, p. 930.

wake. Najm Beg received him along with those who travelled with them under his flag. Their number reached twelve thousand Qazilbash horse. They assembled in the maidan of Tang Jugiag which was also called Darband-i-Ahnin. This was an assemblage with Babur. He guided them under his usual fond method. Najm Beg then marched to Khazār where was the Uzbak Amir Ak Pawlad Sultan. Najm wrote to him for surrender of the fort and amnesty to him and favour. He opened the gate and met him. Najm ordered for his captivity and slaughter of his men. After occupation of Khāzār, he advanced to Karashi. Its Amir Shaikham Mirzā had heard what he had done to Ak Fawlad Sultan. He preferred war to safety. He had to face a vast army with his small contingent. Valour was supreme. He was captured in the battlefield. There was general massacre. Amir Ghiyathuddin Muhammad pleaded that it was not his offence but he did not plead for him. Fifteen thousand persons were killed. He then journey to Bukhārā. When he was at a distance of two farsakhs from it, he heard that Muhammad Timur Sultan, Abi Sa'eed Sultan son of Kuchunji Khan had marched from Samargand for him. He paused at his place and sent Bahram Beg Karamani to fight with them. They encamped at the fort of Ghajdawan and garrisoned themselves. Bahram Beg assaulted it, and Najm Beg was in wake of him. When he terminated to it, he encamped outside it and tarried for long. There was shortage of provisions in the army of Naim. Khwaja Kamalud-Din Mahmud joined Naim Beg. He was well acquainted with the Uzbek technic of wars for forts and in maidans. He said to him that the fort should be besieged in winter for quick victory because of sufficient supply of provisions. There were sultans who were obedient strong with contingents and cash. "It is proper to assault Karashi till winter departs. Caravans of Balkh etc. will move with provisions to your camp. The provisions will then be transferred to the fort you can then camp till approach of summer at the fort to make conquest easy for you. " In the meantime, when-Kamal ud-Din talked about assault on Karashi, Babur made his appearance in the majlis. He heard what was said. He supported him and compelled him for it. Najm replied that it would be done tomorrow. For what was said, perhaps tomorrow might not come as they knew. Next morning, the Uzbek vanguards unfurled their standards drawing their arms. It was \* because 'Ubaiduliāh Khān and Jāni Beg Sultān had heard at Bukhārā about Najm Beg's encampment at Ghajdawan and therefore they had marched to it. Muhammad Timur Sultan and Abu Sa'eed Sultan emerged from the vicinity and joined them. After assemblage, they laid designs against Najm Beg. He had shown himself in the maidan with the right and the left wings. Babur had fixed a veil to restrict help to one who needed it. Bahram Beg was Amir of the

Original Text, p. 931.

iest wing. Amir of Uzbek right wing attacked him with hundred horse and killed him. The Uzbek contingent then assaulted the army of 'Irāq and Āzarbaijān. They sied being pursued by the army of Khurāsān. The rout was brought to a finish by Najm Beg. Bābur turned reins to Kasham of Badakhshān. Ghiyāthuddin Muḥammad was at Herāt while Kamāl-ud-Din Maḥmud was at Balkh. Hasan Beg Lillāh and Aḥmad Beg Şusi Ughli were at the bridge of Karki. Najm Beg sell a captive in the contingent of 'Ubaidullāh Khān and he was brought to him. He ordered to cut off his head, Zain ul-'Ābidin Beg was killed in the battle-field. A general massacre followed on Najm Beg being subdued. Khwāja Muḥiyuddin Yaḥyā son of Shams-ud-Din Muḥammed Maɪwārid, and Khwāja Mirjān son of Qiwām ud-Din Muḥammad son of Ustāz ul-Ma'mār came out sasely from the battle-field. They went to the mountains. The Samarqandis saw them and killed them. This incident took place on Tuesday 3rd Ramdān of the year.

In 919 (1513) Tumān Sulţān brother of Jāni Beg Sulţān came to Balkh under an order of the latter. Residents of Balkh were inclined towards him and so Kamāl ud-Din Maḥmud went to Kasham, Badakhshān and met Bābur and tarried with him till he heard that Tumān Sultān had withdrawn to Transoxiana. He went to Balkh but the residents closed the gate in his face. He turned to Khurāsān. On his encampment at Pil Chirāgh, Amir Adham al-Juzrawāni famous among retinue of Juzrawān killed him as a robbef. This happened in the early part of Rajab of the year.

In 926 (1519), Båbur went to Kandahar from Kabul. Shuja' Beg son of Zin Nun Arghun was there. He garrisoned himself and prevented his entry. Bäbur learnt about. He had encamped-death of Khan Mirza son of his uncle\* and lord of Badakhshān. He regained it and sent his son Humayun, as an independent Amir. Babur continued to stay outside Qandahar. During these days, he conquered Garmsir. Shuja' Beg wrote to Amir Khan Zanbil Beg, lord of Herāt requesting him to remove Bābur and come to wait upon Shāh Tahmasp. It so happened. Amir Khan wrote to Babur to consult Shuja' Beg as he was one of the servants and to forgive him. It was proper to leave him. Babur wrote to him that repentance at the eleventh hour of death is not acceptable. After the victory, as he did not come on his feet, he came in captivity to the gate. It is stated in Habib us-Siyar that Shujā' Beg came to Herāt during the government of Dev Sulfan at Balkh. He was imprisoned in the fort. It was legal at this time to be in the grave. He was brought on a horse at the foot of the fort. He got down to saddle of his horse by means of a cord from the turret and fled to Qandahar. Husain Beg Lillah heard about it. He ordered the army of Khurāsān to be killed. It was a day ordained as evil. He then

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 932.

prepared himself for Qandahar. Shah Rukh Beg Afshar submitted Shuja' Beg to him and apologised for his offence. He accepted the Khutba and the Sikka as well as the usages of the Imamiyas. He then returned from him. Amir Khan had hinted in his letter to Babur to pardon him as previously stated, he had fied from prison to the grave. It happened before Babur's attack on him. Babur replied what he had replied. He remained outside Qandahar till there came to him, from Durmish Khan Vazir of Abin Naşr Sam Mirza son of Shah Isma'il, lord of Khurasan Muzaffar Beg Hājib, with an order for withdrawal. Babur returned in 927 (1520). Shuja'Beg left Mawlana Baqi at Qandahar and marched with the envoy to Herat.

Khān Bāqi was under his guarantee. Bābur sent for him for surrender of the fort. Within three days of Bābur's arrival to Kābul, there came a letter of demand. He rode out within an hour to him. entered the fort being accompanied by the envoy of Herāt Tāj ul-Millat wad-Din Ḥasan Chalabi. He had come to him after his arrival from it to Kābul. He behaved well with him and permitted him to go from Qandahār. He was accompanied by his ḥājib Mirzā Kubi. He left behind his son Kāmrān. He returned to Kābul. His envoy Mirzā Quli returned from Herāt with an edict of favour, This happened in the year 928 (1521). So far the account is copied from Ḥabib us-Siyar as stated by Khwāndmir.

In 933 (1526),—this is what Husam Khan has narrated in Tabakat-i-Bahadurshahi—a battle took place between Ibrahim and Babur who conquered Delhi. He visited the saints and marched to Agra where the mother of Ibrahim and his minor children lived. She prevented his entry into the fort for some days. She then came out seeking amnesty. He sent them to Kabul and entered Agra. He did to its citizens what he did not like. In some Persian histories, the date of conquest is thus stated:

Zahirud-Din Muhammad Shāh Bābur
Of Alexander's luck and fury of Bahrām
Conquered Hind by luck.
Its date is "Fathi b-dawlat" (conquered by luck).

The Afghans assembled around Mahmud b.Sikander. The ruler of Chitor, Sanga, Udaisingh, ruler of Baker and Husain Khan, ruler of Mewat joined him. (He was from a party of Babur) Mahmud marched with one hundred and twenty thousand horse to regain Agra. Babur made a night-attack on them. They were in negligence and puffed up with vastness of the army. That party of union was dispersed. Husain Khan, Udaisingh, and Sanga fell in the battlefield. Mahmud fied towards Gujarat. It happened at the close of the year.

Original Text, p. 933.

Babur conquered Jaunpur in 934 (1527). Mahmud returned to Jaunpur in 935 (1528) but Babur turned him out. Mahmud journeyed to Nusrat Shah son of Sayyid 'Alaud-Din, ruler of Bengal. He helped him with 60,000 horse and recovered Jaunpur for him. It remained for two years under him.

Bābur died at Agra in 937 (1530). Some verses in Persian are:

Bābur Pādshāh, Qalandar-like Who showed world with facile pomp Departed leaving date of his death Pādshāh Bābur of Qalandar merit.

Abul Fadi Dahelvi writes thus about the life of Babur: Sultan Babur sat on throne of his father at Andjan on Tuesday, 5th Ramdan, 899 (1494). He was then twelve years old. During the regime of his father, Sultan Ahmad Mirzā and Sultān Mahmud Mirzā, the Uzbek Khāns made an assault on Andjān. On his accession, they departed with peace. Antagonism continued between\* him and the Chaghatai and Uzbek Sultans for twelve years. He conquered Samarqand in 903 (1497). Bāysanghar Mirza son of Sultan Mirzā was its ruler. He left it. He again conquered it in 917 (1511). The Uzbeks conquered it. He therefore, went to Badakhshān where Khusraw Shāh was its lord. He abandoned his army and then recruited it in times of necessity. He killed Baysanghar and blinded Sultan Mas'ud son of his uncle and joined with him formerly on his passing to Badakhshan, pardoned him and permitted him to choose what he had under him to carry with him and marched to Khurāsān. He then journeyed to Kābul whose ruler was Muhammad Muqim son of Zun Nun Arghun. He seized it from 'Abd ur-Razzāk Mirzā son of Ulugh Mirzā son of Sultan Abu Sa'ied Mirza son of the uncle of Babur. He heard about it and garrisoned himself. He then came out under his amnesty with what belonged to his brother Shah Beg at Qandahar and conquered Kabul peacefully at the close of Rabi' II in 910 (1504). He conquered Kilāt in 912 (1506). It was a dependency of Qandahar. In this very year, there was an earthquake in the vicinity of Kābul as far as the city. In one of these days, the tremors were felt for thirty-three times. There was general destruction of the fort and the houses, Many persons perished under the debris. In a war with the Uzbek this year, the ruler of Khurāsān, Sultan Ḥusain Mirza responded. His messenger was Sayyid Afdal b. Mir Sultan 'Ali Khwab-bin (interpreter of dreams). During bir absence from Kābul, Muḥammad Husain Mirza attacked it. Sultān Sanjar Barlas defeated him. They agreed upon appointing Khan Mirza as Amir. Mulla Bābā Sāghari, Amir Muhib Khalifa and Amir Muhammad Qasim Kohbar etc. were appointed for the fort from his side. On his return, he learnt about it,

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, 934.

Jahangir Mirza left behind baggage. He was weak for it. He hastened with a party, travelled the valley of Hindu Koh in heavy snow-fall and entered Kabul on morning of the night. In the morning, he waited upon his mother Shāh Begum who stayed with Khan Mirza. He sat before her with etiquette. He said, "If the mother shows special kindness to her son, the other son had no cause of complaint. He cannot disobey her." He then said, "I have passed\* a sleepless night; I have come from a long distance. He placed his head in the lap of the mother and slept. Then came his mother's sister (daughter of his mother's sister-Abul Fazi) Maher Nigar Khanum. He quickly woke up and met her. Those who had attacked the fort learnt about his arrival. They dispersed and the soldiers followed them. They returned to Muhammad Husain. He presented himself near him. He turned to him and pardoned him and gave him permission. He went to Khurasan. His mother's sister came with Khan Mirza and said addressing him "Oh eye of his mother! I have brought your sinning brother with me, what is your order in respect of him?" He embraced him, pardoned him and gave him the choice. Out of shame he chose to go to Qandahār for which he was granted permission. In 913 (1507), Bābur marched to Qandahār. There were wars between him and Shāh Beg Arghun and his brother Muhammad Muqim. Muhammad Husain Mirzā came to him. Khan Mirzā had invaded him. He met and returned. After conquest he left behind Nāşir Mirzā who was younger than his brother Jahangir Mirzā and returned to Kābul. He sent Shāh Beg Khān Mirzā to Badakhshān. After killing Lapir Räghi, he firmly established himself in the government of Badakhshan. It always remained under Babur. In the meantime, he wrote in 916 (1510) about murder of Shah Beg Uzbek and that his arrival was proper. Babur marched in Shawwal of the year. He conquered Samarqand in the middle of Rajab of 917 ( 1511 ). He tarried for eight months. There was a fierce war between him and 'Ubaiduliah Khan Uzbek at Kaul in Safar of 918 (1512). Babur got defeated and fled to the fort of Shadman. He was then present in the battle of Ghajdawan. Nejm Beg was killed, Babur moved on to Kabul.

# Conquest of Hind

Bābur marched to Hind four times. Firstly, in Sha'bān of the year 910 (1504) by way of Bādām Chashma and Jadaklik. He crossed Khaibar and alighted at Jam. He has written his auto-biography in the Turki language and named it "Wake'āt-i-Bāburi." He has written in it himself that when he came out from Kābul to a distance of six manzils, he reached Ādināpur and came to the frontiers of Garmsir and neighbourhood of Hind. What he had not seen, he saw in a different way—men, vegetables, plants, wild animals, birds

Original Text, p. 935.

and customs and usages. He was amazed. It was really an occasion for amazement. At the first manzil, Nasir Mirza came from Ghazni. A council of consultation was convened in respect of a crossing-place on the Indus. They unanimously decided by grace of God to cross it from the side of Kohat. They plundered it and pillaged Bangash and Bannaur. Bābur went to 'Isā Khail and encamped outside Darbela. It is a town on the bank of Indus, a dependency of Multan. Thence he paused on the environs of Kai. After traversing several manzils, he came to Ghazni. From it, he went to Kābul where he arrived in Zilhajj of the year. Secondly, he marched to Hind by way of Khurd Kabul in Jamadi I, 913 (1507). There was difference of opinion among his companions in the neighbourhood of Mandrawal, so he retreated to Kābul. Thirdly, he marched by way of Bajaur on Monday, 1st Muharram, 925 (1519). On the way, there was a severe earthquake which lasted for half astronomical hour. After the earthquake, Sultan 'Alaud-Din met him. He conquered the fort of Bajaur. Khwaja Kalan Beg son of Mawlana Muhammad Haidar was posted there as an Amir. He was one of the greatest grandees of Mirza 'Umar Shaikh. He moved onwards to Hind. He crossed the river on Thursday morning, 16th Muharram of the year and encamped near Kacha Kot. From Bahra, at a distance of seven farsakhs to the north, there is a mountain, which is named by the author of Zafarnāma as Koh-i-Jud. It was a manzil in the eastern plain of Bahra on the bank of the river Bahat. Four hundred thousand Shāhrukhis were taken from residents of Bahra as the price of amnesty. Hindu Beg was posted to its government. Shah Husain was appointed to the government of Khushab as a sort of assistance to Hindu Beg. He sent Mulla Murshid with a letter to Sultan Ibrahim Ludi, ruler of Delhi. His path lay through Lahore. For this purpose, Daulat Khan, Amir of Lahore was chosen. He returned to Babur. On Friday, 2nd Rabi' I, he received news of a birth of son to him. As he was on travel to Hind, he took it a good omen and named him Hindål. He returned to Kabul on Sunday, 11th Rabi' I. His arrival was on last day of the month. Hindu Beg abandoned Bahra on Monday, 25th Rabi' II and came to Kābul. Fourthly, Abul Fadl says: I do not know its date, He† marched from Kābul to Lahore, conquered it and returned. It appears that it is near the date of Dipalpur's conquest. It was in 930 (1523). All the affairs happened at their appointed time due to weak judgement of amirs, absence of accord on the part of brothers, conquest of Hind delayed for implementation to the fifth time. Conquest of Hind took place on Friday, 1st Şafar, 932 (1525). Kāmrān Mirza was appointed as Qandahār with an order to look after Kābul. Humāyun came from Badakshan on 17th Şafar while Khwāja Kalān Beg arrived from Ghazni on the same day. He crossed the river Sindhu on 1st Rabi' I near Kacha Kot. His army consisted of twelve thousand horse and foot as

Original Text, 936.

well as a party of tradesmen etc. He passed over the river Jhelum, Bahat, Bahlol and Chenab. He was in the expanse of Sialkot on Friday, 14th Rabi' I. On his encampment at Kalanaur, the amirs of Lahore such as Muhammad Sultan Mirzā and 'Adil Sultan etc. met him. He conquered the fort of Majut on Saturday, 24th Rabi' I. The spoils consisted of books of Ghazi Khan. Some were given to Humayun and the rest were sent to Kamran. In the course of his march from Ambala, he encamped in the expanse of a tank. He heard that Hamid Khan, governor of Hissar Firuza had advanced some manzils. He ordered Humayun to march against him. The day of his encampment was Sunday, 13th Jamadi I. On that day, Pani (Baban in Akbarnama) a Hindi amir made his submission. Humayun withdrew from Hisar-i-Firuza on Monday, 22nd of the month (21st. Akbarnama) to the tank. It was a victory for him. Babur gave Hisar-i-Firuza, its depedencies, and its adjacent places to him and indited victory in his name. He marched moving on to Delhi. He encamped in the vicinity of Sarsawa. He learnt this from Haider 'Ali, a servant of Khwaja Kalan Beg. He had marched for conquest and returned saying that Dā'ud Khan and Hatim Khan were advancing to this direction on behalf of Ibrahim with approximately six thousand horse. On Sunday, 18th Jamadi II, he ordered Chin Timur Sultan, Muhammad Sultan Mirza and all the soldiers of the right wing to encounter them. A war took place. It was a victory. Hatim Khan\* was captured with his seventy men. An order for punishment was issued. He then ordered Ustad 'Ali Quli, who was in charge of artillery to act in respect of war-carts after Turkish fashion in arrangement of chains and raw hide. Distance between two war-carts should be seven from charge of a gun at a time. This should be done within a week. He encamped in the plain of Pānipat on Thursday, last day of Jamādi II. The contingents were arrayed, war-carts were arranged in rows and gabions were in front of the centre. The left wing was fortified with ditch and trees. The right wing was firmly made stable from direction of the city. Sultan Ibrahim had encamped at a distance of six farsaklıs from Delhi with one huudred thousand horse and one thousand elephants. For seven days, the advance-guards came and went between the two armies. Sulțăn Ibrahim moved from his manzil to encounter Băbur on Friday, 8th Rajab. Similarly, Sultan Babur prepared himself for the battlefield. He personally posted himself in the centre. On the right wing of the centre, its name in the Turki language is " unak Jhul " stood Chin Timur Sulțān, Sulaiman Mirza, Amir Muhammad Kokaltash, Amir Shah Manşur Barlas, Amir Yunus 'Ali, Amir Durwish Muḥammad Sārbān and Amir 'Abdullāh Kitābdār. On the left side of the centre, which in Turki language is "Sul Ghul", were posted Amir Khalifa, Khwāja Mir Mirān Şadr, Amir Ahmadi Parwānji and Amir Tardi Beg brother of Kuch Beg, as well as Muhib 'Ali Khalifa and Mirza

Original Text p. 938

arkhan. Humayun stood with stability on the right wing. He had him Amir Khwaja Kalan Beg, Sultan Muhammad Duldi, Amir Hindu Wali Khāzin and Pir Kuli Sistāni. On the left wing, Muhammad Sultān , Mir Mehdi Khwaja, 'Adil Sultan, Junayd Barlas, Khwaja Mir Husain, Kutluk Kadam, Amir Jan Beg and Amir Muhammad Bakhshi stood with ess. In the vanguard were Khusraw Kokaltash, and Muhammad 'Ali i- Jang. Mir 'Abdul' Aziz was posted with the reserve. On the right were Wali Sharmal (Abul Fadl in the Akbarnama. The text is not clear) Malek Qasim Baba Qashqa. Flanking party on the left wing was under command of Karākuzi, Abu Muḥammad Nizabāz, Shaikh 'Ali Shaikh\* I and Tankari Quli. Both the armies moved. It was a fiercely fought which resulted in the defeat of the Afghans and Ibrahim fell dead on ide of the battle-field and no one had knowledge of it. I say, it was outy his defeat. It is said that six thousand of Sultan Ibrahim's centre were . The war began with elevation of the sun to the height of a spear till it ed from the meridian. It is difficult to enumerate number of the killed on ighan side excluding those of the centre. It was a victory for Sultan ۲.

If the sun of fortune helps
The sky assists with opportunity of time
With warmth of battle of truthful persons
I write the story
In this column of long living persons
I paint for the future generation.

ort, he entered Delhi on Wednesday, 12th of the month and he marched ta on Friday, 22nd. Humāyun was ahead, under order, on the day of y. He obtained a piece of diamond in the majlis of festivity of the ruler aq (This diamond weighed seven mithkāls. Jewellers estimate its value ivalent to half the daily expenses of the whole world. This diamond was treasury of Sultān 'Alāud-Din who had obtained it from a descendant of māditya, tāja of Gwalior. Abul Fadl). Bābur kept Delhi and Agra under ntrol. The outskirts were yet under the Afghāns. Qasim Sanbali was in rt of Sanbal; Nizām Khān was in Bayāna, Ḥasan Khān was in Mewāt; mmad Zaitun was in Dholpur; Tatār Khān was in Gwalior as well as Ig Khan; Husain Khān Nawhāni was in Rāpri Quṭb Khān was in Etāwah Khān was in Kālpi, Mabāwan adjacent to Agra was under favourite ilik of Ibrāhim. Nasir Khān Nawhani alias Karmali had Kanauj with its anding places from the river Gangā. It was a disputed territory during the e of Ibrahim. It was conquered later on with its adjoining region. He

Original Text, p. 939.

moved from the capital to two or three manzils encountered the region of Babar Khan son of Darya Khan. They had titled him Sultan Muhammad. During Babur's stay at Agra, it so chanced that it became extremely hot and hot winds began to blow. It became unbearable. Life became difficult. The merchants halted. Many companions of Babur began to fice from Hind to Kabul. He heard about the unbearable climate in presence and absence but he became indifferent as they were brought up under his care such as Ahmad Parwanchi\* and Wali Khāzin. He was surprised and amazed at their condition particularly at the condition of Khwaja Kalan Beg. He was in all battle-fields and ranks, particularly, in respect of travel to Hind, was firm in care, patience and instruction. In the meanwhile, this happened with severity after the victory. He was the first to talk about return from Hind clearly and in hints. He was elderly among those persons. Babur assembled them near himself and conciliated them with kindness by saying, "We have conquered such a vast country by efforts and hardships. Where is Kabul from us? We shall not give it up for the difficulties of water, climate, stoppage of caravans. It is not in keeping with the ambition of a conqueror and the ruler of men and the world. It should not be vacated for ease and uneasiness, joy and sorrow, luck and ill-luck, severity and slightness, hemistich: Nothing is permanent, troubles will vanish. Those of you who have decided upon parting company, there is no objection and no prevention. "Depend upon God if you are faithful". The amirs saluted him and said, "We are with you in prosperity and adversity. We have entrusted our affairs to you." He then permitted Khwaja Kalan to go to Kabul and sent gifts and presents of Hind to members of his family with him. He fixed for the region of Ghazni, Gardiz and Hazarch of Sultan Mas'udi and granted him in addition to this region, Kuhrām from Hind. He similarly granted territory of the Afghans who were loyal to him. Every time, they made sacrifices for him and they were appointed in the region. He assigned Sanbal and Hisar Firuza which was adjacent to it to Humayun. Hindu Beg was appointed as Vakil. Nawhani Afghans in the east were in preparation of a revolt with fifty thousand horse. They passed beyond Kanawj. On the west, Rānā Sāngā had conquered the fort of Kahandar which belonged to Hasan son of Makan. He held a council of men of judgment where to begin from on both the sides. They replied. "Sanga. He had conquered a fort which was of old standing. It should be taken back from him by means of correspondence. It is possible to inform him by correspondence to guage his mind and then to turn to the east." Bābur resolved to conduct this campaign in person. In the meantime, Humayun requested him to entrust that campaign to him. Humāyun marched from thet capital on Thursday, 10th Ziqa'ad and encamped at a distance of three farakhs. The great amirs who were appointed with him were Amir Shah Husain 'Adil.

Original Text, p. 940.

Sultān Muhammad Kokaltash, Amir Shah Mansur Barlas, Amir Kutluk Kadam, Amir 'Abdullah Kitabdar, Amir Wali, and Amir Jan Beg Pirkuli. They were all in the vicinity of Dholour which belonged to Muhammad Zaitun. Babar sent Ahmad Qasim Kabuli who was in the town of Chandwar to come with them to Humāyun. In like manner, he appointed amirs who had gone out to remove Qutb Khān Afghān from the frontiers of Etāwah. He played with it. Etāwah was in charge of Sayyid Mehdi Khwāja, Muhammad Sultān Mirzā, Sultān Muhammad Duldi, Muhammad 'Ali Khing-i-Jang and 'Abdul 'Aziz Mir-i-Ākhur. Humāyun marched to that direction. Naşir Khān Afghān was at Jājma. When Humayun encamped at a distance of fifteen farsakhs from him, he came out of it, crossed the Ganga and entered into the region of Kharid. Humayun pursued him and occupied that region and marched to Jauppur and prospered it with generosity and justice. On his return to the capital, nearly from Dalma, Fatch Khān Sarwāni approached him with submission. During the regime of Sultān lbrahim he bore the title of his father A'zam-i-Humāyun. He sent him in company of Syed Mehdi and Muhammad Sultan to the capital. Babar appointed him to the territory of his father. He expected title of his father. He was titled Khan Jahan. He left for his territory. Babur wrote to Humayun on his arrival to proceed to attak Rana Sanga in his limits on Wednesday, 24th Safar. Nizām Khān Afghān, ruler of Bayāna submitted himself this year and surrendered the fort. Tatar Khan, lord of Gwalior also made submission and surrender the fort. In like manner, Muhammad Zaitun surrendered Dholpur. Abul Facil said: On 16th Rabi' I of the year, mother of Sultan Ibrahim won over by bribe those who were resolved upon poisoning Sultan Babur. It became known and the order for punishment was issued. When Humayun learnt about an order for call, he appointed Shah Mir Husain and Amir Sultan Junayd Bartas as amirs of Jaunpur. He marched to Agra. He came to the Royal Presence on Sunday 3rd Rabi' II in the plain of Chahar Bagh. Babur marched against Sanga on Mondey, 9th Jamadi I. He was in the neighbourhood of Bayana, its amir Mehdi came out from the fort one day and looked to a great crowd. He returned from war to the fort and killed in one day Tan Kiz Khān.

On Thursday from his march, he encamped in the plain of Mandhakar between Agra and Sikri and thence to Fatehpur. Amir Muḥammad Sārbān pitched his pavilion near a tank in Fatehpur on a pool with plainful water. Mehdi Khwāja and all the amirs came as ordered. Sāngā was at a distance of one farsakh from Basāwar. There was a distance of eighteen farsakhs between the two armies. The advance-guards continued coming and going.

On Saturday, 13th Jamadi II 933 (1526), Babur alighted in the vicinity of Khānwa, a dependency of Bayāna at the foot of a mountain, at a distance of two farsakhs from Sāngā. Regulations of Hind: Bābur wrote in his Wāqeāt in connection with recruitment of the army that he whose income was one lakh

of tankas, he should maintain one hundred horses with him and so on. territory of Sanga yielded him ten crores. His army, therefore, should o of one hundred thousand. Added to which, there were other chiefs under as auxiliary. They were not necessarily loyal. One of such chiefs was Sil ruler of Raisin and Sarangpur. He had six thousand horses; Udaisingh had twelve thousand and Hasan Khan Mewati, ruler of Mewat twelve thou Bharmal Idari, four thousand, Narpat Hada, seven thousand, Satarwi six thousand, Narsingh Dev Chauban, four thousand, and Mahmud Khan Sultan Sikander, had no territory but ten thousand assembled around hi hope of territory which they formerly possessed. All of them helped to th tent of one hundred thousand. All told they were two hundred thousand thousand. Bäbur arrayed his army at a near distance. Bäbur posted hi in the centre. Chin Timur Sultan, Mirza Sulaiman, Khwaja Dost Kha Yunus 'Ali; Shah Mansur Barlas, Durwish Muhammad Sarban, 'Abo Kitābdār and Dost Ishaq Āqā etc. were to his right side. 'Alāud-Din b. 5 Bahlol Ludi, Shaikh Zain Khwafi, Amir Muhib 'Ali b. Nizam-ud-Din, Khalifa, Sardi Beg brother of Kuch Beg, Sher Afgan b. Kuch Beg, Ārāish Khwala Husain etc. were to his life side. Humayun was posted in comma the right wing. To his right side were Qasim Husain Sultan, Hindu Beg K Khusraw Kokaltash, Ahmad Yusuf Oghlakchi, Qiwam Beg Urdu Shah Khāzın, Karākuzi, Pir Kuli Sistāni, Khwāja Pahelwān Badakhshi and 'Ab Shakur etc. To his left side were Mir Mand, Muhammadi Kokaltash, Khy Asad Jandar. Amirs of Hind such as Khan Khanan, Dilawar Khan, Malel Karāni, Shaikh Khuran etc. were in command of the left wing. On th wing were posted Mehdi Khwaja, Muhammad Sultan Mirza, 'Adil Sul Mehdi Sultan, 'Abdul 'Aziz Mir-i-Akhur, Mir 'Ali Khing-i-Jang, Qutluq Q Karāwu), Shēh Husain Barbeki, Jan Beg Atka and the Hindi amirs. Jalāl ! Kamāl Khān son of Sultān 'Alāud-Din, 'Ali Khān Shāhzāda Karmali, 1 Khān Bayāna etc. The right flanking party consisted of Tardika, Malek brother of Baba Kashka and a party of Mughals. On the left were Mumin and Rustam Turkoman. In accordance with the Turkish art of war, the carts were placed in front of the centre and they were chained one wit other for prevention against throw by crowds. Nizām ud-Din 'Ali Khalif: appointed for this arrangement. Sultan Muhammad Badakhshi was appointed to convey royal commands to the amits. He was before him. He had to sergeants to different directions for attention. In this way, one-fourth day passed when wind of war began to blow, flashes shot up in all direc right and left. The left wing of the enemy assaulted the right wing Sultan where was Khusraw Kokaltash. Under royal order, Chin Timur w The enemy fled behind his centre. It was a victory in the nat

Original Text, p. 943.

Chin Timur. Mustafa Rumi brought his cannons forward from front of the centre and set fire to the centre of the enemy and scattered them. A contingent was set against a contingent wherever the enemy made his appearance and put him to flight at the first assault.

Knot upon knot the hand struck spear\*
Cuirass upon Cuirass, blazen back hidden
On everyside, there were stone-penetrating lances
They blocked up path of safety with thorns
Indigo-coloured swords shone forth
They dazzled eyes with lustre
Dust of earth tied a blade of grass with moon
Closed passage of breath within throat.

Babur then ordered men of the right of the centre and the left to bring war-carts in the middle and attack right and left. In the wake of this, Babur assaulted in person. They assailed with his attack of the right and the left. The earth so to say stretched forth for their destruction. It took place at close of the day, In like manner, the enemy. One got mixed with the other. It was a fierce war which resulted in defeat of the enemy. Hasan Khan Mewati died from among the amirs by a cannon-ball while Rāwal Udaisingh, Manekchand Chauhān, Rāi Chandra Bhan, Dalpatrai Karamsingh, Dungarsi etc. met with death by the sword and spear. Babur dismounted from his horse, placed his forehead on the earth in humility before God and prostrated himself with thanks. He rode and pursued Sanga to a distance of a farsakh. Muhammadi Kokaltash etc. then went in pusuit of him. When night set in, he ordered drums of victory to be beaten with joy. He returned to his pavilion when two hours of the night had passed and alighted. His star had arisen which brightened the earth with light of its Lord. Shaikh Zain al-Şadr found a chronogram for this victory. He was a man of rank, excellence and warning. Fateh Badshah-i-Islam (victory of the king of Islam).

Data found by Mir Gesu which he wrote from Kābul to Bābur is the same. Bābur copied it in his Wāqeāt from victory of Dāpalpur to this victory, there is coincidence in date. It is "Wasat-i-Shahr-i-Rabi'ul-Awwal" (middle of the month of Rabi'I). It was said by two of the scholars. He then paused pursuing Rānā Sāngā and marched to conquer Mewāt. Muḥammad 'Ali Khing-i-Jang prepared himself to go to Ilyās Khān. There were signs of revolt in the Doāb region. He seized Kaul and captured its ruler Kijak 'Ali. On arrival of Muḥammad 'Ali, he left Kaul for some direction. Muḥammad 'Ali pursued him, caught him a captive and came with him to Agra. He was inflicted capital punishment. That happened.

Original Text, p. 944.

Khān Mirzā died in 917 (1511) at Badakhshān, which afterwards was strated to Humāyun. He went to it on 9th Rajab of the year. It was his capital at most of the time.

Babur marched towards Alwar, the capital of its ruler, Malwan in Mewat (A.F.) and conquired it. Babur marched to Chanderi in 924 (1518) (This year seems to be wrong). It should be 934 (1527). Its ruler was Rāi Medni. He sent Chin Timur Snltan from Kalpi with 7000 horse. On the morning of Wednesday, 7th Jamadi I, he gained victory. Its date was in accord with "Fath Där ul-Harb". Ahmad Shah, grand son of Sultan Näsir ud-Din was appointed to its government. Abul Fadl said "I heard from authoritative persons about the death of Rana Sanga before Sultan Babur marched for conquest of Chanderi. Sanga encamped at Iraj. Its Amir Afak garrisoned himself. On his encampment at it, the Rana saw in dream a figure of dreadful personality who threatened him and menaced him. He woke up with fright and he began to shiver through dread of his dream. He then suffered from fever. He returned from the fort and died on the way. I say, on the encampment of Sultan Jalal ud-Din Akber Padshah at Burhanpur for conquest of the fort of Asir, I heard as having been narrated by Amir 'Aziz Khan son of Amir Jhujhar Khan Habashi one of the amirs of mamālik connected with Muḥammad Shāh Fāruqi-Bahādur b. 'Ali 'Ādil Shāh had garrisoned himself-" I was informed by one of the scholars of Broach, deceased Amin Jiv Kādi of Burhānpur. He was inside the fort with his Sultan Bahadur. He was engaged with the permission of his Shaikh Saifi 'Ali Jalalud-Din to recite the Holy Quran. He was about to finish the period of forty days of its recitation, he saw Julalud-Din in his dream coming to him with a wooden pillar with a body in his hand. When he went near him, he threatened him and menaced him with incivility and roughness in recitation. He raised his hand to beat him with a staff. He moved to escape his beating. His turban fell down from his head out of dread. He woke up. He had no control over himself through fright. He was free from recitation. He informed him about his dream. Fright of dreadful voice remained with its threat and menace. He raised his head. His turban fell down and he died? within a week. This story got circulated. It was repeatedly narrated in the name of the Khan etc. In the wake of his death, the fort was conquered within a short while. Such anecdotes are not impossible for occurrence. He who is fortunate in good deeds, always meets with wonders. Mirzā 'Askari arrived from Kābul, under a royal order, to Agra for the campaign of Multan on Friday, 3rd Muharram, 935 (1528). After consultation, it was unanimously decided to march eastwards from Agra. This took place on Monday, 7th Rabi'II of the year. Babur went out for hunting to Dholpur. He then resolved to march

Original Text, p. 945.

to the east. He received a report that Mahmud Khan son of Sikander had occupied Bihar. In the meantime, he heard that Humayun in concert with Sultan Uwais set out from Badakhshan with fifty thousand for Samarqand. Residents of the place had written to him for peace. Babur wrote to him to return to Badakhshan to clear Kingdom of Hind for himself. He then wrote to Hindal Mirza to come to him. He crossed the river Jamna for going to the east on Thursday, 17th Jamadi I. At the manzil, an envoy of Nasir Shah, ruler of Bengal came to him, Mirza 'Askari came to the shore of Ganga on Monday, 17th Jamadi II. He ordered him to move with what he had to the other side. He received a report near about Karra that Mahmud Khan son of Sikander had withdrawn himself from Bihar. Babur advanced towards Ghazipur and thence to Bhoipur and Bahia. He encamped there and assigned the Amirship of Bihar to Muhammad Zaman. He was at ease for Bengal. He marched to get rid of Pani (Baban) and Bāyazid towards Parmārar (Sirwār). After great difficulty he subdued them and routed them. He returned to Agra. It so happened that Humayun nominated Sultan Uwais as his deputy for the government of Badakhshān and came to Kābul. Kāmrān Mirza had come to Kābul from Oandahār. He met him and his brother Hindal Mirza. Hindal went to Badakhshan for its defence under his instruction. He came to Babur in his mailish while his mother was talking about him. Babur was much pleased for his arrival. Mir Haider came to Agra in 935 (1528) under a royal order. He left Amir Takir 'Ali at Badakhshān. Before his arrival, Bābur was in grief for the death of son Mirza Anwar. He became a source of consolation for him. He\* found him to be his friend. He was intimate with him and with his speech. He lived with him like a friend and not like a son. During the absence of Humāyun from Badakhshān, Sultān Sa'eed Khān, one of the amirs of Kāshghar had relation with Babur. He had met him. He had treated him with regard for the conquest of Badakhshan at the request of Sultan Uwais. He had sent Rashid Khān from his side. Before his arrival, Hindal Mirzā advanced and occupied Badakhshan. Sa'eed Khan came and descended upon it and returned to Käshgher. Käbur got intelligence of it. He ordered Khwaja Khalifa to march against it. He halted. In like manner, Humayun would not part with it. He wrote to Sa'eed Khan wondering at his action with previous rights. He then said, "I summoned Hindal from it and gave Badakhshan to Mirza Sulaiman. He was in position of a son. When I saw you with rights and obvious relation I came out of Badakhshān for him. That was proper. It was my responsibility with your expectation of it for him. I acted on this information. It so happened that Sa'eed Khān returned on arrival of Sulaimān Mirzā. He met Hindāl and Sulaiman. Sulaiman stationed himself under toyal order. Hindal quitted it.

Original Text, p. 947.

Death of Babur: Abul Fadl said: Humayun went to Sanbal an menaded its sides with pleasure according to his desire. He then had te ture which obliged him (to be bed-ridden). Babur sent for him by Physicians treated him. Medicine did not cure him. One day he cross river. He vomited blood. Babur had become frightful of his diseas convened a meeting of eminent men of religion and world. Mir Abul represented that ancient wise men have said that when worldly phy become helpless in treatment they have suggested that dearest things sho given away in alms. Babur replied, "I am the dearest existing being belief of Humayun. My head is the best thing in his view. There is r better that I can sacrifice for him. I have done it." He said and I Khelifa represented that "he would almost regain health, and that he live his physical life under your shadow. What is the meaning that the should speak in this manner? The object of the ancients in distribution is financial. There is nothing dearer financially than the diamond of Ibi treasury which he has in his hand." Babur said, "This and similar to it can it be equivalent in weight to Humāyun for aims from him, I have the matter with him. I sacrifice myself for him." He then entered into for prayers and engaged himself in that which is the practice of holy me then came to the bed of Humayun and went round it for odd three time accepted his prayer. Immediately, his body became emaciated, Humay lightness in himself and recovered. Babur had made a will. He made nobles present themselves before him and made Humāyun his successo placed his hand for oath of allegiance upon his hand and ordered him to the throne and said to him in the presence of Khwaja Khalifa, Qanb. Tardi Beg and Hindu Beg etc. One of his admonitions was in respect of l to be shown to his brothers, if they deserve reward from him for what t He died on 6th Jamādi I. 937 (1530). Mawlānē Shihāb Mu'ammāi fout of his death in "Humāyun bud wareth-i-Mulk-i-Dini".

Sullan Naşir ud-Din Humäyun, son of Muhammad Babur son o 'Umar Shaikh Bahädur

Nașir ud-Din Humāyun son of Bābur ascended the throne at Agr (1530). He was born in 913 (1507). This date can be found out from "Bād." He gained a victory in his name in war with Maḥmud.

In 938 (1531), he conquered Jaunpur and killed the chief of the A. It was a fiercely fought battle. The Afghāns assembled around Nuṣra ruler of Bengal. The daughter of Ibrahim son of Sikander was married Tatār Khān son of 'Alāud-Din marched against Bahādur, ruler of Gujara

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 948.

A war with Gujerat took place in 942 (1535). Its detailed account is given before in the life of Bahādur in the first daftar.

Sher Shah Afghan emerged in the neighbourhood of Bengal in this year. Humayun was in Gujarat. The affair of Sher Shah became serious in 943 (1536). Both of them encountered at the river. Its detailed account will come in the life of Sher Shah. Humayun journeyed to the Sultan of Persia, Ruler of 'Iraq \* Tahmasp Qazilbash. During the regime of Salim Shah son of Sher Shah, he returned with help to Kabul. His brother Kamran Mirza opposed him in Kabul. He turned from him to Lahore. The account of what happened between them will come when Salim Shah died.

Original Text, p. 949.

### CHAPTER XXXI

#### The Surs

Sultan ul-Hind Sher Shah, son of Hasan Afghan Sur

I say, it chanced for me-I lived in Songir in the district of Burl when the dignified Khan, Rustam of the age, 'Abdul Karim Fawlaz Khi of Sandal Fawlaz Khan Habshi was the Amir. I was then under the sha his favour, regard, sufficiency and protection-Ibrahim Khan son of Pathan Ludi came to see him in his majlis of the most beautiful of ye character, safe with nature of an old man, most handsome man in creati most perfect in nature Shujā'ud-Din Amir Muḥammad Amin Khān son c 'Aziz Khan son of Amir Jhujhar Khan Habashi, may God fulfil his hope, early reign of Sher Shah. He said, "I heard it from a man who kno world that a child is born in a city of Ruhland grown up in it. His Shaikh Farid and the name of his father is Hasan. After some time, came out on a cow to Delhi during the regime of Bahlol Ludi. His son Farid was travelling with him. He had the baggage of his father o shoulder. Hasan had a spiritual guide on his path. His name was Bal-He used to be overpowered by 'attraction'. When Hasan came to h met him, he ordered him to slaughter the cow. It was his habit with n his visitors. When he ordered him, he said to him, "For you, there . camels in it." He did according to his bidding. In the morning who started on journey, the holy man said to his son Farid, "I give you good saltanat." When Hasan came to Agra, he and his son came to the Saltanat. Amir 'Umar Khan Sarwani came out from the Diwan. He 1 external and internal regions with him. The knowers saw them. He them and asked them their names and inquired as to who they were and they came and what was the cause of stopping. Hasan informed him. to him, "follow me." He then turned to them with kindness. They wer ing so he ordered for them something to ride upon. When he entered his he employed them and gave them wages for food. Bahlol then came ou to certain places. 'Umar Khan saw them standing in the sun in the m He ordered a tent for them. When the tents were demolished, he saw th standing. He asked them the cause of it. It was said to him. He th ordered two camels for them. It was as said by his Shaikh (spritual After the death of 'Umar Khan, they were with the Amir Jamai Khan. the regime of Bahlol, Sasram belonged to a harsh, pertinacious unb

Original Text, p. 950.

Similar was the case with the region of Junah. One day the Vazir asked as to who would undertake to conquer it. Jamal was in his mailis. He said to him, "Hasan Sur and Muhammad Khan Sur would reclaim them by conquest." He knotted a banner for them. Other Afghans joined them. Hasan proceeded to Sasram. It was won by difficulty. He remained as its Amir. Similarly, Muhammad Khan conquerred Junah and continued as its Amir. Hasan, inspite of his life as an amir, was, internally and externally, with God the Holy. He saw his son Farid dressing for the world outwardly and inwardly. He was impelling him for the future life. But he increased love for the world. One day, he showed aversion for it and separated his son Farid. When Hasan's death approached, he willed Amirship for his son Nizam. He was on the creed of his father. He sent a message to his brother Farid summoning him for Amirship. He had fear from his mother and so he apprised his brother of this fear. He rode to him and pacified his mind and came with him to the office of Amirship, surrendered what he had in his possession and renounced the world. Muhammad Khān Sur then conquered Sasrām. Shaikh Farid son of Hasan came out of it after a severe struggle and went to Hajipur Patna, one of the famous cities in Bengal. He met its ruler Darya Khan Nawhani and informed him about the event. He helped him with his son. He marched with him to Sasram and reconquered it for him. On return of the son to his father at Hājipur, Shaikh Farid moved with him. A quarrel ensued between them on the way wherein the son met with his death. Many others also perished along with him. It is said that he died a natural death. Shaikh Farid came after a time with belongings of the son to Haijpur. He found that Darva Khan had died. The government had passed to mother of the son. News had circulated about Babur's invasion towards Hajipur. He apologised to her and mourned with her. She was in anxiety for a following. She requested Babur to meet in seclusion. He did it and the messenger returned with his reply. She then assembled the nobles of the place and interchanged questions with them to find out as to who was worthy of resistance to Babur. They unanimously decided in favour of Shaikh Farid. She surrendered treasury to him. She married him and surrendered the palace of Amirship. This is what I heard from him in the year 1012 (1603).\* One the above-mentioned Ibrahim Khan presented himself in the turret which was at Songir. He obliged Mawlana Kadi Miyanjiv, Muhammad b. Husain Rabib ul-Mulk, Hāji Siyāh I'tibār ul-Mulk and Sayyid Jalāl b. Tarāḥ al-Yāfai' by his presence. In the course of conversation, they talked about Sher Shah, He had carried the baggage of his father on his shoulders. He was walking behind his animal. Muhammad b. Husain informed from whom he had learnt that he heard from behind himself a voice saying Sultan ul-Hind walking barefooted complaining of a load. When he looked behind, he found none. He

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 951.

treaded on his way, he heard that voice a second time, he turned to it but found none. At the third time, he regarded it a good omen, put faith in the voice and walked his way. It was more than advantage-who derived the benefit? He attended the majlis of Babur behind a curtain. When the table-cloth was spread out, Humāyun and Kāmrān-his two sons-were on the right side of Bābur. Bābur ate fish. The fish was palatable. Its fins were long. He thought as to how he collected it in his mouth. He then threw away the fins with a knife and collected them in a spoon. He raised it to his mouth. Eating became easy for him. Babur winked by his eye. Humayun feared his statement. You saw what he did. It is wonderful for me. When the table-cloth was removed, he ordered to expel him from the majlis. He was thinking over it. He was evading his destruction. When he came out, he did not find anything to prevent him. He rode his horse and returned and took his way to Hajipur. But Babur watched him. After two astronomical hours, he ordered him to be brought before him. It was found that he had left. This is what information he gave. It was found to be true. Men of the state are inspired. They gape at it to find what it is. In a holy tradition, it is stated "Fear sagacity of the faithful as he sees with the light of Allah. Shaikh Abul Fadl Dahelvi writes in Akbar Namä about his early career. The Grandfather of the author (Hāji Dabir) whose name was Ibrahim was a dealer in horses in the district of Narnaul. His son Hasan was praiseworthy. He loathed business. He was inclined to the army. He took to it and got himself employed under Raimal, an infidel chief. Raimal was the grandfather of Raisal who had become famous as a darbari in the regime of Akbar. The derivation of the word Darbar is dar, a door and bar means showing or opening it. Hasan b. Ibrahim went to Sasram and remained in service of Naşir Khân Afghân. He was an amir of Sikander Shah b. Bahlol. He manifested dignity in his service. When Naşir Khan died, he served his\* brother Dawlat Khan. He rose to a distinguished position in his service. He used to give counsel to him. He then served Amir Pani who was famous during the regime of Sikander. Hasan advanced under him. His son parted company with grandfather of the author and served Taj Khan Ludi. He then served Amir Bawdah Qasim Husain Khan Uzbek. He then sewed Sultan Junayd Barlas Mughal. One day, he presented himself with him before Sultan Humayun b. Sultan Babur Mughal. When he saw him with him, he turned to Sultan Junayd and said to him, "This is the Afghan pointing him out and finished his speech in regard to him. Farid saw himself being pointed out and thought over it. He sat away from his majlis, rode his horse and passed like lightning to his father. After a short time, his father Hasan died. All the people were helped with his wealth. He went out with them to Sasram and became known as a robber in Chakalistan, Junah in the district of Rohtas. He grew in power and

Original Text, p. 952.

strength. Fortune helped him in finesse and his efforts were in concert with decrees of fate. His fame spread far and wide. At the time of Humavun's invasion of Guiarat, he helped Bahadur, its ruler with money sent to him through Afghan merchants. War prolonged because of this. Before this, he was in correspondence with him and sent men to him to move onwards to Bengal. It was one of the causes on account of which Humavun withdrew from Dhanduka—he had marched to Div—to Agra. Abul Fadl said: He seized Bihār because of death of Darya Khan Nawhani and marched against Ulugh Mirza, ruler of Serv and conquered it. He then conquered Banaras and then Patna. He then marched to Surajgadh within precincts of Bengal and subdued it. was a boundary-line on this side. He then besieged Gaur and war continued between him and Nasib Shah its ruler, for a year. He proceeded to Bengal. An astrologer of Rājā Udaisingh never made a mistake in calculation. He sent some one in search of him. He did not accept the invitation but wrote to him. "you call me to question me about conquest, you will conquer Bengal on coming to it after a year. It happened as he wrote. So far Abul Fadl had narrated. I say: When Sher Shah firmly established himself in Bengal, it is suitably fit to give an account of those Muslim rulers who conquered it and established firm control over it from the time of Sultan ul-Hind, Sultan ul-Islam Mu'izzuddin Muhammad al-Ghori to the date of its establishment when this book was written. It is a vast country with plenty of water containing many maidans, lands full of luxuriant trees and rivers with plentiful water. Its extensive circle, prosperity of region, valleys, ramifications, mountains—all belong to its chief who is under the ruler of Delhi. Sword of the Mujahids was always brandished for establishment of faith as its account follows. Hemistich: He who was liberal in stabbing resided in the house.

#### CHAPTER XXXII

## History of Bengal

Amir Ghori Ikhtiyar-ud-Din Muhammad son of Bakhtiyar

Abu 'Umar Minhāj al-Juzgāni writes in his Tabagāt; Amir Ikht Din Muhammad b. Bakhtiyar al-Ghori came to Ghazni during the re-Sulfan Mu'izzuddin Muhammad al-Ghori. He made his appearance in h for livelihood as a soldier in the army. When a movement to Hind got shed, he came to Delhi. He received no encouragement as he wish Qutbud-Din. He returned to Ghazni and tarried with the uncle of his Amir Muhammad b. Mahmud. He was present with him in the battle where he had to flee. He proceeded to Nagor where was his brother Am Mahmud. He was under his command. When Kanowi was annexed to the Amir's circle of control widened over the region. He knotted the b Amirship at Kashmandi for his brother Amir Muhammad. He sent hi Ikhtiyar-ud-Din Muhammad would not like to be separated from him. Amir Muḥammad b. Maḥmud got martyred on that side fighting Ikhtiyāi Muhammad brought the region under his control and became famous in Amir posted him in place of his brother. He became an independent an abandoned it and journeyed to 'Amil of Oudh, Amir Husam ud-Din He assigned to him the district of Sylhet and Sahaili. Ikhtiyar-udnoted for bravery on this side. He was intrepid and penetrated into re the unbelivers and obtained what no Muslim amir had obtained befo He seized booty in wealth, horses, arms to an unlimited number. He, tl firmly established himself in power, pomp, dread, wealth and his fame far and wide. Men of the Ghori tribe heard about him. They came from every mountain pass and assembled under his banner and conquerplaces along with him. Qutbuddin received a report about him, he h like him, corresponded with him and sent him presents and gifts. It we which was not conquered Bihar, according to language of Hind means a especially meant for the Brahmins. Its residents are Brahmins. with Greek philosophers and religious teachers. Mas'udi, author of Mur Dhahad uses the word Brahmin for them-He marched to it, subjecte pillage and plunder and came back. ' He then marched to Mayati and co it by force. The first to enter its gates was Nizam ud-Din al-Farghani brother Samsam ud-Din and carried out general massacre. They foun inscriptions there. The Amir sent for those persons who could deciph

Original Text, 954.

but they failed to find him. He was loaded with such immense booty which he no where found and returned. He then came to Delhi, met Outbud-Din who ennobled him with approbation and advanced upon him. Most of the persons were surprised at him. Eminent persons were filled with jealousy for him and resolved, according to some, to bring about his ruin. They received a report of his bravery, his dash and his strength and conveyed to him in exaggerated terms about his daring rush against an elephant which was regarded as beyond human strength. The Amir lauded him and acknowledged his strength. The Amir understood that they wanted to bring about his ruin out of jealousy or his acknowledgement of helplessness in accordance with their knowledge. He turned to Qutbud-Din and said, "I will come with elephant. All jealous persons applauded him. They requested to bring a mad elephant. He was brought. The amir's hand, when, sent towards it was about to touch ankle bone of his leg, he took out his poniard and stood face to face with him. The elephant advanced like a moving mountain and flowing torrent. When he neared him, he jumped like a lion and made him seat when he struck a blow on his trunk which made him turned backwards. Qutbud-Din raised his voice in applause, embraced him and sent for him a robe of honour and ordered the amirs to do so as he did. In less than an hour, many gifts and presents were brought. Their jealousy flared up. He stood up from the majlis and swore in the presence of all that he would only take gifts of Outbud-Din out of regard for his status and from none else. saving he withdrew to his region. He then resolved to march to Bihar. His\* awe had spread among residents of those places and particularly Lakhnawati, Bang, Kämrud and Nudia. The Rai was Lakhmanah. He was great on that side in extension of territory. He was eighty years old and ruled like that for eighty years. There is a wonderful story about his birth. His father died. His mother was pregnant with him. The chiefs of the state unanimously decided upon loyalty for the bearing of his wife. They placed the crown upon her belly and they paid him greetings and salutations. Every one of them gave proof of what he had with him. When the time of birth came, she felt travails of birth. Astrologers assembled as usual, in accordance with customs of the local people for finding ascendant of the native from the first movement of its coming out. They all agreed that if the birth takes place at such and such an hour, he would rule for eighty years. She sent for her people and said "I am in travails of birth as you see. You have heard the discourse of astrologers. This hour, I do not see the child will tarry in my womb. It would produce an effect on my life. You suspend me in an inverse position to that hour they have agreed upon. Do that with great confidence to prevent its coming out. You need not worry as to what happens to me. You are excused for election. They did as they elected. The astrologers waited for the time. She felt severe pain which others

Original Text, p. 955.

4 1,

did not know. When the time approached, members of the family fulfilled their pledge. She was seated on a chair as usual. She gave birth. She was alive but there was hardness due to contraction and so she died. The child lived and grew up in wealth. His kingdom extended and life prolonged. When he conquered Bihar, he had almost reached eighty. Astrologers came to him and said to him, "We have found in our books that this territory would be conquered by a person with such and such qualities. One of them is that when he extends his hands, his fingers would almost reach his knees. Time for it had come. This Amir is famous on this side. He is the promised man. He would gain ascendancy over this city soon. We request you to guit it before time." He replied. "you found his praise in your books; send to him a person who could note all those signs in him. If you find them in him, we would certainly go out before his entry into the city." They did so, got knowledge of those signs and informed him about that. He was a person as described. "We should make haste. There is lot of time." Personally, he would not like to quit the city where he dwelt for eighty years. He continued to live in it. Those who were certain for its fall due to those signs left the city. With conquest of Bihār, (Nadid) was conquered under those conditions. Next year after the conquest of Bihār.\* Amir Ikhtiyar ud-Din decided to conquer Nudia. He marched in all haste towards it. On his approach, eighteen daring horsemen advanced on its sides. They were in guise of merchants of horses behind them. They entered Nudia at noon and went to the market, and stopped at the door of Rai Lakhmani. He was sitting along at meals without clothes as was the custom. As it was midday, he had permitted persons to retire, depart and keep themselves to their houses. On account of that, they found the door empty. They raised shouts of "Aliah-o-Akbar", entered the palace, placed swords when those who were inside the palace raised a clamour and Rāi was at the meal. He heard cries. There was no doubt in him about entry of the promised amir. He stood up to the skylight in the palace for an hour, came out on his face to the residents at night-fall and died. He had reached eighty. The Amir sat before him till he finished his meals. His companions were with him. They all ate their food. The Amir occupied the palace. His soldiers entered it in his wake. All of them enriched themselves. The Amir had spoils in the shape of horses and arms. It was loyalty. After massacre and captivity, he carried what he had seized from the city to Lakhnawati demolishing Nudia. He made Lakhnawati his capital and occupied all nearby places. He recited the Khutba in his own name and raised aloft the canopy. Ten thousand horsemen of his own race assembled under his flag. This victory took place in 591 (1194). When he established his authority in a serious manner, he resolved upon conquest of Turkish cities. He marched against them moving in mountains and barren roads situated

Original Text, p. 956

between Tibet and Lakhnawati. Tribes of Kunj, Manbaj and Thar inhabitated it. They embraced Islam at his hands. The chief of them was named Amir 'Ali Manbaj. He was chosen as a guide. He took them to a city called Mardhan Kot built by Gushtasp, King of Persia. He prospered it on his return from China to Kamrud. It is situated on a big valley which is called Bankamti like the river Ganga, thrice in width, which flows touching Hind and flows into sea of salt called in Hind Samandar. He then journeyed on shore of the valley reaching its elevation in ten days. He terminated at the river which had a bridge of hewn stone over it. He left behind him a Turki amir from among his mamālik and a Khalji amir for defence of the bridge till his return to it. He\* crossed the bridge and proceeded further. Rai of Kamrud heard about him. He sent a message to him saying, "It has reached me that you intend to conquer Tibet with men you have. I wish you to go back from it till you collect double the number of soldiers you have with you now, gain strength to rule over a majority of them. They have a large army from ancient times. You return after this and act according to my advice. I will be your advance-guard afterwards. But...... (he did not heed his advice) and advanced further. Juzjāni says: He came to Lakhnawati in 641 (1243) and alighted at Mu'tamid ud-Dawla Muqbil Rikabdar of Amir Ikhtiyar ud-Din Muhammad. In the meantime, he talked about this adventure in course of conversation when I heard him saying: After he crossed the bridge, he journeyed through ravines, valleys, lofty mountains as hurdles for fifteen days. He entered the frontiers of Tibet on the sixteenth day. He climbed up a place where there was a fort built by the Turks. The Amir pondered over what was near the fort. Its Amir came out and fought for the whole day. He then returned to the fort. The Amir had encamped at a distance from it. He lost many of his companions while the rest were wounded. He was overwhelmed with despair and became a butt of reproach. He had captured a man of the fort. The Amir asked him about it. He said, "This is within boundary of Tibet for defence and espionage. There is a city at a distance of six farsakhs from it which is called Karam Patan. There is a Turki Amir with three hundred thousand and fifty thousand archers. They are attached with this place. Inmates of the fort sent an envoy to them. The Amir and his companions decided to withdraw. They journeyed it night and in the morning came to a place and kindled fire with plants and rubbish. It was dreadful for habitation. Animals perished. Men did not find anything to eat. They walked with patience, most of them on foot till they came to the bridge with severe hardships. The two amirs had disputed. They had left one after the other. The bridge was demolished. That made the difficulty serious. In the meantime, it was difficult to cross water. Rai of Kamrud heard about it. He came with his men like scattered locusts. They took refuge in a temple

<sup>·</sup> Original Text, p. 957,

with gold idols and fortified themselves. They gathered fire-wood around the temple to burn them. They came out from it, took their way to the river-fleeing from them. When they paused at the river, it so happened that one of them entered the river and came out of it to the shore. People followed him. The Amir was among them. None escaped except the Amir, his hundred men and the guide. The guide had friends around. He took the Amir there and feasted him with what was present. He then journeyed to Devkot. He felt ashamed for the loss of men. When he marched to Tibet with 10,000 horse Khalji, he returned to Devkot with one hundred of them. He became sick of it. When he rode out, there were so many evil prayers and abuses for him. That added to his grief. He who came to him, told him about the dread of campaign and that how he was saved. 'He remarked," I did not see what was good for me this time except to vacate the ruler of his kingdom. Sultan Mu'izzuddin so intended and that was what happened. He heard about him. He said that it was adversity. He fell ill and died within a few days in 602 ( 1205 ). It is said that 'Ali Mardan Khalji, an 'Amil came to pay a sick visit to him. The Amir did not see any one for the last three days. He raised cloth from his face and looked at him. He then stabbed him with a knife. He died of it. Amir Muḥammad Shiran Khalji, 'āmil of Lakhnawati heard about his death. His brother Amir Ahmad, 'Amil of Jājnagar too heard of it. Both of them came to Devkot for condolence. They then journeyed to Nākoti, the office of 'Ali Mardan Khalji. He captured Amir Muhammad and surrendered him to Baba Ispahani, the Police Officer. He returned to Devkot when other Khalji amirs assembled around him and raised the canopy over his head.

## Amir Muḥammad Shiran Khalji

Muḥammad Shirān Khalji sat on the throne at Devkot in 602 (1205). He remained loyal to Ikhtiyār ud-Din Muḥammad. He loved him more than 'Ali Mardân but the Police Officer so arranged that he fied to Delhi from prison. He met Quṭbuddin and tried for the government of Amir Kāymāz Rumi Lakhnawati. He was the 'Āmil of Oudh. He went to Lakhnawati from it and evinced his loyalty to Ḥusam ud-Din in place of Khalji, 'Āmil of Kankori. He journeyed to Devkot with him. He met Kāymāz, looked into his affairs and returned Muḥammad Shirān came out of it. When Kāymāz returned, the † Khalji Amirs met Muḥammad Shirān and attacked Devkot. Kāymāz heard about their attack, he returned from the way, fought with them and put them to flight towards Maksida and Sanṭus. Difference of opinion arose between them. They fought and killed Muḥammad Shirān Khalji in the battle-field.

Suljan 'Alaud-Din 'Ali Mardan Khalji

Amir 'Ali Mardan Khalji son of Husam ud-Din, 'Iwad the Khalji at Devkot

Original Text, 958.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, 959.

had come to Lakhnawati from the side of Qutb ud-Din. Hwad agreed with him. 'Ali Mardan raised aloft the canopy over his head and designated himself as Sultan 'Aland Din in 607 (1210). It was due to the death of Qutb ud-Din in this year. During his regime, there was quiet between the Hindu chiefs and himself in respect of tribute. He was a blood-thirsty tyrant. He killed party of Khalji amirs. It was a wonder with himself when talking of the conquest of Ghazni and Khurasan and more than that. It is related of him that a merchant was reduced to poverty. He intended to see him. He asked him "what city do you belong to?" He said, "Ispahan". He said, "They would write to him with a mandate of Ispahan" and departed him. He did not give anything to him. He requested for a favour: He said to him that the 'Amil of Ispahan needed provision for travel to it. He then ordered for him some expenses for his boldness. If he had done in an arbitrary manner as ordered for a mandate of Ispahan, he would have killed him. He troubled men of Khalji out of his evil nature and killed them on mere suspicion. He ruled for two years.

## Sulfan Ghiyathuddin 'Iwad Khalji

Ghiyathuddin Iwad b. Husain Khalji ascended the throne at Lakhnawati in 610 (1213). He is originally from Khalji of Garmsir of Ghor. Once he carried a load on a donkey and set out from Zawilistan to Pushta Afroz. Two men dressed in patched clothes joined him. They asked him for food. He took out food from his bag and spread out eatables before them. They are their share from it. He behaved with good manners with them. He had a leatherbag of water in his hand. After washing their hands, they drank from it and prayed for blessings for him. One of them looked to the other to give him \* reward out of thanks. The other one said to him, "you may become commander and Sultan in Hind". He kissed their hands, changed his mind for Pushta Afrog and returned to his house. He then carried his wife on his animal and started for Hind. He came to Amir Ikhtiyar ud-Din Muhammad when he was an Amir, met him in his Diwan. Every day, his power began to rise as he was the Amir of several places. After the death of Ikhtiyar ud-Din, he was Amir at Kankori. He met Kaymāz with loyalty. Afterwards he was at Devkot i concert with 'Alaud-Din and he journeyed with him. After that, he raised: canopy over his head at Lakhnawati. He had very good qualities in him. There are good qualities of remembrance after him. Masters of turbans (holy men) assembled at Lakhnawati during his regime. They graced him, showered blessings on him and he gave them allowances for maintenance.

Jalaluddin b. Jamalud-Din, a Ghaznawi preacher came from Firuz Koh to Delhi in 618 (1221) and returned with plenty of money to his native place. He

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 960.

was asked about his wealth. He said, "One day, I convened a meeting for future life in the Diwan of Sultan Ghiyathud-Din Iwad Khalji at his capital of Lakinawati; he ordered for me a tray full of gold. He ordered his nobles to give me presents. He collected ten thousand of gold tankas for me in a majlis. He then gave me three thousand gold tankas and increased five thousand more gold tankas on the day of my departure. God thanks him from me and shows mercy to him.

al-Minh'aj al-Juzjāni said: The city of Lakhnawati has wings on each side of the Gangā. In the west it is called Arāl and the city of Lakhnawati is on this side. In the east it is called Yarmal and Devkot is on its side. Ghiyāthud-Din 'Iwad Khalji built a bridge over it from Lakhnawati to Lakhur and to Devkot. Its length is approximately one hundred farsakhs which a passer-by traverses in ten days. He had left many good works in the book of his deeds. The cause of construction of the bridge was plenty of water on that land. In monsoon, water flowed over many places so much so that it was not fordable. Hence the passage was blocked up for residents. It was not easy to cross it every time by boats even by sailors. Torrent of water made it difficult for boats to float also. He therefore, built a bridge as a road out of kindness for his subjects and gratitude for his power.\*

In 622 (1225), Sultān II-tutmish Shamsud-Din came to Lakhnawati. Ghiyāthud-Din garrisoned himself in Devkot. Peace was concluded on terms of tecitation of the Khutba and currency of coins in his name (Shamsud-Din II-tutmish). Shams ud-Din was inclined towards him on account of good public works on that side. He said in respect of him—He had known about some of his good works—he who has such good works to his credit is worthy of the title of Sultān Ghiyāthud-Din. Lakhur, Lakhnawat, and adjacent places Bang, Kāmrud, Jūjnagar, Tirbat and Bibār etc. bear monuments of him.

In 624 (1227), Ghiyāthud-Din was out for jihād with the unbelievers in the neighbourhood of Bang. He received intelligence that Nāṣirud-Din Maḥmud son of Sulṭān Shams ud-Din Il-tutmish, lord of Oudh entered Lakhnawati in an hour of his negligence and that he sat on the state throne. He returned from those sides to face him with whatever was with him at the time. It was a fierce war between them. He displayed bravery but attained to martyrdom along with Khalji amirs.

Sultan Naşirud-Din Mahmud son of Shamsud-Din Il-tulmish

Näser ud-Din Mahmud son of Sultän Shamsud-Din II-tutmish sat on the state throne of Lakhnawati in 624 (1227). When Ghiyathud-Din attained to martyrdom, Shamsud-Din received intelligence about it. He sent a canopy for

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 961.

his son and permitted him recitation of the Khutba and the impression of coins. He derived no benefit as he died in 626 (1228),

In this very year, Amir Balka Khalji conquered Lakhnawati. Shamsud-Din marched against him and killed him and fought for some time. 'Alaud-Din Jani was appointed as Amir.

In 627 (1229-30), 'Alāud-Din Jāni al-Mu'izzi died. Shamsud-Din sent one of his muluks Sayfud-Din Aibak al-Shamsi title Baghāntat as its Amir. He controlled it and became famous. Baghāntat died in 631 (1233).

## Sultan Izzud-Din Tughan Khan al-Khatai al-Shamsi

Shamsud-Din heard about the death of Baghāntat. He sent his mamluk\* 'Izzud-Din Tughān Khān al-Shamsi as its Amir. His name was Tughril Kara Khatāi. He was noted for manliness and bravery. Aibak Gorkhān was appointed as an Amir of Lakhur during the salṭanat of Firuz b. Shamsud-Din. When he encamped outside Sankot of Lakhnawati, 'Izzud-Din marched against him and killed him by an arrow. He conquered Lakhur and firmly established his power as Amir on the side of Lakhnawati. During the salṭanat of Raḍia Sultān a daughter of Shamsud-Din, she sent a canopy and insignia of salṭanat. He established his authority as a sultān. He marched against Tirhut and collected wealth beyond enumeration. He conquered Kara during the salṭanat of 'Alāud-Din Mas'ud b. Firuz.

In 641 (1243), lord of Jajnagar made futile attempt on the sides of Lakhnawati. Tughan Khan marched against him. Juzjani said: I was with him. When he encamped at Katās, in the early frontiers of Jājnagar, war ensued between the advance-guard and the unbelievers. The advance-guard gained a victory. Izzud-Din got delighted with victory. He uplifted the rank of the Amir of the advance-guard. In the meanwhile, armed men and horsemen got down for meals, Rai of Jajnagar made his appearance from behind the army with horse, foot and elephants in darkness. It was thick darkness. 'Izzud-Din retreated from him. When he alighted at Lakhnawati, he sent Sharaful-Mulk al-Ash'ari to the Sultan to inform him about circumstances and requested him for help. He wrote to the 'Amil of Oudh, Fakhrud-Din Tamar Khan al-Shamsi whose name was Kiran ordering him to go to his aid with all the contingents of the neighbourhood. On his arrival on Tuesday, 13th Shawwal of the year, the Råi of Jäjnagar attacked Lakhur and killed its 'Amil Fakhrul-Mulk Karim ud-Din Lägheri and conquered it. 'Izzud-Din had encamped outside Lakhnawati when news of Tabar Khān's arrival got circulated. Rāi of Jājnagar retreated to his frontiers. Tamar Khān came to 'Izzud-Din and encamped on his side. Fright was created with the meeting of two armies which led to encounter out-

Original Test, p. 962.

side the city. Order of succour mediated for establishment of peace between them. Every one of them retired to his tent. When peace was concluded 'Izzud-Din was at gate of the city dispersing his soldiers for entry into the city and looking after the houses. Tamar Khān heard about it. He was in his armour. He rode out and attacked 'Izzud-Din who fled from him to the city\* and garrisoned himself. Tamar Khān besieged him. Peace was made on surrender of the city. 'Izzud-Din started for Delhi with his belongings. The historian was in his company. It happened at the close of 642 (1244). 'Izzud-Din Tughān Khān came to Oudh as its Amir and stayed there till he died in 644 (1246). On the night of death of 'Izzud-Din, died that person who expelled him from saltanat of Lakhnawati Fakhrud-Din Tamar Khān al-Shamsi in it. Permanence is for God the Holy.

## Sultan Ikhtiyar ud-Din Yuzbek al-Khafchaki al-Shamsi

Ikhtiyär ud-Din Yuzbek al-Khafchäki al-Shamsi was appointed as Amir of Lakhnawati in 644 (1246). During his regime, Rai of Jajnagar and his son-inlaw Säntir came to Lakhnawati and encamped on its river. Ikhtiyar ud-Din marched against him, severely attacked him and defeated him. He came back. He defeated again. His white elephant was not being controlled by the driver. He came out in his face in the contingent of Rai of Jajnagar. They captured him and got delighted thereby. Ikhtiyar ud-Din conquered Amuda and defeated its ruler and seized from him what he possessed. It was booty sufficient for comfortable rebellion. On his return to Lakhnawati, he raised three canopiesblack, white and red, over his head and designated himself as Sultan Mughithuddin and moved on to Oudh and recited Khutba in his name. Some of the amirs played a policy for his expulsion by inviting the Sultan. He left it by water for Lakhnawati. He stayed for half a month at Oudh. He then moved on to Kāmrud and conquered it. Rāi of Kāmrud fled to a side of his country. Juzjāni said: it is a report based on authoritative sources that he was a descendant of the Persian king Gushtäsp. When he entered China and returned from it to Hind-It was hinted at before in the account of Ikhtiyar-ud-Din Muhammad. He left behind at Kamrud eleven hundred boxes of gold coins which were in his name. These were at Kamrud at the time of the assault of Sultan Mughithud-Din on Kamrud. When he conquered Kamrud, these boxes were in addition to what he had in his hand of the spoils of Kämrud. He threw his feet at it, ruled it and made it an abode of Islām. Mughithuddin was the first to recite his Khutba here. In the meantime, Råi Kämrud corresponded with him and said † to him, "You came to this limit. None except you came. You conquered a city which will be the kingdom to be maintained with sword only. Ikhtiyar ud-Din Muhammad had a greater claim on it for length of his two outstretched hands.

Original Text, p. 963.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text p. 964.

Your luck will decline in it. As before, you will have to return this bounty to me, to my kingdom. It will be your obligation on me and I will pay so much annual tribute to you and give you so many elephants. Khutba will be recited in your name along with usages of Islam." He refused to accept for what he had collected and respond to his request. It would not be in accordance with the right course. Rai of Kamrud changed his mind from admonition to a ruse. He ordered residents of his land to purchase the whole stock of food-stuff in the city at black-market rate and carry it to their respective places. They came to the city, vociferated for corn and raised its price. Mughithud-Din had coveted their gold which did not accrue to his treasury and he did not claim for the store. There did not remain a single grain of corn for cultivation of land and its fertility. The whole city was without it except a quantity to last for two months. When the spring season was over, Rai of Kamrud came out from his place with possibility of entering into a contract to the city and the place where there was plenty of water. He opened up capals and directed them towards paths of the city from all neighbourhoods. The roads got blocked up, and supply was cut off. Mughithud-Din was in a helpless state. He left it intending to proceed to Lakhnawati. Where is Pleiades to deliver from hand? When the Rai separated water surrounding it, it worked well. He was amazed. He then took a guide for Koh Pāya to subdue it. It was situated within ravines and valleys which were of difficult path both for entry and exit consisting of narrow passes. Elephants were moving in front had to fight with elephants of forests. Men were busy among themselves. Rai of Kamrud attacked for war, Mughithud-Din was on his elephant. He was on elevation from his companion in the eye of the enemy to become a target. An arrow hit his chest which brought him to the ground. His son made him and the rest captive. They were brought before Rāi of Kāmrud. His son asked him to meet him. He replied but he was in the agony of death. He came near him and embraced him. He placed his cheek on his cheek and left the world. Every perfection has its decline. He was the first to seek for peace but he refused and perished. To this class of persons belong Sultan Sanjar Saljuqi, Sultan 'Umar b. Laith Saffar. In the opinion of experienced men, response to peace is better than to war. God the Holy said to His Prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him. "If they bow down for peace, bow down." There was a war of \* Mughithud-Din in the Saltanat of Nasir ud-Din Mahmud b. Shamsud-Din. His deeds turned from side of the Salfanat of Izzud-Din Balban Yuzbeki titled Kalaj Khān. It so happened that on his march to Bang, the 'Amil of Kara Tājud-Din Sanjar Arsalān Khān al-Khwārazmi assailed Lakhnawati. He did not know about the resolution of one of his companions and that too an amir of

Original Text, p. 964.

the Sultan. He had not assaulted him under order of the Sultan. The amirs paused to respond him at the first fright. Hence wisdom of necessity took place with response. It happened within three days of war. He conquered the city and sacked it for three days. He proclaimed for amnesty, controlled the city and its suburbs. Kalaj Khān received a report of it and returned to him. A fierce battle was fought between the two. Kalaj Khān was captured and attained to martyrdom in 657 (1258). Arsalān repented, for what happened to him from his side, after the war. He went to Kara from Lakhnawati.

## Sulfan Mughithud-Din Tughril al Balbani

Tughril Balbani came as Amir of Lakhnawati to govern it on behalf of Nasir ud-Din in 657 (1258). He continued in the office during the saltanat of Ghiyathud-Din. In 670 (1271), Tughril established independent power when he renounced his submission and loyalty and declared himself as an independent Sultan. He designated himself as Sultan Mughith ud-Din. Dia ud-Din Barani narrated in his Tabaqat that Ghiyathud-Din Balban received intelligence of his disloyalty even though Tughril was one of his mamalik. He was brave, light in movement, generous, cheerful, Turkish in race, and he attained to the rank of malek. He was noted among the Shamsi muluk. He was exceptionally famous among the Balbanis. Soldiers and subjects loved him for his generosity. Ghiyath ud-Din achieved a rank in the region of Lakhnawati and Bengal. No one ruled over Lakhnawati but became disloyal to Delhi from the time of Sultan Mu'izzud-Din Muhammad Sam to this date. He extended his territory and increased its population. The road to Lakhnawati from Delhi was full of mountains, valleys, ravines, depths and narrow passes. None came out of it\* where he entered it except with personal hardships. Rebellion of a governor was strange as he came from the west but his loyalty to the ruler set ( like the sun ) in the west. Residents also rebelled against the governor. He rebelled as an essential of that part of region. It was a rebellion of the governor against the paramount power or a rebellion of the local people against a governor. Dia said: The Sultan sent Amin Khan Aitkin Mui Daraz al-Balbani-one of the muluk of his mamalik against him. He was the 'Amil of Oudh. When he crossed the river Sarāv, Tughril encountered him. His followers helped him in victory because of his generous nature inspite of their knowledge of the Sultan's punishment. How was that? A fierce battle was fought between them which resulted in the flight of Amin Khan to Oudh. Ghiyathud-Din learnt about the defeat. He got infuriated and became harsh and shamefaced due to victory of his disloyal malek. He sent a royal order to Oudh for crucifixion of Amin Khān at the gate of Oudh. It was executed. Wise men sought information as to what he had done. He was a Sultan of balanced judgment, clemency, endurance, and

Original Text, p. 965.

he had knowledge of war. He could stop war at times with might and desperation and at times with weakness with great perfection. He then despatched Malek Narmin with preparation in 671 (1272) with all the amirs of Hind as auxiliaries. Tughril had augmented his pomp, might and pride with his victory with all that he had. He encountered him and put him to rout at the first assault. He also seized all that he had left of elephants and arms and this was in addition to what was left by Aitkin. Husam Khan relates in this respect that he sent Malek Shihab and Zafar, a third time against Tughril. Sultan Ghivath ud-Din marched to Samana and bestowed the title of Amir on Malek Sunj Sarjandar and ordered his son Bughra Khan to attend upon him. He was at Sanām. He returned from Sāmāna and came to Doab and crossed the Gangā, marched to Lakhnawati. He wrote to Malek ul-Umara, lord of the Police at Delhi. He was brought up under his care and guidance with an edict of viceroyalty in absence and issued an order to its adjacent places and to inform him whether Tughril is subdued or taken a prisoner or killed. Till his return, he should be in charge of the government of the region with power of dismissal, captivity and murder. On the way, the army and amirs of round-about places joined him. Advance of monsoon did not prevent him from careful preparation. At the manzil of Bawdah, he sat for review of soldiers. The number of horse and foot had reached one hundred thousand. The Sultan crossed the river Sarav. Rain fell in opposition like months of the vicinity. Tughril used to say to his companions" Let any army come, he would encounter it in a nearer place to Delhi. If the Sultan marched against him, he would fail to resist him." When\* he heard a report of him, that he had crossed the river Sarāv, he made preparations to encounter him to his side. Rain continued to pour down night and day, in cats and dogs with tarrying of the Sultan in the manzil. Tents drenched with rain remained pitched till they got dried up. Tughril look the opportunity to flee. Every one who entered into his kingdom-silent and speaking, specie of animal, vegetable, mine in the city-felt moving outside. With the rise of Canopus, he marched towards Jajnagar. Every one who moved with him except his soldiers, eminent men of the city, swordsmen who opposed him, wealthy men, ordinary residents were filled with fright of the Sultan's punishment. The report circulated among soldiers that he had resolved upon conquest of Tainagar and stay there. When the Sultan encamped at a distance of forty farsakhs from Lakhnawati, he advanced from his first manzil to Jajnagar. governor came out from his boundary to the first manzil to the frontier of Jäinagar. On arrival of the Sultan to Lakhnawati, he ordered to make amends for what was destroyed. He tarried for certain days. Diaud-Din said: He nominated my grandfather, father of my mother as Na'ib and ordered him for

Original Text, p. 966,

organisation of postal service and note down events for his information. He marched to Jainagar. On his arrival at Sonarganw, Rai Danawi, older resident. presented himself before him with a party of his men. He kissed the carpet. The Sultan said to him, "I left the kingdom in search of my mamluk to get hold of him by hook or crook. Promise me to tread the land and sea to seize him." He did so. The Sultan marched in his wake when he encamped at a distance of sixty farsakhs from limit of Jājnagar. He did not find any one on the way to give him information about him. He halted in his manzil and ordered Malek Barbek Bibaras Sultani to be with seven thousand horses in uniform, rash and numbered advance-guard for the army. He advanced twelve farsakhs in his way. He made efforts to get knowledge of his information. Malek Barbek Bibaras rode out and moved as ordered. The Sultan was in his wake. The Malek sent his horsemen to all directions not at a great distance to make inquiry about him. None talked anything about him. It was near the frontier of Jajnagar that Malek Muhammad Sarabdar, 'Amil of Kaul, his brother, Malek Mughla and Tughril Kush chanced (to know about him). They were lions of the army with forty others similar to them. They advanced to Barbek\* that he was at a distance of ten farsakhs with a merchant. They returned from the tent of Tughril going to their places. They questioned them about Tughril as to where he was. They refused to give information about his where-abouts. Malek Muhammad ordered to punish one of them. His head was beaten. They did not point it out. He ordered to punish the other one of them. When they found him killing, they informed that he was at a place with palm-leaves known as Sang Pusht and that he would journey from it next day to enter into the land of Jajnagar. They surrendered one of their party. He ordered them to return to Malek Barbek to inform him about Tughril on information of one of their surrendered men. They should request him to hastily reach him with them. Through fear of his death, they resolved to enter into his tent. The party moved on with the informer. It so happened that Malek Muhammad and his companions were ahead of him. They moved with one man on horse as a guide. When they neared him, they climbed up a hillock and saw that he was inside the pavilion. In the middle of it there was a tent of Tughril. It was on a higher elevation. Tents of the pavilion were scattered. People were in negligence. Smoke rose in the hollow part from every side to cover men of the pavilion. Elephants, were at a distance from the pavilion eating from trees. Horses ate green plants in the pavilion with their teeth. Inmates of tents were engrossed in music, drink and playing back-gammon. Malek Muhammad and his companions ordered him and said, "we had knowledge of this, vacate with will, come on to our side for what you see with eyes. He raised the voice,

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, 967.

Tughril would pass away and after that he would not fall in chains of his seeker. We enter the pavilion in their inadvertence from the nearest path to Tughril. Who enters from us to kill him, who would inform about arrival of the Sultan, who will wield the sword from us, who will blow the trumpet and who will support them in flight. Would to God that Bärbek knows about the fortune of the Sultan. They descended from the hillock in a scattered manner in all directions to enter the pavilion. They then assembled, brandished arms and shrieked trumpets shouting 'Tughril, Tughril'. They entered the tent in a body. When he heard the trumpet, he was not in doubt about arrival of the Sultan. He opened the curtain from a side, came out to a horse, rode it without a saddle and a bridle to a river nearby. His guards and retinue dispersed from near him bearing the name of the Sultan through fear of his punishment. Malek Mughla and Tughril Kush pursued him. He had neared the river when Tughril Kush saw him. He put an arrow into his bow and darted it at him. He came to the\* ground, saw Mughla who cut off his head and concealed it under his skirt. He sat on side of a river washing his hands and face. The salahdaris, the jamdaris and the jandaris came out in his wake questioning about him, 'Tughril', Barbek Bibaras was at the pavilion with drum and standard. The pavilion was empty of Tughril and his followers. Malek Mughla and Tughril Kush stood up at the river towards Barbek and placed his head near him. He immediately despatched a postman with information about victory and head of Tughril. Bärbek-collected what was in the pavilion. Malek Muhammad and his companions seized belongings of Tughril as booty. Enery one of them enriched himself for life, He captured men and women of exceptional merit and fame numbering three thousand. Barbek then collected what was inside the pavilion. He had left members of his family and captives and returned to the Sultan with it. The Sultan had haited when head of Tughril was brought to him. Barbek arrived with the spoils to the Sultan and informed him about what had happened. The Sultan turned to Malek Muhammad who was head of the guards in advance, reproached him for his rashness in search at the risk of his safety. He raised his rank as well as that of his companions and particularly of Malek Mughlä and the archer with favour. He named him Tughril Kush. The Sultan returned to Lakhnawati and ordered for fixation of gallows on side of market of Lakhnawati. They were more than two farsakhs in length. They were fixed in the ground. He then assembled all those who were connected with Tughril-sections of persons attendants, and ordered all of them to be punished by beheading. A Oalander was brought for execution. He had a status with Tughril...... he used to address him as Sultan Durwish. Tughril had ordered three maunds of gold for him. The Qalander was given gold equivalent to iron he had. He had

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 968,

ethain (of iron) and chains for his followers etc. He and his comparation were executed. Chiefs were then executed on those gallows. It was a tenthe-city out of fright of punishment. Perished those who perished. He ordered those who had given refuge to Tughril on the places from Del journey with them in iron to Delhi. Punishment was a lesson to its residual-Din said: Such punishment was not inflicted in history. Epid spread as its consequence.

Sulfan Naşir ud-Din Mahmud Bughra Khan b. Ghiyathud-Din

He then summoned his son Bughra Khan to privacy and gave him sev admonitions. He assigned the saltanat of Lakhnawati to him includin dependencies and adjacent places. A green canopy was raised over his He permitted him to recite the Khutba in his name as was the case in saltanat of Tughluq Shah. He marched to Lakhnawati and accompanied him to some manzils. He met him with loyalty. He left him a sultan. was permitted to return. He gave him all that was left behind by Tr except gold and elephants. He gave him admonitions and was serious for execution. His first admonition was that one who ruled over Bengal established stable order in it, did not touch a wine glass. He did not ta sport and play during day time. Oh my son! do not drink to choking you rule over Bengal. Do not transgress the limit of sinfulness for estal ment of order in it. Be daring in execution of punishment as you saw me. world is based on annihilation. Its difficulties are easy. The difficulties of next world as well as the account of what we did are hard. I will be aske the day of judgment whether I gave you education in legal administratic not. How did you rule over such a region and ruled it in the interes creatures of God? I would fail to reply. He placed my throne for admini ing justice between disputants. I know what I kept invisible to your ey two or three days and also from your heart and turned to that which was for him. Keep men on your faith. I and you would be blamed for that. my son! I saw from leaders of religion during the regime of my pa Shamsud-Din. You would not see them and what I heard about their grea and admonition, you would not hear. Leaders of our time are for evil. Sultan avows what they prohibit. I was in the region while you are at clc it. You sleep in your negligence. Who will awaken you? Tears flowed : from his eyes. He ordered to beat the drum and returned to Delhi. Bu Khān followed him to some manzils. In a manzil, they embraced each other departure. There was no order from him. After he was free from after sur prayer. He sent for a band of his aged Muluk-Bughra Khan was by his When his scribe Shams presented himself, he should be cheerful with his

Original Text, p. 969.

dictate. When he made his appearance before him, he turned to aged persons, he said that he wanted to dictate admonitions for statesmanship to his sons as he cherished. If he does not listen to them, out of paternal kindness I have invited persons like you to be present for their adornment. You have passed so many years, you have long experience. You saw with your eyes what others heard with ears. Perhaps, he might be from those whom God wished to assemble for guidance. He then said to Shams Dabir (secretary) to write\* what he hoped to be his admonitions. Firstly, Mahmud became the ruler of this region Lakhnawati and its adjacent places. It was proper on his part to be loyal to Delhi ruler for with all its length and width, it was adjacent to Delhi, Since Delhi conquered it, it formed part of its administration. The Amirs were its administrators. Those who became enemies of Delhi Sultans saw what they saw. Oh my son! he who established independent power at Lakhnawati, does not enter Delhi. He is always afraid of him. For there are two Khuthas and two Sikkas. By finesse of politeness, guidance and affection to the governors. he orders, as far as possible to be inclined towards him but they establish stable power over the region. He who attacked Mahmud ruler of Delhi, he collects its residents. He does not rule without their support. He lives with peace. He is not bold enough to fight with him. He endures him. He does not guit Delhi for Lakhnawati. When he returned, Mahmud also returned to Lakhnawati. He had known it through experience. I say: Perhaps he came to Tughluq Shāh on this advice. There was no need for a wish. The fruit of action for admonition was return to his kingdom as an independent sultan. Secondly, Oh my son! The way of the "amil in region is a different thing while way of ruler of the region is something opposite to him. If the 'amil made a mistake or committed an error or relied upon what is evil, he dismisses him and takes him to account and punishes him. In spite of this, he does not sever hope of office, is not disappointed of life and does not waste his trouble. The ruler, when makes a mistake conceals his mistake but its effect is manifested in dispersion and rebellion. For his mistake, there is no dismissal, and no return but his life along with members of his family and subordinates is lost. He clarified to Mahmud that he wished under these circumstances to consult experienced men in administration of the region and administer in the best manner. If his desire is accomplished without consultation or he rectified his error, he should not feel proud thereof; nay, he should see to it gradually with personal disappointment in what his mistake was a good course and his unevenness even. This happened with the Phraohs. Thirdly, Mahmud got benefited with topics of admonitions for they were verified by his father and resulted in prayers for good. Fourthly, these admonitions made him deal with his subjects in accordance with law

Original Text, p. 970.

whether rich or poor. Sultans acted according to them from ancient ti in spite of new events taking place. An order passed remained, neithdeviated from it in the middle nor he changed at night what he passed ' day. For, that led to affairs of displeasure and disappointment of sta tended to rottenness of temperaments and needed treatment. Loyal creatures depended upon Mahmud's devotion to God, more or less. Las monition was to turn to recluses who had renounced the world and know of them and retirement upon their doors. They are those who do not wish thing not give trouble to those who sit with them. He should try to search persons. If one of them is found, that would be better for him in this work the next. He donned him with a robe, embraced him, kissed him between eyes and cheeks, wept, bade him farewell and parted to go to their Tesp places. I say: Dia ud-Din does not mention about death of Nasir-ud-Dir I do not know the date except that he says that it took place during the re of his son Mu'izzud-Din Kai Qobad to the end of his reign, 688 (1289). during the regime of Ghazi Tughluq Shah to his meeting in the year of d 724 (1323). He made Qadr Khan an amir in 735 (1134-35) during the r of Muhammad Shah son of Tughluq Shah. The historian makes no menti-Qadr Khan either about his death or dismissal. There is doubt about his : or dismissal due to four or five dates mentioned. Bahram Khan car Sonärgänw in 735 ( 1134-35 ) and ruled over Bengal,

Bahrām Khān died in 739 (1338). Fakhrud-Din conquered the kin He was a salāhdār of Bahrām Khān. Amir Qadr Khān had designs a him. He fought with him and defeated him, occupied Sonārgānw, seizer treasury, carried some of it on horse. Back and some remained. Amir Ḥt ud-Din said to him, that he made haste to carry on horse-back before m mischief coveted it. Qadr Khān replied that something remained of it after having carried it, it was sent to a place to be under view of the Sr Fakhrud-Din heard about it. It was due to his miserliness that his compa left it behind. He corresponded with them and assembled them on conditional legality of wealth. They killed Qadr ud-Din, divided his treasure and Faki Din returned to his kingdom, †

# Sulfan Fakhrud-Din Salahdar

Fakhr-ud-Din Salāhdār sat on the throne of salṭanat at Sonārgānw in year 734 (1332-33). His companions parted company with him because incident with Qadr Khān as referred to before. He then assembled them killed Qadr Khān. He returned to his throne. He sent his mamluk Mu to Lakhnawati. 'Ali Mubārak, lord of the Diwān-ul-Ard was in it. He atta

Original Text, 971.

Mukhlis and killed him in a conflict. He returned to Lakhnawat and occupied it. He sent a petition to the royal palace to appoint him 'Āmil at Lakhnawat. He sent Malek Yusuf Police Officer to it. He died on the way. Muhammad Shāh was thus free from an important affair. He waited for a suitable opportunity.

### Sulfan 'Alaud-Din 'Ali Mubarak.

'Alaud-Din 'Ali Mubarak ascended the throne of saltanat at Lakhnawati in the year 739 (1338). It was a blessing for him. He styled himself as Sultan 'Alaud-Din.

## Sultan Shamsud-Din Ilyas Haji Bhangara.

It so happened that Malek Ilyās Ḥāji killed 'Alāud-Din in 740 (1339) and ascended the throne of saltanat with the title of Sultān Shams-ud-Din. Shams-ud-Din moved on to Sonārgānw in 741 (1340) and made Fakhrud-Din a captive in war. He returned with him to Lakhnawat and struck off his head by his hand. He occupied Bengal with all its frontiers. He continued as its sultān during the course of his life. It remained with his heir for a certain period.

In 754 (1353), the Sultan received intelligence that Shams-ud-Din Ilyas was at Tirbut and that he had stretched his hands to nearby places. He marched towards Lakhnawati in the month of Shawwal of the year. On his encampment at Bawdah, Hindu chiefs presented themselves in his Diwan. During the close of Muhammad Shah's reign, they took advantage of the disturbed political condition and rebelled along with others. When the Sultan crossed the river Saraw, Ilvas came out from Tirbut to Pandua and engaged himself in collecting all the materials within his power for garrison. Rāi of Gorakhpur was a notable person\* of this side with a number of followers with Gorakhpur under him. He saw the preventive preparations of Shamsud-Din Ilyas against encounter of the Sultan. He was a powerful rebel before the saltanat. He made amends from the very beginning by means of loyalty. He made two halkas (one halka is equal to ten elephants) of elephants as a means for kissing the carpet and presented himself in the Diwan of the Sultan. He succeeded in winning his good will and remained with his people in attendance upon him. The Sultan raised his rank with a gold-embroidered robe of honour, studded with jewels, a jewel studded belt, welladorned horses, a canopy and a crown—the two emblems of saltanat for him on this side. In like manner, Rai Khorsah called Jahtsh with his name of Khorsah came to the palace. He was greatly favoured except with a crown and canopy. He remained at the stirrup. He brought the tribute of the period of his disloyalty of his own accord to the treasury. He then returned with permission to Khorsah. The Råi of Gorakhpur travelled with the Sultan to Pandua with his horse and foot. He issued an order for him for preservation of the limit of

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 973.

his territory from opposition and issued a proclamation to that effect. What had happened from him before issue of the order was made null and void. Hemistich: In this way, we fulfilled his desire. Shams-ud-Din had garrisoned himself within the fort of Pandua. Sultan learnt about the designs of the Sultan. He fled to Akdala. It was near Pandua. He garrisoned himself in it from the side of water. There was no way to it except by crossing with boats while on the other side there was a forest, dangerous to pass through. He garrisoned himself with tried warriors and ordered its residents to live between water and the forest. On the encampment of the Sultan at Takhat, he marched alone to Tirhut. On the outskirts, all the chiefs assembled for expression of loyalty. They were favoured with robes of pleasure and ennobled with kindness. He returned to Jakhat and marched from it to Pandua. As it was a centre of Shams-ud-Din, it abounded in buildings and gardens. He did not remove himself to Akdāla with him except swordsmen. On account of that, he announced general amnesty to the elite and the common people excluding residents of his house and his belongings. There was security except for the horses and the retinue of his house who were done to death. The Sultan encamped at the river opposite to the fort of Akdāla. Becoming helpless for resistance, Shams-ud-Din continued to attack from the garrison. A plan occurred to him to send him what could not be achieved by the sword. There was plenty of water on that side in all seasons of the year. In monsoon, water begins to flow in torrent.\* It blockades all roads till rise of the Canopus. Supply of provision was cut off. There was shortage of provisions in the army. Many persons suffered because of isolation. The pavilion was on a low ground. When it rained, the ground was full of water which prevented pegs of tents to be firm and tents to be pitched. There were plenty of mosquitoes as long as barley-seeds biting like wasp. Its poison remained for most of the time. It did not take out its tail instantly. It spreads by rubbing. Its poison then disappears. Imagine a depressed ground, and the bite preventing also stay on the ground. The Sultan departed for a siege of Akdāla. He planned first of all to encamp at the roads round around the pavilion. He was free from it. The Rai of Gorakhpur was in attendance. He was skilful in the treatment of the ground and its medicine. He ordered for collection of all the materials of crossing. Most of them were in his stores. He added those that were not there. As was his habit, his tent was never without a water-skin and water-bag. No swordsman was without it. He blew in the water-skin as every one of them suspended it. In time, they filled them with water, attacked the fort and conquered it in the name of Allah. He showed kindness to all residents of Akdāla on its conquest by force. He granted safety to all those who did not fight with him and offered no resistance. In the

Original Text, p. 974.

meantime, the ground had become hollow due to stay of humber of animals, and fifthy air rose up. He ordered to remove the pavilion to some other place. With his transfer, voices of common people, vagabonds etc. rose up with joy due to change of the place and departure to spacious ground from narrow road with pleasant atmosphere till shouts reached Shamsud-Din and his men. In the meanwhile, they became certain about return of the Sultan from the fort. They passed with knowledge of God's acceptance of his prayers. He came out from the fort with elephants, horse and feet, crossed the river and arrayed elephants in front for war. The advance-guard, wings and the centre were arranged for review in the maidan. The Sultan prostrated in thanks for acceptance of his\* prayers. He rode the horse and encountered him. Dis ud-Din said: He put him to flight at the first assault leaving behind canopy, drum, flag and elephanta. There were forty-four rings viz. eight hundred and eighty elephants. ( Halka or ring, according to him consisted of 20 elephants otherwise a ring means ten elephants). It was the cause of his arrogance. He carried the canopy and the sword was taken away by most of his companions. The surface of the earth was covered with them. Its number was beyond enumeration. Dia ud-Din said: The Sultan returned to Tarad which he had conquered at the first epcampment. He was wonderstruck at this coincidence. None of his men was lost. Those who had encamped at the pavilion brought to him all the belongings left behind by Shamsud-Din along with horses of his companions who were killed and fled away. The elephants were of approbation for those who were their examiners because they were exceptionally good. There was none like them at the time with any sultan of Delhi. When the Sultan held the review, he turned to his muluk and said, "These elephants were the cause of vanity of Ilvas and impelled him to resist the ruler of Delhi. If he had no vanity, he would have been loyal. It is narrated from great sultans that the elephants are good in the stables of those who are deserving of saltanat. If he had gained a victory, he would have become dominant, he would have produced calamities and revolts. That would have become the cause of his ruin. On the second day of victory, men of the pavilion and turbaned persons-Muslims and Hindus got themselves ready and assembled in the expanse of the gate of the Sultan requesting permission for sack of Akdala. Mischief-mongers responded to it but they did not touch those who had perished. People left inside the fort were weak. They were treated with kindness. Belongings of elephants were in fortification of the fort. Ilyas came out with that to us, surrendered them to us and returned with disappointment as he was a lower. In like manner, the horses were ridden by his friends and abandoned in the maidan and they perished. The most important thing was that what was mine returned to me.

Original Text, p. 975,

Members of his family were in guarantee of power, safety and generosity. A wards, everything became easy. This victory, for example, was of ill-om efforts. It passed into a proverb. He then ordered to beat the drum, marched to Tirhut and Jakhat. He posted an amir, at every place, of stre and might. He ordered by public proclamation that he who had made a car in Bengal or fell a Bengali slave into his hands, he should be set free from manzil. On his encampment at Tafarābād he permitted the chiefs and head to return to their places. On his encampment at Karah and Manekpur. turned to his men by section, raised their ranks, liberalised their means of hood and did good to religious leaders, distributed alms among the poor then all of them marched forward. At the manzil of Kaul, the first man : to receive and congratulate him which continued and robes of honour favours also continued. A'zam-i-Humāyun Khān Jahān, officers of the L ul-Vizarat, accountants, police officer, chief justice, men of turbans assen around him for congratulations when robes of honour were distributed accou to ranks. When he crossed Kabulpur from the usual bridge and encampe the shore, Khan Jahan A'zam-i-Humayun petitioned him for what was r for offering from property, gold and silver ornaments, jewellery, well-add horses etc. These things were delightful for the eye and of distant report. came to Delhi on 12th Sha'ban, 755 (1353-54). Husam Khan states in Tabaqat that Malek Tajud-Din, envoy of Shamsud-Din came, on beha Shams-ud-Din's loyalty to the Sulfan in 756 (1355). He was pleased for return for protection of the world. He had stated in his petition for accept of recitation of Khutba in his name. He granted his request and appointed in his kingdom. He permitted his bajib to go and companions from his such as Sayf-ud-Din, the Police Officer. When he was at Bihar he received of Shams-ud-Din's death in the year. Sayf-ud-Din returned to his Sultan.

## Sikander b. Shams-ud-Din Bhangra

Sikander son of Shams-ud-Din ascended the throne of his kingdom it (1358-59). The Sultan marched to Lakhnawati. Sikander heard abou arrival. He sent his envoy to him. He was accompanied by Sayyid Rast When the hajib returned, the Sultan sent a letter with Sayyid Rasuldar. arrival was esteemed and sent presents with him along with fifty eleph When the Sultan came near from Akdala, Sikander garrisoned himself. He corresponded for loyalty and the Sultan met him and returned from him. he was away from him, his envoy joined him on the way along with presents were elephants which he liked numbering three hundred and set During the regime of the Sultan, they were for Zafar Khan son of Wa'

Original Text, p. 976.

Mulk, ruler of Gujarāt during the reign of his son Muhammad Shāh from \* Sonārgānw. Sikander son of Shams-ud-Din Ilyās Hāji died in his capital Akdāla in 768 (1366-67) leaving his son Ghiyāthud-Din as his heir.

### Ghiyathud-Din

Ghiyātbud-Din son of Sikander sat on the throne at Akadāla. He died in 775 (1372-73).

## Sultan us-Salāțin

Sultan us-Salatin son of Ghiyathud-Din sat on his throne. He died in 785 (1382-83).

### Shamsud-Din II

Shamsud-Din sat on the throne after Sultan-us-Salatin and died in 790 (1388).

### Kans

Kans conquered the kingdom. He was an unbeliever. He died in 797 (1394).

## Jalalud-Din

His son succeeded him. He embraced Islām and styled himself as Sultān Jalālud-Din. He died in 812 (1409-10). Hāfiz Muḥammed Sakhāwi has given his account in his history "al-Daw ul-Lame" in the history of men of oth century. He said: Ialal-ud-Din Abul Muzaffar was the king of Bengal. His father was known as Kans. Shihab mamluk of Sayf ud-Din Hamza son of Ghiyāthud-Din A'zam Shāh son of Sikander Shāh son of Shams-ud-Din took revenge on him. He conquered Bengal and made him a captive. He further said that his son took revenge upon Shihāb. He embraced Islām and called himself Muhammad. He conquered cities from him and established ways and usages of Islam. He renovated what his father destroyed of masjids and such other buildings. He followed Abi Hanifa. He built a frightful madresa at Mekka. He sent a gift to Ashraf Barastari, ruler of Egypt and announced his following to him. He sent a robe of honour with Sharif. He donned it. He sent a present for the Khalifa. He sent those presents with 'Ala Bukhari to † Egypt and Damascus. He died in Rabi' II. His son succeeded him. He was fourteen years old. Our Shaik had made mention of him in his 'Anba'. I say, he mentions about Husam Khan's death at Mekka. It was a pious deed left after him. In like manner, 'Ala Bukhari too died.

## Ahmad b. Jalal ud-Din

His son Ahmad succeeded him to the throne. Husam Khan said that he died in 828 (1424-25). He left no successor.

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, 977.

### Nasir

Nasir sat on the throne for seven days. He was killed. He was a me of Ahmad. He ruled after him.

## Nasir Shah

He was a descendant of Shamsud-Din Ilyas Bhangara. People en comforts during his regime. He died in 862 (1457-58).

### Barik Shah

Bärik Shäh ruled the kingdom after him. He died in 879 (1472).

## Yusuf Shah

Yuanf Shah ruled after him. He died in 887 (1481-82).

### Sikander Shah

Sikander Shāh ruled after him. He had no worth. He was deposed. ruled for one day and a half.

#### Fatch Shah

Fatch Shah ruled after him. He was a worthy king. He was from family of Sultans of Bengal. His household had five thousand retinue of n in palace of the Sultan as guards for lord of the palace. At rise of dawn, Sultan showed himself from the palace. They came to him for usual bles and returned. The eunuch clients who formed retinue of the nauba, car him. When the Sultan came out as usual, they killed him in 894 (1489).

### Barik Shah al-Tawashi

Tawashi sat on the throne after him. He styled himself as Barik! The Amirs killed him. His rule lasted for two months and a half.

#### Firux Shah

Firuz Shāh sat on the throne after him. None has mentioned as to he was. He died at the close of the year 899 (1494).

### Mahmud b. Firux

Mahmud sat on the throne after Firuz Shāh. He was killed by Mu: Habashi in concert with the nauba in 900 (1494-95).

## Muzaffar Shah Habashi

Muzaffar Shah Habashi sat on the throne. 'Alaud-Din 'Askari killed in concert with the nauba in the year 903 (1497).

### 'Alāud-Din al-'Askari

'Alaud-Din 'Askari sat on the throne after him. He was wise. He good to the people. He loved the muluk, amirs, courtiers and eminent me

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 979.

the kingdom and behaved with humility towards them. He removed the naubatirom the palace. This custom disappeared after him. In the early part of his reign, there were salahdars for certain muluk of a territory. They learnt state administration from him. Bengal prospered during his reign. He was graced to place some reciters of the Holy Quran at the mausoleum, descent of lights, discloser of secrets, means of security, blessing of faith Mawlana al-Shaikh Nur titled Qutb i-'Alam, may his grave be sanctified and derived benefits from him. This sort of endowment for continued for travellers, poor men. Such places were known as Langar in Hind. Every year, the mausoleum was visited by men from the capital Akdala on the saint's anniversary at Sirpur He died in 929 ( 1520).

## Nasib Shah son of 'Alaud-Din

His son Nasib Shāh succeeded him to the throne. At the time of Zahirud-Din Bābur Mughal, he gave asylum to Afghāns of the Ibrāhimiya. He gave them refuge and ennobled their arrival. It happened in 932 (1525). Maḥmud son of Sikander son of Bahlol took refuge with him. The Ibrāhims assembled around him. He fled to Jaunpur from Bābur. Maḥmud's sister married him. It was hinted at before during the regime of Babur. During his regime Daryā Kbān Nawhāni established an independent kingdom at Hājipur Patna. Sher Shāh was one of his amirs Muḥammad Khān Sur conquered Sasrām. He came to him in hope of help from him as stated before. Bengal was under jurisdiction of Delhi. It abandoned paramountcy of Delhi from the reign of Shams ud-Din Ilyās Bhangara to the reign of Sher Shāh. Such was the case during the regime of Muḥammad Bakhtiyār and that of 'Iwad. Then during the reign of Sher Shāh it came back to Delhi after one hundred and a fraction. After Salim Shāh b. Sher Shāh, it cast off its jurisdiction for two years. It then returned to Delhi during the salṭanat of Jalālud-Din Akbar.

Original Text, p. 980.

### CHAPTER XXXIII

## The Sur Dynasty (cont.)

## Humayun and Shor Shah

This is the substance of what Abul Fadl says about the fortune and misfortune of Sher Shah and Humayun. When Humayun returned to Mandu from Guiarat, he liked to stay there because of water and climate being congenial to him. Tardi Beg came to him from Champaner. He informed him about his brothers being united against him. He hastened to Agra from Mandu to forestall them. He came across them on the way, met them and reproached them. They deviated from passing by Mandu. He was there. They apologised him and he took a pledge from them. All of them journeyed to Agra. He received a report about Sher Shah that he conquered Chunar and that his son Outb Khan son of Sher Shah was behind him and marched to Bengal. He therefore, collected his horse and foot and marched to Chunar. It is an impregnable fort. He encamped at it. Rumi Khan Mustafa son of the sister of Salman Turkoman began to prepare subterraneous passages (sābāṭ) and reached the hole (mine). One night Qutb Khan came out and learnt as to what man was he. They sought amnesty. Mustafa sought permission which was granted to them. They came out from the fort and surrendered it. Were it not for him, the conquest would have been delayed. Mu'ayyad Beg Mughal, a favourite amir, did not like to \* give them amnesty. He contented himself by cutting their hands. They were ten thousand. That happened. Rumi Khan was poisoned. He was under tutelage of Bahadur. He proved perfidious to him. It was a defect in his perfection. Other persons prevented him from so doing. He was poisoned because of instigation of jealous persons. It happened in 942 (1535). After the death of Rumi Khān, Nasib Shāh son of 'Alā ud-Din, ruler of Bengal came to Humayun when he was camping at the plain of Chunar, running from Sher Shah. He bore a wound outside his body and inwardly in his heart. He was received with favour and regard. Hindu Beg was appointed Amir at Jaunpur while Beg Mirak at Chunar. Humayun then marched to Bengal. At Patna, men of judgment met him and said to him, "There is plenty of water on this side and there remains no passage except by wading through water in all seasons of the year. In monsoon, the place turns into a sea and movement becomes difficult. It is better to stop operation against Sher Shah till rise of the Canopus. It would be easy then to move for men and animals." Nasib Shah said, "Sher

-1

Original Text, p. 981.

Shah did not settle in the kingdom now but during the period of pause, it would be easy, with movement, to almost establishing his authority. It would be difficult to expel him after settlement." Humavun songht counsel and started on the road. On his encampment in the plain of Monghyr he received news of Sher Shah that he had sent his son Jalal Khan to Kari in company of the amirs Khwas Khan, Martad, Sarmast Khan and Pahad Khan. It is a gate to Bengal. He came out with those who were with him and with what he had, to proceed to Jharkand. On this report, Ibrahim Beg Khabuk, Bahram Beg, Jahangir Quli Beg and Nihāl Beg were prepared to go against him from Bhagalpur. When they encamped on the environs of Kari they engaged themselves to take rest when Jalal Khan fell upon them. He cast the shade and surrounded them. They did not offer battle to him except Bahram Khan with a small band of men. He came out from his pavilion as they came out. The pavilion remained with horses, arms and other materials as a share to one who got it and Jalai Khan returned with spoils to Kari. Humayun received a report of it. He marched in person and met Jalai Khan with his father. Sher Shah was there. He said to him." When I sent him to Kari, he would be there. The Mughals were not prepared. When he heard about them, he joined with him. He refused to depart from his place. There was no trace of him among them. When he killed some of them and took what they had left, he did not trouble himself to return from Humāyun, On Humāyun's encampment at Kari, his brother Hindāl Mīrzā\* asked permission to march to the centre of the region Tirbut to prepare for war and enter Bengal from that side. Sher Shah stationed himself at his place to get information about Humāyun's conquest of Bengal. It took place in 045 (1538). In the meanwhile, Sher Shah marched to Rohtas and encamped at the side from its foot. There was acquaintance between him and the lord of Rohtas which led at the time to solicitation. He sent a person of sagacity to him to inform him as to what happened between him and the Mughals. He forbade him to carry the family and the treasure and to fight alone with them. He collected his mind to seek a place for them nearby in the fort. It would be an obligation from him. The envoy met the Raja Champa b. Barahman and conveyed his request. He acceded to his request. Sher Shah ordered six hundred litters. An armed man sat inside a litter while four men carried the litter. After entry into the gate, he advised them with sufficient haste till he knows them. Inmates of the fort saw that perfidy was played against them. Men acted according to his admonition. Sher Shah saw them. He proclaimed amnesty and met the raja Champa and apologised to him and requested him for stay at the foot till he pacifies himself from the Mughals. He then garrisoned the fort. Men were left behind. He descended from it. He was alone and

Original Text, p. 982.

tried for search of the Mughals. He blockaded the passage to Bengal so much so that a bird could not pass through it.

(I say: The stratagem played by Sher Shah in taking Rohtas is the same as adopted by Qaşir b. Sa'ad in proverbs and maimed Qaşir of his nose. Its account is: There lived Jazimat ul-Abrash b. Mälek b. 'Amer al-Tanaukbi. Al-Azadi said that Aba al-Zabba killed Malih b. al-Bara, king of Hazar and cast her in Syria. Her name was Fāra'. She drew hairs. When they spread, she covered them. For that reason, she was called al-Zabba (a woman with luxuriant hairs). She was known by that name. She had plenty of hairs. Ibn-i-Kalabi said: she was the most beautiful woman of our age. She got attached in Rum. She spoke the Arabic language. She was very bold. He heard about boldness. She was in Rum. Men assembled around her. She spent money. She returned to the region of her father. She became the ruler. Jazima departed from her. She built two cities opposite to each other on the Euphrates. She made a fence between them below the ground and fortified \* them. She had abandoned men. She was 'Azara'. Jazima suspended hostilities for a period. She married him and sent for him to string a bow for her near him. He killed her father as said above. His companions consulted him. They advised him to go to her. Qasir was left behind them. He was a wise man. He said "Women guide husbands. He rebels and goes to a place, Bakka, He consults them. They said what they knew. He said to him, "Qaşir departed. He twisted in your face. He refused and went further, saw armies and received them." He said to Qaşir "What is wisdom?" He said, "I abandoned wisdom at Bakka. It went like this." Qaşir rode a horse for Jazima called 'Asā, liberated and took Jazima. When he met al-Zabbā, she ordered him to cut off arteries of his hand. He eaves-dropped her till he died. This story is told in length by a last literary man, Jamal ud-Din Muhammad b. Banana in his book "Sarah al-'Uyun" and "Sharh-i-Risala" of Ibn Zaydun. When Qaşir parted company with Jazima and returned to his city, he was planning for her death. He maimed his nose, wounded his cheek, went to her saying that 'Adi son of the sister of Zazima did that. He took refuge with her when he fled from him and took shelter with her. He was always kind to her by way of trade: he acquired wealth till she placed confidence in him. He learnt secrets of her palace and his maintenance. He placed two men of 'Adi tribe in sacks of corn with arms on a camel like a caravan moving till he entered her city and killed her till he came to her outlay. It is a famous story which happened before the birth of Prophet Masih may peace be on him. It is copied from "Sarah al-'Uyun''. It is shortened upto the portion where he met with death by fraud. It is a very long story.

Original Text, p. 983.

Muhammad Awfi has narrated a similar story of the Khilafat of Zun Nurain Amir ul-Muminin Uthman, may God be pleased with him. Its substance is t Amir 'Abdullah b. 'Amer b. Kariz encamped at Nishāpur. He made strenuous efforts but found no way for conquest by might. He deviated from sword to deceit. He sent a man to the ruler of Nishāpur conveying to him that he wanted to put a deposit at Nishapur. If he promised preservation of it with him, he would bring it by travel from his city to deposit with him. It consists of household goods and baggage which are under his possession in the tents while the\* camels are few due to death among them. There is no way to place them and leave them. If you write out a pledge, I may send them to you to get them when I demand them on my way from Nishapur to Sarakhs on cameis. When residents of Nishāpur heard this, they got delighted and accepted to keep his goods as deposit. They wrote to him about confidence and to send those goods to him. In the meantime, he placed men in boxes and carried them to the city at the approach of evening. He beat the drum of journey, got ready to take it. They thought that he had left his goods. When the night spread to make them unconscious in sleep, men came out, surpended swords, fenced the Amir of the city, attacked it and conquered it. This is copied from Jame' ul-Hikayat. In like manner, stories of victories are written from the time of Adam, may peace be on him to our day. Such paths are adopted and destinations shortened and success obtained. Time is not without a wise man and a negligent person, a learned man and an illiterate person, intelligent and stupid, middle-aged and a child. God does with them what He wishes whether one wished or not.)

When the decrees of fate are helpful They join helpless with the Powerful.

Hindāl Mirzā received a report of Rohtās. He secretly corres ponded with Sher Shāh. He came from Tirbut to Agra and alighted in his house under the order. Humāyun divided the kingdom after victory. He engrossed himself in ease and comfort and passed his time in negligence without caring for its consequences. He and his companions continued in the same manner when they received intelligence about Sher Shāh's attack on Jaunpur. He had gained a victory over Banāras and killed its Amir Mir Fadli. He had learnt about Hindāl Mirza's stay at Agra. He was at Jaunpur for the death of Hindu Beg Bābā Beg Jalāir father of Shāham Khān who died at Burhānpur at the time of Akbar's invasion on the fort of Asir in 1008 (1599-1600). Bābā Beg wrote to Hindāl Mirzā seeking his help againt Sher Shāh etc. He did not reply him except Yusuf Beg b. Ibrāhim Chābuk. He came out from his region of Oudh for Bengal. He found nothing on the way to prevent him from coming to Jaunpur. It was before Sher Shāh attacked it. He served as an advance-guard to the army of

Original Text, p. 984.

Jaunpur coming in that side and intending for an opportunity for the pavilion\* of Sher Shah, Jalai Khan heard about it. He intended to attack him. He came back running from him to Jaunpur. Jalal Khan made an assault on Jaunpur. Bābā Beg wrote to Humāyun about the exact state of affairs. In the meantime, Mir Faqir 'Ali marched from Delhi to Agra and met Hindai Mirza, He gave an admonition to him. He replied that he was on a march to Jannpur. Taking permission, he went to Yadgar Nasir Mirza. He was at Kalpi to join Hindal Mirza in his march for help to Baba Beg. In the meanwhile. Hindal Mirza, in his preparation to cross the river, heard about arrival of Khusraw Beg Kokaltāsh and a party of amirs from Bengal to go to the ruler of Kanawi Mirza Nuruddin Muhammad. Hindal Mirza sent a message to Khusraw Beg requesting him to come to him. His messenger was Mahammad Ghazi Tughbaj. His reply was, " If Hindal Mirza decided upon independent Saltanat, we would come to him otherwise we go to Kamran Mirza who was at Lahore". Muhammad Ghazi returned with the reply. He said to him "Limit judgment in their presence. If you resolve upon saltanat, they would support you and aid you. I advise you that between you and Humayun, they would be put in captivity." He returned to them with a reply in accordance with their demand. In the meantime, Shaikh Bahlol who had faith in the Hindi region came to him-he was a man who sat with Humayun with a letter from him. Hindal Mirza received him and regarded his arrival as noble. He heard him and executed an order of Humayun when brought to him. It coincided with the arrival of Nuruddin Mahammad Mirzs. He was an intermediary between Hindal and Khusraw. Khusraw Beg heard about Hindal's resolution for Saltanat on the arrival of Shaikh Bahlol. He said to Muhammad Ghāzi "You went in search but Shaikh Bahlol had come with a letter of his brother. How can we trust his word? Return to him and say" If you are firm on your resolution, we do not trust you or you kill Bahlol. Do not write to us. "Nuruddin approved of his killing. He ordered for it. He seized him by collar, crossed the river with him and publicly cut off his head. Khusraw Beg came to Agra. Hindal Mirza ascended the throne of his brother. After accession he went to his mother Dildar Begum. She forbade him to take that step. He saw her in clothes of mourning. He said to her "What is the meaning of these black clothes on this day of auspiciousness as opposed to joy? "He said, "Oh my son! you have introduced innovation which will ultimately be not praised. What I see you is nothing but killed. Hence I am in black garments out of mourning for you. There is grief for you.

Admonition of friends is wind in my ears (futile) It is wind which augments fire.

Original Text, 985.

Mir Faqir 'Ali was at Kālpi. When he heard this, he went to Yadgar Nasir Mirzā at Delhi and prepared him for its defence and forbade him against Hindal Mirzā-Hindāl Mirzā assailed it. Mir Fagir 'Ali wrote to Kāmrān Mirzā to come. He replied to him. On his encampment at a town, Hindal returned to Agra from Delhi. Mir Faqir 'Ali went to Kamran Mirza, met him and returned to Delhi. Kāmrān Mirza marched to Agra. When he was at a distance of one manzil from it, Hindal went to Alwar. Kamran Mirza entered into the capital and met Dildar Begum. He sent her to Hindal. She returned with him to him. When she met him—she was his mother—she placed a piece of cloth ( scarf ) round his neck. She felt attracted towards him. She embraced him and the forgot what had happened between them and displayed more favour. Nuruddin Muhammad Mirzā, Khusraw Beg Kokaltāsh etc presented themselves and thus this meeting turned into a meeting of forgiveness and goodwill. Yadgar Nasii Mirzā then arrived from Delhi. He met Kāmrān, Hindāl and his companions. On the second day after the meeting, he chanced to go towards Jaunpur. The crossed the river on the third day. Humavun awoke from slumber of negligence, He assembled his companions and left Jahangir Quli behind him as his Na'it and marched to Agra. Sher Shah learnt about his march. He returned from Jaunpur to Rohtas on which he had designs. Humayun turned from him to Bengal otherwise he would have pursued him and engaged him it person. During the course of movement of spies, he learnt that Humayan had encamped at Tirbut. He marched in his wake. Humayun crossed the rive Gangā intending for Agra. It was said to him about Sher Shah that he was it his wake and that he should not be separated. He returned to the river. His companions said to him "You see that we are in a small number. The animals have become weak. It is proper to pause at the river till the animals ge refreshed and regain strength. They would wade through water. Similarly the soldiers would get breathing time and those who have lagged be-hinc due to fatigue would come and the Dehalvi contingents would come to vot while the Amirs of round-about places would join you. "Humayun refused He wanted to cross the river. He encamped on side of the river. There was a conflict between them about the place which was said to be Thatha in the distric of Bhojpur and between them was the river Kanbas. Humayun built a bridge The advance-guards of both the armies began to come and go. Humāyur exaggerated for search of his brothers but he found none of them. Sher Shat conveyed messages for peace due to incidents of the advance-guards and finally he wanted to plunge into war. He then resolved upon deceit. One night he came out from his pavilion and abandoned what he had. He had controlled ditch, arrayed the cannons while such was the pavilion of Humayun. He ther walked alone without the knowledge of enemy. After a day and two nights, he

Original Text, p. 987.

appeared with the dawn from behind the Mughals. He was in the centre, his son Jalal Khan on the right wing and his slave Khawas Khan was in command of the left wing. When he was with the Mughals through remissness, he was in the moment of severity. He raised the shout of "Allah-o-Akbar" with the trumpet, the pavilion was rent with shouts. Those who were outside the pavilion rose up. A small number of Mughals came out from the pavilion on horse with saddle and bridle running to the river but the armour. There was no way to it. Humayun came out from his cupola not knowing what to do to take out his wife Haji Begum. Most men of the pavilion had come out to the river side. He made no effort except to turn to Bābā Beg Jalāir. Tardi Beg and Faui Beg and instructed for amendment before the attack. He rode and went towards the river. He impelled them and those who joined them in expelling from the tents. There was deceit among them. Those who were at the flap of the tent were killed in preventing entry of Wafa Kish and Mir Pahelwan Badakhshi. They were captured. When Humayun terminated to the bridge, he found it broken. He dived through the river on horse. Many of his men sought precedence in diving when they were carried away by water. Those who escaped with safety and came near the shore, were overwhelmed by water. He dismounted from the saddle, played with waves, he felt that Allah was near him. He took him by the hand. He knew him, swam him to the shore with water-skin which he had. When he came out from water, he stood at the shore, calmed himself, asked him who he was and what was his name. He said, "Khidr, water-carrier and the name Nizām Awliyā." He thanked him and promised him authority as a sultan for half a day on throne of the state. He then sat on an elevation on side of the river looking for the followers and sub-ordinates who were in a submerged state in water diving hard to come to the shore. Some of them sang extempore\*

# Oh Almighty God! You alone are Mighty

You give kingship to Farid Ḥasan—You surrender Humāyun's soldiers to fish. The amirs who were swept away by water were Maḥammad Zamān Mirzā b. Badi 'uz-Zamān, Mirzā b. Sultān Husain Mirzā, ruler of Khurāsān, Mawlānā Muḥammad Pir 'Ali and Mawlāna Qāsim 'Ali Sadr while 'Askari Mirza son of Bābur emerged with safety. All those who came out safely from sword and water assembled around their Sultān Humāyun. They journeyed with them to Agra and entered the palace in safety. This incident took place on shore of the Gangā at the crossing-place of Jausa, on 9th Safar, 946 (1539). Sher Shāh collected, after the victory, what was left by Humāyun in the pavilion and on the shore of river in shape of cannons, horses, elephants, goods and baggage and what he had brought from Bengal. He divided all those things among his

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 988.

followers except cannons, and elephants. They fell to his share. From among women was Hāji Begum. All women were sent to Agra along with Hāji Begum. He left a good name for what he did even to his enemies. He then marched to Bengal. When he encamped outside Bihār, he paused while his son Jalāl Khān journeyed for expulsion of Humayun's representatives. Great among them was Jahangir Quli Beg. He strove to assemble the Mughals around him but he failed to do so. He then came out submissively along with those who were with him including residents. Sher Shah wrote for his safety till he reached Agra. Bengal thus was occupied by Sher Shah. He returned to Jaunpur and conquered it. His son Qutb Khān made an assault on Kālpi. He sent an amir from his side to Etawah. Yadgar Nasir Mirza and Qasim Husain Khan Uzbek marched against him from Agra. Sikander Sultan joined them from the side of Kamran Mirza. They all assembled in the maidan. It was a fierce battle wherein Qutb Khan son of Sher Shah was killed. As Humayun was at Agra, he made constant efforts to make amends for what was missed. He used to win over his brothers and impel them to attack Sher Shah as far as possible by aid in money. There would be no stability for him but there would be croockedness. He was the eldest among brothers---Askari Mirza Hindal Mirza, and Näsir ud-Din Yadgar\* Mirza—Kāmrān Mirzā and the capital of his kingdom was Kābul. Lahore and its dependencies also were included in his dominion. In the north it extended to the limit of Rubah while in the south to Shamasa. The number of those who were present with him at Agra was twenty thousand while those who were absent can be imagined similarly. Brothers, with extensiva territory and vastness of followers, were similarly noted for bravery and fame. Humayun, therefore, made efforts in partiality and in refractoriness. When news of Jaunpur's victory spread, he was asked to come out with him. He made excuses. He granted permission to the greatest amir Khwāja Kalān to march with army to Lahore, He set out for it with Mirza Haidar b. Muhammad Husain Gurgan and his mother-Humayun's mother's sister. On arrival of-Humāyun to Agra, Mirzā Haidar met him. Humāyun loved him much and was specially favourable to him. By nature, he was more disposed towards Kämran. He sought permission of Humayun on his departure to Lahore. He permitted him to depart on his excuse of illness. Humayun said to him, "In point of lineage, we are equal. In point of affection, I am more than he. In point of manliness, I have greater claims than he. It is departure to his house and I allowed him. I am in need of a person like you at the time of my march against an enemy. It is obligatory on you not to give preference to my brother over me just at this time. I do not know whether he is for me or against me. His supposed illness is accepted. Are you not in need of a physician for

Original Text, p. 989.

treatment?" He further said, It is not hidden from one who is clement and how can he be severe. If the end of this war is according to the wish of the Afghans, it was not possible for the Mughals to retire to a corner of Hind according to his desire. How Kamran deceived himself with. What he was entired. He wanted to remain in the country of my enemy inspite of what he had in my regime. By no means. Man is found out whether he is noble or ignoble at the time of trial. When Humayun did not abandon him, its cause was an excuse. He knew the consequence of his conciliation. In the rotation of time, a foreigner is meritorious with him. He is intimate with a barbarian. How can a person be equal in lineage, affection, manliness and might. A brother is a brother in adversity not in prosperity. He ordered him and wished him safety and remained with him till he prepared himself for Kashmir on his departure from Hind towards Sind. Kämran left behind to help Humávun from his side, Mirzā 'Abdullāh Mughal with three thousand horse and went to\* Lahore. Humayun then prepared himself, came out of Agra, marched to Bhoipur and encamped on the Ganga. Sher Shah came and encamped against him on a side. Humayun built a bridge at the ford of Bhojpur. One day, the elephant of Sher Shah destroyed it. Its name was Kardbaz. It is said that the elephant aimed it with a stone from the cannon and it gave way. After the destruction of bridge, Humayun saw it one day when he was travelling with his baggage on shore of the river lengthwise to encamp opposite to Kanawi. Sher Shah also marched with his baggage. He was moving and they saw each other when encamped at the river in opposition, the river intervening between them. Their halt prolonged for a period. One day, Humayun began, He was separating amirs with a party from among the sons of Timur among whom was Muhammad Sultan Mirza and with him were his two sons, Ulugh Mirza and Shah Mirza. He got an opportunity with their march and apprehended dripping. He decided for war in favour or against him. He prepared a bridge of wood, crossed the river, encamped, surrounded the pavilion with a ditch preventing his entry, distributed cannons in different directions. Sher Shah did similarly. Such was the fashion in assault, in safety or in war to the last of the age. Advance-guards of both parties were in movement rightly or wrongly. In the meantime, the sky poured down, there was lightning, it thundered and it rained as the season had become mature. Humāyun's pavilion was on depressed ground. Water collected in it and stay became difficult at that spot. They decided to change the pavilion to an elevated place to prevent collection of water. It was 9th Muharram. Humayun got ready, rode out and stood in the centre while Hindal Mirza was in forefront, 'Askari Mirza on the right wing and Yādgār Nāşir Mirzā on the left wing. Haider Mirzā has given an account in his

Original Text. p. 990.

Tarikh-i-Rashidi.": Humayun was on the left that day. The army was so arranged that the right could cause disaster to the left. Between him and the amir of the left wing, there were twenty battalions. The artillery chief, Muḥammad Khan Rumi, Ustad Anmad b 'Ali, Ustad of Rumi and Husain Khalfat moved and advanced with cannons. Implements of naphtha were taken to the maidan where Humayun was stationed. They were arranged in face of the Afghans. They were bound together with chains. Wicks for being flamed waited for an order. Loads of the pavilion were brought out and collected. Humāyun ordered Amir of the Pavilion Peshraw Khān to move to the elevated place suitable for descent. He said to his companions to oppose the Afghans, defending ourselves.\* Let us move him to the destination. In the meantime, the pavilion advanced when Sher Shah showed himself in the centre, Jalal Khan in the forefront, Khwās Khān on the left and Mubariz Khān on the right. It was said that Bahadur Khan propped the front. Jalal Khan assaulted. A hard battle was fought between him and Hindal Mirza. Jalal Khan attacked in it without a saddle. Sher Shah saw that he could not be firm for assault with pride of a mountain. How could he be without it. The Mughals were shaken. They separated themselves from the centre and turned back to the river. The Afghans were in pursuit and the sword did its work. They entered the river with horses, dived through it for safety while a number of them got drowned. Humayun came to the bridge and found it broken. He had repaired what the elephant had destroyed. He rode an elephant and the elephant driver dived through water. When he came to the shore, he dismounted and intended to rise from water to the side which was elevated. He did not speak. One who knew him saw him. He came to him, caught him with his hand and raised him from water to himself. He stood and collected himself. He asked him his name and birthplace. His name was Shamsud-Din Mahammad and his birth-place was Ghazni. He was in entourage of Kamran with Mirza 'Abdullah Mughal. Humayun thanked him and promised him good. During course of his conversation, one of the nobles of Kāmrān Mirzā, Muqaddam Beg recognised him. He was on horse. He got down and advanced to him. Humāyun then rode, thanked him and promised him good. His brothers, 'Askari and Hindal assembled around him. They marched to Agra. This war took place in the early part of 947 (1540). He entered Agra. He found its outskirts in a disturbed state with flames of fire. They had become empty. He rode to the house of Mir Rafi Safavi who was a man of the world and religion. He sat with him in privacy. He laid before him merits and demerits. He asked him the consequences of that war. He said that it was misfortune of the time which would pass away. He advised him to move to Punjab and meet Kāmrān Mirzā. Perhaps the meeting might produce accord and the knot unravelled. It so happened. When he encamped on the

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 991

environs of Lahore, Kāmrān Mirzā received him and made him alight in the garden of Khwāja Dost Munshi. His brothers and followers met him. Among them were Qāsim Ḥusain Uzbek, Beg Mirak Ḥaidar Mirzā, Mir Shams-ud-Din Muhammad Ghaznawi and he looked at them with favour. Mir Faqir 'Ali who was of their path died. It was on 20th Safar of the year. A majlis of consula-\* tion was held. They swore on accord. It was as it has been said: Talk of the night is erased during day. Humāyun was the last to admonish them. Sultān Husain Mirzā died. He left behind eighteen males, horses, treasures and properties for which there is no end. Disunity showed itself among them. They came out from the kingdom as hair is taken out from dough. Only Badi'uz-Zaman remained. He had stood at the gate of the king of Rum. He lest no heir to be remembered after him. Bäbur died. He lest you after him who are not in need to conquer the kingdom except to preserve it. Hence your power is united to regain what has gone out from you. If you leave behind what is in you to any one, he will reap the fruit of his opposition. He whom God misguides, there is none for him to guide.

After the victory, Sher Shah came to Delhi. The Khutba was recited in his name. Qadi 'Abdullah the Şadar came to Sher Shah irom Kamran Mirza with a letter requesting him for the territory which he had in his occupation to be from his party. He replied to him and sent a messenger with him from his side who met Kamran and gave him the mandate of territory and promised him an addition and returned. The object of Sher Shah in its acceptance was to create disunity in their unity. Sher Shah encamped on the river of Sultanpur. While he was there on the river, the above mentioned Şadr arrived a second time and induced him to cross the river. On the other side of the river was Muzassar Turkoman. When Sher Shah crossed the river, Muzassar returned to Humayun and informed him about it. He found no alternative but separation to face him. He marched at the close of Jamadi II along with his brothers, crossed the river of Lahore and took the road till he encamped on the river Jenab (Chināb). Kāmrān Mirzā and 'Askari Mirzā parted company with him at this manzil. Both of them were together as far as Kabul. Haider Mirza proceeded to Kashmir with Humayun's permission. He was worthy of it. They corresponded with Humayun about their surrender. Humayun journeyed from his manzil towards Sind in the month of Rajab of the year. He came to Uchch at the close of Sha'ban and a man of his party Amir Sayyid Muḥammad Baqer Husain died. He was buried there.' He was an accomplished scholar, Humāyun regretted his loss. Sorrow was obligatory on him as he could not be recovered. He bore the loss with patience. He then marched and alighted in the neighbourhood of one of the resident nobles of the place. His name was Bakhshu Alanka.†

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 992.

t a letter and robe of honour. He came to him in the presence when he d him a title, a flag and a drum. He requested him to prepare caravans risions to send to him. He executed the order and received a robe of in presence. He excused himself to be present. He then encamped on rirons of Bhakkar with horses and retinue. He encamped in person at port of Sind. Sultan Mahmud Bhakkari lived in the Bhakkar port on of Shah Husain Reg Arghun. He ordered the subjects for light. He ed the vagabonds and wood below the fort. Shah Husain Beg was the Shāh Beg Arghun who was at Qandahār. When Humāyun conquered it. ched towards Thattha, played stratagem and conquered it. Humāvun messenger to Sultan Mahmud for surrender of the fort. He apologised as : under subordination of Shah Husain Beg. Humayun wrote to Shah Beg conciliating him to a meeting with him at the hand of Sadr Mir .nd Mir Samandar. Shah Husain was at Thattha. He ennobled them indness and sent a present with them as well as an envoy, a letter of sion in accord. It is known as the territory of Bhakkar, of a few advantages. an's land is suitable only for comfort of the retinue to remain there and .rt, The envoy was Shaikh Mirak, a descendant of Shaikh Turan, a follower party of Arghun. Humāyun ordered Hindāl Mirza to march against it. s in his house on the river Chenab. Hindal also parted company. He nself on the road which he had intended. He was amazed on the way. yun was in his wake. He joined him and apologised. He remained with Hindal journeyed to Chachgan while Humayun remained at Lohory. He Lohory in 948 (1541). He married Akbar's mother. Qandahār was for n Mirzā. Its governor Karāja Khān wrote to Hindāl Mirzā at the instruc-Kämran to come to him. He responded to it. Humayun received inice about it. He rode to the house of Mir Abu Bagā and interchanged ons with him in important matters. He sent message to Yādgār Nāsir -he was on the river of Bhakkar. He did not cross it since he had en-I there-with him. Mir Abu Baqa met him and interchanged questions im for his return in concord for Hindal Mirza. He had separated himself im at the manzil on Chenab in concord with Humayun. He accepted it. return to Humāyun, a party of men attacked with shouts and darted at him when one arrow hit him. He met Humayun who got him treated. 1 the next day. It was Thursday, 13th Jamadi I. Humayun's difficulties\* ed. He said. "This hardness of heart was the result of discord among rs and tyranny of time. If they were placed in a scale of balance and ties in the other, they would weigh heavier. After his death, Yadgar Airzā crossed the river and met Humāyun. On 17th Rajab of the year, yun assaulted the fort of Ichwan and laid siege to it. Its cause was that

Original Text, p. 994.

one day Fudail Beg brother of Mun'im Khān and Tarsan Beg brother of Shaham Khan were in a boat in a river when the residents attacked them and thronged themselves at the boat. The inmates of the boat fought with them. They returned to the fort. On Humayun's attack upon it, Mirza Shah Husain Beg issued forth by river from Tattha, blockaded supply of provisions and roads and so a scarcity of food took place in the camp of Humayun whereupon Humayun's patience was exhausted. Those who deserted to Shah Husain Beg included Mir Tahir the Şadr, Khwaja Ghiyathud-Din Jami and Mawlana 'Abdul-Baqi. Those who went to Naşir Yadgar Mirza were Mir Barka and Khwaja Muhammad 'Ali Bakhshi. In the meanwhile, Mun'im Khan and Fudail Beg went away. Humayun ordered Mun'im Khan to be put in captivity. Many a time, a band of men issued forth from the fort of Bhakkar and attacked Yadgar Naşir Mirza and killed his men. Their band consisted of Muhammad 'Ali Kābuji and Sher Dil, their vakils. They were connected with Mun'im Khan. To add to their difficulties, he was released from captivity. For the third time, residents of Bhakkar fought in the maidan, row with row. There was lot of killing among them. They kept themselves within the fort and abandoned war. In the meantime, Bābur Quli Mohardār came to Yādgār Nāşir Mirzā from Shāh Husain Mirzā with a letter, the contents of which were that he was old in age, verging on death and that he had no son to inherit him. Besides he had treasures and stores, income of life. He had a daughter. If he intended to marry her, the son-in-law would become his son. He would get the kingdom along with the daughter. He agreed to the proposal. When Shah Husain pressed Humayun, he departed from him for what he had written. Humayun wrote to Yadgar Naşir Mirza inducing him to march to the ruler of Tattha. He agreed to it. He ordered to go out of the verandah. Shaikh 'Abdul Ghasur met him. He was one of the great Shaikhs of Turkastan. He advised him for a movement. He opposed him. He recovered the verandah. Dahliz for the 'Arab is the front place of \* the house for the Persian. Humayun learnt what was done by the messenger. He returned from the fort and went to Lohory. It happened on 17th Ziqa'ad of the year. Yadgar Naşir Mirza learnt about his arrival. He was on the environs of Ara. He marched with his army for resistance to prevent him. Qasim Beg knew about it. He seized his reins and blamed him and turned with him to Lohory. The companions of Humāyun Qāsim Ḥusain Sulṭān and a band of men joined Yadgar Naşir Mirza. In the meanwhile, Humayun turned his reins to the direction of Maldev at the suggestion of his sincere friend on 21st Muharram of the year 949 (1542). His passage lay on Uchch. He wrote to Måldev from his manzil on the outskirts of Bikaner on 17th Rabi'II. The envoy was Mir Samander. He met him and returned with his reply and said "He understands from it concord but his movements speak of discord. It is proper

Original Text, p. 595,

e cautious with him." On his encampment on the side of a reservoir of Jul. enmity became clear. He turned from him to the Kasba of Bahlawi. It is ated at a distance of three miles from Jodhpur, the capital of Mäldev. On way, he learnt about his arrival with horse and foot. He ordered Mun'im in and Tardi Beg Khan to get intelligence about him on his way for pretion of his baggage. He personally journeyed to Satalmir. On the way, erence arose and they decided on opposition to Hamayun. Amir Shaikh 'Ali and Humayun advanced in his wake. He attacked and the victory was his. his encampment at Jaisalmir, Tardi Beg Khan and Mun'im Khan joined him. navun learnt that the ruler of Jaisalmir had stopped water. Humavun ched from his frontier to Amarkot and encamped there on 10th Jamadi I of year. It was a fort ruled by Rana Prasad. He presented himself in attende according to desire. During the period of Humayun's halt, he attended n him from the first day. He used to go out for possible causes. Humayun ted him with favour. He left his wife behind at Amarkot for purposes of very. He marched on 1st Rajab of the year to go alone for hajj or renounced world. He assembled his companions and departed them for march to the of Maldev. The path was upon Uchch. On the way, he heard news of h of a son Akbar Shah. He felt delighted thereby and firmly resolved to com-\* nd his companions. Being near Arghun, he learnt what they had resolved ut war. They had assembled at the town of Jun Ababwah. He ordered ikh 'Ali Beg Jalāir-He was from the time of Timur to his age ancestorally ed for sincerity and distinction and connected with this house. He was an famous amir-for help. He advanced for war and Humayun supported him. fiercely assaulted them and defeated them. Humavun encamped at a strong ce. At this manzil, the litter of his son was brought. His pavilion was on k of the river. Arghun was always in movement and there was victory for retinue of Humayun. He met with difficulty in the death of Shaikh 'Ali Beg ir and Shaikh Tājud-Din Lāri. They were favourites of Humāyun. Shaikh and Tardi Beg Khan went out one day to a side. Sultan Mahmud Bhakkari them. Tardi Beg lagged behind and thus he was safe. He approached ikh and killed him. It happened in the year. In the meantime, the year (1543) had begun when Biram Khan arrived from Gujarat on 7th Muharram. nayun was delighted thereby for he was a man of merit, and a relative. en he determined to move on to Qandahār he felt a risk to take a year-old ' with him in travel. Shah Husain learnt about it. He sent an envoy and t continuous presents with apologies and Humayun from him parted in peace l friendship. He marched to Qandahār. Shāh Husain Beg did not receive information about the letter which was sent with Babur Quli Mohardar ut marriage of his daughter to Yadgar Nāşir Mirzā. He did not reject it,

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 996,

He had departed with Humayun for a war. The envoy did not come back to him a second time. When Humayun entered the precincts of Qandahar where 'Askari Mirzā was stationed on behalf of Kāmrān as an Amir. He garrisoned the fort to prevent his entry. Humāyun learnt about it on his encampment at Shāl. He turned to Mastang from it. On his encampment at it, 'Askari Mirza decided to make a night attack on his pavilion. Qasim Husain Sultan and Mahdi Qāsim Khān forbade him to do so. That might disturb him in his entry to 'Irak and return from it with that which did not happen before. Abul Khair and others instigated for it. He came out to Mastang approximately a farsakh when he said as to who was familiar with the path. Jai Bahādur Uzbek said\* that he was-He was in the army of Humayun in Hind-but he had a weak horse who walked little. He ordered for him the horse of Tarsun Barlas. He advanced as a guide but he became negligent and deviated and hastily came to the pavilion of Humāyun and informed Birām Khān as to what happened due to his step. He saw Humayun. He rode and ordered Khwaja Mu'azzam, Kokaltäslı Nadim, Mir Ghaznawi Shamsud-Din Muhammad and Khwaja 'Anbar to follow him and come with litter of the son and his mother. 'Askari Mirzā learnt about it. He had encamped near Mastang to see Humāyun to come out from pavilion. He ordered Abal Khair and Shah Walad to make amends of the pavilion by coming. In the meanwhile, 'Askari rides with a band of men who were behind Humayun with knowledge that they would come for greeting particularly Tardi Beg khan. He was a man of elevated rank near him. He greeted him and they. Shamsud-Din Muhammad came to him. He said to him "I have cut so much distance to see Humayun. Show me his passage. What is the matter with him?" He then asked about the child inquiring as to where the Mirzā was. He replied that he was at the place of his encampment. He ordered apples to bring for him and promised him that he would come the next day. When he presented himself in the pavilion, he ordered most of the rich men who lagged behind to be made captive and sent Tardi Beg Khān with them to Qandahar. The auspicious child was brought to his uncle. He embraced him. and carried on shoulder and played with him for an hour. He was not pleased with play. He was amazed at it. He then said "Is he not a son whom I know?" He left him on his shoulder. He placed his hand on the chain of seal which he had round his neck. It was of gold. His nucle felt him for it. He took it out and gave it to him. He then carried him with him to Qandahar. His arrival there was on 12th Ramadan of the year. His uncle had alighted at a place near him and Māham Āghā (Angā ), mother of Adham Khān, Jiji Anga, Mir Ghaznawi Shamsuddin Muḥammad Atkā Khān were in attendance upon him. When Humayun travelled from Mastang, he encamped outside Chaul. It belonged to Malek Hati Baluch. It was near it. He met and showed humility and moved

Original Text, p. 997.

till he alighted with him. He made necessary attendance upon him, tarried guest for some days. He then marched from it with Malek Hāti travelling him to the frontier of Garmsir which is within jurisdiction of Qandahār. 'Āmil was Khwāja Jalālud-Din. He met with decorum and encamped oute it for some days. Choli Bahādur went from his side as a messenger to 'Irāq. then marched with all in front. With exit from its frontier, every one arated to go to his respective charge. He entered into the frontiers of the or of 'Irāq. He crossed the famous river of Halmand and encamped on the Kol within the frontiers of Sistān. What God had wished, took place. An ount of his return to the capital Agra follows. He did not think of attaint of his wish in his exile, with his brothers. The world is such.

#### Sheh Shah in Akbar Nama

When Sher Shah crossed the river of Sultanpur, all the Mughals went out n Lahore to Chenab and came to Lahore. Thence they proceeded to ushab and tarried for some days on the environs of Bahra. He sent a ssage to Sultan Sarang Ghakkar and Sultan Adam Ghakkar inviting them to n. They were sincere friends of the Mughals. They helped them with soldiers d war materials. Sher Shah marched to Hathyagar. It belonged to the Ghakkar bes. He despatched an army from it against them. After a fierce war, the ny returned deseated when many Afghans were captured. He then strengened the fort of Banaras and left there a strong army for resistance. He urned to Agra to control state matters. The Khutba began to be recited in name from the pulpits. Till this day, he was called Sher Khan but now he led himself as Sher Shah. He then marched to Gwalior. Mir Abul Qasim s its lord. Due to shortage of provisions, he came out from it for amnesty. t that did not complete the matter. Biram Khan was in.... He came out to n seeking refuge and fled away. His ruler was religious minded. He did I run away. Biram Khan came to Gujarat and presented himself in the majlis Mahmud Shah and made his stay obligatory. He had what he wished for and re than that. He apologised and took the way to Sind and met Humayun. er Shah then marched to Raisin. Raisin and Chanderi belonged to Raja darmal. He came out for amnesty. He occupied the fort. Similarly, he cupied many forts such as Chitod, and Ranthanbhor. He then entered into e region of Dhandera. Thence he assaulted the fort of Kalinjar. He then ed. In the meantime, he was one day on the subterranean passage, gunwder was lighted and his body got burnt into it. He was removed to his pola. He died after conquest of the fort. A chronogram writer composed Persian the date of his death "Az Atash Murd" (Died of fire). It happenedt he year 953 (1546).

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 998.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 999.

He sat on the throne of saltanat at Delhi in 945 (1538). During his regime, he ruled over Hind and prospered it. He had assembled more than six hundred thousand horse. He gave them salary in cash. Inspite of his extensive territory, he framed state policy himself. He ruled at an advanced age. It is said that like the ruler of the Dekkan, he conquered an age and what he acquired. He paid salary and allowance in cash at his gate. His soldiers. therefore, were present. His kingdom enjoyed prosperity. When he rode out to any part, he carried bricks in nose-bags of horses over which he rode. The soldiers did the same thing. Wherever he encamped, he ordered to build a fort out of those bricks. It had four doors with a ditch from place of removal of earth for placing bricks. There was a reservoir of hide. Water for it was brought on elephants, sufficient for need of soldiers. A large quantity of it was brought in least time. He used to spend night in it in safety along with those who were with him, door-keepers of the nauba and bell-ringers. In the morning all the bricks were put in bags and they went their way. Such was his usage in travel. He built at an interval of one farsakh an enclosure containing a masjid, an attendant, mue'zzin and imam (one who leads prayer) on the road to Delhi. The enclosure was sufficiently spacious and a piece of land was dedicated for its expenses. Delhi farsakh means four farsakhs. A traveller spent his night in it. There was recreation ground attached to it. The narrator says that he attacked Külinjar in 95,1 (1544). He met with martyrdom. His coffin was carried to Sahasram Ranthanbhor. He then entered into the region of Dhandera. Thence he attacked the fort of Kalingar and came the order for conquering. In the mean while, he was one day on a subterranean passage, gunpowder was lighted and his body got burnt thereby near the temb of his father, Hasan, Some found the date of his death from "Sher Mata" (Sher died ). He was a lion till his death in ost.

## Sulfan Salim Shah son of Sher Shah Sur

Abul Fadl narrated in his history Akbar Nāma: Sher Shāh died on 11th Rabi' 1, 952 (1545), after a reign of five years, two months and thirteen days with complete independence. His son Salim Shāh succeeded him, after the\* incident, within eight days. He continued to rule for eight years, two months and eight days. There was a conflict between him and his brother 'Ādil Khān son of Sher Shāh and Khwās Khān. He gained a victory. There was a struggle between him and Yati Khān Afghān. He belonged to the Afghan tribe of Niyāzi. A number of them lived in Punjab. They continued to fight. They migrated to the mountains of Kashmir. There was a war between him and the tribe of Ghakkars who came in the way of erecting fortifications at various places. Sher Shāh built the fort of Rohtas but died before it was completed.

Original Text, p. 1000.

Salim Shah completed it. He built the fort of Mankot among the Siwalik mountains and strove hard for its impregnability. Some of the Afghans darted arrows. He resisted them for a long period. Some of them became superstitious. They lived in the fort of Gwalior. He behaved well with his subjects. It was contrary to the soldiers. He died on 22nd Ziqa'ad, 960 (1552) on account of ulcer on the lower parts of his body. Some of the Afghans who were residents of Māhbur in Gujarat narrated that Salim Shāh was at Delhi at the time of Sher Shah's death. 'Adil Khan was his senior brother in age. He was with his father at Kälinjar. All the amirs of Delhi agreed upon his saltanat and that happened. 'Ādil Khān got intelligence of it. Khwās Khān was with him. He said to him "Is it proper that the younger brother should precede the elder?" He replied, "By all means. As my eyes see. I am now in his stirrup." He said. "Listen. I am sufficient for him." He was very much strong. After the victory, he returned to Delbi. He has decided to meet his brother and to embrace him as usual. He pressed him so hard that his breath was choked. Thus he died without a blow and without a stab. He ascended the throne. When he encamped outside Delhi Salim was perturbed. He was seized with fear from him that he might depose him. The Delhi amirs assembled. They said, "We have seized your hand. How do you become suspicious of us? He said. "you are not pleased with me or one of you should seize my sword and suspend it to me." The great one of them stood up and suspended the sword to him. In the meanwhile, his suspicion vanished. He went to his brother to meet him. He was greatly avoiding him. He got no opportunity. When 'Adil Khan decided against him, he went out in search of his brother. A number of amirs of his\* father deserted him and went over to the side of his brother. Suspician entered into him. Others left Delhi. Khwas Khan was one of them. Salim Shah pursued him with a party of amirs. He went in his wake. Both of them met in the maidan and 'Adil Khan was captured. Khwas Khan did not fight, He turned from him and went to some side. He gained victory over rows of treasures. He drove them in front of him. He came to Sikri. There lived that day. Shaikh of the cities, authority of instruction, Shaikh Salim. He met him and gave him the rows and requested him for prayer. He left him. He saw the army of Salim Shah. He fought with him and defeated him and encamped as desired. A party of amirs decided upon him. They abandoned their loyalty and resolved to divest Salim of his authority. He said to them "He who sits on the throne from among you gains a victory over decrees of fate." They said. "One who gains a victory occupies the throne." Victory was for him or one who takes his hand and we would be loyal to him. "He replied" But I have conquered fate. There is no improvement in it. I do not try therein for any one. If it is for one of you; how am I pleased to turn it from son of Sher Shah

Original Text, p. 1001.

to any other person." He then seceded from them and knew them. He or one of the muluk of the mamaliks of his father Haji Khan-he was famous had married Khwas Khan's sister-to pause in resistance to him. He encou ed the amirs and defeated them. Khwāş Khān turned from Hāji Khār said, "I do not want to cause distress to my sister and make her wear dress." Hāji Khān controlled his reins and Khwās Khān garrisoned hims the fort of Kamaon. Salim Shah sent a party of amirs to win him over they had a letter of pledge with them. He accepted and assembled his panions to bid them farewell on his personal surrender. He requested ther prayer. He came out of the fort with his attendant and moved with the to Sher Shah. On the way, he thought over their places with him. He sa some of the attendants, "I am killed with those who are with the amirs. I surrendered myself for them and not they. They move with me in anger. not know how he would kill me. I am not afraid of anything except disgr. pleasure to the enemy and my eye sees you. I made my blood lawful for When I prostrate in my prayer, take my sword, sever my head from my be He then took a bath, wore the shroud, perfumed himself and sat on his p carpet. He absorbed himself with God the Holy, sought his forgiveness, repo and said prayer. When he prostrated, the sayer of prayer confided wi Lord; his order was executed. The news got circulated. The amirs griev. him, abandoned his body and made their appearance in the diwan of their su with his head. He ordered it to be suspended at the gate of Delhi. He ordered his head to be joined with his body and bury him. His tomb is v and regarded as a source of blessings. Praise for him lives even upto this of ours. He distributed alms very much. He was a friend of the pious helper of needy persons, benevolent to the fakirs and a patron of widow orphans. He fed the hungry with most delicious food and plenty of sweet. who out of these sections of people went to him, he received a share of wha present with him in the camp. Every night, one hundred Qințars of a were distributed. A Qintar means one hundred ratls. On this suppos other kinds of foods should be imagined. It so happened that one night was no fire-wood. It was a night when it was raining and cold. The apologised. The fakirs inquired about halwa. It was said to them that it not solidified for want of fire-wood. He then ordered pieces of cloth r jamdarkhana to be used in place of fire-wood. Its fire was preserved moisture in oil. It was poured upon it. By imagining a lot of one hu Qantars with gaudy cloth for satiating hunger of the fakirs on such a raining, cold night informs us about his sincere intention in the matter. May the Holy accept this from him. He enjoyed fame in respect of punishme wars and his knowledge of sources and origins. People attacked in comba

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1002.

encounter, entered into perilous places and came out of them with safety, victory and nobility. Such things were regarded by Sher Shah as anspicious. When he plunged into encounter with Humayun, Khwas Khan was away at a manzil from him to join him. He stopped fighting. He said, "Do not pause. I see him in the right and left wings. In respect of his justice, it is said with regard to 'Adil Khan, "No, as my two eyes." In fraternal war, he receded from war taking any side. Abul Fadl says: It was near dispersion of the treasures amassed by others with fraud and deceit. It became known to the elite and the commoners in the region that there was nothing. His intention and religion arbitrated his matters externally. There was none to approach approximately to his kingdom during his time. Mahpur was the place of residence of Bahaud-Din, a sufi of Islām and a very learned man among the Muslims. It was populated by Mawlana Shaikh Mah, may his grave be holy. It is situated at a distance of a mile or two miles from Ahmadabad on the side of the Outb. I\* heard the story of Sher Shah's death and the saltanat of Salim Shah at Mahpur. It was told to me by a relative of the above mentioned Shaikh of pleasing character, well instructed Miya 'Abdur Razzaq. He was in the prime of youth during the regime of Sher Shah. He came to Gujarat during the regime of Salim Shah. I heard him saying that when Salim Shah was on verge of death, he said to the mother of his son that I advise you to kill your brother Mubariz Khan for I read his eyes coveting the saltanat of your son. He would kill him and become the Sultan." She refused and said, "How can my brother kill his sister's son." He said, "Now you deny. The saltanat will pass away from the house of Sher Shah. He then willed the kingdom for his son and he died.

## Firux Shah son of Salim Shah

Firuz Shāh b. Salim Shāh b. Sher Shāh b. Ḥasan b. Sur sat on the throne of his father with the consent of muluk and amirs. His maternal uncle Mubāriz Khān slaughtered him after three days.

### Mubarix Khan Muhammad 'Adil b. Nizam b. Hasan Sur

Mubăriz Khān ruled the kingdom after slaughtering the son of his sister. He personally styled himself as Muḥammad 'Ādil. During his regime, the kalima was neglected. Abul Fadl said: Aḥmad Khān Sur, the Amir of Punjāb rebelled and styled himself as Sikander. He was related to Sher Shāh. Muḥammad Khān Sur, the Amir of Bengal rebelled and styled himself as Muḥammad Shāh. He was also related to Sher Shāh. In like manner, Ibrāhim Khān Sur, Amir of Bayāna, Shujā'at Khān, Amir of Mālwa who was called Sajawal Khān declared independence. The Afghān vagabonds assembled together to produce chaotic condition in governmental organisation. Sikander and Ibrāhim marched

Original Text, p. 1003.

to Agra. Mubariz Khan also did the same. His vakil Hemu departed to the east. Abul Fadl said: Hemu belonged to the tribe of Dosar. This is the lowest class offgrain-dealers. He maintained himself by selling salt with its sack on his shoulder. He solicited entry into Salim Shah's palace as a merchant. He had experience, deliberation, rustic nature, and cheerfulness in visits. He so manœvred by cunning that he became a servant of Salim. He then sought defects in others and pointed them out and thus he showed himself as a man of clean character. Salim cast a glance of favour at him. He served but with caution and worked as a slanderer. He was thus always up-graded. He began to meddle in state matters. He enjoyed esteem in spite of his being an unbeliever. After Salim and Firuz, he advanced during the regime of Mubariz Khan. He got confirmed as Vakil. He then was elevated to the rank of the greatest amir. He controlled the treasury and acted in his own way. He sought unanimitv on it and distributed it to the amirs and soldiers in a large quantity. He was titled once as Rāi and then Rāja. He was finally called Rāja Vikramajit. He was one of the greatest men of Hind. When Mubariz Khan devoted himself to pleasures of life, it was Hemu who used to march wth amirs and soldiers to the opponents and fight with them. He used to return with triumph. There was a war between Sikander and Ibrāhim in which Sikander gained a victory. Ghāzi Khān, father of Ibrāhim garrisoned himself in the fort of Bayana. Sikander established his power from Agra to the river Ganga and ruled over Sind. He decided to march east-ward. In the meantime, he received news of Humāyun in march to Agra. He despatched Amir Tatar Khan to Punjab to prevent his entry. He ordered him to stay at Rohtas. Muhammad Shah, ruler of Bengal marched to depose Mubäriz Khan. Hemu marched against him. They met to fight on the environs of Chapargatha. Muhammad Shāh achieved martyrdom. Hemu gained a victory over the treasures of Sher Shah and Salim Shah and made use of them for gaining fame. He had become famous in this battle. He then encountered Ibrahim Khān in the maidan and defeated him. He thus gained victory in all battle-fields against adversaries. Abul Facil said: He did not like to ride a horse. He was in a litter on an elephant on the day of war. He dared to come forward in war. It was due to his distribution of money to amirs and soldiers from treasures. He did not trouble for unity or disunity. He had sole power in his hands. The soldiers were in cheer and praised him as far as possible.

Verse

Sikander who became a world-king

Became unique among swordsmen in the world.

When Sikander established independent power in Agra and its dependencies,

Original Text, p. 1004.

Mubāriz Khān and Hemu marched towards Bengal. Sultān Jalālud-Din Khiḍr Shāh, b. Muḥammad Shāh had firmly established his power after martyrdom of \* his father. He was at Hājipur Patna. He marched in opposition to Mubāriz Khān. When they met in the battle-field, the amirs of Delhi deserted to Jalālud-Din and killed Mubāriz Khan in the battle-field. They became loyal to him. It happened on the last day (of the month), 961 (1553). In this war the army of Delhi was on the environs of Bengal. Humāyun got an opportunity. He moved to Agra. After Mubāriz Khān, Sikander conquered Delhi.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1005.

#### CHAPTER XXXIV

The Mughals (Cont.)

March of Humdyun to Tahmasp b. Shah Isma'il Sulfan of Iraq and Khurasan

Abul Fadl said in Akbar Nāma: When Sultan Humāyun encamp river Kaul on the environs of Iraq, he travelled to Sistan in the morning amir Sultan Ahmad Shāmlu met him and made him alight in his expanse did every thing essential out of regard. He was the brother of Husain He came to him from Mashhad for seeking permission of his mother for th formance of hajj. He met Humayun. Even though, it was a region Shias, Humāvun was not afraid of a request. He questioned him abou creed. His reply was that he was engaged since long in the study of shia as well as of sunnis. He derived benefits from the Shia beliefs. Those abused the companions of the Prophet and transgressed the limit therein re rewards, and his rank was raised. I also derived benefits from the bel-Sunnis. Those who used abusive language for the companions of the P were unbelievers. I made use of reason and understood that there was no of unbelief with the thought of reward. He applauded Humayun for his liked him and used conciliatory language in his society. He apologised preparation for travel to hajj. He had come to bid farewell to his mot. prayed for grace and salam. Baba Haji Kashka and Hasan Kuka, come of 'Askari Mirzā joined him in his house. He welcomed them. H journeyed from Sistan on the way of Unk. In the vicinity of Farasada envoy of 'Itaq met him in company of his envoy with a letter of favor welcome as well as an edict in the name of Muhammad Khan, Na'ib of particularly and other amirs on the way, generally to show regard and de-On his arrival to a well-known place of pilgrimage, Muhammad Khān info him about it. He went there and met with him at a place of Pul Mālān amirs who were with him included Uwais Sultan, Shah Quli Sultan, Mir M Sadr and and Mir Husain Karbalāi. Sultān Mahmud Mirza and in his Sultan Muhammad Mirza met him at Farab. Humayun alighted at famous as Bagh-i-Jahanarai on the 1st Ziqa'ad 950 (1543), Materials alightment were kept ready for example, everything that was good. A was convened and a royal feast was arranged. In the majlis, there was Kāk, a matchless musician of 'Irāq. He opened with a ghazal of Amir with three opening couplets:

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1006.

Auspicious constellation for such a moon should have such a zediac. Blessed region for such a region should have such a king

The majlis was transported with joy for its appropriate elegance, beautiful voice and melodious tune. He then sang the following couplet

Do not grieve heart for pain and comfort of the world. Do not feel joyous

For the rule of the world is sometimes such sometimes such.

Humayun's condition underwent a change. He could not control his feelings of delight and joy. He instantly ordered for an offering. The room was filled with gold and silver. He tarried till New Year's day at Herat. He was with nobles of all grades. There was at the time joy, delight, society and pleasure from garden to garden. It was the season for hunting and movement from place to place. He then marched from Herāt and alighted at Jām on 5th Zilhajj and paid a visit to the auspicious mausolem at Zinda Pil of Khwaja Ahmad Jam, may his grave be sanctified. On his arrival at Mashhad of Imam 'Ali Reda, its amir, Quli Sultan Astajlu along with the nobles of Mashhad received him. It was on 15th Muharram, 951 (1544). He was benefited by a visit to the mausoleum of the Imam and sought spiritual aid from him. On his arrival at Nishapur, its amir, Shamsud-Din 'Ali Sultan saw him and stood for the essentials. He moved on thence to Sabzwar and from it to Damghan. One of its wonders was that when something impure fell into its famous river Banna,\* hot wind began to blow and the atmosphere became dark and dusky. It was the talisman of the ancients for defence against the enemy. Humayun felt attracted to it. It so happened. He then went to Bistam. The mausoleum of Shaikh Bayazid was not on his way. He turned reins towards it and received blessings by a visit to the holy saint. On his coming to Simnan, he alighted at Sufiābād and visited the blessed mausoleum of 'Alāud-Dawla, may his grave be sanctified. It was always a place of pilgrimage for local people and travellers. In the vicinity of Ray, he received news of march of Tahmasp from Kazwin to Sultāniya. He then came to Kazwin and alighted outside it for some days. He then put up in the house of Khwaja 'Abdul Ghani, one of the greatest nobles of the locality. Biram Khan went with a letter. He returned with a reply. Tahmāsp had alighted at Abhar of Sulţāniya. Humāyun went to him. The amirs of different grades came out for reception from a nearby place of Abhar. Then Bahram Mirzā and Sam Mirzā, the two sons of the ruler of 'Iraq received him. They were followed by the ruler of 'Iraq. It happened in Jamadi I of the year. It was a day worth seeing. When the two met in the majlis of the sulțăn, there was intimate, graceful conversation between them. It has been

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1007.

truly said that the speech of the kings is the king of speech. There was exemplary sincerity in it. There was a poem of Mirza Qasim Gunabadi as given in the mathnawi in regard to the character of the king, his condition and events of the time. He said in regard to their meetings:

Two lords of two conjunctions in one banquet-place Conjoined with each other like sun and moon.

Two lights of sight for eye of good fortune

Two auspicious 'Ids for month and year.

Two stars, the decoration of the sky

United each other in one plain like Pleiades

Two eyes of the world manifest together

Together like circles showing humility

Two benefics of the sky in one zodiac

Two precious jewels in one casket.

The substance of conversation of the ruler of 'Irāq was consolation for misfortune. He said, "Victories of Hind for the Baburi chain are an evidence of sword. There was no deficiency in the sword for which the kingdom was lost. It was due to the fault of brothers and precious chance. Hemistich: Well, the world can be conquered by unanimity. You paved the way with smoothness and ease and you were worthy. I will help you in recovering it. Your coming to 'Irāq has obliged our places. Your hope will be realised. You will alight in Hind. Your friends therein will work. You will be permanent and they will not transgress. It comes near." Humāyun thanked him and composed the following line extempore

Kings of the world seek shadow of the phoenix

See that the phoenix seeks your shadow.

There were meetings of conversation and thanks between them. There was also a festive majlis. Musians had assembled in it. There was circulation of cups. In one of the meetings, Humāyun presented him a jewel which was one māsā in weight which was equivalent to eight mithkāls in weight. He knew it at the time of his conquest of Agra. Its price rose up in the èyes of jewellers upto expenditure of half a day of the world. It belonged to Vikramāditya Rāja, ruler of Gwalior. It passed on to his son after his death. It then came in possession of Sultān 'Alāud-Din Khalji when he had conquered Gwālior. It passed from one hand to another hand and to his hand.

Oh mother of Mälek, it had fulfilled needs.

The Shah moved with him from Abhar to Sultaniya. They passed days in meekness which was like elemency. Through slander, they had turbid time among

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1008.

them. It passed soon. Tahmasp then ordered for Oamragha hunting. After being free from it, one day they went to polo ground. They then went to an slevated place of archery. On the day, Biram Beg was titled as Khan. He was called Biram Khan. It was a title from the Shah. In like manner, Haji Muhammad Kuki was titled as Sultan. On this day, Mirza Murad son of Shah Tahmasp was appointed for help. There were twelve thousand horse in his stirrup including nobles. Badāgh Khān Qājār Lala Mirzā. Shāh Quli Sultāu Afshar, governor of Kirman, Ahmad Sultan Shamlu son of Muhammad Khalifa, Sanjāb Sultān Afshār, governor of Farah, Saltān Quli Ourchi, Yār 'Ali Sultān Taklu, Sultan 'Ali Afshar Mirza Taghai, Sultan Muhammad Khuda Banda, Sulțân Husain Kuli Shāmlu, Adham Mirzā son of Dev Tuhamtan, Mirzā son of Dev Sultan, Haider Sultan Shaibani, 'Ali Quli Bahadur b, Haider, Magsud Mirza Akhta Begi son of Zainud-Din Sultān Shāmlu, Muhammadi Mirzā grandson of Jahān Shāh Mirzā alias Shāh Tardi Beg, Kajāl Astajlu, 'Ali Sultān Chalāg \* sister's son of Muhammad Khan, Abul Fath Sultan Afshar, Yadgar Sultan Muslu. Zulfigär Kush, Hasan Sultan Shamlu, Sultan Alash Ughli Astajlu, Safi Dili Sultān son of Şufiyān Khalifa Rumlu, 'Ali Beg, Muḥammadi Beg Kitābdār Qajar from among the nobles and three hundred men of the artillery. The Shah was present in the festive meetings with presents and gifts. He looked to minor and major things and sent them to him. He ordered his companions to be given presents. Thus many things were collected. Humāvun also gave worthy presents. He then ordered for Qumragha hunting at a place called Aq Zamarab (?) which was the last manzil of summer quarters of Surlaq. After being free from it, Tahmasp came to the manzil of Humayun in the plain of Miyana. It was a fine meeting. He came to accompany him for bidding farewell. Humāyun moved following Tahmāsp for a year in his travels to Ardabil Tabriz. From that place he sent the litter of his wife to Qandahär. The Amir Hāji Muḥammad Sultān was made to accompany with army with it.

## Humayun's return to Hind with the army of 'Iraq

Abul Fadl said: After parting company with the Shah from the plain of Miyana, Humayun set out for Ardabil Tabriz. Mirza Miran Shah and all other amirs received him. After feasts, Humayun saw buildings built by ancient kings. Those who followed them, relied upon them. Vicissitudes of the sky raised them and lowered them, beautified and made them evil, adorned them and passed them, past followed present which those who are in the present age are negligent:

Alas! the capital passed away from hand Many hearts bled in the hand of death.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1009. AH47

None remained in the world to inquire from them The condition of travellers of the world.

Those who met him included Khwāja 'Abduş Samad Shirin Kalam (calligraphist). He had achieved perfection in calligraphy. He then marched towards Ardabil. On his emcampent at Shāmāsi, he tarried there for a week and then journeyed to Khalkhāl and thence to Tāram and then to Kharzabil. He then came to Sabzwār. His wife was here. She had given birth to two daughters. He paused at Mashhad waiting to meet the aid of the Shāh. He sent Mawlānā Nuruddin Muḥammad Tarkhān to summon Shaikh Abil Qāsim Jurjāni and Mawlānā Ilyās Arabeli. They were adorned with external and internal virtues. They had come from Kābul. During his stay at Mashhad, there was always the presence of scholars in his majlis such as Mawlānā\* Jamshid Mu'ammāi who was a compedium of all virtues, Mullā Ḥairati. He showed a poem to him for improvement.

The heart at times burns through love of idols, sometime the liver Love, every moment burns, with a fresh wound.

Like a moth, I have dealing with a candle

If I go ahead, it burns wings and feather.

It occurred to his intelligence that it was a criterion of fineness and subtlety. He said, "I see its meaning to be perfect" when it is said "If I go ahead, it burns my wings and feathers." Mawlana Hairati applauded him and saluted him. During his stay, Mirza Murad came up. He advanced with him to Garmsir and there Mir 'Abdul 'Ali Garmsiri came to him. He was in the fort of Laki. He had suspended a quiver round his neck. He apologised for an offence of passing by his side. He was meeting him out of regard for Mirzā 'Askari. He pardoned him, showed him favour and he became a man of his party. Abul Fadl said: When news of his travel reached 'Iraq, it was good. An account of those who were in his stirrup. First of all Biram Khan and Khwāja Mu'azzam, 'Āqil Sultān Uzbek b. 'Ādil Sultān-he was through his mother grandson of Sultan Husain Mirza-Haji Muḥammad Kuki Sultan Akhu Kuki, one of the great amirs who was titled by Humāyun as Khān, Rawshan Kuka Kokaltash-i-Akbar, Hasan Beg brother of Mahram Kuka Kokaltash ( foster brother ) of Mirzā Kāmrān, Khwāja Maqşud Hirwi-He was always with litter of Prince Akbar for purity of his nature and relationship of foster-brother of Shah Akbar, Sayf Khan and Zain Kuka, Khwaja Ghaji Hirwi, Khwaja Amin ud-Din Hirwi titled Khwaja Jahan, Baba Dost Bakhshi, Durwish Maqsud Bengāli, Hasan 'Ali Aishak Ākā, 'Ali Dost Bārbeki, Ibrāhim Aishak Ākā, Shaikh Yusuf Chuli from the descendants of Shaikh Ahmad Yasawi, Shaikh Bahlol Turk, Mawlana Nur ud Din titled Tar Khan, Muhammad Qasim Muji Mir-i-Bahr-

Original Text, p. 1010.

i-Jun, Haider Muhammad Akta Begi, Syed Muhammad Pakna, Sayyid Kāli\* Hirwi, Ḥāfiz Muḥammad Rakhna, Mirzā Beg Baluch son of Hazār Baluch as he was in Khurāsān, Amir Ḥusain son of Mirzā Baig, Khwāja 'Anbar Nāzir I'tibār Khān 'Ārif Toshakji Bahār Khān, Mehtar Khān Khazanedār, Mehtar Ḥājir Toshakji, Mulla Bilāl Kitābdār, Mehtar Tamur Shirinji, Mehtar Jauhar Āſtābji, Mebtar Vakila Khazaji, Mehtar Waşil, Mehtar Sunbul, Sulţān Muhammad Karāwal Begi, 'Abdul Wahhāb Ṣāhib-i-Ṭabāk, Khatāi Bahādur, Tolak Yātash Nawis—all these persons were firm, through their good fortune in accordance with test. Their service was on the path of examination.

#### Verse

I do not know why friends select For men are faithful in service.

### Report of Humäyun's return to Kābul

Abul Faḍl said: Mirzā Kāmrān received intelligence of his arrival. He was at Kābul when he learnt that Humāyun was on his way back with help of 'Irāq. He ordered Akhā Khiḍr Khān Hazāra and Qurbān Karāwal Begi to carry the auspicious son from Qandahār to him. He went to it. Mirzā 'Askari asked men of counsel who forbade to carry him to his father and solicited him for forgiveness for what had happened. There were some who permitted surrender arbitrarily for pardon. The territory should remain with Kāmrān. He sent him with those who were in company of his aunt Bakhshi Bānu Begum, Shamsud-Din Muḥammad Ghaznawi Atka Khān, Maham Atka, mother of Adham Khān, Jiji Atka mother of Mirzā 'Aziz Kokaltāsh. All the servants of the charge marched. They spent the night in the manzil of Hazāra. Akhu Khiḍr Khān journeyed with them as far as Ghazni, and thence to Kābul. Kāmrān made him alight at Khānzada Begum sister of Humāyun. On the next day, they met him in the city of Ārāi.

### Conquest of the Fort of Bust

Sultān Takln made an assault on it. Shāham Jalāir, father of Timur Jalāir and Mir Khalaj were in it on behalf of Kāmrān. They garrisoned themselves within the fort. 'Ali Sultān was killed by a gun-shot from the fort. His soldiers assembled around the son who was twelve years old. They pressed the siege and they surrendered the fort peacefully. Shāham Khān and Mir Khalaj came to Humāyun. He had encamped on a side from the fort. He forgave them.† On a report of 'Askari Mirzā's coming out from Qandahār to Kābul, the Qizilbāsh and the Mughals resolved to take it. When they reached Qandahār, they found the report false. The army of the fort came out and set fire to it whereupon a large number of Qizilbāsh perished. The army of the fort advanced in war.

Original Text, p. 1011.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 1012,

Khwāja Mu'azzam and a party of Chaghtāis put it to rout. Jamil Beg made effort to make 'Askari Mirzā attack for his succour. He paused till arriv. Kāmrān Mirzā. Bābā-i-Sirhindi, a famous man of Kāmarān was killed.

## Conquest of Qandahar Fort

Humāyun encamped at Qandahār on Saturday, 7th Muharram, 952 (15 He started to conquer it. In the meantime, he learnt from Rafi' Kuka Kāmrān Mirjā was behind a mountain in the land of Dāwar on the Ghandak with a contingent of Hazara. He sent Biram Khan against him. A an easy war, he made Rafi' Kuka a captive and pillaged his pavilion. F Khan then marched to Kabul as a messenger but in its vicinity, he met a ! of men from the side of Kamran and they joined with him to go to Kam He was at a famous place of Chahār Majlis. Biram Khān met him. He he copy of the Holy Quran on his head and he advanced with it. He stood ou respect for it. While he stood, he obtained the letter of his brother. with him gifts and presents of 'Iraq. He gave him an admonition. He gra: him leave for attendance upon Akbar, with Hindal Mirza, Sulaiman N Yadgar Naşir Mirza, Ulugh Beg Mirza and. After a month and a half permitted Birām Khān to go with the reply. 'Askari Mirzā said to him.' is not with me and not with my brother." Khānzāda Begum moved with to send admonition and surrender of the fort to Humāyun. This outwardly inwardly was against him. After her arrival at Qandahar, she strove hare surrender but that only increased opposition. In the meantime, Ulugh Mir Muhammad Sultan Mirza, Sher Afgan Beg, son of Fauj Beg, Fudail Beg bro of Mun'im Khan Mir Barka, Mirza Hasan Khan son of Mir 'Abdullah Muk Sabzwāri and a party from Kābul came to Humāyun. The cause was Kāmrān had put Ulugh Mirzā in captivity. He was for the whole week charge of a party. When it was the turn of Sher Afgan to be in che Kamran frightened him. He came out to him with their concord. Hum' praised them and granted Dawar to Ulugh Mirza. Inmates of the fort pressed hard by the siege. Some persons descended from it. Khidr Khi Khān, Mua'yyad Beg, Ismâ'il Beg, Abul Ḥasan Beg son of the brothe Karacha Khan, Munawwar Beg son of Nur Beg were the first. They got d in concert with Khidr Khwāja Khān. Khidr Khān Hazāra then got dowl a mutual promise of two or three of his Hazara companions. They carried for their appearance to the side of the mountain Lakha. In the mornir report of his spread. A party went in pursuit of him but they did not find He used to say that "he wanted to go to Sakhar and hide himself. I saw army in my wake. They did not see me till it was evening. I got up to my place of refuge. 'Askari Mirza ordered to surrender the fort to go to Ki

Original Text, p. 1013.

It was not so. On the arrival Khanzadu to him, he forbade him to go to Humayun. When he was despaired of the fort, he solicited her for it. She went to Humayun and interceded for him. She returned to him. On Thursday, 25th Jamadi II of the year, she went out, with 'Askari Mirza in attendance, to Humāyun. He saw that the Chaghatāis and the Qizilbāsh had assembled in the mailis in fashion of sitting at the saltanat and the soldiers were standing and sitting according to their ranks. Biram Klian entered the majlis under orders with 'Askari Mirza and his sword round his neck, he saluted and was pardoned with favour. Humavun prostrated before God out of thanks. He then ordered the sword to be kept away from his neck and suggested him to sit down. Then Muhammad Khān Jalair, Shāham Khān, Mugim Khān, Shāh Quli Sistāni, Tulak Khan Kuchi and thirty of his companions with quivers and swords in sheath were brought to him. They saluted as usual. They paid obeisance. He ordered as to who were in captivity of Muqim Khan and Shah Quli Sistani, On arrival of Ulugh Mirza, Qasim Husain Sultan went out with them. He lost the path at night and found himself in the midst of Hazāra. They plundered him. He came to Humayun after great hardship. He said to him, "For my insincerity towards you, I lost my way and was put to trial. Humāyun sat in the majlis till close of the day to dawn. He was talking as to what passed on him in his travel. For an hour, he listened to music of Mir Qalandar and his companions. He then sent for with the letter of Mirzā 'Askari to the Balooch. He walked\* on the road of Jul and ordered to give it to him. His time got spoiled. He then ordered to preserve it and to bring it to his mailis for benediction. When he returned, there should be customary etiquette only. His life should be as it was. On the next day of his arrival, Mirzā Murād son of Tahmāsp presented himself. He ordered the Qizilbash. They entered. All of them stayed for three days. Then on his acceptance, Qandahār was assigned to Tahmāsp. He surrendered Oandahar to Mirza Murad. He went to Chahar Bagh and encamped there. Kāmrān Mirza received a report about Qandahar. He removed Akbar from the house of Khanzada Begum to his house and surrendered him to elderly women. He captured Atka Khān and put bim in a house not worthy of him. He then sent for men of judgment and said to them, "What do you see in Sulaimān Mirzā?" Mullā 'Abdul Khālik said to him—he was his teacher—"It is proper to solace him and send him to Badakhshān as he should get profit in time. It was his good fortune that he conquered the fort of Badakhshan looking to Mir Hazar Peshgani and Mir 'Ali Balooch and a party. They imprisoned Qāsim Khān Barlas, nobles of his companions. They wrote to Kāmrān Mirzā "If Sulaiman Mirza came to us as a governor, we would surrender the fort and the region to him, otherwise not. We would kill Qasim and those who would be

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p.1014.

with him." He permitted Sulaimān Mirzā, Ibrāhim Mirzā and Ḥaram Beg to march to Badakhshān. After sending him, Kāmrān repented. Sulaimān had reached Pāi Minār. He sent some one to come back to him for a talk with him in person. He wrote in reply to him "As the permission is granted for departure at an auspicious time, it had passed. I would not return." He hastened in travel and arrived at Badakhshān and practised breach of promise. It so happened that Yādgār Nāsir Mirzā fled to Badakhshān. None remained with Kāmrān Mirzā except Hindāl Mirzā. Necessarily, I ordered him with solace and after solace I ordered him to go out in the wake of Yādgār Nāṣir Mirzā, and to make him recover it by force for three parts of it were in his hand and none would have got the kingdom from him after that. He will have to him from him. Hindāl Mirzā was hard pressed because of his vicious behaviour. He was ordered to go to Pāi Minār. He turned to Humāyun and met him.

### Conquest of Kabul \*

Humavun marched from Chahar Bagh and encamped at a high place from Hasan Abdal in a famous cupola famous as "Gumbad-i-Sufid". Because of long period of journey, most of the Qizilbash returned. They were not given permission. Those who sought permission, returned. Some remained with him after Mirzā Murād in Hind, died there. It was a well-known band. Budāgh Khān was an amir at the fort of Qandahār on behalf of Shāh Tahmāsp. Humāyun requested him for a place within the fort to keep his baggage. He refused. In the meantime, Mirza Murad died. Men of judgement assembled for conquest of the fort as it was necessary due to approach of winter while Käbul was at a long distance. Again it was not easy due to the Hazāra on the way to move with baggage in the mountaneous region. Humāyun sent word to Budegh Khān informing him about his departure to Kābul with a request to defending against Askari Mirzā pacify his mind from him. He accepted it. He appointed Biram Khān and Ulugh Mirzā etc. with men to be in ambush on the environs of the environs of Kandahar. They would be inside the fort with true dawn. Haji Muhammed Sultan was the first to come at the door, Mashur. It so happened that camels carrying fodder entered and took shelter in it when he entered through the door. The door-keeper saw him. He rebuked him. He said, "I have come to Budagh Khan. Humayun has sent me with 'Askari Mirza to him. He did not allow him and extended his hand to close the door. He struck him with the sword and cut his hand. A party of Kizilbāsh assembled around him, Biram Khan entered from the side of the Kandkan gate and occupied the fort. Humayun entered behind him. Budagh Khan presented himself near him through Haider Sultan and apologised. He permitted him to return to 'Irak. The fort remained in charge of Biram Khan. He wrote to the Shah to retire

Original Text, p. 1015.

Budagh Khan from service. He was remiss in performance of duty and that he had expelled him from the fort and surrendered it to Biram Khan on your behalf and that it belonged to him. In the wake of this, 'Askari fled away from hands of charge-men. After some days, the Afghan came to inform him that he was in his house. He therefore sent Shah Mirza and Khwaja 'Anbar to him. When he presented himself before him, he pardoned him, consoled him and surrendered him to Kokaltāsh. He then divided Kandahār region. Tiri was assigned to Ulugh Mirza, paraganas to Abul Hāji Muḥammed Sultān and Dāwar to Ismā'il\* Beg. They were old amirs. Kilåt was assigned to Sher Afgan and Shah to Haidar Khāo, Khwāja Jalālud-Din Maḥinud, governor of 'Askari at Kandahār was surrendered to Mir Muhammad 'Ali. He left his baggage and haram behind at Kandahār and marched to Kābul. Khānzāda Begum died at the manzil. Hindāl Mirzā came, met him and gladdened him by his arrival. In wake of him, the nobles of Kābul came one after the other. Due to difference in water and climate, many persons fell ill and died including Haider Sultan. Jamil Beg brother of Balus came. He was the tutor of Ak Sultan, son-in-law of Kamran Mirzā. He was Amir at Ghazni. He asked for forgiveness of Balus's offence. He was pardoned. On his encampment at Yurat, Shaikh 'Ali ordered Kamran Qāsim Mukhlis Turbati, Superintendent of Artillery, to take cannons to Chalka Duri near the house of Malus Beg and to arrange them there. He ordered Qasim Barlas to go forward with cannons in the array of advance-guard. He ordered women of the camp to enter the fort. He controlled the fort and came to where the cannons were arrayed, he alighted and arrayed the army. In the meantime, Kāsim Mirzā returned to him defeated by the contingent of Humāyun. This contingent consisted of Khwaja Mu'azzam, Ḥaji Muḥammad Sultan and Sher Afgan. He then requested Hindal to go in all haste. He responded to it. Humāyun encamped in the vicinity of Arkandi. Bālus, Jamil and those who were with him and Shah Burdi Khan came to him. Muşahib Beg b. Khwaia Kalān Beg came to him with a large army. He then requested Bālus to ride for the army was to come at 'Ayn ul-Jama.' He rode and saw the two sons of Ḥaidar Sultān. They delayed for arrival of 'Ali Quli Safarji and Bahādur for mourning of their father. Qarācha Khān arrived. Kāmrān Mirzā took a review of what happened due to misfortune and made amends himself by sending Khwāja Khāwind and Mahmud Khwāja 'Abdul-Khālik to Humāyun for forgiveness of his offences. He had come to a distance of half a farsakh from him. He accepted that due to his arrival. He granted them permission with what they had wished out of their glorious position and waited for their reply. They returned to Kāmrān Mirzā. Long time had passed since he sent them and now it was evening to go into concealment. He came out in darkness to the citadel

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1016,

of Kabul with his son Ibrahim and a party from his haram. He sent them \* from it by way of Si Hisar to Ghazni. Humayun received news of his flight. He ordered Balus to march to Kabul. He ordered Hindal Mirza to march in the wake of Kamran Mirza. He marched in wake of Balus to Kabul. The victory was gained on 12th Ramadan, 952 (1545). Mulla Nawidi composed half a verse for the date of victory. "Be jang girift mulki Kābul az way." He conquered Kabul without a war. Abul Fadl said: Humayun sat on the throne of his authority and summoned the elite and the commoners for usual benedictions. Events of the time were death of Mu'ayyad Beg and Yunus 'Ali. They were the chief men of his majlis. Mugaddam Beg was expelled to Kashmir as it was said that he had decided to go over to Kâmran Mirza in concord with Khwaja Mu'azzam. The Khwaja was degraded from his rank of confidence. Afterwards he was lifted up as he was related to the wife of Humayun. He then ordered to arrange a mailis of pleasure. He had crossed from it for the festival at Artah Bägh. During these days, Yādgar Nāşir Mirzā came to him. He had come out from Kāmrān Mirzā to Badakhshān. He did not agree with what he had intended. He went to Qandahar but did not find Humayun there. Biram Khan met him with regard and sufficiency. He tarried there when Humayun wrote to him to come to him. Walad Beg, an envoy of Tahmasp came for congratulations for victory along with Qasim Tughai, an envoy of Sulaiman Mirza. Amir Sayyid 'Ali came to him. He was a notable personality on the side of the Afghans and the Balooch. He lived nearby from Doki within jurisdiction of Sind. Humayun gave him this place. Lavanak Balooch came to see him. He was a noble of the tribe. He assigned him Shal and Mashtang. The events which Humayun heard were about Yadgar Naşir Mirza who saw that Muzaffar, the foster-brother of 'Askari Mirzā was emboldened to do to which his hand did not reach. After proof as it was verified by 'Abdul Jabbar Shajkh who was one of the reliable men. He ordered Muzaffar Kuka to be punished. After reproach of Yadgar at the speech of Qaracha Khan, Ibrahim Aishak Aqa ordered him to put in captivity. He was carried to the citadel of Kābul near the house of 'Askari Mirzä. Chaghatāi Sultān died. He belonged to the royal † Mughal family. He was young, handsome in appearance and character. He was liked by Humayun. He was extremely perturbed by his death. Amani composed the following lines on his death:

Sultan Chaghata was a rose of the rose-garden of beauty Suddenly, death guided him to paradise.

He decided to travel in the season of rose in this garden Hearts bud-like, through grief got immersed in blood

Original Text, p. 1017.

I sought date of his death from mournful nightingale. It wailed and said that he went out of garden.

reard about the Khutba and the sikka of Sulaiman Mirza. Humayun ensed at Yurat Jalak for conquest of Badakhshan in the early part of 953 5). 'Askari Mirzā presented himself. He heeded him with favour and him in his company. On his encampment at Alnak Karābāgh he ordered Muḥammad Taghāi, Amir of the guards of Kābul to kill Yādār Nāsir Mirzā. eplied, "I did not kill a sparrow in my life. How is it possible for me to . person like him?" He refused. He ordered Muhammad Kāsim Muji for He finished him with a single arrow on his throat. When he encamped he outskirts of Andarab he learnt that Sulaiman Mirza had made preparafor war at a place called Tirkar. Before Hindal Mirza rode, chief men such urācha Khān, Hāji Muhammad Khān, Khwāja Mu'azzam, Shaikh Bahlol, Sirhindi, Sultan Husain Khan and Muhammad Jalair rode for war, man Mirza's men consisted of Mirza Beg Barlas. After a fierce battle, the ry was gained with exceptional courage of Shaikh Bahlol and afterwards ie above-mentioned persons. They entered into the ditch and assaulted Beg Barlas. Sulaiman Mirza fled to a narrow pass of Khust. Mirza Beg is and Uwais Sultan came-Every one of them belonged to the Mughal I family-to Humāyun. Humāyun then marched to the valley of Khust, man came out of it and went to Kulab. At this manzil, the Badakhshanis sections came one after the other. He then marched to Kalawkan and \* to Kasham. Sulaiman Mirza came out from that side and crossed the river . It was Jaxartes. The Khutba was recited in the name of Humayun at akhshān which was included in the region. Qunduz was assigned to Hindal 1. He ordered Mun'im Khan to collect revenue of Khust. He decided to n the fort of Zafar during cold season. He then encamped at Shākhdan en Kasham and Zafar. He got indisposed and illness became serious which nged to two months. He had fainting feats which repeated many times. port circulated among people that it was not the disease. Hindal Mirza hed from Qunduz to al-Mā' known as Āb-i-Kukcha. The companions of man Mirza moved about in those places. Revolt was about to break out. cha transferred his tent to the expanse at the gate of the royal palace and ed a tent nearer the gate in concert with men and guarded the royal cupola. id not allow any one to enter the cupola. Khwaja Khawind Muhmud and āja Mu'in came to the bed of Humāyun. He was in an unconscious state did not regain it except after five days. Mir Barka came to him for congraions. He looked at him. He offered his own self in sacrifice, prostrated of thanks and said prayers on his behalf. Humayun said addressing him.

Original Text, p. 1019.

"Oh Mir! Forgive me for the sake of God."-Mir in Persian is equivalent to Sayvid in Arabic—that is. Oh Savvid! Forgive me for the sake of God. represented to him what was from men and what was from Qaracha Khan. He said prayers on his behalf and for mercy. That very time, Fudail Beg prepared for Kābul with a letter of health. Events of the year were: Murder of Vazir Khwāja Sulţān Muḥammad Rashidi. Khwāja Mu'azzam and a gang of vagabonds talked about religion and fanaticism without understanding in the petition against Khwaja Muhammad Rashidi. They assaulted him by coming to him at breakfast time and murdered him. It was on 21st night of Ramadan of the year. They fied to Kābul in the morning. Humāyun heard about it. He wrote to Muhammad 'Ali Taghai and Fudail Beg to capture and imprison them. That was done. Mawlana Bayazid had proficiency in medicine. He was his grandfather. Mirzā Ulugh Beg was favourably disposed towards him. He was distinguished in preparation of almanacs, mathematics and observatory. He is to be applauded for treatment of Humayun. He was shown exceptional favours. Humavun marched to the fort of Zafar. He completely recovered. He assigned Käh Mard, Dohak and Bamian to Sher Afgan and promised him addition of \* Ghorband. He permitted him to go to his places.

#### Kāmrān's return to Kābul

Abul Fadl said: On Humayun's march from Qandahar to Kabul, its citizens of different sections joined him. Kamran Mirza went to Ghazni. He was pursued by Hindal Mirza and Mirza Muşahib Beg. They did not find him. They returned to Kābul. Kāmrān came to Ghazni but its citizens did not allow him to enter the fort. He turned to Khidr Khan Hazara. He treated him as a guest. He came to Tiri with him and thence he went to Dawar. Husamud-Din 'Ali son of Mir Khalifa prevented his entry into the fort and frequently fought with him. Humāyun heard about it. He assigned Ghaznı to Hindāl Mirzā. Ulugh Mirzā was distinguished with a flag and a drum-Tuman Togh as is called among the Mughals and assigned Dawar to him. He learnt about Yadgar Nāsir Mirzā's arrival at Qandahār. He wrote to its Amir Biram Khān to prepare and despatch Ulugh Mirza and Yadgar Nāşir Mirza to ward off evil of Kāmrān Mirzā. He wrote to them also to march to-gether to Dāwar. On receipt of news of their arrival, the Hazāras dispersed. Kāmrān turned to the side of Bhakkar and took refuge with Shah Ḥasan Arghun. Ulugh Mirzā lived in the region of Dāwar and Yādgār Nāşîr went to Kābul and met Humāyun. He was killed there. Kämrån tarried in Sind and married the daughter of the ruler of Tattha. He passed his days on that side till he heard about Humayun's illness in Badakhshan. The nobles spread disturbing news about his illness. He sought help from the ruler of Tattha. He abandoned Qandahār because of

Original Text, p. 1020.

i Khān's prevention. He went to Kābul. He came across horse dealers environs of Kilat. He seized them by force and distributed them among mpanions. He attacked Ghazni in negligence of its residents. Its lord, il was at Qunduz while its governor Zāhid Beg was in a drunken state. ompanions solicited them for Kamand. They entered the fort and Zahid 7as informed that Kāmrān was there. He ordered him to be thrown from all. He died. He left behind his brother-in-law Dawlat Sultan at Ghazni narched to Kābul. He came there in the morning without any followers\* saused at the gate of Tākia Dozān, and made inquiries about Muhammad laghai, its governor. He was informed that he was in the bath-room. 'Ali La'li Kurchi was seen by Kamran. He went out with Kamran. He was siness of negligence. He killed him and went to the fort. Pahelwan ir Bali defended the iron-gate. There was a pledge between them. He ed it for him and entered the city and lived there. It was an event of the ing. Hāji Muḥammad, the Superintendent of the Patrols went to him. ran said to him, "How I went and returned you return?" He replied, u went in the evening and entered in the morning. He then alighted at the st citadel. Shams-ud-Din Muhammad Atka Khan was near him with e Akbar with majesty and glory. He turned to him, surrendered him with arty. He ordered the party to be put to death. He blinded Mehtar Wasil Mehtar Vakil. They were the special mamaliks of Humayun. He killed m ud-Din'Ali b. Mir Khalifa who was called by Humayun. He put to ) Choli Bahadur. He was a sincere servant. He ordered Khwaja Mu'azzam. dur Khan, Atka Khan, Nadim Kuka and a party of such others to be soned. He treated with conciliation such as Sher Afgan, Husain Beg Kuka Jultan Muhammad Badakhshi. Their fortune turned into misfortune due small mistake. It was the result of negligence on the part of Muhammad 'aghāi and Fudail Beg that Kāmrān lived in Kābul. This is due to differand negligence among them.

### Return of Humdyun from Badakhshan to Kabul

Abul Fadl said: Humāyun learnt about the incident of Kābul. He wrote laimān Mirzā with favour and assigned to him what belonged to him in the He retained Kunduz and its adjacent places for Hindāl Mirzā. He turned 'bul. His passage lay over Qunduz. Hindāl Mirzā met him. He stayed him for some days. He then passed by Kutāl Sabartu to Kutal Rikak and nped at Khwāja Sārān. Its Amir was Sher 'Ali, one of the famous men of rān Mirzā. He went to Mā' for seeking an opportunity. He conquered it prevented all those who got defeated from the party of Hindāl Mirzā and cha Khān. Humāyun crossed it and encamped in the plain of Jarikārān.

Original Text, p. 1022.

Baggage kept him behind. He put it in charge of Sher 'Ali and returned to Kābul. At his manzil, he looked to baseless security and false promises. His \* men deserted to Kamran Mirza. They were Iskander Sultan, Mirza Sanjar Barlas b. Sultan Junayd Barlas b. sister of Sultan Babur. At the manzil of Damah, he tarried for some days and pacified the minds of those who remained there due to congenial climate. He assembled them and said, "Kāmrān has controlled the city, he has garrisoned himself within the fort. What place do you see for alighting at the fort?" They said, "As it is garrisoned, alight at a place where proper supplies may come without any hindrance. He advanced from Kābul to the environs of Buri and Khwāja Basta and we alight there." On this, Humayun marched from Damah and journey a little, and paused from the way on the side. He called Haji Muhammad Khan and said to him. "I do not find this place for encampment by way of settlement because his family is in the city. He will be disturbed for being separated from them." Some imagined from this statement that his intention was to proceed to Qandahār for it is his way and that too would not be vacant. It is better for us to try to occupy the city. In case Kāmrān came out fighting from the fort, what else would be his object except that people would take shelter from fall of snow. The ground would be moist. Each will meet his family. There would be no single man amongst us." He applauded Hāji Muḥammad Khān. Humāyun executed it. He ordered Hāji Muḥammad Khān to pass by way of Kutal Minār to the direction of the city. He passed from Asfal Kutab. On arrival of Hindal Mirza to the village of the Afghans, Sher Afgan made his appearance with most soldiers of Kamran Mirza. A hard battle was fought between them. Hindal Mirza had stood firm in it. Feet of most of his followers had slipped. Humāyun looked at Oaracha Khan, Mir Barka and Shah Quli Naranji. It so chanced that Haji Muhammad Khan came on his way to the battle-field and thus victory was gained. Sher Afgan was captured. Qaracha Khan and others requested to put him to death. Humâyun travelled by way of Khyâban to Kābul. Most of his soldiers had come after being defeated to the iron-gate. Mirza Khidr Khan was in the city along with the Arghuns. They tracked the path of Hazāra. The city was conquered. Qaracha Khan encamped that day at Bostan. The captives were ordered for punishment. He then passed by Bagh-i-Diwankhana and encamped on an eledated mountain at Kabul called 'Ikabain. dominated over the fort. In the meantime, Mehdi Khan, Chalma Beg, Baba Sa'eed Qabchāk deserted to Kāmrān Mirzā. Qarācha Khān then ordered to encamp opposite to the fort-gate as an impediment for the fort. In the meanwhile, he and Ḥāji Muḥammad Khān came out negligently in the midst of more than forty. Ḥāji Muḥammad Khān encountered them and put them to rout and pursued them to near the gate. Sher 'Ali came out of the fort, and a

Original Text, p. 1023.

battle was fought wherein Hāji Muḥammad Khān was wounded in his right by a blow of Sher 'Ali. His companions made them run back to the fort. assaulted Hāji Muhammad Khān in spite of his weakness at his manzil. eakness obliged him to remain within doors and he died. Humāyun sent on animal to a place according to his rank for people to see him and to ill-speaking of men of the fort. Mirzā Sanjar b. Sultān Junavd came out ay from the fort. The horse was fast and sharp. It carried him to Baghafsha where stronger men surrounded him and pulled him to the place umayun. He kept him imprisoned. In the wake of Sanjar's incident, ımmad Qasim and Muhammad Husain sons of the sister of Pahelwan Dost, were great amirs and they had the honour of presence of Humayun at in, descended upon Humayun from wall of the fort. In the meantime, avan with horses and plenty of goods came from Persia to Charikan. an Mirza ordered Sher 'Ali to go out to the caravan and bring it back with it had. Tardi Muhammad Khing-i-Jung turned it back. He did not listen They went to the caravan. On their return, Humayun learnt from . He rode his horse and controlled all suspected roads of the men. When aw the blockade, Tardi Beg Khing-i-Jang said, "It was because of this Sher Ali tried to enter the fort but found no way to it." Bagi Saleh sted Kamran, one of the men of the fort, to be at the iron-gate of the fort, ould thus be necessitated for Sher 'Ali to come out and go in with what he When the gate opened, he came out with a party of men. Muhammad n Khan Muji, Qasim Mukhlis and Jamil Beg met them. They were men nk. There was a fierce battle between them. Sunbul Khan made his arance with seventy slaves from among gun-men. Baqi Şāleh fell down-\* it was the cause of revolt-Jalal-ud-Din was wounded. It was a deep d. He was a man of confidence of Mirza Kamran. Men of the fort ated to it. Jamil Beg was killed from the party of Humayun. Sher 'Ali despaired of entry into the fort. He marched to Ghazni and men of āyun pursued him such as Khidr Khwāja Jahān, Musāhib Beg and Isma'il Duldi. They saw him at Kutal Sajawal. He returned and fought and fled azāra and took refuge in the house of Khidr Khan Hazāra. Khidr Khwāja ned with what he had left behind. Men of the caravan had taken refuge Humayun. When the belongings of Sher 'Ali were produced, Humayun to men of the caravan, "Take away your horse after recognising it." They ered everything of their own. He then ordered to kill captives of Sher contingent in public at known places. When Kamran Mirza became helpand learnt about deceit and opposition of the people, his imagination did vork and his reason failed. His mind got confused at the killing of children. en and servants. He surrendered the wife of Balus to the market, killed

Original Text, p. 1025.

his three sons, the eldest in age was seven, the middle one, five and the youngest, three. He threw them from wall of the fort outside near the battery of Qaracha Beg and Muşāḥib Beg. He ordered Sardār Beg son of Qarācha Khân to suspend them with elevation of the fort in an inverted position from outside. Similar was the case with Khuda Dost son of Musahib Beg. Their father heard about it "Either you come to me or you give me a way or raise the siege from me. If nothing is done, the condition of your sons will be similar to that of the children of Balus Beg." Qarachu Beg had the rank of Vakil with him from Humāyun. Qarācha Khān echoed his words, "Surrender head of Humāyun, he ruined my son in interest of his master. Imagine him in the easiest way of imagining to sacrifice his father. You are misguided. Solicited to treat citizens with favour. I have no power over him to make efforts on your behalf. I give him to you in your coming to him. He ordered to suspend wife of Muhammad Qasim Khan Muji with her breast. He did such abominable things. He solicited him to stop cannons for attack in the interest of the coolness of eye (son) of\* the Sultan." In the meantime, Mirzā Ulugh Beg came from Dāwar, Qāsim Husain Khan Shaibani from Kilat, Khwaja Ghazi, who was in the army of the Shah, Shah Quli Sultan, a relative of Biram Khan from Qandahar, and a party from Badakhshan. Their arrival strengthened pressure on the fort. Kamran Mirzā resorted to deceit. He entreated Qarācha Khān for forgiveress for the past by coming to him. It should be accepted. Hindal Mirza, Qaracha Khan, Muşahib Beg, and many other similar persons, with care and caution in them were a branch of hipocrisy. They did not look to customary peace for advancement in affairs and needs for them. Difficulties of a community are advantages for the community. They sent to him saying to him, "Every one should ponder over the fort and come to the cupola with hope. Begin before time presses you hard to come out. It took place on Thursday night, 7th Rabi'l 954 (1547). He marched to Badakhshan and Humayun sent Haji Muhammad Khān in his pursuit and conquered the fort. Hāji Muhammad Khān practised slowness in taking it or he did not know it. He returned with prisoners including Kak Sultan and Juzi, every one of whom was in district of his charge. He ordered to kili Sultān Quli, Tarsun Mirzā, Mirzā Ḥāfiz Madsud, Mawlānā Bāgi Yarghu and Mawlana Qadam. They were main men of revolts. Kamran Mirza and 'Ali Quli proceeded to Badakhshan by way of Sanjar valley. Mirza Beg and Sher 'Ali, his confidential companions saw him in the vicinity of Dohāk. When he came to Ghori, he won over its governor Mirzā Beg Barlās but he failed. He decided to move further. One of his companions said to the other "What is it that he pursues without protection for him. If he had protection, he would not have walked with such disgrace from governor of Ghori." Kamran replied "For what thing you mock in your speech? You do not understand

Original Text, p. 1026.

arithmetic. I am immersed in wonder with shortage of your knowledge out of care. I deem it proper with this quality to resolve what I have resolved." He then turned to the governor, fought with him and defeated him and occupied Ghori. He took what he needed from it. He left behind Sher 'Ali and moved on to Badakhshān. He wrote to Sulaimān Mirzā for help but he did not reply.\* He journeyed to Balkh and requested help from its lord, Pir Muhammad Khān. Humäyun sent Qaracha Khan to Badakhshan together with Sulaiman Mirza, and Hindal Mirza. All tried to capture Kamran. Oaracha Khan did as he was ordered. They assembled at Ghori. Sher 'Ali strove to garrrison and fight. They did the same. Sher 'Ali and his companions defeated Qaracha Khan at Ghori. On an assault on Ghori, Khwaja Nur, a famous man of Hindal was killed. Similarly, Mulla Mirak Kitabdar was also killed. He was his fayourite. In the meantime, a report got circulated about Kāmrān Mirzā's arrival at Baikh. Sulaimān Mirzā returned to Badakhshām, Hindal to Qunduz, Qarācha Khān to Kābul. Humāyun, on report of the army of Balkh, came out from Kābul to Ghorband and pitched his pavilion there. Qarācha Khān kame there. On his return to it, his baggage was looted. He granted leave to all in Kābul. Humayun waited for him at the manzil of Gulbahar. When he came to it, he marched to Badakhshān. But heavy snow-fall impeded his advancement. He returned to Kabul.

> Arrival of Pir Muhammad Khan, ruler of Balkh to help Kamran Mirsa to Badakhshan in the year.

Abul Fadl said: Kamran Mirza encamped at Aibak on his march to Balkh. Its amir met him on behalf of the ruler Pir Muhammad Khān. He met him and alighted him on a side. He returned to Balkh and informed Pir Muhammad Khan about him. He sent a party of great amirs for his reception. They met him. He came with them to Pir Muhammad Khan. It was a good meeting. After a feast and regard, he informed him about the object of his coming. He assembled his horse and moved out with him to Badakhshān. On his arrival. Sulaiman Mirza went to impregnable narrow passes from his frontiers and garrisoned himself with his men. Hindal Mirza did the same, Kämran conquered most of the region. Pir Muhammad returned to Balkh. He left behind him a contingent for his help at Badakhshān. Kāmrān Mirzā came to the outskirts of Kasham and Talqan and despatched Khalik Bardi and Rafigt Kuka to Rustak. It was situated in the vicinity of Sulaiman Mirza and Ibrahim Mirzā. After a fierce battle between them, the victory is from God, they returned defeated to the preventive frontiers. Kamran conquered as much as possible. It is said in a proverb that a tall man is a fool; it so chanced from Qarācha Khān. He was Vakil of the Salţanat. He assaulted Badakhshān with

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1027.

three house along with the noble amirs such as Bālus, Muşahib Beg, Ismā'il Beg, Haider Dost Mughal, Shaikhan Khwaja Khidri and Qurban Qarawal. The cause of it for the march was that he thought himself to be the prop of the state and support of the saltanat. Besides he had the vanity of different desires in him. Khwaja Ghazi was favoured with the Diwan of the Saltanat. Qaracha Khān expected to send a letter to him to strike off his neck and turn the mansab of Khwaja Qasim to him. Humayun did not agree upon it. The abovementioned persons met together for fulfilment of his desire. They tracked the path of Kutal Minar to Badakhshan. Humayun received news of his march. He sent a party in pursuit of him consisting of Tardi Beg Khan, Mun'im Khan, Muhammad Ouli Barlas, 'Abdullah Sultan. He rode in wake of them. The above-mentioned persons happened to attack the amir of Saka in the neighbourhood of Oarabagh. Oaracha Khan saw them at close of the day, at Jui Muri. It was dusk. When Oaracha Khan crossed the bridge of Ghorband, he destroyed the bridge and treaded further. Tardi Beg Khan returned. Humayun returned to Kabul on account of this move on the part of Qaracha. Qaracha passed by Kutal Hindukoh and encountered Kämrän at Kasham. When Humāyun made good what was disturbed on the thread of organisation, he marched from Kābul to Arta Bagh and wrote to Sulaiman Mirja and Hindal Mirza ordering them to be ready with the army and to wait for the order. Hāji Muhammad Khān came to him from Ghazni. Humayun met one day with sincere man of old age and youth. He questioned him in respect of the strategy of war. Those who advised with march from Qandahar were with him. Badakhshan was the most important problem. Among them were in favour of departing to Badakhshan from him. He asked Muḥammad Sultan about it one day. He replied that Kamran is puffed up with price for those who had joined him as before. But he had seen the army of saltanat before passing by Kutal Hindu koh which would mean victory. Humayun said that there was no future for the proud and recited.\*

#### Verse

Let no one be proud of his strength For pride removes cap of the head away.

He then marched from Arta Bägh towards Badakhshān on Monday, 5th Jamādi I, 955 (1548). He was then at Qarā Bāgh. Ḥāji Muḥammad Khān arrived there from Ghazni while Qāsim Ḥusain Khān had come from Bank. Mirzā Ibrāhim came out from Badakhshān in all haste and met him there. He was distinguished with favour more than which cannot be. He was in the neighbourhood of Panjir. Tamar Shighāli petitioned him. Ibrahim Mirzā fought with him. He took the way as against him. On the second day of his arrival, he

Original Text, p. 1029.

to Humayun from the side of Malek 'Ali Panjeri, his brother, with the Tamar Shighali and apologised for what had happened from him by sending read. Humayun took an omen from it. Ibrahim Mirza caught his son on arrival to him for some need. He granted him leave to go to Sulaiman a inducing him for the collection of army and to convey him to come in all e on hearing of him at Talqan. On his encampment at Azarak of Tuman ir, he ordered Hāji Muḥammad Bābā Qashka, Qāsim Husain Sulfān, Tardi . Muhammad Quli Barlas, Ali Quli Sultan, Mir Lutf, and Heider Muhammad li to advance for command of the advance-guard. From the side of Kamran, he fort of Andarab were Muhammad Sultan, Tardi Beg, and Muhammad 'Ali ng-i-Jang. When they heard about their passing by Kutal Hindu koh, they out of the fort and abandoned it. On his encampment in the neighbourof Andarab Hindal Mirza came from Ounduz and Sher 'Ali stood by his side hains. One of the favours shown to Hindal Mirza was that he met Humayun lorse-back without getting down for obeisance from his horse. The cause of f'Ali's capture was that he had become proud of his status under Kamran za. Kamran had established himself at Badakhshan. He asked for permisto seize Qunduz and expel Hindal from it. He came to Qunduz. It so pened that his manzil was surrounded by a large number of persons. away from the house and threw himself in a pit. It was full of water. se his hand. He fell in a rope of his cunning. He was brought to Hindal. ordered him to be enchained. He presented himself with him in the Diwan lumavun. He pardoned him and appointed him an 'amil of Ghori. Hindal\* was ennobled with the command of the advance-guard. His subordinates ided Haji Muhammad Khan. Humayun encamped at Alank Kadan in the dle of Iamadi II of the year. The Oadi of Andarab came to him along with de of Tokbai and Salkanchi Balooch, Imag of Badakhshan, attendants of āhib Beg and a contingent of soldiers. On his encampment at Tālkān. re Mirzā 'Abduliāh was, and who alone fled from Humāyun, and garrisone self. Hindal Mirza ordered to cross the river Bangi and wield the sword. e meantime, Kamran Mirza arrived from the fort of Zafar post-haste to ā 'Abdullāh. A war broke out between him and Hindal Mirza at Jalsan alsan situated on an elevated place on Saturday, 15th Jamadi II. The v of Humavun did not cross water while there was a long distance between dvance-guard and the centre. The advance-guard was defeated. Kamran with a few followers at the place while he dispersed the rest for pillage of rage of the advance-guard. Humayun stood at the river. In the meane, he crossed half a farsakh, it became easy to cross. Near by him, Shaikham aja Khidri was brought. He was chief of the people of Khwaja Khidrian. ordered him to be chastised. He was beaten, hit on the chest and struck

Original Text, p. 1030.

with the fish when he cried that he was dying but was alive. Isma'il Beg Duldi was then brought. Mun'im Khan pleaded for him, He was surrendered to him. He marched to Akma which was with Kamran Mirza. He ordered Fathullah Beg brother of Rawshan Kuka to advance with a contingent of self-sacrificing soldiers in the face of Kämran. It was sword by which Fathullah separated rider from the saddle. He then saw the contingent of Humayun. Kamran fled from him to the fort of Talgan. It was a victory. None of Humayun's soldiers was injured, except 'Ali uli OKban. He only received a wound. The advanceguard of Hindal Mirza and Haji Muhammad Khan captured on their rout Kāmrān's companions such as Ishāq Sultān, Sardi Beg son of Beg Mirak Bāba Jujak. After the victory, Hindal Mirza presented bimself with them. He pardoned most of them. He then encamped at Talqan and pressed those who were in it. Mum'im Khan Mubariz Beg died of his gun-shot. Humayun learnt about his death. He said, "Would to God, his brother Musahib Beg should have been hit. Then out of kindness, he wrote to Kamran to surrender himself with loyalty with honour and admonition to everything else: "Oh ill-natured" brother, Oh war-monger! give up this work which is the cause of warfare and assassination and harm to many persons. Show mercy to civil and military people. To-day all these persons who are being killed on the day of resurrection;

You would be held responsible for their murder Hands of all would be at your skirts.

Better to come to view of peace
Fulfil path of manliness.

As Mirzā was intoxicated with remissness and upturned from fortune and backturned from luck, it proved of no avail. In reply to his favour and sagacity he sent the following verse:

That one tightly embraces bride of the kingdom Who kisses a sharp sword.

Siege continued to the city. Ilyas assaulted Pir Muhammad Khān Uzbek. With deceit and cunning for loyalty, he wrote a letter, tied it to an arrow and sent it towards the pavilion of Humāyun. Its contents were: I did not know the rights of favour and kindness of your Majesty. I saw what I saw. Now I repent of deeds of the past. I wish you to permit me to perambulate the Holy Ka'aba of permission so that I may become purified of sin of revolt and filth of ingratitude and make myself ready for attendance and worthy of service. I hope to be favoured that this good luck should be had through influence of Arab Mir of Mekka for that Arab Mir is a sincere traveller distinguished with purity and connected with knowledge of the philosopher's stone for Humāyun marched to him. He was with him in this travel for analysis of army of prayer

Original Text, p. 1031.

When Humayun read the letter, he sent for Mir 'Arab and talked with him on the contents of this letter of Kämrän. He replied, "I am responsible to give him the reply. He wrote the reply and sent it to him to the fort: "Know ohmen of the fort! Freedom lies in sincerity and peace in surrender of the fort. Peace be to those who are guided." Kämran got acquainted with the contents\* and wrote in reply, "There is no deviation from what Mir Arab has said. If there is manliness in nature of Humayun, it should be acted upon. Give permission to Mir 'Arab to enter the fort." He met him and rebuked him for what he did. Kamran did not say more than what he had said." Fault, fault. He said and I acted every thing that he ordered." He said to him, "Mir 'Arab, call for the remedy. You stand with me with a sincere heart in service." He replied to him and stood with him at the gate of the fort. The Mir 'Arab had fore-sight in time and knowledge of tone of period. He knew that he did not increase in his concord more than this and he did not find him transgressing the gate. He knew before he knew. He said to him, "As you have resolved upon my counsel, it is your duty to move up to the gate so that enmity may vanish and you will be delivered from transgression. I return to your mailis and send to him his amirs who have fled to you as he sent the transgressors. I tell him in the fort and seek permission from him for travel to Hijāz with support of the Invisible." He accepted from him what he said. He then requested him to be with him as an amir by sending Balus to them. He was an old servant. He accepted that and departed him. He came to Humāyun from the fort and represented to him the exact state of affairs. He sought forgiveness from him for him. He immediately pardoned him. Kāmrān Mirzā fulfilled what he promised Mir 'Arab. He was Khatib Mawlana 'Abdul Bagi the Sadr. Humāyun marched from his manzil to Bostan in vicinity of the fort and alighted in it. He ordered Haji Muhammad Khan for desence of the frontier for Kämran to pass with what he had with caution perhaps it might be from him. He ordered 'Ali Dost Khan Barbeki, Muhammad Quli Shaikh Kaman and Lutfi Sirhindi for defence of the gate for exit of disloyal amirs. On their coming to it after exit of Kāmrān with his restricted number of persons, Kāmrān came out as settled. On his way, he passed by Hāji Muḥammad Khān and Ibrāhim Mirzā. He saw one of his servants with a horse for him. He informed his master Ibrāhim. He sent him who alighted him and came with him. Humāyun learnt about it. Ibrahim was affected thereby and he turned from him. Out of disgrace, Ibrahim went to Kasham without seeking permission. Humāyun reproached Hāji Muhammad Khān for what passed from him and said, "How! You see, you rewarded him for his relation with Kamran. He showed mannerst towards him." He then wrote for apology and sent him a khil'at and a horse with Khwaja Jalalud-Din Mahmud, Major Domo of Household Department.

Original Text, p. 1032.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 1033,

Qarācha Khān was brought with a sword round his neck for what happened at night. He was ordered to remove the sword from the neck and was pardoned. He kissed the carpet and stood. He then addressed him in Turkish language consoling him, "In military world, such faults always take place. They are forgiven." He then ordered him to stand to the left side of Tardi Beg Khān. Muṣāḥib Beg was brought with his quiver and sword round his neck. He ordered to lighten his neck and said, "Mistakes of the great are committed by the small. In this way one after another till the time comes for sacrifice of soldier at last. It is an old usage". He said to him in the Turkish language, "If you were not afflicted, you would not have been called to this." He replied in the Turkish language, "From the hand of Nature which blackened the face except similar things will not happen from him. Hasan Quli Sulţān Mohradār recited the following couplet in the majlis

### Couplet

He who tries to blow the lamp Which God kindles, burns his beard.

Beard of Karācha Qhān was the longest in the majlis. Most of them felt ashmed and disgraced at this recitation. Humāyun marched next day and encamped on the river of Talqān.

## Return of Kamran from the way to Humayun

Kämrän Mirzä and Mirzä 'Abdulläh met Humäyun on Wednesday, 17th Rajab of the year. Kāmrān Mirzā and Mirzā 'Abdullāh met in the vicinity of Bādām valley. It was fraternal kindness upon him as stated above. He said to Mirzā 'Abdullāh," If you were not in his place, your action would not have been for his interest." He replied, "With reverse of his action," He said. "To seek an opportunity for his reward of action, is now for you." He said as to what it was. He replied, "We are today at a place where the hand of Saltanat does not reach to us. It is proper to attend upon him and seek his\* forgiveness." He did. When near the manzil of Humayun, he sent Balus to him. Humayun was delighted with his news. He ordered Mun'im Khan, Tardi Beg Khan, Mir Muhammad Munshi, Hasan Quli Mohardar and Balhe Beg Touchi to go for his reception. He then ordered Qasim Husain Sultan Shaibani, Khidr Khwaja, Sultan Iskander and Sultan 'Ali Kuli Khan. He then ordered Mirzā Hindāl and Mirzā 'Askari whom he had set at liberty that day, He prepared a legal majlis in this order. 'Humayun sat and Kamran Mirza arrived. He saluted him with decorum and stood. Humayun said to him, " This was in accordance with law. There remained the turn of fraternity. He instructed him to sit down to his right. It was a worth seeing majlis. On his encamp-

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text p. 1034.

ment at 'Ayn alias Bandkusha, he ordered for arrangement of a majlis of intimacy at that 'Ayn Sultan Babur had encamped at it. It was a meeting of loyalty from him from Khan Mirza and Jahangir Mirza. There was a stoneinscription on which the date of meeting was inscribed "Amara behi Babur" ). In like manner, Humāvun convened a mailis for lovalty of Kāmrān. It was a meeting of brothers at this spot. He ordered for the date of the meeting to be inscribed on a stone-tablet "Iktedae b. Babur." ( mained as a monument at this 'Ayn. On his encampment at Nari in Badakhshan, they decided to meet at the approach of the year for conquest of Balkh. Till now Khatlan was granted to Kamran. It was a tank to the side of Mok and Karātakin. He ordered Sher 'Ali to attend upon him. Kāmrān was distinguished with a standard and a drum, tuman tugh. In like manner, Sulaiman and Hindal were ennobled with a flag and a drum. After pacts and pledges, he permitted them to go to their respective regions. He returned to Kābul on and Ramadan of the year. He granted permission to Qaracha Khan and Musabib Beg for a travel to Hijāz. For exile cools improvement of self and one remembers bounties. They then paused at Hazāra and learnt about faults. He permitted them to turn to it. It was in this year that the incident of Mirzā Ulugh Beg son of Mirzā Muhammad Sultān son of Mirzā Uwais son of Bāykara son of Mansur son of 'Umar Shaikh took place. Its account is: He came out from Dawar to go to Badakhshan with an intention for service. Khwaja Mu'azzam was with him. He received news of victory in the vicinity of Ghazni. Khwāja Mu'azzam went with him to the land of Hazāra. He made haste in war and thus he attained to martyrdom. There were four grand-fathers between Sulțan Muḥammad Mirza and Amir Timur Şahib-i-Qaran. His mother was the daughter of Sultan Husain Mirza. After his death, he was in the service of Sultan Babur and afterwards, he was in the service of Humayun. He had two sons, Ulugh Mirzā and Shāh Mirzā. Ulugh Mirzā had two sons who had become disloyal. After Humayun, Muhammad Sultan was in service of Sultan Akbar. The elder one was exempted from the army. He was assigned A'zampur and its adjacent places for his maintenance. In his old age, he had his sons Ibrāhim Husain, Muhammad Husain, Mas'ud Husain and 'Akil Husain. Ibrahim and Muhammad proved disloyal. Their account is previously given in Daftar I, An envoy of 'Abdur Rashid Khān b. Sultan Sa'eed Khān, ruler of Kāshghar came with a letter and a present to Kābul in this year. 'Abbās Sulţān from among the Uzbek Sultans came to Kabul. He was looked to with an eye of favour. He married his younger sister Gulchehrah Begum. The death of Shah Mirzā brother of Ulugh Mirzā took place in this year. He started from the region of Ushtur Kirām for Kābul with intention of service. On his arrival at Kutal Minār, Muḥammad Sultān was there. He killed the uncle of Hāji

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1035.

Muhammad Khān at Hind Kuki in negligence of Shāh Muḥammad broth Hāji Muhammad by hitting an arrow at head of the horse. He attains martyrdom because of that.

### Invasion of Balkh

Humayun marched from Kabul for conquest of Balkh in the early pa 956 (1549). He sent Babtu Beg, one of the favourites to Kamran Mir: inform him about the march to Balkh as decided and to meet him on the skirts of Badakhshān. He wrote to all those who were at Badakhshān. He Khāwind to Kāmrān from the manzil of Khwāja Dost impelling him to c At this manzil, he raised the rank of Khwaja Sultan 'Ali by conferment o title of Afdal Khan and the mansab of the Diwan ul-Buyutat. He was sup tendent of the Household department. Ibrābim Mirza came in all haste, the manzil of Astālif, he received intelligence of flight of 'Abbās Mirzā U; Mirzā Uzbek. Mirzā Hindāl, Sulaimān met him in the vicinity of Dash Birka Bahārām. Kāmrān did not come. In the neighbourhood of Baq they and Hāji Muḥammad Khān advanced to Aynak, a dependency of B Its Sultan Pir Muhammad Khan Uzbek sent to him Mak Atalik and a bar men including Mirzā Ḥusain Sa'eedi, Muḥammati 'Ali Mirzā and Jujak I They alighted in the fort of Aybak. Humayun assaulted it. They came to for amnesty and surrendered the fort. He arranged a festive majlis and so counsel of Atalic for conquest of Mawaraun-Nahr. He replied, "My capal cannot attempt for it." Humayun said, "I seet you equal for it as you steadfastness and so I consulted you for that. There is worst peril. You a observe that." He said, "Men like Pir Muhammad Khan had ruled ove There they are. If I ordered for their death, its conquest is not possibl sword." He replied, "After amnesty, perfidy is not praiseworthy. It is a in sultans." He said, "Order for my captivity from Khalam to this side is for you. If it is not the will of God to conquer it, Humayun paused for days in the manzil. The greatest cause of pause was that Kamran did not e to him. During the pause. Uzbek help came to Balkh. Humāyun sent i who were under his amnesty to Kābul with the exception of Atalik who rem in attendance. He marched to Balkh by way of Khalam and encamped Astăna. He received information from amirs of the advance-guards, Wa Sultan and Shah Muhammad Hisari about their march on that side. Humi rode, arrayed contingents and he was between the advance-guards going a distance. Humāyun returned to the manzil. On his encampment, he fe Shāh Muhammad Sultān Ḥiṣāri. He was about to attack the camp. A stood in opposition. A war broke out between him and Käbuli Khan broth Muhammad Kasim Muji, Sher Muhammad Pakna and Muhammad F

Original Text, p. 1036.

Turkoman. It was a fiercely fought battle of Kābuli Khān. Awmaki Aghlān, a famous Uzbek was made la captive. Shah Muhammad Khan returned. The Uzbeks and the Mughals assembled the next day in the maidan. The centre of the Uzbeks was commanded by 'Abdul 'Aziz Khān son of 'Ubaid Khān. Pir Muḥammad Khān was in command of the right wing while Salātin Ḥiṣār was on the left wing. The Mughal centre was commanded by Humayun. Sulaiman Mirza was in command of the right wing. Hindal Mirza was on the left wing while Karacha Khan, Haji Muhammad Khan, Tardi Beg Khan, Mun'im Khan,\* Sultan Husain Beg Jalair and his brother were in the vanguard. The war lasted between them from early part of the day to its close. The vanguard of the Uzbeks defeated the Mughal vanguard. They crossed water and retreated to the city fort. Humavun intended to cross water in wake of his companions. Hypoorites played a trick with baseless cunning. Among them were those who had advised for expection of Kāmrān while others advised for pause so that Kābul may fall in hands of Kāmrān. There was wealth and families. At last, they were pleased, after efforts of Humayun, to encamp on the side of the valley of Gaz. It was fortified. Humayun marched to it. He sent Shaikh Bahlol to recall the vanguard to him. The valley of Gaz was on the way to Kābul. It was reported by the people that he returned to Kabul. Many persons dispersed to follow Kamran in the vicinity of Kabul. The Uzbeks received intelligence of it. They showed themselves at the valley of Gaz behind them. Humayun rode and the two armies encountered. Humayun personally fought and roamed in the battle-fied. He was on a horse. Muhammad Khan, ruler of Herat guided him. An arrow hit him and he fell down. Haider Muhammad Äkhta saw him from his horse. Humayun rode the horse and gave up the effort fin doubt. He found no friend and no aider. He turned his reins from the battle-field.

# Names of persons who were with him in straits

Mirzā Hindāl, Mirzā Sulaimān, Qarācha Khān, Ḥāji Muḥammad Khān, Tardi Beg Khān, Mun'in Khān, Khiḍr Khwāja Sultān, Muḥammad Qāḍi Khān Jalāir, Iskander Khān, Ḥaider Muḥammed Ākhta Begi, 'Abdullā Khān Uzbek, Ḥasan Quli Khān Mohardār, Muḥib Quli Khān Mir Khalifa, Sulṭān Ḥusain Khān, Bāhtu Sulṭān, Muṣāhib Beg, Shāh Budāgh, Shāham Beg Jalāir, Shāh Quli Nāranji, Muhammad Qāsim Muji, Luṭſullāh Sirhindi, 'Abdul Wahhāb Awdaji, Bāqi Muḥammad Parwānehi, and a band of similarly persons of states were with him. On his encampment at Chahār Chashma, he wrote to Rashid Khān, ruler of Kāshghar as brother with these contents: Physical brother Kāmrān preferred hypocrisy to accord in accordance with his vicious nature. He had completely† given up affection and well-wishing. He did not encourage many of his companions to help. Hence he was not successful as desired by friends, nay, it proved

Original Text, p. 1037.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 1038.

to be an occasion of grief and turbidness of the mind. After this, he was soled with words of advice. Humayun went to Kabul. Mirza Sulaiman we Badakhshan while Hindal proceeded to Qunduz. Muni'm Khan, Mir Se Bakhshi, Khwaja Nasiruddin Mustawfi (accountant), Mir Muhammed, Beg. (Superintendent of Buildings) Khwaja Jalaluddin were dispatched Uzbek captives. When he entered Kabul, he sent such of the Uzbeks, inclustable to the Chashma and others to Balkh. After their arrival, Munim and those who were with him directed the Uzbek captives to Kabul. At time of his attack on Balkh, he sent Khwaja Jalaluddin Mahmud with a keto Iraq. On his return, he was at Qandahar; he reversed to him and cam him in company of Khwaja Sa'ādat, Khwaja Abdus Samad and Mir Sayyid famous in portrait-painting. He raised the rank of Afdal Khān to the mas of Vizarat and Diwān of expenditure. He ennobled Khwāja Mirzā Beg the Diwān of revenue collection.

## An account of Kamran Mirsa

As stated above, he came from Talgan to Humayun. He assigned K to him. On his departure to it, Humayun sent Jakar Beg Kulabi son of St Uwais Beg with him. Within less than a month, he treaded the path with with which he was not pleased at the time of departure. He was appointed departure to Balkh. On his stay at Kābul, Kāmrān always induced him to to Balkh. When he came out from Kābul for conquest of Balkh, he refra from him and decided to conquer Kābul. On account of his writing, the at became hypocrites and many others at the manzil of Astāna, departed f Balkh to the valley of Gaz and seceded from help. He returned to Ka Kāmrān followed his brother 'Askari Mirzā to Kulāb. It was assigned to After being separated from captivity of Humayun, he marched to Sulair Mirzā. He was at Talqān. He then went to the fort of Zafar. Ishāq Sultān left there. He and Ibrahim Mirza went to Haram. When Kamran assembl soldiers, he thought of going to Qunduz. He tried to win over Hindal but was not disposed towards him. He remained firm on a promise to Humay Kamran attacked Qunduz with the help of Uzbeks. Hindal wrote to Huma' about Kamran's perfidy with the Uzbeks. He said to his messenger to platrick in taking the Uzbeks. He did it. The Uzbeks found with him a letter Kämrän. They deserted him and went to Balkh. In the meantime, Käm learnt about 'Askari Mirza's defeat from Jakar Beg Kulābi. He learnt t Sulaimān Mirzā had conquered Zafar and that Ishāq Sulţan was made a capt He was in accord with Kāmrān. Kāmrān sent Bālus to the fort of Zafar and marched to Kulab. Jakar Beg returned from the siege to his place of refu and Kāmrān and 'Askari marched against Sulaimān. Sulaimān went to Ki

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1039.

from Badakhshān. On discord of amirs, he sent for them. Kāmrān marched to Kābul and wrote to Humāyun deceiving him about the information of his coming to him for apology from behind his back.

I returned to prostrate at your feet
If loyalty is preordained, I should show it

Humāyun assembled those in whom he had confidence and said, "You see in his arrival, they had unanimously decided to dispute with him for deception. It has been said: He who tried the experienced, repentance is lawful for him. It is proper to oppose him with preparation of war for he has verified it. Or he has proved falsehood to be true. We are on caution and determination." Humayun made preparations and marched to Ghorband. He was on the way of Mitza in middle of the year, 057 (1550). He left behind Muhammad Khān Qāsım Barlās at Käbul and encamped at Qarābāgh. He then proceeded to Jarigān. He was then at the river of Baran. At this place, there was a spring of water to go over. Humāyun rode and thus he was separated from those who walked at the time of crossing in search of a bridge or fordable place. His passage became easy. Humāyun did not like separarion from him. He said, "Where are you, the self-sacrific ng solciers of Shah Isma'il Şafawi? He was on a lofty mountain. A handkerchief fell down from his hand. His men fell down upon it and ruined themselves. Their name remained after them to be remembered. You separated yourselves from me at the crossing." Qarācha Khān and Muşāḥib Khān referred to him these who were on accord in their disunity. He said, "There are rayines and mountains on our road. Kamian is in a number with his men.\* He has several roads. He does not know what to tread. He called his men on these different roads none passed over them. He relied upon them and dispersed his men in search of him towards Doak and Bāmiān. These persons were Ḥāji Muhammad Khān Kuki, Mir Barka, Mirzā Hasan Khān, Bahādur Khān, Khwāja Jalälud-Din Mahmud, Chalpi Beg, Muhammad Khan Beg Turkoman, Shaikh Bahlol, Haider Qasım Kohbar and Shāh Quli Nāranji. He ordered many of the attendants to pass by Awlank, and by this Qaracha Khan, Muşahıb Khan, Qasim Husain Sultan and such other persons remained in attendance. He separated them in search of those who were not homogeneous. Qaracha Khan used to write to Kāmrān from day today. It is reliably known that he deviated from Pohāk and Bāmiān towards the valley of Kabchāk and at mid-day, he met local cultivators who informed him about his meeting Kämrän. Qaracha Khan who was the chief of disloyal persons, said, on the report of the narrator, "Do not be easy with him and on his sincerity when Kamran made preparation for war that he would separate himself from service through fear. In the meanwhile, he was in the midst of stratagems, there was a continuous report which

Original Text, p. 1040.

vanished doubt. Humāyun rode and stood on an elevated place lookii men of accord. They were diving depths while the hypocrites were safe him. He then descended with boldness from the hillock to the battle-field plunged in war personally. His horse was wounded by an arrow on a side Bābāi Beg Kulābi deliberately beat him from behind or through mistake. turned towards him and looked with an angry glance. He was on the g with it, Mehtar Sakāhi Farhat Khān saw him. He fled from him. It meantime, 'Abdul Wahhāb Shāwash was near him. He was a man of reli He informed him about the amirs being joined with Kamran. He seized by reins and took him out of the battle-field. He ordered Muhammad Amir 'Abdul Wahhab to move after him. Farhat Khan, Sabdal Khan and a were moving in time from those sides. Delay meant death with a wou horse. He removed his armour for lightness. Sabdai Khan carried it, nay always suspended his clothes. He then took counsel about time Hāji Muhan Khān, ruler of Ghazni suggested to march towards Qandahār. He was chi men of discord. Others who were full of accord advised to march tow Badakhshān. Sulaimān Mirzā and Hindāl Mirzā and Ibrāhim Mirzā decide make good by proceeding towards Kābul. The swordsmen said that there si be good manners for such a day. If we do not take advantage today, we meet with death. We are upon hand and heart in your hand, then in the of God, let us go to Kabul. Who is Kamran? His scales are heavy hypocrites and perfidious persons. He would not be successful. On wor loval persons. Humāyun deviated from Qandahār to Badakhshān and ma to it by way of Yak Awlang and thence to Kahmar. On the way, many of followers separated themselves from him. After a night, he encamped or shore of Bangi river. He had come across merchants of 'Iraq at Kahmi way to Hind. Most of them were dealers in horses. They assembled at him and spent the night with him at that manzil. When a part of night passed, there were shouts from the other side of the river saying "Oh pa by do you know about Humāyun, please tell us." One of them asked "Who are you? For whom are you? What news have you about him?" replied, "Our information is that he left the battle-field with a wound. that time, there is no information about him. His armour was on his in the war but it was brought to Kamran. He recognised it and was delithereby." Humayun called him in his presence and said to him "Do you me?" He said, "Does the moon hide? He departed. He crossed the manzil. He then encamped at Andarab and Sulaiman Mirza and Ibrahim met him here. Those who died in the war from among Humāyun's men inc Pir Muḥammad Ākhta Mirzā Quli, Dost Muḥammad, Waqa' Husain Quli S

Original Text, p. 1041.

in battle-field at the hand of Bābā Dost Yasāwal. He stood near Kāmrān. He killed him by his hand and ordered his body to be cut into pieces. He saw that. In like manner, Tāghji Beg was done to death. Beg Bābāi Kulābi came to him and informed him about wound of Humayun. He passed by him and Kāmrān left the place of war and went to Charigan where he encamped. The armour of Humäyun was brought to him at this manzil. It was said that it was his ' saib' collar. He then alighted on Käbul and began its siege. Qasim Khan Barlas was always on his feet for defence of the fort. He paid no heed to threats of Kamran. News of Humayun's death floated about. He sent his armour to him. On seeing it, he surrendered the fort to him. He started to\* array the army. Mirzā 'Askari had Jalālābād while Ghazni was assigned to Qarācha and nearby adjacent places. Yāsin Dawlat got Ghorband. Khwāja Sultan 'Ali was put in captivity. He seized wealth of people for food and fodder of the army. Qaracha Khan firmly established his authority and became the pivot of state matters. Similarly, Khwaja Qasim Mir continued in this state for three months. In the meantime, Humayun marched to Kābul. Kāmrān came out for resistance leaving Bābā Jujak and Mullā Shafāi as his nā'ib at Kābul. Coolness of eye of the Saltanat (Akber) was with him. On Humāyun's emcampment in the vicipity of Usbtur Kiram, Kamran marched against him. When they came near the manzil, Humayun sent Mirza Shah to him, a relative of Mir Buzurg, one of the most glorious Sayyids of Tirmidh and ordered him to give admonition. He said, "Convey him from me with regret that our quarrel is based on Kābul and Hindustān between us. They would finish us." These words had their desired effect on him. He replied that there should be concord for Hindustan provided Kamran had Kabul and Humayun Qandabar. Humayun repeated to him in company of 'Abdul Bagi the Sadr and said. "Convey him. If you are sincere in union with me, marry your daughter with my son. Kābul would be for them. I and you unite for conquest of Hind. Thus Kābul would be for both of us." Kāmrān liked to respond to it but Qaracha Khān paused to accept it and said, "My head and Kābul. He was to the side of Kāmrān. He lauded him for knowledge of astrology. He said to him 4 Do not fight to-day for ultimately, there would be war one day with subtle tricks. Soldiers of Humāyun are not pleased with pause of Humāyun for deceitful cunning of Kāmrān and from among them Hāji Muḥammad Khān. In the meantime, a party came to Humayun from the army of Humayun. They had seceded from him in the war of Kabehāk including Khwāja 'Abdus Samad. They informed him about vaccilation of attitude of the enemy's army. Humayun rode and the Sun had declined and he ordered for array of rows and stood in the centre with Mirzā Sulaiman on the right and Mirzā Hindāl on the left. Hāji Muḥammad Khān was in command of the vanguard. In like manner, Kāmrān stood in the

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1042.

centre with 'Askari on the right and Su'tan on the left. Quracha Khan was in the fore front. Both the armies faced each other. Mehtar Bhaka who was left behind after Kabel ak rushed in resistance from the army of Kamran against\* the army of Humayun. The war began with Ibrahim Mirza near the fountain of Muri. The other contingents followed. In the midst of stabs and blows, Qarācha Khān's head was brought and thrown before Humāyun's horse. He ordered for suspension of his head at the Kabul gate called the Iron Gate for creating confidence among hypocrites. It was an omen in itself as he had said "My head and Kābul." His word was in accord with deed. Abul Fadl said: I heard from reliable persons the story of his murder. It was said that some abandoned men of Kämran captured him and drove him to the station of Hun ayun. Qanbar 'Ali Biliari, a man of Mirza Hindai's party saw him. Quiacha had killed his brother at Quidaliar. He struck his sword on his head and carried his lead to Hun ayun. In short, Kamian did not stard firm in encounter. He came towards Afgi anisian from Kutal Badpach. 'Askeri Muza was cap used. It was a victory. The mind of Hun ayun was disturbed for his son (Akbar). During the dispersion, Hasan Akhta came to him with him. He thanked God the Almishty. He embraced him. In the meantime, he was engaged in consoling a party when he saw camels with their boxes without any driver. He said, "Every one, rob a thing. I rob this." He went to them. He carried them and opened the boxes. They contained his books which were placed in war of Kabchāk. His thanks increased. He ordered that day to kill Khwaja Mir-i-Buyu at. He was an arch mischief-monger. He spent the night at Charigan. In the morning, he marched to Kabul and lived there. He ordered hypocrites to be put to death such as Bedär Beg, Haider Dost, Mughal Kānji, Mast 'Ali Kurchi. They were more than once ungrateful. After ennobling with favour, he permitted Mirzā Sulaimān to go to Badakhshān. His favour to Mirzā Ibrāhim lasted many days. He granted him leave and marched to Badakhshān. He fixed up marrige of his daughter Bakhshi Banu Begum with Mirza Ibrahim. It would be at its time. Abul Fadi said: On Humayun's march to Kābul, he halted at the maidan of Andarab when Sulaiman Mirza etc came and decided to pass by the way of Kutal Hindukuh. There was a party of hypocrites in his army. He assembled them for oath and pact and resolved to keep behind every section on the right particularly with him. He said, "He who had a pen oft art in his hand, was free from what was and to be. Whenever he cast a glance at the world of causes, he intended adornment to satisfy minds of people of time from tying loyalty with the right. Haji Muhammad Khan said, " Every one of us takes an oath in a way you order but there should be from the side of the saltanat also. Sincere servants look to welfare of the state." Mirza Hindal said to him, "What is this talk? How is the method of this oath? None of

Original Fext, p. 1043.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text. 1044.

the servants said that to his master nor a slave to his owner. " He said to him, "Humāyun is that and he did everything what Hāji Muḥammad said to him was in confirmity with state welfare.

## Return of Kamran

Abul Fädl said: Mirza Kāmrān came out of the battle-field to Ushtur Kirām with eight men-Āk sultān brother of Khidi Khwāja Jahān, Bābā Sa'eed Kabchāk Tamar Tāsh Atka, Katlak Qadam, 'Ali Muhammad Juki Khān, Abdāl Kuka and Maksud Kurchi. They entered the frontier of the Afghans from the side of Deh Dar. It was under jurisdiction of Mirza Hindal, Haji Muhammad Khan and Khidr Khwaja Khan. They controlled the rems till they were allowed to go. It so chanced to them with the Afghang that they surrounded him and his companions on the road and seized what they had and upon them. Kāmiān was in the guise of a Qalandar for fear of being recognised. They all treaded to Malek Muhammad, one of the eminent men of Lamghanat. them as much as he could during their stay by way of regard for his rights. When they improved themselves, they returned to their original nature. He collected an army. Humāyun learnt about it and he suspected mischief out it. The hypocrites strengthened him. They came to him in an hour of need Hāji Muhammad Khan merched to Ghazni, Humāyun was unaware of it. He sent a party of amirs in the face of Kāmrān. He de-igned to go to the side of the Afghans and sought refuge with Khalil and Malimand (tribes). They were from among their men. The amirs returned from him. After suppression of revolt, Humāyun sent Khwāj i Jalālud-Din Mahmud and his wife Bibi Fatama to Badakhshān for the marriage of Khānam daughter of Mirzā Sulaimān for himself. Sulaiman accepted. The marriage was to be celebrated on arrival of the begums, the vakils and eminent elderly persons. It was on this settlement, Fatima and Jalalud-Din Mahmud returned.\*

# Death of A'skari

As stated above, Mirzā 'Askari was left behind by Kāmrān in captivity and Humāyun had turned him towards himself. He felt ashamed to stay in the region. He went for hajj. He went to Badakhsān with a party and wrote to Mirzā Sulaimān in his dignity. He went to Balkh and thence proceeded to his destination. Death overtook him between Syria and Diārbiqr in the year.

#### Kāmrān's return to Kābul

Mirzā Kāmrān had sought refuge with the Khalil of the Afghāns and Mahmand. But his nature stirred him on for revolt. He assembled the Afghāns of the frontiers in a large number and showed himself on the boundary. Humāyun received intelligence of it. Ḥāji Muḥammad Khān was at Ghazni. He

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 1045.

sent Khwaja Ikhtiyar and Mir 'Abdul Hayy in search of him. They almost enjoyed similar high rank. In the meantime, he learnt about encampment of Kāmrān at a fort near Jalālābad. Humāyun marched to Jalālābād. Kāmrān returned to mountaneous region and thence he treaded his way to Bangash to meet Hāji Muhammad Khān on the way. Just then, Hāji Muḥammad Khān had granted leave to Humayun's messengers to return and wrote to Kämran: How long would you roam about among mountains? Come soon to this side and we will see what to do afterwards. It coincided with arrival of Biram Khan from Qandahar to Ghazni for attendance upon the Sultan. Haji Muhammad Khan received information about him. He went out for his reception. After meeting him, he resolved upon a feast in the fort and prevented him from going. Biram Khan accepted it on ground of his sincere faith. On the way to the fort, he understood perfidy from the gesture of Mir Habash to him. He was with Hāji Muhammad Khān. He apologised to Hāji Muhammad Khān and encamped outside the city on side of the river. He did not divulge any thing to him. He moved on with grace to Kābul. He wrote to Humāvun informing him\* about arrival to Haji Muhammad Khān who was at Jalālābād. He learnt that Kämrān was on march to Kābul. He returned to Kābul. Kāmrān learnt about Biram Khan and Haji Muhammad Khan's departure to Kabul. He returned to Lamghan. On the encampment of Humayun at a place Siyah Sang, Biram Khan came and Humayun stopped army's entry into Kabul for the affair of Kāmrān. It so chanced one day that Hāji Muḥammad Khān intended entry but Jalalud-Din Mahamud forbade him. He became suspicious for being forbidden and immediately went to Qarābāgh declaring for hunting but with a decision for Ghazni. Humāyun came to know about it. He entered Kābul followed by Biram Khan. He graced him with kindness. He returned with him and Biram Khan gave him what he had from him. He gave it to him. Humayun went out in search of Kämrän to Lamghanat. On his encampment at Jalālābād, he learnt that Kāmrān was at (illegible). Biram Khān marched against him. He returned from it on receipt of news of his march to Niiab. In the meantime, Humäyun ordered captivity of Hāji Muḥammad Khān and his brother Shah Muhammad. He then ordered to write out what services he had rendered without any repugnance as well as his offences to expode in the world their truthfulness. Abul Fadl said: The book of his deeds was good. He did not write anything therein but their evil deeds number one hundred and two, every one of which was the cause of blinding, punishment and assassination. In the meanwhile, he issued an order for capital punishment. It was executed. I say: He who saw the offence and delayed punishment for such a long time, should have done it at the time of committal. The tradition of the prophet, may peace and benediction of God be on him states: Verily God acts

Original Text, p. 1046

slowly and He does not neglect." He transferred the office of Ghazni to Bahādur Khān. Humāyun returned to Kābul in the early part of spring. He permitted Biram Khān to return to Qandahār and sent a letter to 'Irāq with Khwāja Ghāzi. The charge of Ghazni was then given to Mirzā Hindāl including Gardiz and Bangash. Qunduz was assigned to Mir Barka and Mirzā Hasan while Jui Shāhi was given to Khwāja Khān. It so happened that before Mir Barka's arrival at Qunduz—Mirā Jahir Muhammad Khān was there—Mirzā Ibrāhim was there. gracefully relieved him of it. Mir Barka returned to Kābul Humāyun came to know about it. He had issued that order in consideration of his previous services. In the meantime, Shāh Abul Ma'āli found a way to Humāyun's majlis through influence of Khwāja 'Abdus Sami'. He was connected with the Sayyids of Tirmidh. He wus extremely handsome as well as brave. He looked at him with an eye of encouragement.

# Martyrdom of Hindal Mirza

In the meantime, a report of Kāmrān's return from Nilāb to Jui Shāhi got circulated. Humāvun sent for Hindāl Mirzā from Ghazni as well as the amirs who were in adjacent places. On their arrival, Humayun marched from Kabul. Kämrän turned to Koth. On Humäyun's encampment near Surkhäb, he distinguished Haider Muhammad Akhta with the mansab of vanguard-it was an advance-guard. He advanced the encamped on the shore Siyāh Āli situated between Surkhab and Gandanak, Kamran made a night attack on him. He remained steadfast. He received a wound. He gave away his sword and yet stood firm till Kämrän returned from him. A few days after his encampment at the place of Harbar—it was from Tuman Nang Nahar—he ordered to surround his pavilion with a small wall, a ditch and nauba. Two Afghans learnt about Kāmrān. He had decided to make a night-attack on the pavilion. Humāyun ordered the nauba to distribute themselves in different places and spend the night with caution. On Sunday night, 21st Ziga'd 958 (1551), when one-fourth of the night had passed, Kämrän made a night-attack on the pavilion-it was a place of encampment of the army according to the Arab. It is called Urdu by the Persians, Humayun stood out of the pavilion on an elevated place with Akbar on his side. It implied victory for him. Akbar was with Kāmrān whenever he marched. Humāyun looked between Kāmrān and the nauba from a perch. He continued to stay there till rise of the moon. Kāmrān then returned. On this night, Humāyun's man 'Abdul Wahhāb Yasawal (captain of the guard) died with an arrow-shot. In the meanwhile, Humayun collected his mind with rout of the adversary. News of martyrdom of his brother Mirza Hindal was brought to him. Its account: He had heard a report of Kamran's decision of a nightattack. He arrayed the nauba (guards) and a bed to sleep. He woke up with

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1047,

night-attack and shouts and stood up. A party of Afghans had entered the place of nauba from different sides. A sufficient number of them came to his bed. Night was dark. Faces could not be recognised in it. When he cames upon him, he personally warded off with what lay within his power. His companions assembled around him for defence of the horse-stable. In the meantime, Mirzā Hindāl faced the Afghāns. A war broke out with arrows and then with swords and with personal combat. He seized Hindal and threw him on the ground. He felt it to be blow of his brother called Jarida (?) from the tribe of Muhammad; Hindal Mırza achieved martyrdom. He did not know him. Some one of his party informed Kämran that he combated with Hindal. On his return to Kamran, he gave him his belongings of bow strings which were specially of Mirzā Hindāl. He found him there and informed him that he killed him in negligence. When Kamran saw the suspender, he recognised as to whose it was and who was the killed. He struck the ground with his turban and said "Hindāl was killed." During his martyrdom, Ibrāhım Badakhshi saw the maniac. He had a black armour for the darkness of the night. Voices got mingled and crossed upon him. He failed to identify him. It crossed his mind that he was Hindal for he had a black armour. , He returned and saw and got convinced that it was he. He silently carried him to his tent and ordered the door-keeper to guard the door. He did not inform any one. With the rise of dawn, he carried his coffin to Jui Shāhi and consigned the deposit. He then carried it to Kābui. His n.unshi Mullā Khurd Zargar wrote an elegy, the opening line of which is

On night, blood of the heart made a night-atlack on pupils of my eyes

Sepoys of the eyes pitched a tent outside due to coming and going of blood.

He also composed the following chronogram

Hindal Muhammad king of auspicious title

Suddenly became a martyr through fate in heart of night.

When they made a night-attack for his martyrdom

Seek date of his martyrdom from "Shabikhun" (night-attack).

Mir Amāni composed date of his martyrdom by way of an enigma: A cypress departed from garden of state (or fate). Mirzā Hindāl was born in 924 (1518). Some one has stated in respect of his date: A star of Imperial zodiac was date of year. Humāyun then marched from the manzil of nightattack to the manzil of Bahsud. Everything that Mirzā Hindāl had of Ghazni etc. was assigned to Jalālud-Din Akbar Bādshāh. In like manner, those who were in his service, were retained. He was ten years of age. It so chanced?

Original Text, 1048.

<sup>†</sup> Original Text, p. 1049.

that before Hindal Mirsa's martyrdom, he was in the cayalcade of Humayun. In a crowd, the turban of Jaialud-Din got displaced from its centre. Hindal raised his crown from his head and placed it on his head. Those who had foresight in future events, understood something out of this move as to what came to the amirs from him. Hindal's service was the best. They returned to service of Jalalud Din as ordered. They were: Muhib Ali Khan, Nasir Kuli, Khwaia Ibrāhim, Mawlana 'Abdullah, Adina Takbāj, Samānji, Targhuji Khan, Muḥammad Takbay, Tajud-Din Mahmud Barbeki, Timuriash, Mawlana Thani titled later on as Tham Khan, Mawlana Baba Dost Sadr-he perfectly enjoyed favour of Hindal, Mir Jamal,—he was his favourite, Khaledy Dost Sahbari and Baba Dost. He was a servant of maligned mentality. He was not counted among them. Muhammad Taher Khān was an old servant but he got condemned for surrender of Quaduz. Humāyun stayed at Bahsud for nearly six months. He built a very arrong fort there. It became clear to him in regard to Kāmrān that he was with a few individuals from among the Afgi an tribes. He rode to that side at night. He halted on the way due to cold weather. He was then with Māham 'Ali Quli Khān and Bābā Khazāri from the side of Kāmrān to Malek Muhammad Mahandrawari. He went with them and they put questions to him. Bābā Khazāri gu ded them to him. Humāyun was in the Afghān tribe in the morning. He met men in the tent which was the sleeping-place of Kamran. They were two. He captured one of them and let go the other. The captive Beg Muluk was a favourite of Kāmrān. Kāmrān moved on to Hind. Humāyun returned to Bahsud and then to Kābul. Humāyun marched to Bangash at the close of 959 (1551). He received a letter of Sultan Adam Ghakkar. He was the head of the Ghakkar amirs. Its contents were: It contained information about Kamran. He entered into his frontiers in a bad condition. I did not see him involved in such a condition. If you would like to be in this frontier, the royal pavilion originated at this place for kissing the royal carpet. He forgave his offences and distinguished him with service. It coincided with a letter received by Juki Khān from Kāmrān. He was his favourite. Abul Fadi said: Kämrän set out for Hind after the incident of Beg Muluk to seek aid from Salim Shāh b. Sher Shāh He sent Shāh Budāgh to Salim Shāh from the vicinity of Khaibar. He was in Ban, a town in Punjab Shah Budagh met him and\* handed over his letter. His reply to Kamran was in consistency with his status that he had come for his aid. He sent expenditure with him. Before the coming of Shah Budagh to Kamran, 'Ali Muhammad came to Salim Shah from his side informing him about his arrival at a distance of some farsakhs. Salim Shāh sent his son Awaz Khan and Mawlana 'Abdullah Sultanpuri to receive him. Kämrän presented himself and met him in an unpleasing manner. His party consisted of Bābā Kuchak, Mulla Shafāi', Bābā Sa'eed Kubchāk, Shāh Budāgh,

<sup>\*</sup> Original Fext, 1050.

'Alam Shah, Rahman Quli Khan, Tumartash, Ghalib Khan, Saleh Diwana, Hāji Yusuf, 'Ali Muhammad and Abdāl Kuka. Kāmrān saw in his party that there was none of intelligence among them. He repented and rebuked his companions. Severest in rebuke and reproach he was to Shah Budagh. He was the cause of it. Salim Shah returned from Punjab to Delhi. Kamran was watchful upon him. Whenever he asked him leave for return, he delayed to help him from time to time. He intended to conquer one fort after another. Kämrän understood that from him. He understood flight from him. He sent Juki Khān to Rāja Makte for his freedom. He was at a distance of twelve farsakhs from Machiwara. He replied and said, "If Salim oppresses Machiwara he comes to unite with him with what he has." Kāmrān then changed his dress, wore an armour, left Yusuf Āftābchi in his bed and came out one night by opening the screen to the Raja. The Raja met him and conveyed to him that an army had come in search of him. He sent him to Raja Kalurka. He sent towards Jammu. When the Raja of Jammu heard about him, he forbade his entry into limit of his region. Kāmrān got perturbed and marched towards Mankot. He was about to fall in captivity, he followed the Afghans intending for Kābul in guise of women. He tried to make good by coming to Sulţān Adam Ghakkar. He gave him asylum. He wrote to Humāyun to send for him. He marched towards him. He nominated Jalalud-Din Mahmud as the governor of Kābul. He took Akbar as his companion, treaded the path and came to Sind. He sent a man to Sultan Adam in search of him. When he crossed the river of Sind, he found no trace of him. He was in doubt for anxiety to come across him according to usages of the land. He sent Mun'im Khan for consoling him. He communicated Kāmrān also as to what was his advice therein. Mun'im Khān returned to Sultān Ādam and Kāmrān was with him. The meeting took\* place in the vicinity of Parhāla. Kāmrān was treated with favour but the amirs had decided to kill him. They said, "Since long, he is engaged in creating disturbance yet he does not bring it to an end even with forgiveness and liberal behaviour. Humāyun does not regard it as proper." When the amirs saw that they were on the side of safety, they sought a religious decree under these circumstances. Eminent scholars prepared a united petition and submitted it to Humāyun. It was sent to Kāmrān. When he saw the petition with the writings of the amirs, he said, "These are those who wrote upon the petition. They are the persons who have brought about my fall to-day." He was moved by kindness. He did not permit his death. He waited for an hour putting his head down in meditating and pondering. He then raised his head and with counsel of all, he ordered to extricate his eyes. He nominated 'Ali Dost Bārbeki, Sayyid Muḥammad Makka (?), and Ghulām 'Ali Shash-angusht to execute the order. When they entered upon him in his tent, he imagined that

Original text, p. 1051.

they had come to kill him. He stood up, wore his armour, gathered his hands and moved on to them. 'Ali Dost said to him, "We are not ordered to kill you. What is the meaning of this move? We have come with requisites of justice. What you had done to Sayyid 'Ali and party, we are here to extricate your eyes for some other reason. It is a reward of similar action. The order is to be executed. Kāmrān stood in front of him and stretched himself on the ground. They blinded his eyes with the rod. Out of caution, they beat him with roots also. It was preordained by destiny. This happened at the close of 960 (1552). Khwāja Muḥammad Farankhurdi found the date from the word "Nishtar". Humāyun was overwhelmed with pity. He interpreted the event with the tongue of reality and was much affected. That day, Kāmrān sent to Mun'im Khān questions with a request for Humāyun's service for Beg Muluk. He issued an instant order for that. With perfect regard, Kāmrān seized his hand and placed it on his eyes.

However much my eyes have drawn a curtain over them to see your face

They see with eyes which saw your face many times.

When Humāyun was free from these frontiers, he assembled the amirs for assault on Kashmir They did not deem it advisable but Humāyun was firmly resolved for it. He permitted Jalālud-Din Akbar a march to Kābul. During the course of march, most of the amirs and soldiers, nay, all of them got ready for Kābul. Those rejected should follow them even by laying the sword. They sought an omen from the Holy Qurān. It opened with the story of Yusuf may peace be upon him. He who is able to interpret should speak what occurs to him. Meditation in that. Husain Marawi said that they are for Kashmir for that is right in respect of pit and prison for the story of Joseph gives information about them. The amirs who were for stay, returned to Kabul. On his encampment on the river of Sind, Kāmrān requested permission for Hijāz. Out of regard for him, he was permitted for voyage. On the night which passes to morning, Humāyun marched to his manzil with a party of his special favourites. Kāmrān sang

Corner of cap of a derwish rubs the sky
For a shadow of a king like thee falls over his head.

He again recited a verse

Whatever comes to my soul from thee is an obligation May it be an arrow of tyranny or a dagger of oppression.

Abul Fadl said: The second verse comprises thanks but in the opinion of a knower, it smacks of a complaint. In spite of that Humayun said nothing; he

Original Text, p. 1052,

was overwhelmed by kindness and pity and said, "For his solace, the world of secrets bears evidence for me for there is no order within my control, I am much ashamed because of him. I had managed the government before him. Kāmrān then looked to his faults, and humbled himself for mercy of his brother and he feels ashamed before him. He said to Haji Yusuf who was most respectable in the mailis. He said to Tardi Beg Khan, Mun'im Khan, Babus Beg, Khwaja Husain Marawi, Mirza 'Abdul Hayy, Mir 'Abdullah, Khanjar Beg and Arif Beg. Kamran said to them: "Oh party of brothers bear witness upon me. I am not a sinner for such time as this wherein are present before whom I am for solution of my difficulties. How and with deservation of death, he has obliged me and given me life and permitted me for hajj. It is his excellence and obligation. I thank him a thousand thanks. He had power\* over retribution for what I deserved. He did not do that. He then willed him for his sons. Hun ayun accepted and showed favours to them. I bid him farewell for the sake of God. Kāmrān wept on his departure and raised his voice. " Alas ! Alas ! " On the morning of his travel, Humayun said to him. "I have no objection if you take with you any person for your attendance. He did not select any one. He then chose 'Alam Khan who was in attendance upon Humayun. He said, "For such a time as this, it occurred to him as to who was worthy of service for me. He granted him permission. Everything that he needed in cash and kind was put in his charge with greetings. Beg Muluk, with that selation as d rank, moved with him upto several manzils and then separated himself. None applauded him. He was condemned inspite of good appearance. Kāmrān crossed the river of Sind at Tattha. He came to Hijaz. He stood at 'Araiat for three pauses and on 11th Zilhaji, 964 (1556), died at Mina. He used to cry, "I am ready, Oh God! I am ready."

On Humāyun's encampment at Kirām alius Peshāwar, he ordered to repair the fort demolished by the Afghans. After its completion, Sikander Uzbek was appointed its Amir. He marched to Kābul and entered it in the early part of 961 (1553). The Begums blessed him on his arrival. He said: It is good for the meeting. In regard to Kāmrān, it is not blessedness. I intended his eyes with my hands. On Wednesday night, 5th Jamādi of the year, he got a son through Māh Chuchak Begum and named him Muḥammad Ḥikim. They found his date of birth from "Abul Malākhir" and "Abul Fadāil."

# Huma.un's march to Qindahar

In the early part of winter of the year, Humāyun marched to Qandahār. At Shor-Andām, Biram Khān came from Qandahār and had the honour of paying obeisance. Some one slandered Birām Khān on Humāyun's arrival. 'Ali Quli Khān Andrābi was appointed an amir in place of Birām Khān.\*

Original Text p. 1053.

Humāyun was convinced of Birām Khan's innocence from guilt. He was reinstated as an Amir and ennobled with favours. During his stay in the whole of winter, Biram Khan managed state affairs with efficiency. Arrival of Humavun was in wake of the arrival of Khwaja Ghazi to it with a letter from 'Iraq. The contents of the letter were stability with dues of service. His rank was raised to the mansab of Diwan. Mu'azzam Sultan came from Dawar. Mehtar Karā arrived as an envoy from the ruler of Herāt, Muḥammad Khān. The events of the year were: Shah Abul Ma'ali killed Sher 'Ali Beg. Its account is: He was a servant of the ruler of 'Iraq. He was the father of Beqara Beg. Mir-i-Shikar. He went to Humayun without his permission. He was a Shia. Shah Abul Ma'ali had in him vanity and arrogance and arbitrariness, handsome appearance, lofty rank, ditinction of being near the ruler, continuous drinking, perfect rashness in valour and exaggerated religious fanaticism: It was said, "Do not be afraid, I will kill this shia." Humavun endured his boast. One night he designed and killed him. His blood began to flow. Humayun returned to Käbul. He ordered Biram Khan to get ready for march to Hind and to join him. Arrival of Humayun at Kabul' was at the close of the year. He appointed Mun'im Khan to the mansab of Akbar Shah's Ataliq (tutor) in the Ulugh Beg b. Bulbul Sultan came as an envoy from the Sultan of 'Iraq. Humayun was making preparations for traval to Hind. In the meantime, some of the derwishes foretold him that he would be famous in the region of concealment. Humayun took this as an omen for conquest of Hind. A rumour floated among the common folk that Turkastan was like the head. Khurāsān chest and Hind feet. He said, "This omen is similar to the omen of Amir Timur, Sāḥib-i-Qirān. Its account is: when he marched from Māwarū un-Nahr for conquest of Khurāsan and came to Andakhud, there lived Shanki Atā. He was noted for purity of mind and supernatural powers. Amir Timur went to see him for blessings. When he presented himself before him, he placed a tray before him. It contained what was present with him—chest of a sheep, He turned to that was near him and said, "Omen from chest of the sheep is conquest of Khurāsān for it is said that chest is the face of the earth." On 8th Shawwal of the year he came from Qandabar to Kabul. Humayun resolved upon conquest of Hind. Anarchical condition prevailed in Hind after Salim\* Shah and murder of Mubariz Khan, chief of mischief by slaughtering the son of Salim. He strengthened his affairs and appointed Mun'im Khan in Kabul. Shāh Wali Bakāwal Begi was nominated to the mansab of Atka for his son Muhammad Hakim. He left the begums behind at Kābul. He marched to Hind with Akbar Shah.

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1054,

# March of Humdyun for recovery of Hind

In the middle of Zilhajj of 961, his manzil was at Jalalabad. Abul Fadl said: On that day, he took an omen from the Diwan of "Tongue of the Invisible" Mawlana Khwaja Hafiz Shirazi. The following couplet was the first line opened:

Seek fortune from the auspicious bird and his shadow Because there are no wings of courage with crow and kite.

On the last day of Muharram of 962 (1554), his manzil was at Kiram. Sikander came there and titled him as Khan. He encamped on Sindhu on 5th Safar of the year. Biram Khan came there from Kabul. There also the news of Tatar Khān Kāsi, the Amir of Rohtās was received. He had left the centre on receipt of news of Humayun's encampment on the Sindhu. Humayun had written to Sultan Adam Ghakkar to come to him. He replied, "There is a pact between me and Sikander from the time of my son called Lashkari who was in his service. He was afraid to be killed for breach of promise. Formerly, he was in his service; he had no claim before his excuse. He crossed Sindhu and dispersed the Afghans from Rohtas. Abul Fadl said: He had in his stirrup the most glorious from amongst his companions; Biram Khan, Shah Abul Ma'ali, Khwāja Khān Tardi Beg Khān, Sikander Khān, Khidr Khān Hazāra, 'Abdullāh Khan Uzbek, Mirza 'Abdullah, Muşahib Beg Khan, 'Ali Quli Khan Shaibani, Muhammad Quli Khan Barlas, Khwaja Mu'azzam, 'Ali Quli Khan Andarabi, Haider Muhammad Akhta Begi, Babus Beg, Isma'il Beg Duldi, Mirza Hasan Khan. Mirza Najat, Muhammad Khan Jalair, Khwaja Husain Marawi, Mir 'Abdul Hayy, Mir 'Abdullah Kani, Khanjar Beg, 'Adad Beg, Khwaja 'Abduş Şamad, Mir Sayyid 'Ali, Mulla 'Abdul Kader, Mulla İlyas Ardabeli, Mulla Ka im Jurjāni, Mulia 'Abdul Bāki, Afdal Khan Mir Bakhshi, Khwaja Kasim Mukhlis,\* Khwāja 'Atāullāh, Diwan-i-Buyutāt, Khwāja Abul Qāsim, Shihābuddin Ahmad Khan, Mu'in Khan Farankhudin, Khwaja Amin ud-Din Mahmud, Malek Mukhtar. Sayyid Shihab ud-Din Ahmad Khan, Ashraf Khan and Farhat Khan were equal to them. They were permitted to go from the manzil of Kalanaur. They marched to Lahore. There was a prestige war between Biram Khan and Nasib Khan Afghan near Harharna (Hariyana). It was a victory for Biram Khān. Humāyun acted according to his vow for conquest of Hind for fear of captivity. Captives were [released and they were sent to Humāyun. On Humāyun's encampment in the vicinity of Jalandhar, all the Afghans fled away. Tardi Beg Khan resolved to go in their pursuit. Biram Khan forbade him to do so. He sent Baltu Khan to him to call him. He talked to him and he replied to him. Khwāja Mu'azzam Sultān replied in a bad manner. Bāltu Khān replied in the same manner. Khwāja Mu'azzam gave him a blow. He

Original Text, p. 1055.

held up the sword in his hand. Humayun came to know about this behaviour on part of the amirs. He sent Afdal Khan to admonish the amirs and to improve their own conduct. Biram Khan stayed at Jalandhar and divided the region among the amirs. Māchiwāra was assigned to Sikander Khān. He waited for an opportunity and journeyed to Sirhind and established his authority over it. At his place, he heard about Tätär Khan, Habib Khan, Nasib Khan and Mubarak Khan that they were at Delhi and that they had come to the outskirts of Sirhind. He marched to Jalandhar from it. Biram Khan reproached him for this step. Biram Khan marched from Jalandhar and on his encampment at Machiwara did not find Tardi Beg Khan. It was not proper on his part to crois the river. Biram Khan found him and a party consisting of Mulla Pir Muhammad, Muhammad Oasim Khān Nishāpuri, Haider Beg Shāmlu and Wali Beg had tried to cross the river. Biram Khan crossed it. He was followed by Tardi Beg Khan, All of them assembled to fight with the Afghans, Biram Khan stood in the centre while Khidr Khān was to his right, Tardi Beg Khān to the left and Sikander Khan in the vanguard. The Afghans received intelligence of it. They hastened for opposition. At evening, both the armies assembled with swords at a place near the river. Night fell and the war stood. Every one of them separated at the end and went to a side and alighted there to pass night.\* It so happened that a village in the expanse of which the Afghans had encamped caught fire. It was due to accumulated rubbish. The flames rose up. Mughals and the Afghans saw them. The Afghans did not see the Mughals through blazing flames. They were surrounded by the Mughals on every side. They darted arrows aimlessly while the Mughals aimed them accurately. The Mughals gained a victory. Their elephants and baggage fell in the hands of the Mughals. Biram wrote a report of victory to Humayun. In the morning of the night, the soldiers were sought. They marched to Sirhind and encamped there. 'Ali Quli Khan Shaibani joined it. He ordered him to go ahead with his contingent. Abul Fadl said: There was a long distance between Humavun and Biram Khān. Humāyun received a report of Tātār Khān's march from Delhi to the direction of Biram Khan. He said to his associates, "There is a distance between us otherwise we would have made good by help of men. God does what He wishes. It is proper to make it good by aid of prayers. Humayun got absorbed in prayer to God and invoked an opening from him and help for him. He continued it for nights till he received a letter of victory. When God helps you, there is no victor for you. When the Afghan Sikander got a report of it, he marched with eighty thousand horse against Humayun, Humayun came to Sirhind on 7th Rajab of the year, and encamped in the garden near the city. He then divided the army into four divisions. He was in command of one division. One division was in command of his son Jalalud-Din, Abul

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1056.

Ma'āli was in command of the third division. The fourth division was under Biram Khān. He resolved upon the fort war. Every division was allotted a day for war. Sikander alighted for resistance. Commander of division every day rode out for war for forty days. He remained engaged for a day allotted to him and returned at night. It was the forty-first turn of Jifālud-Din Akbar Bādshāh. He issued forth with his amirs to the battle-field. Khwāja Mu'azzim, Atka Khān and a thick contingent advanced. Kālā Pahād, brother of Sikander encountered them. It was a fierce encounter between them. It was the war of rows. None obtained a victory on theirday from both the contestants. The war had dragged on to its fullest swing. Every side was reinforced with help. It increased and increased till Sikander and Humāyun stepped forth in the battle-field. There did not remain a single swordsman who did not come out in the battle-field.\*

### Poem

Iron mountain moved from its place
You might say, the earth quaked from top to toe
Two armies drew daggers face to face
Rent asunder rows of wings and centre
Buzz of arrow and clash of sword
Broke asunder brain of an elephant and bladder of a lion.

It was a victory for Humayun. The booty was beyond enumeration. Sikander fled from battle-field to mountains of Punjab. Humāyun sat to receive congratulations for victory. The elite and the commoners assembled. He heeded to every one of them according to their stations. He promised them good, of speech debated as to in whose name the victory should be recorded. Shah Abul Ma'ali liked to get his name recorded while Biram Khan wished his name should be inscribed as it was he at whose efforts they made entry into Hind, till time of victory, Humāyun's view was contrary to all people. Every one was careful for victory and to uproot the enemy and similarly the whole army. Humavun ordered that the victory should be written in the name of Jalal ud-Din Akbar. The events of the time were: captivity of Khwaja Mu'azzam. He corresponded with Sikander. Humāyun then marched by way of Sāmāna to Delhi. From his encampment of Samana, he sent Shah Abul Ma'ali, Muhammad Quli Khān Barlas, Ismāil Beg Duldi, Muşāḥib Beg and Ibrāhim Khān Uzbek to Lahore in the face of Sikandar. Sikandar Khan Uzbek entered Delhi. In the meantime, Humāyun had decided his residence at Sāmāna for its climate and heavy downpour. A letter of Sikandar Khan come to him informing him about victory and requesting his arrival. He rejoiced and marched from his manzil. On Thursday, 1st Ramadan of the year, he alighted in Salimghar built ih the direction of Delhi on the river Jamna.

Original Text, p. 1057.

# Entry of Humayun into Delhi, centre of the hingdom of Hind and departure to Iraq

He entered Delhi and alighted in the capital on 4th Ramadan 962 (1551). Abul Fadl said: From the beginning of his travel to its end, Humayun was in favour of transfer of the capital by giving up meat-eating for absorption in spirituality in the early part. When he settled down in the palace, he prostrated in thanks to God and displayed perfect rejoicings and ordered for nilgão (antelope pietu), and said, "They are content with their limbs and preserve them for the evening meal." He then raised the ranks of friends of victory\* and distinguished them with high mansabs. They included members of his house such as Abil Ma'āli who was assigned the region of Punjab while Biram Khân received Sirhind and its dependencies and Mewat granted to Tardi Beg Khan. He marched to it. Agra was given to Sikander Khan Uzbek who went to it. 'Ali Quli Khan was assigned Sanbal while Bayana came to the share of Haider Khān Atka Begi. Hişar-i-Firuza was conferred upon Jalālud-Din Akbar Shāh with its adjacent territory. Shāh Wali Atka came from Kābul to inform him about health and welfare of the son whom he showed. He was delighted by his arrival and titled him Shah Wali Sultan and named the son Farrukh Fal. He permitted Shah Wali Sultan Atka to depart to Kabul with presents. Events; Arrival of Rustam Khan Afghan. When Hisar was assigned to Akbar Shāh, Atka Khān went there. When he was at a distance of two farsakhs, Rustam Khān, Tātār Khān, Ahmad Khān, Pir Muḥammad Rashki, Bijli Khān, Shihāb Khān, Tāj Khān, Ādam Khān and Qiyām Khān emerged for war with two thousand horse. Atka Khān had only four hundred horse. fierce battle with their retreat to the fort of Hisar. Atka Khan encamped at it. Ultimately, peace was concluded. Rustam Khan met him. He sent him in company of 'Ali Quli, Lutf Khwaja and Qasim Mukhlis to Delhi. Rustam presented himself in the Diwan. He ordered a proper place for him on condition of keeping his son in the royal presence (as a hostage). He paused. He was made a captive. Humāyun engaged himself in matters of organisation of the kingdom and worthy persons for its administration. He divided people into three categories: Brothers and relatives; Amirs and Vazirs; Army personnel: men of fortune were called Ahl-i-Dawlat; wise men, learned scholars, justices, Sayvids, Mashāikh, Qādis, Poets, all Scholars, lords, nobles, felicitous persons. They were honoureed and associated with. They were named Arbāb-i-Buyutāt (domestics), men of physical beauty, singers, instrument-players, men of desires, that is, desires of all. He divided days of the week-Saturday and Thursday were reserved for men of felicity. It was engagement and association with them. Saturday was for Saturn which fosters the mashaikh

<sup>•</sup> Original Text, p. 1058.

(spiritual guides), and men of ancient houses. Thursday is connected with Jupiter. It is a planet concerned with nobility. Sunday and Tuesday were reserved for Ahl-i-Dawlat. There was engagement with people of the world and its affairs and wisdom. Sunday is for the sun and its light. It fosters saltanate and those matters concerned with the world; while Tuesday is for Mars. It is a patron of army. Monday and Wednesday are concerned with men of desires. There should be delight and rejoicing and wisdom on these days. Monday is concerned with the moon and Wednesday with Mercury. Every one of them has relation with Ahl-i-Buyutāt. Friday as its name implies is a compendium for the abovementioned ranks. There should be public beneficence for all sections of people.

# March of Jalalud-Din Akbar to Punjab

As Sikander Afghan was in the narrow passes of mountains of Punjab, an order was issued for march of Jalalud-Din Akbar Shah towards Punjab. Atka Khan came from Hisar-i-Firuza and met him on the way. On his encampment at Sirhind, those who were appointed for help to Shah Abul Ma'ali came to him. Among them was Muhammad Quli Khan Barlas. They were annoyed at his character. On arrival of Jalalud-Din they deserted him for him without seeking his permission. Sikander came out from midst of mountains but for Talalud-Din's arrival, he retreated to them. Shah Abul Ma'ali came to the shore of river of Sultanpur for recommendation of Humayun's favour towards him for sitting and showing kindness towards him. After his withdrawal to the tent. two men saw him in drink from the cup of fortune and water-skin from mind of his father. He sent Häji Muhammad Sistani with a letter contents of which were: My relation with Sultan of the time is not hidden from any one. It may be in your noble mind that I spent my time in your presence and I spread the royal table at Jui Shahi and I ate from one side at one table with him. You were in the majlis, the rod of salfanat was brought for you. Today when I was present with you, you ordered me for travel. I expected regard as usual from the Sultan. It was contrary to that men of the felt should sit and individuals should enjoy table. I represented what occurred to me. "When he heard his speech, he smiled and said to the messenger, "Tell him. It is the rule of the Sultan from me other than the rule of love. That relation with you is of the Sultan. It is not with you for me. It is a wonder from you. Do not differentiate these two relations and be troubled." Abul Ma'āli felt ashamed by the reply. Events: the story of Qanbar Diwana. Qanbar was from among illiterate men of Humsyun's camp. When he conquered Delhi, Qanbar assembled vagabonds who stretched their hands to pillage Afghan localities and distribute spoils among his men. He always used to write to Humayun for hist

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, 1059.

service. He sacked Sirhind, and established authority over Sanhal. He had a son whose name was 'Ārifullāh. He sent him to Badānn. Rāi Husain Jalwāni. an Afghan amir was there. He came out from it but did not fight. Qanbar then marched to Gola and pillaged. it. Rukn Khan defeated him in his jurisdiction. He withdrew to Badaun. He always used to write but his deed was contrary to his word. He transgressed the limit of his importance by grant of titles and award of flag and drum. He had a tinge of lunacy in him relating to intoxication of world. Many a time, he gave nothing to people from that which he owned. Humayun wrote to 'Ali Quli Shaibani to send him to him. In the meantime, he retreated to Badaun in a broken state. 'Ali Ouli Khan was free from the campaign of Meerat. He came to Sanbal. He then went to Badann. 'Ali Quli Khān summoned him but he did not respond to him and said. "I am servant of the Sultan as you are. I had conquered this region by means of sword." 'Ali Quli Khan came to fight with him, When he was about to be defeated along with Rukn Khan, he garrisoned himself within the fort. He wrote to Humayun to send to him Qasim Mukhlis to win him over and that he would come with him. 'Ali Quli Khan killed him before he came to him. About a report of his being killed—he had garrisoned himself—it should be stated that he sent Muhammadi Beg Turkoman and Mulla Ghivathud-Din to him. They captured him. They conciliated him very much. They then resorted to a stratagem. Some inmates of the fort accorded with them. Qanbar thus fell into captivity. 'Ali Ouli Khan cut off his head and sent it to Delhi. Humavun was much affected by his being killed. He reproached 'Ali Quli Khan and said. "He was outwardly submissive. He wanted to come. What pressed him for war that he garrisoned himself? After he fell in your hand, what led you to kill him without order?" Many a time. Humāyun used to say. "My mind was disposed to see him. I noticed signs of truthfulness on his forchead. I reared him up. I lifted his importance." Other events were the murder of Haider Muhammad Khan Akhta Begi and Ghazi Khan. When Haider marched to Bayana, 'Adil Khan came out from the outskirts and garrisioned himself within the fort of Bayana. Then he came out to him on a pledge of Haider and met him. He killed Haider out of greed for his wealth. Humayun was much. affected by his murder. It was distant from him. It was the initial stage of his entry into Hind. He had stopped punishment at a later stage. He said in regard to him that he would be happy after that. He sent Shihabud Din Ahmad Khān, Mir-i-Buyntāt for investigation of this matter and estimation of wealth. In the meantime, Humāyun received intelligence that Abil Ma'āli was not praised because of his harm to people. He then learnt that Farhat Khan was expelled from government of Lahore. Some of the men established control over royal treasury. Punjab was the largest portion of Hind. It was assigned to his

Original Text, p. 1061.

son, Jalālud-Din Akbar Shāh. In the early part of the year 963 (1555), Jalālud-Din devoted himself to establishment of order in the saltanat from Delhi to Punjab. He distinguished Biram Khān with the manṣab of Atāliq. He marched to Punjab mountains from the manzil of Sultānpur as stated above. Sikander garrisoned himself within the fort of Mānkot. On Jalālud-Din's encampment in the vicinity of Barhāna, the post came with a report of Humāyun's fall from ladder of the palace and he died. Biram Khān paused from advancement. Jalālud-Din marched to Kalānaur. Just then, Nazar Shaikh Juli came. He had attacked Mastura during life time of Humāyun. In the meantime, Jalālud-Din learnt about the great incident. He was much affected thereby. He then returned with patience.

Abul Fadi said in Akbar Nama: Naşir ud-Din Muḥammad Humāyun was born on Tuesday night, 4th Zika'ad 913 (1507) in the citadel of Kābul. His mother Māhani Begum belonged to the house of nobles of Khurāsān and related to Sultān Ḥusain Mirzā. It is reliably reported that she was related to His Holiness Shaikh Jām, may his grave be sanctified. She was married to Sultān Bābur at the time of his arrival at Herāt after the death of Sultān Ḥusain Mirzā in the affair of his sons. They had assembled for war with the Uzbeks. Mawiānā Masnadi composed the date of his birth. He said, "Dates of Sultān Humāyun Khān," "Shāh-i-Firuz Qadr; Bādshāh-i-Şab-shikan; Khush Bād." Khwāja Kalān Sāmāni composed a quatrain

It is a year of his auspicious (Humāyun) birth\*
May God the Great increase his importance
I have taken away one alif from his date
So that I may draw a rod in two eyes of his enemy

He sat on the throne of Saltanat on 9th Jamadi I, 937 (1530) at the capital of Agra. The chronogram was "Khair ul-Muluk" (Best among Kings). Some one else wrote in praise:

Every man does not become exalted He became chief who cherished people Lion became king of animals and beasts<sup>h</sup> For he is hospitable in hunting-ground

The cause of composition of these couplets was that one day he embarked in a boat in river Jamna. There are gold and silver coins around him. Lords of manşabs and turbans and musicians were in other boats. He was enjoying on the river in moving boats. He ordered those coins to be scattered over them by way of offering. The props of Saltanat rested on gold. He whom God made a sultan, he should have two qualities out of thanks for his bounties—

Original Text, p. 1062.

justice and generosity. The poet whereupon composed these two verses. A scholer found its-date in "Kishti-e-Zar" (a gold-boat). Kamran had Kabul and Qandahar out of the kingdom. 'Askari had Sanbal, Hindal Kalanaur and Sulaiman Badakhshan. After two months, he marched for conquest of the for of Kälinjar. It was peace on payment of two thousands of gold coins. He then went to the Fort of Chunar. It was a sky-scraper fort under Sultan Ibrahim. Jamal Khan a muluk from mamalik ruled over it on behalf on Sultan Ibrahim and Sarang Khan. After the death of Jamal Khan, Sher Shah played a trick by marrying his wife. Name of his ancestors was Malek and therefore the fort came under his control. On Humayun's arrival to it, he came out of it and his son Salim Shah left it in charge of somebody. Humayun corresponded with him through an envoy. Humayun then acted according to requirements of time. Before correspondence, he sent his son 'Abdur Rashid to Humayun. He was in his service under order of his father. On Humāyun's arrival to Mālva, 'Abdur Rashid left it without permission. In the year 935 (1528), there was a war between Pani and Bāyazid Afghāns. Humāyun had then gone towards the east. Bayazid died in the war. Sword was in full swing after that. Sultan Junyad Barlas became Amir of Jaunpur. He returned to the centre of Khilafat, Wars broke out as said in date of his death by Mawlana Qasim Kahi\*

> Humayun king of the kingdom of reality No emperor is remembered like him He suddenly fell from terrace of palace His precious life passed to wind Kähi wrote for date of his death Humayun Badshah fell from terrace.

Abul Fadi had made no mention of it. On his getting down from the palace, he heard a call to sun-set prayer. He reclined upon his staff. His head was on place of his palm from it. He was overwhelmed with a drowsy state. He fell down on his face and came down several steps. The attendants hastened to carry him to the cot: Physicians assembled and treated him but to no avail as marrow flowed from auditory canals. Tardi Beg Khān took charge of the affairs of the capital of Delhi. All the insignia and emblems of saltanat were gathered around him. He sent them to the heir of the kingdom in company of Ghulām 'Ali Shash-angusht (six-fingered). He established control over Delhi. He also sent Mirzā Abul Qāsim b. Mirzā Kāmrān with him to him.

Jalalud-Din Akbar Shāh's accession to the throne took place on 2nd Rabi'II, 963 (1555) at Kalanaur. Biram Khan was titled Khan-i-Khanan. From his post of Ataliq he was transferred to the post of Vakil-i-Mutliq. Shah Abul Ma'ali was put in captivity according to exigency of time. He travelled with

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1063.

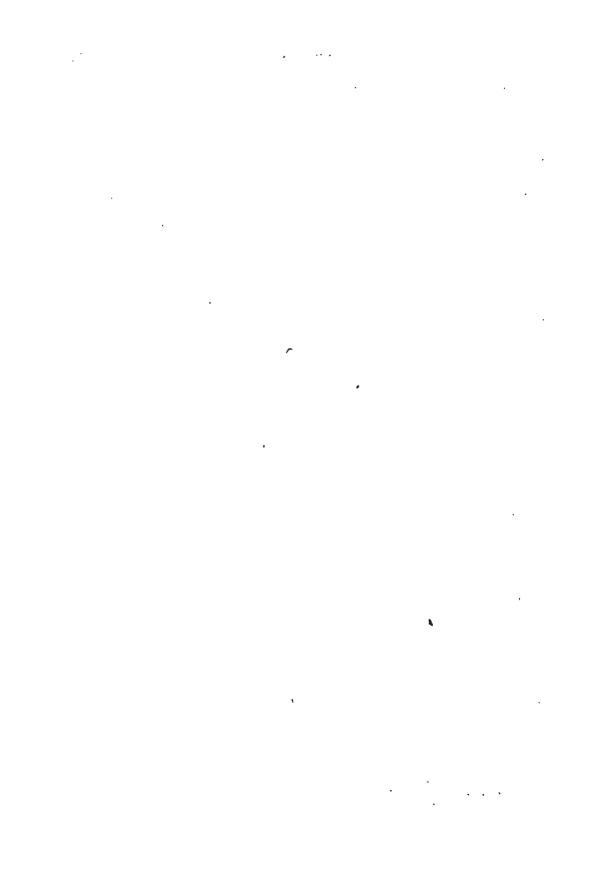
Pahelwan Gulgiz, Police Officer to Lahore. He marched from Kalanaur t Siwalik mounts. Sikander Afghan was in vicinity of it. Pir Muhammad Khai went ahead with advance-guard. Sikander emerged from a side. Jalalud-Dir encamped in the vicinity of Dhamri for nearly three months. Raja Dharam chand, ruler of Nagarkot came to him. Someone came from Narnaul to inform about encampment of Hāji Khān Sher Shāhi at it. Majnun Khān was in it He then marched to Delhi, Tardi Beg Khan turned to him. He took the for from him and followed him towards Mewat and returned to Delhi. During these days Mirzā Sharafud-Din Husain came from Kāshghar. Shaikh Gadāi arrive from Gujarat. He then marched from Dhamri to Jālandhar and tarried there for nearly five months due to monsoon. Kamāl Khān Ghakkar son of Sultāi Sarang came here. In the meantime, he received a report of Hemu's arrival from Banāras to Agra where Sikander Khān Uzbek was. He marched from Agra to Delhi without war. He was followed by Hemu to it. It so happened that Tardi Beg Khan and Sikander Khan were in war with him. Both came t him but were defeated by him in war. They fled to Jalandhar. Hemu entered Delhi and ruled over it. Jalalud-Din Akbar marched to Delhi appointing Khwaja Khidr Khan Amir of Punjab. On his encampment at Sirhind, Tard Beg Khan and Sikander Khan joined him. They were Khan-i-Khanans bu there was unpleasantness between them. He invited him as a guest and killed him and fabricated an excuse for his murder. It was the first offence from him He connived at it under exigency of time. He directed amirs against Hemi from Thanesar. These amirs were Khan Zaman Uzbek, Sikander Khan Uzbek 'Abdullāh Khān Uzbek, Muḥammad Khān Jalair, Majnun Khān Qāqshāl There was a report that Hemu despatched cannons in advance in command c Bahādur Khān and Mubārak Khān Afghans. He went in wake of them. Oarrival at Bayana, it fell in the hands of Khan Zaman. Hemu received a report of his artillery. He arranged his contingents. He put Shadi Khan Kakar or the right wing. The left wing was in command of his sister's son named Ramiv: and he himself posted in the centre. He was on an elephant called Hawai. Ir the army of saltanat, the commander-in-chief Khan Zaman was in command of the centre, Sikander Khan was on the right wing; 'Abdullah Khan was on the left wing. Khan Jahan and Shah Quli Khan were in command of advance guard. After the war, the Mughals gained a victory. Hemu was captured. He was produced before the Royal presence with his hands tied to his neck. Khani-Khanan stood by his side. He cut him off by his hands. He ordered his head to be sent to Kābul while his body was brought to Delhi. This victory was gained on 2nd Muharram 964 (1555) Fifteen hundred elephants were caught in spoils. 'Ali Khan Uzlek was amir of the army. After the war, the victory was registered in his name. He was titled Khan Zaman; Sanbal and middle part of

Original Text, p. 1064.

Doab were assigned to his name 'Abdullah Khan was titled Shuja'at Khan with Kälpi as his assignment. Sikander Khan was titled Khan 'Alam. Pir Muhammad Khan was titled Nasir ul-Mulk. Oava Khan was nominated to the government of Agra. In the meantime, a report was received that Haji Khan\* Sher Shahi was on the side of Alwar and Mewat. Nasir ul-Mulk marched against him. He went to Boni from Alwar and Nahari. Father of Hemu was here. Nasir ul-Mulk pursued him and captured him. He had fifty elephants and baggage. Hāji Khān fled to Ajmer. He fought with the Rānā, defeated him and conquered Ajmer, Nägor and those sides. Muhammad Oasim Khan Nishapuri, Sayvid Mahmud Badah and Shah Ouli Khan Muharram were sent against him. In the meantime, a report arrived about the defeat of Khwaja Khidr Khan, governor of Punjab against Sikander after a war at Lahore. Sikander Khan-i-'Alam was appointed to go to his succour. Sultan 'Ali marched in wake of him. Delhi was put in charge of Mahdi Qasim Khān. On arrival of the Sultan to vicinity of Jalandhar, Sikander retreated to Siwalik and pursued him to Mankot and attacked the fort.

Babadur Khan brother of Khan Zaman came from Qandahar in 964 (1556). He was younger than Khan Zaman. He was appointed in the region of Multan. Muhammad Ouli Khan was transferred from it to Nagor. There was a war in the vicinity of Sanbal between Khan Zaman and Rukn Khan Nubāni and between him and Hasan Khān and Jalāl Khān Bajkuni. He had gained a victory. The elephant Sabdaliya and another Rastkar overpowered many elephants. In the meantime, an envoy of Sikander Afghan came with a request for pardon. He was a reliable man to be in the royal presence. Atka Khan went under order. After the meeting, Sikander sent his son 'Abdur Rahmān and Ghāzi Khān Shorbakht in his company to the Sultān's Diwān and requested himself for a region to be there, to remain ready for service. An edict for Harid and Bihar was sent with him. On 27th Ramadan, he marched from Gwalior to Bihar and sent him with the fort-key. Abul Qasim, brother of Oasim Khan Muji was appointed Amir of Mankot. The Sultan marched to Lahore. During these days, news of victory from Hakim of Bengal arrived. News of 'Adalı's murder came. Sultan Adam Ghakkar saw him at Lahore. He marched to Delhi. At Jalandhar, marriage of Salima Sultan Begum was celebrated with Khan-i-Khanan. He received a report of his army's clash with Hāji Khān so he marched to Hisār Firuza. Hāji Khān fled to Gujarāt. Qāsim Khān Nishapuri was appointed Amir of Ajmer. The Sultan moved from Hisar to Sāmāna and thence to Delhi. He arrived there on 25th Jamādi II. 965 (1557).

<sup>\*</sup> Original Text, p. 1065.



#### APPENDIX I

#### Notes :--

- P. 6 Husam ud-Din: His name is Shaykh Uthmän. His designation is Husam ud-Din. His title was Parwana. He is the son of Shaykh Dawood. His pedigree reached the second Pious Khalifa Hadrat 'Umar may God be pleased with him. He was born in Multan in 639 II (1241). He was a very learned man. He was the disciple of Shaykh Nizam ud-Din Awliya. He came to Pattan with permission of his spiritual guide in 695 H (1295) and resided in Jame 'Masjid. He maintained himself by selling cloth. He died in 736 H (1335) and buried at Pattan.
- P. 6 Bibi Aram:—She was the sister of Sayyid Husain Khing-Sawar. She came along with Husam ud-Din from Ghiyathpur, Delhi to Dabhoi and then to Pattan. She was a great saintess. She lived with her brother Sayyid Husain at Kuduri for some time and then at Pattan. She died at Pattan in 790 (1388) and buried on the bank of Sahashraling tank. Mirat-i-Ahmadi states her death to have taken place in 855.
- P. 7 Khing-Sawār:—Sayyid Ḥusain better known as Khing-sawār (rider of a grey horse) was the son of Uraizi Sayyid Maḥmud. He was born at Ghiyāthpur, Delhi in 663 (1264). He was a disciple of Khwāja Nızām ud-Din Awliyā. He came to Pattan in 730 (1329) at an advanced age of 67. He died in 792 H. (1390) at the ripe age of 130. His tomb is situated on the western side of Sahashraling tank and visited by many persons.
- P. 43 Fidais:— Fidais are the followers of Hamdan Qarmat. They are also known as Karmathians and assassins. They were very powerful in the 13th century and had a kingdom of their own. They were a terror and menace to the people in that period.
- P. 59 Khalifa Mutawakkal: An 'Abbaside Khalifa (847-861).
- P. 60 Sakhāvi: Historian and traditionist.
- P. 86 Ganj-Shakar:—It is a title of a great saint Shaykh Farid ad-Din who was born in 569 H (1134) at Khotwal in Multan District. It is said that he belonged to the royal family of Kabul. At the time of Tatar invasion, his ancestors migrated to Lähore. He was a disciple of Khwāja Bakhtiyār Kāki. He died at Ajodhun in 664;H. (1265).
- P. 110 Mamun:—An Abbasid Khalifa.

- P. 115 Mutanabbi: -An Arab poet died in 965.
- P. 145 Sakhāwi:-Traditionist and historian.
- P. 179 Habib us-Siyar: A Persian history by Khwandmir.
- P. 179 Hafis Abru: A Persian historian.
- P. 189 Bal'ami:—Abu 'Ali Muhammad, the minister of Mansur I, the Samanid and translator of the great history of Tabari in Persian.
- P. 245 Najm ud-Din Kubra;—A great saint martyred by the Tartars in 618 H. (1221).
- 408 Mw'tazalites:-The Mu'tazalites are also known as the Qadariyya, "Partisans of Free Will," or Mu'tazila " secedors. Their leading idea is "best characterised as the enduring protest of sound human understanding against the tyrannical demands which the orthodox teaching imposed upon it." They called themselves Ahl ul-'Adl wat-Tawhid or Partisans of the Divine Justice and Divine Unity. The founder is Wasil b. 'Ata al-Ghazzal, a Persian disciple of the celebrated theologian Hasan of Basra, differed from his master as to the question whether a believer, after he had committed a grievous sin, still deserved to be called by that appellation. Waşil held that such an one could neither be called a believer nor an unbeliever, but must be regarded as occupying a middle position between the two, and withdrew to a different part of the masjid to expound his view to those of his fellow-students who followed him; whereupon Hasan of Basra observed to those who stood round him, 'I'tazala 'an-nā (He had seceded from us), in consequence of which saying Wāşil's party were called by their opponents "al-Mu'tazila" (separatists or seceders).
- P. 408 Harut-Marut:—Among the Jewish traditions in the Midrash was a story of two angels who asked God's permission to come down to earth but succumbed to temptation and were hung up by their feet at Babylon for punishment. They are believed to teach magic to those who want to learn it.
- P. 979 Imam Abu Ḥanifa:—Imām i-A'zam Abu Ḥanifa Nu'mān born in 80 A. H. and died in 150 A.H. (767). One of the four pious Imāms of the Sunnis, the founder of the Hanafi school of thought.
- P. 979 Nizāmud-Din Awliyā:—A great saint who lies buried at Nizām ud-Din, Delhi. His ancestors came from Bukhārā and settled at Lāhore and then at Badāun. He flourished during the regime of the Afghans and Turks and exercised great influence upon the people in bringing them to the right path of Islam. He was the disciple of Bābā Farid Ganj-shakar. The historian Barani says that he was Junayd Baghdādi and Bāyazid Bistāmi of the age.

- P. 980 Bakhtiyār Kāki !—Quţb ud-Din Bakhtiyār Kāki was born in Ush in the province of Transoxiana. He became a disciple of Khwāja Mu'in ud-Din Chishti of Ajmer. He ţtravelled a lot and met many great saints including Shaykh Shihāb ud-Din 'Umar Suhrawardi, He came to India and settled at Delhi during the regime of Sultān Shams ud-Din Il-tutmush. He died while hearing a qawwāli.
- P. 980 Bahā ud-Din Zakariyā:—Bahā ud-Din Zakariyā was the son of Mawlāna Shaykh Wajih ud-Din. He belonged to the Quraish family. His ancestors came from Mekka to Khwārazm and thence to Multān. He acquired learning at different Muslim centres and finally settled down at Multān during the regime of Naşir ud-Din Qubācha. He died at an advanced age of one hundred years in 666 (1267).
- P. 982 Burhān ud-Din Gharib:—Shaykh Burhān ud-Din was born at Hānsi in 654 (1256). His family was noted for religious and sufistic knowledge. He acquired knowledge of theology, tradition and commentary of the Holy Qurān. He came from Hansi to Delhi and became the disciple of Shaykh Nizām ud-Din Awliyā, the most celebrated saint of the age. He went to Dawlatabad and stayed there for thirty years. During this period, many non-Muslims became Muslims at his hand. He died in 738-H (1337).
- P. 1041 Chirāgh-i-Delhi:—Nasir ud-Din Maḥmud was the son of Sayyid Yāhyā. His ancestors came from Khurāsān and settled in Lāhore. They then migrated to Oudh. Naṣir ud-Din was born in Oudh. He was a man of great austerity even before adolescence. He used to fast and wander in forests. He then presented himself before Khwāja Nizām ud-Din Awliyā who then lived at Kilokhari and became his disciple. He was very much attached to his murshid. He died in 757 H. (1356.)

### APPENDIX II

### Amirs, Saints and Scholars.

The amirs of the Sultans of Gujarat were props of the State and pillars of the governmental structure and vital parts of the administrative machinery. They were men of martial vigour and administrative efficiency. When the Sultans led an expedition against an enemy, they fought with utmost valour and prowess and brought laurels to their sovereigns. They chopped off heads of one another as if they were mowing grass. In times of peace, they carried out works of public utility and extended patronage, like their masters, to men of learning and knowledge and performed deeds of lavish generosity and charity and won applause of their people. 'Imad ul-Mulk Sha'ban, the minister of Sultan Mahmud I laid out a beautiful garden called Bagh-i-Sha'ban in the suburb of Ahmedābād during a famine solely to help the poor and the needy. Bāgh-i-Sha'ban is none other than the famous Kankariya Talav of Ahmedabad. Jamaluddin Muhafiz Khan was an able administrator and a shrewd statesman who established law and order in Ahmedabad. Tajkhan Narpali built the mausoleum of the saint Shah 'Alam and founded Tajpur. Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk Siddiqi was a scholar-administrator and statesman. Bijli Khan Habashi and Jawhar Muhammadi Muhsin-ul-Mulk respected learned men and scholars and held them in great esteem. They invited them from distant places to share their lavish generosity. Sherwan Khan Habachi was a boon to his community-men. the Habashis. He was a charming conversationalist and a fascinating artist in music. Sandal Ghālib Khān was a skiltul horseman and a good administrator. He was very hospitable. A party of Arab Sayyids and theologians of Yaman were always in his house as his guests Abul Khair Raihan Badruddin Jahangir Khāni was a cultured and charitable man. The Habashis played a very important role in the history of Gujarat Saltanat.

After the death of Sultan Bahādur, the Saltanat became weak as the Sultans were mere puppets in the hands of powerful amirs. Lust of power generated jealousy and rancour among them. This led to mutual feuds and discords among them. The Sultān passed from one amir to another while the amirs themselves carried them from one place to another to display them as show-boys and continue to wield power in the state. Daryā Khān moved with Sultān Mahmud III. When the Sultān deserted him, he seated Ahmad Khān as Sultān Muzafiar on the throne. When Sultan Mahmud went over to 'Alam Khān, a war ensued between 'Alam Khan and Daryā Khān who defeated the former. Sometime a triangular war broke out between the Habashis, the Rumis and the Afghans. They also divided the kingdom among themselves. Inspite

Afpendix 895

of a large army and artillery, they became an easy prey to the Mughals under Akbar the Great.

#### 'Imad ul-Mulk Malek Sha'ban

On his accession to the throne, Sultan Mahmud I, Begadha continued 'Imad ul-Mulk Malek Sha'ban as his Wazir. He had held the same post during the regime of his brother Ontb ud-Din. He was a man of sound intellect and vigorous intelligence. During the early part of Mahmud's reign, 'Imad ul-Mulk Malek Sha'ban was put into prison due to slander of certain amirs and maleks. A clique of these amirs and maleks such as Adal ul-Mulk Kabir Sultāni, Şafi ul-Mulk Khidr, Burhān ul-Mulk Ismā'il and Husām ul-Mulk Chhaju wanted to seat Hasan Khān son of Muhammad Shāh son of Muzaffar Shāh on the throne. They knew that they would be frustrated in their plot because of 'Imad ul-Mulk Malek Sha'ban. They, therefore, unitedly poisoned the ears of Mahmud by saying that 'Imad ul-Mulk had designed to seat his son Shihab ud-Din on the throne. Mahmud was much perturbed. They all counselled him to incarcerate the wazir in the citadel of Ahmadabad. Being satisfied from the Sultan's side, they made efforts to implement their decision. One night, Malek 'Abduliāh, the Superintendent of the elephant-stable saw the Sultan. He gave evidence of 'Imad ul-Mulk's innocence in the guilt they attributed to him. They were unanimous in making Hasan Khan, the Sultan. They were only afraid of 'Imad ul-Mulk's onslaught and so they tried for his incarceration. Malek 'Abdullah asserted that the truth of what he said would become manifest in early morning the next day. Sultan Mahmud saw his mother and apprised her with what the Superintendent of the elephant-stable had conveyed to him. She sent for Malek 'Abdulish, the superintendent and questioned him about the matter. He repeated what he had said to Mahmud and confirmed it on oath. She sought his advice to frustrate their plot. He said that 'Imad ul-Mulk should be immediately released. The Queen Mother issued an order for his immediate release. Sultan Mahmud summoned the amirs of the state, particularly, Hājji Kālu and Bahā ud-Din, placed facts before them and sought their advice. They all gave their consent to release 'Imad ul-Mulk. The Sultan personally went up to the turret and sent Sharaf ul-Mulk to bring out 'Imad ul-Mulk from prison. Sharaf ul-Mulk brought him out of prison in spite of prevention of the guards. Mahmud ordered chains to be cut down from his hands and feet and apologised himself for it. The Sultan then sought his counsel in connection with those disloyal amirs. He requested the Sultan to watch the situation by sitting in the balcony of the palace opposite to the capital's gate. The Sultan acted accordingly. 'Imad ul-Mulk then ordered the elephants to be brought. Malek Abdullah brought them and made them stand on both the sides in a row of thirty on each side. The amirs of the State were made to stand along with their retinue in the plain which was attached to the inside gate. 'Imad ul-Mulk made his soldiers stand breadth-wise on both sides of the gate. He himself sat opposite to Sultān Maḥmud on balcony of gate of the parapet. He was thus in a position to have a full view of the situation. At dawn, the insurgents came completely armed with Hasan Khān. They found 'Imād ul-Mulk ready with elephants and regiments. They remarked with regret that the secret was divulged during the night. They were thus pondering over the matter when they were attacked from all sides. Aḍad ul-Mulk fied towards the river-bank but was killed. Burhān ul-Mulk and Şafi ul-Mulk were made captives. Ḥuṣām ul-Mulk fied to his brother Rukn ud-Din, the 'Āmil of Luwāni, a village nearby. The rest retreated with regret. The plot was thus suppressed.

'Imad ul-Mulk became a wazir with full authority. He was a good wazir, peace-loving and well disposed towards needy and poor people. He laid out a garden in Ahmadābād which came to be known as Bagh-i-Sha'bān. He personally planted most of the plants of this garden. It is said that the cause of laving out the garden was a famine. He wanted to help and show sympathy to the needy without their begging on this pretext. He had instructed the labourers that none should go back even if one is not in a position to give full work. They should neither be forced to work nor they should be coerced to come earlier. It is sufficient that they should come for work. It does not matter whether they work or not. He personally paid a visit to the place of work every evening and paid wages to the labourers. It so happened that one day he came out of his house in the evening with insufficient amount of money to the garden to pay wages to the workers. Some persons approached him to get help in money from him. He told them that as the labourers had worked for the whole day, they must be paid the wages otherwise their wives and children would sleep without food. He promised them to help the next day. Those persons told him that if they came the next day, they would not be allowed by policemen to approach him. Imad ul-Mulk took an oath for the fulfilment of promise. They then allowed 'Imad ul-Mulk to go home. Next day, he came with the amount he had promised. Policemen were with him. Those persons stood at a distance through fear. He removed the policemen approached those persons and paid each of them the promised amount by shouting out their names. He then inquired from them about their means of subsistence. They stated that their monetary condition was bad and that they needed help. He ordered them to come to his audience-hall. He then went towards the garden. When those persons presented themselves in the audience-hall, he gave each one he deserved. Because of unemployment, they had formed predatory habits. They renounced these habits and reformed themselves.

Sulțăn Quțbuddin had marched against Rana Kumbha when the Raja of Sirohi paid him obeisance and requested him to get him back Abu which was forcibly occupied by the Rana; whereupon the Sulțăn ordered 'Imād ul-Mulk

APPENDIX 897

to lead a campaign against the Rana to win back Abu to give it to its rightful owner. The Malek was not experienced in military campaigns. He suffered a defeat when many of his soldiers were killed.

The Rana had signed a pact with Sultan Qutb ud-Din but he broke it within three months and invaded Nagor. 'Imad ul-Mulk received intelligence of it. He went to the Sultan at mid-night, woke him up, caught hold of his hand and advised him to march then and then, in his night-dress. The Rana's secret agents conveyed the report of the Sultans march whereupon he withdrew to his kingdom.

Malek Sha'bān was the second son of Malek Muhammed Ikhtiyār. He was witty and of generous disposition. He kept all sections of population happy and comfortable. No wazir, in the opinion of Manjhu Sikandar, author of Mirat i-Sikandari, was like him in east and west in that age. He resigned his post as a wazir at the close of life. The Sultān intended to continue him in service but he refused. He led a retired life in the corner of Bāgh-i-Sha'bān situated to the east of the city. He used to say, "The tranquillity which I enjoyed jin one day by retirement in the garden, was never obtained by me throughout my life." He did not come out from corner of the garden and spent the rest of his life there. He died there and was buried in the campus of the masjid, in the garden.

# Malek Ayaz

Malek Ayāz-i-Khāṣṣ-i-Sulṭāni was the governor of Junagadh and Div. In 913 (1507), the Firangis, that is, the Portuguese played their role as pirates on the shores of Gujarat. Sulṭān Maḥmud started from Champaner for their suppression and expulsion. He travelled on the sea coast and halted at Daman. He wrote to Malek Ayāz, the governor of Junagadh and Div port to wage war with the Firangis from the sea side. It so happened that when Ayāz was about to start with his army from Div, the king of Egypt Kansu al-Ghori sent Amir Ḥusain al-Miṣri with two big ships and three boats to drive away the Firangis from the Indian ocean and the port of Hormuz. Ayāz allied himself with Amir Ḥusain and supplied him with provisions more than he needed. Both of them fought with the Firangis at Chewal and inflicted a severe defeat upon them by foundering their boats, capturing and killing them. He informed Sulṭān Maḥmud about this victory and went to Bassein to pay respects to the Sulṭān who received him as well as Amir Ḥusain with elation and ennobled them with favours.

When the Sultan marched from Champaner for an invasion of Chitor, he came to Ahmadabad and summoned all the amirs to rally round them. The great amir, lion in majesty and might, the old faithful servant of his father, Malek Ayaz Turki arrived from Junagadh with one lac horses and one hundred

elephants along with one hundred cannons, six thousand cannoneers, eight thousand musketeers and four thousand archers. All his troopers were fully armed and wore uniforms of different colours. He paid obeisance to the Sultan and said "Sanga and the conquest of Chitor! It is not necessary for the Sultan in person to march for this purpose. His servants were sufficient for this task," The Sultan acceded to his request. Qiwan ul-Mulk was made to accompany him. On the way to Chitor, he raided Kālyākot, Dungerpur, Sāgwada and Banswada. He clashed with Purabiya Agarsen and Ray Udaisingh and defeated them. He then marched to Sarkob and climbed up the valley of Kurjhin and encamped at Mandsur. The Rana sent his emissary to Malek Ayaz for submission and payment of tribute with a request to accept his proposals. Ayaz waited for completion of the mine. Silhadi, the ruler of Raisin made efforts to patch up a peace. In the meantime, 'Alā ud-Din Khalji of Mandu came and encamped with Malek Ayaz. Oiwam ul-Mulk exploded the mine but Ayaz wanted the victory to be in his name. He, therefore, made peace with the Rana when Chitor was within reach of conquest. The Sulfan received intelligence of it. When he presented himself before the Sultan, the Sultan heeded him not and ordered him to go to Junagadh. After his departure, the Sultan sent a letter of rebukes to him, asking him to pay attention to his territory.

Malek Ayāz-i-Sultāni died in 1520 at Junagadh. His dead body was removed to Unão and buried by the side of his spiritual guide Shāh Shamsud-Din. When the Sultān heard about his death, he remarked that he lived happily. Had he exercised patience, he would have died as a martyr. He felt aggrieved for his death and prayed to God to shower His mercy on him.

He lived in pomp and grandeur. He owned many buildings, gardens and the sea coast as his jagir. The port of Div was never without merchants. He obtained a considerable income from the port. More than one hundred ships sailed from it throughout the year. The shore had more than one thousand importers and exporters. Travelling boats were more than one thousand. Similarly, war-ships were more than two hundred. The sea coast of Gujarat was adiacent to Sind. Its termination was Konkan in neighbourhood of the Deccan port of Chewal. The Portuguese plied this sea-coast. They were also at Dawool as well as Junair. The authority of Malek Ayaz extended on the coast of Guiarat. He did not allow the Portuguese boats to come to Gujarat except for trade. He was admiral (lord of the sea--Amir ul-Baḥr) in his time. He was very kind. He was so just in administrative matters that there was nothing unlawful in his treasury. He never made use of governmental money for his person and family. He did not permit a single boat which was not in good condition and which was not loaded with cargo. There was perfect safety on sea and business flourished with profit. The travellers said prayers for his welfare. He was very generous and charitable. Every one enjoyed his hospitality.

APPENDIX 890

He conciliated his servants by presents and bounties. There was none like him in this respect. Every needy person knew him by his generosity. (Zafar ul-Wālih).

Even though Malek Ayaz was Ghulam-i-Sultani, a purchased slave, he was worth a region in government. He had rare articles with him. One thousand water-carriers fetched water under his government. He had made a hidereservoir. It was filled with water at the time of a military campaign. Soldiers and their animals drank water out of it. Malek Ayaz has left his name in Gujarat. He built the fort of Div which was later on demolished by the Portuguese, but he built another in its place. A turret was constructed in the midst of sea. It was called "Sankalkot" (a chain-fort). From the turret to the shore, there was an iron-chain so that the Portuguese ship may not cross that way. It still stands. After the death of Sultan Bahadur, the fort, city and port were in occupation of the Portuguese. He laid out gardens in the island of Div. Two branches of the sea which are on two sides of the island of Div appear like an intersection in the north. Over this, a stone-bridge was built. It has been destroyed by the Portuguese. It is judged from the map of island put there. During his regime, the Portuguese dared not enter the ports of Gujarat. But now it is reverse of it except at Surat and Rander which is due to powerful port-officers.

At the time of laying out food, a bugle was blown. Door-keepers shouted out to the people that the table was laid out with food. They should come to take their meals. All grades of people from the lowest to the highest partook of the same kind of food. The Malek cast his glance on all sides of the table just to see that different kinds of food was not served to different persons. Persian, Indian and Turkish varieties of food were served. This reminded one of the dainty viands of paradise. After the meals were over, pans (betel-leaves) and perfumes were served.

All his soldiers were dressed in gold-embroidered and velvet uniforms. His sweepers were scarlet chikan clothes. Their swords, quivers and daggers had gold and silver covers and knots.

During the regime of Muzaffar II, son of Mahmud, Malek Ayaz pursued the Rana Sanga who had come to the border of Gujarat. At this time, he fed all commanders and soldiers. He sent food to those who failed to attend his mass-dinner. Some of the amirs did not like that food should be sent to them. In order that this may be stopped, they did not return the china-wares in which food was sent to them. But he continued to send food in spite of it for full one month.

He had three sons—Isḥāq titled Changiz Khān, Tughān and Ilyās (Ḥājji Dabir says that he had two sons). Isḥāq was fat and bulky. He used to ride a camel because a horse could not bear his weight. He was a proficient wrestler PA54

well acquainted with all tricks of wrestling. No wrestler could grapple with him. It is reported that he had one hundred (it is said three hundred also) wives, legally married and concubines. He satisfied every one of them on account of his uncommon potency. After his death, all of them rent asunder their stomach and killed themselves. Sultan Bahādur killed all the three at the instigation of Rumi Khān. (Mirat-i-Sikandari).

### Sayyid Mubarak Bukhari

Sayyid Mubarak Bukhari was one of the five hundred Bukhari Sayyids who had migrated from Bukhāra to Gujarat during Timur's invasion. He was one of Sulfan Bahadur's nobles in 941 (1534). He bore the honourable title of al-Majlis ul-Ashraf. In 942 (1535), he was one of the amirs who had accompanied Sultan Bahadur against the Firangis. He took part in the battle against the Mughals at Mahmudābād. He was in command of the vanguard. Sultān Bahadur defeated the Mughals in this battle. In 956 (1549), he requested 'Imad-ul-Mulk to accompany him for jihad against Idar. He then held the rank of an amir which was elevated. The Sultan behaved with him with honour and humbleness. He showed favour to him and promised him increased salary after the war of Idar. He further said to him that it would be a difficult war and so advised him not to take part in it. He would be raised to a higher rank than that of an amir. He replied, "I want an Amirship but I also want the pleasure of God." Imad ul-Mulk was present when this conversation took place between him and the Sultan. 'Imad ul-Mulk said that the great amir wanted to join the campaign out of his desire for jihad and that he had permitted him to take part in the campaign. He would remain loyal to the Sultan.

After assassination of Maḥmud III, he was one of the amirs who met together for counsel under the leadership of I'timād Khān. He knew that a conflagration would take place and that the stability of the kingdom had to be maintained. He, therefore, made hard efforts to suppress insurrection. Hājji Dabir remarks "The great amir Sayyid Mubārak Bukhāri tried to subside the dust of barbarity and to extinguish the fire of insurrection. He carried a waterbag over his shoulder to pour water over it. He sprinkled it over its places of possibility for avoidance. He prepared himself to meet any situation in the open field in case it arose. How remarkable was it from one who was the amir, the Sayyid and whose name and tradition both were mubārak (blessed)." After enthronement of Sulṭān Aḥmad he came and resided at Maḥmudābād at ease. During the regime of Maḥmud, he had |built houses on the bank of river Vatrak from the direction of Ahmadābād. He populated the place and named it Sayyidpur. He spent a considerable portion of his life there.

In a clash with I'timād Khān and 'Imād ul-Mulk, Sayyid Mubarak acted as a mediator. The Sultān one day went over to Sayyid Mubārak and took

APPENDIX 901

shelter with him. 'Imād ul-Mulk waged war with Sayyid Mubārak but with no result. Ikhtiyār ul-Mulk wanted to seat Shāhu on the throne; he wrote to I'timād Khān that Sulţān Aḥmad would not give any benefit to him as he was the spiritual disciple of Sayyid Mubārak. At this juncture, Ḥājji Dabir criticises the author of Mirat-i-Sikandari saying "His method of narration is indicative of preference for his patron, the great amir Sayyid Mubārak Bukhāri due to the favour his father had enjoyed under him in execution of state affairs and pleasure of the public due to partnership of Musnad-i-'Āli I'timād Khān and Majlis-i-'Āli 'Imād ul-Mulk who were the pivot and sole representatives of the kingdom. If it were so as his method shows but it was not so in keeping with their nature and character." He took an active part in suppression of revolts which took place during the regime of Sulṭān Aḥmad who remained with him. He brought about reconciliation between I'timād Khān and 'Imād ul-Mulk. In 963 (1555), he advised the Sulṭān to nominate 'Imād ul-Mulk as his Prime Minister.

Mahmud Shah wanted to keep members of the family of 'Alam Khan as hostages. But 'Alam Khan approached Sayyid Mubarak with a request to plead before the Sultan to keep his brother Şafdar Khan in prison in place of members of his family. He arranged for this but the Sayyid felt much ashamed when Şafdar Khan secretly managed to come out of prison with the help of a man called Sadhu who threw a rope at the balcony at night by means of which he descended from it and escaped.

Mubärak Shāh of Asir and Burhānpur invaded Gujarat thinking himself to be a rightful claimant to its throne. Sayyid Mubārak tried to conciliate him by means of peace but Mubārak Shāh, under instigation of Nāṣir ul-Mulk refused to make peace. Ultimately, sanity prevailed over Mubārak Shāh and he concluded peace with the Sayyid.

Mutual feuds to seize power were order of the day. The amirs had divided themselves into two camps—one of I'timād Khān and the other of Nāṣir ul-Mulk. Atal Khān, the wazir of Nāṣir ul-Mulk entered the tent of the Sayyid, caught hold of him and was about to stab him with jamdhar when those who sat around the Sayyid held him back and wanted to kill him but the Sayyid forbade them saying that it would happen in the battle-field.

After his departure, Nāṣir ul-Mulk waged war with the Sayyid who had to run away to Kapadwanj. I'timād Khān and other amirs deserted him. The Sulṭān himself fell into the hands of Nāṣir ul-Mulk who marched to Ahmadābād with all pomp and grandeur and established himself as an absolute ruler. He then intended to expel the Sayyid and I'timād Khān from Gujarat. He marched with all his army against Kapadwanj and halted at Kamaid of Haveli. All the Sayyids and some of the amirs decided to side with the Sayyid while others

decided to kill Nāşir ul-Mulk. In the meantime, the Sayyid marched from Kapadwanj, entered the tent of the Nāşir ul-Mulk who fied away in whatever condition he was.

At the close of life, the Sayyid had lost his eye-sight. Some of the amirs took advantage of his blindness. They wanted to take possession of the Sultan and so invaded Sayyidpur. The Sayyid rode out to the battle-field being led by his groom. His men deserted him. He was hit by an arrow. Sa'eed naubi, a slave of I'timad Khan killed him. It was Friday, 27th Ramdan, 965 (1557).

Sayyid Mubarak Bukhari was a man of keen observation, far-reaching foresight and sound judgment. He was a lover of peace and always tried to settle disputes by peaceful means. He had a band of loyal and devoted Sayyids who held fast to him through thick and thin. Besides, the Fuladi Afghans were his spiritual disciples. Their leaders were Musa Khan and Sher Khan who were noted for power and valour. They attained to high positions in the kingdom because of the kind favour of the Sayyid. The Ludi and Sherwani Afghans were his recruits. His regiment consisted of all sections of people numbering ten thousand. I'timad Khan, 'Imad ul-Mulk, Ulugh Khan, Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk etc. sought his counsel on important state matters.'

Ārām Kashmiri, the author of Tuhfat-us-Sādāl wrote his history and dedicated it to him. On the division of territory and treasure among the nobles, his share consisted of Patan, Khambhayat, Dholka, Ghogha, Dhandhuka, Chāmpāner, Kapadwanj, Sarmāl and Bālāsinor. He gave away Patan to Musā Khān Fulādi. His share from the treasure was twenty-two crores of current coins which he distributed among poor and needy persons. The author of Mirati-Sikandari assigns miraculous powers to him. He was a pious man with religious zeal in him. He always kept himself in a purified state with wudu (ablutions).

# Jamāl ud-Din Muhāfiz Khān

In 1470, Sultān Maḥmud received intelligence that Rāy Jaysingh (Champak) (Mirat-i-Sikandari) son of Gangādās Rāwal of Chāmpāner gave shelter to miscreants of Baroda and Dabhoi and instigated them to commit acts of lawlessness and atrocities. They also resorted to raids and depredations, plunder and pillage. He had, further, secretly allied himself with the Sultān of Mandu. The Sultān appointed his salāh-dār (armour-bearer) as Faujdār of the metropolis of Aḥmadābād and round-about places. His name was Jamāl ud-Din Muhammad son of Malek Shaykh. He elevated his rank and conferred upon him the title of Muhāfiz Khān. He was granted the favour of an ensign and a drum. He assigned to him the duty of looking after the well-being and welfare of his subjects and enjoined upon him to treat them with favour and kindness. Muhāfiz Khān was a God-fearing man. He was conscientious of his duty. He

APPENDIX 903

performed it with lovalty and devotion. In no time, he suppressed brigandage and halted theft. The roads became safe and secure for travellers and people slept soundly in their houses keeping doors open. He proved himself an efficient administrator, a shrewd statesman and an able general. He had earned a good name as an expert rider. He administered the region with efficiency and established justice and equity. He rooted out bribery and corruption. Being a pious and religious-minded man, he abhored every deed that was abominable and stamped it out. He adopted measures tending to welfare of people in general. He established law and order in the region and ushered in an era of peace and plenty. The Sultan was so much pleased that he raised him to the rank of a mustawfi (accountant-general). He then ennobled him with the status of Nāib (Deputy) and later on, made him his wazir after the death of Khudawand Khan. The Sultan had reposed full confidence in him. He lived in pomp and grandeur. He had seventeen hundred horses in his stable. He is grand-father of the historian Husam Khan, historian of Tarikh-i-Bahadurshahi. It became the source-book of some historians.

During Sultan Maḥmud's siege of Champaner, Muḥanz Khan remained with the army during day time and minded his administrative work also. Rānā Patai of Champaner was put in his charge as a state prisoner.

## Taj Khān Narpāli

Soon after the assassination of Sultan Sikandar, Tāj Khān Narpāli or Tarpāli wrote to Sultan Bahādur who was away at Jaunpur to come to Gujarat to occupy the throne of his ancestors. Sultan Bahādur started from Jaunpur and came to Naharwala where Tāj Khān Sālār greeted him with a canopy and other regal paraphernalia. Bahādur set out for Chāmpāner paying visits on the way to the shrines of saints such as Shaikh Aḥmad Khattu, Quṭub-i-Ālam, Shāh 'Ālam etc. and mausoleums of Sultāns such as Sultān Aḥmad, Sultān Sikandar etc. He ordered Tāj Khān to proceed to Chāmpāner with three hundred horses to guard the house of 'Imād ul-Mulk lest he might abscond. Soon after Sultān Bahādur's enthronement, Tāj Khān tendered resignation of his post as Wazir with a request to grant him a village for his means of maintenance. Sultān Bahādur satisfied him as far as possibie by giving him in addition to what was granted to him by his father.

Tāj Khān was the wisest and most perfect man. His authority in the kingdom was very extensive. He enjoyed such glory and worth which were not enjoyed by others. Sultān Bahādur intended to retain him in service but he apologised and refused because he wanted to lead the life of piety. He renounced the world, came out from his house with his family and lived in a village he had demanded with safety, security and nobility. He was a man of charitable inclination and generous disposition. His name was other word for charity and

generosity. No one was so much renowned as he in this respect. He built the mausoleum of His Holiness Shāh 'Ālam during the regime of Sultān Muzaffar. He populated Tājpur to the south within the city-fort.

## Ikhtiyar Khan Şiddiqi

Ikhtiyār Khān Şiddiqi belonged to the Kāḍi family of Nadiad. He was born and bred up in it. He entered the state service. He served it with distinction and efficiency. By dint of his qualifications, he rose to the rank of a favourite of the Sulṭān. He was distinguished for intellectual attainments, shrewdness and sagacity. He was well-versed in intellectual, narrative, mathematical and astronomical sciences as well as in poetry, enigma, logic and philsosophy. He laid a detached life. He had combined in himself world and faith (din-o-dunyā). It was his manifest virtue. During the regime of Sulṭān Muzafiar b. Sulṭān Maḥmud, he was sent as an emissary to the Sulṭān of Lād. He performed his mission with success.

When Sulţān Bahādur intended to invade Silhadi, he ordered Ikhtiyār Khān Wazir, who was second to Mir 'Ali Shir in excellence and efficiency and who was the Ḥākim of the capital city of the Sulţān, to move to Na'lcha with an army, treasure and war-carts in all haste. The Sulţān had left him in charge of the siege of Raisin. He then appointed him to conquer Mandsur along with 'Imād ul-Mulk. When the Sulţān returned from Mandu to Chāmpāner, he placed Chāmpāner in charge of Ikhtiyār Khān and Narsingh Dev titled Khān Jahān.

When Humayun invaded Muhammadabad-Champaner, he was wazir of Sultan Bahadur who commanded him to set fire to the city. Humayun granted amnesty to its residents. Ikhtiyar Khan met Humayun on the next day after grant of amnesty. Humayun had heard about Ikhtiyar Khan's abilities as a scholar. When he saw him, he found him to be deserving more praise than what he had heard about him. He received him well and made him his associate and raised his rank to that of his close courtiers. Intellectual debates and graceful conversation took place between them on intellectual and descriptive sciences as well as on mathematics, astronomy and literature both in verse and prose. Humayun found him a proficient scholar in various branches of learning. He held him in great esteem and kept a soft corner in his heart for him.

He was also one of the nobles who had accompanied Bahādur in a campaign against Div in 941 (1534).

After the death of Bahādur, 'Imād ul-Mulk and Ikhtiyār Khān Şiddiqi decided to nominate Muḥammad Shāh (Bahādur's sister's son), ruler of Asir as Sultān of Gujarat and invited him by continual messages.

On the accession of Mahmud Shah b. Latif Shah in 1537, Ikhtiyar Khan was appointed as guardían along with his brother Muqbil Khan and his son Lad

Khān. They did not allow any one to approach the Sultan. They alone served him with food and drink. One day, Lad Khan son of Muqbil Khan said to the Sultan that if he ordered, he would kill 'Imad ul-Mulk and Darya Khan. The Sultan, knowingly or unknowingly, conveyed these words to 'Imad ul-Mulk who in his turn conveyed them to Darya Khan. Whereupan, 'Imad ul-Mu'k and Darya Khan came to the Sultan and summoned Ikhtiyar Khan, Muqbil Khān and Lād Khān to their presence and ordered them to be strangled to death in 944 (1537). When the rope was placed round the throat of Ikhtivar Khān, he raised his hands in prayer to God and said, "Oh God! You know that I am innocent. What they know, I do not know. They kill me through tyranny". He began to recite the kalima and uttered the words 'La Ilaha (there is no god) when the executioner pulled the rope. He was brought down when he became cold. The rope was removed from his throat but his eyes were as they were before strangulation. His tongue recited, "except God and Muḥammad is His Messenger." So saying, he gave up life. Mirat-i-Sikandari remarks that it is not strange from a man of Ikhtiyar Khan's piety, religiousmindedness, purity of soul and innocence. 'Imad ul-Mulk said to Darya Khan that the man was innocent and that the retribution thereof would come to them. Consequently, both of them suffered.

He left a son whose name was Dāwood Khān. He did not inherit any of the qualities of his father on account of which he had attained to fame. He was noble in character and proficient in the art of music. When he died in 970 (1562), he was buried in the mausoleum of his father and grand-father. One of his discendants Farid became famous. He was the son of his patron's daughter 'Abdul 'Aziz Masnad-i-'Āli Āṣaf Khān

### Daryā Khān

Husain was Daryā Khān's original name. He was the son of Sayf ul-Mulk Shir Dil who was one of the nobles of Sultān Bahādur in 941 (1534). He was conferred the title of Daryā Khān. He was formerly in the service of Sultān Maḥmud Khalji, ruler of Malwa. He sent him as his emissary to Sultān Bahādur to convey to him his intention to meet him. Sultān Bahādur assigned the fief of Ujjain to Daryā Khān Manduwāli.

At the time of his accession, Sultan Maḥmud conferred upon him the title of Majlis-i-Girāmi (Mirat-i-Sikandari), Majlis-i-Sāmi (Zafar ul-Wālih) and appointed him a co-Wazir with Malek Jiv, son of Tawakkul, titled 'Imad ul-Mulk. He hanged Ikhtiyār Khān Ṣiddiqi, his brother Muqbil Khān and his son Lād Khān because the Sultān had reported to him that Lād Khān had told him that he would kill Daryā Khān and 'Imad ul-Mulk on receiving the Sultān's order. Later on, Daryā Khān did repent for Ikhtiyār Khān's innocent murder.

After some time, he harboured jealousy and evil designs against 'Imad ul-Mulk whom he wanted to overthrow and seize regal persons and power in his hands. He then sought counsel from his confidential friend Fatu Jiv titled Muhāfiz Khān in this matter. Muhāfiz Khān took the Sultān out of Ahmadābād for hunting. At the hunting-ground, he said to 'Imād-ul-Mulk that he should proceed to his jagir of Jhālāwār under royal order. 'Imad ul-Mulk suspected him of an intrigue. He tried to seize the personality of the Sultān. He spent lavishly on recruitment of mercenaries. But powerful amirs did not give their accord to him and so he went to his jagir of Jhālāwār.

After five or six months, Darya Khān marched with the Sulţān against 'Imad ul-Mulk whom he defeated at Pātri Bajana in the district of Viramgām. 'Imad ul-Mulk fied to Mubārak Shāh at Burhānpur. Daryā Khān pursued him thither with the Sulţān and fought with Mubārak Shāh on his refusal to surrender him and inflicted a defeat upon him.

When he returned to Gujarat, Daryā Khān exercised absolute power in the kingdom with the Sultān as his puppet. He behaved so well with all sections of people that they remained pleased with him and thanked him by invoking prayers on his behalf. People remarked that the regime of Sultān Maḥmud Shāh I had come back. Every one felt happy and led a comfortable life according to his means. It was the year 945 (1538) which is found from the word "Khush-ḥāl" according to Abjad system. He lavishly practised alms and charity. No durwish was left out without a stipend and allowance. Most of the soldiers with families got a jagir in addition to their regular salary. They were granted farmāns with royal seal wherein the name of the grantee, fixation of his jagir etc. were recorded. Copies of such farmāns were kept ready so that people might not have to wait for what they deserved and bear harassment of the clerks. Poor and needy persons of every nook and corner of the state were supplied with such documents at their respective places.

Once it so happened that a wrong man bearing the same name as the grantee received the allowance. When the rightful claimant made his appearance for demand of his allowance, Daryā Khān did not like to take back the amount from the wrong man.

Daryā Khān was a pleasure-loving man. He entrusted management of administrative matters to 'Ālam Khān Ludi while he himself indulged in music and dance of Pātri girls. During his regime, every house in every lane and bazar emitted songs, tunes and melodies. Noted Kalāwants of his time were Nāyak Abhu, Nāyak Jiti son of Nāyak Bakhshu, Rang Khān and Bahli sons of Nāyak Chatr, Khim and Raman. Every one of them was renowned in his art. To quote Mirat-i-Sikandari every one of them was so proficient in art that he brought down by his enchanting songs and miraculous tunes even the planet

APPENDIX 907

Tenus from the sky to his captivity on earth. Other famous Pātri dancers were Mohaurāo, Rangrão, Desi Rão and Kunwar who were unequal led in dancing and natchless in personal beauty. His maḥfil was extremely perfumed and profusely cented as well as profoundly well furnished with costly carpets and gaudy curtains. Daryā Khān spent his time in such pleasures and joys. The Sultān emained indifferent to his pleasure-loving life. However much he tried to get cent of his view with regard to his indulgence in pleasures, he did not succeed it.

Once he invited his intimate friends, 'Alam Khān Ludi, Ulugh Khān, lajih ul-Mulk Tānk and Alap Khān Khatri to a party before they proceeded to heir respective jagirs. Laţif ul-Mulk secretly informed them that Daryā Khān rould kill all of them when in drinking bouts. All of them attended the party with fear of life. They attended the party with no rejoicing in them like life-less ersons. Daryā Khān inquired from them the cause of it. He assured them hat there was no such intention on his part with the Holy Book in hand. In he morning, the amirs departed for their respective jagirs. He paraded Laţif il-Mulk on a donkey with shaven head and beard in every lane of the city and mprisoned him.

'Imad ul-Mulk proceeded to Maliu Khan, tuler of Malwa from Burhanpur. le wrote to Mallu Khān alias Qādir Shāh to surrender him but he refused. He, herefore, decided to march on Mandu. He assembled his army for the purpose Kankariya tank. At night, he held a party and left the room with a girl eaving the Sultan alone. The Sultan felt insulted. He whispered to Sayyid Subārak Bukhāri, "Did you notice the insolence of this slave? He left me lone in his drunken state and enjoys tranquillity." He left Darya Khan and vent over to 'Alam Khan. Darya Khan received intelligence of his flight in he morning. He seated Ahmad Khan as Sultan Muzaffar on the throne on the dvice of Fatu Jiv and marched against 'Alam Khān whom he deseated. In he meantime, his troops deserted him. He returned to Ahmadabad but the itizens refused him admission whereupon he entered it through a Virampur hirki. He sent away his family members to Champaner while he himself proseded to Burbanpur in 950 (1543). The Sulfan occupied the city and conscated his treasures. He passed through difficult days in roaming about and ltimately went over to Sher Shah Sur, the ruler of Delhi.

### 'Alam Khan Ludi

'Alam Khān Ludi was the son of Mir Muhammad 'Alam Khān. He was ord of Dholka. Before departure of 'Alam Khān and other amirs to their resective jagirs, Daryā Khān had arranged a night party for them. But Laţif l-Mulk informed these amirs that Daryā Khān had evil designs to kill all of hem in the party. They all attended the party like life-less beings with no 1955

cheer on their faces. Daryā Khān noticed that they did not rejoice in the party and that their faces were pale through fear of life. On Daryā Khān's inquiry as to why there was no cheer on their faces, they told him what Laţif ul-Mulk had reported to them whereupon he took an oath with the Holy Book in hand assuring them about his sincere intentions. They then departed to their respective places in the morning. He punished Laţif ul-Mulk by parading him on a donkey with clean shaven head and beard in the whole city.

Sultān Mahmud got displeased with Daryā Khān when he left him alone in the party. The Sultān left his asylum and went over to 'Ālam Khān when he invited him to Dholka. Daryā Khān invaded Dholka and fought with 'Ālam Khān who suffered a defeat and fled away to Sayādara on the bank of Sābarmati. He recruited soldiers and won over the Sultān to his side. When the Sultān felt himself safe and secure at Chāmpāner, he appointed 'Ālam Khān as Amir ul-Umarā and Sipāhsālār. When he found that he had won the confidence of the Sultān, he requested the Sultān to permit him to summon 'Imād ul-Mulk who was expelled from Gujarat by Daryā Khān. In the meantime, 'Imād ul-Mulk arrived who was received with due honour and Broach was assigned to him as jagir.

The Sultan encouraged base and low persons and bestowed titles upon them. A sparrow-hunter Chir Jiv was titled as Muhāfiz Khān and assigned a proximate place to him to the resentment of other amirs. Chir Jiv had become bold enough to kill two prominent amirs who fought on the side of Daryā Khān in the Battle of Dholka. One of the amirs was 'Alāud-Din Ludi, brother of Sikandar Ludi of Delhi. 'Ālam Khān got their bodies burried after three days.

'Ālam Khān, Wajih ul-Mulk, Alp Khān Khatri and Burhān ul-Mulk Wazir along with other soldiers decided to kill Chir Jiv and came completely armed and sat on a big masjid situated at the Sulṭān's Darbār. The Sulṭān was practically besieged for nearly three days. The Sulṭān became helpless. The Sulṭān sent Burhān ul-Mulk to inquire as to what was their object. They all said that Chir Jiv should be surrendered to them but the Sulṭān refused to surrender him at any cost. When they attended majlis of the Sulṭān they caught hold of Chir Jiv and tore him to pieces near the throne of the Sulṭān. The Sulṭān stabbed his stomach with a dagger but Alp Khān caught hold of the Sulṭān's hand. He was slightly injured. The Sulṭān was kept under strict surveillance. 'Ālam Khān had refused to see the Sulṭān till Chir Jiv was killed.

'Alam Khan, Wajih ul-Mulk, Mujahid Khan and Mujahid ul-Mulk were cream among the nobles. They guarded the Sulfan by terms.

Mujahid Khān Behlim was a powerful noble. He was very bulky with a pot belly. 'Alam Khān's brother, Shujā'ul-Mulk used to cut jokes with him.

His wazir Tatar ul-Mulk resented jokes against his master. He poisoned ears of the Sultan against 'Alam Khan and suggested to him a plan to bring about his fall. The joke of Shuia'ul-Mulk became costly for 'Alam Khan. The Sultan ordered 'Alam Khān's house to be plundered. He was taken aback on account of this sudden step on part of the Sultan. He fied away to Pethapur and wrote to Daryā Khān that he was in sad plight and that he repented of his deed. He invited him to meet him to do something together. Darya Khan himself was in monetary difficulties. He sold precious stones at low prices and maintained himself. Both of them met at Triparah. Both of them were penniless. They decided to see Alp Khān as well as 'Imād ul-Mulk to get some monetary help from them. 'Alam Khan came to Alp Khan with five hundred horses but the latter gave him a cold reception because he had incurred displeasure of the Sultan. Any how, he and 'Imad ul-Mulk gave him some expense money and turned him out. 'Imad ul-Mulk requested the Sultan to summon these two old servants but the Sultan did not accede to his request. 'Alam Khan went to Sher Shah who assigned Malwa to him. But he returned to Gujarat during the reign of Sultan Ahmad Shah when he was granted Champaner and Broach. He failed to suppress his revolting nature and fought with prominent amirs such as Ulugh Khān, Sayvid Mubārak etc., got defeated and fled to the hilly tract of Pal. Ultimately, he came to Sher Khan Ludi of Patan, entered into a pact with him and seized Kadi which formed part of the jagir of I'thmad Khan. l'timåd Khan wrote to Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk and Darya Khan Habshi who were at Ahmadnagar to expel him from Kadi. A war ensued in which 'Alam Khan was killed by an elephant.

He was brave, intrepid, tyrannical, unjust, blood-shedding assassin, evilminded, of haughty temperament and lofty courage.

## Imād ul-Mulk Malek Jiv b. Tawakkal

Sultan Bahadur sent Imad ul-Mulk against the son of Silhadi while he himself marched towards Ujjain where 'Imad ul-Mulk paid obeisance to him and informed him that the son of Silhadi fled away before arrival of the royal army.

Muḥammad Shāh Asiri and 'Imād ul-Mulk were appointed to march against the Rānā. They set out march on march and came to Purria where they learnt that the Rānā was advancing with a large army and reported to the Sultān about strength of the army. The Sultān marched in person and left Muḥammad Shāh and 'Imād ul-Mulk at Pursia. The Sultān sent Malek 'Imād ul-Mulk to Mandsur from Kākrun. Rānā Neku fied away on 'Imād ul-Mulk's approach. He occupied Mandsur. 'Imād ul-Mulk went to Mandu and paid respects to the Sultān. Afterwards, he fought bravely with steadfastness against Mughals under Yādgār Nāṣir Mirzā at Maḥmudābad.

At the time of Bahādur's death, 'Imād ul-Mulk Malik Jiv son of Tawakkal was Sar Khil-i-Khās-i-Khilān-i-Dargāh-i-Sultāni, (Commander-in-chief of the

Royal Cavalry). He was foremost in point of valour and prowess and lived in Baroda. On hearing about Bahādur's death, he came to Aḥmadābād.

As the Sultan had no issue, Mirza Muḥammad Zamān said that the Sultan had addressed him as brother and so if all the amirs decided in his favour, he would rule the kingdom well. The amirs at Aḥmadābād thought it advisable that Malek 'Imād ul-Mulk was the only person who would repulse Muḥammad Zamān Mirzā and so he should march against him. Wazir Ikhtiyār ul-Mulk approved of this proposal saying "We are men of pen while 'Imād ul-Mulk was a man of sword. At present, there was none equal to him in Gnjarat". Afḍal Khān also remarked that there was no match for him in bravery. 'Imād ul-Mulk marched against the Mirzā and defeated him. When Humāyun heard about Bahādur's death, he remarked that Maḥammad Zamān Mirzā would not succeed so long as the negro 'Imād ul-Mulk was alive.

'Imad ul-Mulk returned to Ahmadabad victorious and triumphant in all pomp and grandeur.

When Sultān Maḥmud ascended the throne in 943 (1536), he appointed Malek Jiv 'Imād ul-Mulk as his Wazir. He and Daryā Khān conducted the government in collaboration. Both of them hanged Ikhtiyār Khān, Muqbil Khān and Lād Khān. Later on, Daryā Khān desired to bring about the downtall of 'Imād ul-Mulk and rule with autocracy. He, therefore, devised to send 'Imād ul-Mulk to his jagir at Jhālāwār. He spent lavishly on recruitment of soldiers to seize the personality of the Sultān from Daryā Khān but the other amirs did not side with him. He proceeded to Jhālāwār. Daryā Khān then led an army against him and defeated him whereupon he fled to Mubārak Shāh at Burhānpur. He then fled to Qādir Shāh of Malwa.

When 'Alam Khān became Amir ul-Umarā and Sipahsālār, he advised the Sultān to summon him back from Mandu to Ahmadābād. On his return he was assigned Broach and the port of Surat and ordered to proceed there. He helped 'Alam Khān with money when he saw him after his fall.

The Sultan suspected that the four amirs—'Ālam Khān, Daryā Khān, 'Imād ul-Mulk and Alp Khān might coalesce and create disturbance in the state. He therefore sent word to 'Imād ul-Mulk," We consider you in place of uncle. It is not proper that 'Ālam Khān and Daryā Khān should revolt in the kingdom when you are there. Come soon so that we may ponder over the problem of their repulse." 'Imād ul-Mulk excused himself saying that he would come to pay obeisance after recruitment of an army. The Sultān sent another farmān to summon him. He clearly wrote to him, "I committed a great offence by meeting 'Ālam Khān but my object was to admonish him for welfare of the Sultān. I am an offender as I met him without your order." The Sultān sent Sayyid 'Arisha to bring him to his presence. Malek went to the Sultān with

APPENDIK 911

ten or twelve thousand horses completely armed to Champaner and waited on the Sultan. The Sultan was much pleased and showed him great favour. At night, some one shouted that the Sultan had ordered to plunder the pavilion of 'Imad ul-Mulk. His pavilion was raided. Inspite of his courage and power, he had no strength to ride a horse and run away to the fort of Broach. He caught hold of a palanquin-carrier and told him to carry him to the pavilion of Sayyid Mubarak. He carried him in darkness of night. There was a pit on the road and the Malek fell into it. In the morning, a man went to fetch water, he found a man in the pit, he took him out and recognised him to be 'Imad ul-Mulk. He was half dead and so he said to the man to take him to the pavilion of Sayvid Mubarak. The Sayvid received him with due honour. He requested the Sayyid to go to the Sultan and secure permission for him to go to hajj. The Sultan was wonderstruck at what happened to him. The Sultan granted him permission and accompained him with two slaves of Jhujhar Khan to escort him to Surat port. He sent instruction to the port-officer Khudawand Khan Rumi to send him to Makka in season. Khudawand Khan killed the Malek on 27th Ramadan, 952 (1545).

'Imad ul-Mulk was one of the most valiant men in Gujarat. He was the only person to face the Mughals. It was he who collected revenue from cultivators when there was no man's rule in Gujarat.

#### 'Imād ul-Mulk Khush-Qadam

Khush-Qadam was a purchased slave of Bibi Rāni. He became a favourite with Muzaffar because of his mother Bibi Rāni and of his good looks. Later on, Sulţān Muzaffar appointed him a tutor of Sikandar.

In 923 (1517), Sultan Muzaffar invaded Mandu against Medni Rão, came to Dhar and laid siege to it. Ḥājji Dabir says that just at this time, an unknown person, probably Prophet Khidr met Khush-Qadam and advised him to attack Mandu when the garrisoned celebrated Holi festival. He got emboldened and charged the enemy severely who fled away. He displayed great bravery in this battle.

Once Bibi Rāni caught hold of Sikandar and placed his hand in the hand of Khush Qadam. From that day, he cherished a desire to become Sikandar's Wazir. When Sultān Sikandar ascended the throne, he bypassed him and continued Hājji Muḥammad Khudāwand Khān as Wazir as he was during the regime of his father. He wanted the robes of honour to be given to those whom he wished but the Sultān said that it would be done by Khudāwand Khān. All these acts excited jealousy in his heart. The Sultān rebuked him when he bestowed a title on Kotwāl of the city without his permission and consultation of the Wazir. The Sultān plunged himself in pleasures of the youth and so he was unaware of his nefarious activities.

The author of Mirat-i-Sikandari says on the report of Sayyid Jalāi Munawwar ul-Mulk that when the Sultān returned from polo-playing, he and his brother Sayyid Burhān-ud-Din had stood in the bazar. They saw that all men and women came out to see the Sultān who was very handsome. He passed through the bazar in all pomp and grandeur and retired to his palace. Amirs and others also went to their respective places after saluting the Sultān.

After some time, 'Imād ul-Mulk, having covered his head and ears proceeded towards the palace with forty valiant, blood-thirsty horsemen. All persons thought that the Malek went to salute the Sulţān. An hour had not passed when an uproar arose that 'Imād ul-Mulk assassinated the Sulṭān. All persons were taken aback. They wept and grieved. It was the first assassination of the Sulṭān of Gujarat. He finished every one to death who came in his way. Afterwards, he entered the harem of the Sulṭān Muzaffar, brought out Naṣir Khān, a five, six year old son of Sulṭān Muzaffar, seated him in his lap when all those amirs who were with him saluted him. Three amirs abstained from taking an oath of allegiance to the new Sulṭān. They were Khudāwand Khān Masnadi-Āli, the Wazir of Sulṭān Muzaffar. Another person was Majlis-i-Sāmi Fateh Khān, Prince of Sind who was son-in-law of Sulṭān Muzaffar and had married the blood-sister of Sulṭān Sikandar. The third one was Tāj Khān Narpāli.

On the day of Naşir Khân's accession, 'Imad ul-Mulk gave robes of honour and bestowed titles upon amirs. The amirs were disgusted with his deeds but they were helpless as they had no leader.

'Imād ul-Mulk wrote letters to 'Imād ul-Mulk Ilichpuri, Rānā Sangā and Bābur for help. Loyal amirs of Gujarat including Ḥusām Khān, the historian of Bahādur Shāh were afraid that the Gujarat salṭanat would pass away to foreigners. They corresponded with Bahādur Shāh who was away at Jaunpur and informed him of every event that stook place under 'Imād ul-Mulk Khush-Qadam. 'Imād ul-Mulk tried to stop his entry into Gujarat. All the amirs deserted him on receipt of news of Bahādur's arrival. He persuaded Laṭif Khān Prince of Sind to try for the throne. He spent money extravagantly to collect soldiers. He succeeded in enlisting five thousand soldiers but they all deserted him.

On his arrival, Bahādur Shāh ordered his house to be guarded by Tāj Khān Narpāli to prevent his escape. He hid himself in another house. His own house was sacked. Bahādur ordered him to be arrested and shut up in the Dilkushā palace. Tāj Khān reproached him for his murder of Sikandar. According to Ḥusām Khān, he was hauged. According to others, he was blown up from a cannon.

# Yaqut Ulugh Khan Habshi

Ulugh Khan Habshi was head of the nauba as his father Mandal Ulugh Khan was during the regime of Sultan Mahmud Shah. On getting news of

APPENDIX 913

assassination of Sultan Mahmud Shah, Ulugh Khan came to the palace of the Sultan. All sections of people assembled around Sayyid Mubarak Bukhari. Umdat us-Saltanat Ulugh Khan Habshi came to him with a party of Habshis.

During the reign of Ahmad Shāh II when Mubarak Shāh invaded Gujarat Ulugh Khān Habshi moved with the stirrup of the Sulfan with his own regiment.

On behalf of Naşir ul-Mulk, Ulugh Khān was one of the captors of the Sultan. When Sayyid Mubārak Bukhāri sacked pavilion of Naşir ul-Mulk, 'Imād ul-Mulk and Ulugh Khān deserted Naşir ul-Mulk and came over to the Sayyid with the Sultan.

When the principal amirs made a division of Gujarat, I'timād Khān gave a part of Jhālāwar to Ulugh Khān. Sayyid Mubārak also gave a portion of Jhālāwar to him. He went to Jhālāwar, assembled all its jagirdars and brought the whole of Jhālāwar under his control and occupation. He paid no attention to opposition of I'timād Khān. I'timād Khān and 'Ālam Khān, therefore marched against Ulugh Khān taking the Sulṭān with them. They did not inform the Sayyid about it. Ulugh Khān fought with them near Viramgām but was defeated. He fled and sought sheiter of the Sayyid. The Sayyid and 'Imād ul-Mulk interceded on behalf of Ulugh Khān, took Bahiwal from I'timād Khān and assigned it to Ulugh Khān.

When Changiz Khān attacked Ulugh Khān and Jhujhar Khān Habshi who were at Baroda, the Habshis fought but got defeated. The elephant Uday Mangal, ensign and drum fell into the hands of Changiz Khān. During this time Ulugh Khān fell ill. He died in the neighbourhood of Baroda on 17th Rabi 'I 965 (1557). His son Sa'eed Muḥammad Khayrat Khān was at Broach. His funeral was attended by all including the Sultān.

#### Bilal Falah Khani titled Khavrat Khan

Bilal Falah Khāni Khayrat Khān was the wazir of Ulugh Khān. He had stabbed Tughluq Khān to death. Ulugh Khān had conferred upon him the title of Khayrat Khān. It was I'timād Khān who made him an amir. He was a man noted for sincerity in work, loyalty in service and honesty of purpose. He performed memorable deeds of valour. He assassinated Tughluq Khān, Ārāish Khān and Malek Akhi. He also fought battles with Mansingh, ruler of Halwad. He was in captivity of 'Imād ul-Mulk. The cause of it was his amir-ship and that he rode with an ensign and a drum. He was a favourite of I'timād Khān. He wept for him and mourned for his loss. The cause of his death was that he, in accordance with the Hindi custom, sat in a pond with application of oil as is done in a bath-room sitting in a water-tub. It so happened that there he suffered from severe cold after eating harisa (a kind of meat dish). He then sat in oily tub. His leg slipped and he dived into it and drank some water out of it. While making him vomit in water, he felt nausea

due to oil. He was given immediate treatment but the illness overpowered him and it prolonged for some months. He then died in 970 (1562).

# Bijli Khān Habshi

Bijli Khān was distinguished with many things. He was disposed towards men of the sword. If they belonged to his community, that is the Habshi, he tried his utmost to collect them in his Diwan to please them with cash, grant of villages and property. They became extremely rich through him. His other quality was attraction to outward beauty to follow him. He was inclined to service of scholars and particularly, the Arabs. He gave them liberal rewards and showed sympathy to them. When he heard that there was a proficient man in arts or that he was exceptional in the art of singing and playing upon a musical instrument, he would send gold to him even if he were in a distant place like Yaman or Hijāz and invite him to himself. He was very fond of attendance upon the nobles. The Tarim tribesmen stayed for a period with him. He ordered them to lead pure lives and marry who failed to do so. Those who were inclined to return to their native land were given sufficient provisions so that they lived comfortably in their places. It was his habit to distribute them to nobles on their arrival. They lived with comfort with them. They were supplied with provisions and conveyance in travel. This was his habit.

## Jauhar Muhamonadi Muhsin-ul-Mulk

Jauhar Muhammadi Muḥsin ul-Mulk was an assemblage of friends and a rendezvous of companions. His assembly was not without literary men. He was always in joy and delight. He was disposed to spend dirhams and dinars and made offering of them. He had faith in pious men as well as in the sweet creed of Sufism, practice of continuous charity, attendance on congregational prayers, recitation of the Holy Qurān and permanent conversation with men of religion.

#### Sherwan Khan Habshi

Sherwan Khan Habshi was in the service of Bijli Khan. He was an amir of the army. He was very free with him and moved in his house. He received two hundred thousand Mahmudis annually for his personal expenses. He did not ask for horses with that amount. He was in a position to purchase them. He was lavish in expenditure during the regime of Changiz Khan. He came to Baroda with Bijli Khan. He was his benefactor. He obtained from him as much as he was destined. He did not part from him during the course of his life except on rare occasions. It was said about him that he was addicted to wine. He used to remain in a drunken state to such an extent that he did not see the crescent once in a month in a sober state. He kept a gold chain suspended with a ring in the ceiling of his lavatory. When he sat down for evacuation, he held it in his hand at the time of standing to come out of it

APPRINDIK 915

to balance his posture in intoxication. He made holes in the wall of lavatory to put perfume-holders on four sides to be free from the harmful effect of stink and stench. He displayed his thanks for the bounties he received from God. He provided poor and needy men of his community with money. Those who had old horses, were given young borses, belts, daggers, swords, gilded with gold and thin gaudy dressess. He founded a society of friends for his community-men. This society made him eternally glorious and famous. He was particularly favourable to 'Abdullah Sa'esd al-Hadrami, al-Yamini of perfect glory, unique of the age. He was a conversationalist and charmed hearers by his refined and polished conversation. He was expert in the play of a bow-like musical instrument. It moved minds and souls with transport of joy and hilarity. He revived what was noblest in education. He served as polish to cleanse minds and hearts of impurity. He occupied a high status in state and religion. He was an intimate associate of persons of elevated rank. He stirred up righteous feelings in the heart. He received more from him than he desired. He always enjoyed his company inspite of the fact that he was an Arab. He was more proficient and skilful than a Persian in play of the instrument of joy. Something extraordinary happened in the early part of his life for which, he mourned, later in the year. He belonged to 'Iraq-i-'Ajam which suffered a loss on account of his absence. He was in the mailis of the afore-said Khān. Ustād 'Ali, who was perfect in the art of Music, learnt it from him. He was at Mahmudābād. Hājji Dabir, author of 'Zafar ul-Wālih' met both of them in an assembly. He was second to none in the art of music in the whole of Hind. Mir 'Abdul Latif was a perfect wit. His presence was a source of coolness for the eye to the Khan. He was appreciated and applauded by all. He ultimately became famous and went to the majlis of Sultan-ul-Hind. He was highly commended there.

### Ghālib Şandal Khān Jahangirkhāni

Ghālib Şandal Khān Jahangirkhāni was a slave purchased by Jahāngir Khān in Yaman. He was an accomplished wise man. He was a horseman and an administrator. He was governor of Champāner under Ulugh Khān, Jahangir Khān saw him in Yaman and bought him. He was there with Amir Salmān. He grew up under his training. He was a man of merit and displayed his worth. Salmān adopted him and treated him with exceptional kindness. He taught him reading and writing. He then recited the Holy Book of God and studied books on theology, tradition and commentary. He used to understand them. He perceived what was lawful and unlawful. He glanced over literary books with discernment and made notes of important and uncommon things. He associated with eminent men, lived with them and received training from them. He tasted sweets and bitters of life. He wielded sword before his afore-said master and particularly in days of Rumi Khān at Surat. He was in service of PA56

Jhujhar Khan also. He would not allow any one to advance in war. He used to say, "I was present in nearly forty and more than thirty wars. I do not miss now by a mere glance at the array to know who would be the victor and who the vanguished. He enjoyed the rank of an amir in the kingdom of Ulugh Khan. He received one hundred thousand Mahmudis only for the sake of his name. But prowess was denied to him though he was in the cavalry, cavalcade and equipment worthy of his status in the army. He was hospitable. A party of Arab Sayvids and theologians of Yaman were always in his house. His mailis was never without friends, and acquaintances, particularly on nights in Ramadan. When Muhammad Husain Mirza returned to Broach during the regime of Qutbud-Din Muhammad Khan, he was with Sayf ul-Mulk. Afterwards, he was with Mahammad Husain Mirză to the end of his life. Hājji Dabir met him one day before the war and inquired from him about Muhammad Husain. He replied that he and his men had no goodness in them nor loyalty with them. He had luck without courage and therefore, his patience got exhausted.

Jahangir wept when he died, though did not weep for other members of his family who got killed in war.

Under the regime of Ulugh Khān, Ḥājji Dabir, author of 'Zafar ul-Wālih' was his great friend. Ghālib Khān met him in winter of every year in his house and asked him as to what clothes he had to protect against cold. He did not need any clothes. He sent him one thousand Maḥmudis for purchase of clothes, with instruction to the messenger, (in case of non-acceptance,) to place the amount at the door and return.

He was well-known for his charitable deeds and always distributed alms to poor and needy persons.

#### Badri Raihan

Abul Khair Raihān Badr ud-Din Jahāngir Khāni practised many charitable deeds. There were few persons like him. He was a refined and cultured man. He got reared in the service of his master. He was trained in affairs of the world and religion. He was proficient in writing accounts and noted for wisdom and sagacity. He was first entrusted with looking after financial matters by his master and then he was appointed as Wazir. He loved the pious. He made it his special duty to remain in attendance upon the saint of holiness, the sun of suns, Shaykh bin 'Abdullāh al-'Aidrus. He enjoyed the 'Aidrusi favour. He had good faith in him. He composed poems in his eulogy and distributed in charity whatever money he had while on attendance upon him. He was a slave but his master did not rule over him suited to his condition. He loved Hadrami Sayyids and bestowed liberal gifts and presents on them. His behaviour with the Arabs was similar. He was the Wazir of Khudāwand Khān and

then he became the Wazir of Ulugh Khān. Mawlānā Shihāb ud-Din Ahmad b. Shaykb-ul-'Aidrus was at Ahmadābad. He attended upon him, perfected himself in taşawwuf (divine love), became his disciple, improved his character by his favour and became indifferent to worldly affairs. He was highly respected and praised by people.

### Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk

Ikhtiyār ul-Mulk was titled Majlis-i-Sāmi during the Salṭānat of Ahmad Shāh. In the early part of his life, he held post of the Superintendent of crockery (tasht-dār) under Sulṭān Mahmud. He was addressed as Dawlatyār. He then became a salāḥdār (armour-bearer). He surpassed the class of salāhdārs and became a nauba (guard). He made others present at the appointed time. He was then in charge of patrolling of the Dār-us-Salṭanat and guarding it. He discharged his duty well at every place.

In the year 957 (1550), he was conferred the title of Ikhtiyār ul-mulk. The Sultān equipped him with an army to march against Sirohi. He moved hither and thither on those sides and returned with collection of tribute. The Sultān found him to be an efficient man. He specially favoured him with the government of Kartankah and was put in charge of ten thousand horses. He was sent as an amir of absolute command to Naharwala Patan. He controlled the territory as far as Nagor, Sirohi and Idar. After martyrdom of the Sultān, the wazirs got engaged in mutual feuds. He who paid tribute, became independent. Soldiers dispersed to eke out their [means of livelihood from powerful nobles. When Musā Khān attacked Patan, he moved to Aḥmadābād and joined Sultān Aḥmad II at Gamid. He served 'Imād ul-Mulk, Changiz Khān and Ulugh Khān by turns.

He was a sexualist. Every day, he used one mithkal of gold leaves for potency. He had many mistresses. Through them, he had one daughter and twenty sons. He made a condition with the wet-nurse to throttle a daughter to death for which he would pay three mithkals of gold. Use of gold did him much harm. His body got broken. He was forbidden to wear an armour and ride a horse. He had to be lifted up to seat or to make his feet firm in the stirrup. He was very greedy. He extracted money even from his own relatives. When he died, his dead body was perambulated in all pomp and grandeur.

#### I'timād Khān 'Abd ul-Karim Sulţāni

On the accession of Sultan Mahmud II, 'Abd ul-Karim was given the title of I'timad Khan. He made him so proximate and confidential that he took him to his haram by holding his hand.

After the Sultan's death, I'timad Khan was appointed as a wakil and a wazir for state affairs. He was requested to find out whether the deceased

Sultan had left a son or there was probability of birth in near future. He replied that the Sultan had no son and that none of the queens was pregnant. They were very anxious to see that the dynasty of Sultan Mahmud did not terminate. Ultimately, they found out a member of this family by name Ahmad Khan and seated him on the throne. After his accession, there was fear of the Sultan of Delhi, Mahammad Shah 'Adil to invade Gujarat and conquer it. Again, Mubarak Shah of Asir and Burhanpur claimed Gujarat for himself. He invaded it but Sayyid Mubarak Bukhari patched up peace with him and so he returned to his kingdom.

The amirs were very ambitious and had lust for power. They divided themselves into two parties. One party was led by I'timad Khan while another by Nāsir ul-Mulk. I'timād Khān was appointed as Amir ul-Umarā of the army, that is, Commander-in-Chief by Sayyid Mubarak. Hasan Khan aspired for the post. He became inconsolate. Nāşir ul-Mulk wanted to seize all power in his hands. He waged war with the Sayyid and I'timad Khan and defeated them. Both of them fled to Kapadwanj. Nāşir ul-Mulk, with Sultān under him, wanted to expel both of them from Gujarat. He marched with a large army against them. I'timad Khan proposed to run away to Delhi. In the meantime, Sayvid Mubärak consulted Bibi Khātun, wife of Sayyid Mirān in this matter. She advised him not to take that cowardly step and run away from Nasir ul-Mulk, a green-grocer. Further, Sayyid Husain, a descendant of Qutbi-'Alam encouraged the Sayyid to fight with him. Sayyid Husain then persuaded Nasir ul-Mulk not to expel them from Gujarat. He said that he was determined for it and would not reverse his decision. Sayyid Ḥusain got enraged and told him that all the Sayyids and their disciples would fight against him.

'Imād ul-Mulk and Ulugh Khān deserted Nāṣir ul-Mulk and conveyed word to him that they would come to him with the Sulṭān. The Sayyid made a direct attack on Nāṣir ul-Mulk who fled away. I'timād Khān pursued him. He died in the forest region of Pāl.

Ikhtiyār ul-Mulk, in concert with Ḥasan Khān Dakhni and Fateh Khān Baluch proclaimed Shāhu as Sultān. I'timād Khān was about to go over to their side but Sayyid Mubārak brought him back. A war ensued. The enemy got defeated.

The amirs then divided the kingdom of Gujarat among themselves with a view to strengthen its defence. I'timād Khān's share consisted of Kadi, Jhālāwar, Petlad, Nadiad, Bahiwal, Radhanpur, Sami, Munjpur and Saurath.

At this stage, 'Ālam Khān Ludi came from Delhi and saw Sayyid Mubārak Bukhāri. In spite of the advice of I'tin-ād Khān against him, the Sayyid assigned him Broach and Chāmpāner. He was an intrigueing and deceitful fellow. He won over I'timād Khān and became his close friend. I'timād Khān gave his

APPENDIZ 019

son's house for him to live in. 'Alam Khān then schemed to overthrow I'timād Khān and take his post. Some one informed I'timād Khān about it and so he turned him out from his son's house. He then won over 'Imād ul-Mulk to his side who in his turn won over I'timād Khān. They all decided to overthrow the Sayyid. They advanced to Kankariya with their army. The Sayyid sent Mian Manghu to 'Alam Khān not to disturb peace of the kingdom. But he said that all the amirs were of opinion that there would be no peace so long as the Sayyid was there. 'Imād ul-Mulk also gave an evasive reply. He saw I'timād Khān who said that the Sayyid himself was responsible for the trouble by favouring 'Alam Khān. They ultimately deserted 'Alam Khān, who fought but was defeated and killed near Kadi.

I'timād Khān now became a man of sole authority. 'Imād ul-Mulk enjoyed full powers along with him. They guarded the Sulţān by turn. Jealousy played its part. The Sulţān went over to 'Imād ul-Mulk. I'timād Khān brought Mubārak Shāh against him. The Sayyid again intervened. He was given Sultānpur and Nazarbar and sent back.

The Sultan then fled from 'Imad ul-Mulk to Sayyid Bukhari. 'Imad ul-Mulk and I'timad Khan both invaded Sayyidpur and asked the Sayyid to surrender the Sultan. The Sayyid said that the Sultan had come of his own accord and that he did not invite him. They somehow or other wanted his surrender. They started a war. The Sayyid fell down from his horse and was martyred. They confiscated his jagirs and would not give any portion of it to his son Sayyid Miran. Ultimately, I'timad Khan gave him Dholka, Kapadwanj, Bahiwal, Sarnal and Balasinor. 'Imad ul-Mulk got displeased. Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk occupied Kapadwanj, Sarnal, and Balasinor while Jhughar Khan Habshi had Bahiwal. Only Dholka remained with Sayyid Miran.

The Sultan then intrigued with 'Imād ul-Mulk. I'timād Khān and 'Imād ul-Mulk prepared for war. 'Imād ul-Mulk went to Broach and then to Surat where he was killed by Khudāwand Khān. Later on, his son Changiz Khān invaded Surat, killed Khudāwand Khān and occupied it. Changiz Khān then invaded Ulugh Khān and Jhujhār Khān at Baroda. The Habshis were defeated. They sought help from I'timād Khān who invaded Broach. To divert his attention from Broach, Sher Khān and Musā Khān attacked Fateh Khān Baluch. I'timād Khān came to Aḥmadābād and began to plan against the Sultān who in a drunken state used to say that he would kill I'timād Khān. I'timād Khān ordered his slaves to kill Ahmad Shāh. He then seated Muzaffar III on the throne. He attacked the Fulādi brothers twice but got defeated both the times. His misfortune had begun. He had to suffer defeats. He was disgusted with the negroes. He invited Akbar. He was favourably disposed towards him. He entrusted the government of Gujarat to him.

# Aşaf Khân 'Abd ul-'Aziz

'Abd ul-'Aziz Āṣaf Khān was born on Thursday night, rath Rabi'I 907 (1501) at Chāmpāner. He was the son of a very learned man Shams ud-Din Muhammad known as Hamid ul-Mulk. He traced his descent from Jām Nauda of Sind. He studied different branches of knowledge such as grammar, etymology and eloquence. He then devoted himself to the study of religious sciences under Qādi Burhān ud-Din of Naharwala. He paid special attention to the study of hadith. He then learnt logic, philosophy, uşul (fundamental sciences) and medicine.

In course of time, he became so perfect and accomplished that he attracted the attention of Sultān Bahādur who chose him as his courtier. He patronized him and treated him with favour. He appointed him as wazir and invested him with great authority in respect of state affairs. He was distinguished with the title of Habib ul-Mulk and later on with that of Masnad-i-Āli. He continued as a minister till the Mughals invaded Gujarat. He was then sent to Makka with Sultān Bahādur's haram and treasure in 942 (1535). On landing at Jiddah, he made inquiries about the state of learning and learned men. He contacted all of them.

One of his ancestors, Malek Tāj ud-Din left Sind and came to Mandu where he served Sultān Ghiyāthud-Din Khalji who honoured him and held him in great esteem. When a revolution took place in Mandu, Tāj ud-Din's son, Malek Rukn ud-Din came to Gujarat and served Sultān Maḥmud son of Muḥammad Shāh. He was respected by the Sultān. His sons held the posts of amirs and wazirs.

When Sultān Bahādur sent him to Makka with the Sultān's haram and treasure, he took with him Shams Khān and Qaiṣar Khān and ten vessels. They all reached Jiddah in safety after two months' voyage having sailed out of season. He was authorised by the Sultān to distribute a part of the treasury in charity. When news of Bahādur's death reached Makka, he obtained permission to place seals on the royal treasury till instructions arrived from Gujarat.

He distributed among the Makkans lone hundred and fifty chests of gold so that the women of Makka and their servants were more resplendently dressed than ever before.

During his ten years' residence in Makka, he was very regular in his congregational as well as Friday prayers in the Masjid ul-Ḥaram. He kept midnight vigils and prayers even when he was in travel. In the month of Ramadān his prayers and charity increased beyond limit. He had created influence among the elite and scholars of Makka as well as of Egypt and Turkey. When the governor of Egypt wanted to confiscate the treasures of Sultan Bahādur Shāh on his death, he so cleverly managed the affair that they did not fall into his

APPENDIX 921

hands at which the governor of Egypt, of Jiddah and ruler of Makka were amazed and bewildered.

During the regime of Mahmud III, he was summoned from Makka to create order out of chaos in government. He suffered much on his return voyage from Makka to Gujarat due to stormy sea. He lost his baggage. He regretted much for loss of valuable books and a horse given to him as a present.

On his arrival at Ahmadābād, Sulṭān Maḥmud III embraced him and seated him on a carpet with him. He was given the house which formerly belonged to Tāj Khān Narpāli. He was appointed absolute regent with the title of Naib-i-Muṭlaq. He was decorated with a robe, suspended a sword and given a free hand in government of the kingdom. On assumption of power, he patronized mamāliks, all foreign attendants and brought their number to twelve thousand. Mandal Habshi with the title of Ulugh Khān was appointed their head. They consisted of men of the Mahmara tribe, Yāfa' tribe, the |Turks, the Habshis, the Javanese and the Firangis. They were special attendants of the Sultān. They had to be in constant attendance upon him. He established perfect order in the kingdom. He proved himself to be the greatest wazir in Gujarat.

This ascetic minister, so pious, so God-fearing was done to death by a rogue Burhān.

#### Musā Khān Fulādi

Musā Khān was the son of 'Ayn ul-Mulk Fulādi. He and his elder brother Sher Khān were strong adherents of Sayyid Mubārak Bukhāri. These two brothers were the leaders of the Fulādi Afghāns. They were noted for valour and prowess. They were the sincere disciples of Sayyid Mubārak who too was favourably disposed towards them. It was because of him that they attained to eminent positions in the kingdom.

When the amirs divided the Gujarat kingdom among themselves for purposes of defence, Sayyid Mubārak had received Patan as one of his Jagirs. He assigned it to Musā Khān.

After the martyrdom of Sayyid Bukhāri, I'timād Khān and 'Imad ul-Mulk confiscated the jagirs of the Sayyid except Patan and its adjacent places which were under the Fulādi brothers.

Some time after, a quarrel arose between I'timād Khān and 'Imād ul-Mulk. I'timād Khān invaded Broach and laid siege to it. Tātār Khān of Junāgadh wanted to bring about conciliation between them but I'timād Khān proved intransigent whereupon Tātār Khān got displeased. He instigated Fulādi brothers saying that when I'timād Khān would conquer and subdue Changiz Khān, he would not spare you. Hence it was advisable to invade Fateh Khān Baluch. They, therefore, fought with Fateh Khān Baluch and defeated him.

He garrisoned himself in the port of Dholkot near Radhappur. On hearing this news, I'timad Khan left Broach and came to Ahmadabad, where he planned the death of Sultan Ahmad Shah and seated Muzaffar III on the throne. He then invaded Patan. Musă Khăn and Sher Khān garrisoned themselves in the city of Patan. I'timad Khan ordered the fort of Patan to be blown up by cannons. Sayyid Miran, Hājji Khān and Ikhtiyār ul-Mulk tried to patch up peace but I'timad Khan refused. Fuladi brothers decided to fight with him with fifteen hundred horse while I'timad Khan had more than twenty thousand horse. The vanguard of I'timad Khan consisted of Habshis who fought bravely but got deseated. On deseat of the Habshi, the rest fled away. I'timad Khan attributed his defeat to perfidy on the part of nobles who retreated without fighting. He returned to Ahmadabad. Fifteen hundred horsemen seized provisions of twenty thousand horsemen. I'timād Khāu's defeat took place in 968 (1560). Hājji Khan deserted to Fuladi brothers who treated him as their third brother and divided jagir in three parts, one part of which was given to him. They thus got strengthened.

After this defeat, I'timād Khān wanted to make amends for it. He began to assemble soldiers for war but the amirs were against it. Tātār Khān did not side with him so he fled away. He again invaded Patan. Musā Khān fought with him at Jhotana in 969 (1561) and defeated him. He came back to Ahmadabad.

I'timād Khān placated Changiz Khān of Broach to invade the Fulādis. In the meantime, Changiz Khān had to fight with Ulugh Khān. He therefore, conspired with Musū Khān against I'timād Khān thinking that I'timād Khān would not spare him after finishing Fulādis. In the meantime, Musā Khān fell ill and died. Changiz Khān refused to fight against Sher Khān who mourned death of his brother and so he returned to Broach.

## Changiz Khān

Changiz Khan was the son of 'Imad ul-Mulk Aşlan Rumi. He was one of the nobles of Sultan Ahmad Shah II. His father left him in charge of Broach.

When Mubärak Shāh of Asir and Burhānpur invaded Gujarat to take advantage of Gujarat's chaotic state, Sayyid Mubārak sent out to fight with him. Mubārak Shāh came as far as Ranapur Kotha but his army did not stand the charge of Gujarat army so he returned from Bilugām. Changiz Khān pursued him by crossing the river Narbada and plundered some portion of his provisions. His father 'Imād ul-Mulk summoned him at Muḥammadābād with an army. Changiz Khān came and encamped at Maḥmudābād. 'Imād ul-Mulk sent word to I'timād Khān that his nephew had come and that he should ennoble him and move together with him. He told him that he should proceed and that he would follow him. I'timād Khān sent Malek Sharq to summon Tātar Khān before Changiz Khān came to the city Both of them made preparation for war.

I'timad Khan then ordered 'Imad ul-Mulk to proceed to his jagir. He went to Broach. He stayed there for some months and then demanded Surat from Khudawand Khan, father-in-law of Changiz Khan. Khudawand Khan invited him as a guest, within the fort and killed him. Changiz Khan got enraged. He determined to wreak vengeance on him. He sought help from the Firangis and invaded Surat. He conquered it and killed Khudawand Khan.

Char giz Khān then invaded Baroda under Ulugh Khān and Jhujhar Khān, and defeated them. He seized Uday Mangal elephant, ensign and drum of Ulugh Khān. He named dogs as Ulugh Khān and Jhujhar Khān, tore out their ensign and bound their pieces round their necks. The Habshis complained to I'timād Khān against him. Changiz Khān garrisoned bimself in the fort of Broach. Tatār created circumstances for I'timād Khān inside the fort that he had to leave Broach to go against Fulādis.

Being deseated a second time against Fuladi brothers, I'timad Khan tried to win over Changiz Khan to fight against Fuladis. But he conspired against him and returned to Broach.

When Mirzā Ibrāhim Ḥusain and Mirzā Muḥammad Ḥusain came to Gujarat he deceived them and sent them back to Delhi. He beguiled 'Abdullāh Uzbek to fight with the Portuguese at Daman. He suffered a shameful defeat at their hands.

Changiz Khān and Sher Khān decided to overthrow I'timād Khān. He fought with I'timād Khān and defeated him but Sayyid Ḥāmid defeated Changiz Khān. Changiz Khān later on came to Ahmadābād and occupied the whole region from the side of Sābarmati. He quarrelled with Ulugh Khān in connection with a master of the horse. He was suddenly murdered on 4th Ṣafar, 975 (1567). His nobles returned to Broach after his murder except Jahāngir Khān. His guns and elephants were given to Jhujhār Khān.

'Imad ul-Mulk Changiz Khan son of 'Imad nl-Mulk Aslan Rumi was a malek, great, generous and renowned. When he rose to eminence, he corresponded with kings of round-about places. During his regime, the tone of morality was high. Chiefs of Persia assembled in his Diwan which had become rich on account of his bounties and charities. He had become a Shia' and he celebrated Muharram after the Shia' fashion. He was the ruler of Gujarat and other surrounding places. He worked as an arbitrator in mutual accord and discord.

Ākā Jān, a merchant of Khanbhāyat composed following lines in his praise:

Khān-i-Khākān Changiz Khān, the lion-hearted Galloped his Raksh-horse through the blue sky.

His generous hand was over world like a cloud
It poured pearls and jewels with kindness and largesse
His point of arrow killed bird of enemy's soul
Without doubt from branch of life.
His lofty palace was so elevated
That the eye of Saturn got bewildered
Vicissitudes of time got it demolished
Sky laid low mean world in despair

Chronogram in Arabic

Second Changiz Khān, King the word Opponent murdered him. He was an enemy. Year of his death was essence of his qualities He was fortunate, died a martyr (975 = 1567).

Jhujhar Khan Marjan Rumi Khani

Jhujhār Khān Marjān Rumi Khāni was first in the service of Yāqut Ulugh Khān, during the regime of Sultān Aḥmad Shāh II. He obtained his title of Jhujhār Khān as well as the estate of Munda. Ulugh Khān gave him his horse Duldul and assigned Bahmanul to Munda in addition. He was appointed executor to Yākut. He entered service of Yākut's son Mahammad. His son was wounded in a battle and taken prisoner by Sayful ul-Mulk and his friends. They treated him with kindness when they learnt that he was the son of Jhujhār Khān. Jhujhār wrote and thanked his former friends for the kind treatment accorded to his son. They sent back his son to him. He then asked forgiveness of Ulugh Khān and promised to return to him.

He was an adopted brother to Yākut Ulugh Khān. Later on, he left Muhammad Ulugh Khān and joined l'timād Khān and stayed with him till the arrival of Akbar when he rejoined Ulugh Khān. He and Ulugh Khān submitted together to Akbar. They embraced each other and wept on meeting. When he was being bound, he uttered abusive words towards Akbar in public but Akbar took no notice of the matter until after he had captured Surat. He was crushed to death by an elephant in the presence of Akbar in 980 (1572). He had two wives. They remained with Akbar till the end of Akbar's life.

Jhujhār Khān was a man of rigour and dread. He was a skilful horseman. He evinced great fondness for horses. He was noted for valour and intrepidity. He had qualities of prudence and statesmanship. All the Rumi Khāni mamālik were literary men with courage, leadership and valour. Hājji Dabir, author of "Zafar ul-Wālih" noted character, kindness and etiquette in him. He was wonderstruck by his dignified behaviour. He was an amir with an ensign and a drum during the regime of Muḥammad Ulugh Khān.

ÀPPENDIX 925

His body was deposited in a mausoleum at Broach. His son Wali Khan removed the coffin to Sarkhei and buried him under a dome situated on a reservoir between Bilai Jhujhar Khan and Yakut Ulugh Khan. Jhujhar Khan when alive used to say, " Perhaps, I may be interned at this place pointing the vacant place between the two graves. Muhammad Ulugh Khān will agree to oury me and erect a structure over it". He said, "No, he who goes before from among us, will be consigned here". It so happened. The mausoleum is on two long rows. It has a sitting place, a room, a spacious enclosure for animals for training and a gate. The row of columns which is near the room is on the famous reservoir at Sarkhej in the vicinity of the illumined mausoleum over which there is a small dome elevated over pillars strongly resting that which is beneath it. In the row (of columns) which is adjacent to the long one towards the Kibla, like that in the first dome to the east, is the tomb of the martyr, Bilal Ihuibar Khan, the first Malek from among the mamaliks of Saltanat. He was the first to be entombed. Among the four tombs, the second is that of Mandal Ulugh Khān Sultāni. The third one is adjacent to the tomb of Yaqut Ulugh Khan. Marjan Jhujhar Khan's tomb is the third between the second one and that of Jhujhār Khān.

After the death of Changiz Khān, Jhujhār Khān had firmly established his power in the kingdom. He ruled it with absolute power. He was proud of it. He was, in truth, confronted with matters which never hovered around any other person.

His nobles were Yagut Ulugh Khan, Kara Hasan Jahangir Khan al-Rumi, Bahri Khan Rumi who was in charge of cannons. Shamshir Khan b. Shamshir Khān was an amir of elevated rank. He was noted for swordsmanship. He had one thousand horses, forty elephants, one hundred and sixty cannons and eight hundred attendants who carried his bows, guns and fire-stars. He had an ironweapon, half a yard thick with wood on one side of it. His habit was to strike it moderately his community men out of slight. It was six yards in length. In war, he moved it in rotation. It worked with its iron and wood, the like of which a cannon failed to do so. It was more powerful than ten cannons. The gun powder continued in it in a revolving manner like a grinding mill-stone. Its abominable detention emitted sparks which dispersed crowds and made horses uncontrollable. Other means of destruction proved ineffective before it. Its sound resembled a thunder. Its flame was similar to that of a lightning. Its stone penetrated through two or three men. He kept his army in proper array. It was completely equipped with arms. Soldiers were not paid in money till the period of their service was over.

Shaikh Sa'esd Habshi alias Sultāni

Shaikh Sa'eed Habshi alias Sultāni was a man of excellent personality and

laudable qualities. He died in Ahmadābād on Monday, 3rd Shawwāl, 984 (1575-76). He was entombed in a masjid near the Dār-us-Salaṭānat (palace) on a public road. It was an old monument built with brick. It was near his residence. It was constructed with stone and made strong. Its roof was raised and a ceiling dome was made. It was made elaborate with stone according to the principles of hewn stone. Every stone was one or two arms long with an elevated verandah in vicinity of the masjid built on windows of lofty painted hewn stones. It thus increased its space. A nearby piece of land was purchased for appurlenances. A platform was constructed adjoining the enclosure of the masjid. To its right, his stone-tomb is situated. When he was free from construction of tomb of the masjid, a path and a platform, he felt approach of death. It was prior to construction of the platform, nay, it was constructed only after he was laid in the grave. A saint Mawlānā Shaikh Ābān buried him as a trustee. His tomb is also near his tomb.

Porridage of crushed wheat was cooked on the left side of the masjid in a public kitchen called Langer. Every day twenty mounds of it were cooked for the fagirs, poor and needy persons. A part of it was meant for scholars, eminent men and their attendants. Many recluses who had renounced the world partook of it. The rich and the poor numbering one thousand persons arrived at the cupolas in winter. This practice of charity continued till Akbar's invasion. Shaikh Sa'eed was at first with Rumi Khan. He was then with Sultan Mahmud. Hence he was designated Sulțāni. After the Sulțān, he was in service of the Amir Jhujhar Khan. He was a brave man. He was with him in war with Muhammad Ulugh Khān. It was he who kept pace with Nāşir Daryā Khān, a chamberlain to Changiz Khan in the last war. He then quitted service as a swordsman. Jhujhār Khān and his brother had set apart fifty lacs of tankas for reciters of the Holy Quran. A village was assigned to him as allowance and for purposes of charity. He was comfortable with a house, maintenance, mamāliks and practice of good deeds. Deserving men and pious persons assembled in his majlis. He acquired knowledge of different branches of learning from learned men. A very learned man of comprehension, most unique in guidance, pure and pious Qadi 'Abdullah Sindi of Madina wrote Jame' Hamidi, completed it and named it Jame' as-Sa'eedi and divided it into chapters. He had fondness for acquisition of books. He built a boat, set it sail for Egypt and authorised the boatmen to purchase books. Khwāja Salāmat Maghrebi alias Shātir who was a big merchant, wrote his biographical account. His heart was disposed towards religion. He was fond of building houses. He had more than twenty Habshi slaves, while other servants were nearly one hundred. He had thirty horses in his stable and ten camels. He had fifty wheels for bhails to carry his baggage. His village was presperous. It yielded double revenue most of which was used for charitable purposes. He performed hajj in his own boat in comAPPENDIK 927

pany of his friends, paid a visit to the Holy Madina and worked for the next world in the holy cities. He was a man of humanity.

### Malek ul-Muhaddathin, Ibn-i-Suwaid

Muhammad b. Muhammad b. 'Abd ur-Rahman b. Hasan Jalal ud-Din al-Misri al-Māliki, known like his ancestor Ibn-i-Suwaid was born on 16th Sha'bān, 856 (1452-53). Häfiz Sakhāwi reported that he had gone to Yaman. At Zaila'. he taught and narrated traditions. He then came to Khambavat. Jar ul-lah. son of Fahad said that he approached Sultan Mahmud Shah who bestowed upon him the title of Malek ul-Muhaddathin (King of Traditionists), when he spoke to him about his knowledge of hadith and eloquence. He was the first recipient of this title. He collected forty traditions from twenty Shaykhs for the Sultan and named this collection as "Fath ul-Mubin-ul-Hami" with the elevated authority of Malek ul-Muhaddathin al-Qadi Jaltal ud-Din al-Kanani. It was also compiled for certain holy men from whom he sought blessings and prayers for himself. He wrote prose and composed poetry. He continued to enjoy the favour of Sultan Mahmud till the latter died. He was appointed a tutor to his son Muzaffar Shah. He stayed with him through the influence of his wazir Muḥāmmad Majd ud-Din, al-Masnad-i-'Āli, Khudāwand Khān al-Iji. He was granted allowance for his expenses. Sultan Mahmud had appointed him an officer in the department of Jaziya. Ultimately, he left service and died in Ahmadābād in 929 ( 1522 ).

He prepared a copy of Fath ul-Bāri on explanation of the Traditions compiled by Imām Bukhāri and presented it to Sayyid 'Ali Khān of Mandu. It was the first copy of Fath ul-Bāri in Gujarat. Another copy of the same book was presented to Muzaffar Shāh, son of Sultān Maḥmud Shāh. He thanked him for that obligation. He assigned to him the region of Broach in jagir and made him an amir.

#### Bahrak

Jamāl ud-Din Muḥammad son of 'Umar, son of Mubārak son of Abdullāh, son of 'Ali al-Ḥumairi al-Ḥaḍrami ash-Shāfai' famous as Bahtak was proficient in grammar, lexicon and literature. He was a great orator with perfect understanding. He wrote prose and composed poetry. He was born at Bahrak in Ḥaḍramut at midnight in the month of Sha'bān, 869 ( 1464-65). He grew up there and received education from its learned men. He went to Zubaid where he studied Ḥadith from its scholars especially from Zain ud-Din Muḥammad b. 'Abd ul-Laṭif al-Sharji. He learnt uṣul (fundamental principles) from the theologian Jamāl ud-Din Muḥammad b. Abi Bakr aṣ-Ṣaigh. He associated himself with the Glory of Religion, Pole of the Age, Sun of the Suns, Shaykn Abu Bakr b. al, 'Afif al-Aidrus, may God sanctify his grave. He performed ḥajj in 894

(1489). He treaded the path of Sufism. It is said about him that he spent forty days in retirement in devotion to God at Zubaid. On completion of it, he said, that parts of his body too were in remembrance of God. He was sincere in search of God, lavish in generosity and fond of doing charitable deeds. He gave up the post of a Qāḍi and retired himself from worldly activities for the sake of devotion to God. He went to Aden where he was received with applause and approbation. Its Amir Marjan al-'Amiri gave him a warm reception. He then came to Gujarat as an envoy to Sultan Muzaffar son of Sultan Mahmud Begadha. He elevated him, kept him near himself, promoted him and showed him extensive favour. He became very famous and wrote books which he dedicated them to him. He was a man of learning and experience. He is the author of Sirat-i-Ahmadiya, Kitab ul-Hisam, Tartib-ul-Suluk, Matatul-Asma' on Music, substance of Kitab ul-Amta' Mawahib ul-Quddus in praise of al-'Aidrus, and substance of Şafadi's book Umyat-ul-'Ajam. He acquired his learning from the theologian Muhammad b. Ahmad at Hadramut and Abdullah bin Ahmad at Hadramut and Abdullah bin Ahmad at Aden. He died on 20th Sha'bān, 923 ( 1523 ).

### Mawlana Imam ud-Din Muhammad b. Mahmud at-Tarami

Mawlana Imam ud-Din Muhammad was the son of Mahmud Tarami. He was born in Taram, a village in Khurasam and grew up there. He got himself engaged in acquisition of knowledge from its profound scholars. He became proficient in every branch of learning. He then travelled to different parts of the Muslim world and added to what he knew to become perfect with essence of God and His attributes. He was one of the unrivalled scholars of the age. He was most perfect in explanation of meanings and understanding them. He had an exceptionable knack of extricating real meaning from words though apparently they happened to be devoid of meaning. His talks were appreciated and applauded by scholars. He was clever in nacromancy and he had profound knowledge of the science of Chemistry. He disseminated fragrant perfumes. He talked about the sea without any let or hindrance. He led a saintly life. He came to Gujarat with his books. He wrote them at his leisure time. All of them were based on reliable sources and authorities. A report of his scholarship spread through his books. He moved in the kingdom to contact scholars to benefit and to be benefited through them. He got himself Benefited and then related from them. He related from Shaykh of celibates Abu 'Abdullah Mawlānā Wajih ud-Din al-'Alawi. There is no doubt that he was a Qutb (pole star) in conduct and an angel in character as well as sound in religion. Qāḍi Mawlana 'Isa was justice incarnate in the state. The author (Ḥājji Dabir) learnt from popular legend that he died at Naharwala Patan.

He presented himself in the majlis of Bahadur in a house overlooking the river. It was not monsoon. In the course of conversation, he said to him,

"Look at the river. How its water is in an agitated state. He looked at it. It looked like a sea on all sides. Surprisingly, there appeared a cradle with two children floating on surface of water. He said to him, "Do you see a wonder which I see in it?" He said, "Yes, I saw a cradle and two children in it." He said, "They were orphans from the side of father, such and such at Naharwala. The river bore them to you requesting fixation of allowance what was in the name of their father." He said, "For them." Bahādur then looked at the river. He neither saw the surging water nor the children. His wonder increased greatly. Mawlānā died in 1534.

# Khudawand Khan Majd ud-Din Muhammad al-sji

Majd ud-Din Muhammad al-Iji came to Gujarat during the regime of Sultan Mahmud Shah I. He became famous by his merits and accomplishments. The Sultan bestowed upon him the title of Rashid ul-Mulk. Later on, Muzaffar Shah the Clement conferred upon the title of Khudawand Khan and appointed him as his wazir. He held this post for fourteen years. He went to Sultan Mahmud Khalji in company of Master of the Horse with one thousand horses, one hundred elephants, one hundred camels, a canopy, an ensign, a drum, cash money, textiles, copper Utensils, Crockery, arms, carts, etc.

It was he who introduced Ibn-i-Suwaid to the Sultan. Under instruction from Sultan Muzaffar, he wrote a letter to Bahadur Khan to come back and his jagir would be increased. At the time of his accession, Sultan Sikandar caught hold of his hand and sat on the throne. Khudawand Khan was the first to salute him.

He was indisposed when Bahādur came to Chāmpāner. He remained in his house, watched the procession and saluted Bahādur. Bahādur entered his house when he said, "Enter with safety and security."

During the regime of Bahadur Shah, he became Vakil-i-Mutliq and held this post for fifteen years. He accompanied Sultan Bahadur in campaigns sgainst Mandu and Chitor.

In a war against Humāyun, he fell a captive but Humāyun treated him with favour and kindness and scated him by his side. At Ahmadabad, Humāyun consulted him whether there would be another war for conquest of Gujarat, he replied that it depended upon the life of that negro, that is, Imād ul-Mulk.

Khudāwand Khān was a learned man. He was proficient in the knowledge of hadith and asmā-ur-rijāl. Learned men felt themselves honoured to get a certificate from him.

He died during the regime of Sultan Mahmud Shah II.

Quib-i-'Alam Sayyid Burhan ud-Din Abu Muhammad 'Abdul-lah Bukhari

Outb-i-'Alam Savvid Burhan ud-Din was the son of Savvid Nasir ud-Din who was the son of the chief of the saints Makhdum-i-Jahānian of Bukhārā. He was born on Monday morning on the 14th Rajab in the year 700 A.H. (1388) in the city of Uchh in Sind. On his birth, his grand-father Savvid Ialal ud-Din Makhdum-i-Jahāniān remarked that the Outh was born in the family on account of whom many other Outbs would be born. His father Nasir ud-Din Mahmud died when he was ten years old. His uncle, Savuid Şadr ud-Din Mahmud Rāju Qattal (760-827 = 1359-1424) took care of the child and became his guardian. He gave him education and trained him up for two years. He then gave him the relics of his ancestors—the sword, its sheath and the pillow (according to another account, a khirka, a sword and a pot) and sent him to Anhilwad Patan, in Gujarat where he was destined to preach. He, therefore, set out for Gujarat in 802 (1400) with his mother, Bibi Hājra known as Sa'ādat Khātun. As instructed by Savvid Sadr ud-Din Mahmud Raju Qattal, Shaykh Rukn ud-Din, grand-son of Shaykh Farid ud-Din Shakar Ganj, who was then staying at Patan undertook the education of the young Sayvid Burhan ud-Din. Shaykh Rukn ud-Din was famous as Kān-i-Shakar (mine of sugar). He conferred upon the young Sayyid the title of Qutb-i-'Alam. It is said that Sultan Muzaffar I was the disciple of Makhdum-i-Jahanian. When he heard of the arrival of his spiritual guide's grand-son, he went out to receive him with due honours.

At Pātan, Mawlāna 'Ali Shir ran a madresa where he taught theoretical knowledge of religious books. Sayyid Burhān ud-Din joined his madresa and acquired book knowledge from Mawlānā 'Ali Shir who lies buried at Sarkhej. After the death of Sulţān Muzaffar Shāh I, Sulţān Aḥmad Shāh ascended the throne of Gujarat. When he founded the city of Aḥmadābād, he invited Sayyid Burhān ud-Din to the new capital and so he set out for Ahmadabad in 834 (1430) with his family. Sulţān Aḥmad Shāh was a poet. He composed a poem in preise of Sayyid Burhān ud-Din and recited it in his presence in a standing posture after the manner of poets. The opening lines run thus:

Burhan, the 'Proof' our polar star Our pattern and our guide. The Proof, in whose convincing truth 'We and all men, confide.

Just as a poet demands a reward from a person in whose eulogy he composes a poem after recitation of it, Sultān Ahmad asked for his reward. Sayyid Burbān ud-Did said, "My grand-father has already blessed thee." Whereupon the Sultān replied, "But, that blessing is for the kingdom and my family, I now want a blessing for this new city." "The city will last for ever by the favour of God the Merciful," said the Sayyid.

For sometime, the Sayyid stayed in old Asawal near Jame' Masjid near the river Sabarmati. But later on, he shifted to the village of Batwa which he found to be of congenial climate and so he decided to permanently settle there. The Sultan was pleased to bestow it upon him.

In 840 (1437), he voyaged to Makka for hajj and thence paid a visit to the shrine of the Prophet at Madina.

The saint is said to have performed many miracles, one of which is as under:

"One night the saint rose for his mid-night prayer. Suddenly his foot struck something in the darkness and was made to bleed." "What is it?" said the saint, "a piece of wood, or iron or stone?" Next morning, the thing was discovered, possessing the properties of all three-wood, iron and stone. The saint ordered it to be buried and pronounced a curse on whomsoever dug it out, that he should have no offspring, to survive him. One of the disciples after the saint's demise, declaring that he did not mind whether his offspring survived him or not, dug it out. Half of this piece was taken by the Emperor Akbar who preserved it in his capital, and the other half is kept here as a sacred relic."

The saint died on the morning of 8th Zul-hijja in the year 857 (1452) at the age of 67 years, 4 months and 4 days and was consigned to the grave in Batwa. Sultān Aḥmad Shāh built a small mausoleum over the grave. Sultān Maḥmud Begada enlarged it and made it magnificent. It has a spacious court-yard and a masjid.

The saint left twelve sons and seventeen daughters. The sons are: I. Sayyid Naşir ud-Din Abul Hasan Mahmud surnamed Shāh Badā; 2. Sayyid Shāh 'Ālam; 3. Sayyid Ahmad; 4. Shāh Hamid; 5. Sayyih Ṣāleh; 6. Bandagi Shāh Aminullāh; 7. Bandagi Sayyid Muḥammad Zāhid; 8. Sayyid Muḥammad Aşghar; 9. Sayyid Muḥammad Ṣādiq; 10. Sayyid Muḥammad Rāju; 11. Sayyid Sālem; 12. Sayyid 'Ilm ud-Din.

The saint was a person of handsome appearance with broad forehead, black eyes, broad eye-brows, long nose, soft cheeks, thin lips and a thin neck.

The saint wrote the following book :-

1. Marhamat nāmai Burhāni on principles of sufism.

Sirāj ud-Din Abul Barakāt Sayyid Muḥammad better known as Hadhrat-i-Shāh 'Ālam Bukhāri

Sayyid Muhammad better known as Hadhrat-i-Shāh 'Ālam Bukhāri was born on Monday, 7th Zilka'ad 817 (18th Jan. 1415) at Anhilwād Pātan. He was the second son of Sayyid Burhān ud-Din Quṭb-i-'Ālam. His mother was Bibi Āmina, surnamed Sulṭān Khātun. She was the daughter of Karim Khān PA58

son of 'Imad ud-Din Khudawand Khan, a noble of the Muzaffari Sultans. At the age of seventeen, he completed his education in all the branches of learning and was appointed head of the Sufi order of Mughrabia. He received the Sufi robe from Shaikh Ahmad Khattu. His father got him instructed under the Chishtiya order by Shaykh Bārakullāh.

He was a man of austere habits and sincere devotion. Every Friday, he gave audience to the public at Rasulabad after Juma prayers. For rest of the six days, he spent his time in devotion to God in seclusion. He gave religious instruction and Guidance to the people only on Friday. Needy persons assembled around him when he fulfilled their needs. He prayed on behalf of those who were in difficulties in this physical world and invoked blessings of God on them. This continued till 'Aşr (late afternoon) prayer. After performance of prayer, he retired to his room and emerged from it next Friday. He gave no audience to any one however great he might be including the Sultan.

One day 'Id day, he invited his relatives and friends to dinner. He sent food to those who failed to attend the dinner.

He has written a number of tracts on religious and sufistic subjects such as Risala-i-Şādiqiya, Risala-i-Mafatih-i-Khazān ul-lāh, Risala-i-Muḥammadiya, Tuhfat ul-Awliyā etc. etc.

The saint died at the age of 63 on Saturday night, 20th Jamādi II, 880 (1475). He was buried at Rasulābād where he used to live. A fine spacious convent, with stately domes and watch-towers, was built by Tāj Khān Narpāli, one of the nobles of Sultān Maḥmud Begada and a disciple of the saint. The fine masjid attached to it was built by Muḥammad Şāleh Badakhshi and its two minarets were added to it by Najābat Khān. The caravanserai and other buildings of the convent were first built by Sultān Maḥmud and then repaired by Sayf Khān.

# Shaykh Ahmad Khattu Ganjbakhsh

Shaykh Aḥmad Khattu belonged to the Maghribi order of sufis. He was born in Delhi in 738 H. (1338) during the regime of Sultān Muḥammad Tughluq. His birth name was Naṣir ud-Din but he was given the name of Aḥmad by his spiritual guide Bābā Isḥāq of Khattu.

The story of life of Bābā Aḥmad is very strange. It is said that Naşir ud-Din belonged to a noble family. A nurse was engaged by his parents to look after him and his brother. One evening, she went out for a walk with these two brothers. Suddenly, a dust-storm arose which was so severe that the whole atmosphere had become dark. Even near objects were not visible. The two brothers and the nurse got lost in the storm. After the storm subsided, the little boy did not know where to go. His parents failed to find him. In the meantime, a caravan was on the way to Rajputana. One of the members of the caravan, who was childless, saw Naşir ud-Din in a sad plight on the road. He picked him up and brought with him to his native place, Dindwana. A saint by name Bābā Ishāq lived at Khattu. He was of advanced age. He prayed to God to give him a child whom he should rear up and train as his successor. He saw a dream wherein a boy was shown to him with all his features. He, therefore, talked about his dream to one of his disciples who happened to be a merchant and informed him about description of the boy. Happily for him, the merchant went to Dindwana where he saw a boy of the description as told by his spiritual guide with a person with whom he had to transact business. The man did not like to part with the boy as he had no issue. But that merchant persuaded him not to incur displeasure of the saint otherwise he would suffer from disastrous calamity. Willy-nilly, he parted with the boy with great reluctance. On the other hand, Bābā Isḥāq was greatly elated to get a boy as shown to him in the dream.

He took particular care in education and training of the child. He himself taught him certain subjects and requested Qādi Ḥamid ud-Din Nāgori to instruct him in theology and hadith.

Bābā Ishāq happened to go to Delhi for some work. He took the boy with him. One day, he chanced to go out for a walk when his brother saw him. He approached him, called him by his original name Naşir ud-Din and told him to come to his parents who were in wails due to his missing for the last so many years. Bābā Ishāq advised him to go with his brother to his parents but he refused to go and expressed his desire to live with Bābā Ishāq and accompany him to Khattu.

Bābā Ishāq, on approach of death bequethed him his khirka and nominated him as his Khalifa. Bābā Ishāq left this ephemeral world on 17th Sha'bān, 776 H. (1374). Bābā Aḥmad, thenceforward led a life of strict austerity and devotion to God. He remained in seclusion and fasted in the month of Ramadān breaking his fast with one date and some quantity of water. This resulted in emaciation and thinness of his physical body. He was not strong enough to walk. He was lifted bodily and taken to the masjid for I'd prayers.

After some time, he decided to go to Delhi where he happened to meet the great saint Makhdum-i-Jahaniān. He then set out for hajj and came to Cambay, the port from which pilgrims used to embark for Makka. At Nahar-wāla, the Nāzim of the place Malek Muḥammad Sultāni Rāstikhān received him with due honour and wrote to his son who was port-officer at Cambay to make necessary arrangement for the saint's voyage. In mid-sea, he came to the deck to perform ablution for prayer when he slipped and fell from the ship to the sea. He invoked God and a rock emerged from the sea on which he sat. The ship

sailed to a certain distance when his companions found that he was in mid-sea. The ship was reversed and he was taken into it. He reached Makka, performed hajj and proceeded to Madina to pay respects to the shrine of the Prophet. His companions told him to take meals but he said that he was the guest of the Prophet and that he would eat whatever food the host would send him. At mid-night, a person cried out thrice as to who was Ahmad. He raised his head from meditation and said that he was the person whom he called out. The man gave him a plate full of dates saying that it was sent by the Prophet. He began to eat when the man turned back and disappeared. His companions woke up when they found that the saint was eating the dates sent by the Prophet. They also shared dates with him. It was his convincing faith and love for the Prophet that the incident happened.

On his way back from hajj, he passed through Western Asia, visited its many cities and met several religious divines. He came to Samarqand where an abstruse problem of theology was being discussed. Local scholars failed to decide it. The saint got up in the assembly and explained it so lucidly and explicitly that they all got amazed at his deep learning and treated him with reverence and respect.

He then came to Uchh, visited the tomb of the celebrated saint Makhdumi-Jahāniān and said Fatiha. He saw Sayyid Rāju Kattāl, the Khalifa of the Makhdum.

Firuz Shāh i ughluq had great faith in him. He was in Delhi at the time of Timur's invasion. He had prophesied about his invasion a fortnight before to his disciples and other persons. They, therefore, had gone to Jaunpur. The saint and his forty followers were captured by the Mongols. Every day, the saint and his followers used to receive forty loaves in a mysterious manner. They all sat together and ate them. Timur learnt about it. He released them with due honour. Along with them many other prisoners were also liberated. Timur took the saint with him to Samarqand. After staying there for some time, he returned to Gujarat via. Khurāsan and lived in Aḥmadābād with a Bohra by name Badā. Sultān Muzaffar had great faith in him. He entreated him to stay at Patan but the saint did not like to live in Patan. After Muzaffar's death, his grandson, Sultān Aḥmad ascended the throne. The saint helped him in building the new city of Aḥmadābād.

The saint died at Sarkhej at the age of III years in 849 H. (1449). He lies buried in Sarkhej where a shrine, a convent, a masjid and a tank were built by Qutb ud-Din Sultan and completed by his son Muhammad Shāh. Sultan Mahmud Begada and Sultan Muzaffar Halim are also buried at the foot of the Saint's grave.

APPENDIX 935

He is one of the most eminent saints in Gujarat. He was a very learned man and an author of certain books such as Irshād-ut-Tālibin, Translation of the Holy Qurān in Persian and Risala-i-Aḥmadiya, Tuḥfat-ul-Majālis dedicated to Sultān Ahmad. He sang with melody and tune and composed verses at times.

## Shaykh Wajih ud-Din Ahmad al-'Alwi

Wajih ud-Din was the son of Shaykh Naşrul-lāh. He was an accomplished scholar and a renowned Şufi. He traced his descent from Muḥammad 'Aziz, son of Imām Muḥammad al-Jawād. During the regime of the Muzaffari Dynasty, one of his ancestors Sayyid Bahāuddin of Makka came to Gujarat and settled in Muḥammadābād Champaner. He was highly honoured by the Sulṭān. He married, lived and died in Chāmpāner. His grand-son Sayyid Imām ud-Din was appointed Qāḍi of Patri in the Paragana of Viramgām, Shaykh Wajih ud-Din was born in Muhammadābād Chāmpāner in the month of Muharram, 910 (1504).

From the age of five, till be was thirty-three, he lived the life of a student learning various branches of knowledge and Sufism; he passed the remainder of his life in teaching his pupils in Ahmadabad, devoting his spare time to writing and preparing notes and commentaries. He possessed the inner knowledge and lived the life of a recluse, visiting no one. He was the disciple of Shah Qadan Chishti but followed more especially Shaykh Mahammad Ghauth under whom he completed his Sufistic studies. It so happened that when Shaykh Muhammad Ghauth came to Ahmadabad, the 'Uluma under the leadership of Shaykh 'Ali Muttaqi, a great scholar and a Şufi wrote out a fatwa for his assassination on a charge of holding heretical views. The Sultan, however, before giving his final assent, referred the matter to Mawlana Wajih ud-Din, who went to Shaykh Muhammad Ghauth. But no sooner had he seen the Shaykh than the Mawlana tore the fatwa in pieces and exclaimed, "'Ali Muttaqi surely thou hast no knowledge of the acquirements of the Shaykh." Afterwards the Mawlana used to say, " Follow the law as was done by 'Ali Muttaqi, but follow also the spirit of truth in the light of our Murshid's teaching." Shaykh Ghauth was an inspired preceptor. The Mawlana died at the age of eighty-eight, on the last day of Muharram 998 H. (1590). He is buried inside the rampart wall at Khanpur in the school built by Şādiq Khān. The reservoir and the masjid were built by Shaykh Ḥaidar, one of the grandsons of the Mawlana. (Mirat-i-Ahmadi).

His birth took place in Muharram, 911 H. His birth place is Champaner. He was reared at the same place. He acquired common learning in Gujarat from Mulla 'Imad Taremi. He fulfilled the usages of discipleship by attendance upon Shaykh Qadan, may his grave be sanctified. When Muhammad Ghauth Gwallari, may his grave be sanctified came to Ahmadabad. Shaykh Wajih ud-

Din got absorbed in his auspicious beauty. He became accomplished under shade of training of the Shaykh. (Mawlānā Ghulān 'Ali Āzād Bilgrāmi).

Mawlana Muhammad Ghauthi says, "He was Qutb of both the worlds, centre of verities of both the worlds, owner of acquired and present knowledge, master of obtained and divine learning, knower of mysteries of book-impressions of things and a confidante of secrets of the Preserved Tablet. It is said that having emerged from figure of knowledge, he illumined in 902, the place of elemental body by display of his birth. From five years after birth to end of thirty-three years, he engaged himself in acquisition of current and rare branches of learning so much so that he acquired more than sixty branches of knowledge. When he ultimately travelled from physical place of multiplicity to real place of unity, it was 29th Şafar, 997 (1589). He engaged himself during this period in giving lessons on all sciences. Gifts of God, the Dignified and Glorious continued to pour upon him. During this period of sixty-two years, many persons rose from pupilship to teachership under his beneficent teaching, and lofty-minded sufis obtained the khirka of Khilāfat by heart-entrancing instruction."

Mullä 'Abd ul-Bāqi Nihāwandi who was also benefited through Shaykh Wajih ud-Din writes in Maāthir-i-Raḥimi, "Miyān Wajih ud-Din was a prudent scholar and a wise, learned man. He was a direct pupil of 'Imād Taremi who was one of the pupils of Mawlānā Jalāl ud-Din Dawwāni who needs no description on account of immense fame. Most of the learned mullās of Hindustān are his pupils. None is equal to him in respect of comprehensiveness and versatility. He has attained to perfection of purified soul and renouncement of worldly pleasures. Condition of good future state of Miyān is immensely famous and well-known."

Muliā 'Abd ul-Qāder Badayumi was contemporaneous with Shaykh Wajih ud-Din. He writes as under after the Shaykh's death. He was connected with 'Alawi lineage but he did not publicise his lineage for his being a traveller. He was a very pious, God-fearing scholar. He strictly adhered to religion. Retirement was his habit. He always engaged himself in giving lessons on religious sciences. He had complete mastery over all intellectual and narrative sciences. For example, he wrote explanatory and marginal notes from "Sarf-i-Hawāi" to "Qānun", "Shifa", "Sharh-i-Miſtāḥ" and "'Aḍadi". A generation was benefited by his learning." He further writes, "He was a disciple of someone else but he obtained training and guidance from Shaykh Muḥammad Gauth. He was his follower in observance of etiquette of Tariqat. He completed training of suluk (divine path) from him. He had aptitude and relish for suſistic creed."

Shaykh Wajih ud-Din said to Mawlana 'Alam-i-Gul Bahari, "When I was teaching. I had an earnest desire to learn preliminaries on which depended

APPENDIX 937

knowledge of Divine truth and its revelation. By chance, Divine will in whose destined thing, there are hundreds of subtle points, attracted Hadral Ghauth ur-Rahmān from Gwâlior to Gujarat. This thing I acquired by kissing feet of Ghauth ur-Rahmān. Within a short period, my Islām copper-like changed into pure gold through his elixir-like training. I became fortunate to walk in the paradise of true faith having come out from shackles of customary articles of faith. A few days after, I was ennobled with absolute khilāfat. I obtained what I had not and I did not gain again what I had."

Shaykh 'Abd ul-Haq Muḥaddith writes, "His relation and faith in Şufism were with Shaykh Muḥammad Ghauth though he was disciple of someone else." Shaykh Wajih ud-Din writes in his Malfuzāt, "Before meeting the Shaykh, I had no knowledge of God. It was Shaykh Muḥammad Ghauth who reached me to God." He further said, "Knowledge of God which I did not obtain throughout my life, I obtained in one night,"

Shaykh Wajih ud-Din was a very learned man. He is the author of a number of books. Besides, he has annotated and written marginal notes on innumerable books.

Makhdum Shaykh Uthman Husam ud-Din Faruqi Multani Chishti

Shaykh Uthmān alias Husām ud-Din was the son of Shaykh Dāwood who traced his descent from His Holiness Hadrat 'Umar al-Färug, may God be pleased with him, the second pious Khalifa. He was born in 639 H. (1241) at Multan. Shaykh Dawood was a disciple of Shaykh Nizam ud-Din Awliya and his chosen successors. He was reckoned as a learned man of the age in which be flourished. He took special care for education of his son Uthman and took him to his spiritual guide Sultan ul-Mashaikh Nizam ud-Din Awliya for training in tasawwuf (Divine Love). He took an oath of allegiance from him enjoining upon him the renouncement of world and all that it contained and advised him to spend his life in Anhilwad Patan. Shaykh Uthman performed hajj under instruction of his murshid. On his return to Delhi, he worked as a Pesh Imam (one who leads prayers) in Jame' Masjid where he also ran a madresa to impart religious learning. He migrated to Patan from Delhi during the regime of Muhammad Tughluq when he shifted his capital to Devgiri in 695 (1295). He lived there for forty-one years and died in 736 H. (1636) at the age of ninetyseven.

At Patan, he led a very simple life. He conducted a madresa and taught pupils in a masjid. While he was teaching, he responded several times to the greeting "As-salām-d-'Alaikum" by uttering "Wa 'Alaikum us-Salām." His pupils were surprised at this behaviour of his. After the lessons were over, some curious students asked film as to whom did he respond when there was none. He said that Rijāl ul-Ghaib were going in all haste to the succour of

Sultan Quib ud-Din sgainst his enemy. These invisible beings salamed him and he responded to them.

He maintained himself by selling cloth. He distributed half of his profit among poor and needy persons. He prepared two breads every day, one of which he utilised it for himself for he took only one meal and the second one he gave it to a beggar who came to him first. His dress was also very simple. He covered the lower part of his body with a lungi and the upper part with an unstiched piece of cloth and put a cap on his head.

## Sayyid Husain Khing-sawar

Sayyid Husain was the son of Sayyid 'Umar Arizi of Ghiyāthpur. He was the Khalifa of Sultān ul-Mashāikh Nizām ud-Din Awliyā and is the guardian saint of Dabhoi. He was born in 663 H. (1264). He was very fond of riding the grey steed and therefore, he was designated as Khing-sawār. In 730 (1329), in compliance with his murshid's order he came to Pātan and propagated Islām in Patan and round-about places. He ran a madresa where he imparted religious instruction to his pupils. He died on 1st Jamadi II, 793 (1395) at the age of one hundred and thirty-five. He is buried at Patan near the Sahasra Ling tank.

## Training of Gujarāil Amir

'Ali Shan Shaykh Muhammad 'Anbas 'Arab Khan al-Yasai' spoke to Hajji Dabir, author of "Zafar ul-Walih" about the laudable character of the people of Gujarat. He said, " I was, in Gujarat with one of the amirs during the regime of a descendant of Muzaffar Shah. I saw a young boy giving service like grooms. He looked after horses, moved with stirrup of the horseman, carried hay, firewood and water etc. Then I saw him one day riding a beautiful horse in the most gaudy and precious costume. He had a cavalcade of men with him and well-decorated horses in front of him. I fell in doubt about his affairs and in my opinion, he did not detest to do menial service. I asked him as to who he was. He replied that he was the son of the Amir whom he served. I asked him, "What did you mind yesterday? You were in the costliest costume and today in this." He said, "This is the character of people of this region. During the period of training, they serve their relatives and their song till one becomes proficient. He does every kind of service. He then becomes a man in its real meaning. In the meantime, his father or his uncle engages him with a daughter of one of the relatives. He then changes his dress and rises in dignity and this is what you see of him." On the previous night, he entered into wedlock with the daughter of his uncle and in the next morning he became as you see him. He then described me about their character item by item. A lad does not apply antimony to his eyes nor does he chew.a betel-leaf. He abstains from redenning his lips. He does not live with strangers or foreigners. He does not

APPENDIX 939

behave with impudence and arrogance with those who are older in age than he. He does employ women in service out of self-preservation and zeal for his reputation. He thus narrated to me the conventions and traditions of pious ancestors from their youth. But now this sort of etiquette has disappeared with departure of those persons. He reported to me some verses in support of what he said:

He who visited Gujarat, would find
In Hind, a place of retirement, not equal to it.
A mirror of paradise for that solace
As Adam had made it his first place of descent.
Cool breeze, fragrant meadows and fruits as well
Birds and rivers with continuous flow.
When I turned my gaze, I saw a house
Three going free from grief.
Their children hur-like (damsels of paradise) strong places of return
Where is Pleiades to take them from hand.
They make cold mouth hot by betel-leaf.
They produce, they build, they then settle in their land.
He who had not seen, let him see a married young man.
They apply antimony, chew batel-leaf and cause trouble
Oh alas I for a stranger like me to be in trouble.

#### APPENDIX III

# A List of Topics, Anecdotes and Curiosities

(I am indebted to Sir Denison Ross for this appendix)

Anesdotes: 1. A lamp in a tower mistaken for the morning star, p. 45. 2. Story of the Qazi in Ahmadābād and the horse-dealer, p. 105. 3. A Shaykh causea Bahādur Shāh Sultān to see in the river a cradle containing two orphan children, p. 180. 4. The famous story of the cow's hide, told of Div, of Alamut, p. 184. 5. Incident of the Bath, p. 329. 6, The man and the serpent, p. 424. 7. Curious anecdote of Jhujhār Khān, p. 379. 8. Strange story of meeting between Sikandar Ludi and Babur, in Agra in A.H. 923, p. 769.

Architecture: 1. The Shakar Talāv, p. 1. 2. Building of Ahmadābāć, p. 2. 3. Building of Sultānpur, p. 2. 4. Masjid of Khudāwand Khān in 'Aylampur, p. 7. 5. Bāgh-i-Sha'bān, a garden in the suburbs of Ahmadābād p. 14. 6. Building of Mustalābād, p. 19. 7. The Masjid built by Mahmud in Ahmadābād in A.H. 887, p. 26. 8. Description of buildings in Burhānpur, p. 62. 9. Tomb of Muzaffar II in Sarkhej, p. 105. 10. Buildings erected in Makka by Muzaffar II, p. 116. 11. The Kālā Chotra, a stone platform built in Ahmadnagar by an architect named Kālā, p. 120. 12. A building erected at Buhtari seven farsakhs from Ahmadnagar by Murtazā Nizām Shāh, p. 137. 13. A dome and garden built on the hill called Shāh-Kuh overlooking Ahmadnagar, p. 141. 14. Burj-bāburi in Mahmudābād, p. 188. 13. Masjid of Farhatul-Mulk, (see Asaf Khān). 15. The Three Gates of Ahmadābād, pp. 327, 326 16. Tomba in Sarkhej, p. 379. 17. Description of the tomb of Shaykh Sa'ic al-Habash in Ahmadābād, p. 524-25.

Armour: (description of), (see Asaf Khān). 1. Cuirass (Jaushan worn by Ulugh Khān, (Asaf Khān). 2. Steel armour, p. 343. 3. Rustum Khān's mace, weighs thirty ratals, p. 374.

Artillery and Muskets: 1. Sulaymāniyya guns presented to Sultār Bahādur. p. 183 2. Description of shot and ball, p. 363 3. Broken gun carriag blocks the road, p. 320. 4. Five hundred brass guns in army of Gujarāt (980 H.), p. 368. 5. Six thousand Kawkabāns and 12,000 muskets in Gujarāt army, (980 H.), p. 368. 6. Catapults (manjaniqs) used for scattering gold coins among the people, p. 641. 7. Guns and muskets (Madfa' and Banduq) referred to in connection with the year A. H. 697. 8. Use of Kawkabāns p. 67.

Books: 1. Purchased by weight, p. 206. 2. Many books found in Bihar when first invaded by Muslims, but no one could be found to read them, p. 793

Bābar divides books found in library between Hamāyun and Kāmrān (932 H.), p. 780.

Brahmins: 1. Incident with an elephant, p. 4. 2. How they fight, p. 125. 3. Their learning, p. 793

Ceremonies and Festivals: 1. Description of Hindu methods on approaching holy places, p. 20. 2. Holi festival celebrated in Māndu during the siege, p. 87. 3. Elaborate ceremonies on occasion of Nizām-ul-Mulk Bahri's submission to Sulṭān Bahādur (936 H.), p. 121. 4. Mawluḍ-i-Sharif celebrated at court of Maḥmud III, p. 214. 5. Ceremonies at Makka on occasion of Prophet's birth-day, p. 220. 6. Diwali and Holi festivals, p. 232. 7. Salām-al-Shahr, p. 328. 8. Shia celebration in Aḥmadābād, p. 333.

Clock: A wonderful clock in Baghdad, p. 533

Cooking: 1. Mahija, a kind of macaroni, p. 791. 2. Twenty maunds of fat scrapings collected by the cooks after a feast, p. 133. 3. Utensils, porcelain dishes, p. 317.

Customs: 1. Use of perfume and cosmetics, p. 83. 2. Indian custom of bathing in oil, p. 316.

Diamonds: Weighing 1500 maunds in treasury of Mu'izzuddin Ghuri, p. 561. Diamond and its weight and value, p. 781.

Dress: 1. Curious dress of Savage women, p. 157. 2. Red clothes worn by Mughal sovereigns after victory, which indicated that bloodshed would be continued for as long as they were worn, p. 171. 3. Wearing of silk encouraged by the Hanafis, discouraged by the Shāfi's, (Account of Āsaf Khān). 4. Āsaf Khān before his interview with the Sultān of Turkey, changes his Indian dress for Rumi clothes and perfume themselves before battle, p. 272. 6. Customs in Hindu dress, p. 744.

Elephants: I. Fight described, p. 9. 2. Anecdote, p. 34. 3. Trunks cut 'off, p. 170. 4. Story: On the day of the 'Id as Afzal Khān did not wait on the King as was his wont, and his duty was to stand behind the King on the howdah and wave a cloth. Maḥmud III on his way to Masjid stopped at Afzal's house and sent Āsaf Khān to fetch him out. He came and salāmed to the King; whereupon the elephant bending one knee, picked him up and set him on the howdah. Afzal took up the cloth as usual, and they proceeded to the Masjid, but he was not in festival dress, p. 212. 5. Fight with, (Asaf Khān). 6. Armour, (Asaf Khān). 7. Description of Mast elephant, (Asaf Khān). 8. Sinking of an elephant in the ground, pp. 36-37. 9. Elephants presented after battle to commanders (Asaf Khān). 10. Fights (Asaf Khān). 11. Three hundred in army of Gujarāt, (980 H.) p. 368.

Fighting: 1. Engagement at sea, p. 31. 2. Unwounded dead on battle-field of Kapadwanj, p. 10. 3. Detailed description, p. 323. 4. Curious note on sea-fighting saying that in encounters with the Franks in the Mediterranean if one ship attacked three ships, the captain was either reprimanded or hung at the yard-arm, p. 86.

Gardens: Pp. 14, 141, 209.

Historians: Famous Muslim historians enumerated and criticized by our Author, p. 646.

Horses: 1. Rajputs only ride mares, p. 206. 2. Patience of Arab horses in battle, p. 312. 3. Dislike of elephants, p. 322. 4. Arab and Irāqi horses, p. 326. 5. Endurance of Irāqi horses, p. 321. 6. Horses sold for 40 tankas pair in Delhi (663 H.), p. 602

Invisible Persons: Pp. 5-10; 99.

Love: A digression on the subject of love, pp. 351-2. "Love must be due to some cause, it cannot be intentional", said by Hārun-ar-Rashid to Yāḥyā Barmaki, (Account of Āsaf Khān, pp. 234-257).

Morals: Curious details of Gujarāti morals, p. 83.

Navigation, Shipping and Monsoon: 1. Rains in India last four months p. 154. 2. Teakwood collected for ship-building, p. 203. 3. Five hundred grabs built in Broach, Ghogha, Daman and Cambay (953 H.), p. 208. 4. Nearly one hundred sea-going ships in Div (in A. H. 955), p. 206. 5. A ship-wreck, p. 319. 6. Description of stormy passage to India (Asaf Khān). 7. The monsoon, Naw-ruz-i-Bahri. In A.H. 953, broken Jumāda II (July, 1546), p. 200.

Patience: Traditions regarding patience in misfortune, (Account of Asa Khan, pp. 234-257.

Qat: A plant grown in the Yaman, "Celastrus edutis", (Account c Āsaf Khān, pp. 234-257).

Swords: 1. Various kinds of swords brought every year from Jiddah, such as Junubi, Maghribi, Misri and Daylami, p. 212. 2. Swords tested on hoofs of camels or between the horns of buffaloes in Suq-ul-Kibāsh. Those which broke were made into knives. Hunting knives were half a dira' long. Every quiver had a knife in it. 3. Arrows were made of broken swords, p. 213. 4. Sword-stick (ghaddāra), p. 582

. ...

Sympasium: On coffee and smoking, pp. 292-295.

### APPENDIX IV

## List of Works referred to in this History

- I. Abnā ul-Ghame, by Ibn Hajar al-'Asgalāni,
- 2. Abu Muslim Nāma, an unknown history of Abu Muslim.
- 3. Adab ud-Dunyd wad-Din by al-Marwardi.
- 4. 'Ajib ul-Mudhkhkhir Fi Sharh Gharibi 'l-Ḥadith Wa'l-Āthār by 'Abd ul-Quddus al-Glasyāni.
- 5. Akbarnāma by Abul Fazl (The secretary and Prime Minister of the Emperor Akbar was born at Agra, 16th Muharram, 958 = 14th Jan. 1551, and murdered on 4th Rabi' I, 1011 = 22nd Aug. 1602. He was a man of great intellectual power and industry. Akbarnama is a monument to his toil. As the work of a contemporary and closely associated with the Emperor, the Akbarnama is the best authority for Akbar's history).
- 6. Ather ul-Bilad by Qazwini. (Zakariyā b. Muhammad b. Mahmud al-Qazwini was born at Qazwin in Persia in 1203 and died in 1283. Atharul-Bilad (Monuments of Lands) is a more or less systematic description of the chief towns and countries known to the Muslims at that period. They are arranged alphabetically under the Seven Climes).
- 7. Bard ul-Akbād 'An Faqdi 'l-Awlād by Ibn Nāşiruddin al-Hamawi, (b. 777 H. d- 842 H.).
- 8. Bughya ul-Mustafid Fi Akhbār Zabid by Ibn ud-Dayba'. (Wajih 'Abdur-Rahmān b. 'Ali al-Shaybāni al-Shāfai' (born on Thursday, 4th Muḥarram 866 (1461) in Zubaid) was unrivalled in the science of tradition and history in his city. He is an author of some books. He died on Monday, 17th Rajab, 944 (1537).
- g. Fawā'id ul-Fu'dd by Hasan Sanjari of Delbi. (It contains sermons of of Nizāmuddin Awliyā).
- 10. Fawdih ul-Iqbal wa Fawd'in ul-Intiqal by Hajji ad-Dabir.
- 11. Fuluh ul-Habasha alternative title for Tuhfat uz-Zamān.
- 12. Futuh ush-Shām by al-Wāqidi. Wāqidi (A. 823 H.) was a great bistorian of Muslim conquests. He was literally patronized by Yāhyā, the Barmecide. He left 600 great boxes of books and manuscript notes each one of which required two men to carry it).
- 13. Habib no-Siyar by Khwandmir. (Khwandmir is the author of Hubib us-Siyar written in 1503. He lived till 1534-35.
- 24. Hoyet wi-Haywan by Banki.

- 15. Al-Iqdul Bākir Fi Tārikk Dawlat Bani Zafar by Ibn ud-Dayba'. It is an abridgment of his Bughyat.
- 16. Jame 'ul-Asar Fi Mawljdi 'l-Mukhtar by Ibn Nasiruddin.
- 17. Jawāmi 'ul-Hikāyāt by Awfi. (Muḥammad b. Muḥammad 'Awfi wrote Jawāmi 'ul-Hikāyāt and dedicated it to Sulṭān Iltutmish. The book was started at the order of Nāṣiruddin Qubacha. It is a collection of ancedotes. It contains four books. Each book contains 25 chapters).
- 18. Jāmi ut-Tawārikh by Fāzil al-Bukhāri.
- 19. Jinnat ul-Jāzi by al-Mardini.
- 20. Al-Kashshāf by Zamakhshari. (Abul Qāsim Maḥmud b. 'Umar az-Zama-khshari was born in Khwārazm in 1074 and died in 1143. This book is a commentary on the Holy Qurān).
- 21. Kashf ul-Kurba Fi Sharh Du'a Abi Hurba by Jarullah Ibn Fahd al-Makki (A. 945 H.).
- 22. Kitāb ul-Aghāni.
- 23. Kitāb ul-Adab by al-Hāfiz ad-Dimishqi ibn 'Abdul Boir.
- 24. Kildb ul-Bayan 'An Ḥayāti'l-Haywan by al-Mizzi.
- 25. Kitāb ul-Mufid Fi Akhbār Zabid by Jayyash b. Najah.
- 26. Kildb ut-Tamsil Wa'l Muḥadara by al-Tha'labi. (Abu Manşur Abdul Malik b. Muḥammad b. Ismā'il ath-Tha'labi b. 961—d. 1038. He was a great Imām?.
- 27. Kilāb ul-'Unwān by Abdul Qādir an-Nu'aymi.
- 28. Manāzir ul-Inshā by Khwaja Jahan Gawan.
- 29. Ma'āli l'-Masnadi'l-'Āli supplement to Riyāz ur-Rizwān.
- 30. Manzar ul-Isbān Ft Tarjuma Ibn Khallikān by Yusuf b. Aḥmad b. Muhammad b. Ulhmān.
- 31. Mirāl-i-Sikandari. " Famous history of Gujarāt by Sikandar.
- 32. Mishkat ul-Maşabih by Khatib at-Tabrizi.
- 33. Al-Mu'jam ul-Awsat by at-Tabarani.
- 34. Magamat of Hariri.
- 35. Muruj ud-Pahab by al-Mas'udi,
- 36. Mația ws-Sa'daya by Abdur-Razzāq. (Kamāluddin Abdur-Razzaq of Samarqand was born on 12th Sha'hān 816 = Nov. 3, 1413 is the author of this book. In 1441/42, he was sent to India by Shāh-Rukh on a special mission to the King of Bijanagar (Vijayanagar) which lasted three years and he gives a detailed narrative of this visit in his history. He died in 1482. His history covers a period of 170 years. It is of great importance

APPENDIX 945

because it is the work of one who wrote it first hand and took an active part in many of the events he describes ).

- 37. Nathr ud-Durar by Hajji ad-Dabir.
- 38. Qirān us-Sa'dayn by Amir Khusraw of Delhi. (Abul Hasau Amir b. Amir Sayfuddin Maḥmud Shamsi was born in 651 H. (1253) and died 725 (1325). Quran us-Sa'dayn is a mathnawi in which a poetical account of meeting of Sultān Mu'izzuddin Kaikobād and his father Naşiruddin Bughrā Khān is given.
- 39. Rabi' ul-Ahrar by Zamakhshari.
- 40. Rawzat uş-Şafā by Mirkhwānd (Muhammad b. Khwāndshāh b. Mahmud commonly called Mirkhwānd, the author died on June 22, 1498. It is a general history. It contains seven books. Books vi and vii which deal with the author's own time are of great worth and authority).
- 41. Riyaz ur-Rizwan Fi Mqasiri'l-Masnad'l-'Ali Asaf Khan by Ibn Hajar Haythami.
- 42. Ar-Radd ul-Wafir 'Aldman Aslama by Ibn Nasiruddin.
- 43. Raf'u 'd-Dasisa Biwaz' Hadithi 'l-Harisa by al-Mardini.
- 44. Sharh ul-Uyun wa Sharh Risala Ibn Zaydun by Jamaluddin Muhammad b. Banana.
- 45. Shark Manasiki'l-Namawi by Ibn Hajar al-Haythami,
- 46. Shark ul-'Adab by Iba Hajar Haythami,
- 47. Siyar ul-'Arifin by Darwish Jamali,
- 48. Siyar ul-Nubla by ad-Dahali.
- 49. Ash-Shifa by 'Affjuddin 'Abdullah b. Sa'd as-Sindi.
- 50. Sikandarnāma by Nizami. (A poem of Alexander the Great by Nizāmi of Ganja).
- 51. Tabaqāt-i-Bahādur Shāhi by Husām Khān. (Husāmuddin Khān, the historian was the grandson of Muhāfiz Khān. A very important history consulted by contemporaries and quoted therefrom is lost). (See Index.) It is otherwise known as Tabaqāt-i-Husāmkhāni.
- 52. Tabaqāt ul-Huffāz by Ibn Fahd. (Abul Qāsim b. Aḥmad born 846, died 925. It is a history of those persons who had committed the Holy Qurān to memory. The author has visited Gujarat and Mandu).
- 53. Tabaqāt-i-Nāṣiri by Juzjāni. (The author Minhāj-i-Siraj was born about 1193. In 1226, he came to India and attached himself to Nāṣiruddin Qubacha. He then served Shamsuddin Iltutmish. He wrote this history and dedicated it to Nasiruddin Maḥmud Shāh. It was completed in Sept. 1260. Interesting details are found in his book).

- 54. Takhdir ud-Dat Min Akli'l Kufta Wa'l-Qat by Ibn Hajar Haythami.
- 55. Tārikh ul-'Ajami, an unidentified history written by a Persian in Akbar's reign.
- 56. Tārikh-i-Baghdād by al-Khatib Aḥmad b. Thālit (b. 1002—d. 1071. It is in 14 volumes).
- 57. Tārikh-i-Firuz Shāhi by Ziya Barani. (It is a history by Ziyāuddin Barani, of the kings of Delhi from Sultān Bulbān to 6th year of Firuz Shāh (1265-1357). Born about 684 and died in 758. It is a continuation of Tabaqāt-i-Nāṣiri of Minhāj. Barani begins his history where Minhāj leaves.)
- 58. Tārikh-i-Hāfiz Abru (Khwāja Nuruddin Lutfullāh, author of Tarikh-i-Hafiz Abra was born in Herat. It is known as Zubdat ut-Tawārikh or Majma ut-Tawārikh-i-as-Sultāni. He finished it in 1426/27. He died in 1430.
- 59. Tarikh-i-Hayzam, a history of the Ghurids by Abul Hasan Hayzam b. Muhammad an-Nabi.
- 60. Tarikh-i-Rashidi by Mirzā Haydar Dughlat. (The author was Babur's cousin. It is a book worthy of special notice on account of the high position of its author and his active participation in the making of the history which he narrates, b. 905/1499-1500 and died in 958/1551).
- 61. Tarikh-i-Nāşiri by Bayhaqi. (Abul Fazl Muḥammad b. Husain Bayhaqi, is the author of this history in 30 volumes but only a small portion of it remains. He was born in 386/996 and died in 470/1077. It is not a history in the strict sense of the word of a kingdom or discreet. It is the memories of an officer on the life of his rulers and their court and other matters—external and internal).
- 62. Tarihh-i-Tabari- (Abu Ja'far Muhammad b. Jarir at-Tabari (b. 224/838-39 and d. 310). (His book is the best source of information).
- 63. Tarikh ush-Sham by Muhammad b. Tulun aş-Şālihi.
- 64. Tarikh-i-Yaman by Umāra.
- 65. Tashil us-Sabil Fi Fahm Ma'āni' T-Tanzil by Abul Hasan al-Bakri.
- 66. Timurnāma by Hatifi with illustrations by Bahzāda (Abdullāh was the son of Jāmi's sister. Timurnāma is in celebration of conquests of Timur in an epic. It is also called Zafarnāma).
- 67. Tuhfat us-Sādāt, a lost Indian history by Ārām Kashmiri, dedicated to Sayyid Mubārak Bukhāri. This work was extensively used by the author of Mirāt-i-Sikandari but is only once referred to by name. Hājji ad-Dabir evidently possessed a copy as he frequently quotes from it direct. It must have been composed before A.H. 956 when Sayyid Mubārak to whom it was dedicated died.

- 68. Tuhfat us-Zamān or Futuh ul-Habasha, a history of Imām Ahmad ibn Ibrāhim known as Ahmad Grāfi and his conquest of Abyssinia by Shihāb Ahmad b. Abdul Qādir.
- 69. Tutindma by Nakhshabi.
- 70. Wafydi ul-A'yān by Ibn Khallikān. (Obituaries of Men of Note was begun in Cairo in 1250 and completed on Jan. 4, 1274. It is one of the first books of reference. The author, a scion of the great Barmeeide was born at Arbela in Sept. 1211 and died in 1282).
- 71. Waqi'āl-i-Bāburi. (Memoires of Bābur is one of the best books in world literature).
- 72. Zafarnama
- 73. Ad-Daw ul-Lame Fl A'yani 'l-Carni'T-Tasi'. (It is a rare biographical dictionary of famous men of 9th century Hijra by as-Sakhāwi).
- 74. Zuhr ul-Arish Fi' l-Hashish by Badr az-Zarkashi. (A book on use and misuse of poppy).

### APPENDIX V

Navy: The Sulţāns of Gujarat maintained a navy of their own. Sulţān Aḥmad Shāh I had Mukhlis ul-Mulk as Admiral of the Navy. Khwajā 'Alāuddin was the Amir ul-Bahr (Admiral) under Sulţān Quṭbuddin while Ismā'il Nāybah was Port-Officer at Div. Malik Ayāz was in charge of the Navy under Sulţān Muzaffar. Sulţān Bahadur Shāh had Maḥmud Āqa, Mustafa Bahram Rumi, Khudāwand Khān Safar Sulaimāni, Rajab Khudāwand Khān and Amir Shaikh Burhān ul-Mulk Banbani as Navy-Officers. Qiwām ul-Mulk and Nāṣir Habash Khān were Port-Officers of Div.

When the merchant-ships entered the port, the captain of the ship sent a list of its contents to the Port-Officer. If he thought proper, he informed the Sultan about the contents. The Sultan purchased goods of his choice and then permitted him to dispose of the rest through merchants. The Port-Officer did not allow any ship to enter the port unless he was completely satisfied with it. If it was not in a perfect condition, he did not allow it to enter in or depart from the port.

A permit was necessary for the passenger to enter the port. Ships were of three categories—passenger, merchandise and war.

History of use of Cannon in India; I. It was invented by the Arabs of Spain in 5th century Hijra. 2. Prince Saifuddawala son of Mahmud Ibrahim Ghaznawi (died 492 H. = 1098 A.C.) used it in the Battle of Agra. 'Aläuddin Khalji also made use of it. In 771 H. = 1369, King of Vijayanagar used it against Muḥammad Shah Bahmani. He got it from the Turks who visited the coast. Bahmanis included it in their armaments. A Sistāni Turk founded its factory where cannons were moulded (Ferishta II, Maḥammud Shāh Bahmani's account). 3. Sultān Aḥmad Shāh I introduced it in Gujarat. He established the department of Artillery drawn by elephants. Horses and bullocks also pulled it. He was followed by Sultān Maḥmud I Begado. Sultān Bahadur Shāh was very fond of cannons. Rumi Khān had named two cannons as Laila and Majnu.

Madresas: Scholars such as Shāh Bārekullah Chishti (d. 1442), Shaikh Rahmatullāh Chisti (d. 1475), Spiritual Director of Sulţān Maḥmud I, Shaikh Jamāluddin alias Jamman (d. 1533), Shaikh Aḥmad Kabir Mushtāqullāh (b. 1479—d. 1559) etc. had founded madresas. Other madresas were at Uthmanpur, Khān Sarowar at Naharwala, Sarkhej, Marjān Shami madresa etc.

#### INDEX

(Thanks to Sir Denison Ross whose index proved very useful to me and saved my time and labour).

#### A

- Abaji akhurbeg to Jalal Firuz (695H) p. 641
- Abbas ibn Sish, the Ghurid p. 531
- 'Abdul 'Aziz mir Akhur to Bābur, present at the battle of Panipat (932H) pp 782, 783
- 'Abdul al-Munayyari, acting governor of Surat (968H) pp. 387, 388, 389
- 'Abdul Fattah Qazwini, emissary between Āsaf Khān and the Şāḥib of Mekka pp. 305, 327
- 'Abdul Jabbar, son of Qazi Luqmanud-Din al Khwarazmi with Amir Timur (801H) p. 753
- 'Abdul Karim ibn 'Usmān of Duwāru p. 480
- 'Abdul Karim Fulād Khān of Burhānpur see Fulād Khān
- 'Abdul Karim I'timād Khān Sultāni see I'timād Khān
- 'Abdul Khāliq son of 'Abdul Qādir al-Abbasi p. 510
- 'Abdullāh b. Amir b. Kariz how he captured Nishapur by ruse in the reign of Khalifa 'Usmān p. 822
- 'Abdulläh, son of Hulägu's daughter invades Hindustän (691H) p. 822
- 'Abdullah b. Salama, Shaykh of Mawza' (922H) p. 42
- 'Abdullah, the Nubian, standard-bearer (967H) p. 377
- 'Abdullah II of the Bani Ziyad in Zabid (371H) p. 83
- 'Abdullāh Aişah Khān p. 495
- 'Abdullāh A'zam Humāyun p. 377

- 'Abduliāh Khān Uzbek arrives in Broach (971H) p. 396 Flees from Māndu to Changiz Khān in Broach (971H) p. 397 Attacks the Portuguese in Daman, escapes to Ankleshwar; his experience with a Brahman woman pp. 398, 434
- 'Abdullāh Kitābdār, Amir present at battle of Panipat (932H) p. 781 with Humāyun in his expedition against Rānā Sanga (933H) p. 783, General of Bābur at Khandwa (933H) p. 785
- 'Abdullah Malik master of the elephants. p. 14
- 'Abdullāh Muhammed b. 'Umar al-Makki Ulughkhāni, the author of this history. See under Author
- 'Abdul Latif ibn Muhammed Saljuqi al-Madani, close friend of the Author, Secretary to Rajab Salmāni p. 355 After the death of Rajab Salmāni joins Ulugh Khān, p. 357 Secretary to Chingiz Khān, pp. 375, 418. Once saw Rustam Khān laugh! p. 464
- 'Abdul Malik, brother of 'Aynul Mulk Fulādi, killed in (918H) p. 91
- 'Abdul Malik, son of 'Abdul Qādir al-Abbāsi p. 510
- 'Abdul Malik, son of Asad Khan, captured and killed (974H) p. 410
- 'Abdul Matik ibn al-Malik manşur, brother of al-Malik az-Zafir, enters Zabid (922H) p. 38. Enters Aden p. 42

'Abdul Malik Multāni, killed at siege of Ranthambhor (700H) p. 670

'Abdul Qadir ibn Faraj an-Najari of Aden, p. 36

'Abdul Qādir al-'Abbasi married author's cousin p. 510

'Abdul Qādir Mughli, p. 76

'Abdul Wahhab, bin Abi Bakr al-Yāfai', p. 475

'Abdul Wahhāb, son of Al-Malik az-Zāfir, p. 39, dies in Ta'izz (922H), p. 40

'Abdul, Wahhāb Multāni with Āşaf Khān in Mekka, pp. 295, 329

'Abdun-Nabi al-Maghribi, Malik-ut-Tujjār in Cambay, p. 57

'Abdur Rahim Khān-i-Khānān, p. 59

'Abdur Rahman, see Sädat Khan

'Abdur Rahmān, an Arab in service of Ulugh Khān Muḥammed, nicknamed 'Bedouin', p. 377

'Abdur Rahman son of Sikander Sur, the Afghan, p. 889

'Abdur Rashid Khān, son of Sultān Sa'eed of Kāshghar sends envoys to Humāyun (955H), p. 863. For sometime in service of Humāyun; deserts him at Mālwa, p. 888

'Abdush-Shukur, General of Bābur at Khānwah (933H), p. 785

'Abduş-Şamad see Afzal Khan

'Abd Ush-Shā'ir in service of Ulugh Khān, son of Tughluq Shah, p. 712

Abruli on the Jumna, p. 760

Abu Mount, p. 12. The Rāi of Abu Fort and the horses, pp. 29, 730

Abu 'Abdullāh Muhammed bin 'Abd ud-Dā'im b. Muhammed b. Salāma al-Anṣāri (born 732H—died 797), p. 460

Abu 'Abdullāh Muhammed an-Najjār, Author of supplement Khatib Baghdādi's History of Baghdād, p. 533 Abu'ali 'Abdur Raḥim al-Lakhmi al-Asqalāni vazir to Şalāh ud-Din Yusuf (born 529, died 596H), p. 209

Abu'ali Sish ibn Muhammed, King of Ghur, p. 532

Abu 'Ali Ziyāuddin Muhammed b.
'Alā ud-Din Abu 'Ali b. Shuja
ud-Din 'Ali b. 'Izz ud-Din
Ḥusaini; cousin and son-in-law of
Ghiyāsuddin, made governor of
Nishāpur, p. 545

Abu Bakr, one of three brothers who came to 'Ala ud Din Khalji from Khurāsān, p. 742

Abu Bakr, atābek of Diyār Bakr, his daughter married to Jalāl ud-Din Mangubarni, p. 570

Abu Bakr son of al-Malik az-Zāfir, taken prisoner, p. 43

Abu Bakr b. al-Afit al-Idrus, p. 106
Abu Bakr b. Zafar Khān b. Firuz
Shah ascends the throne of Delhi
(791H) p. 748. Flees from Delhi
to Kutila (792H); defeated by
Humāyun Khān, son of Muhammed
Shāh, son of Firuz, p. 749

Abuhar on road from Delhi to Multan, p. 587

Abul Fath Vazir to Sayyid Hamid Bukhāri, p. 433

Abul Fath Muhammed b. Muhammed b. 'Ali b. Sālik b. 'Usmān b. Muhammed al-Sikandari al-Mizzi, PP- 33, 34

Abul Fazl, the historian of Akbar, p. 80 In disagreement with Author of Mirāt-i-Sikandari, p. 199. His account of Sher Shāh origin quoted, p. 791. See Akbar Nama

Abul Fazl al-Astarābādi, p. 280

Abul Fazl al-Kazaruni who wrote a commentary on Bayzāwi, p. 280
Abul Hasan b. Salim, Sufi saint, p. 711

Abul Hasan Hayzam b. Muhammed al-Nabi, author of a history of the Ghurids, p. 534

Abul Hasan Muhammed al-Bakri (Shaykh) a friend of Aşaf Khan in Mekka, pp. 296, 502, 521

Abul Ma'āli Shāh is introduced to Humayun in Qunduz (958H), p. 873. Claims credit for the victory of Sirhind (962H), p. 883. Receives Vilayat of the Panjab from Humāyun after his re-entry into Delbi (Ramzan 962 H). Detail not given by Abul Fazl (see Beveridge, p. 635), p. 884; joins Akbar on his expedition against Sikandar Sur (933 H); he complains that Akbar does not treat him with the familiarity he had been accustomed to receive from Humayun, and is reproved by Akbar for confounding the laws of state and the laws of affection, p. 884. Imprisoned by Biram Khān (963 H), p 888

Abul Makārim Khwāja opens gates of Samarqand to Bābur (906 H), p. 772

Abul Qāsim Amir, surrenders Gwālior to Sher Shāh, p. 833. In Mānkot (965 H), p. 890

Abul Qāsim Ismā'il at-Tāliqāni, Vazir to Fakhr ud-Dawlab, the Buwayhid, p. 200

Abul Qāsim Miraki writes poems on death of Hājji Khān and 'Abdul Malik (974H), p. 411

Abu Muhammed Nizā Bäz present at battle of Panipat (932 H), p. 782

Abu Muslim 'Abdur Rahmān originally Abu Ishāq Ibrāhim born in Isfahān (100 H) educated in Kufa. His exploits in Khurāsān, pp. 128-134, 374, 531 Abu Najā Muhammed at-Tayyib, a learned man of Zabid, uncle and preceptor of Ibn ad-Dayba', p. 45

Abu Numayy ibn Barakāt, Sultan of Hejāz, his friendship with Āşaf Khān, p. 242. Lord of Mekka, Sultān of Hejāz under Ottoman rule (943 H), pp. 276-311; see Asaf Khan

Abu Sahl b. Ziyād al Qaṭān, p. 238 Abus-Salātin see Izzuddin Husayn.

Abu Tähir Ismā'il al-Iskandari eulogist of Salāhuddin Yusuf, p. 209

Abu Turāb Shāh al-'Urayzi al-Husayni, p. In service of Chingiz Khān, p. 402. He and Sayyid Hāmid seek an interview with I'timād Khān, pp. 406. Sent by I'timād to the Mughals (980 H), p. 408, 409. Advises I'timād not to run away, pp. 469, 491; dies in Ahmedābad where he was Sadr us-Saltana, p. 495

Abu Yusuf ibn Yaqut poet, p. 355
Abyan a landing-place near Aden,
where there were fresh watersprings, pp. 36, 41

Adam Sultān Gakkar, p. 833. Writes to inform Humāyun of Kāmrān's presence at his court, p. 875. Waits on Akbar in Lahore (964 H), p. 889

Addole name of a vazir pp. 468, 480, 482

Aden threatened by the Portuguese, p. 36. Attacked by Portugues (17th Muharram 919), p. 37. Amir Husayn and Salman reach (1315 Rajab 922), p. 41

Adham Juzrawāni kills Tumān Sultān, brother of Jani Beg Sultān (919 H), p. 776

Adham Khān killed (981 H), p. 495 Adigir name of an elephant, pp. 321, 335. Elephant of Ulugh Khān, pp. 363, 369. Goes 'mast' in battle, pp. 370, 378. Offered to Ulugh Khān, p. 410, with Ulugh Khān in (980 H), p. 442

'Adil Khan eldest son of Sher Khan, p. 835

'Adil Khan Lord of Meerat (802 H), P. 754

'Ādil Khān servant of Chinghiz Khān, p. 411

'Adil Khan I son of Naşir Khan of Khandesh, dies in (844 H), p. 49 'Adil Khan II 'Ayna' of Khandesh, came to the throne in (861 H). A friend of Mahmud Beghada, p. 49. Dies in (907 H). Buried in Dawlat Maidan, p. 50

'Adil Khan III A'zam Humayun—
formerly 'Alam Khan, son of Ahsan
Khan ascends his throne in Burhanpur in (914 H), p. 34. Established
himself in Asir in (916 H). Dies in
(926 H) buried in Burhanpur, p. 55.
During the siege of Mandu is placed
in command of forces sent against
Rana Sanga in Ujjain (923 H), p. 95.
Follows Rana Sanga as far as
Dibalpur (924 H), p. 97

'Ādil Khān Mahmud Shirwāni Bangi, pp. 378, 393, 405. In Broach (975 H), pp. 427, 465

'Ādil Khān Qaramāni in service of 'Imād ul-Mulk Aslān, pp. 314, 315, 316, 317, 319, 320, 328, 331, 339. Envoy from 'Imād to 'Ālam, accepts horse, refuses Khil'at, pp. 340, 341, 350. Intermediary between 'Imād and Rajab Salmāni, p. 354. Asks to be killed after 'Imād's death (966 H), p. 355

'Adil Shāh III, Lord of Asir (Raja Ali Khān of Khandesh) joins the Mughals against Shāhs of Bijāpur and Golconda (1003 H), his death, p. 72. Killed in battle (1003 H), buried in Burhanpur, p. 73

'Adil Shah Ibrahim II of Bijapur, p. 66. His daughter married to Husayn, son of Nizam Shah, pp. 154, 158. In a battle (1003 H), p. 159

'Adil Sultān, son of Mahdi Sultān, p. 780. Present at battle of Panipat (932 H), p. 781. With Humāyun in his expedition against Rānā Sāngā (933 H), p. 783. General of Bābur at Khānwa (933H), p. 785

Afghans their rough and coarse ways; compared with the Gujaratis, p. 231 Contingent of pp. 344, 391 4000 under Sher Khan (980 H), p. 459

Afsah Khān, Sa'id Firāwn Sultani, pp. 328, 334 (967H), 374.

Afzal, b. Mir Sultān 'Ali Khwāb-bin, envoy from Sultān Husayn Mirzā to Bābur (912 H), p. 778.

Afzal Khān 'Abdus-Samad Bimbāni. ibn Mahmood the dabir, with Bahadur in (941H), pp. 201, 224 (945 H), 230. Loses a ship in the port of Khandari which belonged to Khudāwand Khān (Şafar), only one case of gold ashrafis is lost; he seeks compensation, pp. 231, 232. Gives up the vazirat (954 H), p. 239. Offends I'timäd Khān by commenting on the retinue of Muhammad Jiv, for whom he had nearly dismounted in the street, thinking it must be the Saltan himself. I'timad Khān is very angry and sends Afzal Khān away to Chāmpāner dressed as a darvish, pp. 248, 252. Is offered the vazirat by Burhanuddin, who says he is now the Sultan. Afzal replied, "Oh enemy of God, let me enter Paradise with my two friends." pp. 254, 271, (pp. 276-331).

INDEX 953

- Afzal Khān Hasan Muhammed, vazir to Bahādur Shāh of Khāndesh, p. 73. Remains true to 'Ādil Shāh III's memory, p. 78.
- Afzal ud-Din son of Jalai ud-Din al-Kāshi with Amir Timur (801 H), P. 753.
- Äghā Farrukhshād (see Fath Jang Khān).
- Agra, p. 592. Made the capital of India by Sikander Ludi, pp. 706, 768.
- Ahmad b. 'Ali, Rumi, gunner in service of Humāyun at Qanawj, p. 827.
- Ahmad son of Bahman Shāh said to be the father of Firuz Shāh and Ahmed Shāh, p. 142.
- Ahmad son of Khwaja Jahan Muhammed and 'Ala ud-Din Bahman's daughter, becomes vazir to Mahmud. son of 'Ala ud-Din. Quarrels with his master and goes to Dawlatabad. where the Shavkh, Shah Zain ud-Din greets him with the title of Raja Ahmad. He goes to Delhi. where Muhammed Shāh ibn Firuz Shah, in return for a cooling drink while hunting tells him to demand a favour and he chooses a village in Thalner called Karund, wither he proceeds in (781 H). Dies in (801 H) and is burried in Thainer. (His rule in Burhanpur dates from 784 H. and he ruled for 17 years), p. 48.
- Ahmad b. Muhammed b. Muzaffar, King of Gujarat (founder of Ahmedābād), p. 1. Appealed to by Firuz Bahmani for help against Rām Rāy (825 H). Reference to our Author's account of his reign which has been lost, p. 144.
- Ahmad b. Musā b. 'Ujayl al-Gamani, Sufi Saint, p. 711.

Ahmad brother of Firuz Shah Bahmani, Khan-i-Khanan, p. 144. Dies in (838 H), p. 145.

Ahmadābād, p. r. Capital of Gujarāt in reign of Ahmed I, pp. 28, 201, 312, 313, 315, 318, 319. Fighting between factions (975 H), p. 419. Battle round (981 H), pp. 491-495.

Ahmad Ayaz Khwaja Jahan, Governor of Delhi, p. 717. With Firuz Shah in (745 H), pp. 728, 734. Surrender to Firuz Shah, p. 744.

Ahmad Beg Sufi Ughli General sent by Shāh Ismā'il to help Bābur, p. 773.

- Ahmad Chap Shihāb ud-Din, bārbak, p. 623. Accompanies Malika-i-Jahān to Multān, p. 642. Blinded on the way back from Multān and taken captive to Delhi, p. 644.
- Ahmad Qanjagi saint of Ahmedabad, p. 125.
- Ahmad Quran, Shihāb ud-Din Ahmad ibn Ibrahim, his life and his conquest of Abyssinia, copied from Tuhfat-uz-Zamān, pp. 473-496.
- Ahmad Parwanchi presented at the battle of Panipat (932 H), pp. 781, 782.
- Ahmad Khān, son of Mahmud I ol Gujarat, p. 23.
- Ahmad Khān son of Ulugh Khān Muhammed and 'Ambar Nasim, p. 439. Buried in Sarkhej, p. 472.
- Ahmad Khān Sur Sikandar Amir of Panjāb (960 H), a relative of Sher Shāh, p. 838. Defeats Ibrahim Sur near Agra, occupies throne (962 H), hears of Humāyun's return, p. 839. Advances to encounter Humāyun at Sirhind, p. 882. After his defeat at Sirhind flees to the Panjāb Hills, p. 883. Besieged by Akbar in Mankot, p. 886. Submits to Akbar and obtains the fields of Kharid and Bihar, p. 889.

Ahmad Lad, in service of Bahadur, p. 208.

Ahmadnagar, pp. 17, 135. Besieged by Siege of Prince Murad, p. 152.

( 1004 H), pp. 153, 320.

Ahmad Shāh II son of Latif Khān, King of Gujarat, accession (961 H), pp. 312, 318. Joins Sayyid Mubārak in Mahmudābād, p. 830. Goes over to Sayyid Mubarak, p. 345. loins I'timad (966 H), p. 351. Dics in (Sha'ban, 967 H), p. 383. Murdered by Wajih ul-Mulk, p. 384.

Ahmadshāh son of Muhammed Shāh succeeds in (944 H) as a child in arms to Khandesh, p. 56.

Ahmad Shāb grand son of Nasir ud-Din, made governor of Chanderi, (934 H), p. 786.

Ahmad Shah II Bahmani (927-929 H),

Ahmad Shāmiu Sultān receives Humāyun at Persian frontier (950 H). p. 840.

Ahsan Khān Andr of Mewat, p. 108.

Ahsan Khan son of Qaysar Khan, married daughter of Mahmud Beghada, p. 49.

'Aisha, danghter of Safar Khudawand Khān and wife of Imad ul-Mulk. pp. 350, 353.

Ajdar Khān son of Ulugh Khān Sohrab suspected of murder of Qaysar but exonerated, p. 25.

Ajdar Khān son of Malek ush-Sharq, p. 500.

Ajdar ul-Mulk ordered by I'timad to murder l'tibar ul-Mulk (see under Razi ul-Mulk ), pp. 388, 391.

Ajmir, p. 12, captured by Mahmud Khalji (858 H) and given to his son A'zami-Humāyun, p. 173.

Ajud a gate of Delli, p. 628.

Ajudhan, p. 743.

Akarsin a Purbiya chief, pp. 96, 103. Akasi, pp. 336, 350.

Akāsi Basai, p. 30 (see Bassein).

Akbar (Jalal ud-Din Muhammad). Emperor of Hindustan, sends force to capture Bijanagar, p. 59. Goes from Fatepur to Burhanpur, p. 74. Sultan of Delhi, p. 345. Arrives at Mandu, pp. 397, 407. Arrives in Naharwāla Patan (1st Rajab, 980H). Reaches Mahmudābād (6th Rajab), writes to Sher Khan and to Ulugh Khān, p. 455. Distributes largesse in Patan and his name is read in masjid of Farhat ul-Mulk (7th Rajab, 980 H). He appoints Sayyid Ahmad Barha, amir of Patan and proceeds to Kadi, p. 457. Remarks on death of Sayl Khan Koka, p. 405. Travels from Agra to Gujarat on a Bakhti camel, p. 500. Curious incident during the siege of Asir by Akbar, p. 784. Born in Amarkot (950 H) while Humāvun is in flight, p. 832. The infant visited in Mastang, p. 833. Aftar departure of Khānzāda Begum with Biram Khān remains in the house of the Begum, p. 846. The child exposed by Kamran on the walls of Kābul in order to silence the enemies' guns, p. 856. Aged 10, is given the fief which belonged to Hindal Mirzā (958 H); list of Hindāl's servants who entered service of Akbar, p. 874. Fights his first battle (962 H) against Kālā Pahār, brother of Sikander Sur, p. 883. Sent to drive Sikander Sur and the Afghans out of the Punjab hills, p. 884. While encamped near Mankot receives news of Humayun's accident and death (963 H), p. 886. After his accession remains three months

in Dhamri, p. 888. Leaving Dharim spends five months in Jälandhar. Marches from Jälandhar! halts at Sirhind, where he is joined by Tardi Beg and Sikander Khān, defeats Himu at battle of Bayāna (964 H), p. 889. Arrives in Delhi from Sāmāna on (25th Jumāda II, 965 H).

Akbarnama, by Abul Fazl quoted, pp. 195, 196, 199. Digression from the narrative of events in (942 H), p. 201. Version given in it of Bahādur's death, p. 223. Quotation from, p. 401. Our Author's narrative of events from accession of Bābur beginning on this page down to the accession of Akbar are in the main a translation of the Akbar Nāma. There is, however, a digression on the history of Bengal extending from p. 793 to 818 which is based first on Juzajāni, then on Husām Khān, then on Barani, pp. 778, 756.

'Alam Khan, ruler of Samana and Ajodhan (802 H), p. 755. Besieges Dholpur (806 H), p. 756.

'Ālam Khān deserts from Mahmud Khalji to Bahādur (937 H), p. 167.

'Ālam Khān son of Ahsan Khān, son of Qaysar, son of Ghaznin, son of Hasan, son of Raja Ahmad of Khandesh and nephew of Mahmud Beghada, pp. 47, 49. Becomes regent (912 H). Asks his mother to beg her father Mahmud to restore him to the throne of his father, p. 51. Becomes 'Azam Humāyun 'Ādil Khān III of Khandesh, p. 53. See 'Ādil Khān III.

'Ålam Khān, son oi 'Ålam Khān Faruqi killed before Girnāi (874 H), p. 19. Governor of Goa (867 H), p. 148. 'Ålam Khān son of Sher Shāh, p. 810.

AHSI

\*Alam Khān (Sultān) 'Alaud-Din son of Sultān Bahlol Ludi, is invited to Delhi to take the place of Ibrāhim (930 H), p. 107. Comes from Gujarāt to Jaunpur, p. 768. Ascends the throne of Delhi with title of 'Alā ud-Din (931 H), p. 770. Joins Bābur and is with him at battle of Pānipat (932 H), p. 771. Put to death by Mahmud III (950 H), p. 270.

'Ālam Khān Dasāriya, p. 380.

'Alam Khan Ludi, see Sultan 'Alam Ludi.

'Ālam Khān Ludi, Lord of Dhandhuka, son of Mir Muhammed Alam Khān. Joins 'Imad ul-Mulk (Q42 H), p. 213. One of Bahadur's nobles in (941 H), pp. 218, 227. Becomes Lieutenant of the kingdom (045 H). p. 228. After the murder of Chiriu plots to remove Mahmud III. The other nobles hearing of this, plunder the home of 'Alam Khan, who is in the midst of a drunken debauch. p. 229. Escapes from Ahmedābād and joins Darya Khan in Mandu. p. 230. Joins Sher Shah, p. 232. Friend of Darva Khan, pp. 265, 268. commander-in-Chief to Becomes Mahmud III, p. 270. Returns from Delhi to Gujarat in (961 or 962 H), pp. 313-316. Narrative of his doings according to Mirat-i-Sikandari, pp. 313-316, 320-321. Aspires to Vazirat, p. 330. Tries to reach Baroda, pp. 331, 335. Killed in fight with elephont (963 H), p. 345.

'Alam Khān Luri in service of 'Ādil Shāh of Khāndesh ( 1001 H ), p. 67. 'Alam Shāh of Burhānpur, p. 51.

'Ālam Shāh brother of Qatlagh Khān, Governor of Seogir, p. 141. Alamnt the Ismā'ili stronghold, origin of name, p. 216.

'Alaud-din see 'Alam Khan, son of Bahlol Ludi

'Alaud-din son of Ahmad Bahmani p. 145. Dies (880H), p. 147

'Alaud-din nephew of Jalal Firuz, fears his wife's intrigues with her father, Jalal Firuz, p. 632.

'Alaud-din son of Ghiyas ud-Din Khalji, p. 180,

'Alaud-Din b. Muhammed Khizr Khān, Sultān of Delhi comes to throne (847H), p. 765. Dies (881H), p. 766.

'Alaud-din son of Yaghrish Khan, p. 627. Marries daughter of Jalal Firuz; attacks Bhilsa, (691H), p. 627.

'Alaud-din 'Ali (generally called Muhammed), son of Nasr Khalii. the first Muslim ruler to enter the Dekkan, p. 137. Dies (711H), p. 138. On his march to Delhi in (095H) shoots gold coins among the people from his catapult, p. 641. Ascends the throne in 19th Dhul Hijj, 695), p. 644. Imprisons the wives and children of the Mongol rebels. Such reprisals, according to Ziauddin, hitherto unknown in Islam, p. 651. His vast ambitions and his boastful utterances, p. 653. Hearing of Nusrat Khān's death proceeds to Ranthambhor, halts on the way at Tilhbat to hunt, p. 660. Attacked while hunting by Ikit Khān, is saved by his slaves after receiving two slight arrow wounds. p. 661. In (707 H) freed from anxiety regarding the Mongols. contemplates new conquests. He sends an expedition against Deogir, p. 675. List of his chief officers and advisers, p. 651. Dies (6th Shawwāl, 711H). (All other historians give 715 or 716 H). Amir Khusraw says 7th Shawwāl, 715 H, p. 684.

'Alā ud-din 'Ali Mubārak king of Lakhnawati (739 H), killed (740 H), p. 811.

'Alā ud-din 'Askari (Husayn Shāh), king of Bengal, dies (929 H), p. 817

'Alā ud-din 'Ayāz Zinjāni p. 592. Governor of New Fort, Delhi, p. 663.

'Alā ud-din Bahman Shāh Hasan Gangu, conquers the Dekkan in (748 H), marries his daughter to Muhammed Khwāja Jahān, his Vazir, pp. 47, 142.

'Alā ud-din Bahrām Shāh son of Nasiruddin (Qabacha), p. 572.

'Alā ud-din Fath Khan son of Fath Khān of Rādhanpur, p. 230.

"Alā ud-din Ghuri, p. 531. Captures and sacks Ghazna; his extempore poems, pp. 536, 537. From his cruelty and excesses called "Jahānsoz", demands chains of gold when captured by Sultān Sanjar, p. 536. With Sultān Sanyar, p. 538.

'Alā ud-din Husayn, Brother of Bahādur Sām, p. 535.

'Alâ ud-din Jāni, becomes Viceroy in Lakhnawati, p. 574. Governor of Lāhore in (633), p. 576. Governor of Bengal (626-627), p. 569.

'Alā ud-din Mahmud Bahmani, dies in (862 H), pp. 147, 150.

'Alā ud-din Mas'ud, son of Ruknud-Din, son of Iltamish ascends throne in (639 H), p. 583. Releases his uncles Jalāl ud-Din and Nasirud-Din (641 H), p. 584. Takes to bad ways and is deposed in (641H), p. 585. INDEX 957

- 'Alä ud-din Muhammed, b. Bahrud-Din Säm offered throne of Ghazna on death of Mu'izzud-Din, p. 566.
- 'Alä ud-din Muhammed, son of Kishli Khān, Aybak, Ulugh Bārbak succeeds to his father's office (657), p. 593.
- 'Alä ud-din Qamaj Sanjari, Lord of Balkh, p. 542.
- 'Alā ud-din Sohrāb Sultāni see 'Alā ul-Mulk Ulugh Khān Sohrāb Sultani.
- 'Alā ud-din sultān brother of Sikander Ludi, put to death by Mahmnd III (950 H), p. 270. See 'Ālam Khān 'Alā ud-din Takash, son of 11 Arsalān

'Alā ud-din Takash, son of 11 Arsalān Khwārazm Shāb, p. 544.

- 'Alā ud-din Zāda sent as envoy to Bukhārā by Mahmud Khalji, p. 177. 'Alā ul-mulk, Lord of Multan, died (826 H), p. 760.
  - 'Alä ul-mulk, Kotwäl of Delhi, uncle of Ziāuddin Barni, left in charge of Karra by 'Alud-Din, nephew of Jalāl Firuz, p. 633. Becomes Kotwāl of Delhi in (696 H), p. 644. Owing to his corpulence only waited on 'Alāud-Din on the New Moon; his sermon to 'Alāud-Din pp. 653, 654. His first lecture pp. 656, 681.
  - 'Alā ul-mulk Ulugh Khān Sohrāb Sultāni, leaves Mahmud Khalji, p. 2. Receives title after his rejoining Outbuddin, pp. 5, 9.
  - 'Āli Amir, Sarjāndār, Lord of Oudh, joins Kishli Khān in his revolt against Jalālud-Din firuz (689 H), p. 622.

'Ali b. abi Tālib, p. 349.

- 'Ali b. al Fazl al-Qarmali attacks Zabid, p. 82.
- 'Ali ibn 'Isā, Vazir to the Khalifa al-Muqtadir and Qābir, p. 238.
- 'Ali beg, reputed descendant of Chingiz Khan, p. 672.

'Ali Beg Jalair, Shaykh killed in battle against king of Tattha (950 H), p. 832.

'Ali Dust, Barbegi, p. 876.

Alif Khan, p. 167.

- Alif Khān al-Khatri (961 H.), pp. 314, 319, 326 attacks Broach, pp. 339, 341.
- 'Ali Khan Mandwali Sayyid Baranahar of Mandu flees from Malwa, p. 181. His son remains in Malwa, p. 183. Amir of Broach surprised by the Portuguese in (954) and dismissed from his post by Mahmud III, pp. 240, 339, 409.
- 'Ali Khān Qarmāli General of Bābur at Khanwa (933 H), p. 785.
- 'Ali Khān Uzbeg Commander-in-Chief at battle of Bayāna receives title of Khān az-Zamān (964 H), p. 889.
- Ali Khitati sent to fetch Kishlu Khān from Sind (725 H), p. 715.
- 'Ali Manbaj Amir acts as guide to Ikhtiyar ud-Din, p. 796.
- 'Ali Mardān al-Khalji in Lakhnawati, p. 564. Stabs Ikhtiyār ud-Din, p. 798. Flees to Qutbuddin in Delhi, returns to Deokot, defeats and kills Muhammad Shirān, king of Lakhnawati, p. 798.
- 'Ali Mujir ud-Din Abu Rija appointed to offices in Deogir, p. 693.
- 'Ali Shah, sister's son to Zafar Khan Khalji, revolts in the Dekkan, p.
- 'Ali Shāh son of 'Alāud-Din Takash, taken prisoner by Ghiyāsuddin, p. 545.
- 'Ali Shir, son of Qiwam ul-Mulk (938 H), p. 115.
- 'Ali Sultān of Kashmir, taken prisoner (824 H), p. 760.
- 'Ali Quli Ustad chief of artillery in Mughal army, p. 78r.

Alamut the Ismā'ili stronghold, origin of name, p. 216.

'Alaud-din see 'Alam Khan, son of Bahlol Ludi

'Alaud-din son of Ahmad Bahmani p. 145. Dies (880H), p. 147

'Alaud-din nephew of Jalal Firuz, fears his wife's intrigues with her father, lalal Firuz, p. 632.

'Alaud-din son of Ghiyas ud-Din Khalji, p. 180.

'Alaud-Din b. Muhammed Khizr Khan, Sultan of Delhi comes to throne (847H), p. 765. Dies (881H), p. 766.

'Alaud-din son of Yaghrish Khān, p. 627. Marries daughter of Jalal Firuz; attacks Bhilsa, (691H), p. 627.

'Ali (generally called 'Alaud-din Muhammed), son of Naşr Khalji, the first Muslim ruler to enter the Dekkan, p. 137. Dies (711H), p. 138. On his march to Delhi in (695H) shoots gold coins among the people from his catapula, p. 641. Ascends the throne in 19th Dhul Hijj, 695), p. 644. Imprisons the wives and children of the Mongol rebels. Such reprisals, according to Ziauddin, hitherto unknown Islam, p. 651. His vast ambitions and his boastful utterances, p. 653. Hearing of Nuşrat Khan's death proceeds to Ranthambhor, halts on the way at Tilhbat to hunt, p. 660. Attacked while hunting by lkit Khān, is saved by his slaves after receiving two slight arrow wounds. p. 661. In (707 H) freed from anxiety regarding the Mongols, contemplates new conquests. He sends an expedition against Deogir, p. 675. List of his chief officers and advisers, p. 651. Dies (6th Shawwāl, 711H). (All other historians give 715 or 716 H). Amir Khusraw says 7th Shawwāl, 715 H, p. 684.

'Alā ud-din 'Ali Mubārak king of Lakhnawati (739 H), killed (740 H), p. 811.

'Alā ud-din 'Askari (Husayn Shāh), king of Bengal, dies (929 H), p. 817 'Alā ud-din 'Ayāz Zinjāni p. 592.

Governor of New Fort, Delhi, p. 663.

'Alā ud-din Bahman Shāh Hasan Gangu, conquers the Dekkan in (748 H), marries his daughter to Muhammed Khwāja Jahān, his

Vazir, pp. 47, 142.

'Alā ud-din Bahrām Shāh son of Nasiruddin (Qabacha), p. 572.

'Alā ud-din Fath Khan son of Fath Khān of Rādhanpur, p. 230.

'Alā ud-din Ghuri, p. 531. Captures and sacks Ghazna; his extempore poems, pp. 536, 537. From his cruelty and excesses called "Jahānsoz", demands chains of gold when captured by Sultān Sanjar, p. 536. With Sultān Sanyar, p. 538.

'Alā ud-din Husayn, Brother of Bahādur Sām, p. 535.

'Alā ud-din Jāni, becomes Viceroy in Lakhnawati, p. 574. Governor of Lāhore in (633), p. 576. Governor of Bengal (626-627), p. 569.

'Alā ud-din Mahmud Bahmani, dies in (862 H), pp. 147, 150.

'Alā ud-din Mas'ud, son of Ruknud-Din, son of Iltamish ascends throne in (639 H), p. 583. Releases his uncles Jalāl ud-Din and Nasirud-Din (641 H), p. 584. Takes to bad ways and is deposed in (641H), p. 585. INDEX 957

- 'Aiā ud-din Muhammed, b. Bahrud-Din Sām offered throne of Ghazna on death of Mu'izzud-Din, p. 566.
- 'Alā ud-din Muhammed, son of Kishli Khān, Aybak, Ulugh Bārbak succeeds to his father's office (657), p. 593.
- 'Alā ud-din Qamaj Sanjari, Lord of Balkh, p. 542.
- 'Alā ud-din Sohrāb Sultāni see 'Alā ul-Mulk Ulugh Khān Sohrāb Sultani.
- 'Alā ud-din sultān brother of Sikander Ludi, put to death by Mahmnd III (950 H), p. 270. See 'Ālam Khān 'Alā ud-din Takash, son of 11 Arsalān

'Alā ud-din Takash, son of 11 Arsalān Khwārazm Shāh, p. 544.

'Alā ud-din Zāda sent as envoy to Bukhārā by Mahmud Khalji, p. 177. 'Alā ul-mulk, Lord of Multan, died

(826 H), p. 760.

- 'Alā ul-mulk, Kotwāl of Delhi, uncle of Ziāuddin Barni, left in charge of Karra by 'Alud-Din, nephew of Jalāl Firuz, p. 633. Becomes Kotwāl of Delhi in (696 H), p. 644. Owing to his corpulence only waited on 'Alāud-Din on the New Moon; his sermon to 'Alāud-Din pp. 653, 654. His first lecture pp. 656, 681.
- 'Alā ul-mulk Ulugh Khān Sohrāb Sultāni, leaves Mahmud Khalji, p. 2. Receives title after his rejoining Qutbuddin, pp. 5, 9.
- Ali Amir, Sarjandar, Lord of Oudh, joins Kishli Khan in his revolt against Jalalud-Din firuz (689 H), p. 622.

'Ali b. abi Tālib, p. 349.

- 'Ali b. al Fazl al-Qarmali attacks Zabid, p. 82.
- 'Ali ibn 'Isa, Vazir to the Khalifa al-Muqtadir and Qahir, p. 238.
- 'Ali beg, reputed descendant of Chingiz Khān, p. 672.

'Ali Beg Jalair, Shaykh killed in battle against king of Tattha (950 H), p. 832.

'Ali Dust, Barbegi, p. 876.

Alif Khān, p. 167.

- Alif Khān al-Khatri (961 H.), pp. 314, 319, 326 attacks Broach, pp. 339, 341.
- 'Ali Khan Mandwali Sayyid Baranahar of Mandu flees from Malwa, p. 181. His son remains in Malwa, p. 183. Amir of Broach surprised by the Portuguese in (954) and dismissed from his post by Mahmud III, pp. 240, 339, 409.

'Ali Khān Qarmāli General of Bābur at Khanwa (933 H), p. 785.

- 'Ali Khān Uzbeg Commander-in-Chief at battle of Bayāna receives title of Khān az-Zamān (964 H), p. 889.
- Ali Khitati sent to fetch Kishlu Khān from Sind (725 H), p. 715.
- 'Ali Manbaj Amir acts as guide to Ikhtiyār ud-Din, p. 796.
- Ali Mardan al-Khaiji in Lakhnawati, p. 564. Stabs Ikhtiyar ud-Din, p. 798. Flees to Qutbuddin in Delhi, returns to Deokot, defeats and kills Muhammad Shiran, king of Lakhnawati, p. 798.
- 'Ali Mujir ud-Din Abu Rija appointed to offices in Deogir, p. 693.
- 'Ali Shāh, sister's son to Zafar Khān Khalji, revolts in the Dekkan, P.
- 'Ali Shāh son of 'Alāud-Din Takash, taken prisoner by Ghiyāsuddin, P- 545-
- 'Ali Shir, son of Qiwam ul-Mulk (938 H), p. 115.
- 'Ali Sultan of Kashmir, taken prisoner (824 H), p. 760.
- 'Ali Quli Ustad chief of artillery in Mughal army, p. 781.

'Aliyya wife of Jujhar Khān Marjān, p. 471.

Allahdad in Amir Timur's army at capture of Delhi (801 H), p. 753.

"Al-Malik" till the death of Imad ulMulk Aslan (966 H). This term
applied to him; It is never applied
to his son, Chingiz Khan who was
also Imad ul-Mulk. After (975 H),
it is usually applied to Sayf-ulMuluk, pp. 358, 422. Almas Beg
Ulugh Khan (Akhur Beg) brother
of 'Alaud-Din Khalji, pp. 636, 639.
Refuses to go to the support of
Zafar Khan at battle of Kili, p. 657.

Alp Khan, Sanjar, p. 644. Governor of Gujarat, killed in (711 or 716), p. 682.

Alp Khān Khatri is made Amir of Kanor (938 H), p. 683. Friend of Daryā Khān, pp. 265, 268, 271, 326.

Alp Khān Muhammed, son of Qatlagh Khān, Wakil, p. 715.

Altun Bahadur, a Mongol chief sent to help Muhammad Tughluq, pp. 734, 740.

Altuniya, a Malik of Tabarhind, p. 577, Defeated and killed with Raziya Queen (637), p. 578.

Alwar taken by Babur, p. 786.

Amali, a fort near Asir, p. 51.

Amainira, a village near Thalner, p. 52. Amani Mir, a poet quoted, p. 851.

Amarkot, p. 831.

Ambala, p. 780.

'Ambar Abd un-Nabi, a ship's captain, p. 400. Wakil to Ulugh Khān in Div ( 980 H ), p. 446.

'Ambar Chalabi, messenger of Ulugh Khan Muhammed, pp. 365, 379.

'Ambar Jahangir Khan master of the horse, p. 495.

'Ambar " Khairat Khān " a slave belonging to Sayf-ul-Muluk, who sends him out on his own horse and in his armour in order to deceive Muhammed Husayn Mirzā ( 981 H ), p. 490.

'Ambar Nasim an Abvasinian (Nubiyan gypsy) slave girl belonging to Bijli Khān, p. 427. Brought up in Egypt; dramatic narrative of her capture by Ulugh Khān, p. 438.

Amin Beg, Amir of Sharghan, p. 772, Amin Jiu Qazi of Burhanpur, p. 786.

Amin Khān Aytagin "Mui Darāz"
Balbāni Governor of Oudh sent
against Mughis ud-Din Tughrul
(670 H), but is driven off, p. 805.

Amin Khān Ghuri, son of Tātār Khān Ghuri, pp. 313, 444. Had undor him 700 Ghuri knights, p. 459. Joined by Sher Khan's nobles (980 H), p. 489.

Amin Khān Sayfud-Din Muhammed, son of 'Aziz Khān, son of Jujhar Khān Habshi of Burhānpur, p. 49. Adopted by Fulād Khān. Born (987 H), died (1014), pp. 59, 76. Wounded in battle (1009 H), p. 77.

Aminuddin Jhāju arrives in Gujarat as envoy from Asaf Khān in Mekka (955 H) bearing messages for Asaf's brother Khudāwand Khān, p. 242.

Aminul-Mulk pp. 155, 332 standardbearer to Ahmad II (965 H), p. 346.

Amir ibn 'Abdul Wahhāb Amirial Ruler of Asan prepares to resist the Portuguese (912 H), p. 36. Appeals to Mamluk Sultān for help against the Portuguese, p. 187.

Amir 'Ali in Mahmud Shāh's army at capture of Delhi by Amir Timur (801 ft), p. 748.

Amir 'Ali Divana goes over to side of 'Alauddin Khalji (695 H), p. 641.

Amir Baljaq Mughli killed at Ranthambhor, (700 H), p. 699.

959

Amir Husayn Kurdi (Misri) in command of Egyptian fleet in Indian Ocean, p. 34. Calls at Aden and proceeds to Div (913 H), pp. 36, 39. Displays great cruelty towards the inhabitants of Zabid, p. 40 Beaten off by reople of Aden (922 H), p. 41. Follows Salman to the Yaman, p. 187.

Amiri Abdul Hamid b. Yahya b. Sa'id Secretary to Khalifa Marwan, p. 255. Tortured to death (132 H); Specimens of his verse and his prose, p. 255.

Amirids of Aden, history of, by Ibn ad-Dayba, p. 43.

Amir Kabhar Mughli, killed at Ranthambhor, p. 669.

Amir Khan Zanbil Deo, Lord of Heral (926 H), p. 776.

Amir Khusraw of Delhi, The poet (b. 651—d. 725 H), p. 60 of Eyewitness of Jalal ud-Din's leniency to captured rebels in (689 H), p. 617. On the loves of Khizr Khan and Diwari (Devaldevi) Rani, p. 695. Quoted p. 707.

Amir Kilān, goes over to the side of 'Alāud-Din Khalji (695 H), p. 641.

Amir Mughal, a Dekkan noble (858 H), p. 173.

Amir Mubārak, Shikārbeg and a Mughal Malik, pardoned by Jalāl ud-Din Firuz, though they had plotted to take his life, p. 623.

Amir Timur, (Tamerlane) arrives in Delhi (801 H), p. 752. Orders slaughter of Hindu prisoners his capture of Delhi, (801 H), p. 753. Withdraws from India (30th Jumāda II), pp. 754, 759, Anecdote regarding his conquest of Khurāsān, p. 880.

Amjad Sayyid, Commander-in-chief of Berar (1000 H), pp. 62, 158.

Amlal, a village, p. 406.

Amreli, a fort belonging to Rai Chita, p. 176.

Amroha, invaded by Mongols in (704 H), pp. 672, 720.

Amuda, captured by Sarkhān in (873 H), p. 177. Captured by Ikhtiyār ud-Din (644 H), p. 802.

Amuya, river ( Jihun ), p. 852.

Anbiali, a fort over the Mahindri, p. 5

Andakhud, conquered by Ghiyāsuddīn Ghuri, (\*73 H), p. 544. Scene of battle between Mu'izz and Khwārazm Shāh, (601 H), p. 559.

Andaiāb, scene of battle between Sulaymān Mirzā and Humāyun's officers, (953 H), p. 851.

Andijan, the capital of Farghana. Umar Shaikh said to have met his death there (899 H), p. 772.

Ankat (Ankot), pp. 17, 148.

Ankus Khan Habashi Rumi, p. 320. In service of 'Imad ul-Mulk, 'pp. 333, 354. Killed at Surat (966 H), p. 355.

Ankus Khān Rumi, with Ulugh Khān in (980 H), p. 442. Before battle of Nadiad deserts Ulugh Khān and goes over to I'timād, p. 450.

Ankus Khān Sabih, see Şabih Anku. Khān.

Anqut, a province of Tigri country p. 481.

Antari, a fort near Gwalior, p. 768.

Antur, a pass on Dekkan frontier, day's journey from Deogir, p. 193.

Äqā Alādin, (or Alāchin), atabeg, guardian of Chingiz Khān (967 H) p. 382, (908 H), p. 388. In Broac (975 H), p. 427. In service o Yusuf Khudāwand Khān; died agec eighty in (978 H), p. 432.

Āqā Bahram, (963 H) in service o 'Imād ui-Mulk, p. 332. Āqā Birqa, in Amir Timur's army at capture of Delhi (801), p. 753.

Äqā Farahshād, see Fath Jung Khān. Äqā Hasan Chirkis, p. 75.

Aqā Jān, merchant of Cambay, composes poem of Chingiz Khān in the style of Salmān Sāwji, p. 417.

Aqa Mustafa, Amir Akhur to Chingiz Khan, p. 471.

Āqā Qāsim Ulugh-Khāni, p. 377.

Aqa Rayhan, in service of 'Imad ul-Mulk, becomes Bijli Khan and commander of the guard, pp. 353, 365.

Āqā Sha'bān Chalbi, head of the secret service (974 H), p. 412.

Äqä Yusuf Turki, slave of Äşaf Khān, p. 242.

Aqba Mikāil, Abyssinian leader, p. 486. Āqil Mirzā, brother of Muhammed Husayn Mirzā, p. 490.

'Arabiyya, name of body of cavalry in service of Hambar Deo Räi of Ranthambhor, p. 660.

'Arab Khan Qazi Yafi'i, pp. 61, 430.

'Arab Shāh Bukhāri, p. 273.

Aral, a suburb of Lakhnawati, p. 799. Ārām Kāshmiri, Author of Tuhfat us-Sādāt, p. 264.

Ārām Shāh, son of Qutbuddin Aybak, defeated by Il-tamish, occupied the throne for a short time in Lähore (607 H), p. 564.

Alāmura, near Jagat, infested by snakes, p. 21.

Ārāyish Khān, one of Bābur's generals at Khānwa (933 H), p. 389.

Ārāyish Khān, killed by Khayrat Khān (969 H), p.

Ardula, a garden near Mahmudpur, p. 50.

Arghandab, river (Ghandab), p. 846. Arkali Khān, son of Jalāl Firuz, p. 622. Succeeds his brother Khān-i-Khanān as viceroy in Kilughari (689 H), p. 626. Refuses to help his brother against 'Alā ud-Din Khalji, who is advancing on Delhi, p. 640. Is blinded and imprisoned in Hānsi, p. 644.

Arshuna Abubakt, b. Nasruddin Muhammed, p. 483.

Arslan Khan Sanjar Jab, Governor of Tabarhind, p. 589.

Arslan Shaykh, in Amir Timur's army at capture of Delhi (801 H), p. 753. Asad, name of elephant, p. 265.

Asad Khān, killed with his master Khwāja Jahān (886 H), p. 150.

Asad Khān Isma'il Salmāni, pp. 158, 319, 333. Noble in service of Chingiz Khān (967 H), p. 382. Left incharge of Surat, pp. 387, 400 Supersedes Sadr Khān, p. 401. Becomes Rustam's vazir, p. 427. In Broach (980 H), pp. 455, 489. See also under Ismā'il Chirkis, p.

Asad Khān Ludi, p. 756.

Asad ud-Din, son of Yaghrish Khān, uncle of 'Alā ud-Din, plots to depose and kill Qutbuddin (718 H), who discovering the plot, puts him and all his family to death, p. 695.

Asad ud-Din, nephew of Tughluq Shah, p. 711.

Asad ul-Mulk, present at Muzaffar II's death, p. 116.

Asaf Khān, son of Asaf Khān Najafi, killed (997 H), p. 155.

Asaf Khān, Lād Muhammed Bakhshi of Khāndesh, p. 52. Vazir to 'Ādil Shāh III of Khāndesh, p. 64.

Asaf Khān Abul-Qāsim 'Abdul-'Aziz, pp. 276, 311. Put in charge of Mahmud Khalji after fall of Mandu (937 H), p. 169. In Mālwa, p. 185. Sent to Diu in charge of Bahādur's harim and treasures, p. 207. One of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), p. 218. Sets out for Mekka with the

harim and treasure of Bahadur taking with him Shams Khān and Qaysar Khān, with ten vessels. They all reach Jedda in safety after two months' voyage having sailed out of season, p. 219. Arrives in Gujarāt (055 H) having been sent for by Mahmud III, p. 241. How he was fetched from Mekka; he is wrecked on the coast of India, but no one is drowned, and he only regrets the loss of his books and of a sword, which had been given him by Abu Numayy, and a favourite horse, p. 242. Reaches Ahmedabad. p. Is embraced by Mahmud III. and they sit together on a carpet; he is given the house which formerly belonged to Tāi Khān Narpāli. 1'timād Khān advises him to change his Arab clothes, and modify his beard, which extended to his waist. He is appointed absolute regent with the title of Na'ib Mutlag, p. 243. Is murdered, pp. 253, 276. Geneology: Abul Qasim 'Abdul 'Aziz b. Shamsud-Din Muhammed (known as Hamid ul-Mulk), b. Rukn ud-Din Muhammed, b. Jalal ud-Din Muhammed b. Tāj ud-Din Muhammed b. Shāhu b. Takudār b. Jam Nanda of Sind. Born in Châmpaner in (907 H) or (909 H). p. 276. Was selected by Bahadur as Vazir; his first title Hājib ul-Mulk, p. 278. Sent to Mekka with Bahadur's harim and treasure, arrives in Mekka, (942 H), p. 279. Authorised by Bahadur to distribute a part of the treasury in charity. When news of Bahadur's death reaches Mekka, obtains permission to place seals on the imperial treasury till instructions should arrive from India, p. 206. During his ten years' residence in Mekka never missed attendance at Friday prayers in the Masjid ul-Haram, p. 302. Distributed among the Mekkans 150 chests of gold, so that the women of Mekka and their servants were more resplendently dressed than ever before. His mid-night vigils and prayers, His journey from Mekka to Rum, p. 305. How he observed Ramzan, p. 306. Asaf Khān and the sufis, p. 34. List of nobles who accompanied to Mekka in (942 H), p. 327. Accompanies Hamzāwi to Egypt (044 H), proceeds to Adirna, interviews Sulayman I. Before meeting the Sultan, changes his Indian dress for Rumi clothes, p. 328. Vazir to Bahādur; appoints Sirājuddin Umar his Wakil. Takes him with him to Mekka. On death of Bahadur goes to Constantample with Qāim al-Hamzawi, p. 511.

Asai, village, p. 337.

Asamir, p. 314.

Asarwa, p. 421.

Asawal, pp. 449, 732.

Asghari, Sar Dawätdär, p. 681.

Ashja' Khān, brother of 'Ālam Khān Ludi, murders Chir Jiu, p.

Ashja' ul-Mulk, son of Khan Jahan Malik Ladan, in service of Malik Ayaz, p. 103.

Ashja' ul-Mulk Rāja Muhammed Husayn, requested to attend Muzaffar II's death and read prayers over him and wash his body with his own hands, p. 116.

Ashraf Khān, Grand son of Khān Jin Ikhtiyār Khān in service of Sher Khān, p. 452.

Asir, delays tribute to Mahmud I, p. 31. And Burhanpur, history of, pp.

47, 50. Attacked by Nizām Shāh of Dekkan in (981 H), p. 60.

Asir Darah, p. 541.

'Askari, title given to Muhammed Bahmani 11, p. 148.

'Askari Mirza, see Mirzā 'Askari.

Aslān Tutki Sultāni, p. 243. Purchased by Āsaf Khān in Mekka and sent as a present to Mahmud III at whose right hand he stands bearing the king's sword. (This must be the correct story of his origin, but Mirat-i-Sikandari says he came from Balkh and had been purchased by Mahmud III). Receives title of 'Imād ul-Mulk in (956 H), p. 245.

Asmā Umm al-Mukarram, wife of Najāh of Zabid, daughter of Shibāb Şinw, p. 84. Rescued by her son, dies in San'ā (479 H), p. 86.

Assassins, Ismā'ilis, admitted to the kingdom of the Ghuris, p. 539. Driven out of the Ghuri kingdom, p. 540. Murder Mu'izzuddin, p. 560. Atalik, p. 264.

Atal Khan Habashi Qadir Shahi, p. 328. Succeeds Bilal Khayrat Khan as Vazir to 'Imad ul-Mulk, pp. 357, 365. With Ulugh Khan, pp. 369, 379.

Atal Khān Rukn ud-Dawla Marjān, pp. 420, 435.

Atash Khān, p. 353. Before battle of Nadiad deserts Ulugh Khān and goes over to l'timād, p. 450.

'Ata Ullah Qiwam ul-Mulk, pp. 10, 23, 30.

Atiz, a revenue collector in Balkh, p. 547.

Atka Khān see Shamsuddin Muhammed, p. 833.

Author, The 'Abdulläh Muhammed ibn 'Umar al-Mekki al-Äsafi, Ulugh Khāni A poem by him on events

of (918 H), p. 35. In Songadh with Amin Khan, son of Jhuihar Khān, p. 49. In Songadh with Fulād Khān in (1008), p. 58. Present at funeral of in Songer (1014 H), p. 59. With Sayf ul-Muluk (1000), p. 66. In service of Fulad Khan and present at celebrations made by Bahadur Shah in connection with new capital, p. 74. In service of Sayf ul-Muluk Miftah in Chander, in (99 H), p. 90. A poem of him on the youth of Gujarat, p. ol. In Ahmadabad in ( 977 H ). p. 107. With Sayf ul-Muluk in (997 H), p. 157. Apologises for a long digression. Explains that Husām Khān's History ends at this point, i.e. the siege of Chitor (030 H) and that his object is to complete the narrative and thus write a continuation of the Tarikh-i-Bahadurshahi and Humayun, p. 194. In Hormuz in (981 H) hears story of the vovage of Bahadur's harim from the captain of one of the vessels. p. 219. In (961 H) about fifteen years of age, p. 259. Author's father cousin of Makhdum Bara, p. 280. Meets Khayrat Khan in his camp after he had been made an amir, p. 358. Receives gifts from Khayrat Khan, staken to see Jahangir Khan who offers him 100 Mahmadis a month; remains with Jahangir Khan till Ulugh Khan takes him back into his service. Author goes and makes his excuses to Hasan Daylami, Jahangir's vazir, Writes letter for Ulugh P. 359. Khān to Chingiz Khān, p. 362. Receives village of Buskar (on river of the same name) from Ulugh Khān after battle of Baroda (967 H) and 'Alampur, p. 364. With

Ulugh Khan when offer of peace is brought from Chingiz Khan by his friend 'Abdul Latif, p. 375. Explains that during (066, 067 H) he never left the side of Ulugh Khan and therefore, recounts the events as an eye-witness, p. 382. Sent as envoy by I'timad with peace proposals to Chingiz Khan (969 H), p. 394. In Ma'murābād ( 974 H ), p. 400. Consuited by Jhujhar Khan (975 H). p. 418. Employed on a mission. p. 420. Submits treaty of (7th Rajab, 975), p. 421. Writes to the nobles who deserted Ulugh Khan before the battle of Nadiad (Jumada II. o80 H) and reproaches them with ingratitude and they return to Ulugh Khan, p. 450. Deputed to arrange for reconciliation of Ihuihar Khān with Ulugh Khān, (980 H), p. 453 (7th Rajab, 980 H) ill in bed in Mahmudåbåd when Akbar enters Patan, p. 458. Incidents of his arrival in Surat from Mekka during Akbar's reign, p. 470 (17th Zil Hijj, 982) enters Mekka and performs all the rites of pilgrimage. p. 502. After Akbar's entry into Ahmadābād, is appointed to the Wagf service, p. 504 His father descended from those who fled from Persia to Multan in Sind at the time of Tatar invasion (617 H), p. 507. Enters India with his father in (962 H) taking with him three of the family books, p. 510. Describes voyage to India (961 H), p. 576. On first arrival in Ahmadābād (962 H) visits Ulugh Khān, Muhammed who has before him a book, some paper and a galamdan. Ulugh's vazir asks author if he knows how to write. Author thinking he wanted something copied from the books, says ves : but he is told to compose a letter of thanks to Chingiz Khān. Author perplexed, sucks his pen, until the two go out to evening prayer when he puts his pen and leaves; finding the outer office empty he resolves to say his prayer there. The Khan returns but does not find the author, and says, "Bring me Hājji ud-Dabir". (Hitherto he had been known as Muhammed). He is fetched back and writes the letter, but it was not good. So he went away, not thinking to return and remained some days in his house. He is, however, sent for again and composed a letter to the Shah Bundar of Div, after which he is appointed to the Khān's service on 200 Mahmudis a month. The Khan further gives him clothes, tambul (pān), a horse and 500 Mahmudis. He returns to his father and gives him the money. p. 517. In (962 H) composed his letters in Arabic, as he was not well-versed in Persian, but he soon learnt the latter. Gives all his earnings to his parents, p. 518. After arrival of Akbar in Gujarat, is appointed to carry the Wagf money to Mekka. After death of his father, he enters service of Savf ul-Muluk in Nasik Trimbak under Nizām Shāh of the Dekkan, his mother being with him till she died. Reflections on death, p. 519. Received an izafah from Shaykh Abul Hasan al-Bakri, p. 521. Composes verses on a Shaykh, p. 526. Has before. him Tabaqat-i-Nașiri; Tarikh-i-Guzida; Ibn ul-Athir: Habib us-Siyar; Rawzat us-Safā and Athar ul-Bilad, p. 545. Weighs evidence of Ziyanddin and Husam Khan, p. 632. Verses composed by him, p. 639. Discusses dates, p. 644. His work entitled Nasar ud-Durar explains title and contents of this history, pp. 706, 750. Hājib and Dabir to Sayf ul-Muluk in Nasik Trimbak. Relates anecdotes he has heard regarding Sikander Ludi, p. 768. Supplements Akbar Nama, p. 780. Relates anecdote he heard when in Burhanpur with Akbar, p. 786. Relates that while he was on his estate of Songer, a district of Burhanpur, in the time of 'Abdul Karim Fulad Khan's governorship (1012 H) he hears the story of the early days of Sher Shah, p. 789. (1012 H), p. 791. Refutes statements of Abul Fazl in his Akbar Nāma regarding the character of Khawass Khan, p. 837. For full geneology see Siraj ud-Din Umar Naharwāli.

Awan Khan, son of Sultan Shah, sent to meet Kamran Mirza' (959 H),

ud-Din Muhammed, Awfi, Jamal author of Jawami-ul-Hikayat, p. 216. Present at siege of Bhakar (625 H), p. 572.

Awghān ( Afghān, part of the foreign legion, p. 339. Awghāns and Rumls cannot agree, p. 340.

Ayāz Khān Shihāb ud-Din Malikut-Tujjar, in Nawsári (725 H), p. 715. Ayaz Malik, see Malik Ayaz.

Ayba (variant of Ay [Beg), see Bahrām Ayba.

Aybek, brother of Ulugh Khan Balban, p. 588.

Aybek "Shall", see Qutbuddin.

Aylampur, a suburb of Ahmadābād,

Aynul-Mulk, governor of Kara and Oudh, p. 718. Revolts in Kara: is pardoned and promoted in rank by Muhammed Tughkug, p. 720.

Ayn ul-Mulk, the doctor sent by Akbar to see I'timad Khan whom he had met when he was in the service of Chingiz Khān, p. 457.

Avnul-Mulk Fuladi attacks Bhim Rai

(q18 H), p. q1.

Ayn ul-Mulk Husayn al-Ash'ari, vazir to Nāsiruddin Qubācha (633 H), p. 571. Later Vazir to Rukn ud-Din Firuz, p. 575.

Ayn ul-Mulk Muhammed, son of Nizām ul-Mulk Junaydi, Vazir to Nāşir ud-Din Mahmud, p. 588. Sent to conquer Mandu ( 705 H ), p. 649.

Ayn ul-Mulk Multāni, p. 140. Dabir to Ulugh Khān, p. 68r. Amir in Gujarāt, pp. 695, 697. Appointed to offices in Deogir in (718 H). p. 698.

Aysan Bakhti Khan, amir, p. 397.

Aysanpur, a village, p. 23.

Aysan Sultāni, becomes Nizam ul-Mulk, p. 16.

Ay-Timur Kaj'han, Malik, see Timur Kaj'han.

Ay-Timur Surkha, wakil in (688 H), p. 617.

Ayyub Habash Khan, pp. 403, 412.

Ayyub Turkmani, the sufi. An intimate of Bahrām Shāh in Delhi (631 H), p. 581.

A'zam Humāyun, son of Ulugh Khān, Muhammed returns from Delhi to Gujarāt (962 H), pp. 313, 314, 316, 317, 319, 321, 328, 335. With 'Alam Khan (961 H), p. 338. Occupied Broach, pp. 339, 340. Makes terms with Imad, p. 341. Killed in battle by Rustam Khān ( 965 H ), p. 346.

A'zam Humāyun bin A'zam Humāyun b. Ulugh Khān al-Awghān Gujarāti,

p. 74.

A'sam Humäyun, son of Mahmud Khalji. Given Ajmer and Ranthambhor (858 H), p. 173. Captures Parandi (862 H), p. 174.

A'zam Humāyun 'Abdullāh see 'Abdullah A'zam Humāyun.

A'zam Humāyun, see 'Ādil Khān III of Khāndesh.

A'zam Humāyun Badr, p. 369.

A'zam Humāyun Khān Jahān, (755 H), p. 816.

A'zam Humāyun Shaykh Yusuf of Mandu, p. 321. Son of Mallu Qadir Shāh of Mandu, pp. 324, 333. Receives title of A'zam Humāyun, pp. 344, 366.

A'zam Humāyun Zafar Khān bin Wajih ul-Mulk Jank, appointed Governor of Gujarāt (793 H), p. 750.

A'sam Khān, son of Āşaf Khān, pp. 328, 365, 368. In service of Bijli Khān, p. 437.

A'zam Khān Sultāni, p. 9.

Azhar Khān Habashi, p. 461.

Azim Humayun Toghay, a captain of the guard (943 H), p. 271.

'Aziz Khammār, amir of Dhār, killed in battle, p. 141. Favourite of Muhammad Tughluq, p. 724. Made amir of Mālwa and Dhār, p. 725. Put to death (745), p. 729.

'Aziz Khān, son of Jhujhar Khān Habashi, one of the amirs of Muhammed Shāh Faruzi, p. 786.

'Aziz Kokaltāsh, pp. 63, 158. Introduces Sayi ul-Muluk to Akbar, p. 458. In command of Gujarāt on behalf of Shaykhu Jiv, p. 491. On return to Agra reproached by Akbar, p. 494.

\*Aziz ud-Din Razi ul-Mulk, amir to Naşiruddin Mahmud, a recent convert to Islām, killed in (652 H), p. 589. 'Aziz ul-Mulk Shaykhan Sultāni,
"Khush Āmad", p. 31. Governor
of Sultānpur, p. 52.

'Azmat Haybi, a Christian, afterwards Muslim, present at battle of Chambera Kuri, p. 484.

'Azud ud-Dawle, the Buwayhid, p. 209.
'Azud ud-Dawle Shāh Fatihullāh
Shirāzi (994 H), p. 63.

'Azud ud-Din receives larger money gifts from Muhammed Tughluq, p. 738.

'Azud ul-Mulk Kabir Sultāni, p. 14. Revolting Malik under Mahmud I of Gujarāt, p. 25.

'Azud ul-Mulk Kälu, p. 18.

#### B

Bābā Beg Jalāir, father of Shāham Khān in charge of Jaunpur (945 H), p. 822. In Jaunpur appeals to Humāyun for help against Jalāl Khān, p. 822. Killed at Chausa (946 H), p. 824.

Băbăghur, a saint, p. 4.

Bābā Hājji Qashqa, joins Humāyun in Persia, p. 92.

Bāb al-Mandab, p. 36.

Băbā Rayhān, a saint, a locality, pp. 342, 397, 328.

Bāb Soham, a gate of Zabid, 40.

Bābur Zahiruddin Muhammed, Emperor of Delhi. Said to have been in Agra in disguise in (923 H) and to have met Sikander Ludi, p. 769. His full name Zahiruddin Muhammed b. 'Umar Shaykh Bahādur b. 'Ali Sa'id b. Muhammed Mirzā b. Mirān Shāh b. Amir Timur Gurgan, Born (6th Muharram, 888 H). Succeeds to his father in Transoxiana, on throne of Andijān (899 H), enters Samarqand (906 H). Driven out of Samarqand and Andijān, removes to Tirmid, p. 772.

Marches on Kabul via Qunduz, where he is received and made prisoner by Khusraw Shah; but escapes and arrives in Kābul; takes possession of Oandahar ( Q10 H ). His negotiations with Shah Isma'il Safawi, p. 772. Sets out for Transoxiana (917 H), defeats Mirzā Sultān Uzbeg in Badakhshān; announces his victories to Shāh Ismā'il and asks for his aid against Samarqand, and mounts throne of his ancestors, p. 773. Marches from Kābul to Qandahar (926 H), sends Humāvun to govern Badakhshān on death of Khan Mirza (926 H). Captures Garmsir (926 H), p. 776. (Our author's first narrative down to the year (928 H) follows the Habib us-Sivar; he next passes to the year (933 H) and there follows the Tabaqat-i-Bahadurshahi: in a second epitome, he follows the Akbar Nāma). Returns to Kābul (927 H). After conquest of Delhi, he visits the saints and goes to Agra; defeats Mahmud son of Sikander Ludi (033 H); captures Jaunpur (934 H), dies (937 H). p. 777. Ascends the throne of Andijan (899 H), captures Samargand (903 H), loses it (906 H), regains it and loses it again (907 H), goes to Badakhshān and joins Khusraw Shah. Goes to Kabul (910 H), conquers Qalat (912 H), p. 778. Crosses the Hindu Kush (912 H), visits his mother in Käbul. Goes to Qandahār (913 H); expeditions into India: 1st (Q10 H); 2nd (913 H); 3rd (925 H); 4th (930 H); 5th (932 H); p. 779. His fourth expedition into India (030 H) abortive, p. 782. Reproaches his chiefs, who wished to return to Baglana, pp. 28, 179.

Kābul after capture of Delhi (032 H), p. 782. Plot to poison him discovered-makes expedition against Sanga (033 H), p. 784. Leads a charge, dismounts from his horse and placing his forehead on the ground gives thanks to God. p. 786. Sacrifices his own life to save Humāvun ( 937 H ), p. 788.

Babus, gives himself up to Humayun before Kābul (952 H), pp. 850, 862. Bāb ush-Shabario, a gate of Zabid. D 39.

Badakhshān, p. 567. Given to Humāyun (926 H), p. 786.

Ĩ.,

Badām Chashma, p. 779.

Badam Dārā, p. 861.

Badapur, p. 173.

Badaun, p. 718.

Bädghis, p. 558.

Badi uz-Zamān, son of Sultāu Husayn Mirzā in Herat (912 H), p. 772.

Badih, a village near Tilghat, p. 660. Badr Habashi, slave of Shirwan Khan, p. 427.

Badr Sultăni, in service of Ihuihar Khān, p. 436.

Badr ud-Din of Gilan, p. 535.

Badr ud-Din Aşghari, Sar Dawatdar, p. 639.

Badr ud-Din Sanqar Rumi, amir hājib to Queen Raziya, p. 578. Becomes regent to Bahram Shah, and plots to place his brother on the throne. p. 580.

Badt Ulugh Khani, p. 377.

Baduhi, p. 482. 4

Baghantat, Sayf ud-Din, p. 801.

Bāgh-i-Jawz, a garden near Delhi. p. 592.

Bagh-i-Sha'ban, 'Imäd's garden in Ahmadabād, pp. 15, 409.

Bághpatha, p. 115.

Båg-Mår, "Lion-killers" the only troops remaining with Burhan ud-Din, the regicide, p. 257.

Bagoi in Burhampur, p. 223.

Bahādur Gilāni, Governor of Dābul, pp. 30, 150.

Bahādur Khān, p. 44.

Bahādur Māhir (Bāhar) Iqlim Khān, Lord of Kutila (792 H), p. 749. Senda envoy from Lāhore to Tamerlane, pp. 754, 756.

Babädur Shāh of Khāndesh, Qādir Khān, son of 'Ādil Shāh III, son of Mubārak Shāh, son of 'Ādil Shāh III, besieged in Asir by Akbar, p. 59. Ascends throne of Khandesh (1003 H), p. 73. Destroys Burhānpur and builds Bahādurpur, three farsakhs away, p. 74. Surrenders to Akbar, pp. 79, 783.

Bahadur Shah of Gujarat, In (931 H) complains to his father of unfair treatment he has received. Obtaining no redress, he departs by night and first reaches Dungerpur, kills the Rānā's son, goes to Ajmer, then to Mewat, then to Delhi, where he is kindly received by Ibrahim. Distinguishes himself in a melee with some Mughals. (Somewhat fuller version on p. 150). Becomes a popular figure in Delhi, and people of Jaunpur, who had just lost their Sultan, invited him thither. Ibrahim is jealous of his popularity and changes his behaviour towards Bahādur, who sets out for Jaunpur. On reaching that country, he is met by Taj Khān Narpāli, p. 109. Finds Ibrahim in Paniput facing the Mughal army, p. 114. Arrives in Bāgh Patha and is met by Pāvanda Khān, envoy of Jaunpuris. Khurram Khān sent from Gujarat informs him of the death of Muzaffar, and he sets out for Gujarat. On reaching Chitor, he is met by 'Ali Shir ibn Mu'inuddin Afghān, p. 115. On receiving: message from Taj Khan excuses himself to the Jaunpur envoy and sets out for Guiarat. p. 110. Ascends the throne of Guiarāt (Ramzān, 032). On his way to Patan, Taj Khan receives him with royal insignia. He visits the tombs of his forefathers and of the saints. In Ahmadabad visits shrine of the Shavkh Ahmad Ganjgi; enters Ahmadābād by Kālupur gate p. 125. Is welcomed in Champaner by all the nobles except 'Imad ul-Mulk and Qaysar Khan. Seeing blood-stains on the walls of the house in which Sikander had been murdered, weeps and orders 'Imad ul-Mulk and his confederates to be brought to him and they are executed, p. 125. Puts to death all his brothers except Taj Khān (Note: on p. 168 it is said that if Chand Khān who took refuge with Mahmud Khalji) who is in Mandu. bestows titles on the companians of his exile, p. 127. Sets out for the Dekkan to help 'Imad ul-Mulk of Berar against Nizām ul-Mulk Bahri. Malik Bared and Khudawand Khan. p. 134. Marches to Nandarbar ( Q34 H). Marries sister of Bahram Shah of Baglana. Confirms 'Imad ul-Mulk in Berar and Muhammad Khān in Asir. Marches against Ahmadnagar, which he takes withstriking a blow (935 H). Marches to Dewlatabad, to which he lays siege, p. 135. Hearing on the designs of the Dekkanis on Burhanpur, at dawn sends 'Imad Shah and Muhammed Shah to attack Nizām Shāh; or few hours later, he

sends 'Imad ul-Mulk and at midday Khān-i-Khānān with the rest of the army. He himself follows in the evening. They encamp at Bir. In the night, a messanger comes to Bahadur from Malik Barid offering submission, which is accepted and Bahadur's name is read in the Khutba in Bidar. Pursues Nizām ul-Mulk who has gone towards Burhanpur. Peace is made between them, p. 135. The elaborate ceremonies on the occasion of his receiving the submission of Nizām ul-Mulk Bahri (936 H.). (Note: this incident is placed by Mirat-i-Sikandari in (038 H) and is very differently told). He causes Nizam ul-Mulk to restore the elephants and guns taken from 'Imad Shah. He sends for 'Imad and Muhammed Shah and allows them to return to their estates, p. 136. (936 H), returns to his capital. At Nandarbar receives Bahrām Shāh of Baglēna: at Champaner, he receives Kumbher Råi. He receives letters from Nigām Shāh and Shāh Tāhir informing him that the Khutba had been read in his name in Ahmadnagar, p. 137. Goes from Cambay to Div by sea (937 H), p. 166. Meets Prithi Raj at Sambal and gives him half of Wagher, p. 166. Meets Rāi Singh of Chitor and Rāi Silhadi Purbiva, who complained to him of Mahmud Khalji. He promises to redress their grievences, p. 167. Quarrels with Mahmud Khalji and marches on Wagher. Crosses the pass Kurli and arrives before Shādiābād, p. 168. Enters Mandu in force and sends for Mahmud, and was disposed to treat him leniently, but Mahmud

temper and he is placed in charge of Asai Khan. The Khutha is read in his name in Shādiābād, the capital of Mandu, on (12th Sha'ban, 937), p. 169. Goes to Burhanpur and meets Nizām Shāh and returns to his capital Champaner, p. 186. Gives Rumi Khān, Ranlr (Rander), Surat and Div. turning out Tughan, p. 188. His natural liking foreigners; the incident of pālki being struck by one of his bodyguards turned him against. Guiarătis and led to further encouragement of foreigners in whom he placed full reliance. The arrival of Mustafa coincided with this incident, p. 189. Sets out (5th Jamada I 938) from Shādiābād to Nor'leha and thence to Dhar, thence to Bhilsa, besieges Raisin, p. 191. Arrives in Div. Portuguese retire (938). Marries daughter of jam Firuz ( 930 H ). Orders Muhammed Shah and Khudawand Khan to Chitor (939 H), p. 193. Had 10 000 foreign mercenaries in his service. Tells Tatar Khan that he had seen the prowess of the Mughals under Babur and that the Indians and the Mughals would be like glass and stone, whichever strikes, it is the glass that is broken, p. 196. Having been joined by Muhammed Zaman, tells Tatar Khan to collect his men from far and near and set out for Ranthambhor and there await his further orders. In (941 H) sets out for Chitor, p. 196. Replies to Humayun's second letter saying that "there are five justifications for entering on war: (1) The foundation of a dynasty; (2) the protection of a dynasty; (3) defence against aggression; (4) an

appeal for help from one state to another: (5) It is not a good one, for it may be an unwarrantable attack, a love of conquest, or plunder, disobedience, and so forth. But with me, it is none of these, I have merely distributed money and collected men with the desire to make a holy war and to raise the standard of the faith. " p. 197. Sets out for Mandu and after deflection of Bhupat Rai, sets out for Gujarāt. Encounters a Mughal amir, whom he kills in single combat, and arrived in Div, p. 198. Hearing Närsingh Deo's death despairs of saving Champaner, p. 201. After departure of Humavun marches to Ahmadabad and defeats Mughals, p. 201. Writes to Tatar Khān, sending large sums for the collection of troops and tells him to march on Kalinjar. (Bahādur had been in Delhi at the beginning of Sher Shah's reign ), p. 202. The first to enter Chitor, p. 203. Following treacherous counsel of Rumi Khan makes an araba round his camp, he flies to Mandu with a few followers on (21st Shawwal), p. 205. Reaches Mandu on 14th, with Muhammed Shah, p. 205. Flees from Mandu to Champaner, sends his harim and treasures to the foot of the Champaner hills, while he remains in the fort, p. 206. Leaves Champaner in charge of Ikhtiyar and sets out for Cambay, where he entrusts his harim and treasure to Asaf Khan, ordering him to take them to Div, and directing a hundred of his boats to be burnt, he proceeds to Div. Gives Rumi Khān's posts to Şafar Salmani, appeals to the Portuguese Governor of Goa for aid, p. 207. Story of the Shaykh who made him see in the water of the river a cradle containing two orphans, p. 210. Moves from his fortied camp to Mandu (941 H), p. 212. Gives the Portuguese, " What they otherwise would have stolen" in Div. The apprehension of Rumi Khan (942 H), p. 214. Visits the Portuguese captain accompanied by not more than ten officers, p. 215. Author's reflections on what he might have achieved if he had been wise, p. 218. Allows the Portuguese to have the island of Div in return for the service of 500 Portuguese soldiers. Humāvun, having withdrawn, Bahadur attacks the Lord of Jugat and he expects the Portuguese to keep their promise and supply the contingent but not a man appears. The Lord of Jagat returns to his allegiance and Bahādur returns to Div to find that the Portuguese had begun to fortify the island with stone, but he pretended not to notice this, saying to himself, "Haply God will cause something to happen after this," p. 219. Entreated by his nobles, to return to Ahmadābād (942 H), which he does, and the whole of Gujarat is soon freed of the Mughals. Battle of Mahmudabad, p. 220. Apologises to his nobles for having taken Rumi Khān's advice and not theirs on the occasion of the armed encampment He feels no further (arāba). anxiety save in regard to the Portuguese. In (943 H) has regained all he had lost during Humāyun's invasion except Mandu, p. 221. Arrives in Div. in spite of warnings, puts to sea with small following, having on his sword. Visits Viceroy. who is

saleep in his cabin, p. 222. Shows fight and being transfixed in the breast by a spear, falls into the sea and is drowned. His companions, who had remained on the gallen, died fighting, p. 223. His character. Extent of his kingdom, pp. 223, 318, 322. Adventure with a lion. p. 323. Defeated by Humayun, appeals to Sher Shah for help,

Bahādur Shāh, Governor of Sonargawn, p. 714.

Bahāpur, pp. 617, 630.

Baharmal of Idar allied with Rana Sāngā against Bābur (033 H), p. 784.

Bahat, river, p. 780.

Bahaud-din, nephew of Tughluq Shah, p. 711. Cousin of Muhammed Tughlug revolts in Dawlatabad, p. 718.

Baha ud-Din Aybeg Khwaja, killed before Ranthambhor, (641 H). p. 586.

Bahā ud-Din Multāni, pp. 404, 433.

Bahā ud-Din Sām b. Muhammed b. Mas'ud of Bamiyan, nephew of Ghiyasuddin, p. 547.

Bahaud-Din Sultani, officer of Mahmud I. p. 14. Becomes Ikhtivär ul-Mulk, p. 16. See Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk Sultāni.

Bahā ud-Din Tughrul Sanjari, Governor of Herät, p. 543. Killed in battle his head sent to Herat (588 H). P. 544.

Bahā ud-Din Ulugh Khān, formerly Bahā ul-Mulk, son of 'Alā ul-Mulk Ulugh Khān Sohrāb, Governor of Modasa, p. 30. Mahmud I, hearing of his great cruelty, sets out for Modasa, whereupon Ulugh Khan flees to the court of Ghiyas ud-Din Khalji, who does not receive him: thence to Sultanpur. He ultimately | Bahram Khan, p. 25.

returns to Mahmud I, who pardons him. Shortly after imprisoned and dies in (901), p. 31.

Bahā ul-Mulk Bimbāni, killed (1003),

Baha ul-Mulk Sindi, pp. 314, 316, 338. After leaving Nadod, joins 'Imad, p. 341. Killed in battle against A'zam Humāyun, his tomb in Nadod, p. 342.

Bahlul Ludi, Sultan, sees the saint Bakhtiyār in a dream and is encouraged to extend his realms, p. 120. Conquers Jaunpur, (878 H), p. 121. Asks Mahmud Khalji for help against Sultan Husayn of Jaunpur (873 H), p. 117. Commanderin-Chief of Delhi forces (844 H) adopted as son by Mahmud Khizr Khān, and sent against Jasrath, p. 764. Captures Delhi (881 H), p. 766. Ascends throne of Delhi (885 H) dies, (904 H), pp. 767. 780.

Bahlulpur, p. 167.

Bahmanis, origin of their name, p. 142. Bahmanul, estate of Ihuihar Khan whither he withdraws after battle in (974 H), pp. 406, 433.

Bahrām Aybah Kishlu Khan, son of Tughluq Shāh, joins forces with Malik Ghäzi in (720 H), p. 702. Governor of Sind and Multan, p. 711. Lord of Sind and Multan, p. 715. Killed in battle against Muhammad Tughluq, p. 716.

Bahrām Beg, with Humāyun in Bengal. p. 819.

Bahram Deo, son of Narsang Deo, attacked in Dholpur by 'Alam Khān, p. 756.

Bahrām Deo Kuwayla, killed in revolt against Jalal ud-Din Firuz, p. 622. Bahram Khan, King of Bengal, p. 810.

Bahrām Khān Turki, Governor of Firuzpur, pp. 756, 759.

Bahrām Shāh, son of Khusraw Mulik. of Lahore, p. 555.

Bahrām Shāh, Lord of Baglana, joins Bahādur, p. 135.

Bahrām Shāh Ghaznawi, King of Gazna, PP. 531, 534.

Bahrām Shāh Mu'izzud-Din, son of Il-tamish, ascends the throne in (637), p. 518, 579. Taken prisoner in Delhi and killed (639 H), p. 582.

Bahraq, name of the Shaykh Jamaluddin al-Himyari, (b. 869-d. 930), p. 106. Biography, p. 106.

Bahrāya, a caste of musicians and dancers in Malwa, p. 99.

Bahri Khān Rumi, pp. 403, 406, 472.

Bahār Jiu, Lord of Baglāna, his daughter married to Chingiz Khān, p. 400.

Bahr Khan Sa'd Sultani, p. 501.

Bahr Khān Yāqut Safar Salmāni Amhari, wakil to Şafar in Surat, p. 232. Remains Wakil to Rajab after death of Şafar in (953 H), pp. 238, 255. Released from prison by Burhānuddin, the regicide, pp. 256, 353, 365. Taken prisoner by Sultān Mahmud, pp. 409, 492.

Bahr ul-Mulk Qādiri, pp. 371, 374, 435. Bahzād, the painter, copy of Hatifi's Timur-nāma illustrated by him, p. 208.

Bahzād, Governor of Multān, killed by Shāhu, p. 718.

Bahzād ul-Mulk, a Turkish slave of Nizām Shāh, p. 63. Habashi chief under Nizām Shāhis, p. 157-

Bajāna, scene of an engagement between 'Imād ul-Mulk and Daryā Khān, p. 227.

Bākar, (Wāgadh), pp. 2, 103, 167. Bakhshi Bānu Begum, p. 845. AH63 Bakhshu Alangah, p. 829.

Bakhtiyār Khwāja, saint of Delhi, p. 743.

Balapur, in Thichpur, p. 455. Also called Shahpur.

Balaram, p. 593.

Balban, see also 'Izzuddin and Ghiyasuddin, p. 584. Made a general and sent with an army to Jud Mountains, p. 585. Afterwards Ulugh Khān and finally Ghiyāsuddin, his early career, pp. 597-598. Testament to his son Bughra Khān, p. 602. Feeling his end approaching sends for his son Bughra Khān and for his nobles and nominates Kay Khusraw, p. 604.

Balkh, p. 547. Surrendered to Bābur (913), p. 772. Humāyun abandons siege of Balkh, owing to disloyalty of his chiefs, p. 865.

al-Balkhi Abul Abbās, p. 161.

Banjaras, pp. 144, 718.

Bankaner, pp. 315, 339, 360.

Banswars, residence of Udai Singh, pp. 103, 276.

Barasinul, (Balasinor), pp. 172, 318. Barbak, p. 312.

Bārbak Mughli, p. 672.

Bārbak Shāh, son of Bahlol Ludi, Left in charge of Jaunpur (878 H), joins with Husayn Shāh in a plot to capture Delhi, pp. 121, 767.

Bārbak Shāh, of Bengal, dies (879 H), p. 816.

Bārbak Shāh, the eunuch, Habshi King of Bengal, died (894 H), p. 817.

Bārbak Baybars Sultāui Malik, in command of vanguard in Bengāl (671 H), p. 806.

Bardar, mountains, p. 577.

Bardu, on hill-top over-looking Daman, p. 17.

Bargonda, in Telingana, pp. 17, 148.

Bari Barsangpur, p. 444. Barli, p. 448.

Barnagar, p. 102, Given to 'Abdullah Khan, p. 398 (Vadnagar).

Barnāma, name of village, p. 4.

Barni, p. 670.

Baroda, pp. 4, 5, 314, 316, 318, 319. Fief of Chingiz Khān, p. 336. Battle of (967 H), pp. 363-4. The new town founded by Muzaffar during the life of his father Mahmud Begadha called Rājpur, pp. 374, 445.

Bar Ram, town reached by Mongol army in (691 H), p. 626.

Barr Sa'd ud-Din, p. 468.

Barsang Deo, p. 170.

Barsbāi-Ashraf Sayí ud-Din, Burji Mamluk of Egypt (825-842 H), p. 816.

Basai, see Bassin, Basi.

Bashir 'Imād ul-Mulk, finance minister to Firuz Shāh, p. 745.

Basi, see Bassin.

Basra, why it was founded by Khalifa 'Umar, p. 529.

Bassin, conquest of, by Burhan ud-Din Bimbani, p. 350.

Batrk (Vatrak), name of a stream in Mahmudābād, p. 245.

Batwa, p. 125. Shrine of Qutb-i-'Ālam, visited by Humāyun, p. 201.

Bayana, captured by Mahmud Khalji (851 H), pp. 172, 659, 782.

Bāyazid Mawlānā, p. 786. Physician in charge of Humāyun at Shakhdan, p. 852. Afghān chief, rebels against Humāyun (939 H), p. 888.

Bāybars Malik Sultāni, in service of Mughisuddin Tughrul, p. 806.

Bâybars Misri, a physician in Barar, p. 60. Becomes vazir, pp. 151, 154. Poisoned, p. 158.

Bayhaqi, the historian, p. 534.

Bayramgām, (Viramgām), pp. 265, 314, 326, 335.

Bayram Khān, Khān-i-Khānān (often spoken by our Author as Bahram Khān) comes from Gujarāt and joins Humāyun (950 H), p. 832. Visits Mahmud Shāh in Gujarāt. p. 833. Receives title of Khan from Shāh Tahmasp, having hitherto been called Bayram Beg (951 H), p. 843. Sent by Humāyun to parley with Kāmrān Mirzā, (952 H). After being detained in Kābul one month and a half, leaves with Khānzāda Begum, p. 846. Is made governor of fort of Qandahār (952 H), p. 849. Pays all Humāvun's expenses in Qandahār (961 H), p. 879. Made Atalik by Akbar (963 H), p. 886. On accession of Akbar becomes Wakil-i-Mutliq, p. 888. Invites Turdi Beg to be his guest and kills him (963 H), p. 889. Marries Sulaymān Sultān Begum (965 H), p. 889.

Baysanghar Mirzā, son of Sultān Muhammed Mirzā, driven out of Samarqand by Bābur (903), recaptures it (906 H), p. 778.

Bāi Bahādur, son of Sharif Khān al-Atika with 'Imād ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiyār in (982 H), p. 501.

Båz Bahådur Afghan, pp. 396, 412, 433, son of Sajawal Khan, p. 456.

Beg Mirak, made amir of Chumar, p. 819.

Benares, p. 558. Conquered in (590 H) by Qutb ud-Din, pr. 562, 833.

Bengal, revolt in (725 H), p. 716.

Description of the country. History from its first conquest by the arms of Islām, pp. 793-818. Independent of Delhi from the time of Shamsuddin Ilyās down to the reign of Sher Shāh. It was also independent in the reigns of Muhammed Bakhtiyār and 'Iwāz'. After Salim, son of

Sher Shāh, again independent till the time of Akbar, p. 818. Conquered by Humāyun (945 H), p. 820.

Besalnagar, given to 'Abdullah Khan, pp. 102, 398.

Bet, (Sankhodwar), a fort near Jagat, p. 21. Compared by Mahmud I (878 H), p. 22.

Bhaju Malik, at capture of Champaner, p. 27.

Bhakar, a fort in the middle of the river, p. 571. Story of the siege of (625 H), p. 572. Visited by Firuz Shāh, p. 742.

Bharan, Amir of Gulbarga, p. 719.

Bharbhut, on the bank of the Narbada, near Broach, p. 240.

Bhater. residence and burial-place of Sarkhan, p. 603.

Bhils, an aboriginal tribe, pp. 177, 208, 218, 247, 318.

Bhilsa, conquered by Il-tamish, pp. 191, 627.

Bhim Rāi, son of Rai Bahan of Idar, pp. 91, 93.

Bhupat Rāi, p. 166. a son of Silhadi, p. 191. Sent by his mother -in-law, the mother of Vikramādit, to beg for peace from Bahādur, offering all that Sāngā had taken from the Khalji, including his rich jewels. Peace concluded, p. 194. Defends one of the gates of Mandu but deserts to Humāyun, p. 198.

Bibi Ārām, Sister of Sayyid Husayn Khān Sawār, p. 6.

Bibi Rāni, wife of Muzaffar II and mother of Sikander, dies (930 H), p. 107. Foster-mother of 'Imād ul-Mulk Khush Qadam, p. 119. Daughter of Jām Firuz, marries Muzaffar II (924 H), p. 122.

Bibi Şāhib, mother of Chingiz Khān, dissuades ber son from joining

conspiracy against I'timād Khān, p. 388. "Queen", p. 415. Joins Rustam Khān, pp. 427, 465. Ordered by Akbar in Broach to take her vengeance on Jhujhar, she replies, "Who is Jhujhar that I should be revenged on him for such a [man as Chingiz Khān? But Akbar insists and Jhujhar is thrown beneath an elephant, p. 471.

Bidar Qadir Khan, p. 713.

Bihār, Author explains derivation of the name from Vihāra, meaning a college for Brahmins. Conquered by Ikhtiyār ud-Din, (590 H). p. 793.

Bijli Khān Habashi Tawāshi Rayhān 'Imād ul-Mulki, p. 328. Follower of Yāqut Ulugh Khān, pp. 331, 335, 353, 365, 366. Outside Baroda deserts his friends and joins Ulugh Khān Muhammed, p. 367. Receives Godhra, pp. 373, 390, 403. At request of Rustam Khān goes to Cambay with 1500 mem, p. 425. Murdered by Muhammed Husayn Mirzā and Ibrāhim Mirzā (979 H), pp. 436, 437. Peculiar character of; introduces learned Arabs to his court, p. 440.

Bijli Khan Khizr, pp. 371, 374.

Bikan Jiu Shuja' Khān, (Malik Jiu Shuja'at Khān, Mirat-i-Sikandari), p. 270.

Bikram, otherwise called Peshāwar, destroyed by Afghāns, rebuilt by Humāyun pp. 878, 880.

Bilāl Falah Khāni, Khayrat Khān, see under Khayrat Khān.

Bilāl Khān Khānān, with 'Imād ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiyār in (983), p. 501.

Bilāl Māya Sultāni, p. 165.

Bilāl Muhammedi, Muhsin ul-Mulk, see under Muhsin-ul-Mulk. Bilāl Ramzān, in service of Bijli Khān, pp. 406, 437, 493.

Bilga, Amir Khalji, son of Ghiyasuddin 'Iwaz tries to seize Bengal, is defeated and slain (672 H), p. 574. Revolts in Bengal and is killed by Shamsuddin, p. 800.

Bimbāni, p. 368.

Bini Dās, a hājib, p. 381.

Biram Deo, brother of Hamber Deo, p. 668.

Bir Rāi, Lord of Idar, son of Punja Rāi, pp. 2, 139.

Bistāmi Shaykb, p. 743.

Biyāra (Vyarā), p. 400.

Biyāwal, a fort occupied by the Faruqis, p. 56.

Broach, p. 4. Recovered by Gujarātis in (942 H), p. 219. Taken by Portuguese and recovered by Mahmud III, pp. 240, 270, 314, 326, 338, 584, 721.

Buda, son of 'Imād ul-Mulk Hājji obtains his father's title (885 H), p. 25.

Budagh Khān, the Persian, made governor of Qandahār fort, (952 H), p. 848. Sent home again by Humāyun, p. 849.

Bughra Bilāni, accompanies Malika-i-Jahān to Multān, p. 642.

Buhtari, a building crected by Murtuzä, seven farsakhs from Ahmadnagar, p. 154.

Bukhārā, p. 548.

Bukhārā Sayyids, 500 under Sayyid Hāmid, p. 459.

Burhān Nizāmshāh, p. 740. Brother of Murtuzā, p. 64. Puts out the eyes of his son Ismā'il, who dies in consequence. Dies in (1003 H), p. 159.

Burhānpur, p. 28. And Asir, History of, pp. 47-80, 269.

Burhan ud-Din, cup-beares to Mahmud III, p. 250.

Burhān ud-Din Naharwāli, has his beard removed and puts on the royal robes and insigma, is killed, thrown to the days and burnt, p. 257. Joins in a plot to ikill Chirjin (see Mirat-i-Sikandari. This must be an error, as in evident from the fact that the Sultān sends him as a messenger to 'Ālam Khān'), pp. 271, 125.

Burhān ud-Din Qutb-i-'Ālam, saint of Vatwa, pp. 6, 32, 125.

Burhān ul-Mulk Abbāsi, one of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), pp. 218, 232.

Burhān ul-Mulk Ismā'il, revolting Malik under Mahmud I, p. 14.

Burhān ul-Mulk Muhammed Banyani (?), of Chitor, pp. 194, 201. In command of native troops in (935 H), p. 234. At siege of Diu (953 H), p. 237. Appointed Vazir by Mahmud III (950 H), apparently with title of Ashraf Humāyan, p. 270.

Burj, an elephant, p. 422. With Ulugh Khan in (980 H), p. 442. Taken from Sayf ul-Muluk by Akbar, p. 459.

Burj'ali, a Persian merchant in Mandu, p. 399.

Bust, p. 537. Besieged (952H), p. 846. Byzantine, Emperor and Malik Shāh, p. 216.

C

Capitals of Gujarāt, List of various, pp. 28, 706.

Chacha, a Hindu poet, in service of Sanbar Deo p. 755.

Chaghtái Sultān, a young Mughal prince famous for his looks and character. Dies in Kābul, (952 H),

a poetic chronogram on his death, p. 851.

Chahār Majlis, a quarter in Kābul, p. 846.

Champaner, expedition against in (853 H), pp. 2, 11. In the Author's day inhabited only by wild beasts, p. 26. Besieged by Humāyun, (941 H), pp. 200, 269, 312, 313, 314, 318, 319, 321. After defeat of 'Alam Khān, (963 H), given to Ahmed II, p. 336. Given to Ahmed II as his sole fief, pp. 347, 360.

Champa Raja, son of Brahmin of Rohtas, p. 820.

Chandraban Rai, killed in battle with Babur (933 H), p. 786.

Chānd Bibi, p. 71. Sister of Murtuzā Nizām Shāh, in fortress of Ahmednagar, writes to Shāh Murād (1004 H), p. 152. Defends Ahmednagar against the Mughals (1004 H), pp. 153, 159. Is poisoned and stabbed in (1008 H), p. 160.

Chanderi, near Mandu, pp. 9, 170, 627, 677. Taken by Bäbur, (934 H), pp. 786, 835.

Chānd Khān, brother of Bahādur in Mandu, p. 166. On his brother Bahādur's accession was with Mahmud Khalji, who refused to give him up to be murdered with his other brothers (see also under Tāj Khān). Our Author says that Chānd Khān had been placed under the Khalji protection by Muzaffar II. Messages reported to have passed between Chānd Khān and Humāyun in Delhi, p. 168.

Chandur, a pass near Kālna, pp. 75, 154. Changa, village belonging to Sayf ul-Muluk, p. 436.

Charali, garrisoned with Afghans of Balban, p. 60x.

Charkis Khān, p. 416.

Chausa, a ford on the Ganges; scene of battle between Humayun and Sher Shah (Şafar Sth, 946), pp. 824, 825. Chawtara-i-Subhāni, in Delhi, pp. 670.

Chembera Kuri, battle of, (935 H), p. 484.

Chhetra, renamed Muhammedābād, (793 H), p. 750.

Chihil Qani, explanation of the name, pp. "Forty" Turkish Chiefs, p. 603. China, Emperor of, appealed to by Jalaluddin Sultan Shah, p. 544.

Chin-āb, river, p. 828.

Chingiz Khān, the Mongol, begins his conquests in, (602 H), p. 560. Sends his son-in-law Fiqu Nuyan to Ghazna to Fight Jalal Mangubarni, p. 569. Dies on his way to Irag, p. 626.

Chingiz Khān of Gujarāt, son of 'Imād ul-Mulk Aşlan Rumi, pp. 316, 320 328. Left in charge of Broach by his father, pp. 331, 335, 341. Meditates vengeance for his father's death, p. 357. Joins Fath Jang Khān, p. 367. Puts prisoners to death contrary to practice of his day (and this led to his subsequent fate), p. 379. Receives his father's title of 'Imad ul-Mulk, p. 381, List of his nobles in, (967 H). Having made peace with I'timad, attacks Fath Jang Khan, p. 382. Captures Baroda and Chämpaner, (968 H), pp. 385, 393. Concludes peace with I'timād Khān (969 H), p. 394. Joins Ulugh Khan, p. 395. Treats Sher Khan kindly on death of Musā Khān, saying he does not wish to bring a second misfortune on him. Compare the sentiments of Mahmud Begadha on death of Mahmud Khalji, p. 396. Receives Abdulläh Khan Uzbek; is requested

by Akbar to surrender him, p. 307. Dissuaded by his mother from joining Jahangir Khan ( see p. 388 ), p. 308. Attacks Baglana, p. 400. Gains decisive victory in (974 H), p. 406. Enters Ahmadabad, p. 409. Quarrels with Ulugh Khān in connection with a master of the horse, p. 411. Observes the 10th Muharram as a Shiā, p. 463. Sudden death by murder (4th Safar, 975). p. 414. His nobles return to Broach after his murder except Jahangir Khān; his guns and elephants given to Jhughar Khān, p. 416. His character; Persian poem on his death, p. 417.

Chingiz Khān 'Ajami, the Mughal, Vazir to Murtuzā Nizām Shāh, pp. 60, 151.

Chin Timur Sultān, (932 H), p. 781. General of Bābur at Khanwa, (933 H), p. 785.

Chir Jiu Chirya Mār, the Bird catcher, and his friendship with Darya Khān, (945 H), p. 227. Receives the title of Muhāfiz Khān, p. 228. Is murdered in presence of Mahmud III, p. 229. The sparrow hunter, p. 267. His bad language in his cups, p. 270. Mahmud III's nobles determine to be rid of him; the king tries to save him, p. 271.

Chita Khan, eunuch who murdered Chand Bibi, dies in Burhanpur in (1013 H), p. 160.

Chita Rai, Lord of Budapur becomes Chita Khan, (860 H), p. 173.

Chitor, pp. 11, 28, 105, 167, 193. Siege in (941 H), pp. 196, 203, All damage done by the siege repaired by Bahädur, p. 204. Also called Chitrur, captured and given by 'Alaud-Din to his son Khizr Khan

and called Khizarābād, p. 648. Taken by 'Alāud-Din, p. 670.

Chitori, a hill near Champaner, p. 26.

Chiul, p. 31 (Chaul); the Portuguese appear off (913 H), pp. 34, 158 (Chul), p. 833.

Chuli Bahādur, sent as envoy to Persia by Humāyun (950 H), p. 833.

Chumārganw, two farsakhs from Broach, p. 428 (Now Nabipur).

Chuna, besieged by Humāyun, (942 H), p. 819.

# D

Dabhol, see Dabul.

Dabhuyi (wrongly written Dihuyi), pp. 141, 321, 344, 366.

Dabul, (Dabhol), port of Bijāpur, pp. 30, 105.

Dagal Han, (Dajaljan) Abyssinian patriarch and general, pp. 468, 479. Dagra (?), a coin or currency, p. 223. Dahan Rāj, a Hindu merchant of

Cambay, p. 456.

Dahur Samand, p. 139. Dahyod, (Dohad), pp. 2, 4, 185.

Dakar, in Abyssinia, p. 477.

Dalila, a village near Deobalpur, p. 703. Dalir Khan Marjan Ahmed Lar Habash, Taken prisoner, pp. 248, 301, 452.

Dāl Piri Rumi, with Ulugh Khān in (980 H), p. 442.

Daman, pp. 316, 328. Fief of Ulugh Khān, offered to Portuguese in return for help of 500 men, pp. 350, 398.

Ad-Damiri, quoted, p. 518.

Danduqa, see Dhandhuka.

Dandwana, p. 10.

Dangar Rāi Purabi, in Surat fort, P. 355.

Dangri, near Burhänpur, scene of a battle between Mahmud III and Mubārak Shah, pp. 57, 227, 265.

Danuj Rai, joins Sultān Ghiyāsuddin in his invasion of Bengal (671 H), p. 806.

Daragaz, engagement at (956 H), p. 865.

Dara Mahayala, a pass in Junegadh, p. 18.

Darbar, name of Royal Palace in Ahmadābād, p. 330.

Darbari, Raisal, grandson of Rāi Mal, p. 702.

Darvish Jamāli Hāmid, b. Fazlullāh, author of Siyar ul-Ārifin, p. 708.

Darvish Muhammad Sarban, present at battle of Panipat (932 H), p. 781. General of Bābur at Khānwa (933 H), p. 785.

Daryā Khān, son of Zafar Khān, Governor of Gujarāt, held captive by Khān Jahān and is killed, p. 747.

Darvā Khān Habashi Nāsir ul-Mulk, pp. 312, 313, 316, 317, 319, 320, 321. Defeated by I'timad Khan, p. 328. Nāṣir ul-Mulk and his 'Abbāsi contingents put on fine clothes and perfumes before battle (962 H), pp. 329, 330. Called Habash-ul-Mulk obtains title of Nāsir ul-Mulk, Daryā Khān, pp. 331, 332. Lord of Nandarbar, pp. 336, 337, 344. In Nadod (967 H), p. 364. Sets out to meet Ulugh Khan Muhammed, p. 365. Receives Chämpaner, p. 373. Declares for Ulugh Khān, p. 374. Interviews Chingiz Khan, pp. 376, 390, 525.

Daryā Khān Husayn Majlis-i-Sāmi, envoy from Mahmud Khalji to Bahādur (937), p. 166. Son of Sayf ul-Mulk Shir Dil, one of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), pp. 218, 220. Succeeds Şadr Khān as Vazir, p. 226. Orders 'Imād ul-Mulk to go to his estates, p. 266. In absolute authority, p. 227. Joins Sher

Shah, pp. 237, 264. In sole authority on behalf of Mahmud III, (944 H), p. 265. Defeats Mahmud III's army, p. 268. 12000 of his cavalry desert to Mahmud III's army, p. 269.

Daryā Khān Nuhāni, Lord of Patna, pp. 790, 792. Governor of Patna, p. 818.

Darya Khan Rumi, p. 75. With Ulugh Khan in (980 H), p. 442.

Daryā Rāi, Lord of Karha, pp. 168,

Daryā Shāh, armour-bearer to 'Adil Khān III, cuts off head of Shahriyār, D. 54.

Dastur Khān, Kamil ud-Din Miyā 'Abduş-Samad, p. 316.

Dasur, a fort built by Hushang Ghuri of Māndu, in (927 H), held by Asok Purbiya on behalf of Rāi Sāngā. Maiik Ayāz undermines the place and gains time for this by means of pourparlers with Rāi Sāngā, pp. 103, 193, 204. Battle of, supplies of Bahādur's army run short, p. 205.

Daud, son of Qutbuddin, king of Gujarat, ascends momentarily to his father's throne, p. 13.

Dā'ud Khān, p. 756.

Dā'nd Khān, son of Mubārak Khān, placed on throne of Khāndesh, p. 50. Amir of Burhānpur for over four years, p. 51 (932 H), p. 781.

Dā'ud Shāh Bahmani, (780 H), p. 142. Dauraga, engagement in which Daryā

Khān defeats Fattu Jiu, p. 484.

Dawah Shaykh, p. 484.

Dawa Mughli, King of Māwarā un-Nahar, p. 656.

Dāwar, p. 535. see Zamān Dāwar.

Dawlatabad, Name given to new town built round Deogir fort for the Delhi population which had been compelled to migrate by Muhammed | Tughluq, (725 H), p. 715.

Dawlat Khān, brother of Nāşir Khān Afghān, p. 792.

Dawlat Khār, Amir of Lahore (925 H), p. 780.

Dawlat Khan, under Sayf ul-Muluk, p. 451.

Dawlat Khān, joins Khizr Khān (810 H), p. 757. Author knows nothing of his origin, ascends throne in Sivi (815 H), is besieged by Khizr Khān (816 H) and made prisoner, p. 758.

Dawlat Khan Dakkani, in service of Mahmud III, p. 232. Killed at Div (953 H), p. 237.

Dawlat Maydan, name of a suburb of Burhanpur, burial-place of the Khans of Khandesh, pp. 50, 73.

Dawlat Shah, son of Bahram Shah, p. 536.

Ud-Dayba' ibn al-Hāfiz Wajih ud-Din 'Abdur-Rahmān, author of Bughyat ul-Mustafid, a history of Zabid and the Yaman. See also under Ibnud-Dayba'.

Dekkan, History of Muslim Rule in, pp. 137-166. In (935 H) divided into four kingdoms which survived down to (980 H), Ahmadnagar, Ilichpur, Bijāpur and Golkonda, pp. 151, 316.

Delhi, p. 244. Captured by Qutbuddin (589 H) but on p. 562 (588 H) is given, which is probably correct, p. 558. Conquered in (588 H) by Qutbuddin, p. 562. Description of its capture by Muhaddib ud-Din in (639 H), p. 582. Completely invested by the Mongols under Targhi (703 H), p. 670. Becomes capital of India, p. 706. Big Mazjid built by Firuz Shah, p. 744. How the sack of Delhi came about after

Tamerlane had granted quarter, p. 753.

Del-Wanbara, wife of Imam Ahmad, p. 481.

Deobalpur, p. 670.

Deogir, pp. 67, 138. The inhabitants of Delhi sent there (722 H) by Muhammed Tughluq, pp. 141, 148. Rumoured wealth of, tempts 'Alāuddin, nephew of Jalāl Firuz, p. 633. Captured by 'Alāuddin Khalji, p. 633. Having revolted after death of Malik Kāfur is again subdued by Qutbuddin (718 H), p. 695. Renamed Dawlatābād (725 H), p. 715. See also under Dawlatābād.

Deol, in Sind, captured by Mu'izzuddin in (578 H), p. 555.

Devaldevi, see 1) wari Rami, p. 695.

D'hadar, river, p. 379.

D'hagir, a fort on hill of Deogir, p. 142. D'har, pp. 92, 167.

D'haradhar, favourite of Muhammed Tughluq, p. 724.

Dharma Chand Rāj, of Nagarkot, waits on Akbar (963 H), p. 888.

Dholpur, p. 782. Attacked by Humayun (933 H), p. 783.

Dhonduka (Dhandhuka), p. 29. 3 miles out of Ahmedābād, pp. 267.

Dhurka, in Dulka State, battle fought there between Mahmud III's supporters and Daryā Khān, p. 268.

Dibalpur, pp. 96, 764, 780.

Dihra, Wakil to Rāi Phalan, p. 171.

Dilawara, near Dhar, p. 92.

Dilāwar Khān, [proclaimed King of Mālwa (802 H), p. 755.

Dilāwar Khān Habashi, Gujarāt noble sent to help 'Ādil Khān III in (914 H), p. 55.

Dilāwar Khān Habashi Na'ib, in Bijāpur, p. 66. Chief under the Nizām Shāhis (997 H), p. 157. Dilāwar Khān Habashi Snitān, p. 9. Becomes vazir (887 H) but is shortly after exiled, p. 150.

Dilāwar Khān Mandal, pp. 334, 353. Dildār Begum, mother of Hindal Beg, p. 823.

Dili Sukrān, Rustam's horse, p. 429. Dilki Rānā, p. 586.

Dilpatrāi Karamsingh, killed in battle with Bābur (933 H), p. 786.

Dimishqi Shāhzāda, in service of Ulugh Khān, son of Tughluq Shāh, p. 712.

Dir, the battle of, p. 468. A river and site of famous battle between Ahmad Gran and the Abyssinians in (927 H), p. 482.

Div, p. 105. Story of the cow's hide:
Author points out that it is an old story, p. 215. Siege of (953) description with digression, pp. 231, 238. In (955 H) contained nearly 100 sea-going ships, 6000 foreign infantry, 4000 cavalry. By peace agreement the harbour to belong to the Gujaratis and the port to the Portugues and in case of attack, the garrison of the fort to place themselves under the order of the Amir of the harbour, pp. 241, 312, 350.

Div, Sultan of Balkh, p. 776.

Diwāri, daughter of Humber Deo Rāi, p. 665.

Diwāri Rāni, (Devaldevi), daughter of Rāi į Karan, wife of Khizr Khān carried to Delhi and married to Qutbuddin against her will, p. 696. Falls into the hands of Khusraw Khān, p. 701.

Dohad, see Dahyod.

Duldul, name of an Arab horse ridden by Sayf ul-Muluk, pp. 369, 435.

Dul-Fiqar Khan, pp. 155, 332.

Dungarpur, pp. 103, 108, 276. Dungarpur Purbiya, p. 387.

Dungarsi, minister of Rānā Patāi, wounded; prisoner with Rānā Patāi, p. 27. Strikes Shaykan ibn Kahir with a sword but is in his turn struck dead, p. 29.

Dungarsi, Wakil of Ratansingh, Raja of Chitor, p. 166. Killed in battle with Babur (933 H), p. 786.

Durga, mother of Bhupat Rai, reproches Silhadi and his brother for giving up Raisin; her stirring speech, p. 193.

Dusar, a low caste of hucksters, p. 838. Dust Ishaqagha, General of Babur at Khanwa, p. 785.

Dwarka, name of Jagat, p. 21.

Ē

Egypt, conquered by the Ottoman Turks (922 H), p. 187. Wits of, p. 353.

Elichpur, see Ilichpur.

Etawah, captured by Firuz Shah (779 H), pp. 746, 760.

F

Fakhr Malik. nephew of Nasrat Khān Governor of Karka, p. 670.

Fakhr ud-Dawla, The Buwayhid, p. 209. Fakhr ud-Din ad-Dabir, amir belonging to the Arab contingent (633 H), p. 576.

Fakhr ud-Din Junā Ulugh Khān, son of Malik Ghāzi Lād-beg, p. 639. Called from Telingana to supersede Zafar Khān in command against the Mongols; as a reward for his success, he becomes Amir of Ranthambhor, Chitor etc., p. 649. Lays siege to Atangal, p. 670. Repairs fortifications of Delhi, pp. 671, 681. Flees from Khusraw

Khān's court, p. 702. Made heirapparent and receives the title of Ulugh Khān (720 H), p. 711. Succeeds his father Muhammed Shāh (725 H), transfers capital from Tughluqābād to Delhi, p. 715. Fakhrud-Din Kuji, dād-beg, p. 644. Fakhr ud-Din, Malik ul-Umara, Kotwāl of Delhi, p. 604. Is retained in his office by the first Khalji, p. 622.

Fakhr ud-Din Mas'ud, uncle of Shihāb ud-din Ghuri, p. 540.

Fakhr ud-Din Mubārak Shāh, armourbearer to Bahrām Khān, King of Bengal. Drives Qādir Khān out of Bengal and seizes Sonarganw, (739 H). Killed by Shams ud-Din Ilyās (741 H), p. 810.

Fakhr ud-Din Mubārak Shāh, a poet and astronomer at court of Ghiyās ud-Din, p. 551.

Fakhr ud-Din Qiran Timur Khan Shamsi, Governor of Oudh, sent to help I'zzuddin Tughan against Rai of Jajnagar, (641 H), p. 801. Drives Tughan Khan out of Bengal which he rules from (642-644), p. 802.

Fakhr ud-Din Rāzi, Imām of Herāt, p. 550. How he was bribed to desist from preaching against the Imā'lis, p. 551.

Fakhr ud-Din, Az-Zarrād, Mawlānā, (721 H), p. 709,

Fanil, leader of the Abyssianians, p. 476. Farah, p. 558.

. Farahshād, see Fath Jang Khān.

Fard Khān Sultāni, of Chāmpāner, Governor as far as Mandu and Chitor, pp. 247, 313, 319, 361. Taken prisoner in (957), p. 363.

Farhād Khān Habashi, Chief under Nizām Shāhis, (997 H), p. 157. In an engagement with the Portuguese, p. 158. Farhang Khan, Khandash noble, p. 50. Farhan Hushyar Khan, p. 377.

Farhān Lurak Sultāni, pp. 328, 334. Man who killed Shams Khān son of Fard Khān in battle, (967 H), pp. 364, 392, 404, 436.

Farhān Maliki, Killed in (980 H), in unequal fight with Shādi Shams ul-Muluk, p. 444.

Farhan Mukhtaşş Khan, p. 332.

Farhat ul-Mulk, Secretary in Burhānpur, p. 52.

Farhāt ul-Mulk Tughān Sultāni, obtains this title, (866 H), p. 16. Left in charge of Bet Fort, (877 H), pp. 22, 23. The first to enter Chāmpaner, (887 H), p. 27.

Farid Khān, son of 'Alāuddin, murdered in, (720 H), p. 700.

Farid Khān, son of Da'ud Khān, son of Ikhtiyār Khān of Nadiad, an intimate friend of the Author, p. 226.

Farsh Khān, envoy from Maḥmud Khalji to Bahādur, (937 H), p. 165. Farshur, Peshawar, p. 555.

Fāryāb, conquered by Ghiyasuddin Ghuri, p. 544.

Fathābād, pp. 17, 148, 743, 757.

Fath Jang Khān Farrukhshād Rumi, left in India by Sulaymān Pāshā (945 H), p. 226. Title bestowed, (956 H), pp. 246, 247, 317, 318, 329. In Imād ul-Mulk's army, pp. 331, 335, 358, 361. Swears in Turkish, p. 369. Retires with his followers to Ahmadābād, p. 371. Insults I'timād, p. 381. Rejoins Chingiz Khān, (968 H), pp. 385, 492.

Fath Khān, son of 'Abdul Mujāhid Muzaffar Shāh of Gujarat, p. 762. Fath Khān, son of Firuz Shāh, p. 744, dies, (777 H), p. 746. Fath Khān Baluch, ibn Fath Khān Bahru, cousin of Sultān Sikandar present at his accession, (932 H), p. 118. Belonged to the Royal House of Sind; his mother the daughter of Muzaffar II. Added Jālor to Kingdom of Gujarāt, pp. 247. 313. 317. 318, 321. 337. 349. 357. 379, 448.

Fath Khān Shirwāni, son of A'zam Humāyun, relation of Bahlul Ludi, comes to Baḥādur, (937 H), p. 166.

Deserts from Mahmud Khalji to Bahādur, (937 H), p. 167. Receives title of Khān Jahān from Bābur (933 H), p. 783.

Fathpur, pp. 757, 784.

Fath Shah, of Bengal, killed, (894 H), p. 817.

Fatik, son of Jayyāsh and Hindu girl, p. 88. Succeeds his father in Tatāma, p. 90.

Fatima, sister of the Author (b. 946-d. 976), p. 505.

Fattu Jiu Muhāfiz Khān, pp. 218, 220. Persuades Daryā Khān to set up new Sultān; is besieged and taken prisoner in Chāmpāner; pp. 228, 264, 268.

Faws Beg, killed at Chausa, (946 H), p. 824.

Fazil Muhammed Khan, p. 495.

Fazlullāh Al-Bijli, appeals to Tamerlane to give quarter in Delhi, p. 753.

Figunoyan, son-in-law of Chingiz Khan, the Mougol, p. 569.

Firang Khān '( Saktā ), European gunner, converted by Bahādur, destroys the gun used by Humāyun at Chāmpāner, p. 200. In the Div disaster tries to kill the viceroy with his sword, but the blow is warded off by one of the Viceroy's relations, who is killed, p. 223.

Firdawsa, sister of Ahmad Gran, p. 482.

Firuz, cousin of Muhammed b. Tughluq, with the Sultan at time of his death, is appointed to succeed to throne of Delhi (891 H), p. 740. (See Firuz Shāh III).

Firuz, the barber, favourite of Mahammed Tughluq, p. 725.

Firuz, uncle of Muhammed b. Tughluq, who appoints him Barbak (725 H), p. 715.

Firuz Bahmani, King of Dekkan dies (825 H) according to Tārikh-i-'Ajam. Contradictory versions regarding accession of his brother Ahmad, p. 143. dies (832 or 33 H) according to Husam Khan, p. 145.

Firuz Khān, who had been with Sher Shāh, the Afghān, p. 379.

Firuz Khān, son of Shams Khān Dandāni, son of Wajih ul-Mulk of Nāgor, p. 10.

Firuz-Kuh, founded by Qutbuddin Suri, p. 534.

Firuzpur, name given to fort in Sioli; the last fort built by Firuz Shāh, P-747.

Firuz Shah, Habashi King of Bengal, dies (899 H), p. 817.

Firuz Shāh, son of Salim Shāh succeeds his father but is at once put to death by his mother's brother Mubāriz Khān, p. 838.

Firuz Shāh III, Abul Muzaffar, when heir-apparent left in charge of the capital when his father invades Gujarāt (745 H), p. 728. Son of Sipahsālār Rajab, brother of Tughluq Shāh assends throne (725 H), p. 741. His parentage, p. 742. His meeting with various saints in his boyhood, goes to Siwastān, p. 742. Builds big masjid, madrasa and fort on banks of Jamna, p. 744. Abdicates in favour of his son

Muhammed (789 H), dies (790 H), p. 747. Poem written in his praise by Ziāuddin Barani, p. 748. Marches into Bengal to attack Shamsuddin Ilyās (750 H), p. 812.

Firuz Tawāshi Habashi in charge of Bahādur's harim, p. 512.

Foreign Contingent, 12000 Maharas, p. 243. Mercenaries to be turned out of Ahmadābād, p. 344.

Fulad Khan, title of Şandal Habashi and of his son Abdul Karim, p. 57.

Fulad Khan 'Abdul Karim, p. 49
Author in his service. His first
battle as an amir described by himself, p. 58. Born in Burhanpur
(958 H), died in Pul Tanpha
(1014 H), Goes over to Akbar,
p. 59. In service of 'Adil Shah of
Khandesh, pp. 67, 531. Son of
Şandal Fulat Khan Habashi, governor of Burhapur, in Akbar's time;
patron of our Author, p. 789.

Fulad Turki, conquers Tabarhind (833 H), p. 761. In Tabarhind, p. 762.

Fushanj, conquered by Ghiyāsuddin (573 H), p. 544.

## C

Gagrun, captured by Muhammed Shāh of Asir (938 H). When Medni Rāi had defeated the Khalji, this place had passed into the hands of Rāi Sāngā, p. 193.

Gakkars, the, a tribe, p. 833. Defend themselves against Salim Shāh, p. 835.

Gamid, p. 316. Battle of, for possession of Ahmad II's person (961 H), p. 317.

Gaudamak, p. 873.

Gangdās Rāi, son of Trimbakdās, lord of Chāmpāner, pp. 1, 5, 172. Ganges, p. 718.

Gangu Purabiya, Lord of Dasur, p. 193. Ganj Shakar Farid ud-Din, p. 62.

Gargaun, pp. 28, 171.

Garmpatan, on borders of Tibet, held by Turkish garrison (591 H), p. 797. Garmsir, p. 779.

Gaur, p. 792. See also under Lakhnawati.

Gāyān, see under Khwāja Jahān.

Gawhar, son of Hājji 'Imād ul-Mulk, p. 25.

Gaysu (Gisu) Dirāz, Jamāl ud-Din Muhammad, saint of Gulbarga (800 H), p. 143.

Gajdawan, battle at (918 H), p. 779. Ghālib Jang, an elephant belonging to Mahmud Khalji, p. 9.

Ghālib Khān Shaḥnat ud-Diwān, follower of Yaqut Ulugh Khān, p. 306. In service of Ulugh Khān (979 H), p. 440. Before battle of Nadiad deserts Ulugh Khān and goes over to I'timād, p. 467. Killed in (981 H), p. 495.

Ghålib Khān Rumi, Governor of Ahmadābād (974 H), p. 411.

Ghālib Khān Şandal, see Sandal Ghālif Khān.

Ghassani, Abul Husayn Ahmad, b. Abul Ḥasan 'Ali b. Ibrāhim b. Muhammad b. al-Husayn az-Zubair, a poet and mathematician who first arranged for the water-supply of Zabid, died (563 H), p. 81.

Ghaznfar ul-Mulk Bihlim, an amir left in charge of Patan by Yādgār Nāşir Mirzā, deserts to Bahādur (942 H), pp. 220, 243.

Ghāzi, one of three brothers who came to 'Alāuddin Khalji from Khurāsān, made amir of Deobalpur, afterwards becomes Tughluq Shāh, p. 742.

Ghāzi Khān, title conferred on Muḥammad Bak'hā, p. 53,

983

Ghāzi Khān, son of Ḥājji Khān, wounded (974 H), p. 410. In service of Bijli Khān, p. 437.

Ghāzi Khān Sur, father of Ibrahim Sur, besieged in Bayāna (962 H), p. 839. Governor of Bayāna, killed by Hayder Muḥammad (963 H), p. 886.

Ghāzi Khān Shur-Bakht, in service of Sikandar Sur ( 964 H ), p. 786.

Ghaznin or Ghazna, pp. 531, 779.

Ghaznin Khān, son of Dā'ud Khān, son of Mubarak Khān, p. 50.

Ghaznin Khān, son of Ḥasan, son of Rāja Ahmad. His mother a Gujarāt princess, p. 48.

Ghiyāspur, two miles from Ahmadābād, pp. 201, 627.

Ghiyās ud-Din, receives large money gifts from Muhammad b. Tughluq, p. 738.

Ghiyas ud-Din b. Sikandar, King of Bengal, p. 815.

Ghiyas ud-Din Bahmani, imprisoned and blinded (799 H), p. 142.

Ghiyāsud Din Balban, educated in Baghdād but emigrated to Gujarat, sold to Il-tamish in Delhi in (680 H), p. 596. Also known as Ulugh Khān, the Shamsi, ascends the throne in (662 H). (Other authorities give 664 H), p. 599. Sultān of Delhi, invades Bengal (680 H), p. 805.

Ghiyās ud-Din 'Iwāz, King of Bengal' (608-624), p. 511. b. Husayn Khalji, ascends the throne in Lakhnawati (610 H), p. 798.

Ghiyās ud-Din Khalji, son of Mahmud I, Khalji of Mandu, p. 11. Advances as far as Na'lcha to help Rāna Patāi, whence he turns back owing to remonstrances of the Doctors of Islām, pp. 26, 167, 170. Succeeds to the throne of Mālwa. Description of his luxurious court, p. 178.

His peculiar habits, p. 179. His hunting boxes every four farsakhs from Na'lcha to Ujjain. His love of sama', pp. 180, 764.

Ghiyās ud-Din Mahmud, son of Ghiyasuddin Muhammed, refuses to succeed his uncle Mu'izz in Ghazna but confess Sultanat on Qutbuddin, p. 563.

Ghyyas ud-Din Muhammad, son of Bahauddin Sam, the Ghuri, pp. .535, 541. Defeats Jalaluddin on the Murghab (588 H), p. 544. Converted from Kirami heterodoxy, p. 549.

Ghiyas ud-Din Muhammad, son of Il-tamish, Governor of Oudh, attacks Ruknuddin, p. 576.

Ghogha, p. 247. A day's voyage from Cambay, p. 259. Port in Gujarāt, p. 525.

Ghulām'ali Shash-Angusht, p. 876.

Ghur, p. 530. Five kings of, who ruled for sixty-four years, p. 531.

Ghurband, p. 866.

Ghuri, captured by Kamran (954 H), p. 857.

Ghurids, p. 53r. Historians of; Juzjāni mentions that during the Mongol invasion he lost a History of Ghuris which contained material nowhere else to be found, p. 534.

Ghuristān, Ghuzistān, Gharshistān, p. 535. Gharistān for Gharshistān, p. 541.

Ghuzz, in Ghuri army, p. 537. Driven out by the Chinese, conquired Ghazna, which they occupied for twelve years, p. 554.

Gilan, in Afghanistan, p. 535.

Girbās, name of an elephant belonging to Sher Shāh, p. 827.

Girnāl, (Girnār). Mahmud I attacks (871 H), conquered by Muhammed ibn Tughluq (750 H), p. 18. Be-

sieged by Mahmud I (874 H), p. 19. Surrenders to Mahmud I on 10th Jumādi II, 875; p. 20.

Goa, p. 105. In hands of 'Alam Khan (867 H), p. 148.

Godra, p. 319.

Gogala, near Diu, p. 215.

Gogan, near Chiul, p. 105.

Golkonda, p. 60.

Gondi Haryāla, p 219.

Gondwara, the Rai of, pp. 17, 148.

Gorakhpur, the Rāi of, prays homage to Sultān Firuz Shāh (754 H) and accompanies him to Pandova, p. 812.

Govind, Rāi of Delhi, p. 557.

Gujarat, Kingdom of, extent in (889) H) lines capitals of, p. 28, Education of young men; use of perfumes and cosmetics, p. 90. Amirs of, revolt on account of Khammar's cruelty (748 H), p. 141. Gujaratis, their character, p. 189. Distribution of districts among the amirs in (956 H), (1) Naharwala Patan; Jalor, Nagor, Sirohi, Ajmer, under Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk. (2) Nandarbar. Sultanpur, Sondgira (Songadh), Kālna; under Nāşir ul-Mulk. (3) Jalor and frontiers of Sind under Fath Khan. (4) Junagadh, Khukla, Parmingaim Ghogha, Kundi, Haryala as far as Kachh; under Shamsir ul-Mulk, p. 247. Under the Muzaffaris, one of the most prosperous countries, until the time of the Emperor Humāyun, p. 459. Received under Mahmud III, but again declined on his death. Army of (980 H), details: 12000 horsemen, p. 459. Conquered in (593 H) by Qutbuddin, p. 562. By the victory of Qutbuddin Aybak over Bhimdeo at Naharwala in (593 H)

becomes a Muslim province. p. 563. Invaded by Ulugh Khan Khalji (697 H), p. 646.

Gulbarga, pp. 141, 143, 719.

Gul-i-Bihisht, name of a slave girl in Jalor, p. 650.

Guma'on, a fort, p. 836.

Gwalior, p. 565. Captured by Il-tamish in 630, p. 574. (Often written Galior) pp. 633, 759, 770.

## H

Habash Khān Nāṣir, a Habashi chief under the Nizām Shāhis (997 H), p. 157. Left behind by Sulaymān Pāshā in (915 H), p. 226. Becomes Amir of Div (954 H), having been head of the town guard of Ahmadābād, pp. 241, 242, 313.

Habash ul-Mulk Rayhān Sultāni, in service of Ādil Shāh of Khāndesh, p. 67. Killed in (1003 H), p. 72. With 'Imād ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiyār in (982 H), p. 501.

Habib Ullāh, son of Shamsuddin Kābuli Munsif ul-Mulk, a cousin of the Author's father, p. 246.

Habib ul-Mulk, son of Asaf Khān Abul Qasim.

Habr Maqadi, a tribe, p. 482.

Habshis, as good as the Arabs in all except descent, p. 90. Common people incited to murder them, p. 325. Number 5000 in Ahmadābād, p. 357. 1500 assemble in Baroda after the battle (967 H), p. 364. Some of the Christian Abyssinians taken prisoner in battle of Ad-Dayar sent to Amir Salmān in Zabid, p. 469.

Hāfiz Shirāzi, the poet, an omen taken from his diwān when Humāyun sets out for India (961 H), p. 880.

Hāfiz ud-Dimishqi, author of an Adab, pp. 184, 197.

Hājji, a slave of Fakhrud-Din Kotwāl, his short-lived revolt (699 H), p. 663.

Ḥājji ad-Dabir, the name by which the Author of this history was always known, p. 200. See under Author.

Hājji Begum, wife of Humāyun, present at Chausa (946 H), p. 824. And Humāyun's ladies sent to him in Agra by Sher Shāh after battle of Chausa, p. 825.

Hājji Khān, p. 368. Noble in service of Chingiz Khān (967 H), p. 382. Killed (974 H), p. 410.

Hājji Khān 'Imād ul-Mulki, p. 331. Sets out to aid Jān Ahmad against Ulugh Khān (967 H), p. 365.

Hājji Khān Sher Shāhi, flees from Akbar and joins Musā Khān at Sarkhej (965 H), pp. 345, 399. In service of Akbar, p. 402.

Hājji Muhammed, Lord of Pāl, p. 52.

Hajji Muhammed Koki, receives title of Sultān (95r H), pp. 843, 854. Sent in pursuit of Kāmrān, (954 H), p. 856. Flees to Gujarāt (964 H), p. 889.

Hājjipur Patna, p. 790.

Hājji Siyān I'tibār ul-Mulk, with Author in Soughad (1012 H), p. 791.

Hājji Sultāni, officer of Mahmud I, p. 14. Takes the title of 'Imād ul-Mulk after death of Sha'bān, ip. 16. See 'Imād ul-Mulk Hājji.

Halim Khān, brother of Āsaf Khān, p. 207.

Hālol, near Chāmpāner, p. 29.

Halqa, of elephants-ten elephants, p.

Halwad (Halod), capital of Mansingh, pp. 276, 326.

Hambardeo Rāi, son of daughter of Rāi Pithora of Delhi, pp. 647, 659.

Hāmid, b. Fazlullāh, see Darwish Jamāl.

Hamid Khan, commander of Firuza Fort, p. 780.

Hamid ud-Din, son of 'Alaud-Din Khalji, killed in siege of Ran thambhor (700 H), p. 670.

Hamid ud-Din, Wakil, son of 'Alaud-Din Dabir, p. 681.

Hamid ud-Din Amir-i-Kult (Lord of the Hills), suppresses the revolt in Delhi (699), p. 664.

Hamza Sultān, "Uzbeg General killed in (917 H), p. 773.

Hāndiya and Bijānagar, conquered and added to Khāndesh by Mubārak II, p. 57.

Haranmar, Malik, goes over to side of 'Alaud-Din Khalji, p. 1641. Na'ib Barbak, p. 644.

Harar, pp. 468, 476.

Harpāl Deo, son-in-law of Rām Deo of Deogir, p. 139. Is flayed alive, p. 695.

Harun ar-Rashid, p. 531.

Hāruni, captured by Mahmud Khalji, p. 172.

Hasan b. Alā Sanjari, poet, p. 710.

Hasan, son of Mākān, commander of Khāndar fort, p. 782.

Hasan 'Alwān, a ship's captain, p. 400. Hasan Āgā, see Rustam Khān.

Hasan Gangu, see 'Aläud-Din Bahman Shah pp. 731, 733.

Hasan-i-Sabbāh, Founder of the Assassins, his compositions destroyed by his grandson in, (807 H), p. 55r.

Hasanjiu Sanāullāh al-Lāri, son of Sunayla, with Ulugh Khān (980 H), p. 442. Made an amir, p. 444. Brought up 'Imād ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiyār (982 H), p. 501.

Hasan Khan, son of Mubarak Khan, "Chongandi," p. 51.

Hasan Khān, son of Muhammed Shāhi, plot to place him on the throne

(862 H), (called by some historians Habib Khān), p. 14.

Hasan Khān Dakkani, in service of Mahmud III, p. 232. Brother of Dawlat Khān, pp. 287, 317, 318, 321. Killed in (961 H), by gunshot wound, p. 321. Lord of Karālu, p. 337. A man who understood the times when Jognis (people of the unseen world) would appear, p. 377.

Hasan Khān Mewāti (932 H), p. 782. Allied with Rānā Sāngā against Bābur (933 H), p. 784. Killed in battle with Bābur (933 H), p. 786.

Hasan Khān Shirwāni, in service of Fath Jang Khān, p. 369. His fatal fall into a well, p. 386.

Hasan Khān Turki, a Turk brought up in the Dekkan, p. 381. Noble in service of Chingiz Khān, p. 382.

Hasan Koka, joins Humāyun in Persia, p. 841.

Hasan b. 'Ali b. Muhammed b. as-Sabbāh al-Himyari, flees from Irāq to Egypt in, (471 H); At Alamut, p. 215. Died 518 H. p. 216.

Hasan Rão-Bachcha, given title of Khusraw Khān and made Vazir by Qutbuddin in (716 H), p. 695.

Hasan Shāh, of Khāndesh (984H), p. 61.

Hasan Sur, son of Ibrāhim Sur, father of Sher Shāh Farid, captures Sasrām and governs the town, p. 1790.

Enters service of Rāi Mal, grandfather of Rāisal Darbāri. Enters service of Nāsir Khān Afghān in Sasrām; and after his death, of Dawlat Khān, his brother; next in service of Amir Pani; his son Farid now leaves him, p. 792.

Hāti Baluch, Lord of Chul (950 H), accompanied Humāyun to borders of Garmsir, p. 833.

Hatim Khan (932 H), taken prisoner and put to death, p. 781.

Hatyagar, in Gakkar country, p. 833 Hatya Payak, would-be assassin Jalal Firuz, p. 629.

Hawai, name of an elephant belonging to Himu, p. 880.

Hawz-i-Rumi, a tank in Delhi, p. 58; Haybat Khan Bihlim, pp. 60, 24 Had under him 400 Bihlim knight p. 459.

Haydar 'Ali Mirzā, in service Khwāja Kilān Beg (932 H), p. 7 Haydar Tahangir Khāni noble in se

Haydar Jahangir Khāni, noble in se vice of Chingiz Khān (967 H p. 382.

Haydar Khān Kashmiri, p. 436.

Haydar Muhammed Khan Akhtabes kills Ghazi Khan (963 H), p. 88

Hayrati Mulla, Persian poet, mee Humāyun, p. 845.

Hays, in Yam in, p. 42.

Hazar Chashni, p. 530.

Hazar Sutun, the palace of thrones a pillars in Delhi, p. 692.

Hejaz, learned men of, p. 353.—an Yaman under Governor of Egyp p. 511.

Hemkaran Purbiya and Badan, the only Hindus who escaped from Mandu, let themselves down be ropes, p. 96. Hemkaran attacke and killed in Gagraun by Mahmu Khalji, p. 98.

Hilâl Habashi, in service of Sayyi Hāmid, who had married his sister killed in battle against Ibrahir Mirzā (980 H.), p. 450.

Hilal Rumi Khan, p. 328.

Himun (Himu), p. 838. Ingratiate himself with Salim Shāh and be comes all powerful—and finall takes title of "Raja Vikramajit' Defeats Ibrahim Sur, p. 839. Mai ches from Banāras to Agra an thence to Delhi, which he occupie and governs; is defeated by Akba

and taken prisoner (964 H) and his head is struck off by Bayram Khān, p. 889. His father taken prisoner by Pir Muhammed Khān, p. 889.

Hindal Mirza, born (925 H), p. 782.

Sent to Radakhshan, p. 787. Hearing Sher Shah is in Rohtas, leaves Tirhut and goes to Agra, p. 822.

Ascends his brother's throne in Agra, p. 823. The only brother left with Kamran in Kabul (952 H), p. 848. Pays homage to Humayun on his way to take Kabul (952 H), asks to be given command of the vanguard, p. 850. Sent in pursuit of Kamran, p. 850. Killed in battle (958 H), p. 874.

Hindu Beg, made governor of Bahra (925 H), p. 779. Present at battle of Pānipat (932 H), p. 781. Wakil to Humāyun, p. 782. Present at Bābur's death, p. 788. Dies in Jaunpur (945 H), p. 822.

Hulachun, the Mongol invades Lahore (743 H), p. 727.

Hulāgu Khān sends envoy from Irāq to Nāṣiruddin in (662 H), p. 769. Spelled Hutāu, pp. 626, 627.

Humayun, The Mughal Emperor sets out from Bengal. On reaching Kälpi, the governor of that fort, Sultan 'Alam, leaves with a large force and joins Bahādur. Here he learns that Chitor is being besieged and that Muhammed Zamāu has been exalted by Bahadur. He writes to Bahadur accusing him of unfriendliness. Bahādur sends humble reply which he receives on reaching Agra; he again writes to Bahādur as follows: " A judge was asked, 'What is a helpless man?' He replied, " He who has no friends; Another judge standing by him said. 'No'. He is one who had friends but has lost them'. It has been said. 'a thousand friends are few, but one enemy is many', p. 196. After the conquest of Mandu. clothed from head to foot in red: slaughter of inhabitants only ceases when he removes his red clothes. p. 100. Marches on Cambay and Ahmadābād. Hearing Shah's rebellion in Bihar, leaves Mitzā Hindal in Ahmadabad: Qarim Beg in Broach; Hindu Beg in Pattan; hastens to Agra. Goes to Saranpgur, p. 203. In Ujjain when Bahadur takes Chitor, p. 204. Sends his brother in pursuit of Bahadur towards Mandu and captures the camp, p. 205. Enters Mandu by force, p. 206. Sets out for Champaner after capture of Mandu, p. 207. Follows Bahadur to Cambay, warned to plans of midnight attack by an old woman, withdraws for the night: returns to find his books stolen. Cambay for three days and preceeds to Champaner, p. 208. Occupying Champaner, collects the revenue as far as Mahi river, but beyond that river there was no one in authority. The leading farmers petition Bahādur to send officials to collect the revenues, which otherwise would be lost, p. 212. In (942 H) having disposed of Champaner, set out to attack 'Imad ul-Mulk in Ahmadabad, p. 213. In (942 R) leaves Gujarāt for Mandu where he stays, as the climate suited him. List of officers he left in charge of principal towns, p. 219. Invasion of Gujarāt lasted 13 months and 13 days, p. 221. With Tahmasp, p. 308. Sent to govern Badakhstān (926 H), p. 776.

Arrives in Käbul from Badakhshān (932 H), p. 780. Is made Governor of Sanbal and Hisārfiruza, p. 782. Is permitted to conduct campaign against Rānā Sāngā, p. 783. Summoned to Agra [(933 H), p. 784. With Sultan Uways obtains surrender of Samargand, but is recalled by Bābur to Badakhshan (935 H), p. 786. Illness, p. 787. Ascends the throne in Agra (937), conquers Jaunpur (938 H), p. 788. Flees to court of Tahmasp (943 H), p. 789. One of the causes of his sudden withdrawal from Gujarat was the behaviour of Sher Shah in Bengal, p. 792. On withdrawing from Gujarāt chooses to stay in Mandu on account of its good climate. Hearing that his brothers are planning to revolt, he at length hastens to Agra-meeting his brothers on the road. He then learns that Sher Shah has captured Chunar, whither he at once proceeds (Q42 H), p. 818. Conquers Bengal (945 H), p. 820. Remains idle after conquest of Bengal, p. 822. Bestirs himself and leaving Jahangir Ouli in charge of Bengal, marches on Agra (945 H), p. 823. Enters water on horseback at battle of Chausa and is nearly drowned (045 H), p. 824. Is resented from the river by a water-carrier who recognised him, to him he promises 'the reign of half a day', p, 825. After his defeat at Chausa, returns to Agra and tries to persuade his brothers to unite with him in opposing Sher Shah, p. 826. Sent out again to meet Sher Shah at Qanawi. p. 827. Is again saved from drowning at Qanawj (947 H), p. 828. Joins Kamran Mirza after Qanawi,

p. 828. Goes to Sind, then to Uchcha, Bakar and Luhuri (048 H). Here he married the lady who became the mother of Akbar (Maryam Makāni), p. 829. Besieges Sihwān, p. 830. Enters Persian territory (950 H), p. 833. Learning that the Delhi army is in Bengal, hastens to Agra (of H), p. 840. Entertained in Farah (), p. 841. Visits the tomb of the Imam in Mashhad (951), p. 842. Returns to India with a large contingent of Persians (Qizilbāsh), p. 845. Having secured Qandahār, sets out against Kābul (952 H), p. 850. Occupies Kābul, celebrates the event, receives envoys with congratulations from Shah Tahmasp (952 H), p. 850. Sets out for Badakhshān (953 H), p. 851. Occupies Badakhshān (053H): at Shakhdin lies unconscious for four days (953 H), p. 852. Hearing that Kāmran is back again in Kābul, marches from Badakhshān, p. 853. While besieging Kābul is joined by many contingents; he again occupies Kābul (954 H), p. 856. Sets out for Badakhshan (955 H), p. 858. Writes reproachful letter to Kämran in Taligan (955 H), p. 860. After departure of Kamran forgives the rebellions chiefs, p. 86r. Sets out against Balkh (956 H) and summons all his brothers to join him, p. 863. Is deserted by many of his officers, his horse is wounded under him, p. 867. Buys horses at Kahwar from Persian dealers on their way to India (956 H), p. 868. Advances against Kābul, p. 869. Follows Kāmrān into Lamghan (957 H), p. 872. Encamps at Bihoud for six months (958 H) after death of Hindal,

p. 874. Learning from Sultan Adam that Kamran is again at his court, sets fout for the Gakkar, country carrying Prince Akbar with him. p. 876. Enters Kābul (961 H) receives the congratulations of the Begums, but says the Kamran incident is not matter for congratulations; for it is as if he had removed his own eyes, p. 878. Goes to Qandahār (961 H) and returns to Kābul, p. 879. Sets out for India via Jalālābād (961 H), p. 880. Reaches Jalandar and the Afghan garrison flees, p. 881. After defeat of Sikander Sur marches to Delhi and halts at Salingar (062 H), p. Re-enters Delhi in state (4th Ramzān, 962), divides his officers and servants into three classes: (I) Ahl-i-Dawlat; the soldiery; (2) Ahl-i-Sa'ādat: the men of learning, judges, poets etc.; (3) Ahl-i-Murad: Artists, musicians and singers, p. 884. The circumstances of the accidents which led to his death. Our Author says that the fact that Humayun heard the Muezzin's call to evening prayer as he was descending the steps is "not mentioned by Abul Fazl." This statement would seem to point to an earlier version of the Akbar-Nāma, p. 888.

Humāyun Khān, son of Muhammed Shāh, son of Firuz, p. 748. Attacks envirous of Delhi (792 H), p. 749. Succeeds his father (793 H). Dies after one month and eighteen days, p. 750.

Humāyun Shāb, son of 'Alāuddin Ahmad Bahmani, murdered in (865 H), p. 147.

Husam Khan, Vazir to 'Alauddin b.

Muhammed Khizr Khan (880 H), p. 765.

Husam ud-Din Khan, the historian, grandson of Muhāfiz Khān. Author of Tabaqat-i-Husam Khan. First quotation from this book, pp. 5, 21. Sava he was present with Muzaffar II in Dhar, p. 92. Is sent by Oiwam ul-Mulk to fetch certain nobles, p. 102. Sent by Bahadur to fetch Tāj Khān from Dilkushā, where he was guarding 'Imad ul-Mulk (932 H), pp. 126, 142. Version of capture of Mandu in (937 H), p. 167. Accompanies Tātār Khan Ludi to Chitor, p. 194. Quoted as varying somewhat from Ziauddin in a narrative, p. 622. Gives a more detailed account of the Mongol revolt against Ulugh Khān (697 H) than Ziauddin, p. 651. Very full details of peace negotiations before Ramthambhor and of the siege, p. 660. Quoted in connection with date os Tughlug Shah, p. 714. Quoted for period covered by Ziauddin, p. 726. Author says he does not relate what happened to Sultan 'Alam Khan when Babur entered Delhi, p. 774. Accused of overlooking important details regarding Jalaluddin Muhammed b. Kans, p. 816.

Husam ud-Din, brother of Khusraw Khan sent as governor of Gujarat (718 H), turns renegade; the nobles of Gujarat seize him and carry him to Delhi, where the Sultan gives him a mild stap on the face for all punishment, p. 698.

Husam ud-Din, maternal grand-father of Ziya Barani left in charge of Lakhnawati (671 H), p. 806.

Husam ud-Din, Qutlagh Shah, amir of the Black Standard, p. 590. Husam ud-Din, Chief justice of Mahmud Khalji, p. 11.

Husam ud-Din Ghalback, Governor of Oudh, p. 793.

Hufām ud-Din 'Iwāz Khalji, Governor of Kanguri, father of 'Ali Mardān Khalji, p. 798.

Husām ud-Din Mughli, p. 47. Succeeds his brother Yār 'Ali as amir of Burhānpur, (Khāndesh), p. 51.

Husam ud-Din, saint of Naharwala Prtan, pp. 5, 385.

Husam ul-Mnlk Jhaju, revolting Malik under Mahmud I, p. 14.

Husayn, son of Nizām Shah, imprisoned in Dawlatabad, p. 154.

Husayn ilm Kharmil, Governor of Karzawān, p. 547. King of Karzawān, p. 558.

Husayn ibn Salāma, regent of Zabid, p. 82.

Husaya Amir, son-in-law of Firuz Shāh, a partisan of Muhammed Shāh, p. 748.

Husayn, son of Sam, the Ghuri, p. 530. Husayn Beg Shah, son of Shah Beg Arghun, p. 827. Cuts off Humayun's supplies, invites Yadgar Nasir Mirza, p. 830.

Husayn Khalfat, gunner in service of Humāyun at Qanawj, p. 827.

Husayn Khān, body servant of Murtuzā Nizām Shāh, put to death, p. 154.

Husayn Khān, Lord of Mewāt, killed in battle against Bābur (933 H), p. 777.

Husayn Khān Mughal, p. 450.

Husayn Khān Nuhāni, p. 782.

Husayn Quli Khān, amir of Lähore, p. 489.

Husayn Mirza Sultan, Lord of Khurasan (912 H), p. 778. Brother of Ahmad Shamlu, converses with Humāyun on a point of religion, p. 840.

Husayn Shāh, son of Mahmud succeeds to Jaunpur (862). After ousting his brother, Husayn conquers Tirhut, Khora, Bhakar, and Oudh; builds fort of Banaras. Meets Bahlul Ludi and agrees to content himself with Delhi (878 H), died (905 H), p. 120. Married to daughter of 'Alāuddin b. Muhammed Khizr Khān; has designs on Delhi, is defeated by Bahlol Ludi, p. 769.

Husayn Sultān, in Amir Timur's army at capture of Delhi (801,H), p. 753. Hushangābād, conquered by Bahādur.

(938 H), p. 193.

Hushang Ghuri, founder of Māndu, p. 170. Sultān of Māndu, makes peace with Mu'izzuddin, p. 760.

Hushyar Khan Farhan (967 H), pp. 377, 403.

Hushyār Mast, an elephant belonging to Qutbuddin, of Gujarāt, p. 9.

Hushyār ul-Mulk Sultāni, "Tawila", pp. 328, 332, 334. Serving Ulugh Khān in Cambay, p. 439. In service of Ulugh Khān (980 H), p. 452.

Huyut al-Mahari, captain of a vessel cabled "Daryasarā" which carried Āsaf Khān to Jeddah with Bahādur's harim which they reached in two months, p. 219.

## T

Ibb, a town in Yaman, p. 43.
Ibn 'Abbās, anecdote regarding, p. 376.
Ibn 'Abduliāh 'Idrus, p. 499.
Ibn Ahmad Khān-Khānān Bahmani, p. 2.

Ibn ar-Rabi', envoy of the Khalifa to Ghiyasuddin, p. 546.

Ibnak Khān Habashi Nizāmshāhi, pp. 67. 154. Habashi chief under Nizām Shāhis (997 H), pp. 157.

370, 371. Handsome by rewarded after battle (967 H), p. 372.

Iba ud-Dayba al-Wajih 'Abdur-Rahmān, b. 'Ali b. Muhammed b. 'Umar b. Muhammed b. Umar b. 'Ali b. Yusuf b. Ahmad b. Umar ash-Shaibāni az-Zabidichi ash-Shāfi. Born (866 H), in Zabid, died (944 H), p. 44. A list of his works: Kashf ul-Kurba fi Sharh du'a abi Hurba; Bughyat ul-Mustafid fi Akhbār Zabid; al-'Iqd ul-Bāhir fi Tārikh Dawlat Bani Tāhir, p. 45.

Ibn al-Libān, a qasida of his quoted, p. 256.

Ibn as-Şaburi, a renegade, foretells the death of Bahādur; founded a sect in Mangalore; executed, p. 222.

Ibn Fahd Abul Qāsim, b. Ahmad, (b. 846 d. 925), visits Gujarāt and Māndu, p. 100.

Ibn Hajar al-Haysami, pp. 34, 276.

Ibn Haydar, musician, pp. 407, 414.

Ibn-i-Bint-i-Shāh, Grand-son of Shamsuddin, Il-tamish is set up as Sultān by Delhi rebels in (699 H), p. 664.

Ibn Khallikan, Persian translation of his history made by Yusuf b. Ahmad b. Muhammed b. Usman dedicated to Mahmud Beghada, pp. 29, 112.

Ibn Khatib, addresses Ghiyasuddin in the Masjid, p. 546.

Ibn Nāsir ud-Din Shamsuddin, Abu Abdullāh Muhammad, al-Qaysi, al-Hamawi (b. 777 d. 842), p. 507.

Ibn Qara Qamar, becomes Shāyasta Khān, p. 701.

Ibn Usāma, poet quoted, p. 423.

Ibn Zarin, p. 475.

Ibn Zaydun, author of Sinh ul-'Ulum, p. 255.

Ibn Ziyād, Abdullāh, founder of Zabid, p. 82.

Ibrāhim and Ismā'il, Prophets, p. 329.

Ibrāhim, b. 'Abduliāh ibn Ziyād, p. 82. Ibrāhim, b. Ahmad, Governor of Hubat, kills ruler of Barr Sa'duddin, p. 475. Ibrāhim Begchābuq, with Humayun in Bengal, p. 819.

Ibrāhim Khān Sur, b. Malik Pathan Ludi, pp. 789, 791. Amir of Bayāna (960 H), p. 838.

Ibrāhim Ludi, Receives Bahādur in Delhi, p. 108. Son of Sikander Ludi, turns his brother out of Jaunpur, p. 121. Ascends throne in Agra (923 H), p. 770. Crushed by elephants in battle of Pānipat, (932 H), p. 771. His mother and children sent to Kābul by Bābur, pp. 779.

Ibrāhim Mirzā, son of Muhammed Sultan Mirzā, son of Uways Mirzā, son of Baygara, son of Mansur, son of 'Umar Shaykh Bahādur, son of Amir Timur Gurgan Sahib Qiran. His mother was the daughter of Husayn Mirza Khaqan, p. 401. Being driven out of Malwa by Akbar's officers flees to Gujarat, (974 H), pp. 402, 408. Reconciled with Rustam Khan, (978 H), p. 432. Meets I'timād Khān, (980 H), p. 443. Flees from Sarkhej to Asāwal, thence to Broach, p. 455. Flees to Modasa, Akbar overtakes him at Sarnāl Kutnal, but he escapes and goes to Delhi and collects a rabble round him, his object is to cause Akbar to leave Gujarāt (see p. 489), p. 488. Arrives in Multan wounded in an encounter and dies in the tent of a Baluchi amir, (980 H), pp. 489, 615.

Ibrāhim Rustam Khān, See Rustam Khān.

Ibrāhim Shāh of Jaunpur, arrives on the Jamna to attack Delhi but the king of Gujarāt coming to aid the Tughluqid, he withdraws, p. 119. Attacks Mubārak Shāh (sayyid) of Delhi at Bayāna but is driven back, (831 H), attacks Kālpi, but retires on hearing of approach of Hushang, dies in, (844 H), p. 120. Captures Qanawj, (809 H) and Sambhal, p. 756. Lord of Jaunpur, (831 H), p. 760.

Idar, pp. 2, 4, 28, 276.

'Idrus, al-Qutb 'Abdullāh, pp. 402, 478. Al-Idrus, see also Abu Bakr.

Iftikhār ul-Mulk Tughān Khatri, p. 9. Ikhlās Khān, son of Ikhlās Khān Habashi, p. 158.

Ikhtiyar Khan, p. 756. Put to death by Khizr Khan, p. 759.

Ikhtiyār Khān, Da'ud, Vazir to Muhammed Shēh of Asir, p. 408.

Ikhtiyar Khan Rumi, in service of Khandesh, p. 59.

Ikhtiyār Khān Siddiqi, Vazir to Bahādur at battle of Chāmpāner, p. 206. Becomes an intimate tof Humāyun, p. 209. One of the Bahādur's nobles, pp. 218, 223. Lieutenant of Gujarāt, p. 224. (Brother of Muqbil Khān) made guardian of Mahmud III; On his accession put to death by 'Imād ul-Mulk, p. 225.

Ikhtiyär ud-Din Ay-Tagin, p. 577. Regent to Bahrām Shāh whose daughter he marries, p. 579. Murdered by order of Bahrām Shāh, (690 H), p. 580.

Ikhtiyār ud-Din Hud, an outlaw, p. 638. Ikhtiyār ud-Din Karbaz, see Karbaz Malik. Drives off the Mongols in, (648 H), p. 587.

Ikhtiyār ud-Din, bin 'Ali Kharpust, governor under the Khwārazm Shāh, (619 H), p. 569.

Ikhtiyār ud-Din Muhammad b. Bakhtiyar Khalji conquers Bihār etc. p. 563. Collects an army in Ghazna, p. 569. His career of conquest, pp. 793, 798. His strength and courage tested against an elephant, p. 793. Captures and destroys Nudia, (591 H), p. 796. Penetrates Tibet, p. 797. Returns from Tibet with 100 men out of 10,000 he had set out with Dies, (602 H), in Deokot, p. 798.

Ikhtiyār ud-Din Sumbul, sent to Gwalior to blind Khizr Khān, (715 H), p. 692.

Ikhtiyār ud-Din Yuzbeg Khifchāqi Shamsi, (Mughizuddin) becomes governor of Lakhnawati, (644) is attacked by Rāi of Jajnagar, occupies Oudh, p. Is defeated and killed by the Rāi of Kāmrud, (656 H), p. 804.

Ikhtiyār ul-Mulk, son of 'Imād ul-Mulk Bahānik Bakht, in service of Mūzaffar II, (919 H), p. 92.

Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk Sultani, title bestowed on Dawlatyār, (956 H), pp. 247, 312, 313, 316, 317, 318, 320, 321. With 'Imad ul-Mulk, p. 332. Lord of Patan, pp. 337, 344, 357, 379, 390. Sent with a message on a mule, p. 406. Has 5,000 Gujarat troops, p. 454. His head brought before Akbar, (981 H), p. 495. Begins as Tashtdar to Sultan Mahmud III under name of Dawlatyār, then becomes an armour-bearer, p. 499. Title bestowed on him, (957 H), after battle of Sirohi, Mahmud III gives him Kartanka district and appoints him amir of Naharwāla Patan; When Musā Khān attacks Patan, he moves to Ahmadābād and joins Ahmad II at Gamid. His use of gold leaf. He had one daughter and ten sons, p.

. Serves in turn 'Imād ul-Mulk, ingiz Khān and Ulugh Khān; his 1 Zayn Khān marries daughter Nāṣir Khān, son of Ajdar Khān,

of Malik ush-Sharq. When that enters Gujarāt, he and Malik h-Sharq join I'timād. Killed by arrow, (981 H), p. 500.

var ul-Mulk Sultāni, general of atbuddin of Gujarat, pp. 9, 25.

Yigit) Khān, nephew and wakil 'Alāuddin Khalji with a band of Yew Muslims' attacks his master thunting, p. 661. Believing läuddin dead, mounts his throne, 662. Flees to Afghānpur, is ertaken and beheaded, pp. 662, 9.

r, (Uklesar), pp. 314, 316, 326. cupied by Alif Khān Khatri, 339.

Khān, father of Il-tamish, p. 564., name of a Turkish tribe to which tamish (Il-tutmish) and Balban longed, pp. 564, 596. The real me of this tribe was probably p-ari from alp-ar" brave man" a me given to Afrāsiyāb from whom e Turks claimed descent.

our, capital of Berar, pp. 17, 148, 2, 633.

nish Shamsuddin, originally slave Qutbuddin, becomes Sarjāudār, cends the throne of Delhi on ath of Qutbuddin, (607 H), p. 5, Receives homage from the ing of Bengal, (622 H), captures nthambhor, (623 H), Māndu 524 H), p. 571. Invests Gwalior, 575. Besieges Ghiyāsuddin in sokot, (622 H), p. 800.

Lord of Hartamal, p. 176.

Khalji, on advice of Nizāmuddin kliyā is consulted by 'Alāuddin k

before Ranthambhor; His interview with Hamber Deo, p. 667.

'Imad Khan, (al-Masuad al-'Ali, pp. 312, 313, 315.

'Imād Shāh, ('Imād-ul-Mulk of Berar),
p. 135.

'Imad ud Din Khurasani, p. 181.

'Imad ud-Din Muhammad, b. Mahmud al-Tărimi, died (941 H), anecdote regarding, p. 209.

'Imād ud-Din Muhammad Shuqurqāni, succeeds Juzjāni as Qazi, is dismissed in (641 H), p. 583.

'Imad ud-Din Rayhan, a Hindu eunuch, p. 588. By intrigues becomes regent in the place of Balban, p. 589. His plot being discovered, he is banished to Badayun, he is put to death (653 H) in Broach, p. 591.

'Imad ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk, married daughter of Jahangir Khan, p. 495. Killed in battle of (982 H), p. 501.

'Imad ul-Mulk, title conferred on Rustam Khau by the king of Asir (978 H), p. 431. See Rustam Khan Ibrahim.

'Imād-ul-Mulk Aşlān Turki, (al-Majlis al-'Ali) (often referred to as al-Malik ) purchased by Asaf Khān in Mekka and sent as a present to Mahmud III, at whose right hand he stands bearing the King's sword (this must be the correct story of his origin but Mirāt-i-Sikandari says that he came from Balkh and had been purchased by Mahmud III), receives title of 'Imad ul-Mulk in (956 H), p. 245. Marches against Idar (956 H), p. 246. After murder of Mahmud III, p. 256. possession of armoury and treasury, pp. 257. 312, 313, 314. In constant attendance on Sultan Ahmad II. pp. 316, 317, 318, 321, 322, 326, 328, 330. Blocks 'Alam Khan's road to Baroda, p. 331. Becomes Prime Minister to Ahmad II (963 H), p. 332. Goes over from I'timad to Nāşir ul-Mulk pp. 337, 339. Conspiracy against him by Tātār Khān and Malik ush-Sharq, p. 348. Deserted by all except Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk, p. 349. Obtains help from Portuguese in return for Daman, p. 350. Makes peace with I'timad, p. 351. Determines to drive the Portuguese out of Daman, p. 352. Throws a cup at his assailants who kill him and his escort in the fort of Surat (966, Ramzān 27), p. 355. His character, p. 357.

'Imād ul-Mulk Bahri, of Kawil, p. 148. Joint vazir to Mahmud II Bahmani,

p. 150.

'Imād ul-Mulk of Berār, joins Muhammed Khān of Asir, p. 134. Appeals to Bahādur for aid (934 H), he becomes king as 'Imād Shāh, p. 135. See 'Imād Shāh.

'Imad ul-Mulk Ḥājji, p. 17. He and Azud ul-Mulk Kālu give asylum to Bahā ul-Mulk and accuse two others of the murder, p. 18. Plot to kill him, p. 23. Dies (885 H), p. 25.

'Imād ul-Mulk Kawili, p. 56.

'Imad ul-Mulk Khush-Qadam, at Dhar (923 H), p. 94. Advised by unknown stranger (whom our Author declares to have been Prophet Khizr) to attack Mandu while the garrison is celebrating the Holi festival, p. 95. Present at Sikandar's accession (932 H). Proposes to murder Sikandar and place a younger prince on the throne, p. 118. A favourite with Muzzar II on account of his mother Bibi Rani and of his good looks, p. 119. His house guarded to prevent his escap-

ing, his companions desert him, hides in another house, and his own house is sacked. Bahādur orders him to be arrested and shut up in Dilkushā. Tāj Khān reproaches him for his murder of Sikandar. According to Husām Khān, he was hanged. According to others he was blown from a cannon, p. 125. His bravery at the capture of Māndu, p. 126.

'Imad ul-Mulk Mahmud, b. [Hasan succeeds Malik ush-Sharq as Lord of Multan (831 H), pp. 761, 764.

'Imad-ul-Mulk Muflih ul-Mulk, son of Tawakkul known as Malikiju flees from Gujarāt to Khāndesh (944 H), pp. 57, 135. Receives Ashta from Bahadur, p. 171. With Bahadur in (942 H), p. 201. Undertakes to collect the revenue near Ahmadabād, on condition no questions should be asked, p. 212. Is joined by many nobles on his way from Diu to Ahmadābād. He spends all that he collects on the huge force that had gathered 'round him. Attacks Humāyun and is defeated, p. 213. One of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), p. 218. After Bahadur's death, p. 223. Accompanied by Şadr Khān goes to Morvi, p. 226. Flees to Burhanpur and thence to Mandu, pp. 227, 264. Flees to Mubārak Shāh in Burhānpur (944 H) and thence to Qadir Shah in Mandu, p. 265. Is sheltered by Lord of Mandu, Mallu Khan, p. 266. Murdered (27th Ramzan, 1952). p. 275.

'Imad ul-Mulk Malik ul-Muluk, sent to Gulbarga, p. 731. Receives many gifts from Muhammad b. Tughluq, p. 738. INDEX 995

'Imad-ul-Mulk Sartiz, p. 142. Favourite of Muhammad b. Tughluq, p. 742.
'Imad ul-Mulk Sha'ban Sultani, p. 12.
Remains Vazir on accession of Mahmud, p. 13. As result of false charges is put into prison by Mahmud I, p. 14. Restored to Vazirat, p. 15. Retires from Vazirat (865 H), and dies shortly after, p. 16.

'Imad ul-Mulk Shahin, made governor of Delhi (793 H), p. 749.

Imam Ahmad, ibn Ibrahim, also known as Ahmad Gran, p. 468. Returns victorious to Harar, being then aged 21 years, pp. 469, 475.

Imām al-Mizni, describes dying words of ash-Shāfai, p. 414.

Indrapat, pp. 627, 704.

Iqbāl Khān, in service of Mahmud Khalji, p. 173. See Mallu Firuzi. Iqbāl Manda, Mongol leader, p. 675.

Iqlim Khān, with Bahādur Māhir, p. 756.

Irich, besieged by Bābur, p. 786.

Isā, ibn 'Ali al-Hajri, killed in action with Amir Husayn, p. 38.

Isā Khayl, p. 779.

Isā Ulugh Khāni, p. 377.

Isfirār, p. 558.

Iskandar, succeeds Barsbai (933 H), and occupies Muqrana, p. 43.

Islāmābād, conquered by Bahādur (938 H), pp. 193, 399.

Islām Khān, title bestowed on Muhammad Khizr Khān, p. 764.

Islām Shāh, see Salim Shāh.

Isluriya, (Astodia) a gate of Ahmadābād, pp. 495, 500.

Ismā'il, son of Burhān Shāh succeeds to the thrones p. 154.

Ismā'il Amir, the Afghān, set up as king of Deogir; he surrenders the fort to Hasan Gangu, p. 142.

Brother of Malik Mel, p. 732.

AH66

Ismā'il Chirkis Asad Khān, pp. 166, 67
Lieutenant of Murtuzā Nizām Shāh,
p. 90. Vazir to Murtuzā for ten
years, p. 154. Had come from
Yaman with Mustufā Rumi Kbān,
treated with much respect by the
Portuguese in Chiul. Killed in
battle against them (1002 H), p.
158. Arrived in Diu (938 H), p.
186. See also under Asad Khān.

Ismā'il Khān, Lord of Kālpi, p. 170. Ismā'il Khān Miswani, p. 391. In service of Sher Khān, p. 444.

Ismā'il Nizām Shāh, deposed by 'Ādil Shāh in (999), p. 152.

Isma'il Shah Safawi, having conquered Khurāsān, enters Herāt, Allows Bābur to conquer Transosiana, p. 772.

I'tibār ul-Mulk Habib, first in service of Mahmud I; on becoming an amir joined I'timad Khān, murdered in (968), by Ajdar ul-Mulk, p. 388.

I'timād Khān Abdul Qarim Sultāni, p. 16. Receives this title (947 H), p. 230. With Mahmud III in recovery of Broach, p. 240. Quarrels with Mahmud III (958 H), p. 248. Regrets his loss of temper and the. dismissal of Afzal Khān, he refuses to leave his house for days together. which much annoyed Mahmud III, pp. 249, 256. Made regent (961 H). with title of al-Masnad al-'Ali, pp. 312. 330. Goes to Modasa with Tatar Khan p. 331. Marches from Modasa to Janbu ganw, p. 332. Guardian of Ahmad II, p. 330. Escapes by night from his house, p. 349. His house plundered by order of 'Imad, pp. 349, 358. Takes Baroda, p. 345. Returns to Ahmadabād. p. 382. Conspiracy against (968 H), p. 387. Returns disappointed to Modasa, p. 409. In Modasa (975 H), during civil disturbance in Ahmadābād, p. 420. Goes to Māndu and the Dekkan, p. 421. After Muzaffer III had gone over to Ulugh Khān, attacks Cambay, p. 452. Persuades Sayyid Hāmid to surrender to Akbar, p. 455. Lest in Ahmadābād with Aziz Koka, he is tempted to escape, but is dissuaded by Malik ush-Sharq and Abu Turāb, p. 459.

'Izzat Khān Yāfi', Qāzi, in command of Bijanagar when attacked by Akbar's troops, p. 59.

'Izzud-Din, dabir, son of 'Alauddin Dabir killed in siege of Ranthambhor, pp. 670, 681.

'Izzud-Din, b. Ahmad b. Durayb Zaidi, Lord of Jāzān, p. 38.

'Izzud-Din, brother of Nusrat Khān Khalji, killed by Mongol converts, p. 647. Killed by rebellious Mongols in mistake for Ulugh Khān (according to Husām Khān this took place at Nāgor and not at Jālor), p. 651.

'Izzuddin 'Abdul 'Aziz Az-Zamzami, poetic epistle to Āsaf Khān. His panegyric on death of Āsaf Khān, (see Asaf Khān.

'Izzud-Din Balban Kishlu Khān, first mentioned in reign of 'Alāuddin when he receives the fief of Nāgor, Māndur and Ajmir, p. 583. Becomes Amir Ḥājib in Delhi, obtains the fief of Hānsi and the title of Ulugh Khān, p. 584. Governor of Uchcha, p. 587. Deputy Chamberlain, p. 590. Governor of Agra, joins forces with Qutlugh Khān, p. 592. Joins the Mongols in Multān, 'p. 593. In Multān, on the side of Hulagn Khān, p. 595.

'Izzud-Din Husayn (Suri), b. Qutbuddin called Abus Salatin, p. 533. 'Izzud-Din Kabir Khan, Governor of Multan, p. 576.

'Izzud-Din Khārnul, Governor of Herāt, p. 549.

'Izzud-Din Muhammad Sālāri, amir hājib, p. 571. Governor of Badāun, p. 576.

'Izzud-Din Tughrul Tughan Khan Al-Khatri, Governor of Lakhnawati, p. 584. In service of 'Alauddin, p. 662. Made Governor of Bengal, is attacked by Rāi of Jajnagar. Fakhruddin Timur is sent to help him by King of Delhi, p. 801. Retires to Oudh, where he is governor (642-644), p. 802.

ĭ

Jabala, a place near Sana'a between two rivers, p. 86.

Jabuqa Beg, Amir of Balkh, p 772.

Jaganat, conquered by Malek Kafur, p. 675.

Jagat, (Dwarka), famous for Hindu temple, pp. 213, 218.

Jaghtāi Sultāns, p. 778.

Jahangir Khan Habashi, Lord of Kirla, p. 67. Habashi chief under the Nizam Shahis, p. 157. Son of Jahangir Khan, son of Rumi Khan, son of Jahangir Khan, pp. 489, 501.

Jahangir Khan Qara Hasan, arrives in Diu (938 H), pp. 186, 229, 232. Lays a mine under one of the towers of Diu which is blown up with 700 Portuguese, pp. 233, 235. Comes out safely out of siege of Diu, p. 237. Receives title of Jahangir Khan al-Majlis al-Mansur after battle of Diu, p. 238. After murder of Mahmud III, pp. 256, 316, 317, 319, 321. Commands artillery, pp. 337. 338, 388. Becomes Vazir to Chingiz Khan, pp. 388, 400, 472.

Jahangir Mirzā, in service of Bābur, p. 270.

Jahangir Quli Beg, with Humayum in Bengal, p. 819. Left in charge of Bengal, p. 823. Vanily tries to defend Bengal against Talal Khan, p. 825.

Jahān Shāh, in Amir Timur's army at capture of Delhi, p. 753.

Jabānsuz, title given to 'Alāuddin Ghuri after his sack of Ghazna, p. 537.

Jahar Achar Räi, Lord of Narwal p. 588. Jahariya, a ruffian in service of Khusraw Khan, p. 700.

Jahor (Jawhar), ritual of self immolation resolved on by Chāmpāner garrison, p. 27.

Jain, idol temples destroyed (689 H), p. 626. Plundered a second time by Jalal Firuz in (691 H), p. 627.

Jalal Khan, in service of Bahmanis, p. 173.

Jalai Khan, son of Sher Shah, attack Humayun, pp. 819, 821. See Salim Shah.

Jalal Khan Bajkun, p. 889.

Jalalpur, name given to Kichwara by Ghiyasuddin, son of Mahmud Khalji, p. 177.

Jalal ud-Din Al-Ghaznawi, visits Ghiyasuddin Khalji, p. 799.

Jalai ud-Din Abul Muzaffar Muhammad, son of Raja Kans, converted to Islam. King of Bengal, p. 815. Restores the masjids damaged by his father, becomes a Hanafi, endows a college in Mecca; sends gifts to Barsbay in Egypt, p. 816.

Jalal ud-Din Firuz Khalji, p. 617.
Minister to Kai-Qubad, the Balbani,
founder of the Khalji Dynasty, p.
617. First Khalji King of Delhi,
ascends the throne in (688 H),
p. 619. His generous treatment

of captured rebel nobles, p. 622. Defends his own leniency towards his former enemies, p. 623. Abandons siege of Rauthambhor out of regard for Muslim lives, p. 626. Defeats the Mongols under 'Abdullah (691 H), p. 627. Murdered (Ramzan 17th 695), p. 639.

Jalal ud-Din Kashani, p. 580. Qazi in Oudh, p. 584. Becomes Qazi ul-Quzat, p. 586. Qazi of Delhi in reign of Jalal Firuz, p. 628.

Jalal ud-Din Mahmud (called Sultan Shah) son of Il-Arsalan, p. 544. Getting no satisfaction from the Ghuris, appeals to Emperor of Chiua, seizes Herat and Merw, p. 544.

Jalal ud-Din Makhdum-i- Jahangir, p. 759.

Jalal ud-Din Mangu Barni, son of Mahmud Khwarazm Shah, Governor of Ghazna, Dawar and Jarrum in (612 H), p. 565. Pursued by Chingiz Khan upto the banks of the Indus, escapes by crossing the river on his horse, p. 569. His final wandering and his death, p. 570.

Jalāl ud-Din Mas'ud, son of Il-tamish, released by his nephew 'Alāuddin and given Qanawj, p. 584. Joins his brother Nasiruddin in Qanawj pp. 586, 589.

Jalāl ud-Din Muhammad b. Bahāuddin Bāmiyāni, p. 567.

Jalandar, pp. 585, 881.

Jalanpur, p. 155.

Jālor, pp. 25, 28. Scene of murder of 'Izzuddin, p. 647.

Jām, the of Thattha, p. 746.

Jamal Khan, son of Ulugh Khan and Ambar Nasim, p. 439.

Jamal Khan (Sarwani), p. 790.

Jamal Khan Habashi, p. 66. Killed in battle, p. 67. Sets up Isma'il Nizam Shah, p. 155. Chief under Nizam Shāhis, p. 157. Severely wounded in battle against 'Adil Shāh (999), p. 158.

Jamāl Khān Mandwāli, of Māndu, pp. 386, 392.

Jamalpur, village near Broach, p. 421. Tamāl ud-Din Allāmi Bistāmi, becomes Shavkh-ul-Islam in (653 H), p. 502. Jamal ud-Din Başri, purchased and educated by Ghiyasuddin brings him to Delhi, p. 596.

ud-Din Chushtqabā, who brought Il-tamish to Mu'izzuddin in Ghazna, p. 564.

Jamal ud-Din Muhammad, only son of Author born in 984 H and died in 985 H: Author's ode on his death, p. 505.

Jamal ud-Din Mahammad, b. Aflah al-Yamani, p. 400.

Jamāl ud-Din Muhammad, b. Husayn al-Mahimi, p. 436. Goes with Ulugh Khan to Dholka, p. 455.

Jamāl ud-Din Mahammad, al-'Amudi,

Jamal ud-Din Nishapuri Ulugh Kotwal, p. 592.

Jamal ud-Din Qadir Khan, one of the three Jalali nobles spared by 'Alauddin Khalji, p. 645.

Jamal ud-Din Shaykh, of Uchcha, p. 742.

Jamal ud-Din Yaqut Habashi, a favourite of Queen Raziya's put to death, p. 578.

Jam Firuz, p. 122. In (926 H), with help of the Mughals drives Jam Salāḥuddin out of Sind. On murder of Daryā Khān, his vazir flees to Gujarāt where Muzaffar II gives him a vilâyat (929 H). On death of Muzaffar, he returns to Sind, but is driven out again by the Mughals | Jarad Siddiq, p. 484.

and joins Bahadur in (935 H), who promises to put him back in his kingdom. His daughter marries Bahādur, but in disturbance which followed Humāvun's quarrel with Bahādur, he leaves, pp. 123, 124.

Jamid Khān, brother of Tatar ul-Mulk Ghuri, p. 243. (Hamid)?

Jamil and Dughan, two Egyptians in service of Amir Husayn, p. 40.

Jammu, the Rai of, captured by Tamerlane, p. 754.

Jām Nanda, Sultān of Sind, ancestor of Asaf Khān, the Vazir, (see Asaf Khan).

Jām Şalāhud-Din, a relation of Jām Firuz arrives in Champaner and is well received by Muzaffar II. He disputes throne of Sind with Jam Firuz, p. 122.

Jamshid Khān, p. 155.

Janagadha, belonging to Kumbha, conquered by Ghiyasuddin son of Mahmud Khalji (859 H), p. 173.

Jān Ahmad Changizi, amir, pp. 358, 365, 369.

Jan Beg Atka, p. 782. With Humayun in his expedition against Rana Sanga, p. 783. General of Babur at Khānwa, p. 785.

Janbegi, Vazir, p. 68.

Janbu, in Jhālāwar, p. 267.

Janbu Ganw, pp. 320, 332, 341.

Janbusar, village, scene of an encounter between Bijli Khan and a party of Mughals, p. 425.

Jarad Abawi, son of Arish, p. 475. Jarad Abdun Nasir, pp. 481, 486.

Jarad Arish, p. 475.

Jarad Burhan, p. 482.

Jarad Usmān, ibn Jawhar, p. 484.

Jarad Shamim, p. 482.

Jaran Majhur, site of victory over the Mongola by Ulugh Khān and Zafar Khān in (696 H), p. 645.

Jazi, a Somāli tribe, p. 479.

Jariar, p. 873.

Järulläh, name given to Zamakhshari on account of his long residence in Mekka, p. 113.

Jārullāh, ibn Fahd al-Makki, author of a supplement to the Zaw al-Lāmi', died 954 H, pp. 45, 105.

Jasrath, Lord of Tilhar, p. 760. Captures Lahore (835 H), p. 762.

Jaunpur, history of, pp. 119, 122.
Captured by Båbur (934 H), in (935) the Afghåns try to set up Mahmud, son of Sikandar Ludi, in Jaunpur, but are driven out by Båbur, p. 121. Captured by Humåyun (939 H), governed by Salion Shåh son of Sher Shåh, on return of latter to power, finally merged in the kingdom of Delhi by Akbar p. 122.

Jāvānese, mercenaries, p. 243.

Jawhar Aftabji, Humayun's faithful servant and biographer, with him in Persia, p. 845.

Jawhar Mustaia, commander of a Baroda fort (967 H), p. 366.

Jawhar Sharābdār, cup-bearer in service of Ulugh Khān, pp. 377, 399. Sets out on pilgrimage in one of Ulugh Khan's Ships, p. 400.

Jay Singh, son of Gangādās, Lord of Chāmpāner engaged in pillaging in Ahmadābād district, p. 20.

Jhujhār khān, Amir of Khāndesh, p. 57. Formerly, a slave of 'Ādil Khān III, father of Mubārak Shāh, killed in battle against Khudāwand Khān at Surat (966 H) and buried in Sultānpur, p. 352. Jhujhār Khān Bilāl Habashi, al-Kabir, pp. 57, 230, 232. Killed by a bullet

at siege of Din (953 H), on the point of stepping from a ladder on to the wall, pp. 233, 275. His tomb at Sarkhej, p. 345.

Jhujhār Khān Marjan Rumikhāni, pp. 328, 334, 350, 353. Goes to help the "Malik" (Sayf ul-Muluk) p. 358. Spoke good Turkish, pp. 369. 374. Kills a Habashi with his sword, pp. 379, 391, 404, 409, 416, 418. Leaves Ulugh Khan, p. 433. First in service of Yaqut Ulugh Khān in reign of Sultan Ahmad obtains his title and the estate of Munda; Ulugh Khān gives him his horse Duldul, adds Bahmanul to Munda; appointed executor by Yaqut, enters service of Yaqut's son Muhammad, p. 435. On hearing that his son, a wounded prisoner, had been kindly treated by Savful-Muluk writes and thanks his former friends (980 H), p. 451. His son being sent back to him, writes to ask forgiveness of Ulugh Khan and promises to return to him, p. 452. His character, p. 469. Adopted brother to Yaqut Ulugh Khan; leaves Muhammad Ulugh Khan, joins I'timed and stays with him till the arrival of Akbar, when he rejoins Ulugh Khan; he and Ulugh submit together to Akbar, they embrace and weep on meeting. When he is being bound, he atters abusive words towards Akbar in public, but Akbar takes no notice of the matter until after he has captured Surat. Crushed to death by an elephant in the presence of Akbar (980 H), p. 471. His two wives remain with Akbar till the end of Akbar's life. His body taken in (98r) from Broach to Ahmadabad and buried by his son between

Bilal Jhujhar Khan and Yaqut | Ulugh Khan, p. 472. List of his nobles and his army, pp. 472. 525, 526.

Jhutāna, pp. 390, 394, 396, 414. Jidda, pp. 36, 42, 400.

Jigdaliki, p. 779-

Jiji Anaga, p. 833. Mother of 'Aziz Kokaltash, p. 845.

Jilam, conquered by Ghiyasuddin Ghuri, pp. 544, 585.

Jilam, river, p. 780.

Jiu Shāhi, pp. 873, 884.

Jogni, Hindu word for Rijāl-ul-Ghaib, pp. 333, 377.

Jud, mountains, pp. 559, 603.

Junägarh, pp. 18, 312, 494.

Junā, Qadim, Malik, Naib Wakil, pp. 644, 790.

Junayd Birlas Sultān, present at battle of Panipat, pp. 781, 784.

Junayd Ludi, pp. 404, 416, 450.

Juner, a hill fortress in Dekkan, pp. 105, 148, 154.

Jush-i-Āb-i-Garm, near Takinābād, p. 536.

Tuzjāni Qāzi Minhij-i-Sirāj, historian leaves Khurāsān in (623 H), on account of the Mongol invasion, p. 571. Reaches Delhi in (625), p. 574. Is favoured by Queen Raziya, p. 577. In the army in (630 H), present in Delhi while it is besieged by the Vazir Muhaddibuddin, p. 582. Havirg resigned his Qaziship in (630 H). goes first to Badaun and then to Oudh and to Karra and finally to Lakhnawati where he remains for two years, p. 584. Joins Balban who makes him Qazi of Gwalior and restores his former possessions to him, p. 584. Sends presents to his sister in Khurāsān, taking them himself as far as Multan, p. 587. Explains that he has been an eyewitness of what he has recounted down to 658 H., p. 594. Quoted for early history of Bengal, p. 793.

# K

Kabir Khalifati, with Firuz Shahin (745 H), p. 728.

Kabir Khān, son of Āşaf Khān of Khāndesh, p. 75.

Kabir Malik, Jāmadār to Muhammad Tughluq, p. 722.

Kābul, conquered by Ghiyāsuddin Ghuri (569 H), p. 544. occupied by Humāyun (952), p. 850.

Kāfur Hazārdnāri, Malik, brought from Cambay by Nuṣrat Khān and presented to 'Alāuddin Khalji p. 650. Sent against Deogir in (708 H), p. 675. Becomes Nā'ib and commander-in-chief; is sent to Warangal, p. 676. Becomes regent to boy king Shihābuddin Khalji p. 692. Put to death after 35 days of authority, pp. 693, 712.

Kāfur Malik Muhra-Dār, p. 712.

Kāfur Tawāshi, slave of 'Alauddin Khalji, pp. 138, 139.

Kaj (CUICH), "The armies of Iraq used to enter India by this road but nowadays the roads are too rough", p. 247.

Kajadhar, Rāi of Ajmir, p. 174.

Kala Chotra, a stone bench made for Bahādur in Ahmadragar, p. 135.

Kalān Beg, b. Mawlānā Muhammed Haydar, p. 779.

Kalanpur, p. 780. Where Akbar received news of Humāyun's death, p. 888.

Kala Pahar, p. 433. Under Sayf ul-Muluk (980 H), p. 451. Brother of Sikandar Sur, at battle of Sirhind (962 H), p. 883. Kalimullah, son of Waliullah, neminal king of Dekkan, p. 135. Last of Bahmanis, p. 151.

Kalinjar, pp. 202, 834.

Kālpi, pp. 196, 782.

Kālu Sultāni, Officer of Mahmud I, p. 14. Obtains title of Aind ul-Mulk, p. 15. He and 'Imād ul-Mulk Ḥājji give asylum to Bahā ul-Mulk and accuse two others of the murder, p. 18.

Kamāl Khān; Vazir to Muhammad Khizr Khān, (836 H), p. 764.

Kamāl Khān Qakkar, son of Sultān Sarang, waits on Akbar at Jalandar (963 H), p. 889.

Kamāl ud-Din Abul Ma'āli, Councillor of Jalāl Firuz, p. 634.

Kamāl ud-Din Bārbak, conquers Jālor in (709 H), p. 650.

Kamāl ud-Din Kurg (Gurg), sent to quell a rebellion in Gujarāt is killed by rebels, pp. 682, 695.

Kamāl ud-Din Şadr Jahān, Qāzi, (721 H), p. 712.

Kamran, island, p. 36. Destroyed by the Portuguese (919 H), p. 37. Egyptians build a fort in (921 H), pp. 38, 187.

Kambaya, pp. 24, 201, 219, 445. Engagement at (980 H), pp. 446, 650.

Kāmil Khān Shaykhu b. 'Abul Wahhāb Multani advises Muzaffar III to surrender to Akbar, p. 455.

Kāmil ul-Mulk, in service of 'Adil Shāh of Khāndesh, pp. 67, 493.

Kāmrān Milzā, son of Bābur, arrives in Gujarāt on his way to make the pilgrimage, p. 264. Left in charge of Qandahār (932 H), pp. 780, 787, 826. In Lahore (945 H), p. 823. Lord of Kābul and Lahore, p. 826. Orders the infant Akbar to be brought to him from Qandahār; he places the infant in charge

of Khānzāda Begum, p. 845. Takes the infant Akbar from Khānzāda Begum's house and entrusts him to one of his wives, p. 848. Orders all the women-folk to enter the citadel of Kabul when Humayun approaches (detail not mentioned by Abul Fazl). Finding himself deserted by so many of his officers and men in Kābul, sends messages of apology to Humayun in order to gain time and move off in the darkness of night, p. 850. Flees in the night from Kabul to Ghazna, p. 850. His adventures after his flight from Kabul; finally reaches Bhakkar in Sind, marries daughter of King of Fattha, p. 852. Takes Ghaznin by surprise and proceeds to Kābul (053 H) which he again occupies; puts to denth a member of Humayun's officers, p. 853. Finding no way out of his difficulties determines to kill the women and children in Kābul: kilis the wife and three children of Babur and throws their bodies over the wall. He exposes the child Akbar to the enemies' guns, p. 855. In despair sends apologetic messages to Humayun. He escapes from Kābul and goes towards Badakhshān (954 H), p. 856. Arrives in Balkh (954 H), p. 857. Encounters the troops of Humayun near Tāliqān and is put to flight (955 H), p. 859. Shoots a letter with an arrow into Humavun's camp, p. 860. Acknowledges Humāyun's sovereignty, surrenders the revolting chiefs and sets out on pilgrimage (955 H), p. 861. On (Rajab 17th, 955) meets Humāyun in Bādāmdara, p. 861. His non-

arrival when called to Balkh. D. 865. His behaviour while Humāvua was in Balkh (956 H), p. 865. Hearing that Humäyun had been wounded rejoices and sets out to attack Käbul, which surrenders to him. Goes out to encounter Humavun taking the child Akbar with him, p. 860. Disguised as a galandar flees to Malik Muhammad of Sanghan, p. 870. Again, collects an army, p. 871. Makes nightattack on Humāyun at Jariar (958 H), p. 873. Flees into India (958 H) and takes refuge with Sultan Adam Gakkar, p. 874. Tries to enlist sympathy of Salim Shah (959 H), he goes to Delhi; feating imprisonment he escapes in disguise, p. 875. Brought before Humāyun by Sultān Adam (959 H). The chiefs petition Humayun to put him to death. He refuses but causes Kāmrān's eyes to be put out (960 H), p. 876. Is allowed to go on pilgrimage, p. 877. Makes the pilgrimage three times and dies in (964 H), p. 878.

Kämrud, pp. 560, 795. Becomes capital of Ikhtiyär ud-Din Yuzbeg; vast treasure left there by Gushtäsp discovered by him; he is compelled to leave it by the machinations of the Rai, p. 803.

Kandalor, near Kankariya Tank, p. 443.

Kangra, attacked by Mongols in (705 H), p. 673.

Kang(gang) Rāi, Governor of Narain, p. 673.

Kanhar Deo, Lord of Jalor, p. 649.

Kanis (Ganesh) Rao, brother of Medni Rão of Māndu, accompanied Bahādur on his visit to the Portuguese captain (943 H), p. 215. Kankhar (Khengar), Lord of Girnar, pp. 349, 734.

Kans Rāi, conquers Bengal, p. 815.

Kaparbanj (Kapadwanj), p.

Battle of (955 H), pp. 9, 318, 337. Kapurchand, son of Girisingh, son of Dungersi of Gwalior, p. 177.

Kara, belonging to Girnar, captured by Ahmad I of Gujarat, pp. 18, 134.

Karan Rāi, of Naharwāla (Karan Vaghela called Karan Ghelo), pp. 646, 650.

Karbaz Malik, Ikhtiyar ud-Din, Amir of Ghazna for the Khwarazm Shah, p. 569.

Kaykaus Shams ud-Din, infant son of Mu'izzuddin, son of Nasiruddin, son of Balban, ascends the throne (688 H), the last of the Ghuris, p. 617.

Kay Khusraw, son of Qā'ān, son of Balban, p. 604. Though nominated to succeed sent off to Multan, p. 605.

Kay Qubād, son of Bughra Khān, son of Balban, p. 604. Succeeds his grand-father Balban with the title of Mu'izzuddin, p. 605.

Khalaf 'Arab Al-Aḥsāi, horse-dealer from Najd, p. 144.

Khalil Shah, an infant found in Mahmud III's harim selected for succession, p. 258.

Khalj, in Garmsir of Ghur, original home of the Khaljis, p. 798.

Khalji, tribe in Ghuri army, p. 537.

Khalji Bin Dā'ud, p. 224.

Khalji Nāma, see Sirajuddin Sāwi, p. 625.

Khaljipur, p. 173.

Khaljis of Mandu, history of, pp. 170, 186. Origin of the name, p. 170. Amirs of, retain their rank and estates after Mālwa became part of Gujarāt, p. 186. First army of, arrives in India (623.H), Khoraz-

Origin of their rise, p. 799.

Khamad Halor, a waited building of the Kankariya tank (Mirāt-i-Sikandari Khamador, Bayley, Ghatmandol), p. 267.

Khamis, name of a ship's captain,

p. 515.

Khān 'Ālam, title of, conferred on Sikandar Uzbeg, p. 889.

Khan Az-Zaman, p. 397. Title confersed on 'Ali Khan Uzbek, (964 H), p. 889.

Khān Az-Zamān Gulābi, in Service of Ibiāhim Mirzā, (978 H), p. 432.

Khān Bābā, see Shihābuddin.

Khandar, a fort near Ranthambhor, p. Khandari, port near Diu, p. 231.

Khandes, a dependency of Delhi, p. 80. Khandri, p. 336.

Khanghut, p. 223.

Khān-i-Kalān, Lord of Nāgor, announces the arrival of Akbar, p. 452.

Khān Jahān, son of Khān Jahān, Vazir to Firuz Shāh, brings false charges against Muhammad, son of Firuz, is attacked in his house and flees to Mewāt, p. 747. Is brought from Mewāt and put to death (790 H), p. 748.

Khān Jahān Firuz, Firuzi, Vazir to Tughluq Shāh II (790 H), p.

Khan Jaban Habashi, with 'Imad ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiyar in (982 H), p. 501.

Khān Jahān Malek Lādan Khalji, a Khandesh noble, pp. 47, 50. Son of Dā'ud Khān, Amir of Burhānpur, p. 51. Receives title of Khān Jahān, p. 53. Appeals to Nizām Shāh Bahri for help against 'Ādil Khān III, p. 54.

Khān Jahān Maqbul, the Vazir, p. 746. Khān Jahān Munir Sultāni, pp. 2, 9. Lord of Kālpi flees to Chanderi (Nāsir, son of Abdul Qādir, p. 172. AB67 Khān Jahān Purbi, commander of Asir, p. 62.

Khān Jahān Shirāzi, one of Bahadus's nobles in (941 H), pp. 218, 408.

Khānji Shiyab Khan, p. 446.

Khān Jiu, son of Dā'ud Ikhtiyār Khān, arrives at Mandu with artillery, p. 191.

Khān Khānān, title of Ahmad, brother of Firuz Shāh Bahmani, title conferred on Husām uddin, brother of Khusraw Khān, p. 701.

Rhan Khanan, son of Jalaiuddin Firuz

Khalji, p. 622.

Khān Khānān, brother of Khisr Khān (Sayyid of Delhi) conquers Sind, p. 122.

Khān Khānān, son of Muhammad Shāh, son of Firuz, p. 749.

Khān Khānān Abdur Rahim, son of Biram Khān, commander-in-chief of Akbar's troops in Māndu, p. 69. In Dawiatābād (997 H), pp. 155, 159.

Khān Khānān Khitāi, a Gujarat general made wounded prisoner (962 H), p. 328.

Khān Mirzā, Lord of Badakhsbāw, cousin of Bābur pp. 776, 779.

Khān Sarovar, a tank, pp. 5, 386.

Khānam Qikij, "Madame Sword" p. 476.

Khān Uzbeg, p. 772.

Khānwa, battle of (933 H), p. 784.

Khānzāda Begum, sister of Humāyun, p. 845. Dies in Qandahār (952 H), p. 850.

Khāriji, see Shir Khān.

Kharkan Rāi, of Kanthir, p. 746.

Khārmils, p. 585.

Khatāi Khāo, in Mahmud Shāh's army at capture of Delhi by Amir Timur, (801 H). p. 753.

Khatil Khan, son of Mahmud I, Governor of Dhandhuka, p. 29. Khatil Sultan, in Amir Timur's army at capture of Delhi, p. 753.

Khatir Khān, supersedes Naşrat Khān as Vajir, p. 644.

Khatir Khwaja, p. 712.

Khatlan, captured by Babur, p. 773.

Khattu, near Nagor, p. 1.

Khwāṣṣ Khān, In service of Muhammad Khalfi, p. 176.

Khwāss Khān Afghān, in Sher Shāh's army, pp. 819, 824. Opposes accession of Salim Shāh, p. 835. His impartiality in the dispute between Salim Shāh and 'Ādil Khān for the throne, p. 836. Orders his own servant to cut off his head while he is at prayer; his tomb visited by the pious; his amazing generosity to the how he burnt shirts when wood was short in his kitchen; his behaviour at the battle of Chausa. Refutation of charge of hypocrisy brought against him by Abul Fazl, p. 837.

Khwāṣṣ ul-Mulk, Amir of Bihār, p. 749. Khayrat Khān, title bestowed on Yāqub Sultāni Habashi when he succeeds 'Imād ul-Mulk as swordbearer to Mahmud III and drives the Sultān's horse-bitter (956 H), p. 247. After murder of Mahmud III, p. 256.

Khayrat Khān Bilāl Falaḥ Khāni, first Vazir, pp. 324, 325, 328. Receives title of Khayrat Khān when Ulugh Khān Muhammad succeeds Ulugh Khān Yāqut, p. 345. Imprisoned; on being released joins I'timād Khān, who makes him an Amir, pp. 350, 377, 389. Vazir to Ulugh Khān Muhammad, p. 396. Dies of rheumatism (970 H), circumstances of his death, p. 396.

Khayrat Khān Muhammad, son of Yāqut Ulugh Khān, p. 317. Succeeds to rank and title of Ulugh Khān Yāqut, pp. 321. 327, 328. Sent for on his father's illness, p. 345. (For further reference see Ulugh Khān Muhammad Khayrat Khān).

Khayr ud-Din, a Turkish admiral, sets out for the Yaman; he kills Salman with a sword, p. 187.

Khayr ud-Din, son of Yaqut Salmani, p. 492.

Khayr ud-Din Jani, p. 759.

Khing Suwar, Sayyid Husayn, p. 5.

Khizr, son of Mubafiz Khan, enters the Pal country, p.

Khizrābād, see Chitor, p. 648.

Khizr Khān, son of 'Alāuddin made governor of the hill country after capture of Chitor, p. 648. Made heir-apparent, gives himself up to debauchery, p. 681. Imprisonment in Gwalior, his eyes put out by Malik Kāpur, p. 692. Brothers of Qutbuddin murdered by his order, p. 696.

Khizr Khān, al-Masnad al. 'Āli, son of Sayyid Mardān in Multān, (798 H), p. 751. Proclaimed King of Debalpur and Multan (802 H), p. 755. Seizes all Mahmud Shāh's states excepting the Doāb (810 H), p. 757. Defeats Dawlat Khān at Sur (816 H), p. 758. Ascends the throne (717 H) (see Rayat-i-'Āla, p. 759). Dies (824 H), p. 759.

Khizr Khān Hazāra, p. 845. Deserts Kāmrān in Qandahār and hides. His own description of the painful zituation in which he now found himself given by Author, but not by Abul Fazl, p. 847.

Khizr Khwāja Khān (husband of Gulbadan Begum) with other

mobies deserts from Kāmrān in Qandahār and joins Humāyun, p. 847. Left in charge of the Punjab when Akbar marches on Delhi (964 H), p. 889. Having been left in charge of the Punjab when Akbar marched against Himun, is driven into Lahore by Sikandar Sur, p. 889.

Khizr Shāh, b. Muhammad Shāh Sur Jalāluddin succeeds his father in Bengal, meets and defeats Mubāriz Khān and Himun (961 H), p. 840. Khoka, p. 318.

Khokars, the, a tribe, pp. 559, 560, 76r.

Khudabanda, a commander (980 H), p. 450.

Khudāwand Khān, Commander-in-Chief to Murtizā Nizām Shāh of Ahmadnagar, p. 58. (1000 H), p. 67 (1001 H). Brother of Afzal Khān of Khandesh, p. 79.

Khudāwand Khān, brother of Āsaf Khān of Gujarāt, p. 242. Murdered (561 H), p. 254.

Khudāwand Khān Abdul Karim b. Hamid ul-Mulk succeeds Afzal Khān in (954 H), p. 239.

Khudawand Khan Batihari, Lord of Mahur, pp. 134, 151.

Khudāwand Khān Majd ud-Din Muhammad Al-Iji, Vazir, takes presents and supplies to Mahmud Khalji in Bhakor (921 H), pp. 94, 106. Is sent by Muzaffar II to bring back Bahādur, but does not find him, p. 109. Present at Sikandar's accession (932 H), p. 118. Indisposed when Bahādur enters Chāmpāner watches the procession from his house, p. 125. Sent to Ujjain (938 H), pp. 191, 193. Appears as prisoner before Humāyun,

who treats him well, p. 205. Is consulted by Humäyun in (942 H), p. 213. One of Bahädur's nobles (941 H), p. 218.

Khudawand Khan Malik 'Aylam, son of Yusuf, Masjid built by, pp. 7, 23. Imprisoned and removed from Vazirat, married to sister of Mahmud I, p. 25.

Khudāwand Khān Rajab, son of Khudāwand Khān Şafar, pp. 318, 319. Governor of Surat, present at battle near Navsāri (962 H), p. 329. Lord of Surat, pp. 331,:352, 353. Murders 'Imād ul-Mulk Aslān Rumi and burns his beard (966 H), p. 355. His character and musical talent, p. 387. Murdered in (968 H) by Bijli Khān and his head sent to Chingis Khān, p. 388. Chief of Rumi-Khānis, p. 469.

Khudawand Safar Salmani, the Turk, p. 186. In Kämaran, p. 187. Wakil to Rumi Khān, meets Bahādur in Div, pp. 208, 219, 222, Is captured and made to promise he will remain in Div as a merchant, p. 223. Sent to co-operate with Sulaymān Pāshā, p. 226. Receives title of Khudawand Khan in (1945 H), pp. 229, 230. Killed by splinter at Div in (953 H), p. 233. Murders 'Imad ul-Mulk Malik Jin (952 H), pp. 275, 318, 319, 352, 353, 381. Chief of Rumi-Khānis. p. 469.

Khudāwand Khān Yāqut, Habashi Chief under Nizāmshāhis (997 H), p. 157.

Khudāwand Khān Yusuf, son of Rustam Khān, in Surāt (975 H), p. 427. Title conferred on him (978 H), p. 432. Dies in Surat (978 H), p. 432.

Kharfban, in (588 H), divided among the Ghuzz, the Ghuzz and the Sanjaris, p. 544.

Khurāsān Khān Mizzāmuqim, in vanguard of Bahādur's army at Mandasur, p. 205. One of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), pp. 218, 419. Joins Akbar, pp. 455, 491, 494. With 'Imād ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiyār in (982 H), p. 501.

Khurram Khān, a learned theologian, is asked by Muzaffar II to take money from the treasury and distribute it among the poor). (A very different account in Mirāt-i-Sikandari), p. 115.

Khurram Khān Khān-Khanān, becomes Chief of the Silāhdaris with the title Khān-Khanān, pp. 127, 135. In service of Bahādur at Mandu, p. 167.

Khursa, the Rai of, pays homage to Firuz Shah, p. 812.

Khurshid, daughter of Nanna Rāi of Baglana, married to Ghiyāsuddin Khalji (called Rāi Khurshid), p. 179.

Khurshid Khan Tawil Yaqut Rumi-Khani, pp. 353, 380, 470.

Khurush Ghuri, amir, p. 547. Sipāhsālār to Mu'izzuddin, p. 566.

Khush Galdi, amir of Makka, orders the Qanāt set up by Āsaf Khān near the great Masjid to be demolished. He is reproached by the Lord of Makka, who reports the matter to the Sultān. The Sultān sends a strong reprimand. Khush Galdi goes to Constantinople, and is reconciled with the Sultān. He goes to see his friend Khusraw Pāshā who gives him leave to take any measures he desires in Makka, p. 773. Sets out from the port of

Qayear for Jiddah but is mucked and drowned, p. 774.

Kush-Hål, an envoy to the camp of Bahådur (94x H) informs Humäyun of Manghu's skill as a musician, p. 199.

Khush-Khabar defends Lähore (835 H), p. 782.

Khusraw Beg Kokiltāsh, present at battle of Panipat (932 H), p. 782. General of Bābur at Khanwa (933 H), pp. 785, 822, 823.

Khusraw Khān Hasan Rão Bachcha, Muhammad b. Tughluq's favourite, made governor of the Dekkan, p. 139. Sent in state to Ma'bar, p. 695. Revolts in (719 H), p. 699. Ascends the throne of Delhi with title of Nāsiruddin, p. 701. Is put to death (720 H), p. 704. Called Parwān (Parmari?), p. 708.

Khusraw Malik, p. 529. Malik of Lähore, fails to take Sialkot, taken prisoner by Mu'izzuddin, 555. Together with Bahram Shah, the last of the Sabuktagin dynasty, killed in (587 H), p. 556.

Khusraw Pāshā, son of Khayruddin Pāshā, sent by Governor of Egypt to see Āsaf Khān, Governor of Egypt (and of the Hejāz and the Yaman) tried to sequestrate the harim and treasures of Sultān Bahādur, p. 511.

Khusraw Shāh, Lord of Qunduz, receives Bābur and makes him prisoner, p. 772.

Khwāja 'Alāuddin, "Shāh Bandar of Gujarāt," p. 715.

Khwaja 'Ambar, p. 833.

Khwāja Asad Jāndār, General of Bābur at Khānwa, p. 785.

Khwāja Bakhtiyār, saint of Delhi, p. 120.

Khwāja Dust Khāmand, General of Bābur, p. 785.

Mhasja Majji, Na'ib Diwan-al-'Acs, p. 675.

Khwaja Hasan Basni, Vazir to Balban (685 H), p. 604.

Khwāja Jahān Ahmad Ayāz, defeats the Mongols in Punjab (743 H), pp. 728, 740. Sets up a rival Sultān to Firus Shāh, p. 743.

Khwāja Jahān Firuzi, made Governor of Jaunpur in (796 H) by Mahmud

Shah II of Delhi, p. 119.

Khwāja Jahān Mahmud Gāwān, b. Muhammad b. Ahmad Khwāja Kamāl Kidāni, Vazir to Nizām Shāh Bahmani and his brother Muhammad, p. 148. Treacherously killed (886 H). His good works and his accomplishments, his kitchen, p. 149. Formerly known as Malik ut-Tujjār; brother of Shihāb Ahmad Gāwān, born (813 H), studies in Cairo (843 H) becomes Khwāja Jahān, p. 150.

Khwaja Jahan Makhdum Mahmud, a Bahmani Vazir (896 H), p. 30.

Khwāja Jahān Muhammad Fāruqi, see Muhammad Khwāja Jahān.

Khwāja Jahān Sultān ush-Sharq, proclaimed King of Kanawj, Dilwār, Jaunpur, Broach and Bahār (802 H), p. 755.

Khwāja Jahān Tawāshi Muhāfiz Khān Khalsi, arrives in Gujarat with Muhammad b. Nāsiruddin Khalji in (917 H), p. 90. Deserts Mahmud II and takes Muhammad b. Nāsiruddin to Manud, is killed in battle of (917 H), p. 182.

Khwaja Jaial ud-Din, 'Amil of the Garmsir, p. 833.

Khwāja Kalān Beg, arrives in Kābul from Ghazna (932 H), p. 780. Present at bettle of Panipat, p. 781. Is allowed to return to Kabul and is given the Governorship of Ghazna, Gardez and Kuhram, p. 782. Sent to Lahore after battle of Chausa, p. 826.

Khwāja Kamāluddin Astrabādi, jenvoy of Abu Sa'eed of Khurāsan to Muhammad Khalji in (872 H),

p. 177.

Khwāja Khalifa, Present at Bābur's death, p. 788.

Khwāja Khatir, Vazir to Mu'izz Kay-Qubād p. 607. Vazir to Jalāluddio Firuz, p. 622.

Khwaja Manik, b. Jaial with 'Imad ul-Mulk (932 H), p. 126.

Khwaja Mir Husayn, pp. 781, 785.

Khwaja Mu' Azzam, p. 833.

Khwaja Mu'inuddin Sanjari, saint of Ajmer, p. 108.

Khwēja Şafar Salmāni, see Khudāwan Khān Salmaņi.

Khwaja Salama Maghribi Ash-Shatir, p. 525.

Khwaja Sultan Muhammad Rashidi, the circumstances of his murder (958 H), p. 852.

Khwāja Taqiud-Din, a rich merchant robbed and killed by Khusraw Khān (719 H), p. 699.

Khandmir, see Habib us-Siyar.

Kili, spot chosen by 'Alauddin for his encounter with Qutlagh Khwaja, p. 657.

Kilughari, p. 576. A palace and garden on the banks of Jamna, p. 606. Jalaluddin Khalji's first capital, pp. 619, 706.

Kiras (Girās), the Rajputs of, p. 275.

Kirmān, conquered by Ghiyāsuddin
(573 H) occupied by the Ghuss,
p. 544. Mu'izz calls there annually

on his way from Ghazna to Lahore, p. 566.

Kishli Khān Jhāju, nephew of Balban, rebels and assumes title of Mughisuddin, p. 622.

Kishiu Khān, see Bayrāni Aybah.

Kishna (Krishna), a Hindu who supplied two horses to Mahmud Khalji, p. 94.

Kishwar Khān, nephew of Mirzā Khān, killed (997 H), p. 155. Before battle of Nadiad deserts Ulugh Khān and goes over to I'timād, (980 H), p. 450.

Kishwar Khan Jawhar 'Adilkhani, quoted as an authority for years (96x-963), p. 336. Quoted, pp. 338, 386, 403. Joins Sayful-Muluk (979 H), p. 437.

Kishlu Khān Aybak Sultāni, Amir Hājib, becomes Ulugh Bārbak, p. 588. Brother of Balban, made governor of Meerut (653 H), dies in (657 H), pp. 592, 597.

Kisra, converted Mongol, made amir and sent under Ulugh Beg to invade Gujarat in (696 H), p. 647.

Kita Nā'ık, conquers Talang, p. 718.

Kolis, inflict heavy losses on remains of Mahmud Khalji's army after battle of Kapadwanj, pp. 20, 75. In Champaner, pp. 201, 208, 218.

Kondal, near Tattha, Muhammad Tughluq taken ill there (753 H), P. 734.

Kotwal Birinjiu, would-be assassin of Jalal Firuz, p. 629.

Kuchak 'Ali Qimām ul-Mulk, p. 331.

Kuh Pāya Ranthambhor, pp. 586, 718. A fief given by Bābur to Khwāja Kalān, p. 782.

Kuhram, Ay-Beg's capital, pp. 557, 590, 718, 782.

Kuhshikan, elephant with Ulugh Khān, p. 442.

Kuka Chuhān, Lord of Mewāt, p. 747. Kukiltash Nadim, p. 833. Kukta Ankus Khān, p. 154.

Kula, Rai of Ajmir, p. 556. Kulnabād, built by Nāsiruddin Khalji in Ujjain, p. 215.

Kumbha Ránā of Rāipur, pp. 10, 11, 12, 171, 173.

Kumpharner (Kumbhalner), pp. 10, 11, 12, 28. Description of its impregnable fort; owing to the rocky ground, tents could not be set up. Mahmud Khalji gave up idea of capturing it, but Akbar took it in (980 H) without a siege, p. 174.

Kumbhir Rāi, the first amir to join Bahādur when he entered the Dekkan "an intelligent and brave man if only he had become a Muslim", p. 137.

Kúnj, tribe living between Lakhnawati and Tibet, p. 796.

Kusa Wali, noble in service of Chingiz Khān (967 H), p. 382.

Kusham Abubakr, an amir in Barr Sa'duddin, pp. 477, 481.

Kushak-i-Lāi, the red kiosk in Delhi, p. 663.

Kuthra (Godhra), pp. 3, 21.

Kuzluk Khān Sanjar Sultāni, Khwārazmi noble, p. 545. Lord of Tabarhind, p. 572.

L

Lādan Khān, p. 27t.

Ladder Deo, King of Warangal, pp. 676, 712, 713.

Laddha, the gardener, favourite of Muhammad Tughluq, p. 725.

Lad Khan, p. 261.

Lad Malik, p. 316.

Lad Muhammad Bakhshi, afterwards Asaf Khan of Khandesh, p. 6x.

Lahore (Lawhur), captured peacefully by Mu'izzuddin (588 H), p. 555. Attacked and entered by the Mongols, p. 531. Revolt against Muhammad Tughluq, pp. 717, 779. Lasrawat, suburb of Delhi, p. 703. Lak Bakhah, title given to Muham-

mad Shah of Gujarat, p. 2.

Lakhmania Rāi, Lord of Nudia, strange circumstances of his birth, p. 795.
Allows Ikhtiyāruddin to enter Nudia unopposed and withdraws to Bang where he dies aged 80 (591 H), p. 796.

Lakhmansingh, brother of Silhadi in Raisin, pp. 191, 192. Perishes

fighting, p. 193.

Lakhnawati (old name of Gaur), p. 795. Becomes lkhtiyāruddin's capital, p. 796. Described by al-Juzzāni, p. 799. The contsant practice of its governors to make themselves independent of Delhi, p. 805.

Langar Khān, son of Qādir Shāh of Māndu, accompanies Bahādur on his visit to the Portuguese captain (943 H), p. 215. In service of Bahadur with whom he suffers martyrdom, pp. 266, 380, 529.

Langar Khan Dasariya, p. 243.

Latif Khān, in Sultānpur (932 H) is joined by Qaysar Khān, is taken prisoner and dies in Murgh Dara and is burried in Hālol, p. 126.

Latif ul-Mulk, a relative of Daryā Khān. Tells 'Ālam Khān that Daryā Khān means to murder him ('Ālam); for having said this, he has his head shaved and is sent round the town on a donkey, p. 266.

Lavang Baluch, receives Shal and Mustang from Humayun (952 H), p. 850.

Layla and Majnun, p. 198.

Ludur Deo, Lord of Warangal, pp. 139, 140.

Luli, brother-in-law of Kishlu Khan, kills 'Ali Khitati, p. 716.

Lunawāra, p. 276. Lunkaran, Rāi of Jaisalmir, p. 831.

# M

Ma'bar, pp. 139, 679. Revolts against Muhammad Tughluq (725 H), p. 716.

Mahabat Khan, Governor of Badaun (821 H), p. 759.

Mahalldar Khan Abu Sulayman, (945

H), p.
Mahalidar Khan Farhan, is made an amir, p. 314. Follower of Yaqut Ulugh Khan, pp. 366, 374, 403. A prisoner escapes while being marched through a town, p. 411. The first to throw his sward on the ground when Ulugh Khan surrenders to Akbar (080 H), p. 458.

Maḥālidār Khān Raybān, see Raybān. Māham Anga, mother of Adham Khān, placed in charge of Akbar in

Oandahar, pp. 833, 845.

Mahara, Arab mercenaries join Rumi Khān in (953 H'), pp. 234, 312. Men of Mahara with Ahmad Gran, p. 43.

Mahdi, account of Sayyid Muhammad Jaunpuri, p. 32. The promised Mahdi will be descended not from Abbas or Hasan but from Husayn according to Ibn Hagar Haysami.

Mahdi Khwāja Sayyid, present at battle of Panipat (932 H), p. 781. Governor of Etāwah, p. 783.

Mahdi Qāsim Khān, p. 833.

Mahdi Sultan, Uzbeg general killed in (917 H), p. 773.

Mahijah, a succulent dish, but like maccaroni difficult to eat; Sher Shah, dining with Babur, uses his fingers, p. 791.

Mahik, courtesan of 'Alauddin Khalji, p. 639.

Mahlak Deo, Lord of Mandu, defeated in (705 H), p. 649.

Mahmud, b. Firuz Habashi King of Bengal, p. 817.

Mahmud, b. Firuz, proclaimed King of Kālpi, (802 H.), p. 755.

Mahmud, son of Ibrāhim, succeeds to Jaunpur in (844 H), captures Kālpi, defeated by Mahmud Khalji, dies in Oudh (862 H), p. 120. Lord of Jaunpur asks for permission to capture Kālpi whose ruler had been transgressing the holy law, p. 172.

Mahmud b. Hasan, Amir of Firuza (830 H), see 'Imad ul-Mulk.

Mahmud b. Muhammad b. Ahmad Khwaja Kamal Kidani. See Khwaja Jahan.

Mahmud b. Sabuktagin, Sultan of Ghazna, pp. 4, 67, 529, 532.

Mahmud (Khān), son of Sikandar Ludi, with a large force advances against Bahādur in Agra, but after a night-attack by Bābur, flees to Gujarāt, returns to Agra, driven out by Babur flees to Bengal, p. 777. Allied with Rānā Sāngā against Babur (933 H), p. 784. Captures Bihar (935 H), p. 786.

Mahmud I, Begarha, son of Muhammad Shāh I born (20th Ramzān 849), p. 1. Taken from the harim of 'Imād ul-Mulk. Ascends the throne (11th Rajab 862), p. 13. Marches to help of Nizām Shāh, p. 16. At Bardu, which surrenders to him (869 H), p. 17. Attacks Girnāl (Girnār), enters Sorath and Junāgarh, is entreated by Brahmins not to destroy an idol, p. 18. Forbids Māndalık to wear royal insignia (872 H). Will not listen to the suggestion that is made to attack Māndu on the death of Mahmud

Khulji (874 H ), not wishing to bring a second misfortune on his son. Compare sentiments of Chingis Khān after death of Musa Khan, p. 306. He returns to Girnal and offers Mandalik, the choice of Islām or war, p. 79. Appoints Muhāfis Khān, amir of Abmadābād. p. 20. Be friends the tribes bordering on the Rann of Cutch, and supplies them with a learned Muslim lawyer for their guidance (876 H), D. 21. In answer to appeal from a robbed merchant attacks lagat on (15th Dul-hajja, 877), p. 21. Plunders country round Champaner. stays in Junagadh (885 H), pp. 24. Sets out to attack Champaner, p. 25. Begins to besiege Champaner. Builds a masjid at foot of Champaner hill, p. 25. Besides in alternate year in Mustufābād and Mahmudābād, p. 28. On account of Portuguese activities marches to Daman, and orders Malik Ayaz to prepare a fleet to meet them (913 H), p. 34. Offers Amir Husayn Kurdi, the governorship of Mähim, but Husayn refuses, p. 35. Appoints his nephew 'Alam Khān. Governor of Asir and Burhanpur (914 H), p. 47. In (914 H), sets out for Thainer, p. 51. Sends aid to 'Adil Khan III against Khān Jahān, p. 54. Holds a religious conference in Naharwāla Patan; in Sarkhej, visits shrine of Shihabuddin Ahmad (916 H), p. 80. In dying condition (Q17 H), sends for his son Muzaffar. Hears of arrival of ambassador from Shah Ismā'il, orders all preparation to be made for his reception. Dies ( 2nd Ramzan, 917), p. 81. Anecdote regarding, p. 210.

Mahmud Khalji, Sultan of Malwa; pp. 2, 4, 5, 6, 10, 11, 12, 16. Dies in (873 H), p. 19. Attacks Bidar (966 H), p. 147. Attacks Dekkan a second time (867 H), p. 148. The son of Mughisuddin, son of 'Ali Shir, son of Nasiruddin, son of Tulak Khān, son of Qalii (who married daughter of Chingiz Khān the Mongol), son of Afrasiyab. He was formerly Vazir to Husbang and to his son Sayluddin, on whose death he became King of Mandu (839 H), p. 170. Has a strange dream after the visit of the envoy from Mustaniid Billah, p. 175. Concludes a treaty with Bahmanis (871 H), p. 176. Affected by the excessive heat dies on (21st Dul-Hijja, 873), p. 178. Besieges Delhi (844 H), p. 764.

Mahmud II. Abu Muzaffar 'Alaud-din Khalji, son of Oādir Shāh, son of Muhammad Shāh, son of Mahmud I. arrives in Bhakor fleeing before Rāi Medni Purbiva, accompanied by his wife and a Hindu guide (921 H), p. 94. Entertains Muzaffar II at a great banquet (924 H), p. 96. In battle against Rāi Sāngā (925 H) falls wounded from his horse. Rāi Sangå salutes him on the field, sends for a surgeon, who heals his wound, and sends him back with all honour to Mandu, accompanying him several stages, p. 98. His harim in Mandu (925 H), p. 99. Joins Malik Ayaz (927 H), p. 104. Sets out to meet Bahadur, but hearing of the complaints made against him by the Rajputs, turns back to Siwās where he goes hunting and falling from his horse, damages his hand and is carried back to Mandu

in a palki (937), p. 167. Sends a message to excuse himself to Bahadur, who will not accept the excuse and a quarrel ensues. Deserted by most of his army, he gives up the idea of ifighting (937 H), p. 168. Tella Rai Singh to carry Chand Khan into safety. he is left with a small following and his children and women, (938 H), p. 169. Ascends the throne (916 H): On revolt of his nobles flees to Särängpur (Q17.H), p. 181. (Q18 H), p. 182. Fearing Medni Rāi's power flees to Sultān Mnzaffar in Gujarat (918 H), p. 185.

Mahmudābād, capital of Gujarāt, founded by Mahmud I after [the capture of Chāmpāner, p. 28. Set in flames by Bahādur, p. 207. Battle of (942 H), pp. 220.

Mahmud Beg Shir Khan, p. 743.

Mahmud Bhāgari, Lord of Bhāgor, p. 829.

Mahmud Husayn Kharmil, p. 568. Mahmud Khān, son of Tughinq Shāh, p. 711.

Mahmud Khān Bahmani, son of 'Alauddin Bahmani, p. 142.

Mahmud Khān Jilam, p. 391.

Mahmud Khān Sultān, in Amir Timur's army at capture of Delhi, (801 H), p. 753.

Mahmud Lāri Muḥtaram Khān, p. 218. Is sent by Bahādur in (942 H), to interview Rumi Khān, who was then in Humāyun's service. The Author reports this interview as it was told him by Muḥtaram. He. conveyed bitter reproaches from Bahadur, "so that he perspired with shame", and then said, "If you can dissuade Humāyun, who was dissatisfied with the climate, and told him he had better post-

AH68

pone the attack on Diu to another time as the sea air was bad for his health. Hamāyun agreed, and at the same time news arrived of the disturbances in Ahmadābād, so he withdrew (this story has an appearance of truth, and throws fresh light on history), p. 219.

Mahmud Piyara, p. 402.

Mahmud Samarqandi, having been robbed by the Jagat pirates complains to Mahmud I, p. 21.

Mahmud Sa'radi, his daughter is asked in marriage by Jhujhar Khan Marjan, p. 471.

Mahmud Shāh III, Sa'duddin, son of Latif Shah, son of Muzaffar II succeeds Bahādur, p. 223. Accession (944 H), see pp. 263, 224. Seeing Chir Jiu murdered tries to commit suicide, p. 129. Engages Portuguese in person for recovery of Broach, p. 240. Hearing Shir Shah has designs of Gujarat is advised to make peace with Portuguese, p. 241. His development of Mahmudābād: copies the famous Deer-House built for Mahmud Khalji in Mandu, p. 215. His debauchery and cruelty to his women, p. 245. Sends a force to Idar in (956) to punish the ruler who had helped Humāyun, p. 246. Invents a special arrow for hunting, p. 249. Lion-hunting. p. 251. Poisoned and murdered by Burhan ul-Mulk (961 H), p. 252. His body buried in Sarkhej beside that of his grand-father Muzaffar, p. 257. His character, his gift of villages, near Cambay as Waqf for Makka and Madina; his buildings in Makka. p. 25g. Accedes to throne (943 H), p. 264. Makes peace with Mubarak Shāh, p. 265. Rides in a horselitter, p. 267. His movement during battle of Dholka, p. 268 Personal bravery at siege Châmpaner (950 H), p. 269. S closely guarded by his nobles ca only play polo in palace grounds pp. 271, 319,

Mahmud Shāh Bahmani, a child, p. 30 Succeeds his father Muhammac Shāh II (887 H), p. 150. Leav his allies to join Malik Barid (89 H), dies (927), p. 150.

Mahmud Shāh Nāsiruddin, son Muhammad, son of Firuz, succeeds his brother Humāyun (793 H), pp 751, 753. Arrives in Delhi (804 H) p. 755. Attacks Baran (810 H) p. 2756. Makes peace with Khiz Khān (811 H), p. 757. Dies (81 H) and with him ends the dynast of the Tughluq, p. 758.

Mahra, sister of Alp Khan, p. 682.

Mahru. wife of 'Alauddin Khalji p. 137.

Mahta, a Hindu commander in Karna P. 734.

Main Sultān, revolts against Muham mad Tughluq, p. 719.

Majduddin 'Abdul-Majid b. 'Uma Qāzi, p. 546. Known as Ibn Quc wat, a Karāmi preacher, p. 550.

Majduddin Muhammad b. Muhamma al-Iji, Khudawand Khān. Se Khudāwand Khān.

Majduddin Musawi, Vazir to Bahrān Shāh of Ghazna, p. 535.

Majd ul-Mulk Ziyāuddin Mahmud Junaydi, made amir of Gwālion P. 574.

Makan Sharza Khan, pp. 353, 374.

Makhduma Jahan, mother of Muham mad b. Tughluq dies (724 H p. 718.

Makhdum Bard, Shihabuddin Ahmad, Great grandson of Mawlana Qasim, p. 510. Holds private seance with Shah Yaqub, p. 511.

Makhdumzada, p. 723.

Maldeo, King of Jodhpur, p. 831.

Malik Addu Multāni his daughter married Sayyid Rāju in service of Prince Dānyāb, p. 77.

Malikat Al-Jahān, daughter of 'Alāuddin, son of Muhammad Shāh IV of Delhi, wife of Husayn Shāh of Jaunpur in (879 H) incites her husband to attack Delhi. Taken prisoner by Bahlul Ludi, well-treated and sent back, p. 120.

Malika-i-Jahān, daughter of Balban, is married to 'Alāuddin Maḥmud (647 H), pp. 586, 632, 639.

Malik Akhi, killed by Khayrat Khan, p. 389.

Malik Al-Kurg Ilghari, killed in revolt against Jalaluddin Firuz, p. 622.

Malik Almās, Lord of Doāb (820 H), p. 754.

Malik Aminnäs see under Malik Nassan Malik Atan Dekkani, serving Ulugh Khān in Cambay, p. 433.

Malik Ayaz Khaşş Sultani, Governor of Junagadh and Div (913 H), p. 34. After battle of Chiul goes to meet Mahmud I at Bassein, p. 35. Comes from Junagadh to help Muzaffar II against Chitor (926 H), p. 103. Proceeds to Sarkub crosses the pass of Kurjhin and encamps before Dasur, pp. 103, 104. Dies in Junagadh, is burried in Unna. Prosperity of sea trade under him in Div, p. 105. His character etc., p. 105.

Malik Az-Zāfir marches against Zabid, p. 43. Killed in battle, p. 43. Malik Bahlim, p. 94. Malik Barid, son of Malik Barid, p. 150. Malik Barid Turki Sultāni, Wakil in (887 H), p. 150.

Malik Burban, father of Qutlagh Khan Kotwal, p. 712.

Malik Chiman, a soldier of Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk, p. 386.

Malik Chiman Muhāfiz ul-Mulk, in service of Muzaffar II (919 H), p. 92.

Malik Dādan, nephew of Ulugh Khān Sohrāb, p. 9.

Malik Dādkirāni, General of Babur at Khanwa, p. 785.

Malik Dinār, ennuch, defends 'Alāuddin's harim against Ikit Khān, p. 662. Keeper of the elephants, receives title of Zafar Khān, p. 694.

Malik Firuz Sultāni Khwass ul-Mul, (see Asaf Khān).

Malik Ghāzi Khurāsāni, Governor of Lāhore and Deobalpur, p. 674. During the insurrection of Khusraw Khān bides his time in Daobalpur. He corresponds with Khusraw Khān finally sets out to avenge death of Sultān Qutbuddin, p. 702. Acclaimed Sultān by the nobles in Delhi with the title of Ghiyāsuddin Tughluq Khān (721 H), p. 705. See Tughluq Shāh.

Malik Ghaznin. p. 734.

Malik Ishāq, son of Malik Ayāz, p. 105. Succeeds his father Ayāz, is a victim of melancholia and makes war on the king of Jagat, who was a loyal subject of Gujarāt. Is captured and put to death, p. 134. (Into four pages our Author compresses a story which occupies as many pages in Mirat-i-Sikandari).

Malik Jawhar, p. 723.

Malik Khān Khalji, amir Ḥājib in Herat, pp. 569, 574. Malik Khān Multāni, in Mahmud Shāh's army at capture of Delhi by Amir Timur, p. 753-

Malik Khānu, Khāndesh noble, pp. 50,

Malik Khāṣṣ Hājib, put to death Mongol soldiers in Naran, p. 674.

Malik Khurram, Wakil to Jalaluddin Firuz, pp. 62., 638.

Malik Ladan Khalji See Khan Jahan Malik Ladan Khalji.

Malik Mahmud, son of Malik Pyārā, after death of his father in (994 H) flees to Gujarāt. A friend of the Author and a cultivated man, pp. 57, 98.

Malik Mubariz, Kotwal of Siri, p. 764. Malik Muzaffar, Deputy to Shaykh Mu'izzuddin, p. 731.

Malik Nassan Fāruqi (Amin Nās) the Turk is sent to fetch Silhadi; Silhadi refuses to come, Nassan writes to inform Bahādur; p. 191. Dissuades Bahādur from giving Ranthambhor to Rumi Khān, p. 196. In Ranthambhor, p. 201. Placed in charge of Chitor after its capture by Bahādur, p. 204. Accompanies Bahādur on his visit to the Portuguese captain (943 H), p. 215. One of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), p. 218.

Malik Nuri, Lord of Baran, Head of Diwan ul-Arz, p. 607.

Malik Piyaru, Vakil to the child king Ahmad of Khandesh, p. 56.

Malik Qadan Shujauddin, son of Ulugh Khān's daughter, becomes governor of Malwa for Bahādur, p. 186.

Malik Shādi for master of the infamous Khusraw Khān, p. 695.

Malik Shah, the Seljuq, p. 215.

Malik Shiru, p. 367.

Malik Sudni, name of an elephant, p. 10.

Malik Sur, p. 530.

Malik Tughān, Khāndesh noble, p. 50. Malik Tuhfa sent against the Doāb by Khizr Khān, p. 757. Called Tajul-Mulk, p. 759.

Malik ul-Jibāl, title of Qutbuddin Suri, P. 534.

Malik ul-Ulamā, p. 11.

Malik Ush-Sharq, ruler of Dawlatabad, p. 148. Father of Mahmud Khalji, p. 171.

Malik ush-Sharq Ibrāhim b. Rajab, brother of Firuz Shāh, is made bārbeg, p. 744.

Malik ush-Sharq Mahmud Nasir ul-Mulk, Amir of Multan (830 H), p. 748. Amir of Lahore, Vazir to Mu'izzuddin (825 H), Amir of Multan (850 H), p. 760.

Malik ush Sharq, Rajab Nadira, Lord of Multan, p. 761.

Malik ush-Sharq Muhammad Jiubābu, son of Bābu Sultāni, a friend and protege of I'timād Khān, who made a great display when he went abroad, pp. 248, 312, 313, 323, 332. Deserts I'timād Khān, pp. 344, 348, 408, 421, 436, 438. Acts as guide to Ibrahim Mirzā, p. 488.

Malik ut-Tujjär, see Khwāja Jahān Mahmud.

Malik ut-Tujjār, chief merchant o' Cambay. His daughter asked ir marriage by Bahādur Gilāni, p. 30. In Mahā'im, p. 144.

Malik Yaklakhi, revolts in Deogir, is brought to Delhi and disgraced, p. 698.

Malik Yusuf Bughra, favourite of Muhammad b. Tughluq, pp. 724, 732.

Malik Zāfir, Amir of Zabid, p. 38. Killed, p. 43.

Malkapur, p. 25.

Mall Malik Afghān, p. 712.

Mallu Firuzi, called Iqbāl Khān, made Vazir but is opposed by the nobles, pp. 751, 752, 753. Attacks Qanawj and Sāmāna; is defeated and slain by Khizr Khān, pp. 756, 759.

Mallu Khan Mandwali Qadir Shah, in Mandu fort, p. 205. He and Bhupat Rai desert to Humayun, p. 206. One of Bahadur's nobles in (041 H). p. 218. Becomes an amir in (943 H) and is sent against Mandu which he takes, pp. 221, 230. Joins Mahmud III after fall of Mändu. p. 231. In service of Mahmud III having been expelled from Mandu by Shujā'at Khān (Sher Shāh's governor), p. 245. In Mandu, p. 265. Origin of the name; joins Bahadur after conquest of Malwa. In the reign of Mahmud III receives title of Qadir Shah and is made Sultān of Mālwa, p. 266.

Mālwa, pp. 319, 574. Captured by Nasiruddin Mahmud in (649 H), p. 588. Plundered by Jalal Firuz, p. 626.

Ma'mur Khan, pp. 328, 335, 374. Killed as prisoner, p. 378.

Ma'mur ul-Mulk Sucha, Vazir to Chingiz Khān, p. 398. Accompanies Rustum Khān (977 H) in time of 'Imād ul-Mulk Aşlān, Vazir in Broach, Surat and Daman, p. 464.

Manbahr Mir, brother of Hambar Deo, p. 668.

Mandal Dilāwar Khān, p. 377. Commander of the guard, p. 412. Captain of the guard in Cambay, p. 452.

Mandal Habashi Ulugh Khān, p. 243. See Ulugh Khān Mandal Habashi. Mandal Habashi, a ship's captain,

known as Mushāl, p. 264.

Mandal Karra, p. 668.

Mandai Patri, Rānā of Mandai and Tari, pp. 733, 734.

Mandu, p. 2. On capture handed over to Mahmud Khalji by Muzaffar II (924 H), p. 96. Siege of, by Bahadur Shāh (937 H), p. 166. History of, 'pp. 170-186. Description of treasures found by Humāyun, p. 199. Captured on 22nd Shawwāl, 941, p. 209. Falls to Sher Shāh's general Sajāwal, p. 231. Captured by 'Abdullāh Khān Uzbek, p. 397. Plundered by Jalāl Firuz in (691 H), p. 627.

Mangu Khan, son of 'Alauddin's sister, revolts against his uncle while he is besieging Ranthambhor, p. 668, 639.

Mangu Nuyan, p. 598.

Manjhan Jiu Shāh'ālam, a saint, son of Burhanuddin, p. 6. Saint of Rasulābād, pp. 125, 210.

Manjhu, One of Bahādur's musicians, taken prisoner by Humāyun's men, His life is saved by intervention of a Rajput chief, p. 199. Having charmed Humāyun with his singing, is allowed to depart with permission to release any of his relatives, he finds captive. He rejoins Bahādur. Sends to the Munghal chief who spared his life all he received from Humāyun, p. 200.

Manjhu, son of Hājji 'Imād ul-Mulk, p. 25.

Manjhu Akbar, (The elder), father of Sikandar, author of Mirāt-i-Sikandari. Librarian to Humāyun, p. 200.

Manjhu Jānbegi, regent (999 H), pp. 152, 159.

Mankot, a fort in Sewālik Parbat, pp. 835, 889.

Mansingh Rāja, pp. 326, 768. Mansla (Banswara), p. 166. Mansur b. Mahfuz al-Jawāhuri, pp. 475, 480.

Mansura, in Siwastan, p. 574.

Mansurpur, p. 576.

Mānu Rāi of Baglana, seeks aid from Mahmud Khalji, p. 173.

Maqbul Khan Jahan, Vazir, p. 743.

Mardan Nāşir ul-Mulk, p. 796.

Marhattas, pp. 105, 139, 140. In (691 H) had not heard of Islam nor had any Sultan or Khan penetrated into their country, pp. 633, 717.

Marjān, slave in service of Iqbāl Khān, p. 756.

Marjān, tutor to 'Abdullāh II of Zabid, p. 83.

Marjān, becomes Shamshir Khān, p. 432.

Marjan Ajdar ul-Mulk, p. 380.

Marjan, Amir az-Zafiri, Commander of Aden, pp. 36, 37, 41, 43.

Marjān Istambuli, Captain of guard to Muḥsin ul-Mulk, p. 437. Amir of Cambay, p. 452. Killed, 495.

Marjān Jhujhār Khān, see Jhughar Khān Marjān.

Marjān Malik, envoy to Nasib Shāh, King of Bengal waits on Bahādur in Māndu (938 H), p. 194.

Marjān Mu'tabir ul-Mulk, p. 368.

Marjan Sayı ud-Din, pp. 365, 381.

Marjān Shāmi, pp. 334, 353. Marjān Rumi Khāni alias Shāmi, pp. 361, 374. An amir not in service of the Sultān his successive masters were (1) 'Imād ul-Mulk under Bijli Khān till (966 H). (2) Ulugh Khān till (967 H); (3) Chingiz Khān till (967 H). After this, he became independent and spent most of his time fighting the Portuguese, was killed by a gun-shot in (967 H) and was burried in Surat, whose inhabitants pay visit to his

tomb. Author visits his tomb

Marjān Shaybāni, Governor of Samarqand (903-906), p. 778.

Marjan Sultāni, Amir of Broach (855 H), p. 4.

Marwan, the Khalifa and 'Abdul Hamid al-Amiri, p. 255.

Marzi 'Ali, Amir of Dhand, p. 674.

Marzuq, elephant belonging to Qutbuddin Sultan, Amir of Aden, curious anecdote, p. 87.

Mas'ud Beg, Governor of Cambay under Akbar, p. 76.

Mas'ud Khān Habashi Nizām Shāhi, p. 71. Amir of Ilichpur, p. 154. Mawās, pp. 592, 730.

Mawdud ul-Mulk Sahta Sindi, p. 52.

Mawlana Ahmad Makhdum Bara, p. 510.

Mawlānā Baqi, left in charge of Qandahār by Shayāl Beg, p. 776.

Mawlānā Isā Qāzi, p. 210.

Mawlānā Ishāq, brother of Mawlānā. Ahmad Makhdum Bara, p. 510.

Mawlana Shah Bhigari, a saint of Burhanpur, his intimacy with 'Ādil Khan II of Khandesh. When the Khan's end was approaching, he begged the saint to come to him. The saint replied, "How shall I come to see what I have prayed to God I might never live to hear!" p. 49.

Mawlana Shah Yaqub, a Sufi saint contemporary of Makhdum Bara; some of his seances described, p. 510.

Medni Rāi (Title given to Rāichand Purbi), seeks help from Rānā Sāngā, (923 H), p. 94. Meets Rānā Sānga at Ujjain, p. 95. Prevents Silhadi going Malik Ayāz, (928 H), p. 104. Becomes Vazir to Mahmud II Khalji, his great influence over the king. Muslims turned out and infidels put in their place, temples and idol-worship restored, pp. 182, 183, 313. Lord of Chanderi (924 H), p. 786.

Mekka, a ribāt in Sawg ul-loyl, built by Mahmud III, an orphan school, (See Asaf Khān).

Merut, conquered in (587 H) by Qutbuddin, p. 562.

Mewar, pp. 12, 173.

Mewät, p. 782.

Miftāh, Name of an ever-bearer, p. 377. Miftāh Bijli Khān Sharza Khān, p. 428. Miftāh Tashtadar, in service of Bijli Khān, p. 406.

Mihr Nigar Khānum, aunt of Bābur, p. 779.

Milak Deo, son of Baisil, Governor of Gwalior, p. 574.

Milki Rana, p. 586.

Mingla, the cook, a favourite of Muhammad Tughluq, p. 725.

Minhājjirāj, father of Juzjāmi the historian, dies in Makrān, p. 546.

Mir Abdul Latif, p. 497.

Mir Abul Baqa, p, 830.

Mir 'Alāuddin, Vazir (981 H), p. 493.

Mir 'Arab of Makka carries letters between Humāyun and Kāmrān (955 H), p. 860.

Mirāt-i-Sikandari, digression over seven pages (pp. 197-202) dealing with years (940-942 H) added by Anthor on separate slip, pointing to composition of narrative prior to appearance of the Mirāt-i-Sikandari in (1020 H), pp. 197, 199. Quoted p. 222-

Mir Fakhr ud-Din, p. 457.

Mir Faqir 'Ali, pp. 822, 823.

Mir Gisu, killed in battle with Bābur, p. 786.

Mir Haydar (Dughlat), Author of Tarikh-i-Rashidi quoted, p. 787.

Mir Husayn' Karbaldi, with Humayun in Persia, p. 801.

Mirlia, Highest part of Champaner fort, p. 27.

Mirmand, General of Babur at Khanwa, p. 785.

Mir Mirān Şadr, present at battle of Panipat, p. 781.

Mir Murtuzā Şadr, with Humāyun in Persia, p. 841.

Mir Pahalwan Badakhshi, killed at Chausa, p. 824.

Miryam, The Author's mother, dies in (1005 H), p. 765.

Mirzā 'Abdullāh Mughal, left by Kāmrān Mirzā with Humāyun in Agra, (946 H), p. 827. Brother-in-law of Kāmrān, p. 861.

Mirzā Anwar, Babur's grief at his death, p. 787.

Mirzā Askari, is recalled from Kābul to Agra in connection with Multān campaign (935 H), pp. 786, 825. At Chausa, p. 833. Is again forgiven by Humāyun (952 H), p. 850. Taken prisoner, p. 870. Is sent off on the pilgrimage and dies in Syria. (965 H), p. 871.

Mirzā Beg Tarkhan, present at battle of Panipat, p. 781.

Mirzā Khān, p. 154. Captured and put to death, p. 155.

Mirzā Khurram, son of 'Azis Kuka, son of Shamsuddin Muhammad Atka Khān, p. 78.

Mirzā Muhammad Tagi, Vazir, pp. 63, 154. Killed in (999 H), p. 155.

Mirzā Muhammad Zamān, son of Badiuz-Zamān, son of Khāqān Husayn arrives at court of Bahādur and is given command over the Mughals in Gujarat, p. 195. At battle of Mandasur, p. 205. Hearing of a

rising in Delhi is allowed to leave Bahadur with his troops in order to divert Humayun's attentian from Guiarat. He is joind by most of the foreign legion and marches towards Sind: he writes to Shah Husavn asking to be received. Shah Husayn replies, "Sind is too small to hold you. Lahore is a big place full of money and men and is now empty, hasten thither and occupy it." He marches on Lahore, but retires on hearing of the approach of Mirza Kamıan from Qandahar and returns to Guiarat: Humāvun in the meantime, had returned to Mandu, p. 202. One of Bahadur's nobles in (041 H), p. 218. Joined by Bahadur's troops, pp. 223, 772. Made governor of Bihar (935 H). p. 786. Drowned at battle of Chausa, (945 H), p. 825.

Mirzā Muqim, see Khurāsān Khān.

Mirzā Murād, son of Shāh Tahmasp, dies after capture of Qandahār (952 H), p. 849.

Mirzā Nuruddin Muhammad, Lord of Qanawi (945 H), pp. 822, 823.

Mirzās, The Ibrahim Muhammad Husayn, 'Agil and Mas'ud Shah Mirzā, their cousin, p. 401. Receive estates formerly belonging to Ulugh Khān after battle in (974 H), p. 406. Retire to Champaner; Chingiz Khān gives them Dhandhuka district. p. 410. Hearing of approach of Jhujhar Khan flee to Ujjain, p. 411. Turned out of Broach, p. 421. March into Gujarāt from Malwa (?) and reach Broach (975 H) and finally occupy Baroda, p. 427. Had under them 500 Mughals, p. 459. Arrive in Gujarāt in time of Chingiz Khān; enter his service as amirs. Then go to Ujjain and return to Broach; On arrival of Akbar, they scatter, p. 488.

Mirza Ulugh Beg, son of Muhammad Sultān, killed in fight against the Hazaras, p. 863.

Miwāns (Mewātis), name of a robber band near Delhi overthrown by Ghiyāsuddin Balban, p. 600.

Miyā Abdur-Razzāq, a relative of Shaykh Mah, p. 838.

Miyā Bakhshu, Vazir to Sayf ul-Muluk, remains in his service after the Maliks surrender to Akbar, p. 459.

Miya Jiu Afzal Khan, p. 273.

Miya Jiu Mawalana Qazi, with Author in Songadh in (1012 H), p. 791.

Miyāphul, a Khāndesh noble, p. 50. Miyā Shaykh Hamid, son of Qāzi 'Abdullāh Sindi, p. 256.

Miyā Wajih ud-Din Al-'Alawi, p. 413. Miyāya Burhānuddin, saint of Khāndesh, p. 61.

Mongols, under Manguta reach Uchcha, in (643 H) but retire on hearing of 'Alauddin Mas'ud's advance, p. 584. Invade Multan in (648 H). p. 587. Many families settle in Hindustên under Jalal Firuz but most of them finding the climate unsuitable return to their own country, p. 627. Invade Sind in (696 H), p. 645. After defeat in (696 H), offered choice of Islam or death, the converts brought to Delhi and employed by 'Alauddin Khalji; some made amirs and sent to invade Gujarat under Ulugh Khān in (697 H), p. 647. Reach outskirts of Delhi in (703 H), p. 688. Invade Amroha in (704 H). p. 672. Attack Kängra in ( 705 H), p. 673. Their women and children sold in the market-place of Delhi

(706 H), p. 674. Those in Delhi sent back to their country on death of Muhammad b. Tughluq, p. 740. Those left in Delhi by Tamerlane are driven out by the plague, p. 754. Mu'äwiva, the Khalifa. Anecdote

regarding, p. 344.

Mu'ayyid ul-Mulk, M. b. 'Abdullāh al-Sanjari, Vazir to Tājuddin Yilduz, p. 566. Father of Ziāuddin, nā'ib of Baran, p. 644.

Mubārakābād, town built by Mu'izzuddin on the river Jaun (835 H), p. 763.

Mubārak Khān, a son of 'Alāuddin (born in the same year as Khizr Khān (705 H), p. 692.

Mubārak Khān II, of Khāndesh, brother of Muhammad Khān I, escapes from jail when on the point of being blinded (944 H) and sets himself on the throne of Khāndesh. The date given is (944 H), other histories give 942 H, p. 56.

Mubārak Khān, son of Khizr Khān, made governor of Firuzpur (818 H), [p. 759. See Mu'izzuddin Mubārak Shāh.

Mubārsk Khān I, "Chawganda," son of 'Ādil Khān, son of Nasir Khān of Khāndesh, p. 49. Lord of Asir (858 H), p. 173.

Mubărakpur, p. 764.

Mubarak Sayyid, see Sayyid Mubarak. Mubarak Shah, see Fakhruddin.

Mubārak Shāhi, King of Burhānpur, defeated by Mahmud III at Dangri (945 H), p. 227. In Burhānpur pp. 265, 320. Calls in aid of I'timād Khān, p. 332. Joins I'timād Khān a second time (964 H), p. 344.

Mubārak Shāh, the Farrāsh, defends Delhi against Muhaddib ud-Din, p. 581. Put to death, p. 582. AH60 "Muberak Shah," the title given to the chief Farrash, p. 581.

Mubarak Shah II of Burhanpur, son of 'Adil Khan III, in (971) makes treaty with Akbar and marries one of his daughters. Dies in (974 H), p. 59.

Mubārak Shāh Qaranful, independent ruler of Jaunpur (802-804), p. 119.

Mubārak ul-Mulk Husayn, b. Khizr Bahti, appointed to Idar (925 H), p. 100.

Mubāriz Khān, see Muhammad 'Ādil.

Mubāriz ud-Din Shirāzi, Amir of Firuz Shāh, p. 569.

Mubashahir Rajab, Wakil ul-Mulk, Vazir to Muhammad Shāh, son of Firuz, on his restoration (792 H), p. 749.

Muslih Mukhtass Khan Sultani, (pp. 360, 364.

Mussih Nuri (NurjKhān), head of the drummers after the battle of Baroda in (967 H) receives gifts of villages sufficient to support 100 horsemen, pp. 363, 369, 386.

Mufrih Rästi Khān Malik, kills Sikandar Khān (790 H), p. 748. Governor of Gujarāt, (790 H). pp. 748, 750.

Mughals, enter Sind (926 H) to help Jām Firuz, but afterwards desiring the country for themselves put to death Daryā Khān, the prime minister and Jām Firuz flees to Gujarāt. (The Mughals here mean the followers of Shāh Arghun), p. 123. Their custom of celebrating conquests by slaughter, p. 199. Their love of raiding, they invade Sayyid Mubārak's mausoleum in Sarkhej, and pull the cover off his tomb, p. 455. Invasion of Sind in (926 H), p. 522.

Mughis ud-Din, see Ikhtiyāruddin Vuzbeg.

Mughis ud-Din, see Kishlu Khän.

Mughis ud-Din, Qāzi of Bayāna (710 H), p. 679. His answers to the questions put him by 'Alāuddin Khalji, p. 684.

Mughis ud-Din Tughril Balbani, Governor of Lakhnawati, set himself up as king, p. 804. 16 captured and his head sent to the Sultan (671 H), p. 808.

Maḥabbat Khān, at Battle of Baroda, (967 H), p. 361.

Muhaddib Khwaja, p. 712.

Muhaddib ud-Din Muhammad Nizām ul-Mulk, Vazir to Bahrām Shāh (637 H), p. 579. Escapes from assassins, reappointed Vazir to Bahrām Shāh, p. 580. Lays siege to Delhi, p. 581. Vazir to Mas'ud, p. 583.

Muhafir ul-Mulk, a Hindu in service of Sher Khān, defeated in a fight with Ibrahim Mirzā (980 H), p. 444.

Muhāfiz Khān, title bestowed on Chir Jiu after imprisonment of Fattu Jiu (950 H), p. 270.

Muhāfiz Khān, brother of Jughār Khān, p. 404. Surrenders with Sayf ul-Muluk to Shāh Quli, pp. 458, 493.

Muhāfiz Khān Jamāl ud-Din Muhammad, son of Malik Shaykh, appointed governor of Ahmadābād, p. 20. Grand-father of Husām, the historian, p. 23. Becomes Vazir in succession to Khudawand Khān (885 H), p. 25. Takes part in the fighting, p. 26.

Muhāfiz Khān Khwāja Jahān Khalji, see Khwāja Jahān Tawāshi.

Muhafiz Khān Marjan, pp. 334, 353, 369, 336, 470.

Mujāhid ul-Mulk, Minister to 'Ādii Khān III, p. 54.

Muhammad b. Abbās (Suri), p. 533.

Muhammad b. Ādar ruler over Barı Sa'duddin, p. 475.

Muhammad b. Ahmad ad-Bahmani al-Maghribi, p. 475.

Muhammad b. 'Ali al-Marzuq, p. 483.

Muhammad b. 'Ali Mawlānā, deputed by Humāyun to discuss peac terms with Bahādur, p. 205.

Muhammad, son of Åsaf Khān, Vazi: to Ikhtiyar ul-Mulk, killed in battl of Ahmadābād (981 H), p. 492.

Muhammad b. Hasan, head of th Ismā'ilis, p. 551.

Muhammad, son of Ḥājji 'Imād ul Mulk, p. 25.

Muhammad b. Husayn Rabib ul-Mulk with author in Songadh (1012 H)
p. 791.

Muhammad b. Kākā Jawhar Salmāni P. 377.

Muhammad b. Muhammad b. Muham mad b. Abdur-Rahmān b. Hasai Jalāluddin al-Misri Ibn Saway: (b. 856, d. 929) in Ahmadābād Called Malik ul-Muhaddisin, p. 105

Muhammad, b. Nāṣiruddin Khalji, hi adventure with the Persian envoy p. 90. With Delhi army in Chander pp. 92, 98, 181. Set on throne fo a short time, p. 182. Given Chāmp ner by Sultān Muzaffar and re mained there till the scandalou incident with the Persian Ambas sador when he returns to Malwa reaches Chanderi in (918 H) with help from Delhi, p. 183.

Muhammad b. Sulayman b. Hayyasi as-Sohayli, Governor of Mur, killein fight against Amir Husayn, p. 3

Muhammad b. Suri, p. 532.

- Muhammad 'Ādil Shāh b. Nizām b. Hasan Sur, p. . Marches with Himun into Bengal against Khizr Shāh, p. 840.
- Muhammad Al-Ānāsi, a captain in Amir Husayn Kurdi's fleet, his narrative of battle of Chiul, etc. given by Author, p. 35. Ship's captain with Salmān, the Turcoman, p. 187.
- Muhammad Äli Khing-Jang, present at battle of Panipat, pp. 782, 783.
- Muhammad 'Ali Taghāi, left in charge of Kābul, is ordered by Humāyun to kill Yādgār Nāṣir Mirzā; he refuses on the ground that he has never killed even a sparrow, p. 851.
- Muhammad Bakhshi, present at the battle of Panipat, p. 782.
- Muhammad Bakhtiyār, see Ikhtiyāruddin. This is the name by which he is best known.
- Muhammad Bāqir, Amir in Tirmid, receives Bābur, p. 772.
- Muhammad Duldāi Sultān, present at Panipat, p. 781.
- Muhammad Ghāzi Turghāi, p. 822.
- Muhammad Husayn Mirza, being driven out of Mālwa by Akbar's officers, flies to Gujarat in (974 H), pp. 402, 407. In Surat when Akbar captured town, p. 471. Shuts himself up in Surat, p. 488. Deserts Muhammad Khān at Kadi, p. 489. Occupies Broach when Akbar returns to Agra, then to Surat finally gains possession of Baroda and Chāmpaner (981 H), p. 489. In Cambay is attacked by Qutbuddin Muhammad Khān and Sayyid Bhkhāri, pp. 490, 495. In battle against Akbar is taken prisoner, p. 495.
- Muhammad Jahangir, son of Amir Timur, p. 753.

- Muhammad Kākā Jawhar Salmāni, p. 392.
- Muhammad Khān, son of Firuz Shāh, succeeds Khān Jahān as Vazir, p. 747.
- Muhammad Khān, son of Sher Khān Fulādi, in Patan calls on his father for help against Akbar; his father comes and they are joined by Muhammad Husayn Mirzā and advance on Kadi, Aziz Koka is sent against them, pp. 486, 495.
- Muhammad Khān b. Zafar Khān of Gujarāt, becomes Vazir to Nuşrat Khān (793 H) with title of Tātār Khān, p. 751.
- Muhammad Khān, of Asir, see Muhammad Shāh.
- Muhammad Khan, Lord of Berar, p. 158.
- Muhammad Khān Rumi, gunner in service of Humāyun at Qanawj, p. 827.
- Muhammad Khan, Sar-naubat, p. 158. Muhammad Khayrat Khan, son of Yaqut, see Khayrat Khan Muhammad.
- Muhammad Khwāja Jahān Fāruqi, Vazir to 'Alāuddin Bahrām Shāh, whose daughter he marries, p. 47.
- Muhammad Khizr Khan, b. Farid Khan b. Khizr Khan, comes to throne (837 H), p. 763. Dies (847 H), p. 765.
- Muhammad Khwārazm Shah, appeals to the Abbasi Khalifa, p. 546. Conquers Turkastān, Kāshghar and Bala Saghun, p. 549. Attacked by Mauji, p. 558. Conquers Ghazna, Zābulistān and Kabul, pp. 565, 627.
- Muhammad Kokaltāsh, p. 781. With Humāyun in his expedition against Rānā Sānga, p. 783. General of Babur at Khanwa, p. 785.

Muhummad Maka, p. 876.

Muhammad Muqim, son of Amir Zunnun, pp. 772, 779.

Muhammad Pir'ali, drowned at battle of Chausa, p. 825.

Muhammad Qasim Kuh-bar in Kabul,

Muhammad Qilij Khān, Governor of Surat under Akbar, p. 470. Left in charge of Surat by Akbar, p. 489. Muhammad Sar-ābdār, Lord of Kul, p. 548.

Muhammad Sarbadar, sent to Sarsuti by Melik Ghāzi, p. 702.

Muhammad Sārbān, p. 784.

Muhammad Shāh (Muhammad Khān of Asir) al-Fāruqi, intimate friend of Bahādur. Succeeds his father 'Ādil Khān III in (926 H), pp. 56, 135, 166, 167. Is allowed to go to Burhānpur, pp. 186, 192. Flees with Bahādur to Mandu, p. 205. Son of Bahādur's sister (Mirat-i-Sikandari). Sent in pursuit of Hamāyun's retreating army, reaches Ujjain, p. 205. With Bahādur in (941 H), p. 218. Selected to succeed Bahādur, dies on his way to Ahmadābād (944 H), pp. 223, 400.

Muhammad Shāh, Lord of Asir, son of Muhārak II, succeeds to throne (974 H), p. 60. Dies (984 H), p. 61. Crossed the Narbada (974 H), p. 407. Invited by Rustam Khān to attack the Mirzas (978 H), p. 430.

Muhammad Shāh, son of Ahmād Shāh of Gujarāt, ascends throne (846 H), p. 1; Death of (855 H), p. 2.

Muhammad Shāh, son of Tughluq Shāh, p. 140. See Muhammad b. Tughluq.

Muhammad Shāh II, son of Mahmud son of 'Alāuddin Ḥasan Bahmani, p. 142. Muhammad Shāh II, 'Askari, son ol Humāyun Shāh Bahmani, p. 148. Dies in (887 H), p. 150.

Muhammad Shāh Mughali, converted Mongol, made amir and sent under Ulugh Khān to invade Gujarāt in (696 H), p. 647. Rebela against Ulugh Khān, p. 657. Offers to ki Nuṣrat Khān from the battlements of Ranthambhor, p. 659. Shoots from the battlement of Ranthambhor advancing girl standing by 'Alāuddin, p. 666. Found wounded by 'Alāuddin, makes spirited reply and is thrown under elephants, but is afterwards buried, p. 669.

Muhammad Shāh Nasiruddin, (former ly Muhammad Khān, son of Firu: Shāh, succeeds his father on thron of Delhi (789 H), p. 747. Fleet from Delhi, p. 748. Sets himsel 'up as king of Sāmāna and is joined by many Delhi nobles; he advance on Delhi; is driven off; and goe to Doāb, p. 748. Restored to thron of Delhi (792 H), p. 759. Falls il in Chhetra and dies there (793 H) p. 750.

Muhammad Shāh Sur, captures Sasrām p. 790. Amir of Bengal (960 H; p. 838. Killed in battle agains: Himun (962 H) at Chhappar Ghāt p. 839.

Muhammad Shaybāni, enters servic of Babur and afterwards of Humā yun, pp. 401, 772.

Muhammad Shiran Al-khalji, amir succeeds Ikhtiyar ud-Din Muham mad (602 H), p. 798.

Muhammad Sultān, son of Ghiyāsuddi Balban, called Qā'ān. Madgovernor of Sind and Multān ii (663 H). (It was he who twice invited the poet Sa'adi to India see pp. 600, 601), p. 602. Killed in battle (684 H), p. 603.

Muhammad Sultān Mirzā, p. 780.

Muhammad Timur Sultān Uzbeg, p. 773.

Muhammad-i-Tughluq, Fakhruddin Ulugh ascends throne (725 H), removes from Tughluqābād to Delhi. Moves inhabitants of Delhi to Deogir to return to Delhi, p. 715. Founds new city on banks of Ganges at Sarkdwāri, p. 718. Seeks authority for the Khutba from the Khalifa in Egypt, p. 721. Dies near Thattha (21st Muharram, according to Husām Khān, 11th Muḥarram), 752 H, p. 735. His character and his talents, p. 736.

Muhammad Wafā, Sharbatdār, p. 495. Muhammad Zaytun (932 H), p. 782. Lord of Dholpur, submits to Bābur, p. 783.

Muhān Ud-Din, a more fitting name for Burhānuddin, the regicide, p. 253.

Muharram, son of Şafar becomes Rumi Khān in (945 H), p. 230.

Muhibb, a musician, p. 407.

Muhibb 'Ali Khalifa, Amir, p. 778. At Pānipat, p. 781. Son of Nizāmuddin, general of Bābur at Khānwa, p. 785.

Muhsin Ul-Mulk Jawhar Bilâl Muhammadi, pp. 368, 374. In service of Bijli Khān, pp. 406, 422. Killed out hunting by a party of Rajputs (976 H), p. 437. Leaves Bijli Khān and joins Ulugh Khān, p. 438. His character, p. 440.

Muhtarim Khān Lāri, p. 450.

Muinuddin Afzal Khān Multāni, p. 327. Mu'inuddin Malik, in Mahmud Shāh's army at capture of Delhi by Amir Timur (801 H), p. 753.

Mu'izzuddin Kay-Qubad, succeeda his grand-father Balban (685 H), p. 605.

Mu'izzu-Din Mubārak Shāh, son of Khizr Khān, comes to throne (824 H), p. 759. Death of his mother; founds town of Mubārakābād (835 H), p. 763.

Mu'izzuddin Muhammad Abul-Muzaffar Sam Ghuri b. Bahauddin Sam b. 'Izzuddin Ghuri, called Chihilgani after his forty faithful slaves, pp. 353, 529. Descendant of Zuhaq Tāzi, p. 530. Title conferred on Shihabuddin when made king of Ghazna by his brother (569 H), p. 544. Conquers Multan from the Qarāmitas (571), p. 554. Conquers Naharwāla (525 H), p. 555. Divides the kingdom of his brother Ghiyasuddin on his death in (599 H), p. 558. Murdered at Damyak by an Ismā'ili assassin (602 H). This is notable as most authorities say he was murdered by a band of Khokars, pp. 560, 793.

Mujāhid b. 'Ali b. 'Abdullāh az-Zammani, p. 480. Amir, p. 482.

Mujahid Khan, title conferred on one of the sons of Khan Jahan Malik Ladan Khalji, p. 55. In service of Malik Ayaz, p. 103.

Mujāhid Khān, son of Khudawand Khān, son of Yusuf, p. 25.

Mujāhid Khān Bihlim, Lord of Junāgadh, joins 'Imād ul-Mulk (942 H),
p. 213. One of Bahādur's nobles
in (941 H), p. 218. Left by Sulaymān Pāshā in (945 H), takes
Sulaymān's guns to Junagadh,
where they remained till (970 H),
When they were destroyed by
Shihāb ul-Mulk Ghuri, p. 226. Lord
of Pālitāna, p. 227. Becomes Lieu-

tenant of the kingdom (945 H), pp. 230, 232. After the Sulayman Pasha incident had remained in Palitana, refuses Muhamud III's repeated invitations to return, p. 241. His behaviour when Asaf Khan returns to India, p. 242. Is sent for, and on arrival is honoured and feted, p. 243. Fearing arrest flees to Palitana, is sent for by the king, but dies on his way, pp. 244, 268.

Mujahid Khān Sultāni, pp. 380, 436. Mujāhid Shāh Bahmani, murdered by his cousin Dā'ud, p. 142.

Mujir ud-Din Abu Rāja, p. 140.

Mukarram, son of as-Salayhi, p. 84. Rescues his mother Asma who lis captive in Zabid. Dies in San'a, p. 86.

Mukh Afghān, an Amir in Deogir, p. 731.

Mukhal Rādā, father of Kumbha Rānā, p. 10.

Mukhlis ul-Mulk, favourite of Muhammad Tughluq, p. 724.

Mukhtaşş Khān, brother of Ibrāhim of Jaunpur, p. 760.

Mulla Abdul Fattah al-Qazwini, friend of Āsaf Khān in Makka, p. See Asaf Khān.

Mulla Baba Saghiri, p. 778.

Mullā Mahmud Munshi, composed Bahādur's insulting letter to Humāyun, p. 197.

Mulla Tardi, p. 407.

Multān, generally a dependency of Sind, p. 122. Between (841 H) and (933) ruled over by Budhan Khān and his descendants. (1) Mahmud Budhan Khān of Mulfān. (2) Qutbuddin, (3) Husayn, (4) Muhammad in (902 H) drives off the Mughals. (5) Firuz, (6)

Husayn defeated and killed by Shāh Mir (933 H), p. 125. Invaded by Iltamish (624 H), p. 571. Multān surrenders to 'Alāuddin Khalji's generals after short siege (695 H), p. 644.

Munawwar | ul-Mulk Sayyid Jalal Bukhāri, p. 98. Describes strength of Champaner to Author of Mirati-Sikandari, p. 201.

Mun'im Khan, imprisoned by Humayun, p. 830. Made Atalik of Akbar. p. 879.

Muqaddisi Al, quoted, p. 711.

Muqarrab Khān, destroys Luhyana, p. 175.

Muqarrab Khān Malikji, son of Yāqut Sultāni Abdul-Karim Fulād Khān, son of Sandal Fulād Khān killed in (1003 H), pp. 73, 74. Deserts to Akbar, p. 76.

Muqbil, brother of Ubayd Ahmadyar, Governor of Gujarat, p. 726.

Muqbil Khān Sultāni, p. 191. Brother of Ikhtiyār Khān Siddiqi, put to death by 'Imād ul-Mulk, pp. 225, 264.

Murād Khān, in .Akbar's service, p. 402.

Murdudhi, name of a palace in Delhi, (Kushak-i-Mu'izzi), p. 664.

Murtuzā Nizām Shāh, after capturing Ilichpur attacks Asir, p. 60. In (980) 151.

Musā Khān, son of Ayn ul-Mulk Fulādi, pp. 312, 313, 315, 320, 327, 339. Joined by Hājji Khān Sher Shāhi, pp. 345, 357, 379, 385, 388. Dies (970 H), pp. 394. Is taken ill and dies (970 H), pp. 396, 397.

Musă Muhammad Taqi, p. 63.

Mustafābād, founded by Mahmud I near Girnār after its capture and becomes one of his capitals, pp. 20, 28. Name given to fort built by

Mahmud Khalji at Gurgaon (847 H), p. 171.

Mustafā Kukiyan (Chingiz Khān), p. 75.

Mustafā Qarmāni (Afterwards 'Ādil Khān) arrives in Diu (938 H), p. 186. See 'Adil Khān Quramani.

Mustansir Billah, sends Khil'at and banner to Iltamish, p. 574.

Mu'tamid ud-Dawla Muqbil, equerry to Ikhtiyār ud-Din in Lakhnawati, has interview with al-Juzzāni (641 H), p. 797.

Mu'tazid, the Egyptian Khalifa sends deputation to Firuz Shāh (756 H), P. 745.

Muzaffar I proclaimed King of Gujarāt (802 H), p. 755.

Muzaffar II. arrives from Baroda at a moment when his father's ( Mahmud Begadha) body is being carried to Sarkhej, p. 81. Ascends to throne of Gujarat (3rd Ramzan, 917), p. 90. Goes to Godhra in (Q18 H) to help Mahmud II. Khalji against Bhim Rāi, p. 91. Besieges Idar in (QIQH), p. Q2. Sets out from Champaner to meet Mahmud Khalji in Bhakor (923 H), they proceed together to Diola, p. 94. Summons his amirs from all sides to help him against Chitor, p. 102. His prayer for rain which is answered (931 H), p. 109. Premonitions of approaching death (932 H), designates Sikander as his successor, p. 115. Bids farewell to his harim; vivid description of his last hours (2nd Jumada II, 032), p. 116. Anecdote of the Qazi in Ahmadabad and the horse-dealer. Sends a cargo of rich clothes to liddah for the Holy Places. His ribat in Makka. His copies of the Quran seen by the Author in Makka, p. 116.

Muzaffar III, Abu Naşr, son of Mahmud, son of Latif, brother of Bahādur. Accession (17th Sha'ban, 967), p. 384. With Sayyid Hāmid in (974 H), p. 406. Secretly joins Ulugh Khān after battle of Nadiad (Jumāda II, 980), p. 452. Surrenders to Akbar, p. 455.

Muzaffar Khān, amir of Chanderi, commanded Mahmud Khalji's right

wing at Kapadwanj, p. 9.

Muzaffar Khān Shirwāni, Vazir to Sher Khān Fulādi, with the Afghāns, pp. 394, 418, 421. Died (979 H) and his son succeeds to his office and title, 440.

Muzaffar Khān, son of Muzaffar Khān Shirwāni, Vazir to Sher Khān Fulādi, p. 443. Assures Ulugh Khān that Sher Khān only [made peace on condition that Ulugh Khān should lose nothing, p. 446. Discusses the Treaty of (975 H) and the peace of (980 H), p. 465.

Muzaffar Khān, vazir to Musā Khān, p. 381.

Muzaffar Shāh Habashi, King of Bengal, p. 817.

Muzaffar Turkman, p. 828.

Muzbir Simwan, a Sayyid at battle of Gamid, p. 365.

#### N

Nãb, a village near Herat, p. 537.

Nadarbār, (Nandurbār), p. 2 and Sultānpur added to Gujarāt in reign of Ahmad II, pp. 57, 313, 314, 337.

Nādod, pp. 314, 316, 321, 337. Given to Daryā Khān, p. 379.

Nafis, Abyssinian slave, minister in Zabid, p. 83.

Nagarkot, captured by Firuz Shāh, pp. 746, 748.

Nägor, pp. 10, 11, 12, 28, 390, 407.

Naharwala Patan, capital of Gujarat in the reign of Muzaffar I, pp. 28, 385.

Najah, Abyssian slave, conquers Zabid in (412 H) receives title of Nāṣi-ruddin from the Abbasi Khalifa; poisoned in (452 H), p. 83.

Najim Beg, defeated by Bābur, p. 779. Najmuddin Abu Bakr, Şadr ul-Mulk, succeeds Muhaddib ud-Din as Vazir to 'Alāuddin Mas'ud, p. 584. Becomes Vazir with title of Şadr Jahān, p. 589.

Nandeo, King of Salir Malir, p. 730.

Naqd ul-Mulk, a Hindu in service of Ulugh Khān, p. 399.

Narain, pp. 557, 674.

Narbada, river, p. 328.

Narma Shirin, brother of Qutlugh Khwāja, p. 664.

Narmin Malik, attacks Mughisuddin Tughril but is defeated, p. 805.

Narpat Hada, Allied with Rānā Sāngā against Babur, p. 784.

Narsang (misprinted as Tarsang), p. 150.

Narsingh Deo, Lord of Gwalior, p. 756. Narsingh Deo Rājā Chuhān, dies of wounds in siege of Chāmpāner, (941 H), p. 201. Allied with Rānā Sāngā against Bābur, p. 784.

Naryad, pp. 225, 318, 445. Belongs to Sayf ul-Muluk in (980 H), p. 450. Battle of, p. 451.

Nasib Shāh, son of 'Alāuddin also called Nuṣrat Shāh, King of Bengal. This is probably the name by which this king was popularly known, pp. 194, 792. Gave asylum to the Afghāns after the invasion of Bābur in (932 H), also to Mah-

mud b. Sikandar b. Bahlul, whose sister he married, p. 818. Come to Humāyun fleeing before Sher Shāh and is well received, p. 819.

Nasik Tarmak (Trimbak), pp. 28, 154, 768.

Nāṣir, the Khalifa persuades Ghiyasuddin to attack the Khwārazm Shāh'. territory in order to turn him back from Irāq, p. 547.

Nășir, amir, a poet, p. 579.

Nāṣir Habash Khān, Governor of Diu, p. 312.

Nāṣiriyya, the, in Delhi in charge of Juzjāni, p. 584.

Nāşir Kāmi, receives money from Muhammad Tughluq, p. 738.

Nāşir Khān Nuhāni Afghān, pp. 782. 783.

Nāṣir Khān (Jahangir) of Khāndesh, succeeds his father Rāja Aḥmad in (801 H). Conquers Thālner, Asir, Lalang, Songir and Dilkot. Besieged in Asir by Ahmad I of Gujarāt and submits, leaving his brother, Hasan as hostage, p. 48. Dies in (841 H), p. 49.

Nāsir Mirzā, p. 779.

Nāşir Sarmast Khān, pp. 377, 404.

Nāşir Shah, a descendant of Shamsuddin Ilyās, ruler in Bengal, p. 816.

Nāşir Shāh, of Bengal, sends money to Bābur, p. 786.

Nāşir Sultāni, with 'Imād ul-Mulk, son of Ikhtiyār in (982 H), p. 501.

Năşirud-Din, Governor of Bengal, p. 574.

Nāṣirud-Din, keeper of the elephants, one of the three Jalāli nobles spared by 'Alāuddin, p. 645.

Nāṣirud-Din Khalji, see Khusraw Khān Hasan Rāo Bachcha.

Nāṣiruddin Aytam, aec Bala Rāmi Mu'izzi of Multān, pp. 571, 579. Nāsir ud-Din Chirāgh-i-Dihli, Shaykh, His meeting with Firus Shāh as a boy, p. 742.

Nāsir ud-Din Ghāzi Alp, son of Qara Arstān Saljuqi, nephews of Mu'izzuddin, made governor of Herat, p. 558.

Nāsir ud-Din Husayn, son of Shihābuddin Ghuri, p. 539. Mir-i-Shikār, p. 568.

Näsir ud-Din Mahmud, son of Iltamish, conquers Bengal (624 H), p. 577. Released by his nephew 'Aläuddin and given Broach, p. 584. Brought from Broach and sat on the throne (644 H), p. 584. Died in (662 H) (11th Jumada I) according to Husam Khan, p. 595. Son of Shamsuddin Iltamish defeats and kills Ghiyasuddin Khalji. Ascends throne of Lakhnawati and dies in (662 H), p. 800.

Näsir ud-Din Mahmud Bughra Khān, son of Ghiyāsuddin Balban, governor of Bengal (681-691), pp. 602, 714. Made king of Lakhnawati (681 H), the injunctions and counsels he received from his father, p. 809. Author has been unable to discover date of his death, but only knows he was falive during the reign of his son, Sultān Mu'izzuddin Kay-Qubād (686-689 H) and of Tughluq Shāh (720-724 H), p. 810.

Nāṣir ud-Din Muhammad Al-Mardini, uncle of Sultān Mu'izzuddin, p. 565.

Nāṣir ud-Din 'Umar, the Khatib in Delhi, p. 754.

Nāşirud-Din Qabācha of Sind, pp. 564, 571.

Nāṣirud-Din Qādir Shāh Khalji, remoured to have poisoned his father. Assures Mahmud I of his innocence, p. 31. Son of Ghiyāsuddin of AH70 Māndu, pp. 170, 180. Succeeds his father (305 H) punishes the nobles, who sided with his brother. Puts to death women who saved him from drowning, p. 181.

Nāşirud-Din Tawil, receives large money gifts from Muhammad Tughluq, p. 738.

Nāşirul-Mulk, ese Daryā Khān Habashi. Nāşir ul-Mulk, son of Malik ush-Sharq, p. 450.

Nāṣir ul-Mulk Bimbāni, pp. 314, 326, 339. His estates divided, he is offered the Vazirat of the Kingdom, p, 341.

Nāşir ul-Mulk Sultāni, murdered by order of Mahmud III in Broach, p. 230.

Nāṣr Khalji, father of 'Alāuddin Khalji.

"New Muslims", name given to Mongol converts, p. 650. Renowned for markmanship, p. 661. In Delhi, plot to kill 'Alauddin and are wiped out (711 H), p. 680.

Ni'matuliāh Khwāja, made governor of Ajmir in (860 H) and receives title of Sayf Khān, p. 174.

Nishasta, name of the Sultan's residence in Mahmudabad, p. 314.

Niyāzi Bukhāri, Author of Jāmi ut-Tawārikh, his verses on Bahādur's death, p. 224.

Niyāzis, a tribe in the Punjab, p. 835. Nizām, son of Hasan Sur, succeeds his father, but invites his brother Sarid to accept the Amirat, p. 790.

Nizām Khān Afghān (932 H), p. 782. Governor of Biyāna, p. 783.

Nizāmshāh, son of Humāyun Shāh Bahmani, pp. 16, 147. Being attacked by Mahmud Khalji, seeks aid from Mahmud Beghada (866 H). Again in (867 H). Dies in (857) H), p. 148. Nizām Shāh Dekkani, p. 264.

Nizām ud-Din, brother of Qutlugh Khān, p. 725. Governor of Deogir, p. 730.

Nizām ud-Din, amir dād, nephew and son-in-law of Fakhruddin Kotwāl of Delhi, p. 606.

Nizām ud-Din Furghâni, the first Muslim conqueror to enter Bihār, p. 793.

Nizām ud-Din Awliyā, p. 142. Appealed to by 'Alauddin for spiritual aid in capture of Ranathambhor (699 H), tells the Sultan to seek aid from Imad Khalji, p. 667. Accredited with the victories of 'Alauddin, p. 675. Again consulted by 'Alauddin, who is four days without news of his army. The saint never visited or met 'Alauddin, p. 679. Protests against the conduct of Sultan Outbuddin. The Sultan offers a reward of 1000 Tankas to the man, who brings him "that which is next the Saint's turban", and made it an offence for people to visit the saint in his home in Ghivaspur, p. 697. Receives a gift of five lakhs, which he at once distributes: blamed for his encouragement of sama' (music) and his patronage of Sufis, p. 708. His famous warning to Tughluq Shah, "Hanuz Dihli dur ast", p. 714. Meeting with Firuz Shah as a boy, p. 742.

Nizām ud-Din Mukhtaşş ul-Mulk, p. 9. Nizām ud-Din Sarfāni, p. 576.

Nizām ud-Din Shaykh Mahmud, p. 11. Nizām ul-Mulk, a royal servant, p. 333. Nizām ul-Mulk, amir of 'Alāuddin Bahmani, p. 145.

Nizām ul-Mulk Aysan, p. 23.

Nizām ul-Mulk Bahri, on death of 'Ādil Khān II plots to place 'Ālam

Khān on the throne of Khāndush, p. 50. Leaves Barid and returns to Burhānpur, is followed by Bahādur and makes peace, pp. 135, 148. Joint vazir to Mahmud II Bahmani, dies in (916 H), p. 150.

Nizām ul-Mulk Mahmud Junaydi, Vazir to II-tamish, p. 572.

Nizām [ul-Mulk Muhaddib ud-Din Muhammad, see Muhaddibuddin.

Nizām ul-Mulk Nā'ib, son of Nizām ul-Bahri, p. 150.

Nizām ul-Mulk Niknām, b. Hasan, Governor of Gujarat, p. 746.

Nizām ul-Muik Sultāni, son of Rānā Patāi handed over to care of Sayf ul-Mulk (886 H), p. 28. In service of Muzaffar II (919 H), p. 92. He and his companions defeat the garrison of Na'lcha by whom they had been attacked. Muzaffar II reproves him for his rashness. Made amir of Ahmadnagar, p. 93.

Nizām ul-Mulk Tusi, Vazir to Malik Shāh, the Saljuq, p. 215. Story of cow's hide, p. 216.

Nosāri (Navsāri), taken from Qāsim Husayn Khān by Khān Jahān and Şafar Salmāni, pp. 219, 314, 326, 328. Battle near, p. 329. Fief of Ulugh Khān, p. 336. Occupied by Nāṣir ul-Mulk Bimbāni, p. 339. Given to Fath Jang Khān, p. 379.

Notaks, wild piratical bowmen, numbering 40,000 attack the Sultan of Sind, (897 H), p. 21.

Nuhānis, Afghān, revolt against Bābur, p. 782.

Nurturk, a Qaramite propagandist in Delhi, with 1000 followers, plots to bill the orthodox Ulmā and Shaykhs in the masjid, a rescue is effected from outside and Nur Turk is killed, p. 579. Nuruddin 'Ali b. Husāmuddin as-Sāfi, a famous Sufi in Mahmud III's reign, p. 260.

Nuruddin 'Ali al-Muttaqi, p. 522. Nuruddin 'Ali Lähiji, p. 156.

Nuruddin Burhan ul-Mulk Bimbani, Vazir, p. 228.

Nuruddin Khān-Jahān Shirāzi, p. 219. Nuruliāh Beg Rumi Bāyazidi, p. 405. Nusrat Khān, see Shihāb Sultani.

Nusrat Khān, son of Tughluq Shāh, p. 711.

· Nusrat Khān, amir of Jalandar and Lāhore, p. 762.

Nusrat Khān, pp. 639, 644. Title conferred upon, Malik Nusrat Jalisari, husband of 'Alāuddin's sister, becomes Kotwāl of Delhi in (695 H) and Vazir in (699 H), pp. 644, 650. His cruelty, p. 651. Sent to help Ulugh Khān, p. 659. Wounded before Ranthambhor, is healed by surgeon but on being brought before Ulugh Khān does obeisance; his wound re-opens and he dies (details not given by Ziyāuddin), pp. 660, 681.

Nusrat Khān, son of Fath Khān, son of Firuz Shāh, set on throne in Firuzābād (793 H), p. 751. Returns to Delhi after withdrawal of Tamerlane, p. 754.

Nusrat Sabar, sar-Dawätdar to Jalaluddin Firuz, p. 625.

Nusrat Shāh of Bengal, p. 94. Is joined by the Afghāns and married daughter of Ibrāhim Ludi (938 H), p. 788.

Nusrat ud-Din Tansi dies while engaged in quelling Raziya's enemies, p. 577-

Nusrat ul-Mulk, minister to 'Ādil Khān III, p. 54. Dismissed from Idar (925 H), p. 100.

# 0

Omars, the historian of Yaman, quoted regarding the Habashis, p. 90.

'Omar ('Umar) b. 'Abdullah of Sim, p. 480.

'Omar (Umar) b. Sirāj, a poet of Herāt, p. 539.

'Omar ('Umar), al-Jabarati in Mugrana, p. 43.

'Omar '('Umar) Din, Amir of Barr Sa'duddin, pp. 476, 479.

'Omar ('Umar) Khān, a relation of Bahlal Ludi, with Bahādur (937 H), p. 166.

'Omar ('Umar) Khān, son of 'Alāuddin's sister, revolts against his uncle while he is besieging Ranthambhor, p. 663.

'Omar (' Umar ) Khān, son of 'Alāuddin, p. 700.

'Omar ('Umar) Khān Sarwāni entertains Sher Shāh and his father on their arrival in Delhi, p. 790.

'Omar ('Umar) Shaykh Bahadur, father of the Emperor Babur, p. 772.

Orissa, Rāi of, p. 147.

Osman ('Usman or 'Uthman), Amir-Akhur, p. 641.

Osmanpur, see Sayyid Uthman, p. 29. Oudh, p. 609.

## P

Padmawati, p. 745.

Pahārji Shāh Murād, son of Akbar, always spoken of as Qurrat ul-'Ayn as Sultān (coolness of the eye of the Sultān), p. 68.

Pahār Khān, Leader in Sher Shāh's army, p. 819.

Pal, district, p. 26.

Palta, name of an elephant, pp. 361, 369, 370.

Pandwa, p. 812.

Pāni, Amir, a Hindu chieftain submits | Pir Quli Sistāni, p. 781. With Humāto Humayun, pp. 780, 786. Afghan chief rebels against Humayun, D. 888.

Pānipat, p. 762. Battle of, between Babur and Ibrahim Ludi (932 H), p. 771. Description of battle, p. 781.

Panjdah, conquered by Ghiyasuddin Ghuri, p. 544.

Parandi, p. 174.

Parbat, p. 28.

Parhāla, where Sultan Adam brings Kāmrān and Humāyun, p. 876.

Parhantij (Prantij), p. 102.

Parsād, Rānā of Amarkot, p. 831.

Patăi, see Rānā Patāi.

Patan, recovered by Darya Khan and Muhafiz Khān, pp. 220, 312, 315, 318, 320.

Patiali, pp. 601, 718.

Patlia, name given to Yaqut Sultani, p. 378.

Patri Bajana, p. 265.

Pat-Sankar, name of elephant, pp. 198, 265.

Pāyanda Khān, p. 115.

Patwara, a village near Champaner, captured by Muhmud I, p. 26.

Peshawar, p. 569.

Phalan Rāi, p. 171.

Pil Chiraghi, p. 776.

Pir Khukari, commander in Dhar. sends his son to offer submission to Muzaffar II, p. 92.

Pir Muhammad, son of Amir Timur, marches from Khurāsān against Uchch (800 H), p. 752.

Pir Muhammad Khān, son of 'Ālam Khān, p. 335.

Pir Muhammad Khān Uzbek, Lord of Balkh, receives Kāmrān and marches with him to Badakhshan. pp. 856, 888.

vun in his expedition against Rana Sängā, p. 783. General of Bābur, p. 785.

Pir Rāghi, p. 779.

Pishraw Khān, p. 94. In charge of Humayun's tent at Qanawj, p. 828. Pithäpur, p. 272.

Pithu Rāi (923 H), p. 95.

Pithu Rāi (584 H), of Tabarhind, p. 556.

Piyah (Bias) river, p. 581.

Piyārā Bhanderi Malek at capture of Chāmpāner, p. 27.

Portuguese, reach Aden (17th Muharram, 010), their attack fails and they proceed to Bāb-i-Mandab, al-Mutayna, Hudayda, and land on Kāmrān in Şafar (919). Second attack on Aden (12th Jumādā I, org) fails, they return to India, p. .37. Attack Div on break of monsoon in (938 H), alarmed at ships of Mustafa, withdraw again to Goa (938 H), p. 188. Attack Div in (939 H) but hearing of arrival of Bahadur, withdraw, pp. 193, 219. Portuguese governor arrives in Diu (943 H), p. 222. Invites Bahādur to visit him at sea, pp. 223, 234, 237, 240. Capture Diu and fortify it (962 H), p. 313. Occupy and strengthen Daman but do not send men in return, p. 351. Arrive in Abyssinia and Imam Ahmad is killed but Author has not been able to ascertain the date, p. 486.

Prithi Rāj of Dungarpur, p. 166.

Punjab, p. 202.

Puranmal, son of Silhadi, p. 102.

Purbi Chiefs, p. 94.

Purbi contingent, p. 354.

Purmiyani, a port near Diu, pp. 231, 241, 247.

Pushta Afruz, p. 799.
Pushta Mahal, a building in Mahmudābād, pp. 245, 257, 425.

### o

Qā, Ān (i.e. Ogotay) son of Chingiz Khān, the Mongol, p. 626.

Qabacha, see Nāşiruddin.

Qādir Khān, Amir of Kālpi (831 H), p. 760.

Qadir Khan, son of Jalaluddin Firuz Khalji, p. 622. Governor of Bengal, p. 658.

Qādir Khān, brother of Mahmud Khalji, p. 764.

Qādir Khān, pp. 9, 25. Gujarat noble sent to help 'Ādil Khān III in (914 H), p. 55.

Qädir Khan, see Bahadur Shah of Khandesh.

Qadis, pp. 541, 543.

Qā'im al-Hamzāwi, arrives in Makka with Sulaymān Pāshā, deputed to convey Bahādur's treasury away from Makka to Egypt. See Asaf Khan.

Qaimaz Rumi, Governor of Oudh, p. 798.

Qamarud-Din Qiran of Oudh, p. 584. Qambar Diwana, the story of, p. 885. Qanawj, pp. 558, 584, 716. Battle between Humayun and Sher Shah,

p. 827.

Qandahār in Afghanistān, p. 776. Captured by Humāyun in the name of Shāh Tahmasp (952 H), p. 848. Division of the territory after its second capture among Humāyun's Officers, p. 850.

Qandahār (Gandhār), a small port and village in Broach district, given in Waqf by Mahmud III,

Qansawh al-Ghawri Mamluk, Sultān of Egypt, pp. 34, 187.

Qarācha Khān, Governor of Qandahār for Kāmrān Mirzā (948 H.), p. 829. Guards Humāyun's tent during the Emperor's illness at Shākhdān (953 H), p. 852. His striking speech to Humāyun in regard to the killing of children in Kābul by Kāmrān, p. 856. Deserts to Kāmrān (954 H), p. 857. Forgiven by Humāyun (955 H), p. 861. Killed in battle against Humāyun, his head suspended from the Iron Gate of Kābul, p. 870.

Qaraqush Bahāud-Din, Governor of Multān, p. 577. Flees from Lahore to Delhi on arrival of Mongols in (639 H), p. 581. Amir Hājib to

Mas'ud, p. 583.

Qasim, an ancestor of the Author, migrates with his family from Delhi to Gujarat on account of Tamerlane's invasion, p. 510.

Qāsim b. Muhammad Dohar, a Gujarāt

Saint, p. 6.

Qāsim Khān Birlās, being informed that Humāyun is dead (and being actually shown his cuirass), surrenders Kābul to Kāmrān, p. 869.

Qāsim Mir (Qāsim ul-Anwār) of Gunābād, famous Persian poet, celebrates interview between Tahmāsp and Humāyun (951 H), p. 842.

Qaşr-i-Firuzi, in Delhi, p. 583.

Qaşr-i-Sabz, the green palace in Delhi, p. 585.

Qaşr-i-Safid, white palace in Delhi, p. 583.

Qayşar Khan, pp. 24, 25.

Qayşar Khān, son of Ghaznin Khān, married daughter of Nizāmuddin, Sultān of Sind, p. 49. Advanced to Diola, pp. 92, 94. A partisan of Latif Khān, p. 118.

Qāzi Jamāluddin Muhammad b. Husay al-Qurashi of Mahim, p. 336.

Qiran us-Sa'dayn, Amir Khusraw's Qutbuddin poem celebrating the meeting of Bughra Khan and Mu'izzuddin, Alauddin succeeds:

Qiwam ud-Din 'Umdat ul-Mulk, Na'ib Wakil to Mu'izz, grand-son of Balban, p. 606.

Quraysh, traditions regarding the tribe of, see Asaf Khan.

Qutb Khān, son of 'Ālam Khān, p. 334. Qutb Khān, son of Āsai Khān, see Asai Khān.

Qutb Khān, favourite son of l'timad Khān, p. 256.

Qutb nd-Din Ahmad Shāh, son of Muhammad Shāh, son of Ahmad Shāh, son of Mahmud Shāh, son of Muzaffar Shāh; (Accession. 11th Muharram, 855; death, Jumāda II, 862 H), pp. 13, 172, 361.

Qutbuddia Ay-Beg "Shall" chief of the stables to Mu'izzuddin in Ghazna becomes chief commissariat officer, is taken prisoner by the Turks, p. 544. Made governor of the Siwalik country in (588 H), p. 557. Conquers Meerut and Delbi in (589 H), p. 558. Brother of Aybeg Juki (?), p. 559. Ascends the throne of Delhi in (602 H). His early career, p. 561. Killed at polo. Had ruled for 20 years, i.e. from 587-607, but had only been Sultan for four years and a few months, pp. 563, 793. King of Delhi, befriends 'Ali Mardan (602 H), Dies in (607 H), p. 798.

Qutbuddin Bakhtiyār al-Ushi, p. 710. Qutbuddin Hasan al-Ghuri, p. 577. Sent by Bahrām Shāh to oppose the Mongols in Lahore (639 H), p. 581. Continues as regent under Mas'ud, p. 583. Killed (653 H), p. 590. Ontbuddin Mubarakshah, captures
Deogir in (718), p. 139. Son of
'Alauddin 'Ali, son of Nāṣir Khalji,
succeeds to throne in (711) (should
be 716?), p. 693. Marries Zafar
Khān's daughter (717) marches
against Deogir in (718), p. 695.
Demands the divorce by Khizr
Khān of his wife Dewal Rāni, p.
696. Murdered by Khusraw Khān's
men (720 H), p. 700.

Qutbuddin Pirmuhammad 'Alam Khān b. 'Alam Khān b. Pir Muhammad b. 'Alam Khān Ludi, p. 72. Uncle of 'Aziz Kokā, serving under 'Aziz Koka in (980 H), pp. 489, 492.

# R

Rafi' Koka, Foster brother of Kamran Mirza taken prison by Bayram Khan, p. 846.

Rafiq, a slave belonging to Sa'id Anşar Khan, p. 370.

Rāi Bahārmal, succeeds his father Rāi Bhim, p. 93.

Rai Bhil, of Tirhat, p. 120.

Rai Bhim, Lord of Jagat, p. 21.
Brought a prisoner to Mustafabad
and offered to the Samarqant merchant whom he had robbed. Sent
to Ahmadabad and then crucipied
(877 H), p. 22.

Rai Bhuj, Lord of Sarkaja, p. 170.

Rāi Chand Purabi, see Medni rāi.

Rāi Dhavāji, p. 31.

Rāi Dhunya, Lord of Lalang, p. 337.

Rāi Hardās, attacked by Mahmud Khalji, p. 170.

Rāi Ludur Deo, see Ludur Deo Rai,

Rāi Khumbir Dakkani, pp. 249, 418. Fighting for the Gujarāt nobles in (982 H), the first to fall in battle, p. 501.

Rāi Lakhdhar, of Kalna, submits to 'Ādil Khān III, p. 55.

Rai Mal, son of Suraj, cousin of Rai Baharmal, p. 93.

Rai Medui, See Medni Rai.

Rāi Narain, Lord of Idar, joins in attacking Ahmadābād under strange stipulation, p. 490.

Rāi Pithu, See Pithu Rāi.

Rāi Rāyān, son of Medni Rāi killed (918 H), p. 184.

Rāi Sāngā, of Chitor and Mewār, brother-in-law of Rāi Mal, p. 93. Hearing of the approach of 'Ādil Khān III flees from Ujjain, p. 96. His magnanimous treatment of Mahmud Khalji (925 H); in spite of which Muzaffar II sends him a cautionary letter, p. 98. With Mubāriz ul-Mulk (926 H), pp. 100, 777. Revolts against Bābur (932 H), p. 782. Dies of fever, the result of an ominous dream while Bābur is attacking Chanderi and he is besieging Irich (934 H), p. 786.

Rāi Singh, brother of Nizām ul-Mulk, son of Rāi Patāi, living in Na'lcha, p. 93.

Rāi Singh, Lord of Pal, offers his services to Mahmud Khalji, pp. 168, 185.

Rāisin, captured by Bahādur (938 H), p. 193 by Sher Shāh (951 H), p. 833.

Rāja Ahmad, see Ahmad, son of Khwājā Jahān.

Rāja 'Ali Khān, brother Muhammad II of Khāndesh in (985 H) becomes 'Ādil Shāh, p. 61.

Rajab Barqai, Hājji, accompanies the envoy of the Khalifa al-Mustanşir (742 H), Receives the title of Qabul-i-Khilāfat, p. 722.

Rajab Gilāni Khwāja, sent with gifts to Akbar, p. 414.

Rāja Muhammad, son of 'Abdul Qādir al-'Abhasi, p. 510.

Rajmut (Rajputs), p. 74. In early days of the Muzaffari dynasty, they had one quarter of the revenues of every village for services rendered, but they were nearly as wild as the Bhils, except that they were fine horsemen (only riding mares), p. 247. Mahmud III apparently on account of the murder of Yusuf Shihāb (958 H) ordered that they should be driven out of the kingdom or killed, and their fourth share of the revenues confiscated; the army was employed on this and the slaughter was general, p. 248.

Rajpipla, p. 276.

Rāmdās Darbāri, p. 79.

Rām Deo, Maratha chief in (708 H) becomes Rāy Rāyān, p. 138. King of Deogir, p. 648. Taken prisoner in (708 H) and carried to Delhi where 'Alāuddin pardons him and restores him to Deogir, p. 675.

Rām Lang Mahādeo (Rām Ling Mahādeo) an idol in Dhur Samand, p.

Rām Lang Mahādeoki, an idol in Sarandip, p.

Rām Rāj, King of Kanara, p. 680.

Rănă Patăi, son of Rănă Udaisingh, Lord of Chămpaner, p. 25. Sends out his Vazir Suraj to ask help from the Khalji Ghiyāsuddin, p. 26. Consults his mother, marches out with 700 men, p. 27. Wounded prisoner handed over Muhäfiz Khān, p. 27. Refusing Islām, is crucified, p. 28.

Ranmal, Vazir to Hambar Deo Rai, p. 665. Deserts to 'Alauddin with many Rajputs, p. 665. " Points with his foot" when spoken to by 'Alauddin, is beheaded, p. 669. His daughter married to Sipahsalar Rajab, becomes mother of Firuz Shah, p. 742.

Rann (of Cutch), the tides, pp. 21, 349.

Ranthambhor, Given to A'zam Humā-yun, p. 173. After peace with Chitor attacked by Burhān ul-Mulk and Mujāhid Khān, p. 194. Proof that the siege of Ranthambhor (940 H) was prior to the siege of Chitor, p. 196. Captured by Iltamish in (623 H); 70 previous kings had tried and failed to take this fort, p. 571. Besieged by Jalāl Firuz in (689 H), p. 626. Attacked by 'Alāuddin in (699 H), p. 647. Captured by 'Alāuddin in (700 H), p. 665.

Ratanpal, Vazir to Hambar Deo Rāi, p. 665.

Raul Udaisingh Manikchand Chuhan, p. 786.

Ravi Råi Dhunya, p. 59. In service of 'Ādil Shāh of Khandesh, pp. 67, 75. Son of daughter of Rāi Kanbhir of Sekkan, pp. 363, 367, 368.

Rāyāt-i-'Ālā, title assumed by Khizr Khān in lieu of padishāh, p. 759.

Raybat Khan Bihlim, p. 243.

Ray Bir, of Dhur Samand, p. 679.

Rayhān. armour-bearer to Ulugh Khān Muhammud, p. 366. Carried wounded off the field in a pālki, p. 371. The only leader lost by Ulugh Khān and Jhujhār Khān in the battle of (967 H), p. 372.

Rayhān, "amadar", p. 391.

Rayhān, Kotwal of Burhānpur, p. 62.

Rayhān Abul-Khayr Badruddin Jahāngir Khāni, p. 355. Succeeds Sa'd 'Ali Khān as vazir in (971 H), p. 400. Killed in (981 H), p. 495. A pupil of Ibn-i-'Abdullāh 'Idrus; when 'Imād ul-Mulk was killed in Surat, he was Vazir to Khudāwand Khān, afterwards vazir to Ulugh Khān, finally retires from public life and joins Shaykh Ahmad Idrus in Ahmadābād, p. 499.

Rayhān Churmali, Wakil to Ulugh Khān in Cambay (980 H), p. 446.

Rayhan Husayn, pp. 328, 392.

Rayhān Ja'far, standard-bearer, carries his banner on the broken stick, p. 404.

Rayhān Mahāldār Khān, pp. 332, 334, 364, 374.

Rayhān Tikli Ulugh Khān, pp. 367, 368, 372.

Rayy, famous Imāms of, pp. 552, 842. Razi Khān Abdur-Razzāq, son of Malik Miyā Abdul Wāhid Multāni, p. 252.

Razi ul-Mulk, in service of Muzaffar II (919 H), p. 92. Carries messages to Delhi and Chand Khan, p. 168.

Razi-ul-Mulk kills I'tibār ul-Mulk (but on p. 388 the assassimation is attributed to Ajdar ul-Mulk), p. 389.

Razi ul-Mulk 'Abdul-Malik al-Ansāri sent to Ahmadābād to fetch a successor to Mahmud III, p. 258.

Raziya Queen, rallies the nobles to her side, puts to death the king's mother and poisons Ruknuddin Firuz, p. 576. Appeared in public in man's clothes, p. 577. Captured by Altumiya in (637 H), becomes his wife, p. 578.

Rohtas, p. 820. Fort built by Sher Shāh but still incomplete at his death, completed by Salim Shāh, p. 835.

Rukn Dād, in service of Bahādur, p. 208.

Rukn ud-Din, son of Tājuddin, ancestor of Āsaf Khān, goes from Māndu and enters service of Mahmud I, See Asaf Khāu.

Ruku ud-Din, vasir to Abu Bakr, son of Zefar Khān (791 H). Is put to death, p. 749.

Rukn ud-Din Firuz, son of II-tamish, succeeds his father (633 H), he had been governor of Badāun, p. 575.

Rukn ud-Din Ibrāhim, son of Jalāluddin Firuz Shāh, is set up on the Khalji throne by his mother, p. 639. Escapes by night from Delhi to Mulrān, p. 642. Intercedes for Multān, p. 644.

Rukn ud-Din Walwāliji, Qāzi, pp. 709, 710. Shaykhul lelām intercedes for the people of Multān, p. 716.

Rukn ul-Mulk, p. 401.

Rumi Khan of Burhanpur, p. 52.

Rumi Khān, p. 233. Title bestowed on Rajab, son of Şafar; after battle of Diu (953 H), he succeeds to both his brother Muharram and his father, p. 238.

Rumi Khān, son of Jahāngir Khān, p. 387. After murder of Rajab goes to Surat and is poisoned, p. 388.

Rumi Khānis, Author says he could never understand their prowess and bravery till he discovered a book called "Tuhfat-uz-Zamān," p. 468.

Name borne by the Habashi prisoners sent to Salmān in Zabid (93 H), p. 469.

Rumi Khān Muharram, p. 232. Killed at Diu (953 H), p. 237. Head of Rumikhanis, p. 469.

Rumi Khān Mustefā, b. Bahrām, treachery towards Bahādur (939 H), p. 123. Arrives in Diu (938 H). His mother is sister to Salmān, the Turkoman, p. 187. In Jazān. Challenges Khayruddin to single combat (935 H), p. 187. In supreme command in Yaman after death of Khayruddin. Bahrām

writes to his son telling him he has been superseded and advising him to flee the country and go to India. before his successor arrives. He hides for sometime in ash-Shihar (037 H) and reaches Din in (038 H), where he is well received by Malik Tughan before the break of monsoon. Helps Tughan with his ships against the Portuguese. Sent for by Bahadur in Champaner who gives him the title of Rumi Khan and puts him in charge of the arsenal. Gives Bahadur a cannon called Layla, which Salman had cast for Sultan Sulayman and cast another for Babadur, calling it Majnun, p. 188. His character and qualities, p. 189. Bombards Raisin (938 H), p. 192. Bombards Chitor, p. 104. Is promissed Ranthambhor during its siege, but Bahādur goes back on his promise, fearing the possible results: is promised Chitor instead, p. 196. Bombards Chitor, (941 H), p. 196. Writes to Humavun offering to desert Bahādur, who had gone back on his promise to give him Chitor. Joins Humāyun. Persuades Bhupat Rāi to desert Bahadur, p. 198. Repairs for Humayun a gun spiked by Bahādur at Chāmpāner, p. 200. Not being given command of Chitor determines to desert to Humāyun advises construction of an Araba. p. 204. According to tradition fled with Bahadur from Mandsur to Mandu p. 205. Having accompanied Babāhur as far as Mandu leaves him and meets Humāyun, p. 205. Captures Chunnar (942 H) but is shortly after poisoned and his treachery to Bahadur is required. p, 819,

P. 73.

Rumi leaders degraded by Chingiz Khān and Persians and Mughals

promoted, p. 407.

Rustam Khān, Ibrāhim, 'Imād ul-Mulk, pp. 312, 328, 349. Mistaken for Chingiz Khan, p. 378. With leading Chingizi nobles proceeds at once to Broach after death of Chingiz Khan, p. 416. Leaves for Baroda with Ma'murul-Mulk, p. 425. How he got the better of his rivals and established him self at Broach (975 H), p. 426. Obtains Broach and Surat as far as Nandurbar, p. 427. At battle of Broach (975 H), p. 429. In single combat with Shah Madad, p. 430. Given the title of 'Imad ul-Mulk (978 H), p. 431. In Broach (980 H), p. 455. Had under him 300 Turkish knights, p. 459. Death and obituary, p. 461. Captured and murdered by the Mirzas because he intends to obey Akbar's summons. He made two prostrations in prayer before dying, p. 462. His character, his violent temper, his dislike of jests, his rare laughter, p. 464. His cruelty; amazing story of his treatment of a young Arab, p. 465. Rustam Khān Ḥasan Āgā, p. 346.

Rasulābād, seven farsakhs from Chāmpāner, battle of, (887 H), p. 25.

S

Sabira Dharan, Lord of Etāwah, p. 746. Sābir Qāq, the musician, entertains Humā'yun in Herāt, p. 841.

Sābit Khān Yāqut Bāzi Sultāni, of Māndu, pp. 334, 365, 368. In service of Bijli Khān, p. 437.

Sabuktagin, p. 529.

Sa'd 'Ali Khani, second Vazir, p. 324. Detailed description of his

appearance and habits, pp. 364, 374. Vazir killed in (971 H), p. 399. Sādāt Khān, of Khandesh, (1003 H),

Sādāt Khān, Abdur-Rahmān, p. 73. Brother of Shaykh ul-Islām Bukhāri, (961 H), p. 321. In service of Mahmud (963 H), p. 333. Appointed Amin by Sher Khān in Ahmadābād (975 H), p. 419. (980 H), p. 450.

Sādāt Khān Firuzi, sets up Nusrat Khān son of Fath Khān, is driven away by the nobles, p. 751.

Sa'd Bakht Sultāni. obtains titles of Burhān ul-Mulk, p. 15.

Sadharan Kanku Khatri, p. 764.

Sādiq Muhammad Khān, Vazir to Shāh Murād, p. 71.

Şadr Jahan, p. 11.

Şadr Jahan, see Najmuddin.

Şadr' Jahan, title conferred on Ziyauddin son of Bahauddin Khitat, p. 695.

Şadr Khan, a Gujarati noble sent to help 'Adil Khan III in (914 H), p. 55.

Sa'di Shaykh Muslehuddin, the poet, his correspondence and friendship with Muhammed Tughluq, p. 740.

Şadr Khān Husayn Abdul-Latif b. Malik Rāji, left in charge of Mandu by Bahādur, is taken prisoner and killed, pp. 198, 203. At siege of Chitor, p. 204. Consulted by Bahādur, p. 205. With 'Imād ul-Mulk reaches Māndu in advance of Bahādur, deputed by Bahādur to discuss peace terms with Humāyun, p. 205. Though wounded continues to fight in defence of Māndu, p. 206. Receives royal favours from Humāyun, p. 207. One of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), p. 218. The Vazir (continues called Rāji)

. - . .

disgusted at the murder of Ikhtiyër, retires from Vazirat, p. 226. Accompanies Imad ul-Mulk to Morvi (945 H), p. 226.

Şadr Khan Kawaja Ahmad Jahrami, supersedes Jahangir Khan as Vazir to Chingiz Khan, p. 401.

Şadr Khān Zubayri, 'Imād ul-Mulk's general, p. 265.

Şadr ul-Mulk, see Wahiduddin Quraishi, Şadr ul-Mulk, Chief Justice under the Ghuris, p. 580.

Safdar Khān, brother of 'Ālam Khān Ludi, p. 273.

Safdar ul-Mulk, son of Khān Jahān Malik Lādan, in service of Malik Ayāz, p. 103.

Safdar ul-Mulk Sultāni, p. 731.

Safdar ul-Mulk Taghi Turkish slave of Dekkan, p. 142.

Safi ud-Din Abmad b. 'Umar al Muzajjid, p. 40. Qāzi of Labid, p. 43.

Safi ul-Mulk, send by Bahädur to the Portuguese in Diu with reproachful messages, he becomes intoxicated and warns them of Bahädur's intended attack, p. 221.

Sahasrām, see Sasrām.

Sahib Khān, son of Khudāwand Khān, son of Yusuf, p. 25.

Sa'id b. Sa'ban al-Mahri, p. 483.

Sa'id Al-Ahwal, son of Najaf of Zabid, p. 83. Drives ibn Shihāb out of Zabid, p. 87.

Sa'id Ansar Khani, pp. 334, 370.

Sa'id Badr ud-Din Hasan Daylami, Vazir of Jahangir Khan, wishes to take Author into his service, p. 359. Sa'id Khan of Kashghar is invited by Uwais to attack Badakhshan, p. 787.

Sa'id Rayhān Husayni Shahnat ud-Dinān, pp. 328, 334. (Head of the Police Dept.). Sa'id Sarnauba, horseman in service of Khayrat Khān, p. 389.

Sa'id Şarşari, Hājji, envoy from the Egyptian Khalifa to Muhammad Tughluq, p. 721.

Sa'id Sultāni Shaykh, accompanies Daryā Khān on his interview with Chingiz Khān (967 H), p. 376.

Sa'id ul-Mulk, in service of Mahmud Khalji, p. 24.

Sa'id Ulugh Khāni, "Mir Akhur," P. 377.

Sajawul Khān Al-Awghān, p. 230. Captures Māndu on behalf of Sher Shāh, p. Alias Shujā'at Khān, p. 838.

Sakhāwi, p. 44. His biography of Khwāja Jahān, p. 150.

Sakya, name of a European converted to Islām, by Bahādur called Firang Khān, q.v.

Şalâbat Khān, p. 156. Habashi chief under Nizāmshāhis (997 H), pp. 158.

Salādi, Amir of the Mongols in India, p. 651.

Salāh ud-Din 'Āmir b. 'Abdul Wahhāb, p. 48.

Salah ud-Din Yusuf, p. 209.

Salar Mas'ud, one of Mahmud Sabuktgin's generals buried in Broach. His tomb visited by Muhammad Tughluq, p. 721.

Salbhān, minister to Medni Rāo: according to this history he escaped alive with his master from the ambush laid for them, but Firishta, says he was killed, p. 183.

Şālih ibn al-Hadiya in service of 'Ālam Khān, pp. 271, 272.

Şālih es-Shams Muhammad b. Tulun, historian of Syria, p. 34.

Salima Sultān Begum, married to Bayrām Khān-i-Khānān, p. 889.

Salim Shāh, son of Sher Shāh dies in (961 H), p. 249. See for Islām Shāh, p. 396. (Jalāl Khān), son of Sher Shāh Sur ascends throne (952 H), dies (960 H), p. 835. His prophetic dying words recorded, p. 838. Receives Kāmrān without due ceremony and takes him to Delhi (959 H), p. 875.

Salim Noyan, invades Multan and is joined by Kishlu Khan and Qutlugh Khan, p. 593.

Salim Sultān, son of the Emperor Akbar known as Shaykhjiu Jahāngir, appointed to Gujarāt, p. 491.

Salir Malir. p. 730.

Salmān Amir Turkmāni, meets Amir Husayn Kurdi in the Tihāma, p. 35. Arrives in Zabid, p. 39. Driven off at Aden, p. 42. How he came to Yaman, his career in the Mediterranean, p. 187. Sent to the Yemen by Qansaw Ghawri, p. 187. Commands Turks and Habashis, p. 234. Receives Abyssiman prisoners in Zabid, p. 469.

Salmāni, guns, p. 354.

Salmān Sāwji, his verses quoted, p. 59. Salmur, p. 591. Captured by Nāşır Mahmud, pp. 592, 598.

Sam, p. 530.

Saman, elephant, pp. 431, 436.

Sāmāna, pp. 603, 718, 764.

Samandar, sea p. 797.

Samas, the (Samagan) governor of Sind for a time p 122.

Sama' ud-Din, Qazi, p. 712.

Sambakji, a fort, p. 539.

Sambal, p. 193. Fort, p. 782.

Sambar Rāi, Rāi Rāyān, joins Muhammad Shāh son of Firuz,

p. 749.

Sambhar, p. 268.

Sami, p. 318. Sana, p. 43. Sanam, 718. Sanbai Dec. of Siwana, p. 649.

Sinchur, p. 25.

Sandal Ghālib Khān Jahangiri, (953 H), pp. 334, 342. Wounded in the hand, pp. 369, 388, 404. Purchased by Jahāngir Khān in the Yaman, who adopted him and instructed him in all branches of letters, p. 497. His various masters; like a brother to the Author. His generosity, p. 498.

Sandal Habashi, slave of Malik ut-Tujjär in Cambay. Rises in service under Jhujhär Khän Habshi (of Khändesh) and receives Jämud and the title of Fuläd Khän from Mubärak Shäh, p. 57.

Sang-i-Ra'd, elephant with Ulugh Khān, p. 442.

Sang-i-Surkh, on road from Ghazna to Lahore, p. 565.

Sanjad, a port, p. 173.

Sanjar, son-in-law of the Raja of Jajnagar, p. 802.

Sarjar, the Seljuq, p. 537.

Sanjar, amir-i-majhs, receives title of Alp Khān, p. 644.

Sanjar Birlas Sultan, p. 778.

Sanjar Khan, p. 332.

Sanjar Khān, in service of 'Aziz Koka, p. 32.

Samjar Khān Sultāni, p. 377.

Sannam, pp. 590, 602, 603.

Sanqaran, p. 567. Santej, p. 349.

Santor, p. 746.

Santur, hills, pp. 586, 591. Near Deokot, p. 798.

Sarakhs, p. 546.

Sarandāz Khān, of Māndu, p. 385.

Sarandip, pp. 87, 139, 679.

Sarang Gakkar Sultan, p. 833.

Sarang Khan, in Multan, pp. 751, 752. Brother of Iqbal Khan, p. 759. (932 H), p. 782.

Sārangpur, Given to Mallu Khān of Māndu, p. 191. Conquered by Bahādur, (938 H), pp 193, 203.

Sārang Sultāni, becomes Mukhlis ul-Mulk, (see Sārang Mukhlis, Becomes Qıwan ul-Mulk, p. at.

Sardawatdar, Favourite of Muhammed Tughing, p. 724.

Sargdawadi, p. 141. (Sargdwāri) (Sarkdwāri) founded by Muhammad Tughluq, pp. 718, 728.

Sarhān, a merchant of Cambay, a suitor for the daughter of Mahmud Sa'radi killed by Jhujhār Khān, who then marries this woman, p. 472.

Sarkaja, 200 farsakhs from Shādiābād, p. 170.

Sarkhān, son of Muzaffar Khān, killed by Nāṣiruddin Khalji, p. 181.

Sarkhān, King of Multān, p. 587. Cousin of Ghiyāsuddin Balban, head of the Chihilgānis, dies in (664 H), His career, p. 603.

Sarkhān (a lion), name of a Khalji amir, p. 176

Sarkhej, pp. 2, 12, 116, 313, 326. Ulugh Khan Yaqut buried beside Bilal Jhujhar Khan (965 H), p. 345. Curious dialogue between Jhujhar and Muhammad Ulugh Khan as to who should occupy a vacant space in a mausoleum, p. 472. Description of the mausoleum, p. 472.

Sarkub, p. 103.

Sarmast Khān Nāsir, p. 334. Leader in Sher Shāh's army, p. 819.

Sarnal Kutnal, p. 488.

Sarsa, a village, p. 4.

Sarvar Malik, captain of the Delhi town-guard, p. 748.

Sawai, title given to Ulugh Khan {Muhammad} on battle-field in (965), p. 347. It seems to mean something like "alter ego." Is it possible that in the title, we have the explanation of the name Sabai by which Yusuf 'Adil Khan was always referred to by the Portuguese? Sawai means brave to excess (11).

Sawalak (Parbat), pp. 223, 557.

Name of hill track between Ajmir and Nagor. Explained as meaning a lakh and a quarter, i.e. 1,25,000, p. 63x. Invaded by Mongols in (706 H), pp. 674, 835.

Sayf Khān, see Ni'matullāh.

Sayf Khan, (919 H), p. 92.

Sayf Khān Afghān, amir, killed at Jambusar (975 H), pp. 425, 428.

Sayí Khan Koka, p. 495.

Sayf Khan Rumi, with Ulugh Khan in (980 H), p. 442.

Sayí ud-Din Ay-Beg Baghantat, Governor of Bengal (627-631 H), p. 80x.

Sayi ud-Din Ay-Beg Bithu, is made commander of Raziya's army and receives title of Qutlugh Khan, p. 577.

Sayf ud-Din Hamza b. Ghiyasuddin A'zam Shah b. Sikandar b. Shamsuddin, p. 815.

Sayı ud-Din Suri b. Izzuddin Husayn, P. 533.

Sayí ul-Mulk, in service of Mahmud Khalji (858 H), p. 173.

Sayf ul-Mulk, standard-bearer, p. 412.

Sayi ul-Mulk Muhammad, son of 'Aläuddin Ghuri exterminates the assassins releases his cousins Ghiyas and Shihāb, p. 540.

Sayf ul-Mulk Rumi Sultāni, p. 387.

Sayf ul-Mulk Sultāni, Given charge of Nizām ul-Mulk, son of Rānā Patāi (807 H), p. 28.

Sayf ul-Mulk Tirmidi, game ranger to

Firuz Shāh, p. 745.

Savf ul-Mulk Miftah Ulugh Khani Habashi, pp. 66, 67. Reference to subsequent adventures on p. 128. In service of Nizām Shāhis in (997 H), pp. 155, 156. Had been promoted to the command of 8,000 and 50 elephants in (999 H). Imprisoned in Dawltabad till he dies in (1001 H), pp. 159, 334. Commander of Daman for Ulugh Khān, p. 350. Hesitates to surrender. Daman to the Portuguese, pp. 351, 357. Occupies Baroda, pp. 358, 403. Retains his post, pp. 407, 416, 418. Is prepared to resish Akbar's orders, but Shirwan Khan explains to him that as Ulugh is a prisoner, no purpose can he served. He surrenders to Shah Quli, but says he will give up his sword to no one but the Sultan himself. Introduced into Akbar's presence by 'Aziz Koka, p. 458. Is allowed by Akbar to retain his house and estates and all his possessions except his elephant called Burj, p. 459. Joins Amin Khan Ghuri (980 H), DD. 480, 400, 401. Author enters his service in (983 H), p. 51g. In service of Murtuzā Nizām Shāh Bahri, p.

Sayyid Abul-Fath Awghan, p. 768.

Sayyid Ahmad Ashraf, Khandesh noble, p. 50.

Sayyid Ahsan revolts in Ma'bar against Muhammad Tughluq, p. 716.

Sayyid 'Ali, vazir, p. 154. Poisons Nizām Shāh, p. 154.

Sayyid 'Ali, Bhanberi, Lord of Bhanber, p. 400.

Sayyid Fidāk, nephew of Sayyid Mubārak, p. 336.

Sayyid Hāmid Bukhāri, Lord of Dholka, son of Sayyid Mirān, pp. 346, 40r, 430. Offers to help against Sher Khān al-Khariji, p. 433. Asked to verify the Treaty signed and sealed by his father in (975 H), pp. 447, 450. Hesitates to submit to Akbar, p. 455. Hearing Muzaffar has given himself up, surrenders to Akbar, to whom he gives his elephant, "Songir," pp. 456, 494, 495.

Sayyidi Amin Jiu, slave of Jhujhār Khān, p. 275.

Sayyidi Bir Jiu, slave of Jhujhār Khān, p. 275.

Sayyidi Mullā, a famous darvish, p. 627. His friendship with Khān-i-Khānān, son of Jalāl Firuz, p. 627. The disaster which follows his cruel death, p. 631.

Sayyid Jalāl ud-Din, a saint of Asir, p. 175.

Sayyid Jiu, p. 402. Abdur-Rahman, an Imam of Ahmadabad, son of Burhanuddin Qutb-i-'Alam, orders Sher Khan to make peace (980 H), p. 444. Begs Ulugh Khan to spare Asawal till the women and girls have been removed, (980 H), pp. 449, 494.

Sayyid Mirān, son of Sayyid Mubārak Bukhari pp. 318, 320, 346. With Chingiz Khān after his victory in (974 H), pp. 408, 421.

Sayyid Mubārak Bukhāri (al-Majlis al-Ashraf) one of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), with Bahādur (942 H), pp. 201, 218, 220. Marches against Idar, (956 H), p. 246. After murder of Mahmud III, pp. 257, 312, 321. The Sultān joins him

(962 H), p. 330. Causes Ahmad II to take Imad ul-Mulk as his Prime Minister (963 H), p. 332. Having gone blind, is led into battle by his groom, who is killed. His horse carried him aimlessly about until he too is killed, p. 347.

Sayyid Muhammad Al-Ḥakim, famous doctor in Makka, invited to experiment on "QAT," but excuses himself, see Asaf Khan.

Sayyid Muhammad Bāqir Husayn, in Humāyun's suite, dies at Uchch (947 H), p. 829.

Sayyid Muhammad Bukhāri, with Darya Khān in Chāmpaner, p. 269. A travelling companion of Āsaf Khān in Makka, emissary, between Āsaf Khān and the Lord of Makka, pp. 455, 456. Serving under 'Aziz Koka in (980 H), p. 489. Killed in (961 H), p. 489.

Sayyid Muhammad Jaunpuri, "the Mahdi, "claiming to be the Promised Mahdi, arrived in Ahmadābād and found many adherents, p. 31. Interviewed by Mahmud I. Murdered near Qandahār in (910 H), p. 33.

Sayyid Usmān, great grand-father of translator of Ibn Khallikān, disciple of Burhan-uddin Qutb-i-'Ālam, the saint and founder of Usmānpur between the fort of Ahmadābad and the river Sābarmati, died in (863 H), p. 29.

Sayyid Qutb ud-Din Shaykh ul-Islām in Delhi, p.

Sayyid Rāji, son of Ḥāmid, son of Mubārak Bukhāri, p. 77.

Sayyid Muhammad Yusuf Khan, p. 160. Sha'ban Chalabi, killed by Jhujhar Khan, p. 416. Shadi, son-in-law of Tughluq Shah, vasir and dadbeg, p. 711.

Shādiābād, royal residence in Māndu, p. 168. Hospital built there and richly endowed by Mahmud Khalji (847 H), p. 172.

Shādi Beg, converted Mongol, made amir and sent under Ulugh Beg to invade Gujarāt in (696 H), p. 647.

Shādi Katth, chief of the body-guard sent to Jhain to murder Khizr Khān and his two brothers (718 H), p. 696.

Shādi Khān, son of 'Alāuddin Khalji, p. 692. Brother of Qutbuddin, p. 696.

Shādi Khān, son of Firuz Shāh, p. 744. Shādi Khān Purbiya, p. 95.

Shādipur, see Shāhpur.

Shādmān, a fort, pp. 773, 779.

Shādyākh, pp. 545, 547.

Shāf'i, doctrine discussed, see Asaf Khān.

Shāh Abdul-Muttalib, son of Shāh Budāgh Khān of Māndu, pp. 62, 493. Shāh Abu Turāb, see Abu Turāb Shāh Shāh 'Ālam, a saint of Gujarāt, p. 13.

Shāham Khān Jalāir, dies in Burhānpur, p. 822. Father of Timur Jalāir, p. 846.

Shāh Bāri, p. 444.

Shāh Bāz Khān Rumi, officer of Chingiz Khān, p. 412.

Shah Beg Arghun, son of Amir Zunnun in Qandahar, pp. 778, 779.

Shāh Beg Khān Mirzā, one of the Mirzas, remains with Chingiz Khān, pp. 410, 425. Brother of Muhammad Husayn Mirzā, pp. 490, 494, 779.

Shah Begum, mother of Babur, p. 779. Shah Budagh Khan, pp. 63, 402.

Shah Danyal, son of Akbar in Khandesh, also called Sabal Shah, p. 74. Succeeds to the provinces held by Shah Murad, p. 160.

Shah Haydar, son of Shah Tahir of Ahmadnagar, succeeds Qazi Beg, p. 154. Becomes Vazir to Murtuza Nizam Shah, but is dismissed on account of too great estentation and "trumpet-blowing," p. 244.

Shāh Husayn Bābegi, Amir, made governor of Khushāli, p. 779. With Humāyun against Rānā Sāngā p. 783. General of Bābur, p. 785.

Shah Isma'il Safawi, Humayun quotes anecdote of devotion shown to this king, by way of reproaching his cowardly followers, p. 867.

Shāh-i-Turkān, mother of Rukmuddin Firuz, p. 576.

Shah Jiu ibn Siddiq, Shahnat-ud-Divan, p. 126.

Shāh Mansur, a saint of Burhanpur, p. 134.

Shah Mansur Birlas Amir, pp. 781. 783, 785.

Shah Mir Husayn, made amir in Jaunpur by Humayun, p.:784.

Shāh Muhammad Khān, in service of 'Aziz Koka, p. 489.

Shah Murad Pahari son of Akbar, p. 74. Sets out in (1004) for Ahmadnagar, p. 152. Dies of illness in (1006 H) according to others in (1007 H), p. 160.

Shāh Quli Muharram, ordered to fetch Ulugh Khān's army, p. 457.

Shāh Quli Salābat Khān, p. 63. Vazir to Murtuzā, p. 154.

Shab Quli Sultan, p. 841.

Shāh Razuri, Abu Muhammad Abdullāh b. al-Qāsim (b. 465-d. 521), p. 161.

Shahr-i-Bidar, pp. 141, 142, 144, 147.
The town of Bidar was evidently always referred to in our Author's time as "Shahr-i-Bidar."

Shahriyar, title conferred on Husamud-Din, brother of Yar 'Ali, p. 53. Murdered by 'Ādil Khān III, p. 54. Shah Rukh, the Persian with Ulugh Khān, p. 442.

Shāh Rukh Beg Afshar, general sent by Shāh Ismā'il to help Bābur, p. 773.

Shāh Shamsuddin, a saint of Saurashtra, p. 105.

Shah Shaykh Jiu, son of Qutb-i-'Alam who had prophesied that Bahadur would become the king, pp 118, 125.

Shāh Tāhir, Vazir to Nizām-ul-Mulk, Baḥu, makes favourable impression on Bahādur, p. 135.

Shāhu, uncle of Sultān Ahmad II, pp. 317, 318, 321. Claimant to Gujarat throne, p. 337.

Shāhu, the Afghān, rebels in Multān and kills the governor, Bahzād, p. 718.

Shāhu Kala, in service of Muhammad Shāh of Asir, p. 408.

Shakar Talāj, name of a large tank in Chāmpāner, p. 2.

Shākhdān, between Kishm and Qila' Zifar, Humāyun taken ill there, p. 852.

Shamshir Khān, son of Marjān Shamshir Khān in service of Jhujhār Marjān, claimed descent from 'Umar ibn al-Khatrāb, p. 472.

Shamshir Khān Habashi, chief under Nizāmshāhis, p. 157.

Shamshir ul-Mulk, Amir of 'Alauddin Bahmani, p. 145.

Shamshir ul-Mulk Nuliya Khān, sent to Ajmir, pp 194, 201. One of Bahadur's nobles in (941 H), p. 218. Brother of Muḥāfiz Khān pp. 268, 313.

Shamshir ul-Mulk Shādi I'timād Khāni pp. 389, 391. In service of I'timād Khān, p. 444. Shamshir ul-Mulk Sultāni, Governor from Diu to Junāgadh, p. 247.

Shams Khan b. Firuz Khan b. Shams Khan, pp. 10, 11. Married daughter of Qutbuddin Ahmad. Suspected of king's murder by poisoning (862 H), p 13.

Shams Khān, son of Fard Khān with Āsaf Khān in Makka, killed (967 H), his body carried in a pālki to Godhra, p. 363.

Shams ud-Din II son of Sultān us-Salātin, King of Bengal, p. 815.

Shams ud-Din 'Ati Sultān, receives Humāyun in Nishāpur (951 H), p. 842.

Shamsud-Din Dāmghāni, revenue collector in Gujarāt, is killed by the local amirs on account of his extortions, p. 746.

Shams ud-Din Fazlullāh b. Şadruddin b. Bahāuddin Zakariyā, Qutbe-Multāni, p. 687.

Shams ud-Din Ilyās Ḥājji Bhanghara, p. 745. King of Lakhnawati, p. 811. Attacks Tirhut and moves to Pandwa and then to Ikdāla, p. 812. Dies (955), p. 815.

Shams ud-Din Lāri Khwāja, treasurer to Mahmud III, p. 264.

Shams ud-Din Muhammad, of Bāmiyān, receives title of Sultān, p. 544.

Shams ud-Din Muhammad Hamid ul-Mulk, father of Āsaf Khān, arrives in Patan and interviews Kamāluddin grand father of Author, p. 511.

Shams ud-Din Muhammad Mir Ghaznawi Abka Khān, saves Humāyun from drowning at Qnawj, pp. 828, 833, 845. Brings the child Akbar to Kāmrān in Kabul, (953 H), p. 853. Shamaud-Din: Turk, p. 546. A muhaddis who came from Egypt to India in (700 H), p. 687.

Sharaf ud-Din Mirzā, p. 403. Misbehaves at a party, pp. 407, 425. Obtains Baroda, p. 427. Descendant of Khwāja Aḥrar, the Naqshbandi, p. 430. Occupies Cambay, driven out by al-Khariji, p. 434.

Sharaf ud-Din Pānipati Shaykh, p. 742.

Sharaf ul-Mulk, al-Ash'ari, p. 584.

Sharaf ul-Mulk Badajiu, p. 408.

Sharaf ul-Mulk Sayyid, Nāib Wakil to Firuz Shāh, p. 744.

Sharaful-Mulk Sultāni, officer of Mahmud I, p. 14.

Sharaf ul-Mulk, envoy from Mustansir Billāh, p. 175. Here called a Khalji hājib, p. 176.

Sharza Khan, pp. 328, 378.

Sharza Khan, pp. 403, 422. Killed at Jambusar, p. 420.

Sharzat ul-Mulk, p. 265.

Shayasta Khān, Şahib-i-Diwān-i-'Arz sent to overtake the Fakhruddin Juna, p. 702. See also Qara Qamar.

Shaykh Aban, a saint of Ahmadābād, p. 524.

Shaykh 'Abdullāh and Shaykh Kamāl of Mālwa, their tombs visited by Muzaffar II in Dhār, p. 92.

Shaykh Abu Abdullah Wajih ud-Din 'Alawi, p. 210.

Shaykh Abu Bakr Tusi al-Bakri, p. 630. Shaykh Abul Hasan Muhammad al-Bakri, see Abul Hasan.

Shaykh Ahmad, b. Muhammad al Jabarti, p. 40.

Shaykhā Khokhar, marches from India into Persia and joins Amir Timur (801 H) and persuades him to conquer Delhi, p. 752. Returns from Samarquad to India (824 H), p. 750.

Shaykh 'Alā ud-Din, grandson of Shaykh Farid ud-Din Ganj Shakar, p. 742.

Shaykh 'Alā ud-Din, at court of 'Alāuddin Khalji, p. 675.

Shaykh 'Ali, Lord of Kabul, p. 762.

Shaykh Aliahdad Jaunpuri, goes with Ulugh Khan to Dholka, p. 455.

Shaykh Bahlul, a boon companion to Humāyun, p. 822.

Shaykh Bashir Divāna, moralises on the downfall of the Khaljis, p. 701.

Shaykh Farid, Author's uncle, p. 510. Died in (974), p. 510.

Shaykh Farid ud-Din Ganj Shakar, a saint, pp. 50, 627.

Shaykh Hāmid b. 'Abdullāh as-Sindi, p. 525.

Shaykh 'Isā of Surat, p. 470.

Shaykh Islim (Islām) Bukhāri, brother of Sādāt Khān, pp. 333, 344, 346.

Shaykh Jalal ud-Din Dawwani, see Asaf Khan

Shaykh Jamal ud-Din Muhammad Hushayri, pp. 187, 489.

Shaykh Jiu Burhān ud-Din Qutb-i-'Alam, p. 32.

Shaykh Kamāl of Mālwa, a saint (855 H), pp. 6, 175. Imām to Mahmud III, his orders to wake him at prayer time, even by pouring water over him, if necessary, p. 252.

Shaykh Kamal Muhammad (969 H), p. 389.

Shaykh Khuran, general of Babur, p. 785.

Shaykh Man, pp. 318, 402.

Shaykh Māh Mawlānā Nizām ud-Din Baha ud-Din Sufi, resident in Māhpur. Author hears story of Sher Shāh and Salim Shāh from a relative of this Shaykh, Miyā Abdor-Razziq, p. 838.

Shaykh Malik b. Fakhruddin, a Gujarlt noble, p. 746.

Shaykh Muhammad Anis 'Arab Khān al-Yafai', pp. 90, 158.

Shaykh Muhammed Ghaznawi, pp. 489, 494.

Shaykh Muhammed Shāmi, p. 580.

Shaykh Najm ud-Din Al-Kubrā, how he met the Tātār invasion in Khwārzm in (618 H) and died a martyr's death. His cloak is presented to Mahmud Khalji, p. 176.

Shaykh Nāsir ud-Din, at court of 'Alāuddin Khalji p. 675.

Shaykh Rashid, in reign of Muzastar III, preaches the claims of Sayyid Muhammad Jaunpuri to be Mahdi in Nabarwāla Patan, p. 32. He and his son Mustutā killed by Sanjar Khān, p. 33.

Shaykh Rukn ud-Din, p. 675.

Shaykh Sa'id Habashi, biography, died in (984) description of his tomb in Ahmdābād, pp. 521, 525.

Shaykhsa'id Rumi-Khāni, temporarily a soldier returns to religious life, p. 353.

Shaykh Sa'id Sultāni, p. 470.

Shaykh Yusuf of Māndu, see A'zam-i-Humāyun.

Shaykh Ujiu, name of Salim, son of Akbar, p. 491.

Shihab Ahmad Az-Zubaydi, "Nākhudā" p. 400.

Shihāb Khān, Lord of Mewat, p. 754.

Shihāb Sultāni, sent by Mubammad Tughluq against Bidar, receives title of Nusrat Khān p. 71b. Revolts in Bidar, p. 719.

Shihābud-Din, son of Mahmud I, a supposed candidate for the throne, p.

Shihābud-Din, son of 'Alāuddin Khalji, at age of six years succeeds to throne (711 for 716 H). His mother daughter of Rām Deo of Deogir, p. 691. Being deposed in favour of his brother is sent to Gwalior, p. 693. Is murdered by his brother Qutb-uddin's orders, p. 696.

Shir Khān Fulādi, son of 'Ayu ul-Mulk Fulādi, in Bengal, p. 214. Received 'Alam Khān and Daryā Khān, consults them regarding conquest of Gujarat, p. 231. His designs on Gujarāt, pp. 241, 312, 319, 339, 344. Brother of Musā Khān, 'pp. 385, 394. Succeeds his brother, makes peace with Chingiz Khān

Shihābud-din, son of Nāaîruddin Khalji, rebels against his father in (916 H), p. 181. Imprisoned by uncle 'Alauddin Khalji, p. 181.

Shihābud-Din, Governor of Chanderi, p. 170.

Shihāb ud-Din Ahmad, the Mughal Vazir, p. 158.

Shihāb ud-Din Ahmad ibn Hajar al-Haysami, pp. 276, 522.

Shihāb ud-Din Ghuri, p. 405.

Shihab ud-Din Muhammad Ghuri, son of Bahāud-Din Sām, p. 535. Chief of his brother's body-guard, the commander-in-Chief, p. 54t.

Shihab ud-Din Shaykh Ahmad, saint of Surkhej (739-849 H), pp. 1, 232.

Shir Afghan, son of Quch Beg, p. 785. Shirgah, name of polo-ground in Ahmadabad, p. 412. A huntingground near Delhi, p. 680.

Shirin Qalam Khwāja Abdus-Samad, the famous calligrapher meets Humāyun, p. 844.

Shir Khān, son of I'timād Khān, child vazir to the child Sultān Ahmad (961 H), pp.

Shir Khān, title conferred on Malik Muhammad Buli (materna) uncle of Sultan Qutbuddin), p. 694.

Shir Khān Nvāzi, an Afgbān Khāriji, p. 422. Defeated, flees to Dholka, where he is killed by one of his Baluchi servants, pp. 423, 431.

Fuladi, in Bengal, p. 214. Received 'Alam Khan and Darva Khan. consults them regarding conquest of Gujarat, p. 231. His designs on Gujarāt, pp. 241, 312, 319, 339, 344. Brother of Musa Khan, pp. 385, 304. Succeeds his brother, makes peace with Chingiz Khan (970 H), pp. 396, 407, 418. Obtains from river Sambar (Sabar) to Nagor and borders of Junagadh, p. 421. Is given Bahvol, p. 434. Begs Ulugh Khān to drive out the Mughals (979 H), according to the treaty of (975 H), p. 440. Makes peace with I'timad Khan without consulting Ulugh Khān, p. 444. Gives on account of his and his brother Musa's early days in Ahmadābād in the reign of Mahmud and suggests reasons for making peace ( 980 H ), p. 448. With Muzaffar III, p. 454 Goes to Dholka, p. 455. Returns to Junagadh after his son's defeat in (980 H), p. 489.

Shir Shāh, the Afghān, a boon companion of I'timād, who had been with Salim Shāh and had come to Gujarāt with Hāji Khān, pp. 379, 396.

Shir Shāh Farid, son of Hasan Afghān Sur, bor in Baldruh, with name of Shaykh Farid, brought to Delhi by his father in time of Bahlul Ludi; Takes name of Shir Khān. Captures Chunār, p. 219. Moves to Bengal while Humāyun is in Gujarāt (942 H), p. 789. Quarrels with his father and leaves him, p. 790. On death of Daryā Khān Nubāni is chosen by nobles of Bengal to succeed him. Goes as envoy to Bābur: description

of his behaviour at table. Humayun has him turned out and Shir Khan determines to be revenged, p. 791. After leaving his father enters service of Taj Khan Ludi; next in service of Oasim Husavn Uzbek of Oudh; next in that of Sultan Junayd Birlas. Humayun is rude to him and he leaves the company and rejoins his father. After his father's death, he takes to highway brigandage in Juna (Rohtas district) and becomes notorious. Bahādur Shāh appeals to him for help and his subsequent movements in Bengal are the cause of Humayun's sudden withdrawal from before Diu. He takes Bihar, Banaras and Patna, D. 792. In service of Nasib Shah of Bengal, p. 818. Asks Ray Champa to admit him to Rohtas fort; permission being granted, he brings with him 600 litters each containing a fully armed man (945 H), p. 820. Captures Banāras (945 H) and besieges Jaunpur, p. 812. After victory of Chausa captures Jaunpur, sends Hamāyun's ladies to Agra, p. 823. After victory of Qanawi enters Delhi, receives messages trom Kāmrān Mirzā, his policy to create split among the brothers, p. 828. Reaches Lahore, marches into Gakkar country. fortifies Banāras and returns to Agra. Now changes his name from Shir Khan to Shir Shah. Marches against. Gwalior and Chanderi p. 833. Captures Chitor and Ranthambhor, is wounded during siege of Kälingar, and dies (953 H), Sic According to our Author but correct date is (052 H), below the date is given as (951 H), p. 834.

Shiru Jiu Malek, p. 402.

Shiru Luhra Al-Malık, secretary to Malik ush-Sharq, pp. 360, 368, 369.

Shirwan Khan Bhatti, p. 257.

Shirwan Khan Habashi, great (friend of Author's, Amir to Bijli Khan, died. (981 H), peculiar domestic arrangements. His character and tastes, p. 496.

Shirwan Khan Marjan, pp. 334, 335, 316, 374, 401, 403. Joined by Bijli Khan's retainers after murder of latter in (979 H), goes to Ulugh Khan, who makes him amir, p. 437. Receives a sword from Akbar's own hands; sent with Ulugh Khan's letter to his troops along with Shah Quli Muharram, p. 458.

Shuja'at Khān Afghān, see Sajawul Khān,

Shujā' Khān Manas (Amin Nās) accompanies Bahādur on his visit to the Portuguese captain p. 215.

Shuja' ud-Din Muhammad Amin Khān b. Ayāz Khān b. Jhujhār Khān Habashi, p. 789.

Shujā' ul-Mulk, brother of 'Ālam Khān, commander-in-chief to Mahmud III, p. 271.

Sigām, name of an estate, p. 158.

Sikandar, the seventh son of Muzaffar II, p. 115. Succeeds Muzaffar II on day of his father's death, p. 117. Three days after his accession goes to Chāmpaner, on his way visits tomb of Burhān ud-Din Qutb 'Ālam. Conters the estates and titles of tried men on worthless juniors, p. 118.

Sikandar, son of Bahlol Ludi, captures Jaunpur dies (923 H), p. 121. A saying attributed to him, p. 199. Short-resume of his exploits. Anecdotes reported by the Author, p. 768.

Sikandar, son of Shamsuddin Ilyas, succeeds his father (756 H), p. 815.

Dies (768 H), p. 815.

Sikandar, son of Tuhia, succeeds his father as Vazir (824 H), p. 759. Succeeds Malik ush-Shard as Amir of Lähore (826 H), p. 760. Lord of Lähore, taken prisoner by Jasrath, p. 762

Sikandar-i-Sāni or the second Alexander, title assumed by 'Alāuddin Khalji on his coins, p. 653.

Sikandar Khān, Governor of Siwas, p. 166. Accompanies Bahādur on his visit to the Portuguese captain (943 H), p. 215.

Sikandar Khān Atābek, uncle: of Muhammad Shāh Karim, pp. 9, 148. Sikandar Shāh, Lord of Kashmir, sends envoy to Tamerlane, p. 754.

Sikandar Shāh II rules over Bengal 14 days, p. 816.

Sikandar Sur, see Ahmad Khan Sur.

Silhadi Purbiya (corruption of Salāhuddin), pp. 103, 166, 186, 191. Surrenders and embraces Islām, p. 192. Perishes fighting (938 H), p. 193. Lord of Rāisin and Sarangpur, allied with Rānā Sāngā against Bābur, p. 784.

Sinān ud-Din Habash, Governor of Sind, p. 574.

Sind, history of, pp. 122-125.

Sipahsālār Rajab, father of Firuz Shāh, one of three brothers who came to 'Alāuddin Khalji from Khurāson, p. 742.

Sire, containing temple of Jagannath, p. 139.

Sirāj ud-Din Omar ('Umar) b. Zayd al-Daw'āni, father-in-law of 'Afifuddin, p. 107.

Sirāj ud-Din 'Umar an-Naharwāli, iather of Author. Major domo to Asaf Khān, p. 207. Left in charge of Makka by Asai Khan p. 242. Wakil to Asaf Khan, son of Kamaluddin Muhammad b. Fariduddin Muhammad b. 'Umar b. Ishaq b. Muhammad b. Hasan b. Qasim an-Naharwāli; dies in Ahmadābād (11th Jumāda I. 983), His biography extends from p. 505 to p. 527. Throughout these pages "Sahib ut-Tarjuma" means Sirajud-Din, p. 505. Makes first acquaintance with 'Abdul 'Aziz ( Āsaf Khān), his life-long friend, p. 511. Left in Makka when Asaf Kban returns in (of: H), he and Shams Khūn, son of Āsaf go to Gujarāt, p. 515. Resided in Ahmadabad from (962) to (982 H) or (983), where he devoted himself to religious practices and preparation for the next world, p. 517.

Sirāj ud-Din Sāwi, a poet, composed a satire on Jalāluddin Firuz when Governor of Sāmāna called the Khalji Nama, p. 711.

Sirā Māli, Vazir to Muhammad Tughluq, p. 726.

Siri, plain of, p. 642. Occupied by 'Alauddin while Targhi was investing Delhi, p. 670. The capital of the 'Alais founded by 'Alauddin Khalji, pp. 706, 763.

Sirohi, pp 11, 12. Ravaged by 'Imad ul-Mulk, (957 H), pp. 247, 268, 276.

Sitt ul-Kull, wife of Asaf Khan, see Asaf Khan.

Sitwadās Rāi, p. 173.

Siyasat Khān, p. 219.

Socotra, p. 400.

Sohrāb, see 'Alāul-Mulk Ulugh Khān Sohrāb Sultāni.

Somnāth, its idol destroyed by Mahmud Ghaznawi, pp. 646, 650. Sonar Ganw, p. 714. Becomes independent of Delhi (715 H), pp. 716, 806, 812. During reign of Sikandar b. Hyas passes into the hands of Zafar Khan, son of Wajih ul-Mulk of Gujarat, p. 815.

Songira, elephant with Ulugh Khan, p. 442.

Songira (Songhad), p. 21. Fief of Fulad Khan, pp. 59, 75, 400, 745.

Subhani, name of horse of Chingiz Khān, p. 378.

Suda, a people on Rann of Cutch, p. 21. Sudhan Räi, p. 745.

Sudra, river in Punjab, p. 585.

Subayli, p. 793.

Subsyl Khān Tawāshi Nizāmshāhi, p. 72. Amir carried wounded from battle field in (1604 H), p. 159.

Suhrawardi Shihabud-Din 'Umar, p. 710.

Sujantara (Sojitra), village of Ulugh Khan p. 444.

Sukyabād, name given by Mahmud III to a quarter in Mahmudābād which he selected and built over for his head-quarters (956 H), p. 245.

Sulaymāni, Sultān, p. 261. His interview with Āsaí Khān.

Sulayman Mitza p. 781. General of Babur, p. 785. Appointed to Badakhshan, p. 787. Revolts against Humayun, p. 851.

Sulayman Pāshā, arrives off Diu in (945 H), p. 226. Sails away suddenly, leaving certain of his officers behind, p. 226. Arrives in Makka (944 H) Returning from Diu in (945 H) finds Āsaf Khān in Makka, Orders the Amir of Jiddah to hinder the journey of Bahādur's harim to India; On his return to Egypt announces that he is preparing a second expedition against

Diu, is reproved by Sulayman I, see Asaf Khan.

Sulayman Sultan Begum, married to-Bayram Khan, p. 889.

Sultān 'Ālamludi, governor of Kālpi, joins Bahādur at Chitor (941 H). p. 196. Left in charg of Songadh by Bahādur, p. 198. Surrenders to Humāyun and is put to death, p. 199. According to our Author is hamstrung, p. 207.

Sultān ul-Haramayn, title of Sulaymān I, p. 514.

Sultān us-Salātin, son of Ghiyas, son of Sikandar, King of Bengal, p. 815.

Sultān Begum, sister of Humāyun, wife of Muhammad Zamān, p. 223.

Sultān Darwish, a qalandar favoured by Mughisuddin Tughril, p. 808.

Sultān Muhammad Duldi, p. 783.

Sultānpur, so called after Muhammad Shāh pp. 2, 4, 16. With Nandurbār added to Gujarāt in reign of Ahmad II, pp. 57, 314, 318, 337, 3 14.

Sultanpur, name given to Warangal by Muhammad Tughluq Shah, p. 713.

Sumras, a people on the Rann of Cutch, p. 21. Governed Sind for 500 years, pp. 122, 734.

Sunj Malik, Governor of Sāmāna, p. 805.

Surat, p. 11. Recovered by Gujaratis in (942 H), pp. 219, 318. Meeting-place of foreigners, description of its trade, p. 352. Description of, p. 353. Governor of town under Akbar, Muhammad Qilij Khān p. 470. Captured by Akbar after siege lasting three months, p. 471.

Suray, Vazir to Rānā Patāi, p. 26.

Suwar ul-Mulk, in service of Mu'izzuddin becomes regent to Muhammad Khizr Khān (839 H), p. 763. T

- Tabagāt-i-Babādur Shābi, see Tabagāti-Huzām Khāni.
- Tabaqāt-i-Firuzshāhi, of Ziyāuddin Barani, this history ends with the capture of Ikdāla by Firuz Shāh (752 H), remainder of reign taken by our Author from Husām ud-Din, P. 745.
- Tabaqāt-i-Husām Khāni by Husāmuddin Khān. First quotation from this book p. 5. Used as an authority after (658 H), p. 595. Quoted for capture of Delhi by Bābur, p. 777.
- Tabaqāt-i-Nāşiri by Juzjāni, p. 530. Utilized by our Author down to year (668 H) for reign of Nāsiruddin Mahmud, p. 595.
- Tabarāni, Abul-Qāsim Sulaymān b. Muhammad, Author of Al-Mu'jani al-Awsat, p. 519.
- Tabar Hind, captured by Mu'izzuddin, pp. 556, 571, 761.
- Tafā ul Khān Barari, (Tufāl Khān) Vazir of Barar, pp. 58, 60, 157, 320, 400.
- Tāghi Khān, leads a revolt in Broach, p. 142. Attacks Dibalpur and Ajudhan, p. 755.
- Tāghi Turki, rebels in Gujarāt, pp. 731, 732.
- Tahmäsp Shäh, description of his reception of Humäyun near Abhari-Sultaniya, p. 842.
- Tāj Khān, son of Muzaffar II, left with Mahmud Khalji, p. 97. Brother of Bahādur, takes asylum in Māndu with Mahmud II Khalji who refuses to give him up, p. 127. See also Chānd Khān.
- Tāj Khān, son of Silhadi, p. 193.
- Tāj Khān, brother of Mahmud Shāh II of Aur (?) p. 431.

- Taj Khan Al-A'sam 'Aland-Din, in charge of the siege of Danir (846) H), pp. 171, 173. Son of Mahmud Khalji, p. 177, Brother of Ghiya-suddin receives title of 'Alauddin, p. 178.
- Tāj Khān Narpāli, p. 109. A partisan of Bahādur (932 H), p. 118. Retires from service, pp. 127, 204. One of Bahādur's nobles in (941 H), p. 218.
- Tājud-Din, Asaf Khān's ancestor, flees from Sind and enters service of Ghiyāsuddin Khalji in Māndu, see Asaf Khān,
- Tāj ud-Din, son of 'Ālāuddin, p. 140. Dabir, appointed to office in Deogir in (718 H), p. 698.
- Tājud-Din 'Abdul-Wahhāb b. Yāqub al-Maliki emissary between Āsaf Khān and the Lord of Makka, his cousin Sitt ul-Kull married to Āsaf Khān died in (960 H), see Asaf Khān.
- Tājud-Din 'Ali Musawi, Chief Justice in Delhi, p. 580.
- Tājud-Din Ja'far, Governor of Gujarāt (721 H), p. 712.
- Tajud-Din Kuchi, boasts in his cup that he will kill Jalal ud-din Firuz, p. 124. Goes over to side of 'Alauddin Khalji, p. 641.
- Tājud-Din Malik, Lord of Multan, p.
- Tājud-Din Sanjar Māh Pishāni Siwistāni, Governor of Oudh, p. 591.
- Tājud-Din Sanjar Qutlugh in Badāun, p. 583.
- Tardi Beg Khān, is made governor of Chāmpāner (942 H), p. 214. Seeing all is lost, retires to Agra, p. 226. Flees from Māndu, p. 221. Present at Pānipat, p. 781. Brother of Quch Beg, General of Babur p. 785. Present at Bābur's death, p.

pp. 838, 833. Drives Alghans out of Delhi (963 H) but is driven out

Tardi 'Mughali, at battle of Kili (697 H), p. 657. Lays siege to Delhi while 'Aläuddin is before Chitor (703 H), p. 670. Suddenly abandons investment of Delhi and returns to Samargant, p. 671.

Tarikh-i-'Ajam, a history composed in Akbar's reign, pp. 142, 145. Possibly Burhān-i-Maāsir.

Tātār Khān in Gwalior, p. 777-Governor of Gwalior, submits to Bābur, p. 783.

Tātār Khān, son of Sārang Khān Firuzi, p. 756.

Tütär Khan Bahadur, p. 744.

Tātār Khān Ghuri, brother of Tātār ul-Mulk Ghuri, pp. 227, 243. Promoted, pp. 244, 312, 313, 320, 331. Desests I'timād, pp. 344, 348, 357, 379, 385. With 'Ālam Khān and Sher Khān Fulādi forms a plot against I'timād Khān, p. 388. Retires to Junāgadh and dies there in (970), pp. 389, 396.

Tātār Khāniyya, a work on Sufism, p. 711.

Tötär Khān Kāsi, sent to Rohtas to defend Punjab against Humāyun, p. 839. In command of Rohtas, flees on hearing of Humāyun's approach, p. 890.

Tātār Khān Ludi, pp. 193, 195. Son of 'Alāuddin, son of Bahlul Ludi, arrives at Bahādurs' court and asks him for help to regain Delhi, p. 196. Became acquainted with Bahādur in Delhi, captures Bayāna, p. 202. One of Bahādur's nobles, p. 218. Joins Sultān Bahādur in Gujarāt, p. 788.

Tatar ul-Mulk Ghuri, Vazir to Mujahid. Khan, p. 227. His three brothers, p. 243. Promoted, pp. 244, 271.

Tayyib ul-Mulk, hājib to Ulugh Khān Muhammad, pp. 391, 423.

Tegin Malek, Amir of Oudh, p. 712.

Telingana, p. 60. Independent of Delhi from 743 to 1008 H, pp. 141, 678, 713. Taken from Muhammad b. Tughluq by 'Kita Na'ık, henceforth independent of Delhi, p. 718.

Thålner, on the Täpti, former capital of the Khäns of Asir, pp. 16, 52, 400, 408.

Tighnumā Khān, son of 'Ali Khān Baranahar of Māndu, pp. 333, 346.

Timur Khān, son of Arsalān Khān Shamsi, sends 60 halqas of elephants from Lakhnawati to Delhi, p. 600,

Timur Nāma of Hatifi, written by Sultān 'Ali and illustrated by Behzād found among books left behind in Cambay by Humāyun, p. 208.

Todarmal, Lord of Raisin and Chanderi, p. 833.

Toghai, eye-witness of the capture of Mandu (924 H), p. 98.

Tufāl Khān, see Tafāul Khān.

Tughān, son of Malik Ayāz, p. 705. Succeeds Ishāq in Diu, a prodigy of stature and strength, p. 134. Receives Mustafā in Diu and reports his arrival to Bahādur (938 H), p. 188. After losing his post in Diu retires to Chāmpāner where he could hardly contain himself whenever he saw Rumi Khān, who finally induces Bahādur to put him to dealh, p. 189.

Tughan Sultani, see under Farhat ul-Mulk.

Tughan Amir, p. 759.

Tughluqabad, p. 709. Founded by Tughluq Shah, becomes capital, p. 713,

Tughing Khan, brother of Ikat Khan, p. 562.

Tughled Khān Ibn Jiu, pp. 314, 319, 321, 322. Adventure with a lion, p. 323. Vivid description of his murder in (962 H), p. 324. His son appointed to the rank and titled of I'timād Khān, pp. 325, 328. Murdered by order of I'timād Khān, p. 333.

Tughān Shāh II, son of Fath Khān, son of Firuz Khān, ascends throne of Delhi (790 H), p. 745. Is beheaded (791 H) after reign of six months and 18 days, p. 749.

Tughān Shāh Ghiyāsuddin, Ascends throne at Siri (721 H), p. 706. Killed by falling roof, p. 714. See Malik Ghāzi.

Tughān Turki Balbani; Governor of Lakhnawati, p. 602.

Tuhíat us-Sādāt, a lost history of Ārām Kashmiri dedicated to Sayyid Mubārak Bukhāri, who died (966 H), pp. 163, 166. Quoted, pp. 186, 264, 275. This important work was extensively used by author of Mirāt-i-Sikandari, but is only once referred to him by name.

Tuhfat uz-Zamān or Futuh ul-Habasha, p. 468. Quotation from, pp. 478-486.

Tukhāristān, p. 539.

Tuluk Khān, son of Qalig Khān, p.

Tuluk, the Qazi of, p. 557.

Turbate ul-'Arab, a burial-ground in Abmadabad near the Royal Palace, p. 524.

Turkestän, p. 549.

Turk Khān Āqā Bardi Turki, a slave of Mu'in Khān Multāni, p. 248.
Turks in the Ghuri army, p. 537.

Tutināma of Nakhshabi, p. zor.

Umayd Ahmadyar, p. 726. Ubayd Khan Rumi, p. 375.

Market also that the season of the season

Ubsyduliah Khau Uzbeg, pp. 773, 779. Uchcha, p. 571. Visited by Tughiuq Shah, p. 742.

Udai Singh, King of Bakar (Wagadh), pp. 103, 108. Attacks Nizam Shah Bahmani, 147, 457. Killed in qattle against Bābur, p. 777. Allied with Rānā Sāngā against Babur, p. 784.

Uhudi Malik ul-Wuzarë, p. 712. Ulughji Malik, son of Malik Targhi, p. 622.

Ulugh Khān, with Muzaffar II, p. 93. Ulugh Khān, in service of Bahādur, p. 192.

Ulugh Khān, son of Shaykh Katri of Māndu accompanies Bahādur on his visit to the Portuguese Captain, p. 215.

Ulugh Khan, son of Tughluq Shah Nasir sent against Urankal, p. 712. Sent to Lakhnawati, p. 713.

Ulugh Khān, son of Yaghrish Khān, p. 622.

Ulugh Khan, title conferred on Balban, p. 584.

Ulugh Khān, title conferred on Almās Beg, p. 644. Appointed to Gujarāt, p. 649. Sent against Ranthambhor, p. 659. Sent irom Rathambhor to punish rebels in Delhi, p. 665. Son of Nasiruddin Khalji, poisoned on his way from Ranthambhor to Delhi, p. 670.

Ulugh Khan 'Alaud-din Sohrab Sultani deserts to Mahmud Khalji, p. 4. Receives title of 'Alauddin after rejoining Qutbuddin Ahmad, p. 5.

Ulugh Khān Bahā ul-Mulk, son of Sohrāb kills a standard-bearer of Mahmuda. Takes refuge with Imād ul-Mulk Hājji and Aznd ul-Mulk Kilu who accure two others of the murder, p. 17. See Bahäuddin Ulugh Khān.

Ulugh Khān Dutāni al-Aighān, p. 268. Ulugh Khān Mandal, title of Mandal Habashi, p. 243. Rās un-Nauba, pp. 312, 313, 317, 336. Killed in battle of Kapadwanj, p. 337.

Ulugh Khān Muhammad Khayrat Khān, son of Yāgut Ulugh Khān, the patron of our Author, p. 256. Friend of Darya Khan, pp. 265. 321. Succeeds his father as Ulugh Khan (965 H), pp. 345, 346. Leaves 'Imad and joins l'timad, p. 350. Joins I'timad (966 H) and becomes his commander-in-chief, he receives Baroda and Champaner, pp. 351, 357. Meets Author who enters his service (966 H), p. 358. Sets out after the battle of Baroda to encounter Jan Ahmad, p. 365. Secures the same devotion as his father from the Habashis, p. 364. Collects round him the following chiefson (10th Rabi 11 967); lujhār Khān; Marjan Shāmi; Ma'mur Khān; Makan Sharza Khān; Sa'id Afsah Khān; Rayban Mahaldar Khān; Khizr Bijli Khān; Marjan Shirwan Khan; Jawhar Muhsin ul-Mulk; Sa'd 'Ali Khan; Yaout Bahrul-Mulk; Muflih Nur Khan, p. Consuits astrologer (15th Rabi' 11 967), p. 374. Remains in Kasir for five months awaiting helf from l'timad Khan, p. 379. Makes peace with Chingiz Khan, is given Baroda, p. 381. Established in Baroda, p. 382. Palls from his borse (968 H), pp. 386, 390, With Chingiz Khan, pp. 395, 403. Enters' Ahmadābād with Muzaffer III, p. 406. Takes Muzaffar III to I'timad Khāo, pp. 406, 402. His estates which had been given to the Mirzas, now restored to him, (Sha'ban, 974), p. 410. Sends Tuihar Khan and Rayhan Jasnadar against the Mirzas, p. 411. Obtains the estates of Chingiz Khan (12th Rajeb, 975), p. 421. Leaves Ahmadabad and goes to Mahmudābād (Dil Hijja, 975), p. 425. Quarrels with Ihuihar Khān, p. 435. Gives asylum to Bijli Khan's retainers after murder of their master, p. 437. Joins Sher Khān Fulādi (979 H), p. 441. Leaves I'timād Khān (980 H), p. 442. In interview with Muzaffar Khan reproaches Sher Khan for making peace, saving that by acceding to his request to help drive out the Mughals, Ulugh Khan lost crops and estates and had made an enemy of I'timad, p. 445. Adds a postscript to a letter he dectated to the Author in which he forgives the nobles who had deserted him, p. 450. On receipt of Akbar's letter says no one will go to Akbar except I'timad Khan, he will answer for luihār Khan. He arranges to send areasures, guns, elephant to Ankleswar. They will remain in Baroda till I'timād had joined Akbar. They will then go to Nandutbar, Nizam Shah will welcome their help against Akbar, p. 455. Follows Shir Khan to Dhoika accompanied by 40 nobles and others, p. 455. With Jhuihār surrenders to Akbar. Compelled by Akbar to write to his troops, p. 457. Is well cared for, nothing being asked off him but his submission to Akbar, p. 459. Had under him 700 Habashi knights, p. 450. Buried Jeun his father Yaqut and Jeun Khan, Marjan. Author present at his burial, pp. 472, 526.

Uhugh Khān Nāsir ud-Din, Lord of Junāgadh, his daughter married to 'Alam Khān, p. 227.

Ulugh Khan Sultani, p. 319.

Ulugh Khān Yāqut, pp. 313, 314, 316, 319. Dies in Baroda, pp. 321, 322, 325-26, 328. Commanding 'Imād ul-Mulk's Habashis, p. 331. Obtains rank of 'Imād when latter becomes Prime Minister to Ahmad II, p. 332. Succeeds to titles of Mandal Ulugh Khān on death of latter (961 H), p. 337. Requested to leave capital temporarily, p. 339. Taken ill (964 H), p. 344. Dies in (965 H), his funeral attended by all, including the Sultān, pp. 345, 365. Devotion of the Habashis to him, p. 366.

Ulugh Khu, Grandson of Chingiz Khān the Mongol, marries daughter of Jalāl Firuz and settles in India, p. 627. Son of Chingiz Khān's daughter, accompanies Malik-i-Jahān to Multān, p. 642. Blinded on the way back from Multān and taken captive to Delhi, p. 644.

Ulugh Mirzā, son of Muhammad Sultān Mirzā, escapes from Kāmrān Mirza and joins Humāyun, who gives him the fiet of Zamin Dāwar, p. 847.

Ulugh Qutlugh A'zam Humāyun Qābul Khān Jahān, first Vazir to Firuz Shāh, p. 744. Dies (772 H), p. 746.

Urankai (Warangai), capital of Telingana, pp. 138, 140. Siege contemplated by Ulugh Khān in (701 H), expedition sent against the city by 'Alāuddin in (702 H), pp. 670, 676, 712. Renamed Sultānpur (721 H) p. 731.

Urtabagh, in Kabul where Humayun celebrated his victory (952 H), p. 850.

Uways Sultān, in charge of Badakhshān, p. 786. With Humāyun in Persia, p. 841.

Uzbek, troops, pp. 408, 778.

## V

Vazir Khān, conquers Junāgadh, p. 491.

Viceroy (Bizray), the Portuguese Governor referred to in (942 H) was Nuno da Cusiha, (Nov. 18th, 1529 to Sept. 14th, 1538), who was not viceroy but Governor-General, p. 214.

Vijaynagar, p. 143.

Vikramādit, Sultān of Ujjain, p. 574. Son of Rāi Sāngā, p. 192. Lord of Gwalior, p. 770.

## W

Wachcha, a dallāl in Cambay (978 H), p. 434.

Wafā Malik (Wafā ul-Mulk) Shāhin, formerly known as Yadilda (?), Left as regent in Delhi by Qutbuddin (718 H), p. 695.

Wahid-ud-Din Quraishi, Governor of Gujarāt, with title of Şadr-ul-Mulk becomes vazir to Sultān Qutbuddin (718 H), with title of Tāj ul-Mulk, p. 698.

Wajih ud-Din Al-'Alwi, p. 493.

Wajih ul-Mulk, Vazir, of l'timād Khān, pp. 197, 350, 381, murders Ahmad II, pp. 384, 390. (980 H), p. 443.

Wajih ul-Mulk Abu Jiu Tank, sent to setch back the messenger bearing Bahādur's letter to Humāyun but fails to catch him, p. 198. Friend of Daryā Khān, p. 265. Jagirdār of Janbu, p. 267.

Walikhān, son of Jhughar Khān, Marjān, p. 450. Taken prisoner at battle of Nadiad (980 H), p. 451. In command at siege of Ahmadābād in (981 H), p. 472. Appointed Commander-in-Chief of 'Ādil Shāh, pp. 493, 495.

Wali Khāzin (? Hāzin), amir, pp. 781, 782. With Humāyun in his expedition against Rānā Sāngā (933 H), p. 783. General to Bābur, p. 785.

Wali ud-Din Khatib al-Tabrizi, autyor of Mishqat, p. 242.

Wali ul-Lāli Shāh Bahmani, brother of 'Alauddin II, poisoned by Malik Baria II, p. 151.

Wainbariya (misprinted Zambariay), p. 480.

Wannajjan, p. 481.

Wannajsajjad (segad) King of Ethiopia, p. 482.

Wāq'at-i-Bāburi, Babur's memoirs, p. 779.

Wāqidi, Author of Fruhih ush-Shām, p. 234.

Warangal, see Urankal.

Washin, p. 477.

Wasna, a slave, kills his master, Jarad Mahfuz, p. 475.

Wazsar? (Warshada), p. 534.

## Y

Yādgar Birlās, p. 753.

Yādgār Nāsir Mirzā, pp. 82z, 823, 830 flees to Badakhshāu, p. 863. Joins Humāyun in Kabul, (952), p. 850. Again plots against Humāyun and is confined in the citadel of Kabul (952 H); put to death by Humāyun's orders, (953 H), p. 85t.

Yā6's, recruited by Amir Husayn, p. 41. In Khāndesh, pp. 56, 79. Join Rumi Khān (953 H), p. 234. Habashis, Javanese and Portuguese,

various duties. The most numerous of the foreign contingents, p. 243. Arab mercenaries, p. 312.

Yaghrish Khān, brother of Jalāluddin Firuz Khalji, p. 622.

Yak Lakhi Malik, p. 139. Governor of Deogir, p. 695.

Yaman, Shaykhs of, p. 353.

Yāqub Sikandar Khān Malik, sent as Governor to Gujarat, where he is killed, p. 748.

Yaqut 'Ali Shawush, (981 H), p. 445. Yaqut al-Must'aşimi, the caligrapher, p. 59.

Yāqut Bazi Sultāni, pp. 369, 377.

Yāqut Hāfiz Khān, pp. 386, 391, 404.

Yāqut Hamchunin Ansār Khān, before battle of Nadiad deserts Ulugh Khān and goes over to I'timād, p. 450.

Yāqut 'Imād ul-Mulk Jamshid Khān p. 387.

Yāqut 'Ināyat, Habashi chief under Nizāmshāhis, p. 157.

Yāqut Şafar Baḥar Khān, see Bahr Khān.

Yāqut Sultāni, p. 369.

Yāqut Sultāni, Pātliya, p. 378.

Yāqut Sultāni, Kapāsia, p. 377.

Yāqut Sultāni, p. 79.

Yagut Sultāni, p. 471.

Yaqnt Ubayd Khan, p. 385.

Yaqut Ulugh Khan, see Ulugh Khan Yaqut.

Yār 'Ali Mughali, Khāndesh noble, p. 50. Amir in Burhānpur, p. 51.

Yati Khān Afghāu, p. 835.

Yati Khān Aybeg Khatāi, p. 589.

Yunus'ali, p. 781.

Yusuf, son of Mubāriz ul-Mulk, p. 125. Yusuf, son of Rustum Khān, see

Khudawand Khān Yusuf.

Yusuf Beg, son of Ibrahim Chālug, p. 822.

Yusuf Shāh, of Bengal, p. 816. Yusufshihāb, p. 247. Yusufsufi, Sufi Khān, pp. 700, 701.

Z

Zabardast Khān Rumi, p. 363. In service of Fath Jang Khān, p. 369. Killed in Ahmadābād, p. 420.

Zabba Faria, an ancedote told of her, p. 820.

Zabid, pp. 38, 39. History of, pp. 81, 90. First Muslim ruler, Mahammad b. 'Abdullāh b. Ziyād in (204 H). First fortified by al-Husayn, p. 81.

Zafar al-Wālih bi-Muzaffar Wa Ālihi. Title of this history, p. 750. Contents described, p. 767.

Za'faran Khān, son of 'Imād ul Mulk of Berar, waits on Bahādur, p. 135.

Zafar Khān, in service of 'Alāuddin, Khalji, pp. 635, 639. Title conferred on Hizabruddin Yusuf, sister's son to 'Alāuddin, p. 644. Conquers Siwista in (698 H), p. 649. Drives the Mongols out of Siwistan, p. 651. Separated from the main force at the battle of Kili, is killed by the Mongols, p. 657. The fame of his courage; when houses led to water refuse to drink riders would say,

"Is Zafar there that should be afraid?", p. 659.

Zafar Khān, son A'zam Humāyun.

Zafar Khān, son of Tughluq Shāh, p. 711. Governor of Gujarāt, p. 746.

Zafar Khān, son of Zafar Khān, succeeds his father in Gujarāt, p. 746.

Zafar Khān, in Patan on behalf of Mahmud b. Firuz, King of Delhi, p. 150.

Zafar Nāma of Sharafuddin 'Ali Yazdi, p. 753.

Zahirud-Din Lähori, p. 748.

Zamakhshari, (b. 467-d. 538). Anecdotes regarding, p. 112. List of his books, p. 113.

Zayn Khān, son of Ikhtiyār ul-Mulk Sultāni, p. 450. Marries granddaughter of Aydar Khān, son of Malik ush-Sharq, p. 500.

Zayn Rinda of Thanesar, pp. 731, 738.

Ziyāud-Din Barani, quoted in connection of Dekkan history, p. 137. 17 yrs. 3 mns. in service of Muhammad b. Tughluq, p. 725. Confesses he did not dare to be frank with his master, p. 732. Poem in praise of Firuz Shāh, p. 748.

Dr. ZAKIR HUBAN LIBRARY



